



**JUNOS® Software**

# **Security Configuration Guide for J-series Services Routers and SRX-series Services Gateways**

*Release 9.5*

**Juniper Networks, Inc.**

1194 North Mathilda Avenue  
Sunnyvale, California 94089  
USA

408-745-2000

**[www.juniper.net](http://www.juniper.net)**

Part Number: 530-029526-01, Revision 01

This product includes the Envoy SNMP Engine, developed by Epilogue Technology, an Integrated Systems Company. Copyright © 1986-1997, Epilogue Technology Corporation. All rights reserved. This program and its documentation were developed at private expense, and no part of them is in the public domain.

This product includes memory allocation software developed by Mark Moraes, copyright © 1988, 1989, 1993, University of Toronto.

This product includes FreeBSD software developed by the University of California, Berkeley, and its contributors. All of the documentation and software included in the 4.4BSD and 4.4BSD-Lite Releases is copyrighted by the Regents of the University of California. Copyright © 1979, 1980, 1983, 1986, 1988, 1989, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994. The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

GateD software copyright © 1995, the Regents of the University. All rights reserved. Gate Daemon was originated and developed through release 3.0 by Cornell University and its collaborators. Gated is based on Kirton's EGP, UC Berkeley's routing daemon (routed), and DCN's HELLO routing protocol. Development of Gated has been supported in part by the National Science Foundation. Portions of the GateD software copyright © 1988, Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved. Portions of the GateD software copyright © 1991, D. L. S. Associates.

This product includes software developed by Maker Communications, Inc., copyright © 1996, 1997, Maker Communications, Inc.

Juniper Networks, the Juniper Networks logo, JUNOS, NetScreen, ScreenOS, and Steel-Belted Radius are registered trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. in the United States and other countries. JUNOSe is a trademark of Juniper Networks, Inc. All other trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks, or registered service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

Products made or sold by Juniper Networks or components thereof might be covered by one or more of the following patents that are owned by or licensed to Juniper Networks: U.S. Patent Nos. 5,473,599, 5,905,725, 5,909,440, 6,192,051, 6,333,650, 6,359,479, 6,406,312, 6,429,706, 6,459,579, 6,493,347, 6,538,518, 6,538,899, 6,552,918, 6,567,902, 6,578,186, and 6,590,785.

#### *JUNOS Software Security Configuration Guide*

Release 9.5

Copyright © 2009, Juniper Networks, Inc.

All rights reserved. Printed in USA.

#### Revision History

April 2009—Revision 01

The information in this document is current as of the date listed in the revision history.

#### YEAR 2000 NOTICE

Juniper Networks hardware and software products are Year 2000 compliant. The JUNOS software has no known time-related limitations through the year 2038. However, the NTP application is known to have some difficulty in the year 2036.

#### SOFTWARE LICENSE

The terms and conditions for using this software are described in the software license contained in the acknowledgment to your purchase order or, to the extent applicable, to any reseller agreement or end-user purchase agreement executed between you and Juniper Networks. By using this software, you indicate that you understand and agree to be bound by those terms and conditions. Generally speaking, the software license restricts the manner in which you are permitted to use the software and may contain prohibitions against certain uses. The software license may state conditions under which the license is automatically terminated. You should consult the license for further details. For complete product documentation, please see the Juniper Networks Web site at [www.juniper.net/techpubs](http://www.juniper.net/techpubs).

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

**READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("AGREEMENT") BEFORE DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE.** BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE OR OTHERWISE EXPRESSING YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, YOU (AS CUSTOMER OR IF YOU ARE NOT THE CUSTOMER, AS A REPRESENTATIVE/AGENT AUTHORIZED TO BIND THE CUSTOMER) CONSENT TO BE BOUND BY THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT OR CANNOT AGREE TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, THEN (A) DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, OR USE THE SOFTWARE, AND (B) YOU MAY CONTACT JUNIPER NETWORKS REGARDING LICENSE TERMS.

1. **The Parties.** The parties to this Agreement are (i) Juniper Networks, Inc. (if the Customer's principal office is located in the Americas) or Juniper Networks (Cayman) Limited (if the Customer's principal office is located outside the Americas) (such applicable entity being referred to herein as "Juniper"), and (ii) the person or organization that originally purchased from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller the applicable license(s) for use of the Software ("Customer") (collectively, the "Parties").

2. **The Software.** In this Agreement, "Software" means the program modules and features of the Juniper or Juniper-supplied software, for which Customer has paid the applicable license or support fees to Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller, or which was embedded by Juniper in equipment which Customer purchased from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller. "Software" also includes updates, upgrades and new releases of such software. "Embedded Software" means Software which Juniper has embedded in or loaded onto the Juniper equipment and any updates, upgrades, additions or replacements which are subsequently embedded in or loaded onto the equipment.

3. **License Grant.** Subject to payment of the applicable fees and the limitations and restrictions set forth herein, Juniper grants to Customer a non-exclusive and non-transferable license, without right to sublicense, to use the Software, in executable form only, subject to the following use restrictions:

a. Customer shall use Embedded Software solely as embedded in, and for execution on, Juniper equipment originally purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.

b. Customer shall use the Software on a single hardware chassis having a single processing unit, or as many chassis or processing units for which Customer has paid the applicable license fees; provided, however, with respect to the Steel-Belted Radius or Odyssey Access Client software only, Customer shall use such Software on a single computer containing a single physical random access memory space and containing any number of processors. Use of the Steel-Belted Radius or IMS AAA software on multiple computers or virtual machines (e.g., Solaris zones) requires multiple licenses, regardless of whether such computers or virtualizations are physically contained on a single chassis.

c. Product purchase documents, paper or electronic user documentation, and/or the particular licenses purchased by Customer may specify limits to Customer's use of the Software. Such limits may restrict use to a maximum number of seats, registered endpoints, concurrent users, sessions, calls, connections, subscribers, clusters, nodes, realms, devices, links, ports or transactions, or require the purchase of separate licenses to use particular features, functionalities, services, applications, operations, or capabilities, or provide throughput, performance, configuration, bandwidth, interface, processing, temporal, or geographical limits. In addition, such limits may restrict the use of the Software to managing certain kinds of networks or require the Software to be used only in conjunction with other specific Software. Customer's use of the Software shall be subject to all such limitations and purchase of all applicable licenses.

d. For any trial copy of the Software, Customer's right to use the Software expires 30 days after download, installation or use of the Software. Customer may operate the Software after the 30-day trial period only if Customer pays for a license to do so. Customer may not extend or create an additional trial period by re-installing the Software after the 30-day trial period.

e. The Global Enterprise Edition of the Steel-Belted Radius software may be used by Customer only to manage access to Customer's enterprise network. Specifically, service provider customers are expressly prohibited from using the Global Enterprise Edition of the Steel-Belted Radius software to support any commercial network access services.

The foregoing license is not transferable or assignable by Customer. No license is granted herein to any user who did not originally purchase the applicable license(s) for the Software from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.

4. **Use Prohibitions.** Notwithstanding the foregoing, the license provided herein does not permit the Customer to, and Customer agrees not to and shall not: (a) modify, unbundle, reverse engineer, or create derivative works based on the Software; (b) make unauthorized copies of the Software (except as necessary for backup purposes); (c) rent, sell, transfer, or grant any rights in and to any copy of the Software, in any form, to any third party; (d) remove any proprietary notices, labels, or marks on or in any copy of the Software or any product in which the Software is embedded; (e) distribute any copy of the Software to any third party, including as may be embedded in Juniper equipment sold in the secondhand market; (f) use any 'locked' or key-restricted feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability without first purchasing the applicable license(s) and obtaining a valid key from Juniper, even if such feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability is enabled without a key; (g) distribute any key for the Software provided by Juniper to any third party; (h) use the Software in any manner that extends or is broader than the uses purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (i) use Embedded Software on non-Juniper equipment; (j) use Embedded Software (or make it available for use) on Juniper equipment that the Customer did not originally purchase from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (k) disclose the results of testing or benchmarking of the Software to any third party without the prior written consent of Juniper; or (l) use the Software in any manner other than as expressly provided herein.

5. **Audit.** Customer shall maintain accurate records as necessary to verify compliance with this Agreement. Upon request by Juniper, Customer shall furnish such records to Juniper and certify its compliance with this Agreement.

6. **Confidentiality.** The Parties agree that aspects of the Software and associated documentation are the confidential property of Juniper. As such, Customer shall exercise all reasonable commercial efforts to maintain the Software and associated documentation in confidence, which at a minimum includes restricting access to the Software to Customer employees and contractors having a need to use the Software for Customer's internal business purposes.

7. **Ownership.** Juniper and Juniper's licensors, respectively, retain ownership of all right, title, and interest (including copyright) in and to the Software, associated documentation, and all copies of the Software. Nothing in this Agreement constitutes a transfer or conveyance of any right, title, or interest in the Software or associated documentation, or a sale of the Software, associated documentation, or copies of the Software.

8. **Warranty, Limitation of Liability, Disclaimer of Warranty.** The warranty applicable to the Software shall be as set forth in the warranty statement that accompanies the Software (the "Warranty Statement"). Nothing in this Agreement shall give rise to any obligation to support the Software. Support services may be purchased separately. Any such support shall be governed by a separate, written support services agreement. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF DATA, OR COSTS OR PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES, OR FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT, THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE. IN NO EVENT SHALL JUNIPER BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING FROM UNAUTHORIZED OR IMPROPER USE OF ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PROVIDED IN THE WARRANTY STATEMENT TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES IN AND TO THE SOFTWARE (WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY, OR OTHERWISE), INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT DOES JUNIPER WARRANT THAT THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY EQUIPMENT OR NETWORK RUNNING THE SOFTWARE, WILL OPERATE WITHOUT ERROR OR INTERRUPTION, OR WILL BE FREE OF VULNERABILITY TO INTRUSION OR ATTACK. In no event shall Juniper's or its suppliers' or licensors' liability to Customer, whether in contract, tort (including negligence), breach of warranty, or otherwise, exceed the price paid by Customer for the Software that gave rise to the claim, or if the Software is embedded in another Juniper product, the price paid by Customer for such other product. Customer acknowledges and agrees that Juniper has set its prices and entered into this Agreement in reliance upon the disclaimers of warranty and the limitations of liability set forth herein, that the same reflect an allocation of risk between the Parties (including the risk that a contract remedy may fail of its essential purpose and cause consequential loss), and that the same form an essential basis of the bargain between the Parties.

9. **Termination.** Any breach of this Agreement or failure by Customer to pay any applicable fees due shall result in automatic termination of the license granted herein. Upon such termination, Customer shall destroy or return to Juniper all copies of the Software and related documentation in Customer's possession or control.

10. **Taxes.** All license fees payable under this agreement are exclusive of tax. Customer shall be responsible for paying Taxes arising from the purchase of the license, or importation or use of the Software. If applicable, valid exemption documentation for each taxing jurisdiction shall be provided to Juniper prior to invoicing, and Customer shall promptly notify Juniper if their exemption is revoked or modified. All payments made by Customer shall be net of any applicable withholding tax. Customer will provide reasonable assistance to Juniper in connection with such withholding taxes by promptly: providing Juniper with valid tax receipts and other required documentation showing Customer's payment of any withholding taxes; completing appropriate applications that would reduce the amount of withholding tax to be paid; and notifying and assisting Juniper in any audit or tax proceeding related to transactions hereunder. Customer shall comply with all applicable tax laws and regulations, and Customer will promptly pay or reimburse Juniper for all costs and damages related to any liability incurred by Juniper as a result of Customer's non-compliance or delay with its responsibilities herein. Customer's obligations under this Section shall survive termination or expiration of this Agreement.

11. **Export.** Customer agrees to comply with all applicable export laws and restrictions and regulations of any United States and any applicable foreign agency or authority, and not to export or re-export the Software or any direct product thereof in violation of any such restrictions, laws or regulations, or without all necessary approvals. Customer shall be liable for any such violations. The version of the Software supplied to Customer may contain encryption or other capabilities restricting Customer's ability to export the Software without an export license.

12. **Commercial Computer Software.** The Software is "commercial computer software" and is provided with restricted rights. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the United States government is subject to restrictions set forth in this Agreement and as provided in DFARS 227.7201 through 227.7202-4, FAR 12.212, FAR 27.405(b)(2), FAR 52.227-19, or FAR 52.227-14(ALT III) as applicable.

13. **Interface Information.** To the extent required by applicable law, and at Customer's written request, Juniper shall provide Customer with the interface information needed to achieve interoperability between the Software and another independently created program, on payment of applicable fee, if any. Customer shall observe strict obligations of confidentiality with respect to such information and shall use such information in compliance with any applicable terms and conditions upon which Juniper makes such information available.

14. **Third Party Software.** Any licensor of Juniper whose software is embedded in the Software and any supplier of Juniper whose products or technology are embedded in (or services are accessed by) the Software shall be a third party beneficiary with respect to this Agreement, and such licensor or vendor shall have the right to enforce this Agreement in its own name as if it were Juniper. In addition, certain third party software may be provided with the Software and is subject to the accompanying license(s), if any, of its respective owner(s). To the extent portions of the Software are distributed under and subject to open source licenses obligating Juniper to make the source code for such portions publicly available (such as the GNU General Public License ("GPL") or the GNU Library General Public License ("LGPL")), Juniper will make such source code portions (including Juniper modifications, as appropriate) available upon request for a period of up to three years from the date of distribution. Such request can be made in writing to Juniper Networks, Inc., 1194 N. Mathilda Ave., Sunnyvale, CA 94089, ATTN: General Counsel. You may obtain a copy of the GPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>, and a copy of the LGPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html>.

15. **Miscellaneous.** This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California without reference to its conflicts of laws principles. The provisions of the U.N. Convention for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply to this Agreement. For any disputes arising under this Agreement, the Parties hereby consent to the personal and exclusive jurisdiction of, and venue in, the state and federal courts within Santa Clara County, California. This Agreement constitutes the entire and sole agreement between Juniper and the Customer with respect to the Software, and supersedes all prior and contemporaneous



agreements relating to the Software, whether oral or written (including any inconsistent terms contained in a purchase order), except that the terms of a separate written agreement executed by an authorized Juniper representative and Customer shall govern to the extent such terms are inconsistent or conflict with terms contained herein. No modification to this Agreement nor any waiver of any rights hereunder shall be effective unless expressly assented to in writing by the party to be charged. If any portion of this Agreement is held invalid, the Parties agree that such invalidity shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this Agreement. This Agreement and associated documentation has been written in the English language, and the Parties agree that the English version will govern. (For Canada: Les parties aux présentes confirment leur volonté que cette convention de même que tous les documents y compris tout avis qui s'y rattache, soient rédigés en langue anglaise. (Translation: The parties confirm that this Agreement and all related documentation is and will be in the English language)).



# Abbreviated Table of Contents

About This Guide

xxxix

## Part 1

### Support Overview for Security Features

---

Chapter 1	Security Features on SRX 210/240 Services Gateways	3
Chapter 2	Security Features on SRX 650 Services Gateways	9
Chapter 3	Security Features on SRX 3400/3600/5600/5800 Services Gateways	13
Chapter 4	Security Features on J-series Services Routers	21

## Part 2

### Security Features

---

Chapter 5	Introducing JUNOS Software for J-series Services Routers	31
Chapter 6	Introducing JUNOS Software for SRX-series Services Gateways	43
Chapter 7	Security Zones and Interfaces	69
Chapter 8	Attack Detection and Prevention	89
Chapter 9	Network Address Translation	187
Chapter 10	Chassis Cluster	215
Chapter 11	Application Layer Gateways (ALGs)	285

## Part 3

### Policy Features

---

Chapter 12	Security Policies	431
Chapter 13	Security Policy Address Books and Address Sets	455
Chapter 14	Security Policy Schedulers	463
Chapter 15	Security Policy Applications	473

## Part 4

### User Authentication Features

---

Chapter 16	Firewall User Authentication	509
Chapter 17	Infranet Authentication	541

## Part 5

### Virtual Private Network Features

---

Chapter 18	Internet Protocol Security (IPsec)	553
Chapter 19	Public Key Cryptography for Certificates	607
Chapter 20	Dynamic Virtual Private Networks (VPNs)	639
Chapter 21	NetScreen-Remote VPN Client	683

<b>Part 6</b>	<b>Intrusion Detection and Prevention Features</b>	
Chapter 22	IDP Policies	707
Chapter 23	IDP Signature Database	773
Chapter 24	IDP Application Identification	789
Chapter 25	IDP SSL Inspection	801
Chapter 26	IDP Logging	807
<b>Part 7</b>	<b>Unified Threat Management Features</b>	
Chapter 27	Unified Threat Management Overview	813
Chapter 28	Antispam Filtering	817
Chapter 29	Full File-based Antivirus Protection	839
Chapter 30	Express Antivirus Protection	893
Chapter 31	Content Filtering	921
Chapter 32	Web Filtering	945
<b>Part 8</b>	<b>Index</b>	
	Index	985

# Table of Contents

<b>About This Guide</b>	<b>xxxix</b>
SRX Series Documentation and Release Notes .....	xxxix
Objectives .....	xxxix
Audience .....	xl
Supported Routing Platforms .....	xl
How to Use This Manual .....	xl
Document Conventions .....	xlii
Documentation Feedback .....	xliv
Requesting Technical Support .....	xliv

<b>Part 1</b>	<b>Support Overview for Security Features</b>	
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Security Features on SRX 210/240 Services Gateways</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Security Features on SRX 650 Services Gateways</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Security Features on SRX 3400/3600/5600/5800 Services Gateways</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Security Features on J-series Services Routers</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>Part 2</b>	<b>Security Features</b>	
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Introducing JUNOS Software for J-series Services Routers</b>	<b>31</b>
	Stateful and Stateless Data Processing .....	31
	Flow-Based Processing .....	32
	Zones and Policies .....	33
	Flows and Sessions .....	33
	Packet-Based Processing .....	33
	Changing Session Characteristics .....	35
	Controlling Session Termination .....	36
	Disabling TCP Packet Security Checks .....	36
	Accommodating End-to-End TCP Communication .....	37
	Following the Data Path .....	37
	Part 1—Forwarding Processing .....	38
	Part 2—Session-Based Processing .....	38
	Session Lookup .....	38
	First-Packet Path Processing .....	39
	Fast-Path Processing .....	40
	Part 3—Forwarding Features .....	40
	Understanding Secure and Router Contexts .....	40
	Secure and Router Context Support On Different Device Types .....	41
	Secure Context .....	41
	Router Context .....	42

**Chapter 6****Introducing JUNOS Software for SRX-series Services Gateways 43**

Stateful and Stateless Data Processing Overview .....	43
Understanding Flow-Based Processing .....	44
Zones and Policies .....	45
Flows and Sessions .....	45
Understanding Packet-Based Processing .....	45
Changing Session Characteristics .....	46
Controlling Session Termination .....	47
Disabling TCP Packet Security Checks .....	48
Setting the Maximum Segment Size for All TCP Sessions .....	48
SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 Services Gateways Overview .....	48
Following the Data Path for a Unicast Session .....	51
Session Lookup and Packet Match Criteria .....	51
Understanding Session Creation: First-Packet Processing .....	52
Understanding Fast-Path Processing .....	55
SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 Services Gateways Overview .....	57
Central Point and Combo-Mode Support .....	59
Load Distribution in Combo Mode .....	59
Sharing Processing Power and Memory in Combo Mode .....	59
Following the Data Path for a Unicast Session .....	59
Session Lookup and Packet Match Criteria .....	61
Understanding Session Creation: First Packet Processing .....	61
Understanding Fast-Path Processing .....	63
Packet Flow and Session Management in SRX 210 Services Gateways .....	63
Flow Processing and Session Management .....	63
First-Packet Processing .....	64
Session Creation .....	64
Fast-Path Processing .....	64
Obtaining Information About Sessions and Terminating Them .....	65
Obtaining Information About Sessions .....	65
Displaying Global Session Parameters .....	65
Displaying a Summary of Sessions .....	66
Displaying Session and Flow Information About Sessions .....	66
Displaying Session and Flow Information About a Specific Session .....	66
Using Filters to Display Session and Flow Information .....	66
Terminating Sessions .....	67
Terminating All Sessions .....	67
Terminating a Specific Session .....	67
Using Filters to Specify the Sessions to Be Terminated .....	67

<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Security Zones and Interfaces</b>	<b>69</b>
	Understanding Security Zones .....	69
	Functional Zone .....	70
	Security Zone .....	70
	Related Topics .....	71
	Creating Security Zones .....	71
	J-Web Configuration .....	72
	CLI Configuration .....	72
	Related Topics .....	72
	Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration .....	73
	Configuring Host Inbound Traffic .....	75
	System Services .....	76
	J-Web Configuration .....	77
	CLI Configuration .....	78
	Related Topics .....	80
	Configuring Protocols .....	80
	J-Web Configuration .....	81
	CLI Configuration .....	81
	Related Topics .....	82
	Configuring the TCP-Reset Parameter .....	82
	J-Web Configuration .....	83
	CLI Configuration .....	83
	Related Topics .....	83
	Understanding Security Zone Interfaces .....	83
	Understanding Interface Ports .....	84
	Related Topics .....	84
	Configuring Interfaces—Quick Configuration .....	84
	Configuring a Gigabit Ethernet Interface—Quick Configuration .....	85
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Attack Detection and Prevention</b>	<b>89</b>
	Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview .....	91
	Related Topics .....	92
	Understanding IP Address Sweeps .....	92
	Related Topics .....	93
	Blocking IP Address Sweeps .....	93
	J-Web Configuration .....	93
	CLI Configuration .....	94
	Related Topics .....	94
	Understanding Port Scanning .....	94
	Related Topics .....	95
	Blocking Port Scans .....	96
	J-Web Configuration .....	96
	CLI Configuration .....	96
	Related Topics .....	96



Understanding Network Reconnaissance Using IP Options .....	97
Uses for IP Packet Header Options .....	97
Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance .....	99
Related Topics .....	99
Detecting Packets That Use IP Options for Reconnaissance .....	99
J-Web Configuration .....	99
CLI Configuration .....	101
Understanding Operating System Probes .....	101
TCP Headers with SYN and FIN Flags Set .....	101
TCP Headers With FIN Flag and Without ACK Flag .....	102
TCP Header Without Flags Set .....	103
Related Topics .....	103
Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set .....	104
J-Web Configuration .....	104
CLI Configuration .....	105
Related Topics .....	105
Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set .....	105
J-Web Configuration .....	105
CLI Configuration .....	106
Related Topics .....	106
Blocking Packets with No Flags Set .....	106
J-Web Configuration .....	106
CLI Configuration .....	107
Related Topics .....	107
Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques .....	107
FIN Scan .....	108
Non-SYN Flags .....	108
IP Spoofing .....	110
IP Source Route Options .....	110
Related Topics .....	112
Thwarting a FIN Scan .....	112
Related Topics .....	113
Setting TCP SYN Checking .....	113
J-Web Configuration .....	114
CLI Configuration .....	114
Related Topics .....	114
Setting Strict Syn Checking .....	114
J-Web Configuration .....	115
CLI Configuration .....	115
Related Topics .....	115
Blocking IP Spoofing .....	115
J-Web Configuration .....	116
CLI Configuration .....	116
Related Topics .....	116
Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set .....	117
J-Web Configuration .....	117
CLI Configuration .....	118
Related Topics .....	118

Detecting Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set .....	118
J-Web Configuration .....	118
CLI Configuration .....	119
Related Topics .....	119
Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview .....	120
Related Topics .....	120
Understanding ICMP Fragment Protection .....	120
Related Topics .....	121
Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets .....	121
J-Web Configuration .....	122
CLI Configuration .....	122
Related Topics .....	122
Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection .....	123
Related Topics .....	124
Blocking Large ICMP Packets .....	124
J-Web Configuration .....	124
CLI Configuration .....	125
Related Topics .....	125
Understanding Bad IP Option Protection .....	125
Related Topics .....	126
Detecting and Blocking IP Packets with Incorrectly Formatted Options .....	126
J-Web Configuration .....	127
CLI Configuration .....	127
Related Topics .....	127
Understanding Unknown Protocol Protection .....	128
Related Topics .....	129
Dropping Packets Using an Unknown Protocol .....	129
J-Web Configuration .....	129
CLI Configuration .....	130
Related Topics .....	130
Understanding IP Packet Fragment Protection .....	130
Related Topics .....	131
Dropping Fragmented IP Packets .....	131
J-Web Configuration .....	131
CLI Configuration .....	132
Related Topics .....	132
Understanding SYN Fragment Protection .....	132
Related Topics .....	134
Dropping IP Packets Containing SYN Fragments .....	134
J-Web Configuration .....	134
CLI Configuration .....	135
Related Topics .....	135
Denial-of-Service Attack Overview .....	135
Related Topics .....	135
Firewall DoS Attacks Overview .....	136
Related Topics .....	136
Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks .....	136
Source-Based Session Limits .....	137
Destination-Based Session Limits .....	138
Related Topics .....	138

Setting Source-Based Session Limits .....	139
J-Web Configuration .....	139
CLI Configuration .....	140
Related Topics .....	140
Setting Destination-Based Session Limits .....	140
J-Web Configuration .....	141
CLI Configuration .....	141
Related Topics .....	142
Understanding SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attacks .....	142
Related Topics .....	142
Enabling Protection Against a SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attack .....	142
J-Web Configuration .....	143
CLI Configuration .....	143
Related Topics .....	144
Network DoS Attacks Overview .....	144
Related Topics .....	144
Understanding SYN Flood Attacks .....	144
SYN Flood Protection .....	145
SYN Flood Options .....	147
Related Topics .....	149
Example: SYN Flood Protection .....	150
J-Web Configuration .....	152
CLI Configuration .....	155
Related Topics .....	156
Enabling SYN Flood Protection .....	156
Related Topics .....	156
Understanding SYN Cookie Protection .....	157
Related Topics .....	158
Enabling SYN Cookie Protection .....	158
J-Web Configuration .....	159
CLI Configuration .....	160
Related Topics .....	160
Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks .....	160
Related Topics .....	161
Enabling ICMP Flood Protection .....	161
J-Web Configuration .....	162
CLI Configuration .....	162
Related Topics .....	162
Understanding UDP Flood Attacks .....	163
Related Topics .....	164
Enabling UDP Flood Protection .....	164
J-Web Configuration .....	164
CLI Configuration .....	165
Related Topics .....	165
Understanding Land Attacks .....	165
Related Topics .....	166
Enabling Protection Against a Land Attack .....	166
J-Web Configuration .....	167
CLI Configuration .....	167
Related Topics .....	167

OS-Specific DoS Attacks Overview .....	168
Related Topics .....	168
Understanding Ping of Death Attacks .....	168
Related Topics .....	169
Enabling Protection Against a Ping of Death Attack .....	169
J-Web Configuration .....	169
CLI Configuration .....	170
Related Topics .....	170
Understanding Teardrop Attacks .....	170
Related Topics .....	172
Enabling Protection Against a Teardrop Attack .....	172
J-Web Configuration .....	172
CLI Configuration .....	173
Related Topics .....	173
Understanding WinNuke Attacks .....	173
Related Topics .....	174
Enabling Protection Against a WinNuke Attack .....	174
J-Web Configuration .....	175
CLI Configuration .....	175
Related Topics .....	175
Configuring Firewall Screen Options—Quick Configuration .....	176
Verifying Application Security Information Using Trace Options .....	181
Setting Security Trace Options .....	182
J-Web Configuration .....	182
CLI Configuration .....	183
Example: Show Security Traceoptions Output .....	184
Verifying Application Security Flow Information .....	185

## Chapter 9

## Network Address Translation

**187**

Understanding NAT .....	188
Inbound and Outbound NAT Traffic .....	189
Related Topics .....	190
Destination IP Address Translation Overview .....	190
Related Topics .....	191
Understanding Static NAT .....	191
Related Topics .....	191
Example: Configuring Static NAT .....	191
CLI Configuration .....	192
Understanding Rule-Based Destination NAT .....	192
Example: Configuring Destination NAT .....	193
CLI Configuration .....	194
Source IP Address Translation Overview .....	194
Related Topics .....	195
Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools .....	195
Related Topics .....	195
Understanding NAT Source Pools with PAT .....	195
Port Ranges .....	196
Address Persistent .....	196
Related Topics .....	196

Understanding NAT Source Pools Without PAT .....	196
Source Pool Utilization Alarm .....	197
Related Topics .....	197
Understanding NAT Static Source Pools .....	197
Related Topics .....	198
Understanding NAT Allow-Incoming Source Pools .....	198
Related Topics .....	198
Understanding NAT Source Pool Sets .....	198
Related Topics .....	199
Example: Configuring Source NAT .....	199
CLI Configuration .....	200
Verifying Static NAT Summary .....	201
Example: Configuring a Persistent Address .....	201
CLI Configuration .....	202
Related Topics .....	202
Configuring Proxy ARP .....	202
CLI Configuration .....	202
Verifying NAT Configuration .....	202
CLI Configuration .....	203
Configuring Source NAT—Quick Configuration .....	203
Configuring Destination NAT—Quick Configuration .....	204
Configuring Interface NAT—Quick Configuration .....	207
Configuring Firewall/NAT Flow—Quick Configuration .....	210
Configuring Stateful Firewall or NAT Screen—Quick Configuration .....	214

## Chapter 10

<b>Chassis Cluster</b>	<b>215</b>
Understanding Chassis Cluster .....	216
Related Topics .....	217
Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation .....	217
Related Topics .....	217
Understanding Redundancy Groups .....	218
About Redundancy Groups .....	218
Redundancy Group 0: Routing Engines .....	219
Redundancy Groups 1 Through 128 .....	219
Redundancy Group Interface Monitoring .....	222
Related Topics .....	223
Understanding Monitoring .....	223
SPU Monitoring .....	224
Flowd Monitoring .....	224
Cold-Sync Monitoring .....	225
Related Topics .....	226
Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces .....	226
Related Topics .....	226
Understanding the Control Plane .....	227
About the Control Link .....	228
About Heartbeats .....	228
About Control Link Failure and Recovery .....	228
Related Topics .....	230

Understanding the Data Plane .....	230
About Session RTOs .....	230
About the Fabric Data Link .....	231
About Data Forwarding .....	231
About Fabric Data Link Failure and Recovery .....	232
Related Topics .....	232
Understanding Failover .....	233
About Redundancy Group Failover .....	233
About Manual Failover .....	233
Hardware Setup for SRX-series Chassis Clusters .....	234
Hardware Setup for J-series Chassis Clusters .....	235
What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster .....	236
Node Interfaces on SRX-series Chassis Clusters .....	237
Node Interfaces on J-series Chassis Clusters .....	240
Management Interfaces .....	241
Fabric Interface .....	241
Control Interfaces .....	242
Related Topics .....	242
Creating an SRX-series Chassis Cluster—Overview .....	242
Related Topics .....	244
Creating a J-series Chassis Cluster—Overview .....	244
Related Topics .....	246
Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID .....	247
CLI Configuration .....	247
Related Topics .....	248
Configuring the Management Interface .....	248
CLI Configuration .....	249
Related Topics .....	249
Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration .....	249
Related Topics .....	252
Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces—Quick Configuration .....	252
Configuring Chassis Cluster Information .....	256
CLI Configuration .....	257
Related Topics .....	257
Configuring the Fabric .....	257
CLI Configuration .....	258
Related Topics .....	258
Configuring Redundancy Groups .....	258
CLI Configuration .....	259
Related Topics .....	259
Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces .....	259
CLI Configuration .....	260
Related Topics .....	261
Configuring Control Link Recovery .....	261
CLI Configuration .....	261
Related Topics .....	262
Configuring Interface Monitoring .....	262
CLI Configuration .....	262
Related Topics .....	262

Initiating a Manual Redundancy Group Failover .....	263
CLI Configuration .....	263
Configuring Conditional Route Advertising .....	264
CLI Configuration .....	265
Related Topics .....	266
Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration .....	266
Verifying the Chassis Cluster .....	267
Related Topics .....	267
Verifying Chassis Cluster Interfaces .....	267
Verifying Chassis Cluster Statistics .....	268
Verifying Chassis Cluster Status .....	270
Verifying Chassis Cluster Redundancy Group Status .....	270
SNMP Failover Traps .....	271
Related Topics .....	271
Upgrading Chassis Cluster .....	271
Related Topics .....	272
Disabling Chassis Cluster .....	272
Related Topics .....	272
Chassis Cluster Configuration Scenarios .....	272
Active/Passive Chassis Cluster Scenario .....	273
CLI Configuration .....	274
J-Web Configuration .....	276
Asymmetric Routing Chassis Cluster Scenario .....	278
Case 1: Failures in the Trust Zone reth .....	279
Case 2: Failures in the Untrust Zone Interfaces .....	280
CLI Configuration .....	280
J-Web Configuration .....	282

## Chapter 11

## Application Layer Gateways (ALGs) 285

Understanding Application Layer Gateways .....	287
Related Topics .....	287
Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration .....	287
Understanding the H.323 ALG .....	290
Related Topics .....	291
Configuring the H.323 ALG—Quick Configuration .....	292
Setting H.323 Endpoint Registration Timeout .....	294
J-Web Configuration .....	294
CLI Configuration .....	294
Related Topics .....	295
Setting H.323 Media Source Port Range .....	295
J-Web Configuration .....	295
CLI Configuration .....	296
Related Topics .....	296
Configuring H.323 Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection .....	296
J-Web Configuration .....	297
CLI Configuration .....	297
Related Topics .....	297

Allowing Unknown H.323 Message Types .....	297
J-Web Configuration .....	298
CLI Configuration .....	299
Related Topics .....	299
Verifying the H.323 Configuration .....	299
Verifying H.323 Counters .....	299
Related Topics .....	301
Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Internal Zone .....	301
J-Web Configuration .....	301
CLI Configuration .....	303
Related Topics .....	304
Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone .....	304
J-Web Configuration .....	305
CLI Configuration .....	308
Related Topics .....	309
Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls .....	310
CLI Configuration .....	310
Related Topics .....	311
Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Incoming Calls .....	312
CLI Configuration .....	312
Related Topics .....	313
Understanding the SIP ALG .....	313
SIP ALG Operation .....	314
SDP Session Descriptions .....	316
Pinhole Creation .....	317
SIP ALG Request Methods Overview .....	318
Related Topics .....	319
Configuring the SIP ALG—Quick Configuration .....	319
Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts .....	322
Related Topics .....	323
Setting SIP Call Duration and Inactive Media Timeout .....	323
J-Web Configuration .....	324
CLI Configuration .....	324
Related Topics .....	325
Configuring SIP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection .....	325
J-Web Configuration .....	325
CLI Configuration .....	326
Related Topics .....	326
Allowing Unknown SIP Message Types .....	326
J-Web Configuration .....	327
CLI Configuration .....	327
Related Topics .....	327
Disabling SIP Call ID Hiding .....	328
J-Web Configuration .....	328
CLI Configuration .....	328
Related Topics .....	328
Retaining SIP Hold Resources .....	329
J-Web Configuration .....	329
CLI Configuration .....	330
Related Topics .....	330



Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) .....	330
Outgoing Calls .....	331
Incoming Calls .....	331
Forwarded Calls .....	332
Call Termination .....	332
Call Re-INVITE Messages .....	332
Call Session Timers .....	332
Call Cancellation .....	333
Forking .....	333
SIP Messages .....	333
SIP Headers .....	333
SIP Body .....	335
SIP NAT Scenario .....	336
Classes of SIP Responses .....	338
Related Topics .....	339
Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar .....	339
Related Topics .....	341
Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls .....	342
CLI Configuration .....	342
Related Topics .....	343
Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls .....	344
J-Web Configuration .....	344
CLI Configuration .....	348
Related Topics .....	349
Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls .....	349
J-Web Configuration .....	350
CLI Configuration .....	353
Related Topics .....	354
Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone .....	354
CLI Configuration .....	355
Related Topics .....	356
Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Public Zone .....	356
J-Web Configuration .....	357
CLI Configuration .....	360
Related Topic .....	361
Configuring a Three-Zone SIP Scenario .....	361
J-Web Configuration .....	362
CLI Configuration .....	368
Related Topics .....	370
Verifying the SIP Configuration .....	370
Verifying the SIP ALG .....	370
Related Topics .....	371
Verifying SIP Calls .....	371
Related Topics .....	371
Verifying SIP Call Detail .....	372
Related Topics .....	372
Verifying SIP Transactions .....	372
Related Topics .....	373
Verifying SIP Counters .....	373
Related Topics .....	374

Verifying the Rate of SIP Messages .....	374
Related Topics .....	375
Understanding the SCCP ALG .....	375
SCCP Security .....	377
SCCP Components .....	377
SCCP Client .....	377
CallManager .....	377
Cluster .....	377
SCCP Transactions .....	378
Client Initialization .....	378
Client Registration .....	378
Call Setup .....	379
Media Setup .....	379
SCCP Control Messages and RTP Flow .....	379
SCCP Messages .....	380
Related Topics .....	381
Configuring the SCCP ALG—Quick Configuration .....	381
Setting SCCP Inactive Media Timeout .....	383
J-Web Configuration .....	384
CLI Configuration .....	384
Related Topics .....	384
Allowing Unknown SCCP Message Types .....	384
J-Web Configuration .....	385
CLI Configuration .....	385
Related Topics .....	386
Configuring SCCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection .....	386
J-Web Configuration .....	386
CLI Configuration .....	387
Related Topics .....	387
Configuring Call Manager/TFTP Server in the Private Zone .....	387
CLI Configuration .....	388
Verifying the SCCP Configuration .....	389
Verifying the SCCP ALG .....	389
Related Topics .....	389
Verifying SCCP Calls .....	389
Related Topics .....	390
Verifying SCCP Call Details .....	390
Related Topics .....	391
Verifying SCCP Counters .....	391
Related Topics .....	392
Understanding the MGCP ALG .....	392
MGCP Security .....	393
Entities in MGCP .....	393
Endpoint .....	393
Connection .....	394
Call .....	394
Call Agent .....	394
Commands .....	394
Response Codes .....	397
Related Topics .....	398
Configuring the MGCP ALG—Quick Configuration .....	398

Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts .....	400
Related Topics .....	401
Setting MGCP Call Duration .....	401
J-Web Configuration .....	402
CLI Configuration .....	402
Related Topics .....	402
Setting MGCP Inactive Media Timeout .....	403
J-Web Configuration .....	403
CLI Configuration .....	403
Related Topics .....	404
Setting the MGCP Transaction Timeout .....	404
J-Web Configuration .....	404
CLI Configuration .....	405
Related Topics .....	405
Configuring MGCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection .....	405
J-Web Configuration .....	406
CLI Configuration .....	406
Related Topics .....	406
Allowing Unknown MGCP Message Types .....	406
J-Web Configuration .....	407
CLI Configuration .....	408
Related Topics .....	408
Configuring a Media Gateway in Subscribers' Homes .....	408
J-Web Configuration .....	409
CLI Configuration .....	414
Related Topics .....	415
Configuring Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service Using Source and Static NAT ....	415
CLI Configuration .....	416
Related Topics .....	419
Verifying the MGCP Configuration .....	419
Verifying the MGCP ALG .....	419
Related Topics .....	419
Verifying MGCP Calls .....	419
Related Topics .....	420
Verifying MGCP Endpoints .....	420
Related Topics .....	421
Verifying MGCP Counters .....	421
Related Topics .....	422
Understanding the RPC ALG .....	422
Sun RPC ALG .....	423
Typical RPC Call Scenario .....	424
Sun RPC Services .....	424
Customizing Sun RPC Services .....	424
Microsoft RPC ALG .....	425
MS RPC Services in Security Policies .....	425
Predefined Microsoft RPC Services .....	426
Related Topics .....	426

Disabling and Enabling RPC ALG .....	426
J-Web Configuration .....	426
CLI Configuration .....	427
Related Topics .....	427
Verifying the RPC ALG Tables .....	427
Display the Sun RPC Port Mapping Table .....	427
Display the MS RPC UUID Mapping Table .....	428
Related Topics .....	428

## Part 3

## Policy Features

---

### Chapter 12

### Security Policies **431**

---

Security Policies Overview .....	431
Understanding Policies .....	432
Understanding Policy Rules .....	433
Understanding Policy Elements .....	434
Understanding Policy Configuration .....	435
Related Topics .....	436
Understanding Policy Ordering .....	436
Related Topics .....	437
Configuring Policies—Quick Configuration .....	438
Configuring Policies .....	441
J-Web Configuration .....	442
CLI Configuration .....	444
Related Topics .....	445
Verifying Policy Configuration .....	445
Example: Configuring Security Policies—Detailed Configuration .....	446
Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic .....	446
J-Web Configuration .....	447
CLI Configuration .....	448
Related Topics .....	448
Configuring a Policy to Deny Traffic .....	448
J-Web Configuration .....	449
CLI Configuration .....	450
Related Topics .....	450
Reordering Policies After They Have Been Created .....	450
Related Topics .....	451
Troubleshooting Policy Configuration .....	451
Checking Commit Failure .....	451
Verifying Commit .....	451
Debugging Policy Lookup .....	452
Monitoring Policy Statistics .....	452

<b>Chapter 13</b>	<b>Security Policy Address Books and Address Sets</b>	<b>455</b>
	Address Books and Address Sets Overview .....	455
	Understanding Address Books .....	455
	Understanding Address Sets .....	456
	Configuring Addresses and Address Sets—Quick Configuration .....	458
	Configuring Address Books .....	460
	J-Web Configuration .....	460
	CLI Configuration .....	461
	Related Topics .....	461
	Verifying Address Book Configuration .....	461
<b>Chapter 14</b>	<b>Security Policy Schedulers</b>	<b>463</b>
	Configuring a Scheduler—Quick Configuration .....	463
	Configuring Schedulers .....	465
	J-Web Configuration .....	465
	CLI Configuration .....	467
	Related Topics .....	468
	Associating a Policy to a Scheduler .....	468
	J-Web Configuration .....	468
	CLI Configuration .....	469
	Related Topics .....	470
	Verifying Scheduled Policies .....	470
<b>Chapter 15</b>	<b>Security Policy Applications</b>	<b>473</b>
	Policy Application Sets Overview .....	474
	Related Topics .....	474
	Understanding the ICMP Predefined Policy Application .....	475
	Handling ICMP Unreachable Errors .....	479
	Related Topics .....	479
	Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications .....	479
	Related Topics .....	481
	Understanding Microsoft Predefined Policy Applications .....	481
	Related Topics .....	484
	Understanding Dynamic Routing Protocols Predefined Policy Applications .....	484
	Related Topics .....	485
	Understanding Streaming Video Predefined Policy Applications .....	485
	Related Topics .....	485
	Understanding Sun RPC Predefined Policy Applications .....	486
	Related Topics .....	486
	Understanding Security and Tunnel Predefined Policy Applications .....	487
	Related Topics .....	487
	Understanding IP-Related Predefined Policy Applications .....	488
	Related Topics .....	488

Understanding Instant Messaging Predefined Policy Applications .....	488
Related Topics .....	489
Understanding Management Predefined Policy Applications .....	489
Related Topics .....	490
Understanding Mail Predefined Policy Applications .....	491
Related Topics .....	491
Understanding UNIX Predefined Policy Applications .....	491
Related Topics .....	492
Understanding Miscellaneous Predefined Policy Applications .....	492
Related Topics .....	493
Understanding Custom Policy Applications .....	493
Custom Application Mappings .....	494
Related Topics .....	494
Configuring Applications and Application Sets—Quick Configuration .....	494
Example: Configuring Applications and Application Sets .....	496
J-Web Configuration .....	496
CLI Configuration .....	497
Related Topics .....	497
Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application .....	498
J-Web Configuration .....	498
CLI Configuration .....	499
Related Topics .....	499
Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application .....	499
J-Web Configuration .....	500
CLI Configuration .....	500
Related Topics .....	500
Example: Defining a Custom Internet Control Message Protocol	
Application .....	501
J-Web Configuration .....	502
CLI Configuration .....	502
Related Topics .....	502
Understanding Policy Application Timeouts .....	503
Application Timeout Configuration and Lookup .....	503
Contingencies .....	504
Related Topics .....	506
Setting a Policy Application Timeout .....	506
Related Topics .....	506

**Part 4****User Authentication Features****Chapter 16****Firewall User Authentication 509**

Firewall User Authentication Overview .....	509
Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) Servers .....	510
Types of Firewall User Authentication .....	510
Related Topics .....	511
Understanding Authentication Schemes .....	511
Pass-Through Authentication .....	511
Web Authentication .....	512
Related Topics .....	514
Configuring for Pass-Through Authentication .....	514
J-Web Configuration .....	515
CLI Configuration .....	517
Related Topics .....	518
Configuring for Web Authentication .....	519
J-Web Configuration .....	519
CLI Configuration .....	522
Related Topics .....	523
Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication .....	524
J-Web Configuration .....	524
CLI Configuration .....	525
J-Web Configuration .....	525
CLI Configuration .....	526
Related Topics .....	526
Configuring for External Authentication Servers .....	526
J-Web Configuration .....	527
CLI Configuration .....	529
Related Topics .....	530
Understanding SecurID User Authentication .....	530
Related Topics .....	531
Configuring the SecurID Server .....	531
Configuring SecurID as the External Authentication Server .....	532
CLI Configuration .....	532
Deleting the Node Secret File .....	533
Related Topics .....	533
Displaying the Authentication Table .....	533
J-Web Configuration .....	533
CLI Configuration .....	534
Related Topics .....	534
Understanding Banner Customization .....	534
Related Topics .....	535
Customizing a Banner .....	535
J-Web Configuration .....	535
CLI Configuration .....	536
Related Topics .....	537
Configuring Firewall Authentication—Quick Configuration .....	537
Verifying Firewall User Authentication .....	539

## **Chapter 17                      Infranet Authentication                      541**

Unified Access Control Overview .....	541
Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and the Infranet	
Controller .....	542
JUNOS Enforcer Policy Enforcement .....	543
Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and a Cluster of Infranet	
Controllers .....	544
Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and the Infranet	
Agent .....	545
Related Topics .....	546
Enabling Unified Access Control on the SRX-series and J-series Devices .....	546
CLI Configuration .....	546
Related Topics .....	546
Configuring the SRX-series and J-series Devices as a JUNOS Enforcer .....	547
CLI Configuration .....	547
Related Topics .....	548
Configuring the JUNOS Enforcer Failover Options .....	548
CLI Configuration .....	549
Related Topics .....	549
Enabling the JUNOS Enforcer Test-Only Mode .....	549

## **Part 5                      Virtual Private Network Features**

### **Chapter 18                      Internet Protocol Security (IPsec)                      553**

Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview .....	554
Security Associations (SAs) .....	554
IPsec Key Management .....	555
Manual Key .....	555
AutoKey IKE .....	556
Diffie-Hellman Exchange .....	556
IPsec Security Protocols .....	557
Authentication Header (AH) Protocol .....	557
Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) Protocol .....	557
IPsec Tunnel Negotiation .....	558
Phase 1 of IKE Tunnel Negotiation .....	558
Phase 2 of IKE Tunnel Negotiation .....	560
Distributed VPN in SRX-series Services Gateways .....	561
Related Topics .....	562
Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing .....	562
Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode .....	562
IKE Packet Processing .....	564
IPsec Packet Processing .....	566
Related Topics .....	568
Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview .....	568



Configuring VPN Global Settings (Standard VPNs) .....	570
J-Web Configuration .....	570
CLI Configuration .....	571
Configuring VPN Global Settings—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) .....	571
Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) .....	573
J-Web Configuration .....	574
CLI Configuration .....	574
Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) .....	574
Configuring an IKE Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) .....	578
J-Web Configuration .....	578
CLI Configuration .....	579
Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) .....	579
Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) .....	583
J-Web Configuration .....	584
CLI Configuration .....	584
Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) .....	584
Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) .....	589
J-Web Configuration .....	590
CLI Configuration .....	590
Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) .....	590
Configuring an IPsec Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) .....	594
J-Web Configuration .....	594
CLI Configuration .....	595
Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) .....	595
Configuring IPsec AutoKey (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) .....	600
J-Web Configuration .....	600
CLI Configuration .....	601
Configuring IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) .....	601

## Chapter 19

## Public Key Cryptography for Certificates

**607**

Understanding Public Key Cryptography .....	608
Related Topics .....	608
Understanding Certificates .....	608
Certificate Signatures .....	609
Certificate Verification .....	609
Internet Key Exchange .....	610
Related Topics .....	610
Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists .....	611
Related Topics .....	611
Understanding Public Key Infrastructure .....	611
PKI Hierarchy for a Single CA Domain or Across Domains .....	612
PKI Management and Implementation .....	613
Related Topics .....	613
Understanding Self-Signed Certificates .....	614
About Generating Self-Signed Certificates .....	614
Related Topics .....	615

Understanding Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates .....	615
Related Topics .....	615
Understanding Manually Generated Self-Signed Certificates .....	616
Related Topics .....	616
Using Digital Certificates .....	616
Obtaining Digital Certificates Online .....	617
Obtaining Digital Certificates Manually .....	617
Verifying the Validity of a Certificate .....	618
Deleting a Certificate .....	618
Generating a Public-Private Key Pair .....	618
CLI Operation .....	619
Related Topics .....	619
Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile .....	619
CLI Configuration .....	620
Related Topics .....	620
Enrolling a CA Certificate Online .....	621
CLI Operation .....	621
Related Topics .....	622
Enrolling a Local Certificate Online .....	622
CLI Configuration .....	622
Related Topics .....	623
Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually .....	624
CLI Operation .....	625
Related Topics .....	625
Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually .....	626
CLI Operation .....	626
Related Topics .....	627
Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically .....	627
CLI Configuration .....	628
Related Topics .....	628
Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device .....	629
CLI Operation .....	629
Related Topics .....	629
Verifying Certificate Validity .....	630
CLI Operation .....	630
Related Topics .....	631
Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs .....	631
J-Web Configuration .....	632
CLI Configuration .....	632
Related Topics .....	632
Using Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates .....	633
J-Web Configuration .....	633
CLI Configuration .....	633
Related Topics .....	634
Manually Generating Self-Signed Certificates .....	634
J-Web Configuration .....	635
CLI Configuration .....	635
Related Topics .....	635

Deleting Certificates .....	636
CLI Operation .....	636
Related Topics .....	637
Deleting a Loaded CRL .....	637
CLI Operation .....	637
Related Topics .....	638

## Chapter 20

## Dynamic Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) 639

Dynamic VPN Overview .....	639
Connecting to the Remote Access Server for the First Time (Pre-IKE Phase) .....	641
Connecting to the Remote Access Server for Subsequent Sessions (Pre-IKE Phase) .....	644
Establishing an IPsec VPN Tunnel (IKE Phase) .....	645
Related Topics .....	648
Access Manager Client-Side Reference .....	648
Client-Side System Requirements .....	648
Client-Side Files .....	649
Client-Side Registry Changes .....	651
Client-Side Error Messages .....	652
Client-Side Logging and Connection Information .....	654
Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview .....	655
Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) .....	657
Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) .....	660
Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) .....	662
Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) .....	666
Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) .....	669
Configuring an IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) .....	671
Creating a Client Configuration—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) .....	675
Creating a Client Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) .....	678
J-Web Configuration .....	678
CLI Configuration .....	679
Configuring Global Client Download Settings—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) .....	679
Configuring Global Client Download Settings (Dynamic VPNs) .....	681
J-Web Configuration .....	682
CLI Configuration .....	682

## Chapter 21

## NetScreen-Remote VPN Client 683

System Requirements for NetScreen-Remote Client Installation .....	683
Installing the NetScreen-Remote Client on a PC or Laptop .....	684
Starting NetScreen-Remote Client Installation .....	684
Starting Installation from a CD-ROM .....	685
Starting Installation from a Network Share Drive .....	685
Starting Installation from a Web Site .....	685
Completing NetScreen-Remote Client Installation .....	686

Configuring the Firewall on the Router .....	689
Firewall Configuration Overview .....	689
Configuring a Security Zone .....	689
Configuring a Tunnel Interface .....	690
Configuring an Access Profile for XAuth .....	691
Configuring an IKE Gateway .....	691
Configuring Policies .....	692
Configuring the PC or Laptop .....	692
Creating a New Connection .....	693
Creating the Preshared Key .....	696
Defining the IPsec Protocols .....	697
Logging In to the NetScreen Remote Client .....	702

## Part 6

## Intrusion Detection and Prevention Features

---

### Chapter 22

<b>IDP Policies</b>	<b>707</b>
IDP Policies Overview .....	708
IDP Policy Terms .....	708
Working with IDP Policies .....	709
Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases .....	709
IPS Rulebase .....	710
Exempt Rulebase .....	710
Related Topics .....	711
Understanding IDP Policy Rules .....	711
Related Topics .....	712
Understanding IDP Rule Match Conditions .....	712
Related Topics .....	713
Understanding IDP Rule Objects .....	713
Zone Objects .....	713
Address or Network Objects .....	713
Application or Service Objects .....	713
Attack Objects .....	714
Signature Attack Objects .....	714
Protocol Anomaly Attack Objects .....	714
Compound Attack Objects .....	714
Attack Object Groups .....	715
Related Topics .....	715
Understanding IDP Rule Actions .....	715
Related Topics .....	717
Understanding IDP Rule IP Actions .....	717
Related Topics .....	718
Understanding IDP Rule Notifications .....	719
Related Topics .....	719
Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase .....	720
J-Web Configuration .....	721
CLI Configuration .....	722
Related Topics .....	724

Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase .....	724
J-Web Configuration .....	725
CLI Configuration .....	726
Related Topics .....	726
IDP Policies—Quick Configuration .....	727
Configuring IDP Policies—Quick Configuration .....	727
Adding a New IDP Policy—Quick Configuration .....	728
Adding an IPS Rulebase—Quick Configuration .....	730
Adding an Exempt Rulebase—Quick Configuration .....	733
Inserting a Rule in the Rulebase .....	735
CLI Configuration .....	736
Related Topics .....	736
Deactivating and Reactivating Rules in a Rulebase .....	737
CLI Configuration .....	737
Related Topics .....	738
Understanding Application Sets .....	738
Related Topics .....	738
Configuring Applications or Services for IDP .....	738
CLI Configuration .....	739
Related Topics .....	740
Configuring Application Sets for IDP .....	740
CLI Configuration .....	741
Related Topics .....	741
Enabling IDP in a Security Policy .....	741
J-Web Configuration .....	742
CLI Configuration .....	744
Related Topics .....	745
Understanding IDP Terminal Rules .....	745
Related Topics .....	746
Setting Terminal Rules in Rulebases .....	746
J-Web Configuration .....	747
CLI Configuration .....	748
Related Topics .....	749
Understanding Custom Attack Objects .....	749
Attack Name .....	750
Severity .....	750
Service or Application Binding .....	750
Protocol or Port Bindings .....	754
Time Bindings .....	755
Scope .....	756
Count .....	756
Attack Properties—Signature Attacks .....	756
Attack Context .....	757
Attack Direction .....	758
Attack Pattern .....	758
Protocol-Specific Parameters .....	758
Sample Signature Attack Definition .....	761
Attack Properties—Protocol Anomaly Attacks .....	762
Attack Direction .....	762
Test Condition .....	762
Sample Protocol Anomaly Attack Definition .....	762

Attack Properties—Compound or Chain Attacks .....	763
Scope .....	763
Order .....	763
Reset .....	763
Expression (Boolean expression) .....	764
Member Index .....	764
Sample Compound Attack Definition .....	765
Related Topics .....	765
Configuring Signature-Based Attacks .....	765
CLI Configuration .....	767
Related Topics .....	768
Configuring Protocol Anomaly-Based Attacks .....	768
CLI Configuration .....	769
Related Topics .....	770
Configuring DSCP in an IDP Policy .....	770
CLI Configuration .....	771
Related Topics .....	772

**Chapter 23****IDP Signature Database****773**

Understanding the IDP Signature Database .....	773
Related Topics .....	774
Using Predefined Policy Templates .....	774
CLI Configuration .....	776
Related Topics .....	777
Understanding Predefined Attack Objects and Groups .....	777
Predefined Attack Objects .....	778
Predefined Attack Object Groups .....	778
Related Topics .....	779
Updating the Signature Database Overview .....	779
Related Topics .....	780
Updating the Signature Database Manually .....	780
CLI Configuration .....	781
Related Topics .....	782
Configuring a Security Package Update—Quick Configuration .....	782
Updating the Signature Database Automatically .....	784
CLI Configuration .....	785
Related Topics .....	785
Understanding the Signature Database Version .....	785
Related Topics .....	786
Verifying the Signature Database .....	786
Verifying the Policy Compilation and Load Status .....	786
Verifying the Signature Database Version .....	788

**Chapter 24****IDP Application Identification****789**

IDP Application Identification Support on Different Device Types .....	789
Understanding Application Identification .....	790
Related Topics .....	790

Understanding Service and Application Bindings .....	790
Related Topics .....	792
Understanding Application System Cache .....	792
Related Topics .....	793
Configuring IDP Policies for Application Identification .....	793
CLI Configuration .....	794
Related Topics .....	794
Disabling Application Identification .....	794
CLI Configuration .....	795
Related Topics .....	795
Setting Memory and Session Limits .....	796
CLI Configuration .....	797
Related Topics .....	797
Verifying Application Identification .....	797
Verifying the Application System Cache .....	797
Verifying Application Identification Counters .....	798

## **Chapter 25**      **IDP SSL Inspection**      **801**

IDP SSL Overview .....	801
Supported Ciphers .....	802
Key Exchange .....	803
Server Key Management and Policy Configuration .....	803
Displaying Keys and Servers .....	804
Adding Keys and Servers .....	804
Deleting Keys and Servers .....	804
Configuring SSL Inspection .....	805

## **Chapter 26**      **IDP Logging**      **807**

Understanding IDP Logging .....	807
Related Topics .....	808
Configuring Log Suppression Attributes .....	808
CLI Configuration .....	809
Related Topics .....	809

## **Part 7**      **Unified Threat Management Features**

### **Chapter 27**      **Unified Threat Management Overview**      **813**

Custom Objects .....	814
Platform Support and Licensing .....	814

<b>Chapter 28</b>	<b>Antispam Filtering</b>	<b>817</b>
	Using Server-Based Spam Filtering .....	817
	Configuring Server-Based Spam Filtering .....	818
	Configuration Overview .....	818
	J-Web Quick Configuration .....	819
	J-Web View and Edit Configuration .....	821
	CLI Configuration .....	823
	Using Local List Spam Filtering .....	824
	Configuring Local List Spam Filtering .....	825
	Configuration Overview .....	825
	J-Web Quick Configuration .....	826
	J-Web View and Edit Configuration .....	831
	CLI Configuration .....	835
	Understanding Spam Message Handling .....	836
	Blocking Detected Spam .....	836
	Tagging Detected Spam .....	837
	Verifying Antispam Configurations .....	837
	Using J-Web for Antispam Monitoring .....	837
	Using the CLI for Antispam Monitoring .....	838
<b>Chapter 29</b>	<b>Full File-based Antivirus Protection</b>	<b>839</b>
	Understanding the Internal Scan Engine and Scan Options .....	840
	Scan Type Support .....	840
	Scan Mode Support .....	841
	Enable and Disable Scanning on a Per-Protocol Basis .....	841
	File Extension Scanning .....	841
	Intelligent Prescreening .....	842
	Signature Database Support .....	842
	Content Size Limits .....	842
	Decompression Layer Limit .....	843
	Scanning Timeout .....	843
	Global, Profile-Based, and Policy-Based Scan Settings .....	844
	Scan Session Throttling .....	845
	Understanding Updating the Antivirus Scanner Pattern Database .....	845
	Updating Antivirus Patterns .....	845
	Example: Automatic Update .....	846
	Example: Manual Update .....	847
	Database Download Process .....	847
	Understanding the Scanning of Application Protocols .....	848
	HTTP Scanning .....	848
	HTTP Scanning: Process Overview .....	849
	HTTP Trickling .....	849
	MIME White List .....	850
	URL White List .....	850
	Script-only Scanning .....	851
	FTP Scanning .....	851
	FTP Scanning: Process Overview .....	851



SMTP Scanning .....	852
SMTP Scanning: Process Overview .....	852
Mail Message Replacement .....	852
Sender Notification .....	853
Subject Tagging .....	853
POP3 Scanning .....	853
POP3 Scanning: Process Overview .....	854
Mail Message Replacement .....	854
Sender Notification .....	854
Subject Tagging .....	855
IMAP Scanning .....	855
IMAP Scanning: Process Overview .....	855
Mail Message Replacement .....	856
Sender Notification .....	856
Subject Tagging .....	856
IMAP Antivirus Scanning Limitations .....	856
Configuring Full Antivirus Protection .....	857
Configuration Overview .....	857
J-Web Quick Configuration .....	858
J-Web View and Edit Configuration .....	874
CLI Configuration .....	880
Understanding Virus-Detected Notification Options .....	885
Protocol-Only Notifications .....	885
E-mail Notification .....	886
Custom Message Notification .....	886
Fallback Options .....	887
Understanding Scan Result Handling .....	888
Verifying Antivirus Configurations .....	888
General Scan Engine Status .....	888
Session Status .....	889
Verifying Antivirus Scan Results using J-Web .....	890
Verifying Antivirus Scan Results using the CLI .....	891

## Chapter 30

## Express Antivirus Protection **893**

Packet-Based Scanning Versus File-Based Scanning .....	894
Express Antivirus Limitations .....	894
Expanded MIME Decoding Support .....	894
Result Handling .....	895
Updating Antivirus Patterns .....	895
Example: Automatic Update .....	896
Example: Manual Update .....	896
Intelligent Prescreening Support .....	896
Configuring Express Antivirus .....	896
Configuration Overview .....	897
J-Web Quick Configuration .....	898
J-Web View and Edit Configuration .....	910
CLI Configuration .....	916

## **Chapter 31** **Content Filtering** **921**

Types of Content Filters .....	921
Content Filtering Protocol Support .....	922
HTTP Support .....	922
FTP Support .....	923
E-mail Support .....	923
Example: Content Filter CLI .....	923
Configuring Content Filtering .....	924
Configuration Overview .....	924
J-Web Quick Configuration .....	925
J-Web View and Edit Configuration .....	935
CLI Configuration .....	940
Verifying Content Filtering Configurations .....	942
Using J-Web to Monitor Content Filtering .....	942
Using the CLI to Monitor Content Filtering .....	942

## **Chapter 32** **Web Filtering** **945**

Understanding Integrated Web Filtering .....	945
Integrated Web Filtering: Process Overview .....	947
Integrated Web Filtering Cache .....	947
Web Filtering Profiles .....	947
Profile Matching Precedence .....	948
What Happens When Both Web Filtering and Antivirus Scanning are Employed? .....	948
Configuring Integrated Web Filtering .....	948
Configuration Overview .....	949
J-Web Quick Configuration .....	949
J-Web View and Edit Configuration .....	958
CLI Configuration .....	963
Understanding Redirect Web Filtering .....	965
Redirect Web Filtering: Process Overview .....	966
Configuring Redirect Web Filtering .....	966
Configuration Overview .....	966
J-Web Quick Configuration .....	967
J-Web View and Edit Configuration .....	975
CLI Configuration .....	979
Verifying Web Filtering Configurations .....	981
Using J-Web to Monitor Web Filtering .....	981
Using the CLI to Monitor Web Filtering .....	982

## **Part 8** **Index**

Index .....	985
-------------	-----

# About This Guide

This preface provides the following guidelines for using the *JUNOS Software Security Configuration Guide*:

- SRX Series Documentation and Release Notes on page xxxix
- Objectives on page xxxix
- Audience on page xl
- Supported Routing Platforms on page xl
- How to Use This Manual on page xl
- Document Conventions on page xlii
- Documentation Feedback on page xliv
- Requesting Technical Support on page xliv

## SRX Series Documentation and Release Notes

---

For a list of related SRX Series documentation, see  
<http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/hardware/srx-series-main.html>.

If the information in the latest *SRX Series Release Notes* differs from the information in the documentation, follow the *SRX Series Release Notes*.

To obtain the most current version of all Juniper Networks technical documentation, see the product documentation page on the Juniper Networks Web site at <http://www.juniper.net/>.

## Objectives

---

This guide describes how to use and configure key security features on J-series Services Routers and SRX-series services gateways running JUNOS software. It provides conceptual information, suggested workflows, and examples where applicable.

## Audience

This manual is designed for anyone who installs, sets up, configures, monitors, or administers a J-series Services Router or an SRX-series services gateway running JUNOS software. The manual is intended for the following audiences:

- Customers with technical knowledge of and experience with networks and network security, the Internet, and Internet routing protocols
- Network administrators who install, configure, and manage Internet routers

## Supported Routing Platforms

This manual describes features supported on J-series Services Routers and SRX-series services gateways running JUNOS software.

## How to Use This Manual

This manual and the other manuals in this set explain how to install, configure, and manage:

- JUNOS software for J-series Services Routers
- JUNOS software for SRX-series services gateways

Table 1 on page xl identifies the tasks required to configure and manage these devices and shows where to find task information and instructions.

**Table 1: Tasks and Related Documentation**

Task	Related Documentation
<b>Basic Device Installation and Setup</b>	
■ Reviewing safety warnings and compliance statements	J-series Services Routers:
■ Installing hardware and establishing basic connectivity	■ <i>J-series Services Routers Quick Start</i>
■ Initially setting up a device	■ <i>J-series Services Routers Hardware Guide</i>
	■ <i>JUNOS Software Release Notes</i>
	SRX-series services gateways: the appropriate <i>Services Gateway Getting Started Guide</i>
<b>Migration from ScreenOS or JUNOS Software (Legacy Services) to JUNOS Software (if necessary)</b>	
■ Migrating from JUNOS software (legacy services) Release 8.3 or later to JUNOS software	<i>JUNOS Software Migration Guide</i> (J-series Services Routers only)
■ Migrating from ScreenOS Release 5.4 or later to JUNOS software.	
<b>Context—Changing to Secure Context or Router Context</b>	

**Table 1: Tasks and Related Documentation** *(continued)*

Task	Related Documentation
Changing the device from one context to another and understanding the factory default settings	<i>JUNOS Software Administration Guide</i>
<b>Interface Configuration</b>	
Configuring device interfaces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Software CLI Reference</i></li> </ul>
<b>Deployment Planning and Configuration</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Understanding and gathering information required to design network firewalls and IPsec VPNs</li> <li>■ Implementing a JUNOS software firewall from a sample scenario</li> <li>■ Implementing a policy-based IPsec VPN from a sample scenario</li> </ul>	<i>JUNOS Software Design and Implementation Guide</i> (J-series Services Routers only)
<b>Security Configuration</b>	
Configuring and managing the following security services:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Software Security Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Software CLI Reference</i></li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stateful firewall policies</li> <li>■ Zones and their interfaces and address books</li> <li>■ IPsec VPNs</li> <li>■ Firewall screens</li> <li>■ Interface modes: Network Address Translation (NAT) mode and Router mode</li> <li>■ Public Key Cryptography (PKI)</li> <li>■ Application Layer Gateways (ALGs)</li> <li>■ Chassis clusters</li> <li>■ Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP)</li> </ul>	
<b>Routing Protocols and Services Configuration</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configuring routing protocols, including static routes and the dynamic routing protocols RIP, OSPF, BGP, and IS-IS</li> <li>■ Configuring class-of-service (CoS) features, including traffic shaping and policing</li> <li>■ Configuring packet-based stateless firewall filters (access control lists) to control access and limit traffic rates</li> <li>■ Configuring MPLS to control network traffic patterns</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Software CLI Reference</i></li> </ul>
<b>WAN Acceleration Module Installation (Optional)</b>	
Installing and initially configuring a WXC Integrated Services Module (ISM 200)	<i>WXC Integrated Services Module Installation and Configuration Guide</i> (J-series Services Routers only)
<b>User and System Administration</b>	

**Table 1: Tasks and Related Documentation** (*continued*)

Task	Related Documentation	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Administering user authentication and access</li><li>■ Monitoring the device, routing protocols, and routing operations</li><li>■ Configuring and monitoring system alarms and events, real-time performance (RPM) probes, and performance</li><li>■ Monitoring the firewall and other security-related services</li><li>■ Managing system log files</li><li>■ Upgrading software</li><li>■ Diagnosing common problems</li></ul>	<i>JUNOS Software Administration Guide</i>	
<b>User Interfaces</b>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Understanding and using the J-Web interface</li><li>■ Understanding and using the CLI configuration editor</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <i>J-series Services Routers Quick Start</i> (J-series Services Routers only)</li><li>■ <i>JUNOS Software Administration Guide</i></li></ul>	

## Document Conventions

Table 2 on page xlii defines the notice icons used in this guide.

**Table 2: Notice Icons**





Icon	Meaning	Description
	Informational note	Indicates important features or instructions.
	Caution	Indicates a situation that might result in loss of data or hardware damage.
	Warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury or death.
	Laser warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury from a laser.

Table 3 on page xlii defines the text and syntax conventions used in this guide.

**Table 3: Text and Syntax Conventions**

Convention	Description	Examples
Bold text like this	Represents text that you type.	To enter configuration mode, type the <code>configure</code> command:  user@host> <b>configure</b>

**Table 3: Text and Syntax Conventions** (*continued*)

Convention	Description	Examples
Fixed-width text like this	Represents output that appears on the terminal screen.	<code>user@host&gt; show chassis alarms</code> <code>No alarms currently active</code>
<i>Italic text like this</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Introduces important new terms.</li> <li>Identifies book names.</li> <li>Identifies RFC and Internet draft titles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A policy <i>term</i> is a named structure that defines match conditions and actions.</li> <li><i>JUNOS System Basics Configuration Guide</i></li> <li>RFC 1997, <i>BGP Communities Attribute</i></li> </ul>
<i>Italic text like this</i>	Represents variables (options for which you substitute a value) in commands or configuration statements.	Configure the machine's domain name: <code>[edit]</code> <code>root@# set system domain-name</code> <code>domain-name</code>
Plain text like this	Represents names of configuration statements, commands, files, and directories; IP addresses; configuration hierarchy levels; or labels on routing platform components.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To configure a stub area, include the stub statement at the <code>[edit protocols ospf area area-id]</code> hierarchy level.</li> <li>The console port is labeled CONSOLE.</li> </ul>
< > (angle brackets)	Enclose optional keywords or variables.	<code>stub &lt;default-metric metric&gt;;</code>
(pipe symbol)	Indicates a choice between the mutually exclusive keywords or variables on either side of the symbol. The set of choices is often enclosed in parentheses for clarity.	<code>broadcast   multicast</code> <code>(string1   string2   string3)</code>
# (pound sign)	Indicates a comment specified on the same line as the configuration statement to which it applies.	<code>rsvp { # Required for dynamic MPLS only</code>
[ ] (square brackets)	Enclose a variable for which you can substitute one or more values.	<code>community name members [</code> <code>community-ids ]</code>
Indentation and braces ( { } )	Identify a level in the configuration hierarchy.	<code>[edit]</code> <code>routing-options {</code> <code>  static {</code> <code>    route default {</code> <code>      nexthop address;</code> <code>      retain;</code> <code>    }</code> <code>  }</code> <code>}</code>
; (semicolon)	Identifies a leaf statement at a configuration hierarchy level.	
<b>J-Web GUI Conventions</b>		
<b>Bold text like this</b>	Represents J-Web graphical user interface (GUI) items you click or select.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the Logical Interfaces box, select <b>All Interfaces</b>.</li> <li>To cancel the configuration, click <b>Cancel</b>.</li> </ul>

**Table 3: Text and Syntax Conventions** (*continued*)

Convention	Description	Examples
> (bold right angle bracket)	Separates levels in a hierarchy of J-Web selections.	In the configuration editor hierarchy, select <b>Protocols &gt; Ospf</b> .

## Documentation Feedback

We encourage you to provide feedback, comments, and suggestions so that we can improve the documentation. You can send your comments to [techpubs-comments@juniper.net](mailto:techpubs-comments@juniper.net), or fill out the documentation feedback form at <https://www.juniper.net/cgi-bin/docbugreport/>. If you are using e-mail, be sure to include the following information with your comments:

- Document name
- Document part number
- Page number
- Software release version (not required for *Network Operations Guides [NOGs]*)

## Requesting Technical Support

Technical product support is available through the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC). If you are a customer with an active J-Care or JNASC support contract, or are covered under warranty, and need postsales technical support, you can access our tools and resources online or open a case with JTAC.

- JTAC policies—For a complete understanding of our JTAC procedures and policies, review the JTAC User Guide located at <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/downloads/710059.pdf>.
- Product warranties—For product warranty information, visit <http://www.juniper.net/support/warranty/>.
- JTAC Hours of Operation —The JTAC centers have resources available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.

### Self-Help Online Tools and Resources

For quick and easy problem resolution, Juniper Networks has designed an online self-service portal called the Customer Support Center (CSC) that provides you with the following features:

- Find CSC offerings: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/>
- Search for known bugs: <http://www2.juniper.net/kb/>
- Find product documentation: <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>
- Find solutions and answer questions using our Knowledge Base: <http://kb.juniper.net/>



- Download the latest versions of software and review release notes:  
<http://www.juniper.net/customers/csc/software/>
- Search technical bulletins for relevant hardware and software notifications:  
<https://www.juniper.net/alerts/>
- Join and participate in the Juniper Networks Community Forum:  
<http://www.juniper.net/company/communities/>
- Open a case online in the CSC Case Management tool: <http://www.juniper.net/cm/>

To verify service entitlement by product serial number, use our Serial Number Entitlement (SNE) Tool located at <https://tools.juniper.net/SerialNumberEntitlementSearch/>.

### **Opening a Case with JTAC**

You can open a case with JTAC on the Web or by telephone.

- Use the Case Management tool in the CSC at <http://www.juniper.net/cm/> .
- Call 1-888-314-JTAC (1-888-314-5822 toll-free in the USA, Canada, and Mexico).

For international or direct-dial options in countries without toll-free numbers, visit us at <http://www.juniper.net/support/requesting-support.html>.



## **Part 1**

# **Support Overview for Security Features**

- Security Features on SRX 210/240 Services Gateways on page 3
- Security Features on SRX 650 Services Gateways on page 9
- Security Features on SRX 3400/3600/5600/5800 Services Gateways on page 13
- Security Features on J-series Services Routers on page 21



## Chapter 1

# Security Features on SRX 210/240 Services Gateways

The following tables list security features that are supported on SRX 210 and SRX 240 services gateways.

**Table 4: Zones**

Feature	More Information
Security zone	“Security Zone” on page 70
Functional zone	“Functional Zone” on page 70
For information about the interfaces that are supported on your device, see the <i>JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide</i> .	

**Table 5: Flow**

Feature	More Information
Flow-based processing	“SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 Services Gateways Overview” on page 57

**Table 6: Security Policy**

Feature	More Information
Address books	“Configuring Address Books” on page 460
Policy application sets	“Policy Application Sets Overview” on page 474
Schedulers	“Configuring Schedulers” on page 465
Policy applications	“Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 479
Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) predefined policy application	“Understanding the ICMP Predefined Policy Application” on page 475

**Table 6: Security Policy** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
Internet-related predefined policy applications	“Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 479
Microsoft predefined policy applications	“Understanding Microsoft Predefined Policy Applications” on page 481
Dynamic routing protocols predefined policy applications	“Understanding Dynamic Routing Protocols Predefined Policy Applications” on page 484
Streaming video predefined policy applications	“Understanding Streaming Video Predefined Policy Applications” on page 485
Sun remote procedure protocol (RPC) predefined policy applications	“Understanding Sun RPC Predefined Policy Applications” on page 486
Security and tunnel predefined policy applications	“Understanding Security and Tunnel Predefined Policy Applications” on page 487
IP-related predefined policy applications	“Understanding IP-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 488
Instant messaging predefined policy applications	“Understanding Instant Messaging Predefined Policy Applications” on page 488
Management predefined policy applications	“Understanding Management Predefined Policy Applications” on page 489
Mail predefined policy applications	“Understanding Mail Predefined Policy Applications” on page 491
UNIX predefined policy applications	“Understanding UNIX Predefined Policy Applications” on page 491
Miscellaneous predefined policy applications	“Understanding Miscellaneous Predefined Policy Applications” on page 492
Custom policy applications	“Understanding Custom Policy Applications” on page 493
Policy application timeouts	“Understanding Policy Application Timeouts” on page 503

**Table 7: Firewall Authentication**

Feature	More Information
Web authentication	“Web Authentication” on page 512
Pass-through authentication	“Pass-Through Authentication” on page 511
Local authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
RADIUS authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
LDAP authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509

**Table 7: Firewall Authentication** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
SecurID authentication server	“Understanding SecurID User Authentication” on page 530

**Table 8: Attack Detection and Prevention**

Feature	More Information
Bad IP option	“Understanding Bad IP Option Protection” on page 125
Block fragment traffic	“Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets” on page 121
FIN flag without ACK flag set protection	“Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set” on page 105
ICMP flood protection	“Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks” on page 160
ICMP fragment protection	“Understanding ICMP Fragment Protection” on page 120
Large size ICMP packet protection	“Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection” on page 123
Loose source route option	“Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117
IP record route option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP security option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP address spoof	“Blocking IP Spoofing” on page 115
IP stream option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP strict source route option	“Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117
IP address sweep	“Understanding IP Address Sweeps” on page 92
IP timestamp option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
Land attack protection	“Understanding Land Attacks” on page 165
Ping of death attack protection	“Understanding Ping of Death Attacks” on page 168
Port scan	“Understanding Port Scanning” on page 94
Source IP based session limit	“Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks” on page 136
SYN-ACK-ACK proxy protection	“Understanding SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attacks” on page 142
SYN and FIN flags set protection	“Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set” on page 104

**Table 8: Attack Detection and Prevention** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
SYN flood protection	“Understanding SYN Flood Attacks” on page 144
SYN fragment protection	“Understanding SYN Fragment Protection” on page 132
Teardrop attack protection	“Understanding Teardrop Attacks” on page 170
TCP packet without flag set protection	“Blocking Packets with No Flags Set” on page 106
Unknown protocol protection	“Understanding Unknown Protocol Protection” on page 128
UDP flood protection	“Understanding UDP Flood Attacks” on page 163
WinNuke attack protection	“Understanding WinNuke Attacks” on page 173

**Table 9: Network Address Translation**

Feature	More Information
Destination IP address translation	“Destination IP Address Translation Overview” on page 190
Static Network Address Translation (NAT)	“Understanding Static NAT” on page 191
Rule-based NAT	“Understanding Rule-Based Destination NAT” on page 192
Source IP address translation	“Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194
NAT interface source pools	“Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools” on page 195
Configuring proxy Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)	“Configuring Proxy ARP” on page 202

The following table applies only to the SRX 210 services gateway.

**Table 10: Chassis Cluster**

Feature	More Information
Chassis cluster formation	“Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation” on page 217
Active/active chassis cluster (that is, cross-box data forwarding over the fabric interface)	“Understanding Chassis Cluster” on page 216
Redundancy group 0 (backup for Routing Engine)	“Redundancy Group 0: Routing Engines” on page 219
Redundancy groups 1 through 128	“Redundancy Groups 1 Through 128” on page 219
Redundant Ethernet interfaces	“Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces” on page 226
Control plane failover	“Understanding the Control Plane” on page 227



**Table 10: Chassis Cluster** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
Data plane failover	“Understanding the Data Plane” on page 230
All JUNOS flow-based routing functionality	<i>JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide</i>

The following table applies only to the SRX 210 services gateway.

**Table 11: ALGs**

Feature	More Information
FTP Application Layer Gateway (ALG)	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) ALG	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287

The following table applies only to the SRX 210 services gateway.

**Table 12: IPsec**

Feature	More Information
Policy-based and route-based VPNs	“Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554
Tunnel mode	“Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode” on page 562
Authentication Header (AH) protocol	“IPsec Security Protocols” on page 557
Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol	“IPsec Security Protocols” on page 557
IKE phase 1	“IPsec Tunnel Negotiation” on page 558
IKE phase 2	“IPsec Tunnel Negotiation” on page 558
Manual key management	“IPsec Key Management” on page 555
Autokey management	“IPsec Key Management” on page 555
Antireplay (packet replay attack prevention)	“Replay Protection” on page 561
Dead peer detection (DPD)	“Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 583
Dynamic IPsec VPNs	“Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639

The following table applies only to the SRX 210 services gateway.

**Table 13: PKI**

Feature	More Information
Internet Key Exchange (IKE) support	"Internet Key Exchange" on page 610
Entrust, Microsoft, and Verisign certificate authorities (CAs)	"Understanding Certificates" on page 608
Automatic generation of self-signed certificates	"Understanding Self-Signed Certificates" on page 614
Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER), Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM), Public-Key Cryptography Standard 7 (PKCS7), and X509 certificate encoding	"Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device" on page 629
Manual installation of DER-encoded and PEM-encoded CRLs	"Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device" on page 629
Online certificate revocation list (CRL) retrieval through LDAP and HTTP	"PKI Management and Implementation" on page 613
CRL update at user-specified interval	"Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists" on page 611

## Chapter 2

# Security Features on SRX 650 Services Gateways

The following tables list security features that are supported on SRX 650 services gateways.

**Table 14: Zones**

Feature	More Information
Security zone	“Security Zone” on page 70
Functional zone	“Functional Zone” on page 70
For information about the interfaces that are supported on your device, see the <i>JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide</i> .	

**Table 15: Flow**

Feature	More Information
Flow-based processing	“SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 Services Gateways Overview” on page 57

**Table 16: Security Policy**

Feature	More Information
Address books	“Configuring Address Books” on page 460
Policy application sets	“Policy Application Sets Overview” on page 474
Schedulers	“Configuring Schedulers” on page 465
Policy applications	“Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 479
Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) predefined policy application	“Understanding the ICMP Predefined Policy Application” on page 475

**Table 16: Security Policy** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
Internet-related predefined policy applications	“Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 479
Microsoft predefined policy applications	“Understanding Microsoft Predefined Policy Applications” on page 481
Dynamic routing protocols predefined policy applications	“Understanding Dynamic Routing Protocols Predefined Policy Applications” on page 484
Streaming video predefined policy applications	“Understanding Streaming Video Predefined Policy Applications” on page 485
Sun remote procedure protocol (RPC) predefined policy applications	“Understanding Sun RPC Predefined Policy Applications” on page 486
Security and tunnel predefined policy applications	“Understanding Security and Tunnel Predefined Policy Applications” on page 487
IP-related predefined policy applications	“Understanding IP-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 488
Instant messaging predefined policy applications	“Understanding Instant Messaging Predefined Policy Applications” on page 488
Management predefined policy applications	“Understanding Management Predefined Policy Applications” on page 489
Mail predefined policy applications	“Understanding Mail Predefined Policy Applications” on page 491
UNIX predefined policy applications	“Understanding UNIX Predefined Policy Applications” on page 491
Miscellaneous predefined policy applications	“Understanding Miscellaneous Predefined Policy Applications” on page 492
Custom policy Applications	“Understanding Custom Policy Applications” on page 493
Policy application timeouts	“Understanding Policy Application Timeouts” on page 503

**Table 17: Firewall Authentication**

Feature	More Information
Web authentication	“Web Authentication” on page 512
Pass-through authentication	“Pass-Through Authentication” on page 511
Local authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
RADIUS authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
LDAP authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509

**Table 17: Firewall Authentication** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
SecurID authentication server	“Understanding SecurID User Authentication” on page 530

**Table 18: Infranet Authentication**

Feature	More Information
JUNOS Enforcers in Unified Access Control (UAC) deployments	“Infranet Authentication” on page 541

**Table 19: Attack Detection and Prevention**

Feature	More Information
Bad IP option	“Understanding Bad IP Option Protection” on page 125
Block fragment traffic	“Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets” on page 121
FIN flag without ACK flag set protection	“Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set” on page 105
ICMP flood protection	“Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks” on page 160
ICMP fragment protection	“Understanding ICMP Fragment Protection” on page 120
Large size ICMP packet protection	“Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection” on page 123
Loose source route option	“Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117
IP record route option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP security option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP address spoof	“Blocking IP Spoofing” on page 115
IP stream option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP strict source route option	“Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117
IP address sweep	“Understanding IP Address Sweeps” on page 92
IP timestamp option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
Land attack protection	“Understanding Land Attacks” on page 165
Ping of death attack protection	“Understanding Ping of Death Attacks” on page 168

**Table 19: Attack Detection and Prevention** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
Port scan	“Understanding Port Scanning” on page 94
Source IP based session limit	“Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks” on page 136
SYN-ACK-ACK proxy protection	“Understanding SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attacks” on page 142
SYN and FIN flags set protection	“Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set” on page 104
SYN flood protection	“Understanding SYN Flood Attacks” on page 144
SYN fragment protection	“Understanding SYN Fragment Protection” on page 132
Teardrop attack protection	“Understanding Teardrop Attacks” on page 170
TCP packet without flag set protection	“Blocking Packets with No Flags Set” on page 106
Unknown protocol protection	“Understanding Unknown Protocol Protection” on page 128
UDP flood protection	“Understanding UDP Flood Attacks” on page 163
WinNuke attack protection	“Understanding WinNuke Attacks” on page 173

**Table 20: Network Address Translation**

Feature	More Information
Destination IP address translation	“Destination IP Address Translation Overview” on page 190
Static Network Address Translation (NAT)	“Understanding Static NAT” on page 191
Rule-based NAT	“Understanding Rule-Based Destination NAT” on page 192
Source IP address translation	“Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194
NAT interface source pools	“Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools” on page 195
Configuring proxy Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)	“Configuring Proxy ARP” on page 202

## Chapter 3

# Security Features on SRX 3400/3600/5600/5800 Services Gateways

The following tables list security features that are supported on SRX 3400, SRX 3600, SRX 5600, and SRX 5800 services gateways.

**Table 21: Zones**

Feature	More Information
Security zone	“Security Zone” on page 70
Functional zone	“Functional Zone” on page 70
For information about the interfaces that are supported on your device, see the <i>JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide</i> .	

**Table 22: Flow**

Feature	More Information
Combo-mode support (SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 only)	“SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 Services Gateways Overview” on page 57
Flow-based processing (SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 only)	“SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 Services Gateways Overview” on page 57

**Table 23: Security Policy**

Feature	More Information
Address books	“Configuring Address Books” on page 460
Policy application sets	“Policy Application Sets Overview” on page 474
Schedulers	“Configuring Schedulers” on page 465

**Table 23: Security Policy** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
Policy applications	“Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 479
Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) predefined policy application	“Understanding the ICMP Predefined Policy Application” on page 475
Internet-related predefined policy applications	“Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 479
Microsoft predefined policy applications	“Understanding Microsoft Predefined Policy Applications” on page 481
Dynamic routing protocols predefined policy applications	“Understanding Dynamic Routing Protocols Predefined Policy Applications” on page 484
Streaming video predefined policy applications	“Understanding Streaming Video Predefined Policy Applications” on page 485
Sun remote procedure protocol (RPC) predefined policy applications	“Understanding Sun RPC Predefined Policy Applications” on page 486
Security and tunnel predefined policy applications	“Understanding Security and Tunnel Predefined Policy Applications” on page 487
IP-related predefined policy applications	“Understanding IP-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 488
Instant messaging predefined policy applications	“Understanding Instant Messaging Predefined Policy Applications” on page 488
Management predefined policy applications	“Understanding Management Predefined Policy Applications” on page 489
Mail predefined policy applications	“Understanding Mail Predefined Policy Applications” on page 491
UNIX predefined policy applications	“Understanding UNIX Predefined Policy Applications” on page 491
Miscellaneous predefined policy applications	“Understanding Miscellaneous Predefined Policy Applications” on page 492
Custom policy Applications	“Understanding Custom Policy Applications” on page 493
Policy application timeouts	“Understanding Policy Application Timeouts” on page 503
Policy verification (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	“Understanding Policy Ordering” on page 436

**Table 24: Firewall Authentication**

Feature	More Information
Web authentication	“Web Authentication” on page 512



**Table 24: Firewall Authentication** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
Pass-through authentication	“Pass-Through Authentication” on page 511
Local authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
RADIUS authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
LDAP authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
SecurID authentication server	“Understanding SecurID User Authentication” on page 530

**Table 25: Infranet Authentication**

Feature	More Information
JUNOS Enforcers in Unified Access Control (UAC) deployments	“Infranet Authentication” on page 541

**Table 26: Attack Detection and Prevention**

Feature	More Information
Bad IP option	“Understanding Bad IP Option Protection” on page 125
Block fragment traffic	“Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets” on page 121
FIN flag without ACK flag set protection	“Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set” on page 105
ICMP flood protection	“Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks” on page 160
ICMP fragment protection	“Understanding ICMP Fragment Protection” on page 120
Large size ICMP packet protection	“Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection” on page 123
Loose source route option	“Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117
IP record route option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP security option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP address spoof	“Blocking IP Spoofing” on page 115
IP stream option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP strict source route option	“Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117
IP address sweep	“Understanding IP Address Sweeps” on page 92

**Table 26: Attack Detection and Prevention** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
IP timestamp option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
Land attack protection	“Understanding Land Attacks” on page 165
Ping of death attack protection	“Understanding Ping of Death Attacks” on page 168
Port scan	“Understanding Port Scanning” on page 94
Source IP based session limit	“Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks” on page 136
SYN-ACK-ACK proxy protection	“Understanding SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attacks” on page 142
SYN and FIN flags set protection	“Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set” on page 104
SYN flood protection	“Understanding SYN Flood Attacks” on page 144
SYN fragment protection	“Understanding SYN Fragment Protection” on page 132
Teardrop attack protection	“Understanding Teardrop Attacks” on page 170
TCP packet without flag set protection	“Blocking Packets with No Flags Set” on page 106
Unknown protocol protection	“Understanding Unknown Protocol Protection” on page 128
UDP flood protection	“Understanding UDP Flood Attacks” on page 163
WinNuke attack protection	“Understanding WinNuke Attacks” on page 173

**Table 27: Network Address Translation**

Feature	More Information
Destination IP address translation	“Destination IP Address Translation Overview” on page 190
Static Network Address Translation (NAT)	“Understanding Static NAT” on page 191
Rule-based NAT	“Understanding Rule-Based Destination NAT” on page 192
Source IP address translation	“Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194
NAT interface source pools	“Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools” on page 195
Configuring proxy Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)	“Configuring Proxy ARP” on page 202

**Table 28: Chassis Cluster**

Feature	More Information
Chassis cluster formation	“Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation” on page 217
Active/active chassis cluster (that is, cross-box data forwarding over the fabric interface)	“Understanding Chassis Cluster” on page 216
Redundancy group 0 (backup for Routing Engine)	“Redundancy Group 0: Routing Engines” on page 219
Redundancy groups 1 through 128	“Redundancy Groups 1 Through 128” on page 219
Redundant Ethernet interfaces	“Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces” on page 226
Control plane failover	“Understanding the Control Plane” on page 227
Data plane failover	“Understanding the Data Plane” on page 230
All JUNOS flow-based routing functionality (except for IPsec VPN)	<i>JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide</i>

**Table 29: IPsec**

Feature	More Information
Policy-based and route-based VPNs	“Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554
Tunnel mode	“Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode” on page 562
Authentication Header (AH) protocol	“IPsec Security Protocols” on page 557
Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol	“IPsec Security Protocols” on page 557
IKE phase 1	“IPsec Tunnel Negotiation” on page 558
IKE phase 2	“IPsec Tunnel Negotiation” on page 558
Manual key management	“IPsec Key Management” on page 555
Autokey management	“IPsec Key Management” on page 555
Antireplay (packet replay attack prevention)	“Replay Protection” on page 561
Dead peer detection (DPD)	“Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 583
XAuth extended authentication for remote access connections (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	“Configuring an Access Profile for XAuth” on page 691
VPN monitoring (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	“Configuring VPN Global Settings (Standard VPNs)” on page 570

**Table 30: PKI**

Feature	More Information
Internet Key Exchange (IKE) support	“Internet Key Exchange” on page 610
Entrust, Microsoft, and Verisign certificate authorities (CAs)	“Understanding Certificates” on page 608
Automated certificate enrollment using Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP)	“Using Digital Certificates” on page 616
Automatic generation of self-signed certificates	“Understanding Self-Signed Certificates” on page 614
Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER), Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM), Public-Key Cryptography Standard 7 (PKCS7), and X509 certificate encoding	“Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device” on page 629
Manual installation of DER-encoded and PEM-encoded CRLs	“Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device” on page 629
Online certificate revocation list (CRL) retrieval through LDAP and HTTP	“PKI Management and Implementation” on page 613
CRL update at user-specified interval	“Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists” on page 611

**Table 31: ALGs**

Feature	More Information
FTP Application Layer Gateway (ALG)	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) ALG	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) ALG (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
REAL ALG (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	Table 72 on page 288
Remote procedure call (RPC) ALG (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	“Understanding the RPC ALG” on page 422
Remote shell (RSH) ALG (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
Real-Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP) ALG (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
Structured Query Language (SQL) ALG (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
TALK ALG (SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 only)	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287

**Table 32: IDP Policy**

Feature	More Information
Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) Policy	“IDP Policies Overview” on page 708
Intrusion prevention system (IPS) rulebase	“Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720
Exempt rulebase	“Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase” on page 724
Custom attacks	“Understanding Custom Attack Objects” on page 749
Differentiated Services code point (DSCP) marking	“Configuring DSCP in an IDP Policy” on page 770

**Table 33: IDP Signature Database**

Feature	More Information
IDP signature database	“Understanding the IDP Signature Database” on page 773
Predefined policy templates	“Using Predefined Policy Templates” on page 774
Signature database—manual download	“Updating the Signature Database Manually” on page 780
Signature database—automatic download	“Updating the Signature Database Automatically” on page 784
Signature database version	“Understanding the Signature Database Version” on page 785

**Table 34: IDP Application Identification**

Feature	More Information
Application identification	“Understanding Application Identification” on page 790
Service and application bindings	“Understanding Service and Application Bindings” on page 790
Application system cache	“Understanding Application System Cache” on page 792

**Table 35: IDP Monitoring and Logging**

Feature	More Information
IDP logging	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Understanding IDP Logging on page 807</li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Software Administration Guide</i></li> </ul>
IDP monitoring and debugging (SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 only)	<i>JUNOS Software CLI Reference</i>

**Table 36: IDP SSL Inspectioon**

Feature	More Information
IDP SSL Inspection	“IDP SSL Inspection” on page 801

## Chapter 4

# Security Features on J-series Services Routers

The following tables list security features that are supported on J-series Services Routers.

**Table 37: Zones**

Feature	More Information
Security zone	“Security Zone” on page 70
Functional zone	“Functional Zone” on page 70
For information about the interfaces that are supported on your device, see the <i>JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide</i> .	

**Table 38: Security Policy**

Feature	More Information
Address books	“Configuring Address Books” on page 460
Policy application sets	“Policy Application Sets Overview” on page 474
Schedulers	“Configuring Schedulers” on page 465
Policy applications	“Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 479
Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) predefined policy application	“Understanding the ICMP Predefined Policy Application” on page 475
Internet-related predefined policy applications	“Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 479
Microsoft predefined policy applications	“Understanding Microsoft Predefined Policy Applications” on page 481
Dynamic routing protocols predefined policy applications	“Understanding Dynamic Routing Protocols Predefined Policy Applications” on page 484

**Table 38: Security Policy** *(continued)*

Feature	More Information
Streaming video predefined policy applications	“Understanding Streaming Video Predefined Policy Applications” on page 485
Sun remote procedure protocol (RPC) predefined policy applications	“Understanding Sun RPC Predefined Policy Applications” on page 486
Security and tunnel predefined policy applications	“Understanding Security and Tunnel Predefined Policy Applications” on page 487
IP-related predefined policy applications	“Understanding IP-Related Predefined Policy Applications” on page 488
Instant messaging predefined policy applications	“Understanding Instant Messaging Predefined Policy Applications” on page 488
Management predefined policy applications	“Understanding Management Predefined Policy Applications” on page 489
Mail predefined policy applications	“Understanding Mail Predefined Policy Applications” on page 491
UNIX predefined policy applications	“Understanding UNIX Predefined Policy Applications” on page 491
Miscellaneous predefined policy applications	“Understanding Miscellaneous Predefined Policy Applications” on page 492
Custom policy Applications	“Understanding Custom Policy Applications” on page 493
Policy application timeouts	“Understanding Policy Application Timeouts” on page 503
Policy verification	“Understanding Policy Ordering” on page 436

**Table 39: Firewall Authentication**

Feature	More Information
Web authentication	“Web Authentication” on page 512
Pass-through authentication	“Pass-Through Authentication” on page 511
Local authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
RADIUS authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
LDAP authentication server	“Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
SecurID authentication server	“Understanding SecurID User Authentication” on page 530



**Table 40: Infranet Authentication**

Feature	More Information
JUNOS Enforcers in Unified Access Control (UAC) deployments	“Infranet Authentication” on page 541

**Table 41: Attack Detection and Prevention**

Feature	More Information
Bad IP option	“Understanding Bad IP Option Protection” on page 125
Block fragment traffic	“Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets” on page 121
FIN flag without ACK flag set protection	“Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set” on page 105
ICMP flood protection	“Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks” on page 160
ICMP fragment protection	“Understanding ICMP Fragment Protection” on page 120
Large size ICMP packet protection	“Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection” on page 123
Loose source route option	“Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117
IP record route option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP security option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP address spoof	“Blocking IP Spoofing” on page 115
IP stream option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
IP strict source route option	“Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117
IP address sweep	“Understanding IP Address Sweeps” on page 92
IP timestamp option	“Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance” on page 99
Land attack protection	“Understanding Land Attacks” on page 165
Ping of death attack protection	“Understanding Ping of Death Attacks” on page 168
Port scan	“Understanding Port Scanning” on page 94
Source IP based session limit	“Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks” on page 136
SYN-ACK-ACK proxy protection	“Understanding SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attacks” on page 142
SYN and FIN flags set protection	“Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set” on page 104

**Table 41: Attack Detection and Prevention** (continued)

Feature	More Information
SYN flood protection	“Understanding SYN Flood Attacks” on page 144
SYN fragment protection	“Understanding SYN Fragment Protection” on page 132
Teardrop attack protection	“Understanding Teardrop Attacks” on page 170
TCP packet without flag set protection	“Blocking Packets with No Flags Set” on page 106
Unknown protocol protection	“Understanding Unknown Protocol Protection” on page 128
UDP flood protection	“Understanding UDP Flood Attacks” on page 163
WinNuke attack protection	“Understanding WinNuke Attacks” on page 173

**Table 42: Network Address Translation**

Feature	More Information
Destination IP address translation	“Destination IP Address Translation Overview” on page 190
Static Network Address Translation (NAT)	“Understanding Static NAT” on page 191
Rule-based NAT	“Understanding Rule-Based Destination NAT” on page 192
Source IP address translation	“Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194
NAT interface source pools	“Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools” on page 195
Configuring proxy Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)	“Configuring Proxy ARP” on page 202

**Table 43: Chassis Cluster**

Feature	More Information
Chassis cluster formation	“Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation” on page 217
Active/active chassis cluster (that is, cross-box data forwarding over the fabric interface)	“Understanding Chassis Cluster” on page 216
Redundancy group 0 (backup for Routing Engine)	“Redundancy Group 0: Routing Engines” on page 219
Redundancy groups 1 through 128	“Redundancy Groups 1 Through 128” on page 219
Redundant Ethernet interfaces	“Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces” on page 226
Control plane failover	“Understanding the Control Plane” on page 227
Data plane failover	“Understanding the Data Plane” on page 230
All JUNOS flow-based routing functionality	<i>JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide</i>

**Table 44: IPsec**

Feature	More Information
Policy-based and route-based VPNs	“Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554
Tunnel mode	“Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode” on page 562
Authentication Header (AH) protocol	“IPsec Security Protocols” on page 557
Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol	“IPsec Security Protocols” on page 557
IKE phase 1	“IPsec Tunnel Negotiation” on page 558
IKE phase 2	“IPsec Tunnel Negotiation” on page 558
Manual key management	“IPsec Key Management” on page 555
Autokey management	“IPsec Key Management” on page 555
Antireplay (packet replay attack prevention)	“Replay Protection” on page 561
Dead peer detection (DPD)	“Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 583

**Table 45: PKI**

Feature	More Information
Internet Key Exchange (IKE) support	“Internet Key Exchange” on page 610
Entrust, Microsoft, and Verisign certificate authorities (CAs)	“Understanding Certificates” on page 608
Automated certificate enrollment using Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP)	“Using Digital Certificates” on page 616
Automatic generation of self-signed certificates	“Understanding Self-Signed Certificates” on page 614
Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER), Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM), Public-Key Cryptography Standard 7 (PKCS7), and X509 certificate encoding	“Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device” on page 629
Manual installation of DER-encoded and PEM-encoded CRLs	“Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device” on page 629
Online certificate revocation list (CRL) retrieval through LDAP and HTTP	“PKI Management and Implementation” on page 613
CRL update at user-specified interval	“Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists” on page 611

**Table 46: ALGs**

Feature	More Information
FTP Application Layer Gateway (ALG)	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) ALG	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
H.323 ALG	“Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290
Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) ALG	“Understanding the MGCP ALG” on page 392
Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) ALG	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
REAL ALG	Table 72 on page 288
Remote procedure call (RPC) ALG	“Understanding the RPC ALG” on page 422
Remote shell (RSH) ALG	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
Real-Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP) ALG	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
Skinny Call Control Protocol (SCCP) ALG	“Understanding the SCCP ALG” on page 375
Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) ALG	“Understanding the SIP ALG” on page 313
Structured Query Language (SQL) ALG	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287
TALK ALG	“Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration” on page 287

**Table 47: Netscreen Remote**

Feature	More Information
Netscreen Remote VPN client	“NetScreen-Remote VPN Client” on page 683

**Table 48: IDP Policy**

Feature	More Information
Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) Policy	“IDP Policies Overview” on page 708
Intrusion prevention system (IPS) rulebase	“Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720
Exempt rulebase	“Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase” on page 724
Custom attacks	“Understanding Custom Attack Objects” on page 749

**Table 48: IDP Policy** (*continued*)

Feature	More Information
Differentiated Services code point (DSCP) marking	“Configuring DSCP in an IDP Policy” on page 770

**Table 49: IDP Signature Database**

Feature	More Information
IDP signature database	“Understanding the IDP Signature Database” on page 773
Predefined policy templates	“Using Predefined Policy Templates” on page 774
Signature database—manual download	“Updating the Signature Database Manually” on page 780
Signature database—automatic download	“Updating the Signature Database Automatically” on page 784
Signature database version	“Understanding the Signature Database Version” on page 785

**Table 50: IDP Application Identification**

Feature	More Information
Application identification	“Understanding Application Identification” on page 790
Service and application bindings	“Understanding Service and Application Bindings” on page 790
Application system cache	“Understanding Application System Cache” on page 792

**Table 51: IDP Monitoring and Logging**

Feature	More Information
IDP logging	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Understanding IDP Logging on page 807</li> <li>■ <i>JUNOS Software Administration Guide</i></li> </ul>
IDP monitoring and debugging (SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 only)	<i>JUNOS Software CLI Reference</i>

**Table 52: IDP SSL Inspectioo**

Feature	More Information
IDP SSL Inspection	“IDP SSL Inspection” on page 801



## **Part 2**

# **Security Features**

- Introducing JUNOS Software for J-series Services Routers on page 31
- Introducing JUNOS Software for SRX-series Services Gateways on page 43
- Security Zones and Interfaces on page 69
- Attack Detection and Prevention on page 89
- Network Address Translation on page 187
- Chassis Cluster on page 215
- Application Layer Gateways (ALGs) on page 285





## Chapter 5

# Introducing JUNOS Software for J-series Services Routers

JUNOS software on the J-series Services Router integrates and evolves the network security and routing capabilities of Juniper Networks world-class networking and security platform.

JUNOS software uses a modular architecture as shown in Figure 1 on page 32. The operating system consists of discrete processes that implement specific features and functionality. These processes are compartmentalized with their associated data to provide functional independence, information privacy, and improved scalability.

This section includes:

- Stateful and Stateless Data Processing on page 31
- Following the Data Path on page 37
- Understanding Secure and Router Contexts on page 40

## Stateful and Stateless Data Processing

---

Traffic that enters and exits a Services Router running JUNOS software is processed according to features you configure, such as security policies, packet filters, and screens. For example the software can determine:

- Whether the packet is allowed into the router
- Which class of service (CoS) to apply to the packet, if any
- Which firewall screens to apply to the packet
- Whether to send the packet through an IPsec tunnel
- Whether the packet requires an Application Layer Gateway (ALG)
- Whether to apply Network Address Translation (NAT) to translate the packet's address
- The route the packet takes to reach its destination.

Packets that enter and exit a Services Router running JUNOS software undergo both packet-based and flow-based processing.

- Flow-based, or stateful, packet processing treats related packets, or a stream of packets, in the same way. Packet treatment depends on characteristics that were

established for the first packet of the packet stream, which is referred to as a flow.

- Packet-based, or stateless, packet processing treats packets discretely. Each packet is assessed individually for treatment.

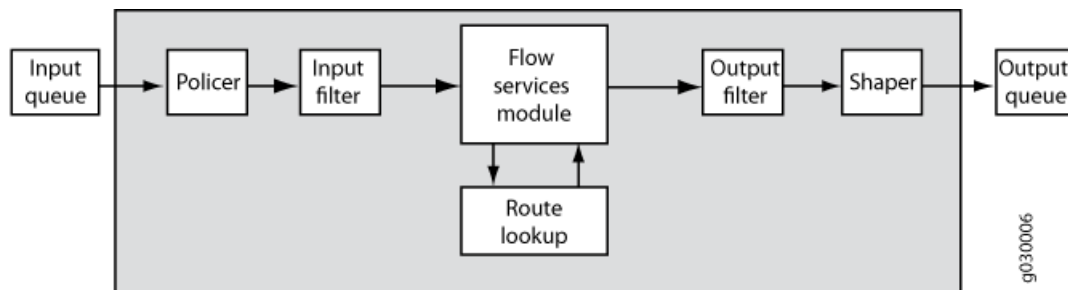
The software implements flow-based security and services, with packet-based application of filters, policers, traffic shapers, and other classification features.

## Flow-Based Processing

A packet undergoes flow-based processing after any packet-based filters and policers have been applied to it.

Figure 1 on page 32 shows an architectural overview of traffic flow in a Services Router running JUNOS software. See Figure 3 on page 38 to follow the path of the traffic as it traverses through the Flow services module.

**Figure 1: Traffic Flow for Flow-Based Processing**



A flow is a stream of related packets that meet the same matching criteria and share the same characteristics. JUNOS software treats packets belonging to the same flow in the same manner.

Configuration settings that determine the fate of a packet—such as the security policy that applies to it, whether the packet is sent through an IPsec tunnel, if it requires an Application Layer Gateway (ALG), if Network Address Translation (NAT) is applied to translate the packet's address—are assessed for the first packet of a flow. The settings are then applied to the rest of the packets in the flow.

To determine if a packet belongs to an existing flow, the router attempts to match the packet's information to that of an existing flow based on the following six match criteria:

- Source address
- Destination address
- Source port
- Destination port
- Protocol
- Session token

If the packet matches an existing flow, processing for the packet is assessed in the context of its flow state, which is maintained by the flow's session. If it does not match the session for an existing flow, the packet is used to create a flow state and a session is allocated for it.

## **Zones and Policies**

The security policy to be used for the first packet of a flow is cached in a flow table for use with the same flow and closely related flows. Security policies are associated with zones. A zone is a collection of interfaces that define a security boundary. A packet's incoming zone, as determined by the interface through which it arrived, and its outgoing zone, as determined by the forwarding lookup, together determine which policy is used for packets of the flow.

## **Flows and Sessions**

Flow-based packet processing, which is stateful, requires the creation of sessions. A session is created, based on the characteristics assessed for the first packet of a flow, for the following purposes:

- To store the security measures to be applied to the packets of the flow
- To cache information about the state of the flow

For example, logging and counting information for a flow is cached in its session. (Some stateful firewall screens rely on threshold values that pertain to individual sessions or across all sessions.)

- To allocate required resources for the flow for features such as Network Address Translation (NAT) and IPsec tunnels
- To provide a framework for features such as Application Layer Gateways (ALGs) and firewall features

Most packet processing occurs in the context of a flow. The flow engine and session bring together the following features and events that affect a packet as it undergoes flow-based processing:

- Flow-based forwarding
- Session management, including session aging and changes in routes, policy, and interfaces
- Management of virtual private networks (VPNs), ALGs, and authentication
- Management of policies, NAT, zones, and screens

## ***Packet-Based Processing***

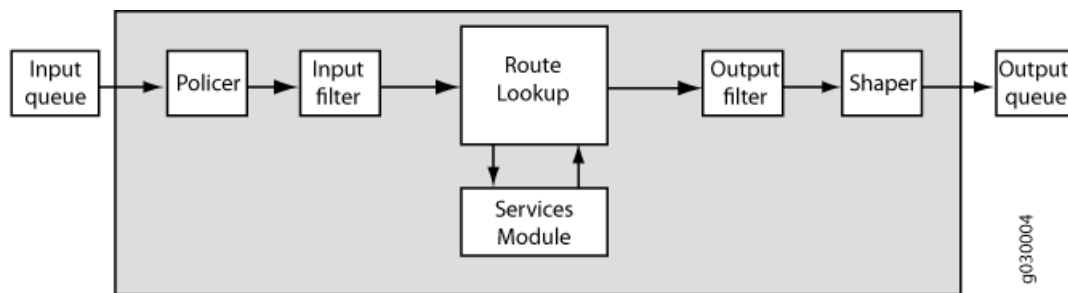
A packet undergoes packet-based processing when it is dequeued from its input (ingress) interface and before it is enqueued on its output (egress) interface.

Packet-based processing applies stateless firewall filters and class-of-service (CoS) features to discrete packets. You can apply a firewall filter to an ingress or egress interface, or to both.

- When a packet arrives at an interface on the router, any packet-based filters and policers associated with the interface are applied to the packet before any security policies are evaluated.
- Before a packet leaves the router, any packet-based filters and traffic shapers associated with the output interface are applied to the packet after any security policies have been evaluated.

Figure 2 on page 34 shows architectural overview of traffic flow in a standard JUNOS router.

**Figure 2: Traffic Flow for Packet-Based Processing**



Filters and CoS features are typically associated with one or more interfaces to influence which packets are allowed to transit the system and to apply special actions to packets as necessary.



**NOTE:** Packet-based processing occurs only if you configure filters, CoS, IPv6, and MPLS features for an interface that handles the packet.

Here are the kinds of packet-based features that you can configure and apply to transit traffic. For details on specific stateless firewall filters and CoS features, see the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide* and the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

- **Stateless firewall filters**—Also referred to as access control lists (ACLs), stateless firewall filters control access and limit traffic rates. They statically evaluate the contents of packets transiting the router from a source to a destination, or packets originating from or destined for the Routing Engine. A stateless firewall filter evaluates every packet, including fragmented packets.

You can apply a stateless firewall filter to an input or output interface, or to both. A filter contains one or more terms, and each term consists of two components—match conditions and actions. By default, a packet that does not match a firewall filter is discarded.

You can plan and design stateless firewall filters to be used for various purposes—for example, to limit traffic to certain protocols, IP source or destination addresses, or data rates.

- **Class-of-service (CoS) features**—CoS features allow you to police and shape traffic.
  - **Policing traffic**—Policers allow you to limit traffic of a certain class to a specified bandwidth and burst size. Packets exceeding the policer limits can be discarded or assigned to a different forwarding class, a different loss priority, or both. You can use policers to limit the amount of traffic passing into or out of an interface.
  - **Traffic shaping**—You can shape traffic by assigning service levels with different delay, jitter, and packet loss characteristics to particular applications served by specific traffic flows. Traffic shaping is especially useful for real-time applications, such as voice and video transmission.

## Changing Session Characteristics

Sessions are created, based on routing and other classification information, to store information and allocate resources for a flow. Sessions have characteristics, some of which you can change, such as when they terminated. For example, you might want to ensure that a session table is never entirely full to protect against an attacker's attempt to flood the table and thereby prevent legitimate users from starting sessions.

Depending on the protocol and service, a session is programmed with a timeout value. For example, the default timeout for TCP is 30 minutes. The default timeout for UDP is 1 minute. When a flow is terminated, it is marked as invalid, and its timeout is reduced to 10 seconds.

If no traffic uses the session before the service timeout, the session is aged out and freed to a common resource pool for reuse. You can affect the life of a session in the following ways:

- You can specify circumstances to terminate sessions using any of the following methods:
  - Aggressively age out invalid sessions aggressively based on a timeout value.
  - Age out sessions based on how full the session table is.
  - Set an explicit timeout for aging out TCP sessions.
  - Configure a TCP session to be invalidated when it receives a TCP RST (reset) message.
- You can configure sessions to accommodate other systems as follows:
  - Disable TCP packet security checks.
  - Accommodate end-to-end communication.

The following sections show you how to modify a session's characteristics. For details, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Controlling Session Termination

JUNOS software terminates sessions normally in certain situations—for example, after receiving a TCP FINish Close or receiving a RST (reset) message, when encountering Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) errors for UDP, and when no matching traffic is received before the service timeout. When sessions are terminated, their resources are freed up for use for other sessions.

To control when sessions are terminated, you configure the router to age out sessions after a certain period of time, when the number of sessions in the session table reaches a specified percentage, or both.

- To terminate sessions based on a timeout value or the number of sessions in the session table:

- You can use the following **set security flow** command to specify the number of seconds in tens of seconds after which a session is invalidated. The following command ages out sessions after 20 seconds:

```
set security flow aging early-ageout 2
```

- You can use the following **set security flow** command to specify a percentage of sessions. When the number of sessions in the session table reaches this percentage, the router begins to age sessions aggressively. When the number of sessions in the session table reaches the low-water mark, the router stops aggressively aging sessions.

```
set security flow aging high-watermark 90 low-watermark 50
```

- To configure an explicit timeout value, use the following command. This **set security flow** command removes a TCP session from the session table after 280 seconds.

```
set security flow tcp-session tcp-initial-timeout 280
```

- To cause any session that receives a TCP RST message to be invalidated, use the following command:

```
set security flow tcp-session rst-invalidate-session
```

## Disabling TCP Packet Security Checks

The JUNOS software provides a mechanism to disable security checks on TCP packets to ensure interoperability with hosts and routers with faulty TCP implementations. The following **set security flow** command disable TCP SYN checks and TCP sequence checks on all TCP sessions.

```
set security flow tcp-session no-syn-check
set security flow tcp-session no-sequence-check
```

## Accommodating End-to-End TCP Communication

End-to-end TCP communication in a customer network might not work for large packets approaching 1500 bytes because of GRE or IPsec tunneling encapsulation. You can use the **set security flow** command to change the maximum segment size (MSS) for TCP packets to be sent or received over GRE and IPsec tunnels.

- The following **set security flow** commands set the TCP MSS to 1400 bytes for IPsec tunnel sessions and 1364 bytes for GRE tunnel sessions:

```
set security flow tcp-mss ipsec-vpn mss 1400
set security flow tcp-mss gre-in mss 1364
set security flow tcp-mss gre-out mss 1364
```

The following command configures the TCP MSS to 1400 bytes for all TCP sessions.

```
set security flow tcp-mss all-tcp 1400
```

- The following command allows an unmatched incoming DNS reply packet:

```
set security flow allow-dns-reply
```

- The following command sets the timeout value for route change to nonexistent route:

```
set security flow route-change-timeout
```

- The following command enables TCP SYN flood protection mode:

```
set security flow syn-flood-protection-mode
```

You can use other **set security flow** commands to accommodate other systems. For syntax information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

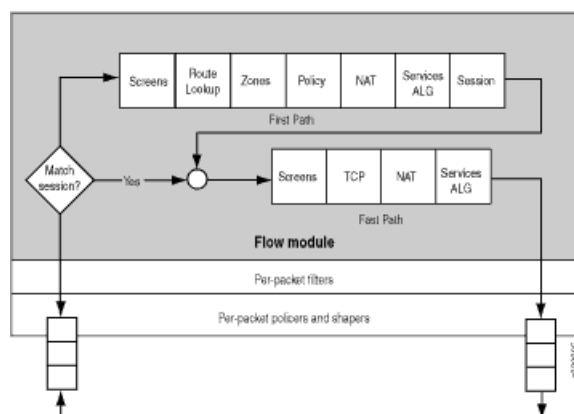
## Following the Data Path

---

As a packet transits the router, it takes the following path. This packet “walk” brings together the packet-based processing and flow-based processing that the JUNOS software performs on the packet.

- Part 1—Forwarding Processing on page 38
- Part 2—Session-Based Processing on page 38
- Part 3—Forwarding Features on page 40

Figure 3 on page 38 shows the path of a data packet as it traverses through the Services Router. Refer to Figure 1 on page 32 to see how the flow module in Figure 3 on page 38 fits in with the architecture of the software.

**Figure 3: Data Packet Traversing the Flow Module on the Services Router**

### Part 1—Forwarding Processing

1. The packet enters the system and is treated on a per-packet basis.
2. The system applies stateless policing filters and class-of-service (CoS) classification to the packet.

For details, see the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.

### Part 2—Session-Based Processing

After forwarding processing, the JUNOS software performs session lookup and either first-packet processing or fast-path processing on the packet.

#### Session Lookup

If the packet has not already been dropped, JUNOS software performs session lookup to determine whether the packet belongs to an existing session. The system uses six match criteria to perform the session lookup:

- Session token
- Source and destination IP addresses
- Source and destination ports
- Protocol

If the packet does not match an existing session, the system creates a new session for it. This process is called the first-packet path. (See “First-Packet Path Processing” on page 39.)

If the packet matches a session, fast-path processing is performed. (See “Fast-Path Processing” on page 40.)



## First-Packet Path Processing

If a packet does not match an existing session, JUNOS software creates a new session for it as follows:

1. For the first packet, the system creates a session based on the routing for the packet and the policy lookup so that the packet becomes the first packet of a flow.

For policy details, see “Security Policies Overview” on page 431.

2. Depending on the protocol and whether the service is TCP or UDP, the session is programmed with a timeout value.
  - For TCP, the default timeout is 30 minutes.
  - For UDP, the default timeout is 1 minute.

You can configure these timeouts to be more aggressive or less aggressive. If you have changed the session timeout value, it is applied here. See “Controlling Session Termination” on page 36. If no traffic uses the session during the service timeout period, the router ages out the session and releases its memory for reuse.

3. Firewall screens are applied.

Session initialization screens are applied. For screen details, see “Attack Detection and Prevention” on page 89.

4. Route lookup is performed.
5. The destination zone is determined:
  - a. The system determines a packet's *incoming* zone by the interface through which it arrives.
  - b. The system determines a packet's *outgoing* zone by route lookup.

Together they determine which policy is applied to the packet.

For zone details, see “Security Zones and Interfaces” on page 69.

6. Policy lookup is performed.

The system checks the packet against policies you have defined to determine how the packet is to be treated.

For policy details, see “Security Policies” on page 431.

7. If NAT is used, the system performs address allocation.

For NAT details, see “Network Address Translation” on page 187.

8. The system sets up the Application Layer Gateway (ALG) service vector.

For ALG details, see the “Application Layer Gateways (ALGs)” on page 285.

9. The system creates and installs the session.

Decisions made for the first packet of a flow are cached in a flow table for use with following, related flows.

10. Fast path processing is applied to the packet.

### Fast-Path Processing

If a packet matches a session, JUNOS software performs fast-path processing as follows:

1. Configured screens are applied.
2. TCP checks are performed.
3. NAT is applied.

For NAT details, see “Network Address Translation” on page 187.

4. Forwarding features are applied. (See the following section “Part 3—Forwarding Features” on page 40.)

## Part 3—Forwarding Features

After the packet has passed through session-based processing, the JUNOS software prepares the packet and transmits it:

1. Routing packet filters are applied.
2. Traffic shaping is applied.
3. The packet is transmitted.

For information about packet filters and CoS traffic shaping, see the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.

## Understanding Secure and Router Contexts

---

As shipped from the factory, a Services Router running JUNOS software initially starts up and uses a configuration that places the router in secure context. You can change the context in which the Services Router is running from secure context to router context. To do so, you use a predefined template configuration file. If you plan to use the Services Router primarily as a router, change to router context with this configuration as your starting point.



**CAUTION:** If you plan to change contexts, do so before you configure anything else on the Services Router. If you change contexts after you have configured the Services Router, your configuration is overwritten by the default configuration for the new context.

---



**NOTE:** Both secure context and router context are flow-enabled. MPLS is not supported in either context because MPLS undergoes packet-based processing.

## Secure and Router Context Support On Different Device Types

The following table lists secure and router context features, specifies whether the features are supported on various device types, and indicates where you can find more information about each feature.

**Table 53: Support Information: Secure and Router Context Options**

Feature	J-series Services Routers	SRX-series Services Gateways	More Information
Secure context factory configuration	Yes	No	“Secure Context” on page 41
Router context factory configuration	Yes	No	“Router Context” on page 42

## Secure Context

Secure context allows a Services Router to act as a stateful firewall with only management access. To allow traffic to pass through a Services Router, you must explicitly configure a security policy for that purpose. In secure context, a Services Router forwards packets only if a security policy permits it. Certain services are also configured (in the `host-inbound-traffic` statement of the `[edit security zones]` hierarchy level) to allow host-inbound traffic for management of a Services Router. A Services Router running in secure context is a secure routing device with predefined configuration values.

When you use the router in secure context, you can configure additional security features. You can also remove security features and configure additional routing features to provide greater routing capability. The secure context configuration of the router is provided for ease of use. It is intended as a starting point that you can build on to customize the router for your environment.

To change contexts, see the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*.

The basic configuration for secure context includes the following settings:

- A predefined interface called `ge-0/0/0`, which is bound to a preconfigured zone called `trust`. All other interfaces are bound to a preconfigured `untrust` zone.

The `ge-0/0/0` interface is configured to allow management access with SSH and HTTP services enabled. The following host-inbound services are configured for the `ge-0/0/0` interface in the `trust` zone: HTTP, HTTPS, SSH, Telnet, and DHCP.

- For the `trust` zone, TCP reset is enabled. The default policy for the `trust` zone allows transmission of traffic from the `trust` zone to the `untrust` zone. All traffic within the `trust` zone is allowed.

- A screen is applied to a zone to protect against attacks launched from within the zone. The following screens are enabled for the **untrust** zone: ICMP ping-of-death, IP source route options, IP teardrop, TCP land attack, TCP SYN flood (with the alarm threshold set to 1024, attack threshold set to 200, source threshold set to 1024, destination threshold set to 2048, and a timeout value of 20 seconds).
- The default policy for the **untrust** zone is to deny all traffic.

For the default configuration file for secure context, see the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*.

## Router Context

Router context allows a Services Router to act as a router in which all management and transit traffic is allowed. All interfaces are bound to the trust zone, and host inbound traffic from all predefined services is allowed. In router context, the Services Router forwards all packets unless you configure a security policy that denies specific traffic.

JUNOS software is a hardened operating system. You can use JUNOS software with more relaxed checks for host-inbound traffic and configure the data plane with default transit policies to permit all traffic. In this scenario, the Services Router operates in a router context.

You load a predefined template configuration, **jsr-series-routermode-factory.conf**, to change to router context. In router context, the Services Router remains flow-enabled. All security features are available, but they are explicitly disabled.

When you use the router in router context, you can configure additional routing features. You can also configure security features selectively to provide additional protection. The router context configuration is provided for ease of use. It is intended as a starting point that you can build on to customize the router for your environment.

For the default configuration file for router context and to change contexts, see the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*.

## Chapter 6

# Introducing JUNOS Software for SRX-series Services Gateways

JUNOS software for SRX-series services gateways integrates the world-class network security and routing capabilities of Juniper Networks. JUNOS software for the SRX-series services gateways includes a wide range of packet-based filtering, class-of-service (CoS) classifiers, and traffic-shaping features as well as a rich, extensive set of flow-based security features including policies, screens, NAT, and other flow-based services.

This section includes:

- Stateful and Stateless Data Processing Overview on page 43
- SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 Services Gateways Overview on page 48
- SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 Services Gateways Overview on page 57
- Packet Flow and Session Management in SRX 210 Services Gateways on page 63
- Obtaining Information About Sessions and Terminating Them on page 65

## Stateful and Stateless Data Processing Overview

---

Traffic that enters and exits a services gateway running JUNOS software is processed according to features you configure, such as packet filters, security policies, and screens. For example, the software can determine:

- Whether the packet is allowed into the device
- Which firewall screens to apply to the packet
- The route the packet takes to reach its destination
- Which class of service (CoS) to apply to the packet, if any
- Whether to apply Network Address Translation (NAT) to translate the packet's IP address
- Whether the packet requires an Application Layer Gateway (ALG)

Packets that enter and exit a services gateway undergo both packet-based and flow-based processing.

- Flow-based packet processing treats related packets, or a stream of packets, in the same way. Packet treatment depends on characteristics that were established for the first packet of the packet stream, which is referred to as a flow.

For the distributed processing architecture of the SRX-series services gateway, all flow-based processing occurs on the SPU and sampling is multi-thread aware. Packet sequencing is maintained for the sampled packets.

- Packet-based, or stateless, packet processing treats packets discretely. Each packet is assessed individually for treatment.

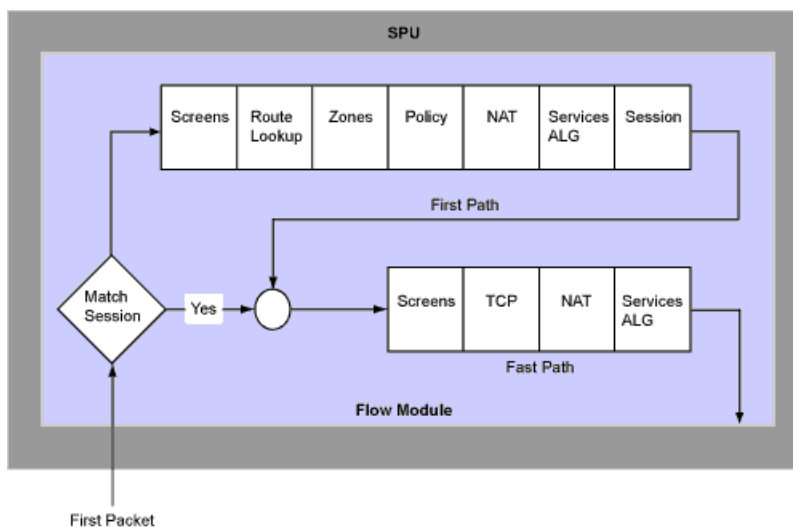
For the distributed processing architecture of the SRX-series services gateway, some packet-based processing, such as traffic shaping, occurs on the NPU. Some packet-based processing, such as application of classifiers to a packet, occurs on the SPU.

## Understanding Flow-Based Processing

A packet undergoes flow-based processing after packet-based filters and some screens have been applied to it. All flow-based processing for a single flow occurs on a single SPU. An SPU processes the packets of a flow according to the security features and other services configured for the session.

Figure 4 on page 44 shows a conceptual view of how flow-based traffic processing occurs on an SRX-series services gateway.

**Figure 4: Traffic Flow for Flow-Based Processing**



A flow is a stream of related packets that meet the same matching criteria and share the same characteristics. JUNOS software treats packets belonging to the same flow in the same manner.

Configuration settings that determine the fate of a packet—such as the security policy that applies to it, if it requires an Application Layer Gateway (ALG), if Network Address Translation (NAT) is applied to translate the packet's source and/or destination IP address—are assessed for the first packet of a flow.

To determine if a flow exists for a packet, the NPU attempts to match the packet's information to that of an existing session based on the following match criteria:

- Source address
- Destination address
- Source port
- Destination port
- Protocol
- Unique session token number for a given zone and virtual router

### **Zones and Policies**

The security policy to be used for the first packet of a flow is cached in a flow table for use with the same flow and closely related flows. Security policies are associated with zones. A zone is a collection of interfaces that define a security boundary. A packet's incoming zone, as determined by the interface through which it arrived, and its outgoing zone, as determined by the forwarding lookup, together determine which policy is used for packets of the flow.

### **Flows and Sessions**

Flow-based packet processing, which is stateful, requires the creation of sessions. A session is created for the first packet of a flow for the following purposes:

- To store most of the security measures to be applied to the packets of the flow
- To cache information about the state of the flow

For example, logging and counting information for a flow is cached in its session. (Some stateful firewall screens rely on threshold values that pertain to individual sessions or across all sessions.)

- To allocate required resources for the flow for features such as Network Address Translation (NAT)
- To provide a framework for features such as Application Layer Gateways (ALGs) and firewall features

Most packet processing occurs in the context of a flow, including:

- Management of policies, NAT, zones, and most screens
- Management of ALGs and authentication

### ***Understanding Packet-Based Processing***

A packet undergoes packet-based processing when it is removed from the queue from its input interface and before it is added to the queue on its output interface.

Packet-based processing applies stateless firewall filters, class-of-service (CoS) features, and some screens to discrete packets.

- When a packet arrives at an interface on the services gateway, sanity checks, packet-based filters, some CoS features, and some screens are applied to it.
- Before a packet leaves the device, any packet-based filters, some CoS features, and some screens associated with the interface are applied to the packet.

Filters and CoS features are typically associated with one or more interfaces to influence which packets are allowed to transit the system and to apply special actions to packets as necessary.

Here are the kinds of packet-based features that you can configure and apply to transit traffic.

- **Stateless firewall filters**—Also referred to as access control lists (ACLs), stateless firewall filters control access and limit traffic rates. They statically evaluate the contents of packets transiting the device from a source to a destination, or packets originating from or destined for the Routing Engine. A stateless firewall filter evaluates every packet, including fragmented packets.

You can apply a stateless firewall filter to an input or output interface, or to both. A filter contains one or more terms, and each term consists of two components—match conditions and actions. By default, a packet that does not match a firewall filter is discarded.

You can plan and design stateless firewall filters to be used for various purposes—for example, to limit traffic to certain protocols, IP source or destination addresses, or data rates. Stateless firewall filters are executed on the SPU.

- **Class-of-service (CoS) features**—CoS features allow you to classify and shape traffic. CoS features are executed on the SPU.
  - **Behavior aggregate (BA) classifiers**—These classifiers operate on packets as they enter the device. Using behavior aggregate classifiers, the device aggregates different types of traffic into a single forwarding class to receive the same forwarding treatment. BA classifiers allow you to set the forwarding class and loss priority of a packet based on the Differentiated Service (DiffServ) value.
  - **Traffic shaping**—You can shape traffic by assigning service levels with different delay, jitter, and packet loss characteristics to particular applications served by specific traffic flows. Traffic shaping is especially useful for real-time applications, such as voice and video transmission.
- **Certain screens**—Some screens, such as denial-of-service (DoS) screens, are applied to a packet outside the flow process. They are executed on the NPU.

For details on specific stateless firewall filters and CoS features, see the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide* and the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Changing Session Characteristics

Sessions are created, based on routing and other classification information, to store information and allocate resources for a flow. Sessions have characteristics, some



of which you can change, such as when they are terminated. For example, you might want to ensure that a session table is never entirely full to protect against an attacker's attempt to flood the table and thereby prevent legitimate users from starting sessions.

Depending on the protocol and service, a session is programmed with a timeout value. For example, the default timeout for TCP is 30 minutes. The default timeout for UDP is 1 minute. When a flow is terminated, it is marked as invalid, and its timeout is reduced to 10 seconds.

If no traffic uses the session before the service timeout, the session is aged out and freed to a common resource pool for reuse. You can affect the life of a session in the following ways:

- You can specify circumstances to terminate sessions by using any of the following methods:
  - Age out sessions based on how full the session table is.
  - Set an explicit timeout for aging out TCP sessions.
  - Configure a TCP session to be invalidated when it receives a TCP RST (reset) message.
- You can configure sessions to accommodate other systems as follows:
  - Disable TCP packet security checks.
  - Change the maximum segment size.

The following sections show you how to modify a session's characteristics. For details, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Controlling Session Termination

JUNOS software terminates sessions normally in certain situations—for example, after receiving a TCP FINish Close or receiving a RST (reset) message, when encountering Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) errors for UDP, and when no matching traffic is received before the service timeout. When sessions are terminated, their resources are freed up for use for other sessions.

To control when sessions are terminated, you configure the services gateway to age out sessions after a certain period of time, when the number of sessions in the session table reaches a specified percentage, or both.

- To terminate sessions based on a timeout value or the number of sessions in the session table:
  - You can use the following **set security flow** command to specify the number of seconds in tens of seconds after which a session is invalidated. The following command ages out sessions after 20 seconds:
 

```
set security flow aging early-ageout 2
```
- To configure an explicit timeout value, use the following command. This **set security flow** command removes a TCP session from the session table after 280 seconds.

```
set security flow tcp-session tcp-initial-timeout 280
```

- To cause any session that receives a TCP RST message to be invalidated, use the following command:

```
set security flow tcp-session rst-invalidate-session
```

### Disabling TCP Packet Security Checks

The JUNOS software provides a mechanism to disable security checks on TCP packets to ensure interoperability with hosts and devices with faulty TCP implementations. The following `set security flow` command disables TCP SYN checks and TCP sequence checks on all TCP sessions.

```
set security flow tcp-session no-syn-check
set security flow tcp-session no-sequence-check
```

### Setting the Maximum Segment Size for All TCP Sessions

This command allows you to specify the maximum segment size in TCP SYN packets used during session establishment. Decreasing the maximum segment size helps to limit packet fragmentation and to protect against packet loss that can occur when a packet must be fragmented to meet the MTU size but the packet's DF-bit (don't fragment) is set.

- The following command configures the TCP maximum segment size to 1400 bytes for all TCP sessions:

```
set security flow tcp-mss all-tcp 1400
```

## SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 Services Gateways Overview

---

JUNOS software for SRX-series services gateways is a distributed parallel processing high throughput and high performance system. The distributed parallel processing architecture of the SRX-series services gateways includes multiple processors to manage sessions and run security and other services processing. This architecture provides greater flexibility and allows for high throughput and fast performance.

The SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 services gateways include I/O cards (IOC) and Services Processing Cards (SPCs) that each contain processing units that process a packet as it traverses the device. A Network Processing Unit (NPU) runs on an IOC. An IOC has one or more NPUs. One or more Services Processing Units (SPUs) run on an SPC.

These processing units have different responsibilities. All flow-based services for a packet are executed on a single SPU. Otherwise, however, the lines are not clearly divided in regard to the kinds of services that run on these processors. (For details on flow-based processing, see "Understanding Flow-Based Processing" on page 44.) For example:

- An NPU processes packets discretely. It performs sanity checks and applies some screens that are configured for the interface, such as denial-of-service (DoS) screens, to the packet.

- An SPU manages the session for the packet flow and applies security features and other services to the packet. It also applies packet-based stateless firewall filters, classifiers, and traffic shapers to the packet.
- The system uses one processor as a central point (CP) to take care of arbitration and allocation of resources and distribute sessions in an intelligent way. The central point assigns an SPU to be used for a particular session when the first packet of its flow is processed.

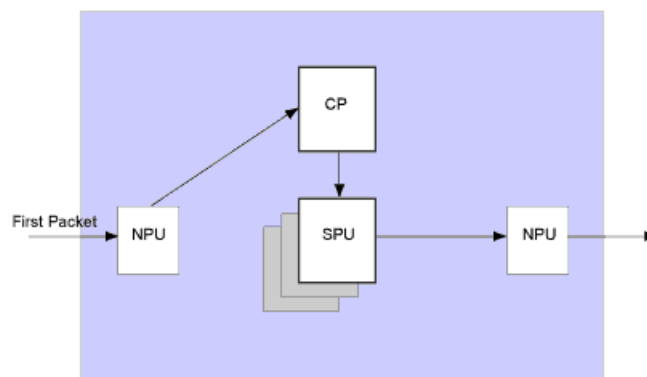
These discrete, cooperating parts of the system, including the central point, each store the information identifying whether a session exists for a stream of packets and the information against which a packet is matched to determine if it belongs to an existing session.

This architecture allows the device to distribute processing of all sessions across multiple SPUs. It also allows an NPU to determine if a session exists for a packet, to check the packet, and to apply screens to it. How a packet is handled depends on whether it is the first packet of a flow.

If the packet matches an existing flow, processing for the packet is assessed in the context of its flow state. The SPU maintains the state for each session, and the settings are then applied to the rest of the packets in the flow. If the packet does not match an existing flow, it is used to create a flow state and a session is allocated for it.

Figure 5 on page 49 illustrates the path the first packet of a flow takes as it enters the device: the NPU determines that no session exists for the packet, and the NPU sends the packet to the central point; the central point selects the SPU to set up the session for the packet and process it, and it sends the packet to that SPU. The SPU processes the packet and sends it to the NPU for transmission from the device. (This high-level description does not address application of features to a packet.)

**Figure 5: First-Packet Processing**



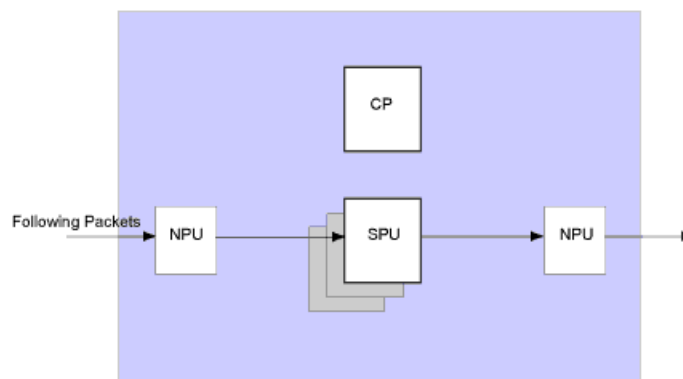
For details on session creation for the first packet in a flow, see “Understanding Session Creation: First-Packet Processing” on page 52.

After the first packet of a flow has traversed the system and a session has been established for it, it undergoes fast-path processing.

Subsequent packets of the flow also undergo fast-path processing; in this case, after each packet enters the session and the NPU finds a match for it in its session table, the NPU forwards the packet to the SPU that manages its session.

Figure 6 on page 50 illustrates fast-path processing. This is the path a packet takes when a flow has already been established for its related packets. (It is also the path that the first packet of a flow takes after the session for the flow that the packet initiated has been set up.) After the packet enters the device, the NPU finds a match for the packet in its session table, and it forwards the packet to the SPU that manages the packet's session. Note that the packet bypasses interaction with the central point.

**Figure 6: Fast-Path Processing**



This section explains how a session is created and the process a packet undergoes as it transits the services gateway.

Here is an overview of the main components involved in setting up a session for a packet and processing the packets both discretely and as part of a flow as they transit the SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 services gateways:

- **Network Processing Units (NPUs)**—NPUs reside on I/O cards. They handle packet sanity checking and application of some screens. NPUs maintain session tables that they use to determine if a session exists for an incoming packet or for reverse traffic.

The NPU session table contains an entry for a session if the session is established on an SPU for a packet that had previously entered the device via the interface and was processed by this NPU. The SPU installs the session in the NPU table when it creates the session.

An NPU determines if a session exists for a packet by checking the packet information against its session table. If the packet matches an existing session, the NPU sends the packet and the metadata for it to the SPU. If there is no session, the NPU sends the packet to the central point for SPU assignment.

- **Services Processing Units (SPUs)**—The main processors of the SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 services gateways reside on Services Processing Cards (SPCs). They establish and manage traffic flows and perform most of the packet processing on a packet as it transits the device. Each SPU maintains a hash table for fast session lookup. The SPU applies stateless firewall filters, classifiers, and traffic

shapers to traffic. An SPU performs all flow-based processing for a packet and most packet-based processing. Each multicore SPU processes packets independently with minimum interaction among SPUs on the same or different SPC. All packets that belong to the same flow are processed by the same SPU.

The SPU maintains a session table with entries for all sessions that it established and whose packets it processes. When an SPU receives a packet from an NPU, it checks its session table to ensure that the packet belongs to it. It also checks its session table when it receives a packet from the central point (CP) and a message to establish a session for that packet to verify that there is not an existing session for the packet.

- **Central point (CP)**—The services gateway uses one processor as a central point to take care of arbitration and allocation of resources and distribute sessions in an intelligent way to avoid multiple SPUs from wrongly handling the same flow.

The central point's main function is to delegate session processing to one of the SPUs. If the session has not yet been established, the central point selects an SPU to establish the session for the flow, based on load-balancing criteria. If the session already exists, the central point forwards packets for that flow to the SPU hosting it. It also redirects packets to the correct SPU in the event that the NPU fails to do so.

The central point maintains a global session table with information about the owner SPU of a particular session. It functions as a central repository and resource manager for the whole system.

- **Routing Engine (RE)**—The Routing Engine runs the control plane.

## ***Following the Data Path for a Unicast Session***

This section describes the process that the services gateway undertakes in establishing a session for packets belonging to a flow that transits the SRX-series services gateways.

To illustrate session establishment and the packet “walk” including the points at which services are applied to the packets of a flow, this example uses the simple case of a unicast session.

This packet “walk” brings together the packet-based processing and flow-based processing that the JUNOS software performs on the packet. It includes the following sections:

- Session Lookup and Packet Match Criteria on page 51
- Understanding Session Creation: First-Packet Processing on page 52
- Understanding Fast-Path Processing on page 55

### **Session Lookup and Packet Match Criteria**

To determine if a packet belongs to an existing flow, the services gateway attempts to match the packet's information to that of an existing session based on the following six match criteria:

- Source address
- Destination address
- Source port
- Destination port
- Protocol
- Unique token from a given zone and virtual router

### Understanding Session Creation: First-Packet Processing

This section explains how a session is set up to process the packets composing a flow. To illustrate the process, this section uses an example with a source “a” and a destination “b”. The direction from source to destination for the packets of the flow is referred to as (a -> b). The direction from destination to source is referred to as (b -> a).

#### Step 1. A Packet Arrives at an Interface on the Device and the NPU Processes It.

This section describes how a packet is handled when it arrives at a services gateway ingress IOC.

1. The packet arrives at the device’s IOC and is processed by the NPU on the card.
2. The NPU performs basic sanity checks on the packet and applies some screens configured for the interface to the packet.
3. The NPU checks its session table for an existing session for the packet. (It checks the packet’s tuple against those of packets for existing sessions in its session table.)
  - a. If no existent session is found, the NPU forwards the packet to the central point.
  - b. If a session match is found, the session has already been created on an SPU that was assigned to it, so the NPU forwards the packet to the SPU for processing along with the session ID. (See “Understanding Fast-Path Processing” on page 55.)

**Example:** Packet (a -> b) arrives at NPU1. NPU1 performs sanity checks and applies DoS screens to the packet. NPU checks its session table for a tuple match and no existing session is found. NPU1 forwards the packet to the central point for assignment to an SPU.

#### Step 2. The Central Point (CP) Creates a Session with a "Pending" State.

The central point maintains a global session table that includes entries for all sessions that exist across all SPUs on the device. It participates in session creation and delegates and arbitrates session resources allocation.

This process entails the following parts:

1. The central point checks its session table and gate table to determine if a session or a gate exists for the packet it receives from the NPU. (An NPU has forwarded

a packet to the central point because its table indicates there is no session for it. The central point verifies this information before allocating an SPU for the session.)

2. If there is no entry that matches the packet in either table, the central point creates a pending wing for the session and selects an SPU to be used for the session, based on its load-balancing algorithm.
3. The central point forwards the first packet of the flow to the selected SPU in a message telling it to set up a session locally to be used for the packet flow.

**Example:** The central point creates pending wing (a -> b) for the session. It selects SPU1 to be used for it. It sends SPU1 the (a -> b) packet along with a message to create a session for it.

### Step 3. The SPU Sets Up the Session.

Each SPU, too, has a session table, which contains information about its sessions. When the SPU receives a message from the central point to set up a session, it checks its session table to ensure that a session does not already exist for the packet.

1. If there is no existing session for the packet, the SPU sets up the session locally.
2. The SPU sends a message to the central point telling it to install the session.



**NOTE:** During first-packet processing, if NAT is enabled, the SPU allocates IP address resources for NAT. In this case, the first-packet processing for the session is suspended until the NAT allocation process is completed.

---

The SPU adds to the queue any additional packets for the flow that it might receive until the session has been installed.

**Example:** SPU1 creates the session for (a -> b) and sends a message back to the central point telling it to install the pending session.

### Step 4. The Central Point Installs the Session.

The central point receives the install message from the SPU.

1. It sets the state for the session's pending wing to active
2. It installs the reverse wing for the session as an active wing.
3. It sends an ACK (acknowledge) message to the SPU, indicating that the session is installed.

**Example:** The central point receives a message from SPU1 to install the session for (a -> b). It sets the session state for (a -> b) wing to active. It installs the reverse wing (b -> a) for the session and makes it active; this allows for delivery of packets from the reverse direction of the flow: destination (b) to be delivered to the source (a).

### Step 5. The SPU Sets Up the Session on the Ingress and Egress NPUs.

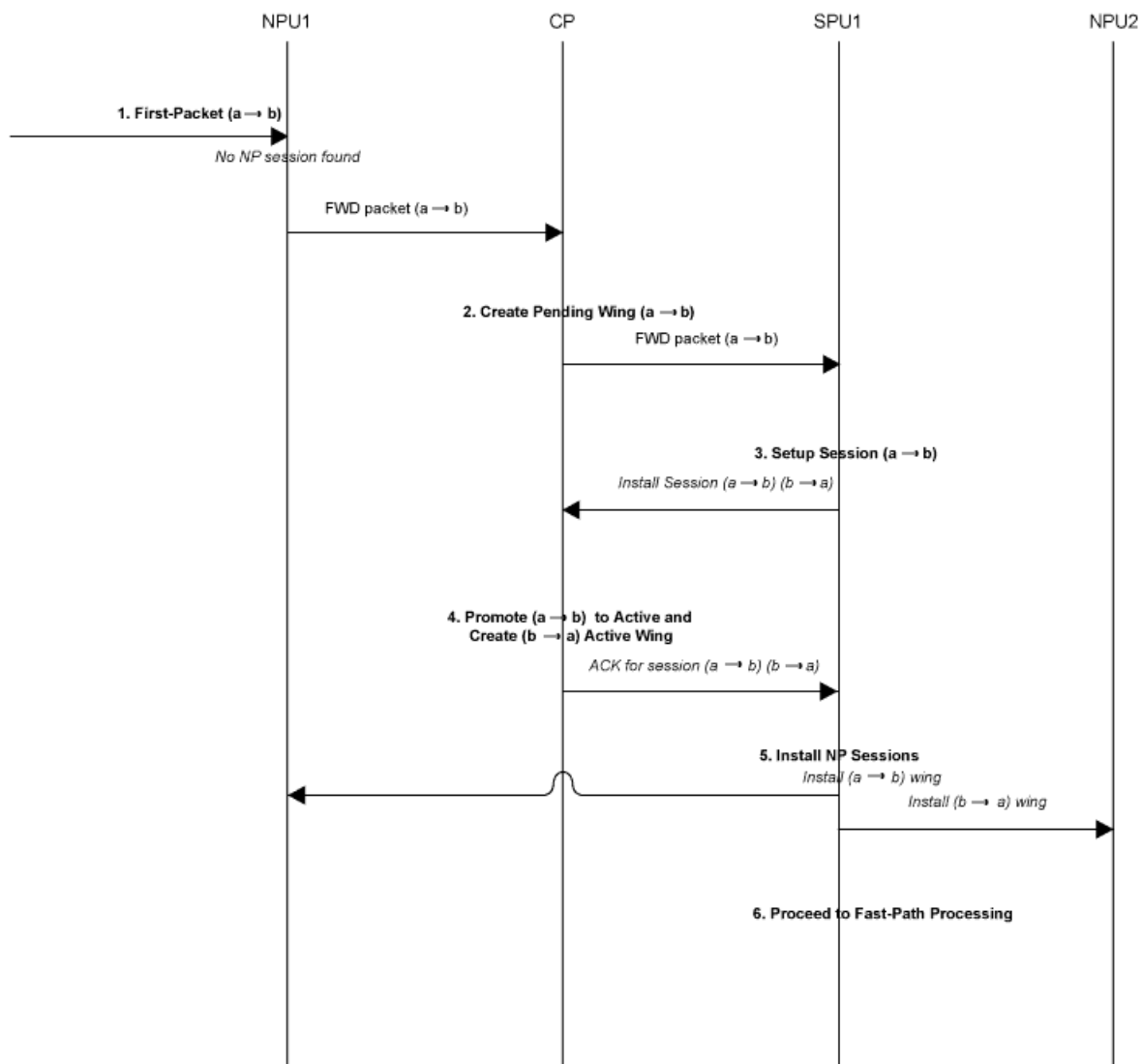
NPUs maintain information about a session for packet forwarding and delivery. Session information is set up on the egress and ingress NPUs (which sometimes are the same) so that packets can be sent directly to the SPU that manages their flows and not to the central point for redirection.

### Step 6. Fast-Path Processing Takes Place.

For the remainder of the steps entailed in packet processing, proceed to Step 1 in “Understanding Fast-Path Processing” on page 55.

Figure 7 on page 54 illustrates the first part of the process the first packet of a flow undergoes after it reaches the services gateway. At this point a session is set up to process the packet and the rest of the packets belonging to its flow. Subsequently, it and the rest of the packets of flow undergo fast-path processing.

**Figure 7: Session Creation: First-Packet Processing**





## Understanding Fast-Path Processing

All packets undergo fast path-processing. However, if a session exists for a packet, the packet undergoes fast-path processing and bypasses the first-packet process. When there is already a session for the packet's flow, the packet does not transit the central point.

Here is how fast-path processing works: NPUs at the egress and ingress interfaces contain session tables that include the identification of the SPU that manages a packet's flow. Because the NPUs have this session information, all traffic for the flow, including reverse traffic, is sent directly to that SPU for processing.

To illustrate the fast-path process, this section uses an example with a source "a" and a destination "b". The direction from source to destination for the packets of the flow is referred to as (a -> b). The direction from destination to source is referred to as (b -> a).

### **Step 1. A Packet Arrives at the Device and the NPU Processes It.**

This section describes how a packet is handled when it arrives at a services gateway's IOC.

1. The packet arrives at the services gateway's IOC and is processed by the NPU on the card.

The NPU performs sanity checks and applies some screens, such as denial-of-service (DoS) screens, to the packet.

2. The NPU identifies an entry for an existing session in its session table that the packet matches.
3. The NPU forwards the packet along with metadata from its session table, including the session ID and packet tuple information, to the SPU that manages the session for the flow, applies stateless firewall filters and CoS features to its packets, and handles the packet's flow processing and application of security and other features.

**Example:** Packet (a -> b) arrives at NPU1. NPU1 performs sanity checks on the packet, applies DoS screens to it, and checks its session table for a tuple match. It finds a match and that a session exists for the packet on SPU1. NPU1 forwards the packet to SPU1 for processing.

### **Step 2. The SPU for the Session Processes the Packet.**

Most of a packet's processing occurs on the SPU to which its session is assigned. The packet is processed for packet-based features such as stateless firewall filters, traffic shapers, and classifiers, if applicable. Configured flow-based security and related services such as firewall features, NAT, ALGs, and so forth, are applied to the packet. (For information on how security services are determined for a session, see "Zones and Policies" on page 45.)

1. Before it processes the packet, the SPU checks its session table to verify that the packet belongs to one of its sessions.

2. The SPU processes the packet for applicable features and services.

**Example:** SPU1 receives packet (a->b) from NPU1. It checks its session table to verify that the packet belongs to one of its sessions. Then it processes packet (a->b) according to input filters and CoS features that apply to its input interface. The SPU applies the security features and services that are configured for the packet's flow to it, based on its zone and policies. If any are configured, it applies output filters, traffic shapers and additional screens to the packet.

### ***Step 3. The SPU Forwards the Packet to the NPU.***

1. The SPU forwards the packet to the NPU.
2. The NPU applies any applicable screens associated with the interface to the packet.

**Example:** SPU1 forwards packet (a->b) to NPU2, and NPU2 applies DoS screens.

### ***Step 4. The Interface Transmits the Packet From the Device.***

**Example:** The interface transmits packet (a->b) from the device.

### ***Step 5. A Reverse Traffic Packet Arrives at the Egress Interface and the NPU Processes It.***

This step mirrors Step 1 exactly in reverse. See Step 1 in this section for details.

**Example:** Packet (b->a) arrives at NPU2. NPU2 checks its session table for a tuple match. It finds a match and that a session exists for the packet on SPU1. NPU2 forwards the packet to SPU1 for processing.

### ***Step 6. The SPU for the Session Processes the Reverse Traffic Packet.***

This step is the same as Step 2 except that it applies to reverse traffic. See Step 2 in this section for details.

**Example:** SPU1 receives packet (b->a) from NPU2. It checks its session table to verify that the packet belongs to the session identified by NPU2. Then it applies packet-based features configured for the NPU1's interface to the packet. It processes packet (b->a) according to the security features and other services that are configured for its flow, based on its zone and policies. (See "Zones and Policies" on page 45.)

### ***Step 7. The SPU Forwards the Reverse Traffic Packet to the NPU.***

This step is the same as Step 3 except that it applies to reverse traffic. See Step 3 in this section for details.

**Example:** SPU1 forwards packet (b->a) to NPU1. NPU1 processes any screens configured for the interface.

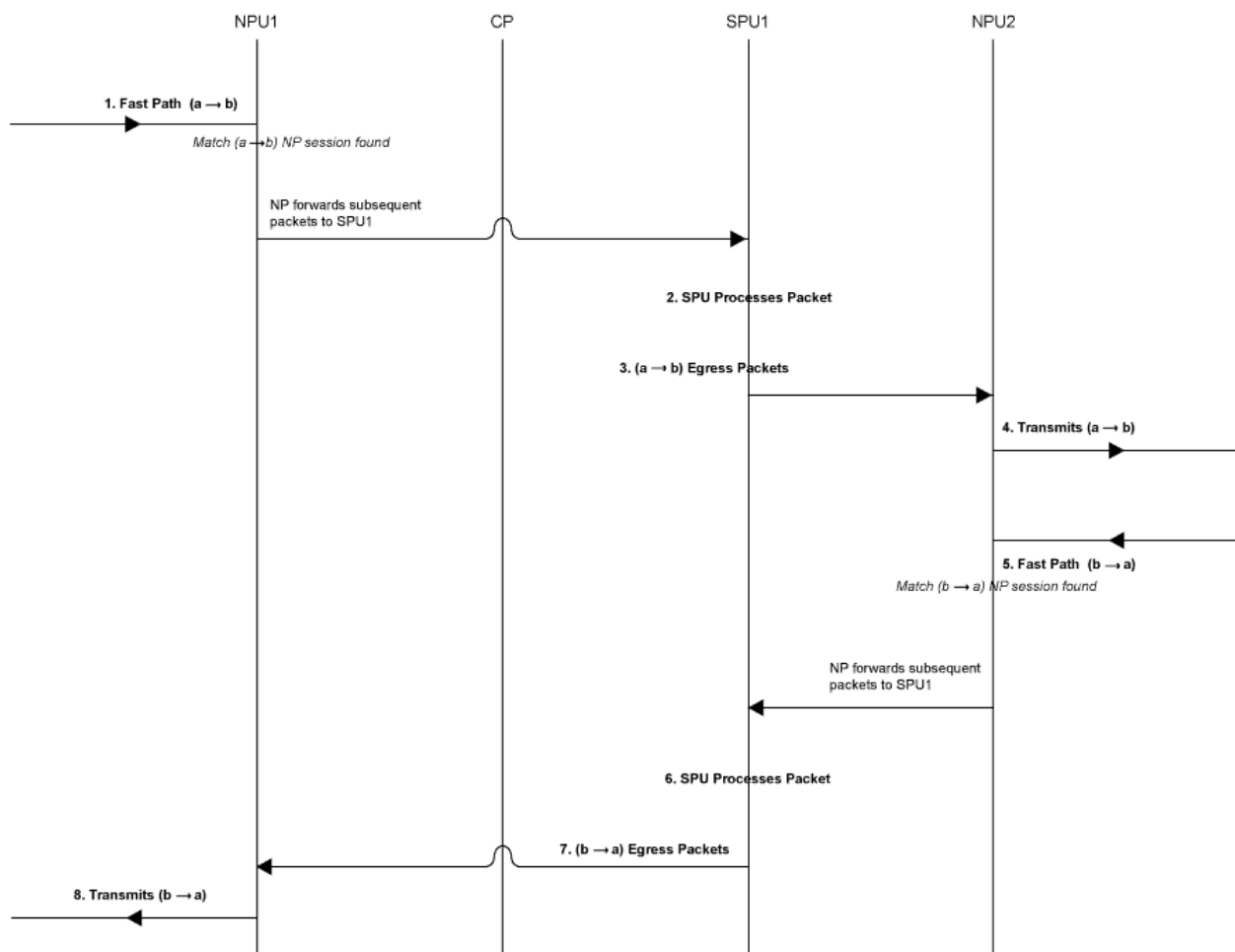
### 8. The Interface Transmits the Packet From the Device.

This step is the same as Step 4 except that it applies to reverse traffic. See Step 4 in this section for details.

Example: The interface transmits packet (b- > a) from the device.

Figure 8 on page 57 illustrates the process a packet undergoes when it reaches the services gateway and a session exists for the flow that the packet belongs to.

**Figure 8: "Packet Walk" for Fast Path Processing**



## SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 Services Gateways Overview

JUNOS software for the SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 services gateways integrates the world-class network security and routing capabilities of Juniper networks. JUNOS software for these service gateways includes the wide range of security services including policies, screens, NAT, class-of-service classifiers, and the rich, extensive

set of flow-based services that are also supported on the other devices in the SRX-series services gateways

The distributed parallel processing architecture of the SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 services gateways includes multiple processors to manage sessions and run security and other services processing. This architecture provides greater flexibility and allows for high throughput and fast performance.

Here is an overview of the main components involved in setting up a session for a packet and processing the packets as they transit the SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 services gateways:

**Services Processing Units (SPUs)**—The main processors of the SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 services gateways reside on Services Processing Cards (SPCs). They establish and manage traffic flows and perform most of the packet processing on a packet as it transits the device. Each SPU maintains a hash table for fast session lookup. The SPU performs all flow-based processing for a packet, including application of security services, classifiers, and traffic shapers. All packets that belong to the same flow are processed by the same SPU.

The SPU maintains a session table with entries for all sessions that it established and whose packets it processes. When an SPU receives a packet from an NPU, it checks its session table to ensure that the packet belongs to it.

For SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 services gateways, one SPU acts in concert performing its regular session management and flow processing functions and acting as a central point in which it arbitrates sessions and allocates resources. When an SPU performs in this manner it is said to be in combo mode.

**Central Point (CP)**—The central point is used to allocate session management to SPUs based on load balancing criteria. It distributes sessions in an intelligent way to avoid occurrences in which multiple SPUs might wrongly handle the same flow. The central point follows load balancing criteria in allocating sessions to SPUs. If the session exists, the central point forwards packets for that flow to the SPU hosting it. It also redirects packets to the correct SPU in the event that the NPU fails to do so.

For the SRX 3400 and SRX 3600, one SPU always runs in what is referred to as combo-mode in which it implements both the functionality of the central point and the flow and session management functionality. In combo-mode, the SPU and the central point share the same load-balancing thread (LBT) and packet-ordering thread (POT) infrastructure. For more information, see “Central Point and Combo-Mode Support” on page 59.

The central point maintains a global session table with information about the owner SPU of a particular session. It functions as a central repository and resource manager for the whole system.

**Routing Engine (RE)**—The routing engine runs the control plane and manages the Control Plane Processor (CPP).

## Central Point and Combo-Mode Support

The central point (CP) in the architecture has two basic flow functionalities: load balancing and traffic identification (global session matching). The central point forwards a packet to its Services Processing Unit (SPU) upon session matching, or distributes traffic to an SPU for security processing if the packet does not match any existing session.

An SPU dedicated to central point functionality is called a large central point. However, when such a dedicated SPU is not affordable, you can configure the SPU to perform normal flow processing as well as the functions of the central point. When an SPU functions in such a dual manner, it is said to be in combination or combo mode. In combo mode, the central point and SPU share the same load-balancing thread (LBT) and packet-ordering thread (POT) infrastructure. SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices always support combo-mode.

### Load Distribution in Combo Mode

The central point maintains SPU mapping table (for load distribution) that lists live SPUs with the logic SPU IDs mapped to the physical Trivial Network Protocol (TNP) addresses mapping. In combo mode, the SPU that hosts the central point is included in the table. The load distribution algorithm is adjusted based on session capacity and processing power to avoid overloading of sessions.

### Sharing Processing Power and Memory in Combo Mode

The CPU processing power in a combo-mode SPU is shared based on the platform and the number of SPUs in the system. Similarly, the CPU memory is also shared between the central point and SPU.

An SPU has multiple cores (CPUs) for networking processing. In "small" SPU combo mode, CPU functionality takes a small portion of the cores, whereas "medium" SPU combo-mode requires a larger portion of cores. The processing power for central point functionalities and flow processing is shared, based on the number of SPUs, as shown in Table 1.

**Table 54: Combo Mode Processing:**

Number of SPUs	1	2	3	4 or More than 4
SRX 3400	Small	Medium	Medium	Medium
SRX 3600	Small	Medium	Medium	Medium

## Following the Data Path for a Unicast Session

JUNOS software for the SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 services gateways is a distributed parallel processing high throughput and high performance system. This section

describes the process that the services gateway undertakes in establishing a session for packets belonging to a flow that transits the device.

To illustrate session establishment and the packet “walk” including the points at which services are applied to the packets of a flow, this example uses the simple case of a unicast session.

This packet “walk” brings together the packet-based processing and flow-based processing that the JUNOS software performs on the packet.

## **Session Lookup and Packet Match Criteria**

To determine if a packet belongs to an existing flow, the services gateway attempts to match the packet's information to that of an existing session based on the following six match criteria:

- Source address
- Destination address
- Source port
- Destination port
- Protocol
- Unique token from a given zone and virtual router

## **Understanding Session Creation: First Packet Processing**

This section explains how a session is set up to process the packets composing a flow. To illustrate the process, this section uses an example with a source “a” and a destination “b”. The direction from source to destination for the packets of the flow is referred to as (a -> b). The direction from destination to source is referred to as (b -> a).

1. A Packet Arrives at an interface on the device and the IOC processes it.

The IOC dequeues the packet and sends it to the NPU with which it communicates.

2. The NPU receives the packet from the IOC and processes it.
  - a. The NPU performs basic sanity checks on the packet and applies some screens configured for the interface to the packet.
  - b. If a session match is found, the session has already been created on an SPU that was assigned to it, so the NPU forwards the packet to the SPU for processing along with the session ID.

Example: Packet (a -> b) arrives at NPU1 from IOC1. NPU1 performs sanity checks and applies DoS screens to the packet. NPU1 checks its session table for a tuple match and no existing session is found. NPU1 forwards the packet to the central point on SPU1 for assignment to an SPU.

3. The Central Point (CP) Creates a Session with a “Pending” State.

The central point maintains a global session table that includes entries for all sessions that exist across all SPUs on the device. It participates in session creation and delegates and arbitrates session resources allocation.

This process entails the following parts:

- a. The central point checks its session table and gate table to determine if a session or a gate exists for the packet it receives from the NPU. (An NPU has forwarded a packet to the central point because its table indicates there is

no session for it. The central point verifies this information before allocating an SPU for the session.)

- b. If there is no entry that matches the packet in either table, the central point creates a pending wing for the session and selects an SPU to be used for the session, based on its load-balancing algorithm.
- c. The central point forwards the first packet of the flow to the selected SPU in a message telling it to set up a session locally to be used for the packet flow.

Example: The central point creates pending wing (a -> b) for the session. It selects SPU1 to be used for the session. It sends SPU1 the (a -> b) packet along with a message to create a session for it. (It happens to be the case that SPU1 is the SPU that runs in combo mode. Therefore, its session-management and flow-processing services are used for the session.)

#### 4. The SPU Sets Up the Session.

Each SPU, too, has a session table, which contains information about its sessions. When the SPU receives a message from the central point to set up a session, it checks its session table to ensure that a session does not already exist for the packet.

- a. If there is no existing session for the packet, the SPU sets up the session locally.
- b. The SPU sends a message to the central point, telling it to install the session.

During first-packet processing, if NAT is enabled, the SPU allocates IP address resources for NAT. In this case, the first-packet processing for the session is suspended until the NAT allocation process is completed.

The SPU adds to the queue any additional packets for the flow that it might receive until the session has been installed.

Example: SPU1 creates the session for (a -> b) and sends a message back to the central point (implemented on the same SPU) telling it to install the pending session.

#### 5. The Central Point Installs the Session.

The central point receives the install message from the SPU.

- a. It sets the state for the session's pending wing to active.
- b. It installs the reverse wing for the session as an active wing.
- c. It sends an ACK (acknowledge) message to the SPU, indicating that the session is installed.

Example: The central point receives a message from SPU1 to install the session for (a -> b). It sets the session state for (a -> b) wing to active. It installs the reverse wing (b -> a) for the session and makes it active; this allows for delivery of packets



from the reverse direction of the flow: destination (b) to be delivered to the source (a).

6. The SPU Sets Up the Session on the Ingress and Egress NPUs.

NPUs maintain information about a session for packet forwarding and delivery. Session information is set up on the egress and ingress NPUs (which sometimes are the same) so that packets can be sent directly to the SPU that manages their flows and not to the central point for redirection.

7. Fast-Path Processing Takes Place.

For the remainder of the steps entailed in packet processing, proceed to Step 1 in “Understanding Fast-Path Processing”.

### ***Understanding Fast-Path Processing***

All packets undergo fast path-processing. However, if a session exists for a packet, the packet undergoes fast-path processing and bypasses the first-packet process. When there is already a session for the packet’s flow, the packet does not transit the central point.

Here is how fast-path processing works: NPUs at the egress and ingress interfaces contain session tables that include the identification of the SPU that manages a packet’s flow. Because the NPUs have this session information, all traffic for the flow, including reverse traffic, is sent directly to that SPU for processing.

## **Packet Flow and Session Management in SRX 210 Services Gateways**

---

This section describes the process that the SRX 210 services gateway undertakes in establishing a session for packets belonging to a flow that transits the device. The flow services of the SRX 210 are single-threaded and non-distributed. Although it differs from the other SRX services gateways in this respect, the same flow model is followed and the same command line interface (CLI) is implemented.

To illustrate session establishment and the packet “walk” including the points at which services are applied to the packets of a flow, this example uses the simple case of a unicast session.

### ***Flow Processing and Session Management***

This section explains how a session is set up to process the packets composing a flow. In the following sections, the SPU refers to the dataplane thread of the SRX 210 services gateway.

At the outset, the dataplane thread fetches the packet and performs basic sanity checks on it. Then it processes the packet for stateless filters and CoS classifiers and applies some screens.

## ***First-Packet Processing***

To determine if a packet belongs to an existing flow, the services gateway attempts to match the packet's information to that of an existing session based on the following six match criteria:

- Source address
- Destination address
- Source port
- Destination port
- Protocol
- Unique token from a given zone and virtual router

The SPU checks its session table for an existing session for the packet. If no existent session is found, the SPU sets up a session for the flow. If a session match is found, the session has already been created, so the SPU performs fast-path processing on the packet.

## ***Session Creation***

In setting up the session, the SPU executes the following services for the packet:

- Screens
- Route lookup
- Policy lookup
- Service lookup
- NAT, if required

After a session is set up, it is used for all packets belonging to the flow. Packets of a flow are processed according to the parameters of its session. For the remainder of the steps entailed in packet processing, proceed to Step 1 in “Fast-Path Processing”. All packets undergo fast-path processing.

## ***Fast-Path Processing***

If a packet matches a session, JUNOS software for the SRX-series services gateways performs fast-path processing as described in the following steps. After a session has been set up for the first packet in a flow, also undergoes fast-path processing. All packets undergo fast-path processing.

1. The SPU applies flow-based security features to the packet.
  - Configured screens are applied.
  - TCP checks are performed.
  - Flow services, such as NAT, ALG, and IPsec are applied, if required.

2. The SPU prepares the packet for forwarding and transmits it.
  - Routing packet filters are applied.
  - Traffic shaping is applied.
  - Traffic prioritizing is applied.
  - Traffic scheduling is applied.
  - The packet is transmitted.

## Obtaining Information About Sessions and Terminating Them

---

You can use the commands described in this section to display information about sessions and how to terminate them.

### Obtaining Information About Sessions

You can obtain information about the sessions and packet flows active on your device, including detailed information about specific sessions. (The services gateway also displays information about failed sessions.) You can display this information to observe activity and for debugging purposes. For example, you can use the `show security flow session` command:

- To display a list of incoming and outgoing IP flows, including services
- To show the security attributes associated with a flow, for example, the policies that apply to traffic belonging to that flow
- To display the session timeout value, when the session became active, for how long it has been active, and if there is active traffic on the session

For detailed information about this command, see the JUNOS Software CLI Reference.

### Displaying Global Session Parameters

You can use the following command to obtain information about configured parameters that apply to all flows, or sessions:

```
show security flow
```

The `show security flow` configuration command displays the following information:

- **allow-dns-reply**—Identifies if unmatched incoming Domain Name System (DNS) reply packets are allowed.
- **route-change-timeout**—If enabled, displays the session timeout value to be used on a route change to a nonexistent route.
- **tcp-mss**—Shows the current configuration for the TCP maximum segment size value to be used for all TCP packets for network traffic.

- **tcp-session**—Displays all configured parameters that control session parameters, examples of which are described in “Changing Session Characteristics” on page 46.
- **syn-flood-protection-mode**—Displays the SYN Proxy mode.

For detailed information about this command, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Displaying a Summary of Sessions

You can use the following **show security flow** command to determine the kinds of sessions on your device, how many of each kind there are—for example, the number of unicast sessions and multicast sessions—the number of failed sessions, and the maximum number of sessions that the services gateway supports:

```
show security flow session summary
```

## Displaying Session and Flow Information About Sessions

You can use the following **show security flow session** command to display information about all sessions on your services gateway, including the session ID, the virtual system the session belongs to, the NAT source pool (if source NAT is used), the configured timeout value for the session and its standard timeout, and the session start time and how long the session has been active. The display also shows all standard flow information, including the direction of the flow, the source address and port, the destination address and port, the IP protocol, and the interface used for the session:

```
show security flow session
```

## Displaying Session and Flow Information About a Specific Session

When you know the session identifier, you can use the following command to display all session and flow information for a specific session rather than for all sessions.

```
show security flow session session-identifier 40000381
```

## Using Filters to Display Session and Flow Information

You can display flow and session information about one or more sessions by specifying a filter as an argument to the **show security flow session** command. You can use the following filters: **source-prefix**, **destination-prefix**, **source-port**, **destination-port**, **protocol**, **interface-name**, **resource-manager**, **tunnel**, and **application**. The services gateway displays the information for each session followed by a line specifying the number of sessions reported on. Here is an example of the command using the **source-prefix** filter:

```
show security flow session source-prefix 10/8
```

## **Terminating Sessions**

You can use the clear command to terminate sessions. You can clear all sessions, including sessions of a particular application type, sessions that use a specific destination port, sessions that use a specific interface or port, sessions that use a certain IP protocol, sessions that match a source prefix, and resource manager sessions.

### **Terminating All Sessions**

You can use the following command to terminate all sessions except tunnel and resource manager sessions. The command output shows the number of sessions cleared. Be aware that this command terminates the management session through which the clear command is issued.

```
clear security flow session all
```

### **Terminating a Specific Session**

You can use the following command to terminate the session whose session ID you specify:

```
clear security flow session session-identifier 40000381
```

### **Using Filters to Specify the Sessions to Be Terminated**

You can terminate one or more sessions based on the filter parameter you specify for the clear command. The following example uses the protocol as a filter:

```
clear security flow session protocol 89
```



## Chapter 7

# Security Zones and Interfaces

Interfaces act as a doorway through which traffic enters and exits a J-series Services Router or SRX-series services gateway. Many interfaces can share exactly the same security requirements; however, different interfaces can also have different security requirements for inbound and outbound data packets. Interfaces with identical security requirements can be grouped together into a single *security zone*.

This section includes:

- Understanding Security Zones on page 69
- Creating Security Zones on page 71
- Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration on page 73
- Configuring Host Inbound Traffic on page 75
- Configuring Protocols on page 80
- Configuring the TCP-Reset Parameter on page 82
- Understanding Security Zone Interfaces on page 83
- Understanding Interface Ports on page 84
- Configuring Interfaces—Quick Configuration on page 84
- Configuring a Gigabit Ethernet Interface—Quick Configuration on page 85

## Understanding Security Zones

---

A *security zone* is a collection of one or more network segments requiring the regulation of inbound and outbound traffic through policies.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Policies” on page 432.

Security zones are logical entities to which one or more interfaces are bound. With many types of Juniper Networks devices, you can define multiple security zones, the exact number of which you determine based on your network needs.

On a single device, you can configure multiple security zones, dividing the network into segments to which you can apply various security options to satisfy the needs of each segment. At a minimum, you must define two security zones, basically to

protect one area of the network from the other. On some security platforms, you can define many security zones, bringing finer granularity to your network security design—and without deploying multiple security appliances to do so.

From the perspective of security policies, traffic enters into one security zone and goes out on another security zone. This combination of a **from-zone** and a **to-zone** is defined as a *context*. Each context contains an ordered list of policies. For more information on policies, see “Security Policies Overview” on page 431.

JUNOS software supports functional zones and security zones.

This topic covers:

- Functional Zone on page 70
- Security Zone on page 70
- Related Topics on page 71

## **Functional Zone**

A functional zone is used for special purposes, like management interfaces. Currently, only the management (MGT) zone is supported. Management zones have the following properties:

- Management zones host management interfaces.
- Traffic entering management zones does not match policies; therefore, traffic cannot transit out of any other interface if it was received in the management interface.
- Management zones can only be used for dedicated management interfaces.

## **Security Zone**

Security zones are the building blocks for policies; they are logical entities to which one or more interfaces are bound. Security zones provide a means of distinguishing groups of hosts (user systems and other hosts, such as servers) and their resources from one another in order to apply different security measures to them.

Security zones have the following properties:

- Policies—Active security policies that enforce rules for the transit traffic, in terms of what traffic can pass through the firewall, and the actions that need to take place on the traffic as it passes through the firewall. For more information, see “Security Policies Overview” on page 431.
- Screens—A Juniper Networks stateful firewall secures a network by inspecting, and then allowing or denying, all connection attempts that require passage from one security zone to another. For every security zone, and the MGT zone, you can enable a set of predefined screen options that detect and block various kinds of traffic that the device determines as potentially harmful. For more information, see “Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview” on page 91.



- Address books—IP addresses and address sets that make up an address book to identify its members so that you can apply policies to them. For more information, see “Configuring Address Books” on page 460.
- TCP-RST—When this feature is enabled, the system sends a TCP segment with the RESET flag set when traffic arrives that does not match an existing session and does not have the SYNchronize flag set.
- Interfaces—List of interfaces in the zone.

Security zones have the following preconfigured zones:

- **junos-global zone**—Defined in the JUNOS defaults and cannot be configured by the user. The global zone serves as a storage area for static NAT addresses and can be used in policies like any other security zone.
- **Trust zone**—Available only in the factory configuration and is used for initial connection to the device. After you commit a configuration, the trust zone can be overridden.

## Related Topics

- Creating Security Zones on page 71
- Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration on page 73
- Configuring the TCP-Reset Parameter on page 82

## Creating Security Zones

---

For best performance, always save your changes and reboot after creating a zone.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding Security Zones on page 69
  - Configuring Host Inbound Traffic on page 75
  - Configuring the TCP-Reset Parameter on page 82
- 

When you configure a security zone, you can specify many of its parameters at the same time. For purposes of illustration, this section only shows how to configure zones and assign interfaces to them.

To configure a zone, you can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 72
- CLI Configuration on page 72
- Related Topics on page 72

## J-Web Configuration

To configure a zone using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ABC** and click **OK**.

To configure an interface and assign it to the created security zone:

1. Corresponding to the security zone name **ABC zone**, click **Edit**.
2. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
3. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1** and click **OK**.
4. Next to Unit, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Interface unit number box, type **1**.
6. Under Family, select **Inet** and click **OK**.
7. Next to Address book, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
8. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Address name box, type **10.12.12.1/24** and click **OK**.
10. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

To configure the interface and its IP address for the **ABC zone**, enter the following statement in Edit mode:

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 1 family inet address 10.12.12.1/24
```

To configure the **ABC zone** and assign the interface to it, enter the following statement in Edit mode:

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.1
```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Security Zones on page 69
- Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration on page 73

## Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration

---

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure security zones. See Figure 9 on page 74.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Security Zones on page 69
- Creating Security Zones on page 71

---

Figure 9 on page 74 shows the Quick Configuration Zones page.

**Figure 9: Quick Configuration Zones Page**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Zones](#)

---

**Quick Configuration**

**Zones** [Add a Security Zone](#)

---

\* **Zone Name**

---

**Traffic Control Options**

Asymmetric VPN ☐ ?

TCP RST ☐ ?

Binding Screen  ?

---

**Host Inbound Traffic Option**

**System Services**

☐ **Allow All**  ?

**Except**  ?

?

☐ **Allow Selected Services**  ?

?

**Protocols**

☐ **Allow All**  ?

**Except**  ?

?

☐ **Allow Selected Protocols**  ?

?

---

**Interfaces Configuration**

**Interfaces**

**Interfaces in the zone**

**Interfaces out of the zone**  ?

?

---

To configure security zones with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Zones**.
2. Click **Add** to create new zones.
3. Fill the form as shown in Table 55 on page 75.
4. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.

- To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 55: Security Zone Options**

Zone Name	Name of the zone for which you are enabling policies
Traffic Control Options	<p>Asymmetric VPN—Allows any incoming VPN traffic in a zone to match any applicable VPN session, regardless of the origin for the original VPN tunnel. This feature allows free routing of VPN traffic between two or more sites when there are multiple possible paths for VPN traffic.</p> <p>TCP RST—Select this check box to enable the tcp-rst feature, which sends a TCP segment with the RESET flag set to 1 in response to a TCP segment with any flag set other than SYN and which does not belong to an existing session</p>
Host Inbound Traffic Option	<p>System Services—Configure services to permit inbound traffic of the selected type to be transmitted to hosts within the zone, provided there is a policy that permits it. You can select <b>Allow All</b> to permit all services, or you can select <b>Except</b> and <b>Allow Selected Services</b> to exclude selected services.</p> <p>Protocols—Configure protocols to permit inbound traffic of the selected type to be transmitted to hosts with the zone. You can select <b>Allow All</b> to permit all protocols, or use the <b>Except</b> and <b>Allow Selected Protocols</b> options to exclude selected protocols.</p>
Interfaces Configuration	Select the interfaces that you want included in the security zone.

## Configuring Host Inbound Traffic

This topic describes how to configure zones to specify the kinds of traffic that can reach the device from systems that are directly connected to its interfaces.

- You can configure these parameters at the zone level, in which case they affect all interfaces of the zone, or at the interface level. (Interface configuration overrides that of the zone.)
- You must enable all expected host-inbound traffic. Inbound traffic from devices directly connected to the device's interfaces is dropped by default.
- You can also configure a zone's interfaces to allow for use by dynamic routing protocols.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Security Zones” on page 69.

This feature allows you to protect the device against attacks launched from systems that are directly connected to any of its interfaces. It also enables you to selectively configure the device so that administrators can manage it using certain applications on certain interfaces. You can prohibit use of other applications on the same or different interfaces of a zone. For example, most likely you would want to ensure that outsiders not use the Telnet application from the Internet to log into the device because you would not want them connecting to your system.

This topic covers:

- System Services on page 76
- J-Web Configuration on page 77
- CLI Configuration on page 78
- Related Topics on page 80

## System Services

Any host-inbound traffic that corresponds to a service listed under this option is allowed. For example, suppose a user whose system was directly connected to interface 1.3.1.4 in zone ABC wanted to telnet into interface 2.1.2.4 in zone ABC. For this action to be allowed, the telnet application must be configured as an allowed inbound service on both interfaces and a policy must permit the traffic transmission.

Table 56 on page 76 lists the supported services. A value of **all** indicates that traffic from all of the following services is allowed inbound on the specified interfaces (of the zone, or a single specified interface)

**Table 56: Supported System Services**

Supported System Services			
all	http	rpm	traceroute
bootp	https	rsh	xnm-clear-text
dhcp	ike	snmp	xnm-ssl
finger	netconf	snmp-trap	
ftp	ping	ssh	
ident-reset	rlogin	telnet	



**NOTE:** All services listed Table 56 on page 76 (except DHCP and BOOTP) can be configured either per zone or per interface. A DHCP server is configured only per interface because the incoming interface must be known by the server to be able to send out DHCP replies.

To configure zones to allow use of supported application services as inbound services, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

### ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure the **ABC** zone to allow use of all the supported application services as inbound services using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration>View and Edit>Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ABC** and click **OK**.
6. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. To allow the security zone to use all of the supported application services, next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
8. From the Service name list, select **All** and click **OK**.

To enable **FTP** and **telnet** for interfaces such as **ge-0/0/1.3** and **ge-0/0/1**:

1. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
2. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.3** and click **OK**.
3. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
5. From the Service name list, select **ftp** and click **OK**.
6. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.1** and click **OK**.
8. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
9. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
10. From the Service name list, select **telnet** and click **OK**.

To enable **FTP** and **telnet** for interface **ge-0/0/1.3** and only **SNMP** for interface **ge-0.0/1.1**:

1. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
2. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.3** and click **OK**.
3. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
5. From the Service name list, select **ftp** and **telnet**, and click **OK**.
6. To enable **SNMP** for interface **ge-0.0/1.1**:

7. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.1** and click **OK**.
9. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
10. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
11. From the Service name list, select **snmp** and click **OK**.

To allow all configurable system services on the interface **ge-0/0/1.3**, except Telnet:

1. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
2. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.3** and click **OK**.
3. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
5. From the Service name list, select **all** and click **OK**.
6. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
7. From the Service name list, select **telnet** and click **OK**.
8. Select the **Except** check box and click **OK**.
9. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

To configure the **ABC** zone to allow use of all of the supported application services as inbound services, enter the following statements in Configure mode:

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC host-inbound-traffic system-services
all
```

In the following example, **FTP** and **telnet** are enabled for interfaces **ge-0/0/1.3** and **ge-0/0/1.1**. You must configure **FTP** and **telnet** at the interface level, not the zone level. For incoming **FTP** and **telnet** requests to be recognized, the interface must be known to the server.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services ftp
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.1
host-inbound-traffic system-services telnet
```

In the following example, **FTP** and **telnet** are enabled for interface **ge-0/0/1.3** and only **SNMP** is enabled for interface **ge-0/0/1.1**.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services ftp
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services telnet
```



```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.1
host-inbound-traffic system-services snmp
```

You can use the `all` option to allow all configurable system services and use the `except` option to exclude certain services. In this example, all configurable system services are permitted on interface `ge-0/0/1.3`, except Telnet.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services all
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services telnet except
```

In the following example, all configurable system services are permitted on interface `ge-0/0/1.1`, except HTTP and FTP.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.1
host-inbound-traffic system-services all
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.1
host-inbound-traffic system-services http except
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services ftp except
```

In the following example, telnet and FTP are enabled for security zone ABC/interface `ge-0/0/1.1`, but there is an interface override that takes priority and only SNMP is allowed on interface `ge-0/0/1.3`.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC host-inbound-traffic system-services
telnet
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC host-inbound-traffic system-services
ftp
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services snmp
```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

Another view of the previous configuration:

```
security zones
security-zone ABC {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      telnet;
      ftp;
    }
  }
}
interfaces {
  ge-0/0/1.1;
  ge-0/0/1.3 {
    host-inbound-traffic {
      system-services {
        snmp;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  }
}

```

For more information on host-inbound traffic parameters, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Security Zones on page 69
- Configuring the TCP-Reset Parameter on page 82
- Creating Security Zones on page 71

## Configuring Protocols

Any host-inbound traffic that corresponds to a protocol listed under this option is allowed. For example, if anywhere in the configuration, you map a protocol to a port number other than the default, you can specify the protocol in the host-inbound traffic option, and the new port number will be used. Table 57 on page 80 lists the supported protocols. A value of **all** indicates that traffic from all of the following protocols is allowed inbound on the specified interfaces (of the zone, or a single specified interface).

**Table 57: Supported Inbound System Protocols**

Supported System Services			
all	igmp	pgm	sap
bfd	ldp	pim	vrrp
bgp	msdp	rip	
dlsn	nhrp	router-discovery	
dvmrp	ospf	rsvp	



**NOTE:** If DVMRP or PIM is enabled for an interface, IGMP and MLD host-inbound traffic is enabled automatically. Because ISIS uses OSI addressing and should not generate any IP traffic, there is no host-inbound traffic option for the ISIS protocol.

To use supported protocols for host-inbound traffic, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 81
- CLI Configuration on page 81
- Related Topics on page 82

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure the **ABC** zone to allow use of all the supported protocols for host inbound traffic using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ABC** and click **OK**.

To configure an interface for the created security zone, corresponding to the security zone name **ABC** and click **Edit**.

1. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
2. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.3** and click **OK**.
3. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
5. From the Service name list, select **ping** and click **OK**.
6. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
7. From the Service name list, select **ssh** and click **OK**.
8. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
9. From the Service name list, select **traceroute** and click **OK**.
10. Next to Protocols, click **Add new entry**.
11. In the Protocol name box, type **ospf** and click **OK**.
12. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## ***CLI Configuration***

In the following example, ping, ssh, traceroute, and ospf host-inbound traffic is enabled for interface ge-0.0/1.1

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services ping
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services ssh
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.3
host-inbound-traffic system-services traceroute
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC interfaces ge-0/0/1.1
host-inbound-traffic protocols ospf
```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

Another view of the previous configuration:

```
security zones security-zone ABC {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/0.33 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          ping;
          ssh;
          traceroute;
        }
        protocols {
          ospf;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

For more information on host-inbound protocols configuration, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Security Zones on page 69
- Creating Security Zones on page 71
- Configuring Host Inbound Traffic on page 75

## Configuring the TCP-Reset Parameter

---

When the TCP-RST feature is enabled, the system sends a TCP segment with the RESET flag set when traffic arrives that does not match an existing session and does not have the SYNchronize flag set.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Security Zones” on page 69.

To configure the TCP-Reset parameter for the zone **ABC**, use either J-Web configuration or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 83
- CLI Configuration on page 83
- Related Topics on page 83

## J-Web Configuration

To configure the TCP-Reset parameter for the zone **ABC** using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ABC**.
6. To set the parameter for the **ABC** zone, select the **Tcp rst** check box and click **OK**.
7. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

To set the parameter for the zone **ABC**, enter the following statement in configure mode:

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone ABC tcp-rst
```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

For more information on TCP-RST configuration, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Security Zones on page 69
- Configuring Host Inbound Traffic on page 75

## Understanding Security Zone Interfaces

An interface for a security zone can be thought of as a doorway through which TCP/IP traffic can pass between that zone and any other zone.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Security Zones” on page 69.

Through the policies you define, you can permit traffic between zones to flow in one direction or in both. With the routes that you define, you specify the interfaces that traffic from one zone to another must use. Because you can bind multiple interfaces to a zone, the routes you chart are important for directing traffic to the interfaces of your choice.

## Understanding Interface Ports

---

On J-series Services Routers, interface ports for the system are located on Physical Interface Modules (PIMs) that you can install in slots on the device. In addition, each device has four built-in Gigabit Ethernet ports in slot 0. Each physical port can have many logical interfaces configured with properties different from the port's other logical units.

Interfaces are named by type, slot number, module number (always 0), port number, and the logical unit number. Port numbering starts with 0. Interface names have the following format:

`type-pim/0/port.logical-unit-number`

For example, an interface on port 1 of a T1 PIM installed in slot 3 is named `t1-3/0/1`. Logical unit 1 on the interface is named `t1-3/0/1.1`. The built-in Gigabit Ethernet interfaces are named `ge-0/0/0` through `ge-0/0/3`.

For more information about interfaces and interface names, see the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.

## Related Topics

- Creating Security Zones on page 71
- Configuring Interfaces—Quick Configuration on page 84

## Configuring Interfaces—Quick Configuration

---

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure interfaces. See Figure 10 on page 85.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Security Zones on page 69
- Creating Security Zones on page 71
- Understanding Security Zone Interfaces on page 83

A list of the network interfaces available on the routing platform appears, as shown in Figure 10 on page 85. The third column indicates whether the interface has been configured.

**Figure 10: Quick Configuration Interfaces Page**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Interfaces](#)

Quick Configuration

### Interfaces

Interface Name	Link State	Configured	Description
<a href="#">ge-0/0/0</a>	Down	No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/0'
<a href="#">ls-0/0/0</a>	Up	No	Link Services Interface 'ls-0/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/1</a>	Up	No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/1'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/2</a>	Up	No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/2'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/3</a>	Down	No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/3'
<a href="#">fxp0</a>	Up	Yes	Management Interface 'fxp0'
<a href="#">fxp0.0</a>	Up	Yes	Logical Unit 0 on Management Interface 'fxp0'
<a href="#">lo0</a>	Up	Yes	Loopback Interface 'lo0'
<a href="#">lo0.0</a>	Up	Yes	Logical Unit 0 on Loopback Interface 'lo0'
<a href="#">lo0.16384</a>	Up	No	Logical Unit 16384 on Loopback Interface 'lo0'
<a href="#">pp0</a>	Up	No	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet Interface 'pp0'

OK Cancel Apply

To configure a network interface with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration>Quick Configuration>Interfaces**. For information about interface names, see the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
2. Configure properties for a network interface by selecting the interface name and following the instructions in “Configuring a Gigabit Ethernet Interface—Quick Configuration” on page 85.

## Configuring a Gigabit Ethernet Interface—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure a Gigabit Ethernet interface.

Figure 11 on page 86 shows the Gigabit Ethernet Interface Quick Configuration page.

**Figure 11: Gigabit Ethernet Interface Quick Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Interfaces](#)

---

Quick Configuration

---

**Interfaces** Physical Interface: 'ge-0/0/0'

---

**Logical Interfaces**

No logical interfaces configured.

**Physical Interface Description**

**MTU (bytes)**  

**Per Unit Scheduler** ☐ 


---

**Gigabit Ethernet Options**

**Loopback** ☐ Yes ☐ No 

**Auto Negotiation** ☐ Yes ☐ No 

**Auto Negotiation Remote Fault**

**Source MAC Address Filters**

---

1. Select **Configuration>Quick Configuration>Interfaces**. The properties you can configure on a Gigabit Ethernet interface appear, as shown in Figure 11 on page 86.
2. Fill in the information as described in Table 58 on page 87.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.
4. Verify that the Gigabit Ethernet interface is configured correctly, by seeing the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.



**Table 58: Gigabit Ethernet Quick Configuration Page Summary**

Field	Function	Actions
<b>Logical Interfaces</b>		
Add Logical Interfaces	Defines one or more logical units that you connect to this physical Gigabit Ethernet interface. You must define at least one logical unit for a Gigabit Ethernet interface.	Click <b>Add</b> .
Logical Interface Description	(Optional) Describes the logical interface.	Type a text description of the logical interface to more clearly identify it in monitoring displays.
IPv4 Addresses and Prefixes	Specifies one or more IPv4 addresses for the interface.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Type one or more IPv4 addresses and prefixes. For example:  <b>10.10.10.1/24.</b></li> <li>2. Click <b>Add</b>.</li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>. To delete an IP address and prefix, select them in the Source Addresses and Prefixes dialog box, then click <b>Delete</b></li> </ol>
ARP Address	<p>Enables the device to create a static Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) entry for this interface by specifying the IP address of a node to associate with its media access control (MAC) address. The IP address must be in the same subnet as the IPv4 address or prefix of the interface you are configuring.</p> <p>Static ARP entries associate the IP addresses and MAC addresses of nodes on the same subnet, enabling the device to respond to ARP requests having destination addresses that are not local to the incoming interface.</p>	Type an IPv4 address that you want to associate with the MAC address—for example, <b>10.10.10.1</b> .
MAC Address	<p>Specifies the hardware media access control (MAC) address associated with the ARP address.</p> <p>The MAC address uniquely identifies the system and is expressed in the following format: mm:mm:mm:ss:ss:ss. The first three octets denote the hardware manufacturer ID, and the last three are serial numbers identifying the device.</p>	<p>Type the MAC address to be mapped to the ARP entry—for example,</p> <p><b>00:12:1E:A9:8A:80.</b></p>
Publish	Enables the device to reply to ARP requests for the specified address.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To enable publishing, select the check box.</li> <li>■ To disable publishing, clear the check box.</li> </ul>
Physical Interface Description	(Optional) Adds supplementary information about the physical Gigabit Ethernet interface.	Type a text description of the Gigabit Ethernet interface to more clearly identify it in monitoring displays.

**Table 58: Gigabit Ethernet Quick Configuration Page Summary** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Actions
MTU (bytes)	Specifies the maximum transmission unit size for the Gigabit Ethernet interface.	Type a value between 256 and 9014 bytes. The default MTU for Gigabit Ethernet interfaces is 1514.
Per Unit Scheduler	<p>Enables scheduling on logical interfaces.</p> <p>Allows you to configure multiple output queues on a logical interface and associate an output scheduler and shaping rate with the queues.</p>	<p>■ To enable scheduling, select the check box.</p> <p>■ To disable scheduling, clear the check box.</p>
<b>Gigabit Ethernet Options</b>		
Loopback	Enables or disables the loopback option.	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable the loopback diagnostic option, or select <b>No</b> to disable the loopback option. By default, loopback is disabled.
Auto Negotiation	<p>Enables or disables auto negotiation.</p> <p>By default, Gigabit Ethernet interfaces auto negotiate the link mode and speed settings. If you disable auto negotiation and do not manually configure link mode and speed, the link is negotiated at 1000 Mbps, full duplex.</p> <p>When you configure both the link mode and the speed, the link negotiates with the manually configured settings whether auto negotiation is enabled or disabled.</p>	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable auto negotiation, or select <b>No</b> to disable it. By default, auto-negotiation is enabled.
Auto Negotiation Remote Fault	Indicates the auto negotiation remote fault value.	Select the auto-negotiation remote fault value from the list of options given. This field is enabled only if auto negotiation is enabled.
Source MAC Address Filters	Displays the list of media access control (MAC) addresses from which you want to receive packets on this interface.	To add MAC addresses, type them in the boxes above the Add button, then click <b>Add</b> .

## Chapter 8

# Attack Detection and Prevention

An Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP), also known as a *stateful firewall*, detects and prevents attacks in network traffic.

An exploit can be either an information-gathering probe or an attack to compromise, disable, or harm a network or network resource. In some cases, the distinction between the two objectives of an exploit can be unclear. For example, a barrage of TCP SYN segments might be an IP address sweep with the intent of triggering responses from active hosts, or it might be a SYN flood attack with the intent of overwhelming a network so that it can no longer function properly. Furthermore, because an attacker usually precedes an attack by performing reconnaissance on the target, we can consider information-gathering efforts as a precursor to an impending attack—that is, they constitute the first stage of an attack. Thus, the term *exploit* encompasses both reconnaissance and attack activities, and the distinction between the two is not always clear.

Juniper Networks provides various detection methods and defense mechanisms at the zone and policy levels to combat exploits at all stages of their execution:

- Screen options at the zone level
- Firewall policies at the inter-, intra-, and super-zone policy levels (*super-zone* here means in global policies, where no security zones are referenced).

To secure all connection attempts, JUNOS software uses a dynamic packet-filtering method known as *stateful inspection*. Using this method, JUNOS software identifies various components in the IP packet and TCP segment headers—source and destination IP addresses, source and destination port numbers, and packet sequence numbers—and maintains the state of each TCP session and pseudo UDP session traversing the firewall. (JUNOS software also modifies session states based on changing elements such as dynamic port changes or session termination.) When a responding TCP packet arrives, JUNOS software compares the information reported in its header with the state of its associated session stored in the inspection table. If they match, the responding packet is allowed to pass the firewall. If the two do not match, the packet is dropped.

JUNOS software Screen options secure a zone by inspecting, then allowing or denying, all connection attempts that require crossing an interface bound to that zone. JUNOS software then applies firewall policies, which can contain content filtering and Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) components, to the traffic that passes the Screen filters.



**NOTE:** SRX-3400/3600 and SRX-5600/5800 devices support SNMP trap.

---

This section includes:

- Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview on page 91
- Understanding IP Address Sweeps on page 92
- Blocking IP Address Sweeps on page 93
- Understanding Port Scanning on page 94
- Blocking Port Scans on page 96
- Understanding Network Reconnaissance Using IP Options on page 97
- Detecting Packets That Use IP Options for Reconnaissance on page 99
- Understanding Operating System Probes on page 101
- Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set on page 104
- Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set on page 105
- Blocking Packets with No Flags Set on page 106
- Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques on page 107
- Thwarting a FIN Scan on page 112
- Setting TCP SYN Checking on page 113
- Setting Strict Syn Checking on page 114
- Blocking IP Spoofing on page 115
- Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 117
- Detecting Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 118
- Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview on page 120
- Understanding ICMP Fragment Protection on page 120
- Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets on page 121
- Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection on page 123
- Blocking Large ICMP Packets on page 124
- Understanding Bad IP Option Protection on page 125
- Detecting and Blocking IP Packets with Incorrectly Formatted Options on page 126
- Understanding Unknown Protocol Protection on page 128
- Dropping Packets Using an Unknown Protocol on page 129
- Understanding IP Packet Fragment Protection on page 130
- Dropping Fragmented IP Packets on page 131
- Understanding SYN Fragment Protection on page 132
- Dropping IP Packets Containing SYN Fragments on page 134
- Denial-of-Service Attack Overview on page 135
- Firewall DoS Attacks Overview on page 136

- Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks on page 136
- Setting Source-Based Session Limits on page 139
- Setting Destination-Based Session Limits on page 140
- Understanding SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attacks on page 142
- Enabling Protection Against a SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attack on page 142
- Network DoS Attacks Overview on page 144
- Understanding SYN Flood Attacks on page 144
- Example: SYN Flood Protection on page 150
- Enabling SYN Flood Protection on page 156
- Understanding SYN Cookie Protection on page 157
- Enabling SYN Cookie Protection on page 158
- Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks on page 160
- Enabling ICMP Flood Protection on page 161
- Understanding UDP Flood Attacks on page 163
- Enabling UDP Flood Protection on page 164
- Understanding Land Attacks on page 165
- Enabling Protection Against a Land Attack on page 166
- OS-Specific DoS Attacks Overview on page 168
- Understanding Ping of Death Attacks on page 168
- Enabling Protection Against a Ping of Death Attack on page 169
- Understanding Teardrop Attacks on page 170
- Enabling Protection Against a Teardrop Attack on page 172
- Understanding WinNuke Attacks on page 173
- Enabling Protection Against a WinNuke Attack on page 174
- Configuring Firewall Screen Options—Quick Configuration on page 176
- Verifying Application Security Information Using Trace Options on page 181

## Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview

---

Attackers can better plan their attack when they first know the layout of the targeted network (which IP addresses have active hosts), the possible entry points (which port numbers are active on the active hosts), and the constitution of their victims (which operating system the active hosts are running). To gain this information, attackers must perform reconnaissance.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Attack Detection and Prevention” on page 89.

Juniper Networks provides several screen options to deter attackers' reconnaissance efforts and thereby hinder them from obtaining valuable information about the protected network and network resources.

### **Related Topics**

- Understanding IP Address Sweeps on page 92
- Understanding Port Scanning on page 94
- Understanding Network Reconnaissance Using IP Options on page 97
- Understanding Operating System Probes on page 101
- Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques on page 107

## **Understanding IP Address Sweeps**

---

An address sweep occurs when one source IP address sends a defined number of ICMP packets to different hosts within a defined interval (5000 microseconds is the default). The purpose of this attack is to send ICMP packets—typically echo requests—to various hosts in the hopes that at least one replies, thus uncovering an address to target.

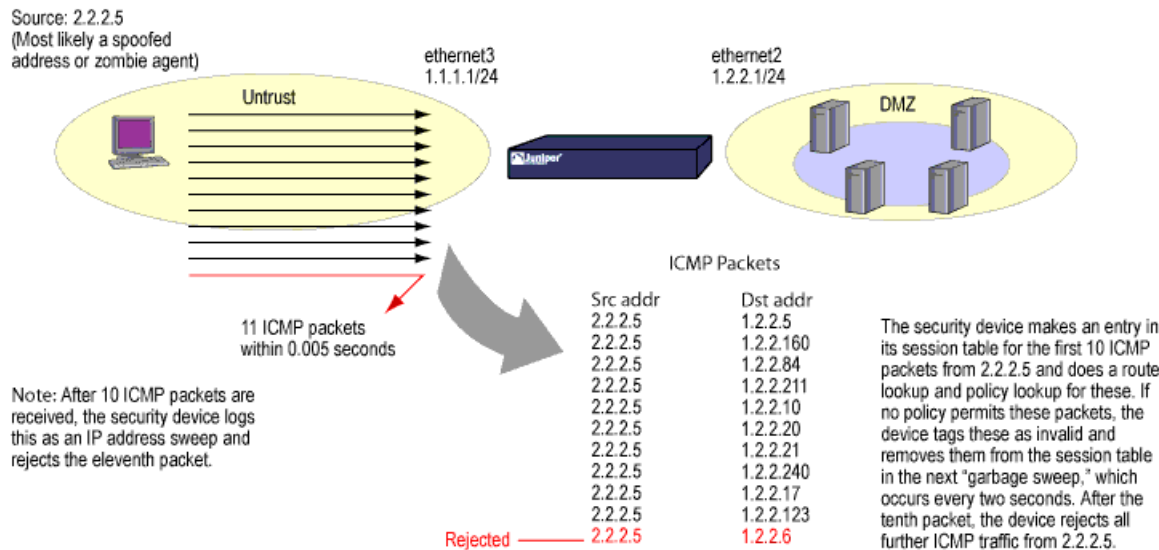
### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read:

- Attack Detection and Prevention on page 89
- Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview on page 91

The Juniper Networks device internally logs the number of ICMP packets to different addresses from one remote source. Using the default settings, if a remote host sends ICMP traffic to 10 addresses in 0.005 seconds (5000 microseconds), then the device flags this as an address sweep attack and rejects the 11th and all further ICMP packets from that host for the remainder of the specified threshold time period. See Figure 12 on page 93.

Figure 12: Address Sweep



Consider enabling this screen option for a security zone only if there is a policy permitting ICMP traffic from that zone. Otherwise, you do not need to enable it. The lack of such a policy denies all ICMP traffic from that zone, precluding an attacker from successfully performing an IP address sweep anyway.

Related Topics

- Blocking IP Address Sweeps on page 93

Blocking IP Address Sweeps

Before You Begin

For background information, read "Understanding IP Address Sweeps" on page 92.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to block IP address sweeps originating in a particular security zone.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 93
- CLI Configuration on page 94
- Related Topics on page 94

J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **5000-ip-sweep**.
6. Next to Icmp, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Ip sweep, select the check box and click **Configure**.
8. In the Threshold box, type **5000** and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **5000-ip-sweep** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option 5000-ip-sweep icmp ip-sweep threshold
5000
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen 5000-ip-sweep
```



**NOTE:** The value unit is in microseconds. The default value is 5000 microseconds.

## Related Topics

- Attack Detection and Prevention on page 89
- Understanding Port Scanning on page 94

## Understanding Port Scanning

A port scan occurs when one source IP address sends IP packets containing TCP SYN segments to a defined number of different ports at the same destination IP address within a defined interval (5000 microseconds is the default). The purpose of this



attack is to scan the available services in the hopes that at least one port will respond, thus identifying a service to target.

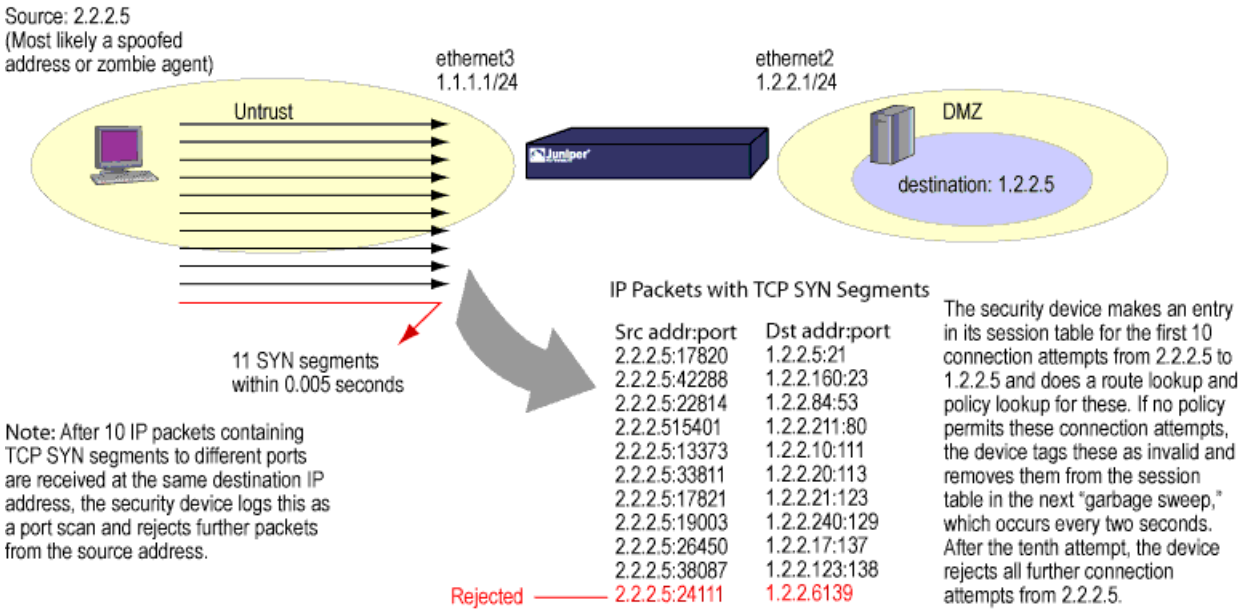
**Before You Begin**

For background information, read:

- Attack Detection and Prevention on page 89
- Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview on page 91

JUNOS software internally logs the number of different ports scanned from one remote source. Using the default settings, if a remote host scans 10 ports in 0.005 seconds (5000 microseconds), then the device flags this as a port scan attack and rejects all further packets from the remote source, regardless of the destination IP address, for the remainder of the specified timeout period. See Figure 13 on page 95.

Figure 13: Port Scan



Related Topics

- Blocking Port Scans on page 96
- Blocking IP Address Sweeps on page 93

## Blocking Port Scans

---

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Port Scanning” on page 94.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to block port scans originating in a particular security zone.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 96
- CLI Configuration on page 96
- Related Topics on page 96

### J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Screen**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Ids option**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **5000-port-scan**.
6. Next to **Tcp**, click **Configure**.
7. Next to **Port scan**, select the check box and click **Configure**.
8. In the **Threshold** box, type **5000** and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

### CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option 5000-port-scan tcp port-scan threshold 5000
```



**NOTE:** The value unit is in microseconds. The default value is 5000 microseconds.

---

### Related Topics

- Attack Detection and Prevention on page 89
- Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview on page 91

- Understanding Port Scanning on page 94

Understanding Network Reconnaissance Using IP Options

The Internet Protocol standard RFC 791, *Internet Protocol*, specifies a set of options to provide special routing controls, diagnostic tools, and security.

Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Attack Detection and Prevention on page 89
- Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview on page 91

RFC 791 states that these options are “ unnecessary for the most common communications” and, in reality, they rarely appear in IP packet headers. These options appear after the destination address in an IP packet header, as shown in Figure 14 on page 97. When they do appear, they are frequently being put to some illegitimate use.

Figure 14: Routing Options

Version	Header	Type of Service	Total Packet Length (in Bytes)			
Identification			0	D	M	Fragment Offset
Time to Live (TTL)		Protocol		Header Checksum		
Source Address						
Destination Address						
Options						
Payload						

This topic covers:

- Uses for IP Packet Header Options on page 97
- Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance on page 99
- Related Topics on page 99

Uses for IP Packet Header Options

Table 59 on page 97 lists the IP options and their accompanying attributes.

Table 59: IP Options and Attributes

Type	Class	Number	Length	Intended Use	Nefarious Use
End of Options	0*	0	0	Indicates the end of one or more IP options.	None.
No Options	0	1	0	Indicates there are no IP options in the header.	None.

**Table 59: IP Options and Attributes** (continued)

Type	Class	Number	Length	Intended Use	Nefarious Use
Security	0	2	11 bits	Provides a way for hosts to send security, TCC (closed user group) parameters, and Handling Restriction Codes compatible with Department of Defense (DoD) requirements. (This option, as specified in RFC 791, <i>Internet Protocol</i> , and RFC 1038, <i>Revised IP Security Option</i> , is obsolete.)	Unknown. However, because it is obsolete, its presence in an IP header is suspect.
Loose Source Route	0	3	Varies	Specifies a partial route list for a packet to take on its journey from source to destination. The packet must proceed in the order of addresses specified, but it is allowed to pass through other devices in between those specified.	Evasion. The attacker can use the specified routes to hide the true source of a packet or to gain access to a protected network. (See “Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117.)
Record Route	0	7	Varies	Records the IP addresses of the network devices along the path that the IP packet travels. The destination machine can then extract and process the route information. (Due to the size limitation of 40 bytes for both the option and storage space, this can only record up to 9 IP addresses.)	Reconnaissance. If the destination host is a compromised machine in the attacker's control, he or she can glean information about the topology and addressing scheme of the network through which the packet passed.
Stream ID	0	8	4 bits	(Obsolete) Provided a way for the 16-bit SATNET stream identifier to be carried through networks that did not support the stream concept.	Unknown. However, because it is obsolete, its presence in an IP header is suspect.
Strict Source Route	0	9	Varies	Specifies the complete route list for a packet to take on its journey from source to destination. The last address in the list replaces the address in the destination field.	Evasion. An attacker can use the specified routes to hide the true source of a packet or to gain access to a protected network. (See “Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set” on page 117.)
Timestamp	2**	4		<p>Records the time (in Universal Time**) when each network device receives the packet during its trip from the point of origin to its destination. The network devices are identified by IP number.</p> <p>This option develops a list of IP addresses of the devices along the path of the packet and the duration of transmission between each one.</p>	Reconnaissance. If the destination host is a compromised machine in the attacker's control, he or she can glean information about the topology and addressing scheme of the network through which the packet passed.

**Table 59: IP Options and Attributes** *(continued)*

Type	Class	Number	Length	Intended Use	Nefarious Use
* The class of options identified as “ 0” was designed to provide extra packet or network control.					
** The class of options identified as “ 2” was designed for diagnostics, debugging, and measurement.					
*** The timestamp uses the number of milliseconds since midnight Universal Time (UT). UT is also known as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), which is the basis for the international time standard.					

### Screen Options for Detecting IP Options Used For Reconnaissance

The following screen options detect IP options that an attacker can use for reconnaissance or for some unknown but suspect purpose:

- **Record Route:** JUNOS software detects packets where the IP option is 7 (Record Route) and records the event in the screen counters list for the ingress interface.
- **Timestamp:** JUNOS software detects packets where the IP option list includes option 4 (Internet Timestamp) and records the event in the screen counters list for the ingress interface.
- **Security:** JUNOS software detects packets where the IP option is 2 (Security) and records the event in the screen counters list for the ingress interface.
- **Stream ID:** JUNOS software detects packets where the IP option is 8 (Stream ID) and records the event in the screen counters list for the ingress interface.

If a packet with any of the previous IP options is received, JUNOS software flags this as a network reconnaissance attack and records the event for the ingress interface.

### Related Topics

- Detecting Packets That Use IP Options for Reconnaissance on page 99

### Detecting Packets That Use IP Options for Reconnaissance

Attackers can use the record route, timestamp, security, and stream ID IP options for reconnaissance or for some unknown but suspect purpose. To detect packets with these options set, you can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 99
- CLI Configuration on page 101

### J-Web Configuration

To configure screen and assign an Internet Protocol (IP) to it:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ip-record-route**.
6. Next to Ip, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Record route option, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Name box, type **ip-timestamp-opt**.
10. Next to Ip, click **Edit**.
11. Next to Timestamp option, select the check box and click **OK**.
12. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
13. In the Name box, type **ip-security-opt**.
14. Next to Ip, click **Edit**.
15. Next to Security option, select the check box and click **OK**.
16. In the Name box, type **ip-stream-opt**.
17. Next to Ip, click **Edit**.
18. Next to Stream option, select the check box and click **OK**.
19. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **ip-record-route-opt** and click **OK**.
7. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Name box, type **zone**.
9. In the Screen box, type **ip-timestamp-opt** and click **OK**.
10. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
11. In the Name box, type **zone**.
12. In the Screen box, type **ip-security-opt** and click **OK**.
13. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.

14. In the Name box, type **zone**.
15. In the Screen box, type **ip-stream-opt** and click OK.
16. To save and commit the configuration, click Commit.

## CLI Configuration

```

user@host# set security screen ids-option ip-record-route ip record-route-option
user@host# set security screen ids-option ip-timestamp-opt ip timestamp-option
user@host# set security screen ids-option ip-security-opt ip security-option
user@host# set security screen ids-option ip-stream-opt ip stream-option
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen ip-record-route-opt
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen ip-timestamp-opt
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen ip-security-opt
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen ip-stream-opt

```

## Understanding Operating System Probes

---

Before launching an exploit, attackers might try to probe the targeted host to learn its operating system (OS). With that knowledge, they can better decide which attack to launch and which vulnerabilities to exploit. JUNOS software can block reconnaissance probes commonly used to gather information about OS types.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

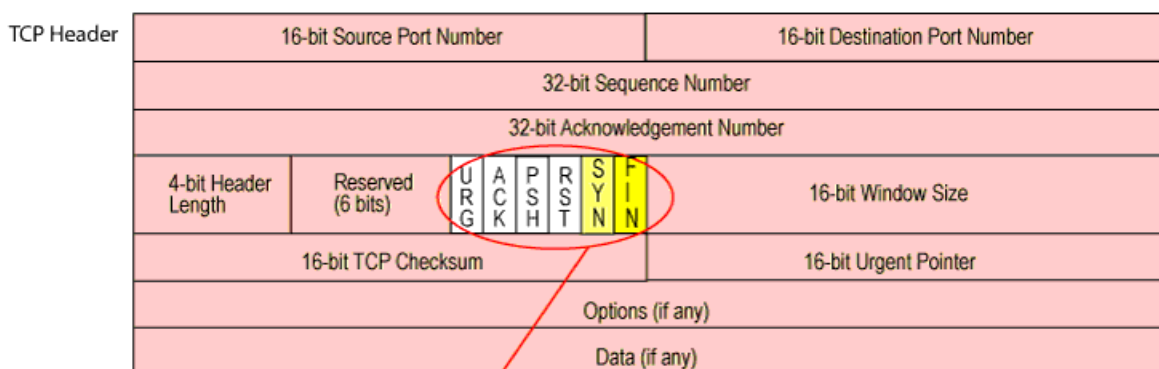
- Attack Detection and Prevention on page 89
- Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview on page 91
- Understanding Network Reconnaissance Using IP Options on page 97

This topic covers:

- TCP Headers with SYN and FIN Flags Set on page 101
- TCP Headers With FIN Flag and Without ACK Flag on page 102
- TCP Header Without Flags Set on page 103
- Related Topics on page 103

### TCP Headers with SYN and FIN Flags Set

Both the SYN and FIN control flags are not normally set in the same TCP segment header. The SYN flag synchronizes sequence numbers to initiate a TCP connection. The FIN flag indicates the end of data transmission to finish a TCP connection. Their purposes are mutually exclusive. A TCP header with the SYN and FIN flags set is anomalous TCP behavior, causing various responses from the recipient, depending on the OS. See Figure 15 on page 102.

**Figure 15: TCP Header with SYN and FIN Flags Set**

The SYN and FIN flags are set.

An attacker can send a segment with both flags set to see what kind of system reply is returned and thereby determine what kind of OS is on the receiving end. The attacker can then use any known system vulnerabilities for further attacks.

When you enable this screen option, JUNOS software checks if the SYN and FIN flags are set in TCP headers. If it discovers such a header, it drops the packet.

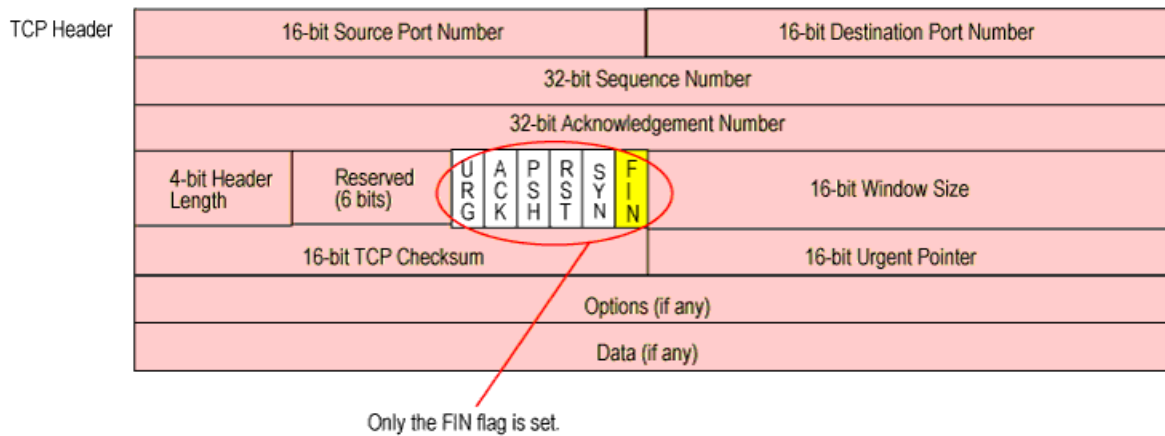
### TCP Headers With FIN Flag and Without ACK Flag

Figure 16 on page 103 shows TCP segments with the FIN control flag set (to signal the conclusion of a session and terminate the connection). Normally, TCP segments with the FIN flag set also have the ACK flag set (to acknowledge the previous packet received). Because a TCP header with the FIN flag set but not the ACK flag is anomalous TCP behavior, there is no uniform response to this. The OS might respond by sending a TCP segment with the RST flag set. Another might completely ignore it. The victim's response can provide the attacker with a clue as to its OS. (Other purposes for sending a TCP segment with the FIN flag set are to evade detection while performing address and port scans and to evade defenses on guard for a SYN flood by performing a FIN flood instead. For information about FIN scans, see "FIN Scan" on page 108.)



**NOTE:** Vendors have interpreted RFC 793, *Transmission Control Protocol*, variously when designing their TCP/IP implementations. When a TCP segment arrives with the FIN flag set but not the ACK flag, some implementations send RST segments. Some drop the packet without sending an RST.

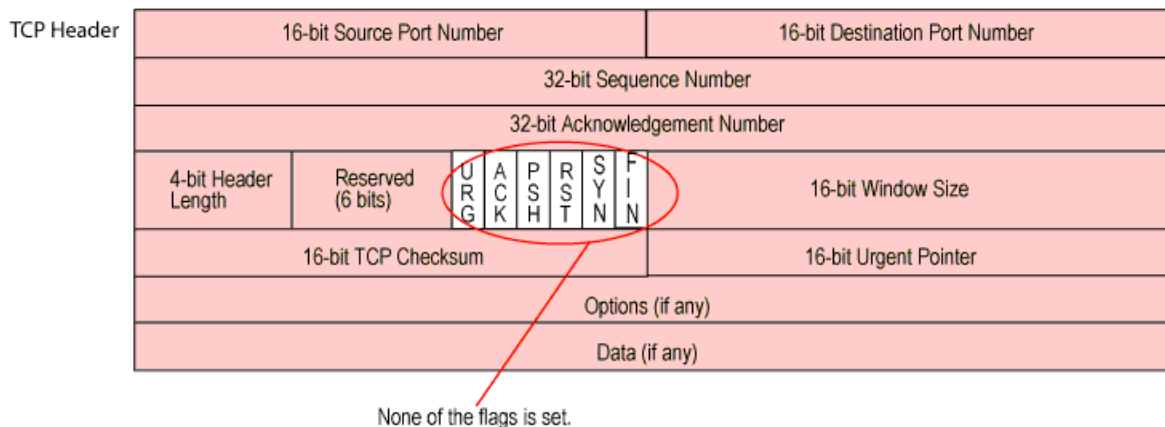


**Figure 16: TCP Header with FIN Flag Set**

When you enable this screen option, JUNOS software checks if the FIN flag is set but not the ACK flag in TCP headers. If it discovers a packet with such a header, it drops the packet.

### TCP Header Without Flags Set

A normal TCP segment header has at least one flag control set. A TCP segment with no control flags set is an anomalous event. Because different operating systems respond differently to such anomalies, the response (or lack of response) from the targeted device can provide a clue as to the type of OS it is running. See Figure 17 on page 103.

**Figure 17: TCP Header with No Flags Set**

When you enable the device to detect TCP segment headers with no flags set, the device drops all TCP packets with a missing or malformed flags field.

### Related Topics

- Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set on page 104

- Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set on page 105
- Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set on page 104

## Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set

---

A TCP header with the SYN and FIN flags set is anomalous TCP behavior, causing various responses from the recipient, depending on the OS. Blocking packets with SYN and FIN flags helps prevent OS system probes.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Operating System Probes” on page 101.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to block packets with both the SYN and FIN flags set.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 104
- CLI Configuration on page 105
- Related Topics on page 105

## J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **syn-fin**.
6. Next to Tcp, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Syn fin, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.

5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **syn-fin** and click OK.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option syn-fin tcp syn-fin
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen syn-fin
```

## Related Topics

- Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set on page 105
- Blocking Packets with No Flags Set on page 106

## Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set

A TCP header with the FIN flag set but not the ACK flag is anomalous TCP behavior, causing various responses from the recipient, depending on the OS. Blocking packets with the FIN flag and without the ACK flag helps prevent OS system probes.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Operating System Probes” on page 101.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to block packets with the FIN flag set but not the ACK flag.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 105
- CLI Configuration on page 106
- Related Topics on page 106

## J-Web Configuration

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Screen**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Ids option**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **screen**.
6. Next to **Tcp**, click **Configure**.

7. Next to Fin no ack, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option <screen> tcp fin-no-ack
```

## Related Topics

- Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set on page 104
- Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set on page 104

## Blocking Packets with No Flags Set

---

A TCP segment with no control flags set is an anomalous event, causing various responses from the recipient, depending on the OS. Blocking packets with no flags set helps prevent OS system probes. When you enable the device to detect TCP segment headers with no flags set, the device drops all TCP packets with a missing or malformed flags field.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Operating System Probes” on page 101.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to block packets with no flags set.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 106
- CLI Configuration on page 107
- Related Topics on page 107

## J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **tcp-no-flag**.
6. Next to Tcp, click **Configure**.

7. Next to tcp no flag, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **tcp-no-flag** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option tcp-no-flag tcp tcp-no-flag
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen tcp-no-flag
```

## Related Topics

- Blocking Packets with SYN and FIN Flags Set on page 104
- Blocking Packets with FIN Flag/No ACK Flag Set on page 105

## Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques

---

Whether gathering information or launching an attack, it is generally expected that the attacker avoids detection. Although some IP address and port scans are blatant and easily detectable, more wily attackers use a variety of means to conceal their activity. Techniques such as using FIN scans instead of SYN scans—which attackers know most firewalls and intrusion detection programs detect—indicate an evolution of reconnaissance and exploit techniques to evade detection and successfully accomplish their tasks.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Attack Detection and Prevention on page 89
  - Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview on page 91
  - Understanding Operating System Probes on page 101
-

This topic covers:

- FIN Scan on page 108
- Non-SYN Flags on page 108
- IP Spoofing on page 110
- IP Source Route Options on page 110
- Related Topics on page 112

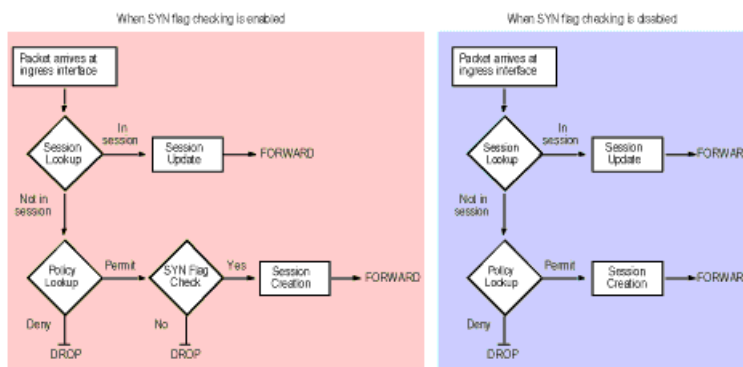
## FIN Scan

A FIN scan sends TCP segments with the FIN flag set in an attempt to provoke a response (a TCP segment with the RST flag set) and thereby discover an active host or an active port on a host. Attackers might use this approach rather than perform an address sweep with ICMP echo requests or an address scan with SYN segments because they know that many firewalls typically guard against the latter two approaches—but not necessarily against FIN segments. The use of TCP segments with the FIN flag set might evade detection and thereby help the attackers succeed in their reconnaissance efforts.

## Non-SYN Flags

By default, JUNOS software checks for SYN flags in the first packet of a session and rejects any TCP segments with non-SYN flags attempting to initiate a session. You can leave this packet flow as is or change it to so that JUNOS software does not enforce SYN flag checking before creating a session. Figure 18 on page 108 illustrates packet flow sequences when SYN flag checking is enabled and when it is disabled.

**Figure 18: SYN Flag Checking**



When JUNOS software with SYN flag checking enabled receives a non-SYN TCP segment that does not belong to an existing session, it drops the packet and sends the source host to a TCP RST—unless the code bit of the initial non-SYN TCP packet is also RST. In that case, JUNOS software simply drops the packet.

Not checking for the SYN flag in the first packets offers the following advantages:

- **NSRP with Asymmetric Routing:** In an active/active NSRP configuration in a dynamic routing environment, a host might send the initial TCP segment with the SYN

flag set to one Juniper Networks device (Device-A) but the SYN/ACK might be routed to the other device in the cluster (Device-B). If this asymmetric routing occurs after Device-A has synchronized its session with Device-B, all is well. On the other hand, if the SYN/ACK response reaches Device-B before Device-A synchronizes the session and SYN checking is enabled, Device-B rejects the SYN/ACK, and the session cannot be established. With SYN checking disabled, Device-B accepts the SYN/ACK response—even though there is no existing session to which it belongs—and creates a new session table entry for it.

- **Uninterrupted Sessions:** If you reset the device or even change a component in the core section of a policy and SYN checking is enabled, all existing sessions or those sessions to which the policy change applies are disrupted and must be restarted. Disabling SYN checking avoids such disruptions to network traffic flows.



**NOTE:** A solution to this scenario is to install the Juniper Networks device with SYN checking disabled initially. Then, after a few hours—when established sessions are running through the device—enable SYN checking. The core section in a policy contains the following main components: source and destination zones, source and destination addresses, one or more services, and an action.

---

However, the previous advantages exact the following security sacrifices:

- **Reconnaissance Holes:** When an initial TCP segment with a non-SYN flag—such as ACK, URG, RST, FIN—arrives at a closed port, many operating systems (Windows, for example) respond with a TCP segment that has the RST flag set. If the port is open, then the recipient does not generate any response.

By analyzing these responses or lack thereof, an intelligence gatherer can perform reconnaissance on the protected network and also on the JUNOS software policy set. If a TCP segment is sent with a non-SYN flag set and the policy permits it through, the destination host receiving such a segment might drop it and respond with a TCP segment that has the RST flag set. Such a response informs the perpetrator of the presence of an active host at a specific address and that the targeted port number is closed. The intelligence gatherer also learns that the firewall policy permits access to that port number on that host.

By enabling SYN flag checking, JUNOS software drops TCP segments without a SYN flag if they do not belong to an existing session. It does not return a TCP RST segment. Consequently, the scanner gets no replies regardless of the policy set or whether the port is open or closed on the targeted host.

- **Session Table Floods:** If SYN checking is disabled, an attacker can bypass the JUNOS software SYN flood protection feature by flooding a protected network with a barrage of TCP segments that have non-SYN flags set. Although the targeted hosts drop the packets—and possibly send TCP RST segments in reply—such a flood can fill up the session table of the Juniper Networks device. When the session table is full, the device cannot process new sessions for legitimate traffic.

By enabling SYN checking and SYN flood protection, you can thwart this kind of attack. Checking that the SYN flag is set on the initial packet in a session forces all new sessions to begin with a TCP segment that has the SYN flag set. SYN

flood protection then limits the number of TCP SYN segments per second so that the session table does not become overwhelmed.

If you do not need SYN checking disabled, Juniper Networks strongly recommends that it be enabled (its default state for an initial installation of JUNOS software). You can enable it with the **set flow tcp-syn-check** command. With SYN checking enabled, the device rejects TCP segments with non-SYN flags set unless they belong to an established session.

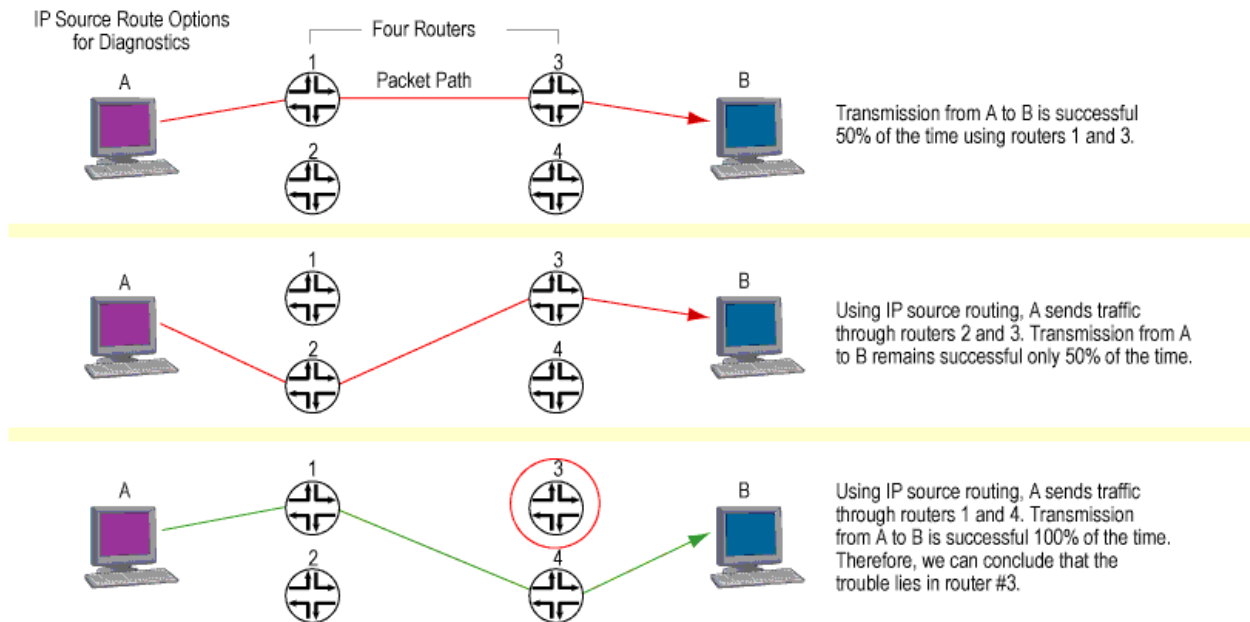
## **IP Spoofing**

One method of attempting to gain access to a restricted area of the network is to insert a bogus source address in the packet header to make the packet appear to come from a trusted source. This technique is called IP spoofing. The mechanism to detect IP spoofing relies on route table entries. For example, if a packet with source IP address 10.1.1.6 arrives at **ge-0/0/1**, but JUNOS software has a route to 10.1.1.0/24 through **ge-0/0/0**, a check for IP spoofing discovers that this address arrived at an invalid interface as defined in the route table. A valid packet from 10.1.1.6 can only arrive via **ge-0/0/0**, not **ge-0/0/1**. Therefore, JUNOS software concludes that the packet has a spoofed source IP address and discards it.

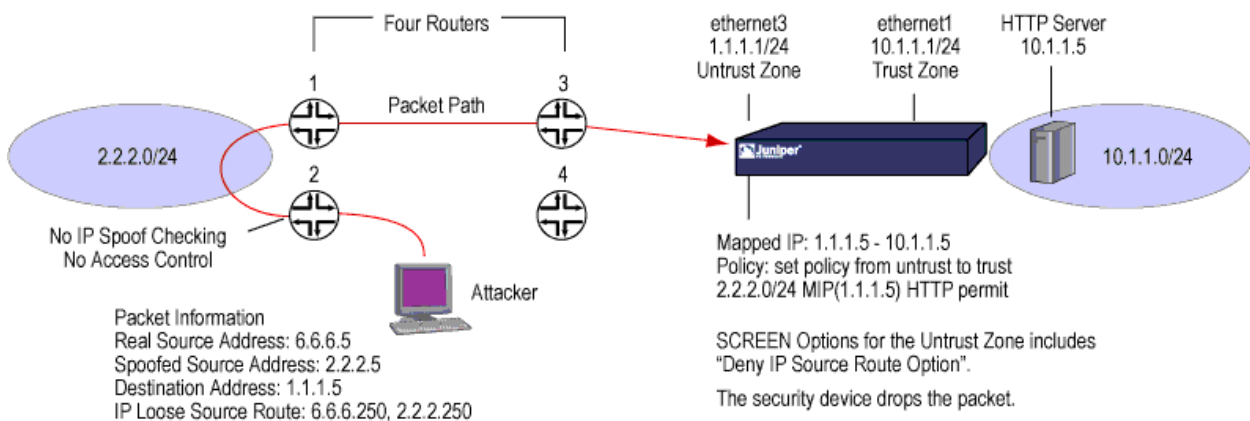
## **IP Source Route Options**

Source routing was designed to allow users at the source of an IP packet transmission to specify the IP addresses of the devices (also referred to as “hops”) along the path that they want an IP packet to take on its way to its destination. The original intent of the IP source route options was to provide routing control tools to aid diagnostic analysis. If, for example, the transmission of a packet to a particular destination meets with irregular success, you might first use either the record route or timestamp IP option to discover the addresses of devices along the path or paths that the packet takes. You can then use either the loose or strict source route option to direct traffic along a specific path, using the addresses you learned from the results that the record route or timestamp options produced. By changing device addresses to alter the path and sending several packets along different paths, you can note changes that either improve or lessen the success rate. Through analysis and the process of elimination, you might be able to deduce where the trouble lies. See Figure 19 on page 111.



**Figure 19: IP Source Routing**

Although the uses of IP source route options were originally benign, attackers have learned to put them to more devious uses. They can use IP source route options to hide their true address and access restricted areas of a network by specifying a different path. For an example showing how an attacker can put both deceptions to use, consider the following scenario as illustrated in Figure 20 on page 111.

**Figure 20: Loose IP Source Route Option for Deception**

JUNOS software only allows traffic 2.2.2.0/24 if it comes through ethernet1, an interface bound to zone\_external. Devices 3 and 4 enforce access controls but devices 1 and 2 do not. Furthermore, device 2 does not check for IP spoofing. The attacker spoofs the source address, and by using the loose source route option, directs the packet through device 2 to the 2.2.2.0/24 network and from there out device 1. Device 1 forwards it to device 3, which forwards it to the Juniper Networks device. Because the packet came from the 2.2.2.0/24 subnet and has a source address from

that subnet, it seems to be valid. However, one remnant of the earlier chicanery remains: the loose source route option. In this example, you have enabled the deny IP source route screen option for the zone\_external. When the packet arrives at ethernet3, the device rejects it.

You can enable the Juniper networks device to either block any packets with loose or strict source route options set or detect such packets and then record the event in the counters list for the ingress interface. The screen options are as follows:

- **Deny IP Source Route Option:** Enable this option to block all IP traffic that employs the loose or strict source route option. Source route options can allow an attacker to enter a network with a false IP address.
- **Detect IP Loose Source Route Option:** The Juniper Networks device detects packets where the IP option is 3 (Loose Source Routing) and records the event in the screen counters list for the ingress interface. This option specifies a partial route list for a packet to take on its journey from source to destination. The packet must proceed in the order of addresses specified, but it is allowed to pass through other devices in between those specified.
- **Detect IP Strict Source Route Option:** The Juniper Networks device detects packets where the IP option is 9 (Strict Source Routing) and records the event in the screen counters list for the ingress interface. This option specifies the complete route list for a packet to take on its journey from source to destination. The last address in the list replaces the address in the destination field.

## Related Topics

- Thwarting a FIN Scan on page 112
- Setting TCP SYN Checking on page 113
- Blocking IP Spoofing on page 115
- Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 117
- Detecting Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 118

## Thwarting a FIN Scan

A FIN scan sends TCP segments with the FIN flag set in an attempt to provoke a response (a TCP segment with the RST flag set) and thereby discover an active host or an active port on a host. The use of TCP segments with the FIN flag set might evade detection and thereby help the attacker succeed in his or her reconnaissance efforts.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques” on page 107.

To thwart FIN scans, use the JUNOS CLI configuration editor to take either or both of the following actions.

- Enable the screen option that specifically blocks TCP segments with the FIN flag set but not the ACK flag, which is anomalous for a TCP segment. Enter the following commands:

```
user@host# set security screen fin-no-ack tcp fin-no-ack
user@host# set security zones security-zone name screen fin-no-ack
```

where *name* is the name of the zone to which you want to apply this screen option

- Change the packet processing behavior to reject all non-SYN packets that do not belong to an existing session. The SYN check flag is set as the default.



**NOTE:** Changing the packet flow to check that the SYN flag is set for packets that do not belong to existing sessions also thwarts other types of non-SYN scans, such as a null scan (when no TCP flags are set).

---

## Related Topics

- Setting TCP SYN Checking on page 113
- Blocking IP Spoofing on page 115
- Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 117
- Detecting Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 118

## Setting TCP SYN Checking

---

With SYN checking enabled, the Juniper Networks device rejects TCP segments with non-SYN flags set unless they belong to an established session. Enabling SYN checking can help prevent attacker reconnaissance and session table floods.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques” on page 107.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to disable SYN checking. TCP SYN checking is on by default.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 114
- CLI Configuration on page 114
- Related Topics on page 114

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To disable SYN checking:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to flow, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Tcp session, click **Configure**.
5. Next to No syn check, select the check box and click **OK**.
6. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

```
user@host# set security flow tcp-session no-syn-check
```

## ***Related Topics***

- Thwarting a FIN Scan on page 112
- Blocking IP Spoofing on page 115
- Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 117
- Detecting Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 118

## **Setting Strict Syn Checking**

---

With strict SYN checking enabled, the Juniper Networks device enables the strict three-way handshake check for the TCP session. It enhances security by dropping data packets before the three-way handshake is done. By default, **strict-syn-check** is disabled.

### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques” on page 107.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure strict SYN checking. TCP strict SYN checking is disabled by default.



---

**NOTE:** strict-syn-check cannot be enabled if no-syn-check or no-syn-check-in-tunnel is enabled.

---

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 115
- CLI Configuration on page 115
- Related Topics on page 115

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To enable strict SYN checking:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to flow, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Tcp session, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Strict syn check, select the check box and click **OK**.
6. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

```
user@host# set security flow tcp-session strict-syn-check
```

## ***Related Topics***

- Setting TCP SYN Checking on page 113
- Thwarting a FIN Scan on page 112
- Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 117
- Detecting Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 118

## ***Blocking IP Spoofing***

---

One method of attempting to gain access to a restricted area of the network is to insert a bogus source address in the packet header to make the packet appear to come from a trusted source. This technique is called IP spoofing.

### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques” on page 107.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to block *IP spoofing*.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 116
- CLI Configuration on page 116
- Related Topics on page 116

## **J-Web Configuration**

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **Ip-spoofing**.
6. Next to Ip, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Spoofing, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **ip-spoofing** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## **CLI Configuration**

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option ip-spoofing ip spoofing
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen ip-spoofing
```

## **Related Topics**

- Thwarting a FIN Scan on page 112
- Setting TCP SYN Checking on page 113

- Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 117
- Detecting Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 118

## Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set

---

Checking for SYN flags can prevent attackers from using IP source route options to hide their true address and access restricted areas of a network by specifying a different path. TCP SYN checking is on by default.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques” on page 107.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to block packets with either a loose or strict source route option set. The specified security zone is the one from which the packets originated.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 117
- CLI Configuration on page 118
- Related Topics on page 118

### J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ip-filter-src**.
6. Next to Ip, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Source route option , select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.

3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **ip-filter-src** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option ip-filter-src ip source-route-option
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen ip-filter-src
```

## Related Topics

- Thwarting a FIN Scan on page 112
- Setting TCP SYN Checking on page 113
- Blocking IP Spoofing on page 115
- Detecting Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 118

## Detecting Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set

---

Checking for SYN flags can also prevent attackers from using IP source route options to hide their true address and access restricted areas of a network by specifying a different path. TCP SYN checking is on by default.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques” on page 107.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to detect and record, but not block, packets with a loose or strict source route option set.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 118
- CLI Configuration on page 119
- Related Topics on page 119

## J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:



1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ip-loose-src-route**.
6. Next to Ip, click **Configure**.
7. Next to loose source route option, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. Next to Ip, click **Edit**.
9. Next to ip strict src route, select the check box and click **OK**.
10. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **ip-strict-src-route** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option ip-loose-src-route ip
loose-source-route-option
user@host# set security screen ids-option ip-strict-src-route ip
strict-source-route-option
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen ip-strict-src-route
```

## Related Topics

- Thwarting a FIN Scan on page 112
- Setting TCP SYN Checking on page 113
- Blocking IP Spoofing on page 115
- Blocking Packets with Either a Loose or Strict Source Route Option Set on page 117

## Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview

---

Attackers can craft packets to perform reconnaissance or launch denial-of-service (DoS) attacks. Sometimes it is unclear what the intent of a crafted packet is, but the very fact that it is crafted suggests that its being put to some kind of insidious use.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Attack Detection and Prevention” on page 89.

---

All of the screen options listed in “Related Topics” on page 120 block suspicious packets that might contain hidden threats.

### Related Topics

- Understanding ICMP Fragment Protection on page 120
- Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection on page 123
- Understanding Bad IP Option Protection on page 125
- Understanding Unknown Protocol Protection on page 128
- Understanding IP Packet Fragment Protection on page 130
- Understanding SYN Fragment Protection on page 132

## Understanding ICMP Fragment Protection

---

Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) provides error reporting and network probe capabilities. Because ICMP packets contain very short messages, there is no legitimate reason for ICMP packets to be fragmented. If an ICMP packet is so large that it must be fragmented, something is amiss.

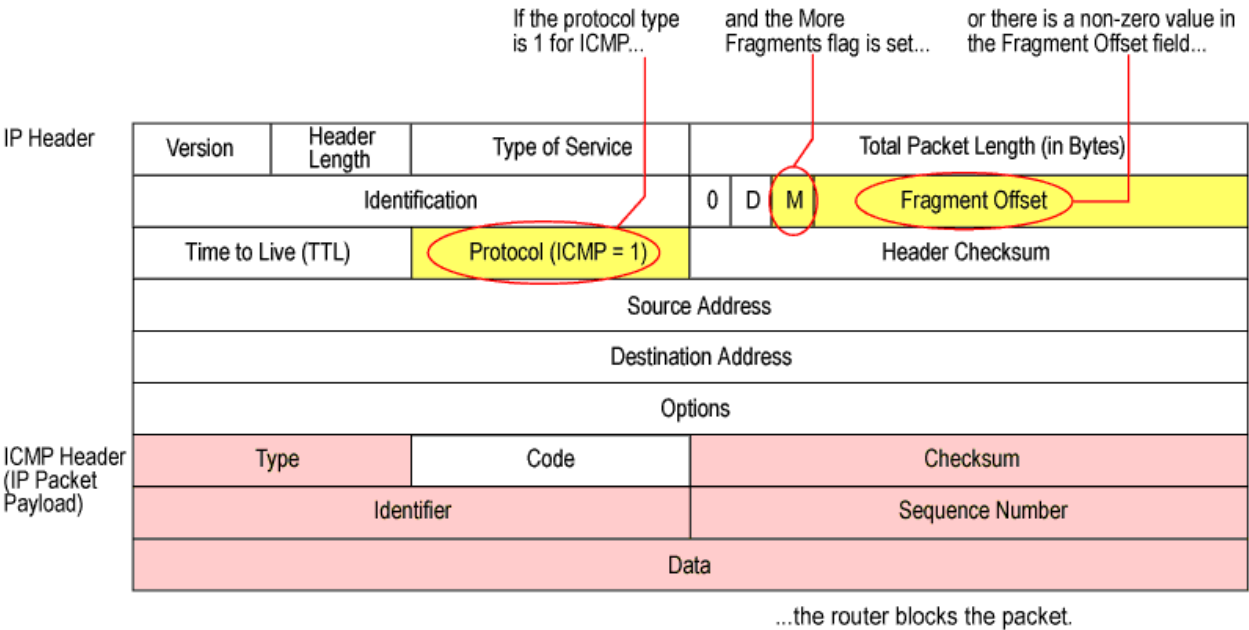
### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview” on page 120.

---

When you enable the ICMP fragment protection screen option, JUNOS software blocks any ICMP packet that has the More Fragments flag set or that has an offset value indicated in the offset field. See Figure 21 on page 121.

Figure 21: Blocking ICMP Fragments



Related Topics

- Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets on page 121
- Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection on page 123

Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets

Because ICMP packets contain very short messages, there is no legitimate reason for ICMP packets to be fragmented. If an ICMP packet is so large that it must be fragmented, something is amiss.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Understanding ICMP Fragment Protection” on page 120.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to block fragmented ICMP packets. The specified security zone is the one from which the fragments originated.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 122
- CLI Configuration on page 122
- Related Topics on page 122

## J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Screen**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Ids option**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **icmp-fragment**.
6. Next to **Icmp**, click **Configure**.
7. Next to **Fragment**, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Zones**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Security zone**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **zone**.
6. In the **Screen** box, type **icmp-fragment** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option icmp-fragment icmp fragment
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen icmp-fragment
```

## Related Topics

- Blocking Large ICMP Packets on page 124
- Detecting and Blocking IP Packets with Incorrectly Formatted Options on page 126
- Dropping Packets Using an Unknown Protocol on page 129
- Dropping Fragmented IP Packets on page 131
- Dropping IP Packets Containing SYN Fragments on page 134

Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection

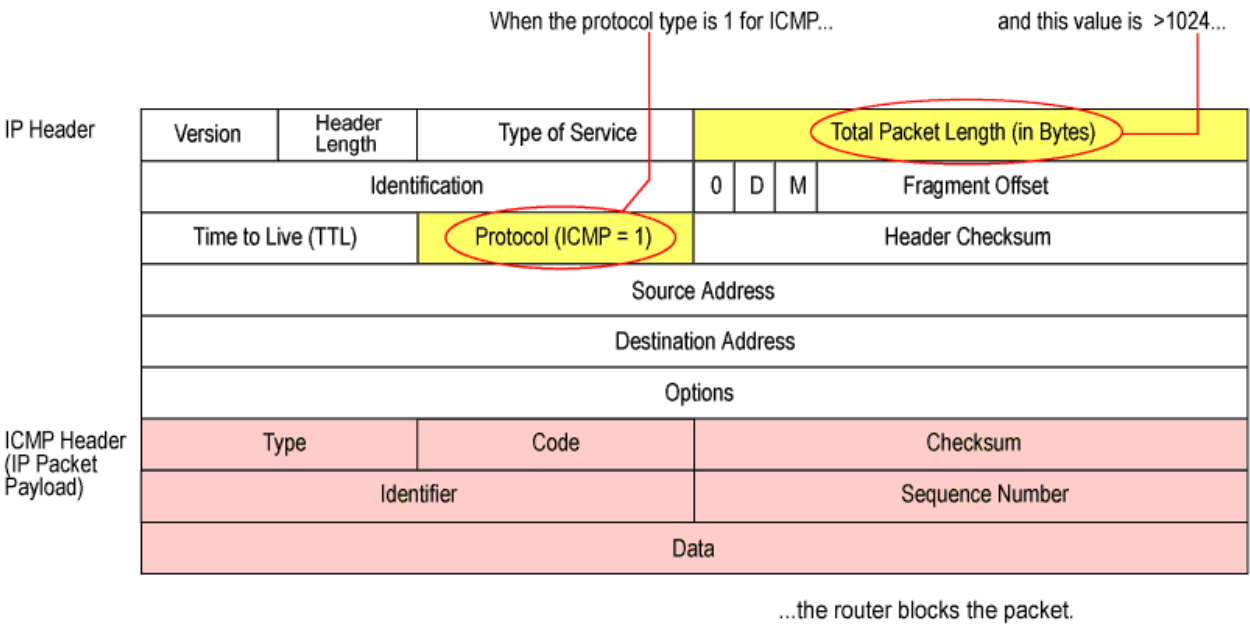
Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) provides error reporting and network probe capabilities. Because ICMP packets contain very short messages, there is no legitimate reason for large ICMP packets. If an ICMP packet is unusually large, something is wrong.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview” on page 120.

For example, the Loki program uses ICMP as a channel for transmitting covert messages. The presence of large ICMP packets might expose a compromised machine acting as a Loki agent. It also might indicate some other kind of questionable activity. See Figure 22 on page 123.

Figure 22: Blocking Large ICMP Packets



When you enable the Large Size ICMP Packet Protection screen option, JUNOS software drops ICMP packets with a length greater than 1024 bytes.

## Related Topics

- Blocking Large ICMP Packets on page 124

## Blocking Large ICMP Packets

---

Because ICMP packets contain very short messages, there is no legitimate reason for large ICMP packets. If an ICMP packet is unusually large, something is wrong.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Large ICMP Packet Protection” on page 123.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to block large ICMP packets. The specified security zone is the one from which the ICMP packets originated.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 124
- CLI Configuration on page 125
- Related Topics on page 125

## J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **icmp-large**.
6. Next to Icmp, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Large, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.

4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **icmp-large** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option icmp-large icmp large
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen icmp-large
```

## Related Topics

- Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets on page 121
- Detecting and Blocking IP Packets with Incorrectly Formatted Options on page 126
- Dropping Packets Using an Unknown Protocol on page 129
- Dropping Fragmented IP Packets on page 131
- Dropping IP Packets Containing SYN Fragments on page 134

## Understanding Bad IP Option Protection

---

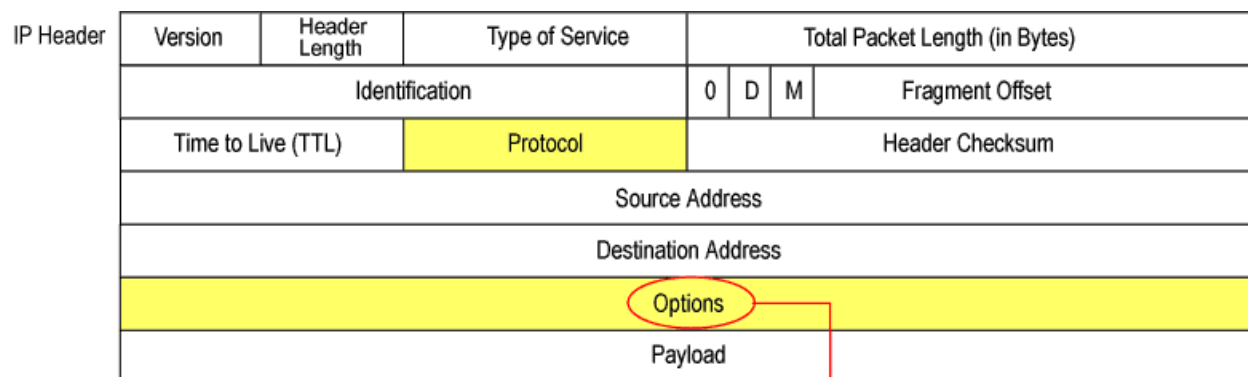
The Internet Protocol standard RFC 791, *Internet Protocol*, specifies a set of eight options that provide special routing controls, diagnostic tools, and security. Although the original, intended uses for these options served worthy ends, people have figured out ways to twist these options to accomplish less commendable objectives. (For a summary of the exploits that attackers can initiate from IP options, see “Understanding Network Reconnaissance Using IP Options” on page 97.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview” on page 120.

---

Either intentionally or accidentally, attackers sometimes configure IP options incorrectly, producing either incomplete or malformed fields. Regardless of the intentions of the person who crafted the packet, the incorrect formatting is anomalous and potentially harmful to the intended recipient. See Figure 23 on page 126.

**Figure 23: Incorrectly Formatted IP Options**

If the IP options are incorrectly formatted, the router records the event in the SCREEN counters for the ingress interface.

When you enable the bad IP option protection screen option, JUNOS software blocks packets when any IP option in the IP packet header is incorrectly formatted. Additionally, JUNOS software records the event in the event log.

### Related Topics

- Detecting and Blocking IP Packets with Incorrectly Formatted Options on page 126

## Detecting and Blocking IP Packets with Incorrectly Formatted Options

Attackers sometimes configure IP options incorrectly, producing either incomplete or malformed fields. The incorrect formatting is anomalous and potentially harmful to the intended recipient.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Bad IP Option Protection” on page 125.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to detect and block IP packets with incorrectly formatted IP options. The specified security zone is the one from which the packets originated.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 127
- CLI Configuration on page 127
- Related Topics on page 127



## J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Screen**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Ids option**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **zone**.
6. Next to **Ip**, click **Configure**.
7. Next to **Bad option**, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Zones**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Security zone**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **zone**.
6. In the **Screen** box, type **ip-bad-option** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option ip-bad-option ip bad-option
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen ip-bad-option
```

## Related Topics

- Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets on page 121
- Blocking Large ICMP Packets on page 124
- Dropping Packets Using an Unknown Protocol on page 129
- Dropping Fragmented IP Packets on page 131
- Dropping IP Packets Containing SYN Fragments on page 134

## Understanding Unknown Protocol Protection

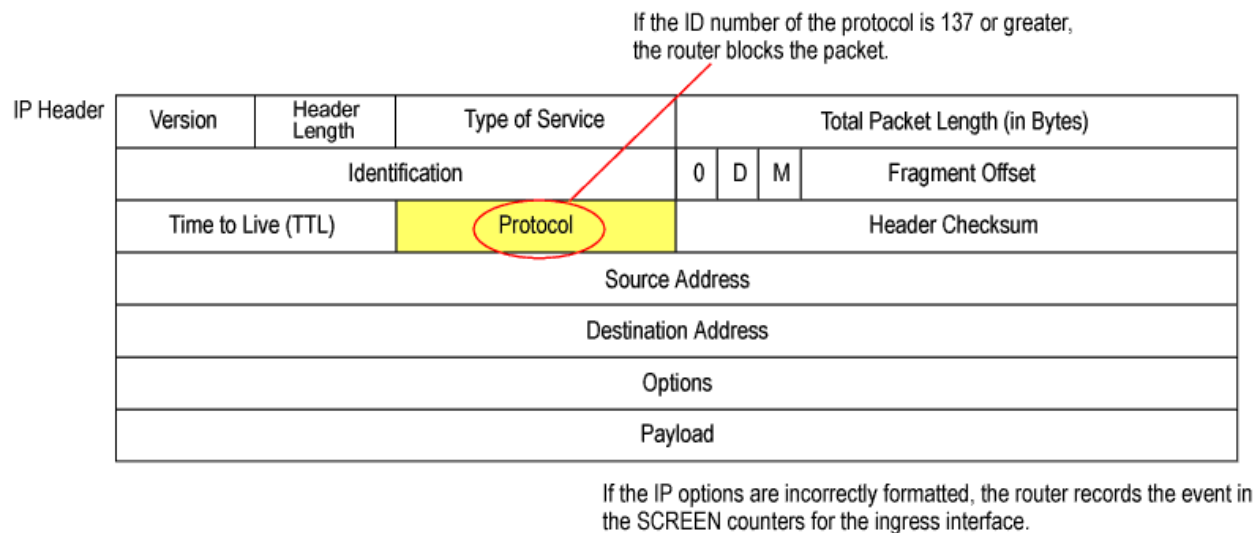
Based on RFC 1700, these protocol types with ID numbers of 137 or greater are reserved and undefined at this time. Precisely because these protocols are undefined, there is no way to know in advance if a particular unknown protocol is benign or malicious.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview” on page 120.

Unless your network makes use of a nonstandard protocol with an ID number of 137 or greater, a cautious stance is to block such unknown elements from entering your protected network. See Figure 24 on page 128.

**Figure 24: Unknown Protocols**



When you enable the unknown protocol protection screen option, JUNOS software drops packets when the protocol field contains a protocol ID number of 137 or greater by default.

## Related Topics

- Dropping Packets Using an Unknown Protocol on page 129

## Dropping Packets Using an Unknown Protocol

---

Protocol types with ID numbers of 137 or greater are reserved and undefined at this time. Therefore, there is no way to know in advance if a particular unknown protocol is benign or malicious.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Unknown Protocol Protection” on page 128.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to drop packets that use an unknown protocol. The specified security zone is the one from which the packets originates.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 129
- CLI Configuration on page 130
- Related Topics on page 130

## J-Web Configuration

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **unknown-protocol** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.

4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **unknown-protocol**.
6. Next to Ip, click **Configure**.
7. Next to unknown-protocol, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen unknown-protocol
user@host# set security screen ids-option unknown-protocol ip unknown-protocol
```

## Related Topics

- Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets on page 121
- Blocking Large ICMP Packets on page 124
- Detecting and Blocking IP Packets with Incorrectly Formatted Options on page 126
- Dropping Fragmented IP Packets on page 131
- Dropping IP Packets Containing SYN Fragments on page 134

## Understanding IP Packet Fragment Protection

---

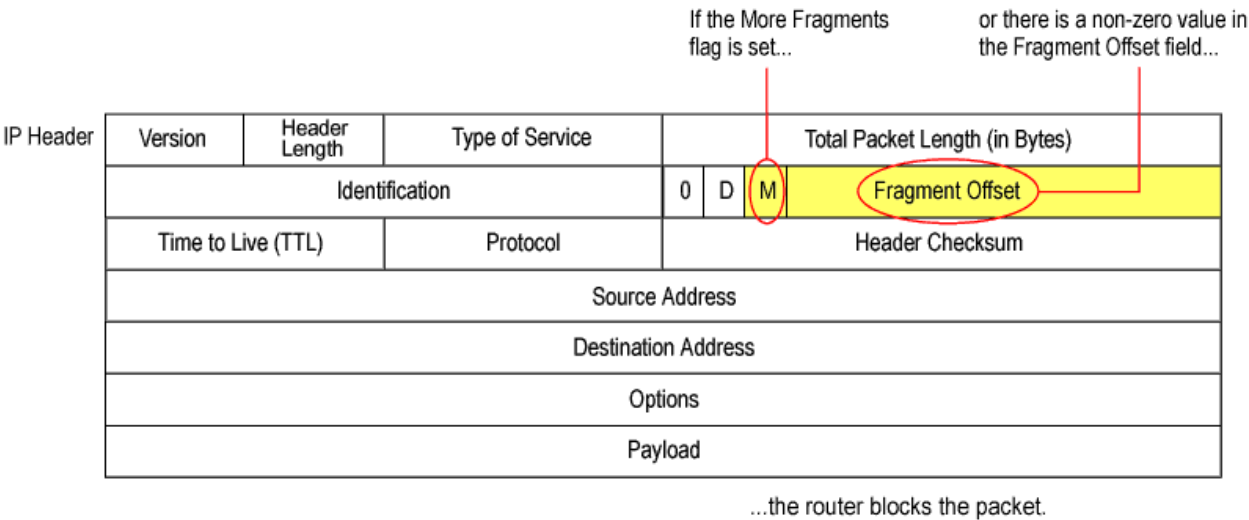
As packets traverse different networks, it is sometimes necessary to break a packet into smaller pieces (fragments) based upon the maximum transmission unit (MTU) of each network. IP fragments might contain an attacker's attempt to exploit the vulnerabilities in the packet reassembly code of specific IP stack implementations. When the victim receives these packets, the results can range from processing the packets incorrectly to crashing the entire system. See Figure 25 on page 131.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview” on page 120.

---

Figure 25: IP Packet Fragments



When you enable JUNOS software to deny IP fragments on a security zone, it blocks all IP packet fragments that it receives at interfaces bound to that zone.

Related Topics

- “Dropping Fragmented IP Packets” on page 131

Dropping Fragmented IP Packets

IP fragments might contain an attacker's attempt to exploit the vulnerabilities in the packet reassembly code of specific IP stack implementations.

Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding IP Packet Fragment Protection” on page 130.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to drop fragmented IP packets. The specified security zone is the one from which the fragments originated.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 131
- CLI Configuration on page 132
- Related Topics on page 132

J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **block-frag**.
6. Next to Ip, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Block-frag, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **block-frag** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option block-frag ip block-frag
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen block-frag
```

## Related Topics

- Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets on page 121
- Blocking Large ICMP Packets on page 124
- Detecting and Blocking IP Packets with Incorrectly Formatted Options on page 126
- Dropping Packets Using an Unknown Protocol on page 129
- Dropping IP Packets Containing SYN Fragments on page 134

## Understanding SYN Fragment Protection

---

The IP encapsulates a TCP SYN segment in the IP packet that initiates a TCP connection. Because the purpose of this packet is to initiate a connection and invoke a SYN/ACK segment in response, the SYN segment typically does not contain any

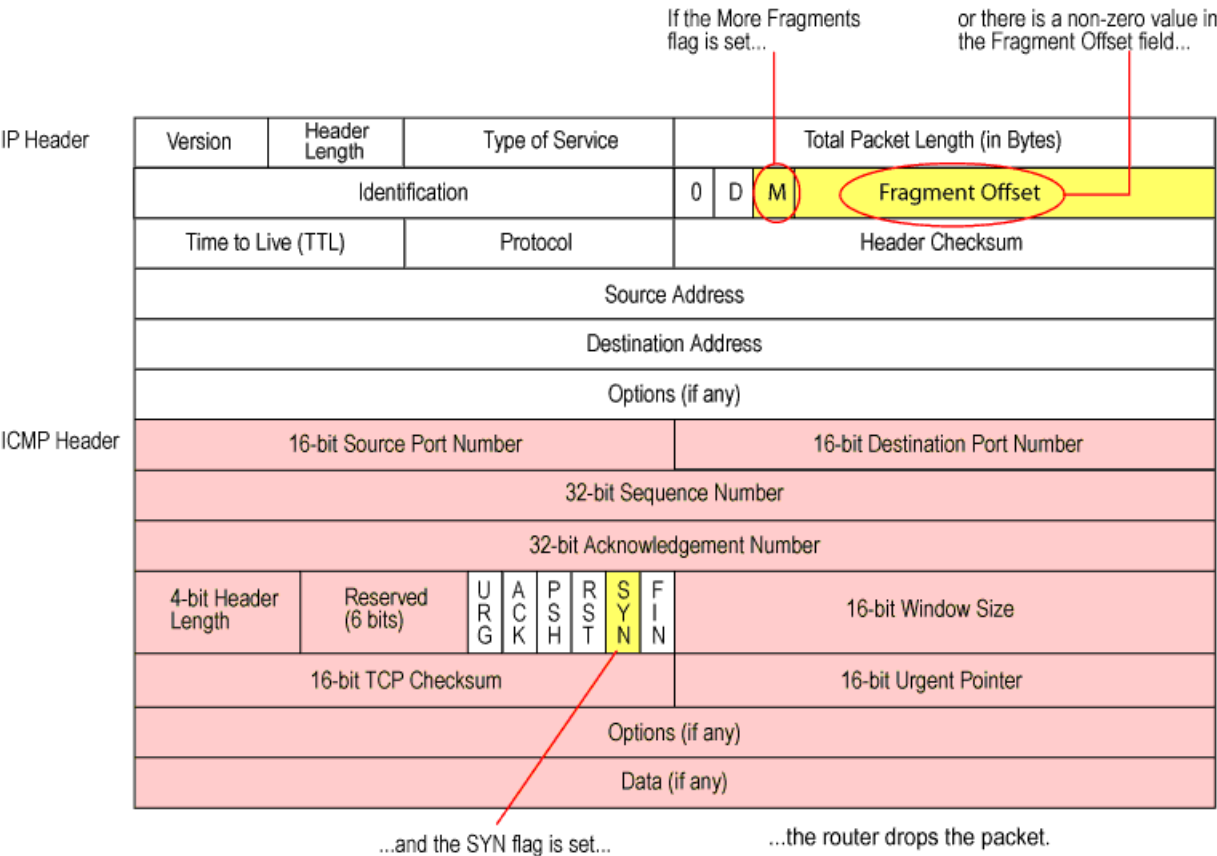
data. Because the IP packet is small, there is no legitimate reason for it to be fragmented.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview” on page 120.

A fragmented SYN packet is anomalous, and as such it is suspect. To be cautious, block such unknown elements from entering your protected network. See Figure 26 on page 133.

Figure 26: SYN Fragments



When you enable the SYN fragment detection screen option, JUNOS software detects packets when the IP header indicates that the packet has been fragmented and the SYN flag is set in the TCP header. JUNOS software records the event in the screen counters list for the ingress interface.

## Related Topics

- Dropping IP Packets Containing SYN Fragments on page 134

## Dropping IP Packets Containing SYN Fragments

---

A fragmented SYN packet is anomalous, and as such it is suspect. To be cautious, block such unknown elements from entering your protected network.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding SYN Fragment Protection” on page 132.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to drop IP packets containing SYN fragments. The specified security zone is the one from which the packets originated.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 134
- CLI Configuration on page 135
- Related Topics on page 135

## J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **syn-frag**.
6. Next to tcp, click **Configure**.
7. Next to syn frag, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.



4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **syn-frag** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option syn-frag tcp syn-frag
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen syn-frag
```

## Related Topics

- Blocking Fragmented ICMP Packets on page 121
- Blocking Large ICMP Packets on page 124
- Detecting and Blocking IP Packets with Incorrectly Formatted Options on page 126
- Dropping Packets Using an Unknown Protocol on page 129
- Dropping Fragmented IP Packets on page 131

## Denial-of-Service Attack Overview

---

The intent of a denial-of-service (DoS) attack is to overwhelm the targeted victim with a tremendous amount of bogus traffic so that the victim becomes so preoccupied processing the bogus traffic that legitimate traffic cannot be processed. The target can be the Juniper Networks firewall, the network resources to which the firewall controls access, or the specific hardware platform or operating system of an individual host.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Attack Detection and Prevention” on page 89.

---

If a DoS attack originates from multiple source addresses, it is known as a distributed denial-of-service (DDoS) attack. Typically, the source address of a DoS attack is spoofed. The source addresses in a DDoS attack might be spoofed, or the actual addresses of compromised hosts might be used as “zombie agents” to launch the attack.

The device can defend itself and the resources it protects from DoS and DDoS attacks.

## Related Topics

- Firewall DoS Attacks Overview on page 136
- Network DoS Attacks Overview on page 144

- OS-Specific DoS Attacks Overview on page 168

## Firewall DoS Attacks Overview

---

The intent of a denial-of-service (DoS) attack is to overwhelm the targeted victim with a tremendous amount of bogus traffic so that the victim becomes so preoccupied processing the bogus traffic that legitimate traffic cannot be processed.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Denial-of-Service Attack Overview” on page 135.

If attackers discover the presence of the Juniper Networks firewall, they might launch a DoS attack against it instead of the network behind it. A successful DoS attack against a firewall amounts to a successful DoS attack against the protected network in that it thwarts attempts of legitimate traffic to traverse the firewall.

An attacker might use session table floods and SYN-ACK-ACK proxy floods to fill up the session table of JUNOS software and thereby produce a DoS.

### Related Topics

- Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks on page 136
- Understanding SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attacks on page 142
- Network DoS Attacks Overview on page 144
- OS-Specific DoS Attacks Overview on page 168

## Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks

---

A successful DoS attack overwhelms its victim with such a massive barrage of false simulated traffic that it becomes unable to process legitimate connection requests. DoS attacks can take many forms—SYN flood, SYN-ACK-ACK flood, UDP flood, ICMP flood, and so on—but they all seek the same objective, which is to fill up their victim's session table.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Firewall DoS Attacks Overview” on page 136.

When the session table is full, that host cannot create any new sessions and begins rejecting new connection requests. The source-based session limits screen option and the destination-based session limit screen option help mitigate such attacks.

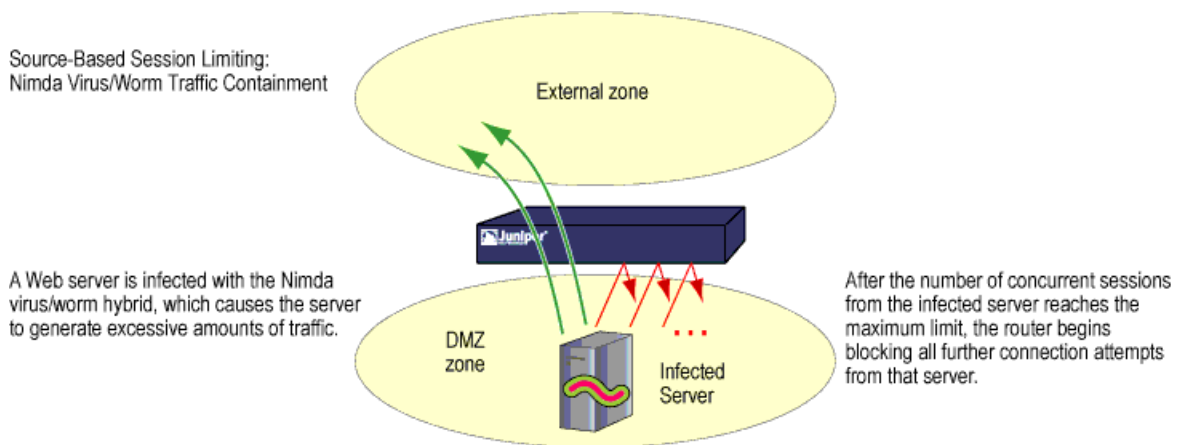
This topic covers:

- Source-Based Session Limits on page 137
- Destination-Based Session Limits on page 138
- Related Topics on page 138

## Source-Based Session Limits

In addition to limiting the number of concurrent sessions from the same source IP address, you can also limit the number of concurrent sessions to the same destination IP address. One benefit of setting a source-based session limit is that it can stem an attack such as the Nimda virus (which is actually both a virus and a worm) that infects a server and then begins generating massive amounts of traffic from that server. Because all the virus-generated traffic originates from the same IP address, a source-based session limit ensures that the firewall can curb such excessive amounts of traffic. See Figure 27 on page 137.

**Figure 27: Limiting Sessions Based on Source IP Address**



Another benefit of source-based session limiting is that it can mitigate attempts to fill up the firewall's session table, if all the connection attempts originate from the same source IP address.

Determining what constitutes an acceptable number of connection requests requires a period of observation and analysis to establish a baseline for typical traffic flows. You also need to consider the maximum number of concurrent sessions required to fill up the session table of the particular Juniper Networks platform you are using. To see the maximum number of sessions that your session table supports, use the CLI command `get session`, and then look at the first line in the output, which lists the number of current (allocated) sessions, the maximum number of sessions, and the number of failed session allocations:

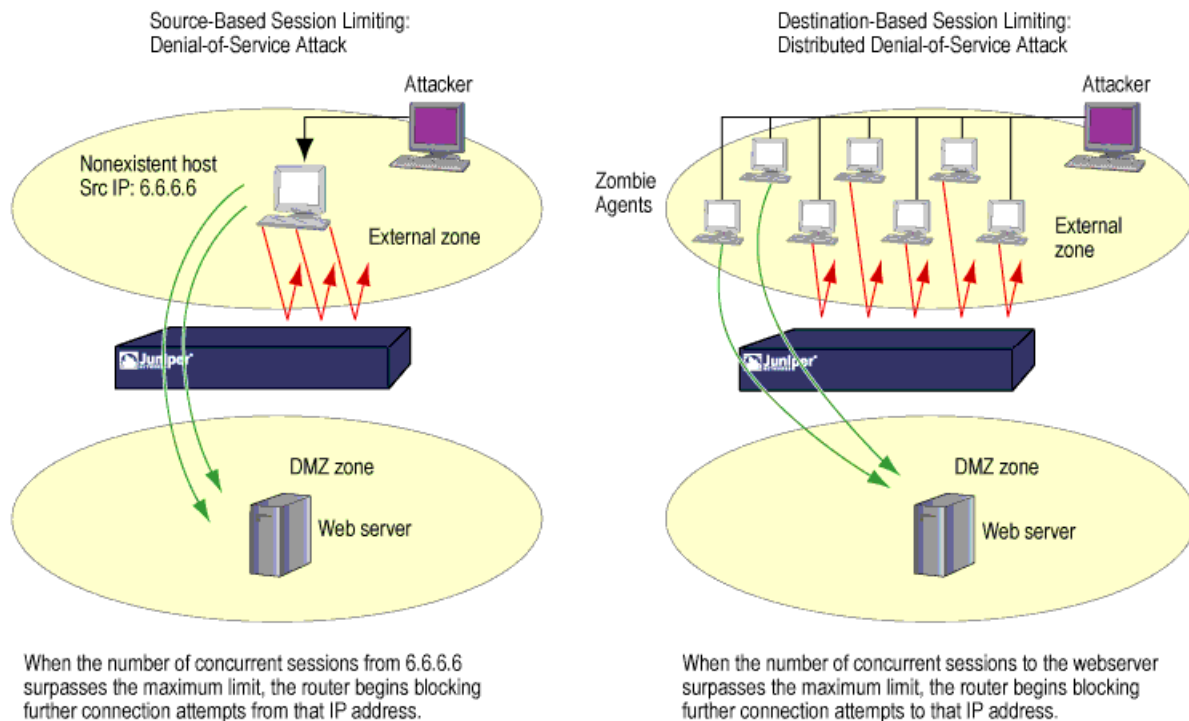
```
alloc 420/max 128000, alloc failed 0
```

The default maximum for source-based session limits is 128 concurrent sessions, a value that might need adjustment to suit the needs of your network environment and the platform.

## Destination-Based Session Limits

In addition to limiting the number of concurrent sessions from the same source IP address, you can also limit the number of concurrent sessions to the same destination IP address. A wily attacker can launch a distributed denial-of-service (DDoS) attack. In a DDoS attack, the malicious traffic can come from hundreds of hosts, known as “zombie agents,” that are surreptitiously under the control of an attacker. In addition to the SYN, UDP, and ICMP flood detection and prevention screen options, setting a destination-based session limit can ensure that JUNOS software allows only an acceptable number of concurrent connection requests—no matter what the source—to reach any one host. See Figure 28 on page 138.

**Figure 28: Distributed DOS Attack**



The default maximum for destination-based session limits is 128 concurrent sessions, a value that might need adjustment to suit the needs of your network environment and the platform.

## Related Topics

- Setting Source-Based Session Limits on page 139
- Setting Destination-Based Session Limits on page 140

## Setting Source-Based Session Limits

---

A source-based session limit can stem an attack that infects a server and then begins generating massive amounts of traffic from that server.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks” on page 136.

In this example, you want to limit the amount of sessions that any one server in the DMZ and zone\_a zones can initiate. Because the DMZ zone only contains Web servers, none of which should initiate traffic, you set the source-session limit at the lowest possible value: 1 session. On the other hand, the zone\_a zone contains personal computers, servers, printers, and so on, many of which do initiate traffic. For the zone\_a zone, you set the source-session limit maximum to 80 concurrent sessions.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to set the source-session limit. In this example you are setting the source-session limit maximum to 80 concurrent sessions.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 139
- CLI Configuration on page 140
- Related Topics on page 140

### J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **1-limit-session**.
6. Next to Limit session, select the check box and click **Configure**.
7. In the Source ip based box, type **1** and click **OK**.
8. To configure another Source-ip-based 100 and 80, repeat Step 4 through Step 7 and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Zones**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Security zone**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **dmz**.
6. In the **Screen** box, type **100-limit-session** and click **OK**.
7. Next to **Security zone**, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the **Name** box, type **zone\_a**.
9. In the **Screen** box, type **100-limit-session** and click **OK**.
10. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```

user@host# set security screen ids-option 1-limit-session limit-session source-ip-based
1
user@host# set security screen ids-option 100-limit-session limit-session
source-ip-based 100
user@host# set security screen ids-option 80-limit-session limit-session
source-ip-based 80
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz screen 100-limit-session
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_a screen 100-limit-session

```

## Related Topics

- [Setting Destination-Based Session Limits on page 140](#)
- [Enabling Protection Against a SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attack on page 142](#)

## Setting Destination-Based Session Limits

In addition to the SYN, UDP, and ICMP flood detection and prevention screen options, setting a destination-based session limit can ensure that JUNOS software allows only an acceptable number of concurrent connection requests—no matter what the source—to reach any one host.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Session Table Flood Attacks” on page 136.

In this example, you want to limit the amount of traffic to a Web server at 1.2.2.5. The server is in the DMZ zone. After observing the traffic flow from the external zone to this server for a month, you have determined that the average number of concurrent sessions it receives is 2000. Based on this information, you decide to set

the new session limit at 4000 concurrent sessions. Although your observations show that traffic spikes sometimes exceed that limit, you opt for firewall security over occasional server inaccessibility.

To set the destination-session limit, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 141
- CLI Configuration on page 141
- Related Topics on page 142

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **4000-limit-session**.
6. Next to the Limit session, select the check box and click **Configure**.
7. In the Destination ip based box, type **4000** and click **Commit**.
8. To configure another Destination-ip-based 100, repeat Step d through Step g and click **Commit**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **external\_zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **100-limit-session** and click **Commit**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option 4000-limit-session limit-session
destination-ip-based 4000
user@host# set security screen ids-option 100-limit-session limit-session
destination-ip-based 100
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone external_zone screen 100-limit-session
```

## Related Topics

- Setting Source-Based Session Limits on page 139
- Enabling Protection Against a SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attack on page 142

## Understanding SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attacks

---

When an authentication user initiates a Telnet or FTP connection, the user sends a SYN segment to the Telnet or FTP server. JUNOS software intercepts the SYN segment, creates an entry in its session table, and proxies a SYN-ACK segment to the user. The user then replies with an ACK segment. At this point, the initial three-way handshake is complete. JUNOS software sends a login prompt to the user. If the user, with malicious intent, does not log in, but instead continues initiating SYN-ACK-ACK sessions, the firewall session table can fill up to the point where the device begins rejecting legitimate connection requests.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Firewall DoS Attacks Overview” on page 136.

To prevent such an attack, you can enable the SYN-ACK-ACK proxy protection screen option. After the number of connections from the same IP address reaches the SYN-ACK-ACK proxy threshold, JUNOS software rejects further connection requests from that IP address. By default, the threshold is 512 connections from any single IP address. You can change this threshold (to any number between 1 and 250,000) to better suit the requirements of your network environment.

## Related Topics

- Enabling Protection Against a SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attack on page 142

## Enabling Protection Against a SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attack

---

Malicious users can fill up the firewall session table to the point where the device begins rejecting legitimate connection requests by continuously initiating SYN-ACK-ACK sessions.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Flood Attacks” on page 142.



To enable protection against a SYN-ACK-ACK proxy flood, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. The specified zone is where the attack originated.



**NOTE:** The value unit is connections per source address. The default value is 512 connections from any single address.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 143
- CLI Configuration on page 143
- Related Topics on page 144

## **J-Web Configuration**

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **1000-syn-ack-ack-proxy**.
6. Next to Tcp, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Syn ack ack proxy box, select the check box and click **Configure**.
8. In the Threshold box, type **1000** and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **1000-syn-ack-ack-proxy** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## **CLI Configuration**

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option 1000-syn-ack-ack-proxy tcp
syn-ack-ack-proxy threshold 1000
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen 1000-syn-ack-ack-proxy
```

## Related Topics

- Setting Source-Based Session Limits on page 139
- Setting Destination-Based Session Limits on page 140

## Network DoS Attacks Overview

---

A denial-of-service (DoS) attack directed against one or more network resources floods the target with an overwhelming number of SYN, ICMP, or UDP packets, or with an overwhelming number of SYN fragments.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Denial-of-Service Attack Overview” on page 135.

Depending on the attackers' purpose and the extent and success of previous intelligence gathering efforts, the attackers might single out a specific host, such as a device or server; they might aim at random hosts across the targeted network. Either approach has the potential of upsetting service to a single host or to the entire network, depending on how critical the role of the victim is to the rest of the network.

## Related Topics

- Understanding SYN Flood Attacks on page 144
- Understanding SYN Cookie Protection on page 157
- Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks on page 160
- Understanding UDP Flood Attacks on page 163
- Understanding Land Attacks on page 165

## Understanding SYN Flood Attacks

---

A SYN flood occurs when a host becomes so overwhelmed by SYN segments initiating incomplete connection requests that it can no longer process legitimate connection requests.

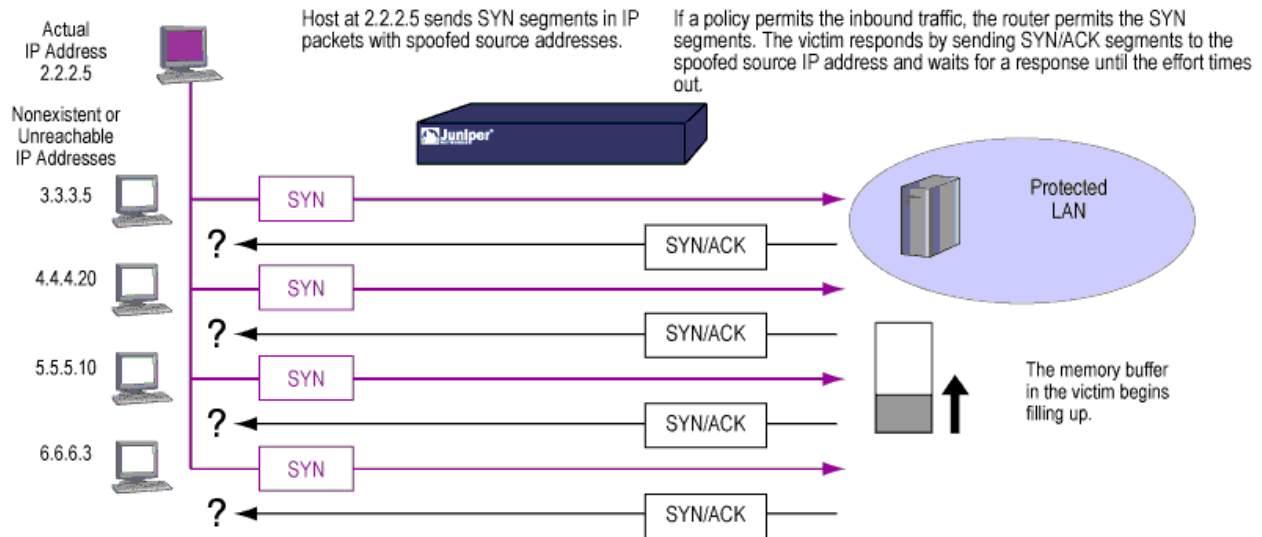
### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Network DoS Attacks Overview” on page 144.

Two hosts establish a TCP connection with a triple exchange of packets known as a *three-way handshake*: A sends a SYN segment to B; B responds with a SYN/ACK

segment; and A responds with an ACK segment. A SYN flood inundates a site with SYN segments containing forged (spoofed) IP source addresses with nonexistent or unreachable addresses. B responds with SYN/ACK segments to these addresses and then waits for responding ACK segments. Because the SYN/ACK segments are sent to nonexistent or unreachable IP addresses, they never elicit responses and eventually time out. See Figure 29 on page 145.

**Figure 29: SYN Flood Attack**



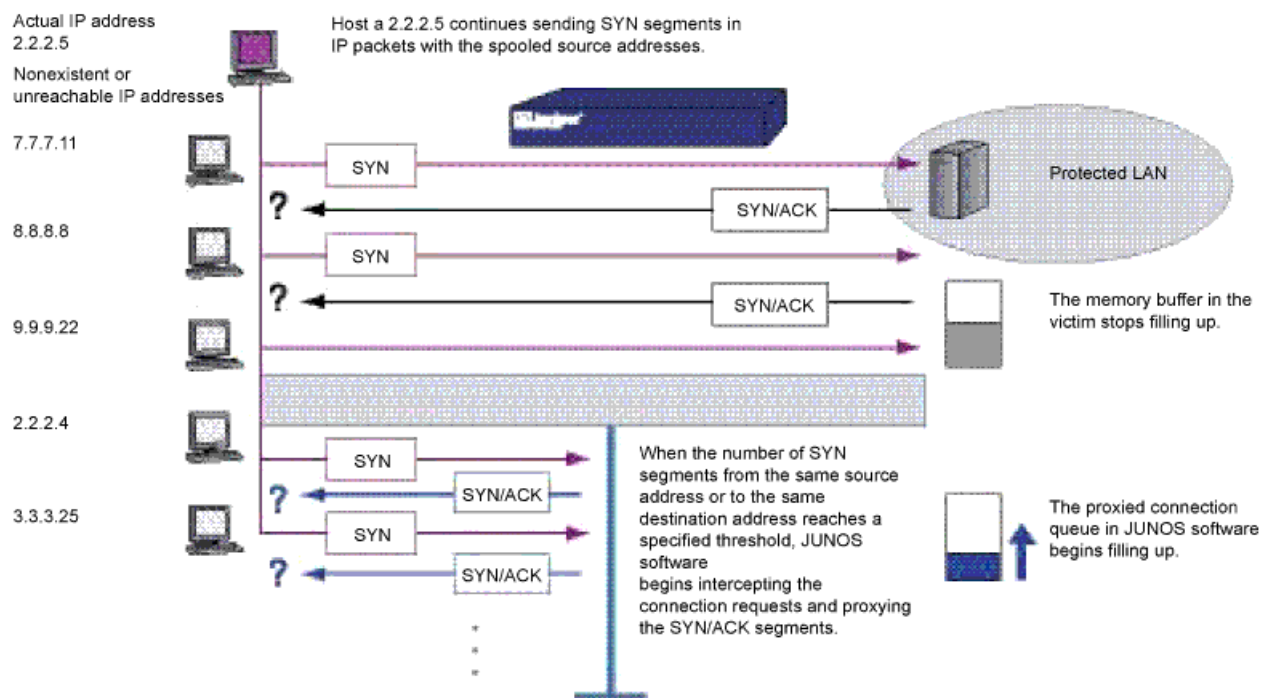
By flooding a host with incomplete TCP connections, the attacker eventually fills the memory buffer of the victim. Once this buffer is full, the host can no longer process new TCP connection requests. The flood might even damage the victim's operating system. Either way, the attack disables the victim and its normal operations.

This topic covers:

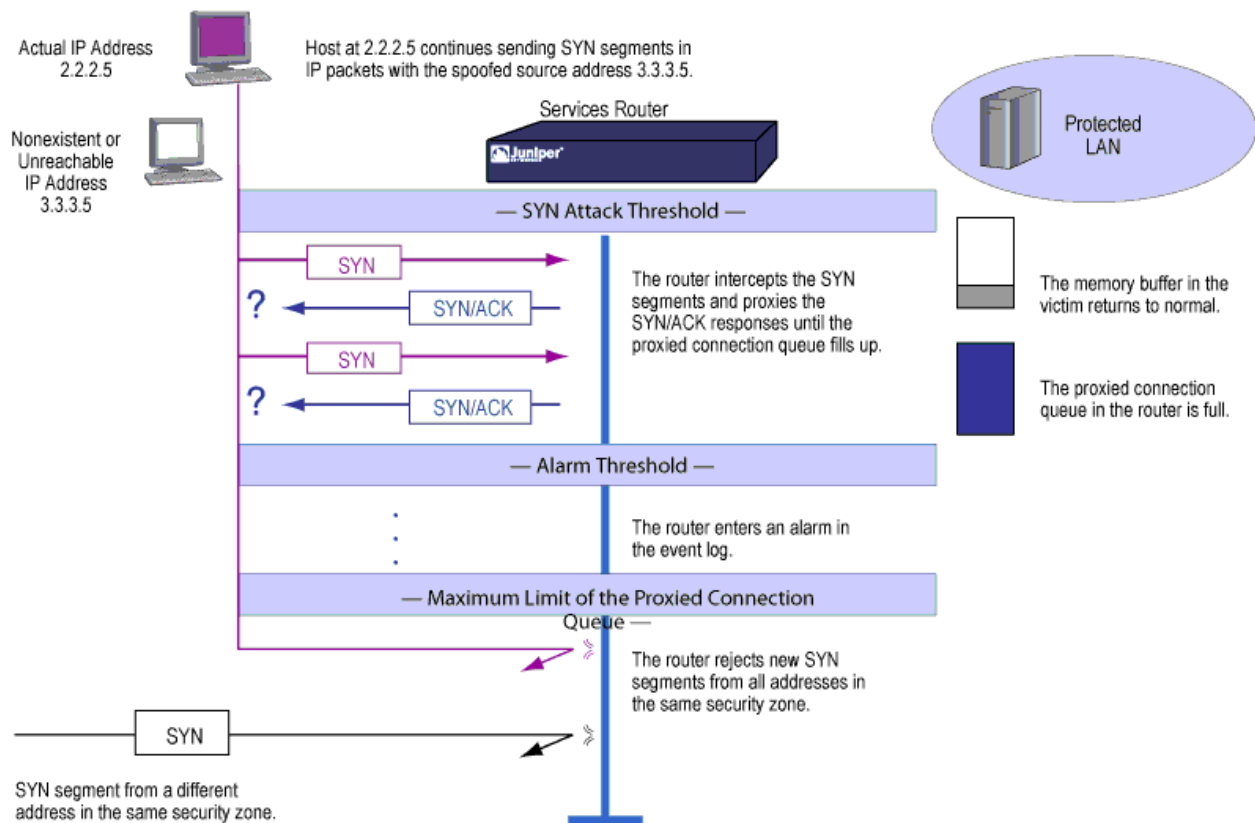
- SYN Flood Protection on page 145
- SYN Flood Options on page 147
- Related Topics on page 149

## SYN Flood Protection

JUNOS software can impose a limit on the number of SYN segments permitted to pass through the firewall per second. You can base the attack threshold on the destination address and port, the destination address only, or the source address only. When the number of SYN segments per second exceeds one of these thresholds, JUNOS software starts proxying incoming SYN segments, replying with SYN/ACK segments and storing the incomplete connection requests in a connection queue. The incomplete connection requests remain in the queue until the connection is completed or the request times out. In Figure 30 on page 146, the SYN attack threshold has passed, and JUNOS software has started proxying SYN segments.

**Figure 30: Proxying SYN Segments**

In Figure 31 on page 147, the proxied connection queue has completely filled up, and JUNOS software is rejecting new incoming SYN segments. This action shields hosts on the protected network from the bombardment of incomplete three-way handshakes.

**Figure 31: Rejecting New SYN Segments**

The device starts receiving new SYN packets when the proxy queue drops below the maximum limit.



**NOTE:** The procedure of proxying incomplete SYN connections above a set threshold pertains only to traffic permitted by existing policies. Any traffic for which a policy does not exist is automatically dropped.

## SYN Flood Options

You can set the following parameters for proxying uncompleted TCP connection requests:

- **Attack Threshold:** This option allows you to set the number of SYN segments (that is, TCP segments with the SYN flag set) to the same destination address and port number per second required to activate the SYN proxying mechanism. Although you can set the threshold to any number, you need to know the normal traffic patterns at your site to set an appropriate threshold for it. For example, if it is an e-business site that normally gets 20,000 SYN segments per second, you might want to set the threshold to 30,000 per second. If a smaller site normally gets 20 SYN segments per second, you might consider setting the threshold to 40.

```
user@host# set security screen zone-syn-flood tcp syn-flood attack-threshold
number
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen zone-syn-flood
```

- **Alarm Threshold:** This option allows you to set the number of proxied, half-complete TCP connection requests per second after which JUNOS software enters an alarm in the event log. The value you set for an alarm threshold triggers an alarm when the number of proxied, half-completed connection requests to the same destination address and port number per second exceeds that value. For example, if you set the SYN attack threshold at 2000 SYN segments per second and the alarm at 1000, then a total of 3001 SYN segments to the same destination address and port number per second is required to trigger an alarm entry in the log. More precisely:
  1. The firewall passes the first 2000 SYN segments per second that meet policy requirements.
  2. The firewall proxies the next 1000 SYN segments in the same second.
  3. The 1001st proxied connection request (or 3001st connection request in that second) triggers the alarm.

```
user@host# set security screen zone-syn-flood tcp syn-flood alarm-threshold
<number>
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen zone-syn-flood
```

For each SYN segment to the same destination address and port number in excess of the alarm threshold, the attack detection module generates a message. At the end of the second, the logging module compresses all similar messages into a single log entry that indicates how many SYN segments to the same destination address and port number arrived after exceeding the alarm threshold. If the attack persists beyond the first second, the event log enters an alarm every second until the attack stops.

- **Source Threshold:** This option allows you to specify the number of SYN segments received per second from a single source IP address—regardless of the destination IP address and port number—before JUNOS software begins dropping connection requests from that source.

```
user@host# set security screen zone-syn-flood tcp syn-flood
source-threshold <number>
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen zone-syn-flood
```

Tracking a SYN flood by source address uses different detection parameters from tracking a SYN flood by destination address and destination port number. When you set a SYN attack threshold and a source threshold, you put both the basic SYN flood protection mechanism and the source-based SYN flood tracking mechanism in effect.

- **Destination Threshold:** This option allows you to specify the number of SYN segments received per second for a single destination IP address before JUNOS software begins dropping connection requests to that destination. If a protected host runs multiple services, you might want to set a threshold based on destination IP address only—regardless of the destination port number.

```
user@host# set security screen zone-syn-flood tcp syn-flood
destination-threshold <number>
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen zone-syn-flood
```

When you set a SYN attack threshold and a destination threshold, you put both the basic SYN flood protection mechanism and the destination-based SYN flood tracking mechanism in effect.

Tracking a SYN flood by destination address uses different detection parameters from tracking a SYN flood by destination address and destination port number. Consider the following case where JUNOS software has policies permitting FTP requests (port 21) and HTTP requests (port 80) to the same server. If the SYN flood attack threshold is 1000 packets per second (pps) and an attacker sends 999 FTP packets and 999 HTTP packets per second, neither set of packets (where a set is defined as having the same destination address and port number) activates the SYN proxying mechanism. The basic SYN flood attack mechanism tracks destination address and port number, and neither set exceeds the attack threshold of 1000 pps. However, if the destination threshold is 1000 pps, JUNOS software treats both FTP and HTTP packets with the same destination address as members of a single set and rejects the 1001st packet—FTP or HTTP—to that destination.

- **Timeout:** This option allows you to set the maximum length of time before a half-completed connection is dropped from the queue. The default is 20 seconds, and you can set the timeout from 0–50 seconds. You might try decreasing the timeout value to a shorter length until you begin to see any dropped connections during normal traffic conditions. Twenty seconds is a very conservative timeout for a three-way handshake ACK response.

```
user@host# set security screen zone-syn-flood tcp syn-flood timeout
<number>
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen zone-syn-flood
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding SYN Cookie Protection on page 157
- Enabling SYN Cookie Protection on page 158
- Enabling SYN Flood Protection on page 156

## Example: SYN Flood Protection

In this example, you protect four Web servers in the DMZ zone from SYN flood attacks originating in the external zone by enabling the SYN flood protection SCREEN option for the external zone.

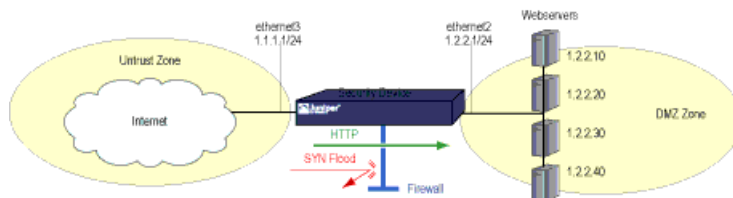
### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding SYN Flood Attacks” on page 144.



**NOTE:** We recommend that you augment the SYN flood protection that JUNOS software provides with device-level SYN flood protection on each of the Web servers. In this example, the Web servers are running UNIX, which also provides some SYN flood defenses, such as adjusting the length of the connection request queue and changing the timeout period for incomplete connection requests.

**Figure 32: Device-Level SYN Flood Protection**



To configure the SYN flood protection parameters with appropriate values for your network, you must first establish a baseline of typical traffic flows. For one week, you run a sniffer on ethernet3—the interface bound to zone\_external—to monitor the number of new TCP connection requests arriving every second for the four Web servers in the DMZ zone. Your analysis of the data accumulated from one week of monitoring produces the following statistics:

- Average number of new connection requests per server: 250 per second
- Average peak number of new connection requests per server: 500 per second





**NOTE:** A sniffer is a network-analyzing device that captures packets on the network segment to which you attach it. Most sniffers allow you to define filters to collect only the type of traffic that interests you. Later, you can view and evaluate the accumulated information. In this example, you want the sniffer to collect all TCP packets with the SYN flag set arriving at ethernet3 and destined for one of the four Web servers in the DMZ. You might want to continue running the sniffer at regular intervals to see if there are traffic patterns based on the time of day, days of the week, the time of month, or the season of the year. For example, in some organizations, traffic might increase dramatically during a critical event. Significant changes probably warrant adjusting the various thresholds.

Based on this information, you set the following SYN flood protection parameters for zone\_external, as shown in Table 60 on page 151.

Table 60: SYN Flood Protection Parameters

Parameter	Value	Reason for Each Value
Attack Threshold	625 packets per second (pps)	This is 25 % higher than the average peak number of new connection requests per second per server, which is unusual for this network environment. When the number of SYN packets per second for any one of the four Web servers exceeds this number, the device begins proxying new connection requests to that server. (In other words, beginning with the 626th SYN packet to the same destination address and port number in one second, the device begins proxying connection requests to that address and port number.)
Alarm Threshold	250 pps	When the device proxies 251 new connection requests in one second, it makes an alarm entry in the event log. By setting the alarm threshold somewhat higher than the attack threshold, you can avoid alarm entries for traffic spikes that only slightly exceed the attack threshold.
Source Threshold	25 pps	<p>When you set a source threshold, the device tracks the source IP address of SYN packets, regardless of the destination address and port number. (Note that this source-based tracking is separate from the tracking of SYN packets based on destination address and destination port number that constitutes the basic SYN flood protection mechanism.)</p> <p>In the one week of monitoring activity, you observed that no more than 1/25 of new connection requests for all servers came from any one source within a one-second interval. Therefore, connection requests exceeding this threshold are unusual and provide sufficient cause for the device to execute its proxying mechanism. (25 pps is 1/25 of the attack threshold, which is 625 pps.)</p> <p>If the device tracks 25 SYN packets from the same source IP address, beginning with the 26th packet, it rejects all further SYN packets from that source for the remainder of that second and the next second as well.</p>

**Table 60: SYN Flood Protection Parameters** *(continued)*

Parameter	Value	Reason for Each Value
Destination Threshold	0 pps	When you set a destination threshold, the device runs a separate tracking of only the destination IP address, regardless of the destination port number. Because the four Web servers only receive HTTP traffic (destination port 80)—no traffic to any other destination port number reaches them—setting a separate destination threshold offers no additional advantage.
Timeout	20 seconds	The default value of 20 seconds is a reasonable length of time to hold incomplete connection requests.
Parameter	Value	Reason for Each Value
Attack Threshold	625 packets per second (pps)	This is 25 % higher than the average peak number of new connection requests per second per server, which is unusual for this network environment. When the number of SYN packets per second for any one of the four Web servers exceeds this number, the device begins proxying new connection requests to that server. (In other words, beginning with the 626th SYN packet to the same destination address and port number in one second, the device begins proxying connection requests to that address and port number.)

\* Half-completed connection requests are incomplete three-way handshakes. A three-way handshake is the initial phase of a TCP connection. It consists of a TCP segment with the SYN flag set, a response with the SYN and ACK flags set, and a response to that with the ACK flag set.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure SYN flood protection parameters.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 152
- CLI Configuration on page 155
- Related Topics on page 156

## J-Web Configuration

To set interfaces:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Interfaces**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Interface**, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the **Interface name** box, type **ge-0/0/0**.
5. Next to **Unit**, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to **Interface unit number**, type **0**.
7. Next to **Inet**, select the check box and click **Configure**.

8. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
9. Next to Source, type **1.2.2.1/24** and click **OK**.
10. To configure another interface, **fe-1/0/0**, and address, **1.1.1.1/24**, repeat Step b through i and click **OK**.
11. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure a zone and assign an interface:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone\_dmz**.
6. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/0.0** and click **OK**.
8. To configure another security zone, **zone\_external** and assign an interface **fe-1/0/0.0**, repeat Step 4 through Step 7 and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To define an address:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone\_dmz**.
6. Next to Address book, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address name box, type **ws1 1.2.2.10/32** and click **OK**.
9. To configure other address entries such as **ws2 1.2.2.20/32**, **ws3 1.2.2.30/32**, **ws4 1.2.2.40/32**, repeat Step 7 through Step 8 and click **OK**.
10. Next to Address set, click **Add new entry**.
11. In the Address set name box, type **web\_servers**.
12. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
13. In the Address name box, type **ws1**.
14. To configure other address-set entries such as **ws2**, **ws3**, **ws4**, repeat Step l through Step m and click **OK**.
15. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure a policy:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **zone\_external**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **zone\_dmz** and click **OK**.
7. Under the From zone name column, click **private**.
8. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Policy name box, type **id\_1**.
10. Select the Match check box.
11. Select the Then check box.
12. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
13. Next to Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
14. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
15. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
16. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
17. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
18. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
19. In the Address box, type **web\_servers** and click **OK**.
20. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
21. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
22. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-http** and click **OK**.
23. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
24. Next to Action, select **permit** and click **OK**.
25. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure screen options:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone\_external-syn-flood**.
6. Next to Tcp, click **Configure**.

7. Next to Syn flood box, select the check box and click Configure.
8. In the Alarm threshold box, type **250**.
9. In the Attack threshold box, type **625**.
10. In the Source threshold box, type **25**.
11. In the Timeout box, type **20**.
12. To save and commit the configuration, click Commit.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Zones, click Configure.
3. Next to Security zone, click Add new entry.
4. In the Name box, type **zone\_external**.
5. In the Screen box, type **zone\_external-syn-flood** and click OK.
6. To save and commit the configuration, click Commit.

## CLI Configuration

1. Set interfaces.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 1.2.2.1/24
user@host# set interfaces fe-1/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_dmz interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_external interfaces fe-1/0/0.0
```

2. Define addresses.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_dmz address-book address
ws1 1.2.2.10/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_dmz address-book address
ws2 1.2.2.20/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_dmz address-book address
ws3 1.2.2.30/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_dmz address-book address
ws4 1.2.2.40/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_dmz address-book address-set
web_servers address ws1
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_dmz address-book address-set
web_servers address ws2
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_dmz address-book address-set
web_servers address ws3
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_dmz address-book address-set
web_servers address ws4
```

3. Configure policy.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone zone_external to-zone zone_dmz
policy id_1 match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone zone_external to-zone zone_dmz
policy id_1 match destination-address web_servers
user@host# set security policies from-zone zone_external to-zone zone_dmz
policy id_1 match application junos-http
user@host# set security policies from-zone zone_external to-zone zone_dmz
policy id_1 then permit

```

4. Configure SCREEN options.

```

user@host# set security screen ids-option zone_external-syn-flood tcp syn-flood
alarm-threshold 250
user@host# set security screen ids-option zone_external-syn-flood tcp syn-flood
attack-threshold 625
user@host# set security screen ids-option zone_external-syn-flood tcp syn-flood
source-threshold 25
user@host# set security screen ids-option zone_external-syn-flood tcp syn-flood
timeout 20
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone_external screen
zone_external-syn-flood

```

## Related Topics

- Enabling SYN Flood Protection on page 156

## Enabling SYN Flood Protection

A SYN flood occurs when a host becomes so overwhelmed by SYN segments initiating incomplete connection requests that it can no longer process legitimate connection requests.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding SYN Flood Attacks” on page 144.

To enable the SYN flood protection screen option and define its parameters, the JUNOS CLI configuration editor. The specified zone is where a flood might originate.

```

user@host# set security screen zone-syn-flood tcp syn-flood timeout 20
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen zone-syn-flood
user@host# set zone zone screen syn-flood

```

## Related Topics

- Enabling SYN Cookie Protection on page 158
- Enabling ICMP Flood Protection on page 161

- Enabling UDP Flood Protection on page 164
- Enabling Protection Against a Land Attack on page 166

## Understanding SYN Cookie Protection

---

SYN Cookie is a stateless SYN proxy mechanism you can use in conjunction with the defenses against a SYN flood attack.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

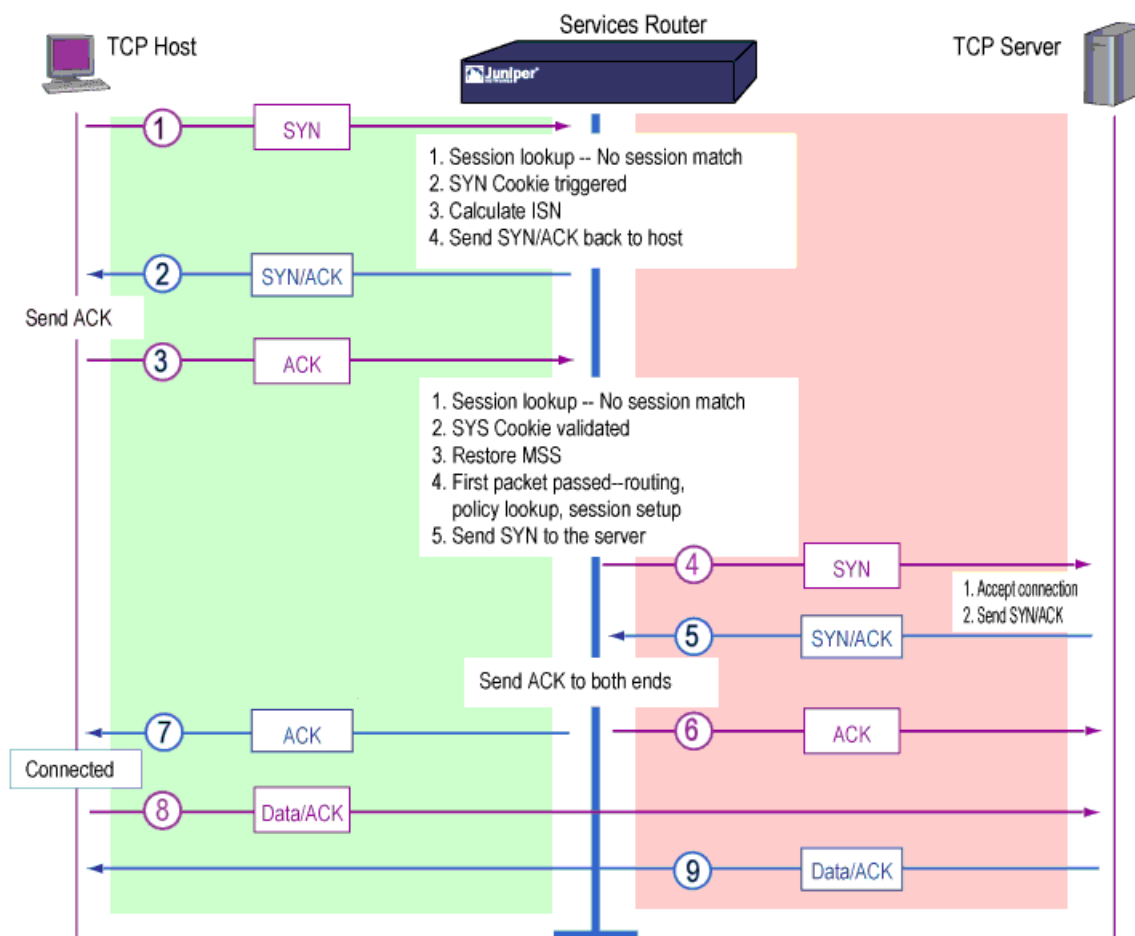
- Network DoS Attacks Overview on page 144
- Understanding SYN Flood Attacks on page 144

As with traditional SYN proxying, SYN Cookie is activated when the SYN flood attack threshold is exceeded. However, because SYN Cookie is stateless, it does not set up a session or policy and route lookups upon receipt of a SYN segment, and it maintains no connection request queues. This dramatically reduces CPU and memory usage and is the primary advantage of using SYN Cookie over the traditional SYN proxying mechanism.

When SYN Cookie is enabled on JUNOS software and becomes the TCP-negotiating proxy for the destination server, it replies to each incoming SYN segment with a SYN/ACK containing an encrypted cookie as its Initial Sequence Number (ISN). The cookie is an MD5 hash of the original source address and port number, destination address and port number, and ISN from the original SYN packet. After sending the cookie, JUNOS software drops the original SYN packet and deletes the calculated cookie from memory. If there is no response to the packet containing the cookie, the attack is noted as an active SYN attack and is effectively stopped.

If the initiating host responds with a TCP packet containing the cookie + 1 in the TCP ACK field, JUNOS software extracts the cookie, subtracts 1 from the value, and recomputes the cookie to validate that it is a legitimate ACK. If it is legitimate, JUNOS software starts the TCP proxy process by setting up a session and sending a SYN to the server containing the source information from the original SYN. When JUNOS software receives a SYN/ACK from the server, it sends ACKs to the server and to the initiation host. At this point the connection is established and the host and server are able to communicate directly.

Figure 33 on page 158 shows how a connection is established between an initiating host and a server when SYN Cookie is active on JUNOS software.

**Figure 33: Establishing a Connection with SYN Cookie Active**

## Related Topics

- Enabling SYN Cookie Protection on page 158

## Enabling SYN Cookie Protection

SYN Cookie is a stateless SYN proxy mechanism you can use in conjunction with the defenses against a SYN flood attack.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding SYN Cookie Protection” on page 157.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to enable SYN Cookie, set the SYN flood attack threshold.



This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 159
- CLI Configuration on page 160
- Related Topics on page 160

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **external-syn-flood**.
6. Next to Tcp, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Syn flood box, select the check box and click **Configure**.
8. In the Timeout box, type **20** and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **external**.
6. In the Screen box, type **external-syn-flood** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure flow:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Flow, click **Configure**.
4. From the Syn flood protection mode choice list, select **syn-cookie** and click **OK**.
5. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option external-syn-flood tcp syn-flood timeout
20
user@host# set security zones security-zone external screen external-syn-flood
user@host# set security flow syn-flood-protection-mode syn-cookie
```



**NOTE:** The SYN Cookie feature can only detect and protect against spoofed SYN-Flood attacks, thus minimizing the negative impact to hosts that are secured by JUNOS software. If an attacker is using a legitimate IP source address, rather than a spoofed IP source, then the SYN-Cookie mechanism does not stop the attack.

## Related Topics

- Enabling SYN Flood Protection on page 156
- Enabling ICMP Flood Protection on page 161
- Enabling UDP Flood Protection on page 164
- Enabling Protection Against a Land Attack on page 166

## Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks

An ICMP flood typically occurs when ICMP echo requests overload its victim with so many requests that it expends all its resources responding until it can no longer process valid network traffic.

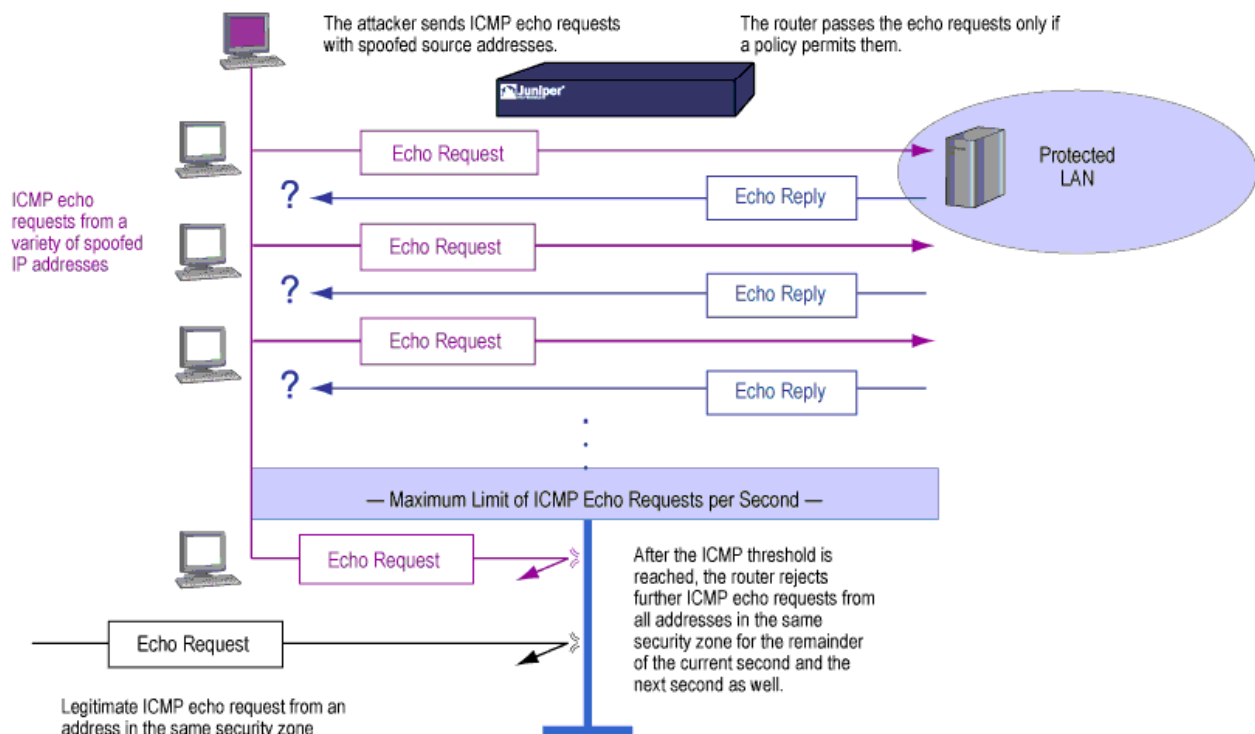
### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Network DoS Attacks Overview” on page 144.

When enabling the ICMP flood protection feature, you can set a threshold that once exceeded invokes the ICMP flood attack protection feature. (The default threshold value is 1000 packets per second.) If the threshold is exceeded, JUNOS software ignores further ICMP echo requests for the remainder of that second plus the next second as well. See Figure 34 on page 161.



**NOTE:** An ICMP flood can consist of any type of ICMP message. Therefore, JUNOS software monitors all ICMP message types, not just echo requests.

**Figure 34: ICMP Flooding**

## Related Topics

- Enabling ICMP Flood Protection on page 161

## Enabling ICMP Flood Protection

An ICMP flood typically occurs when ICMP echo requests overload its victim with so many requests that it expends all its resources responding until it can no longer process valid network traffic.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read "Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks" on page 160.

To enable ICMP flood protection, you can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. The specified zone is where a flood might originate.



**NOTE:** The value unit is ICMP packets per second. The default value is 1000 packets per second.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 162
- CLI Configuration on page 162
- Related Topics on page 162

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **1000-Icmp-flood**.
6. Next to Icmp, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Flood, select the check box and click **Configure**.
8. In the Threshold box, type **1000** and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **1000-Icmp-flood** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option 1000-icmp-flood icmp flood threshold
1000
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen 1000-icmp-flood
```

## ***Related Topics***

- Enabling SYN Flood Protection on page 156
- Enabling SYN Cookie Protection on page 158

- Enabling UDP Flood Protection on page 164
- Enabling Protection Against a Land Attack on page 166

## Understanding UDP Flood Attacks

Similar to the ICMP flood, UDP flooding occurs when an attacker sends IP packets containing UDP datagrams with the purpose of slowing down the victim to the point that the victim can no longer handle valid connections.

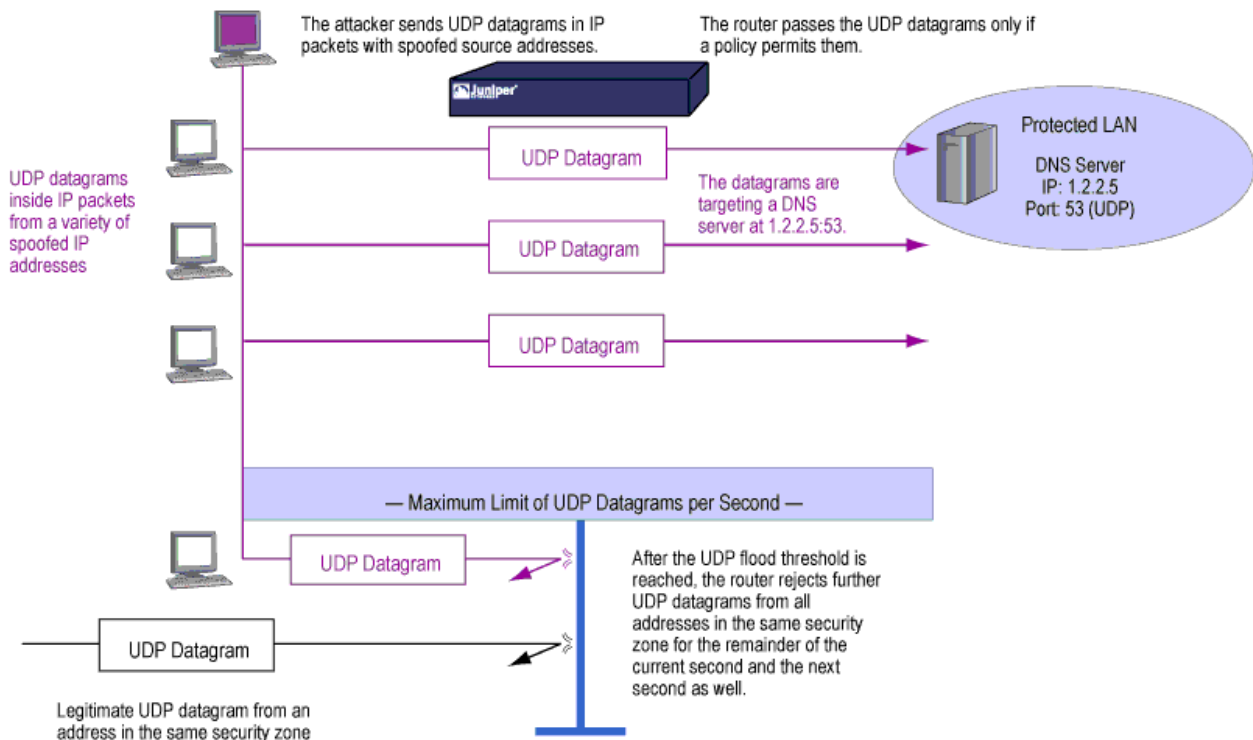
### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Network DoS Attacks Overview on page 144
- Understanding ICMP Flood Attacks on page 160

After enabling the UDP flood protection feature, you can set a threshold that, once exceeded, invokes the UDP flood attack protection feature. (The default threshold value is 1000 packets per second.) If the number of UDP datagrams from one or more sources to a single destination exceeds this threshold, JUNOS software ignores further UDP datagrams to that destination for the remainder of that second plus the next second as well. See Figure 35 on page 163.

**Figure 35: UDP Flooding**



## Related Topics

- Enabling Protection Against a Land Attack on page 166

## Enabling UDP Flood Protection

---

UDP flooding occurs when an attacker sends IP packets containing UDP datagrams with the purpose of slowing down the victim to the point that the victim can no longer handle valid connections.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding UDP Flood Attacks” on page 163.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to enable UDP flood protection. The specified zone is where a flood might originate.



**NOTE:** The value unit is UDP packets per second. The default value is 1000 packets per second.

---

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 164
- CLI Configuration on page 165
- Related Topics on page 165

## J-Web Configuration

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **external**.
6. In the Screen box, type **external-udp-flood** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Screen**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Ids option**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **1000-udp-flood**.
6. Next to **Udp**, click **Configure**.
7. Next to **Flood**, select the check box and click **Configure**.
8. In the **Threshold** box, type **1000** and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone external screen external-udp-flood
user@host# set security screen ids-option 1000-udp-flood udp flood threshold 1000
```

## Related Topics

- Enabling SYN Flood Protection on page 156
- Enabling SYN Cookie Protection on page 158
- Enabling ICMP Flood Protection on page 161
- Enabling Protection Against a Land Attack on page 166

## Understanding Land Attacks

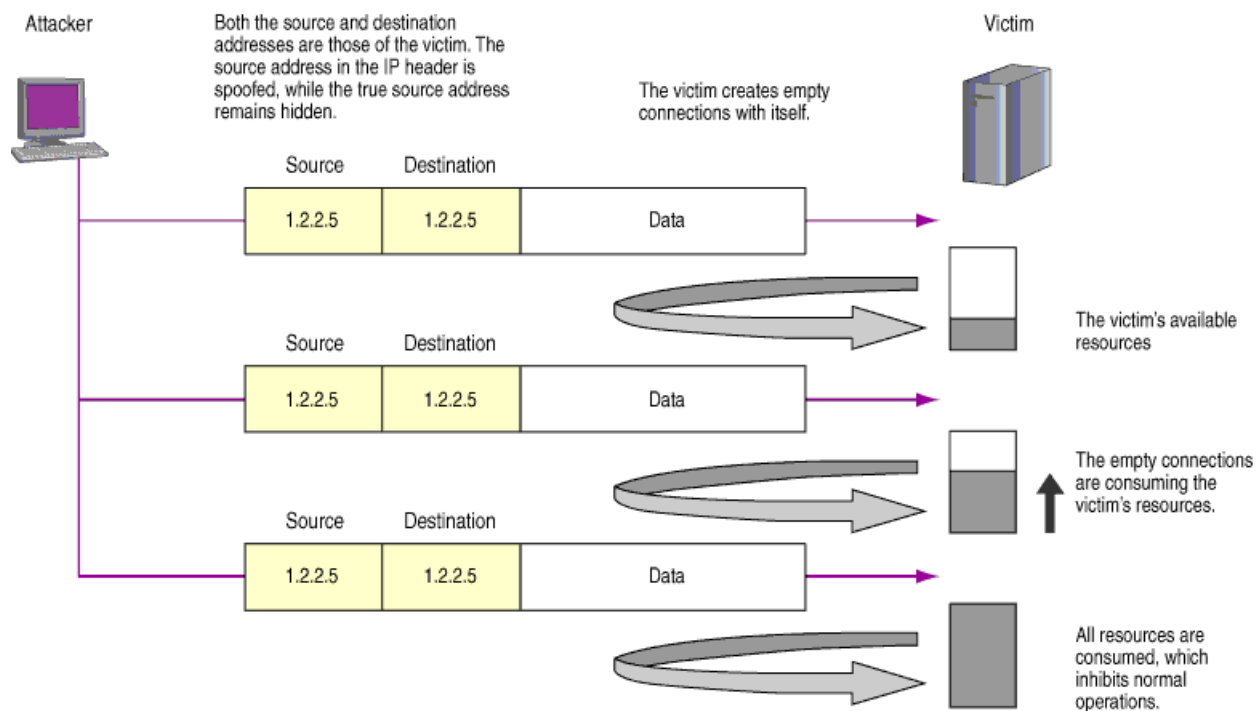
Combining a SYN attack with IP spoofing, a land attack occurs when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets containing the IP address of the victim as both the destination and source IP address.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Network DoS Attacks Overview on page 144
- IP Spoofing on page 110

The receiving system responds by sending the SYN-ACK packet to itself, creating an empty connection that lasts until the idle timeout value is reached. Flooding a system with such empty connections can overwhelm the system, causing a denial of service. See Figure 36 on page 166.

**Figure 36: Land Attack**

When you enable the screen option to block land attacks, JUNOS software combines elements of the SYN flood defense and IP spoofing protection to detect and block any attempts of this nature.

## Related Topics

- Enabling Protection Against a Land Attack on page 166

## Enabling Protection Against a Land Attack

Combining a SYN attack with IP spoofing, a land attack occurs when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets containing the IP address of the victim as both the destination and source IP address.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Land Attacks” on page 165.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to enable protection against a land attack.



This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 167
- CLI Configuration on page 167
- Related Topics on page 167

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **land**.
6. Next to Tcp, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Land, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **land** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

```
user@host# set security screen land tcp land
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen land
```

## ***Related Topics***

- Enabling SYN Flood Protection on page 156
- Enabling SYN Cookie Protection on page 158
- Enabling ICMP Flood Protection on page 161
- Enabling UDP Flood Protection on page 164

## OS-Specific DoS Attacks Overview

---

If an attacker not only identifies the IP address and responsive port numbers of an active host but also its operating system (OS), instead of resorting to brute-force attacks, the attacker can launch more elegant attacks that can produce one- or two-packet “kills.”

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Denial-of-Service Attack Overview” on page 135.

OS-specific DoS attacks, including ping of death attacks, teardrop attacks, and WinNuke attacks, can cripple a system with minimum effort. If JUNOS software is protecting hosts susceptible to these attacks, you can configure JUNOS software to detect these attacks and block them before they reach their target.

### Related Topics

- Understanding Ping of Death Attacks on page 168
- Understanding Teardrop Attacks on page 170
- Understanding WinNuke Attacks on page 173

## Understanding Ping of Death Attacks

---

OS-specific DoS attacks such as ping of death attacks can cripple a system with minimum effort.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “OS-Specific DoS Attacks Overview” on page 168.

The maximum allowable IP packet size is 65,535 bytes, including the packet header, which is typically 20 bytes long. An ICMP echo request is an IP packet with a pseudo header, which is 8 bytes long. Therefore, the maximum allowable size of the data area of an ICMP echo request is 65,507 bytes ( $65,535 - 20 - 8 = 65,507$ ).

However, many ping implementations allow the user to specify a packet size larger than 65,507 bytes. A grossly oversized ICMP packet can trigger a range of adverse system reactions such as denial of service (DoS), crashing, freezing, and rebooting.

When you enable the ping of death screen option, JUNOS software detects and rejects such oversized and irregular packet sizes even when the attacker hides the total packet size by purposefully fragmenting it. See Figure 37 on page 169.



**NOTE:** For information about IP specifications, see RFC 791, *Internet Protocol*. For information about ICMP specifications, see RFC 792, *Internet Control Message Protocol*. For information about ping of death attacks, see <http://www.insecure.org/spl0its/ping-o-death.html>.

**Figure 37: Ping of Death**



The size of this packet is 65,538 bytes. It exceeds the size limit prescribed by RFC 791, *Internet Protocol*, which is 65,535 bytes. As the packet is transmitted, it becomes broken into numerous fragments. The reassembly process might cause the receiving system to crash.

**Related Topics**

- Enabling Protection Against a Ping of Death Attack on page 169

**Enabling Protection Against a Ping of Death Attack**

A grossly oversized ICMP packet can trigger a range of adverse system reactions such as denial of service (DoS), crashing, freezing, and rebooting.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Understanding Ping of Death Attacks” on page 168.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to enable protection against a ping of death attack. The specified zone is where the attack originates.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 169
- CLI Configuration on page 170
- Related Topics on page 170

**J-Web Configuration**

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Screen**, click **Configure**.

4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ping-death**.
6. Next to Icmp, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Ping death, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **ping-death** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option ping-death icmp ping-death
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen ping-death
```

## Related Topics

- Enabling Protection Against a Teardrop Attack on page 172
- Enabling Protection Against a WinNuke Attack on page 174

## Understanding Teardrop Attacks

---

OS-specific DoS attacks such as teardrop attacks can cripple a system with minimum effort.

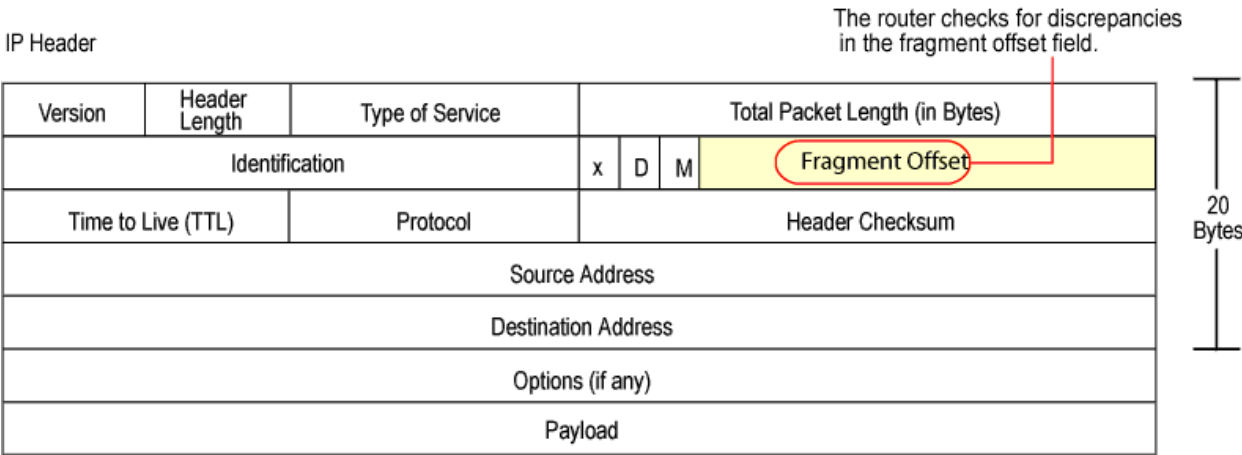
### Before You Begin

For background information, read “OS-Specific DoS Attacks Overview” on page 168.

---

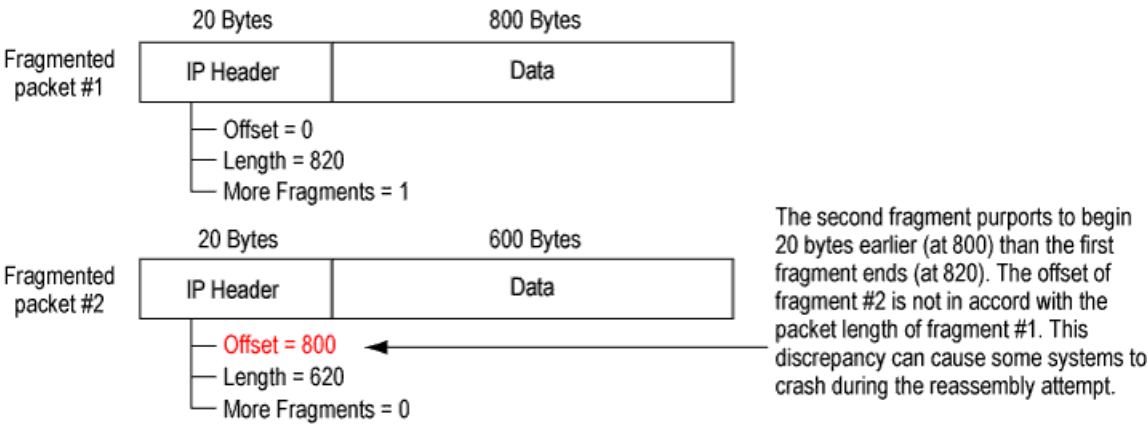
Teardrop attacks exploit the reassembly of fragmented IP packets. In the IP header, one of the fields is the fragment offset field, which indicates the starting position, or offset, of the data contained in a fragmented packet relative to the data of the original unfragmented packet. See Figure 38 on page 171.

Figure 38: Teardrop Attacks



When the sum of the offset and size of one fragmented packet differ from that of the next fragmented packet, the packets overlap, and the server attempting to reassemble the packet can crash, especially if it is running an older operating system that has this vulnerability. See Figure 39 on page 171.

Figure 39: Fragment Discrepancy



After you enable the teardrop attack screen option, whenever JUNOS software detects this discrepancy in a fragmented packet, it drops it.

## Related Topics

- Enabling Protection Against a Teardrop Attack on page 172

## Enabling Protection Against a Teardrop Attack

---

Teardrop attacks exploit the reassembly of fragmented IP packets.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Teardrop Attacks” on page 170.

---

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to enable protection against a Teardrop attack. The specified zone is where the attack originates.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 172
- CLI Configuration on page 173
- Related Topics on page 173

## J-Web Configuration

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Screen, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ids option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **tear-drop**.
6. Next to Ip, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Tear drop, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.

5. In the Name box, type **zone**.
6. In the Screen box, type **tear-drop** and click OK.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security screen ids-option tear-drop ip tear-drop
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen tear-drop
```

## Related Topics

- Enabling Protection Against a Ping of Death Attack on page 169
- Enabling Protection Against a WinNuke Attack on page 174

## Understanding WinNuke Attacks

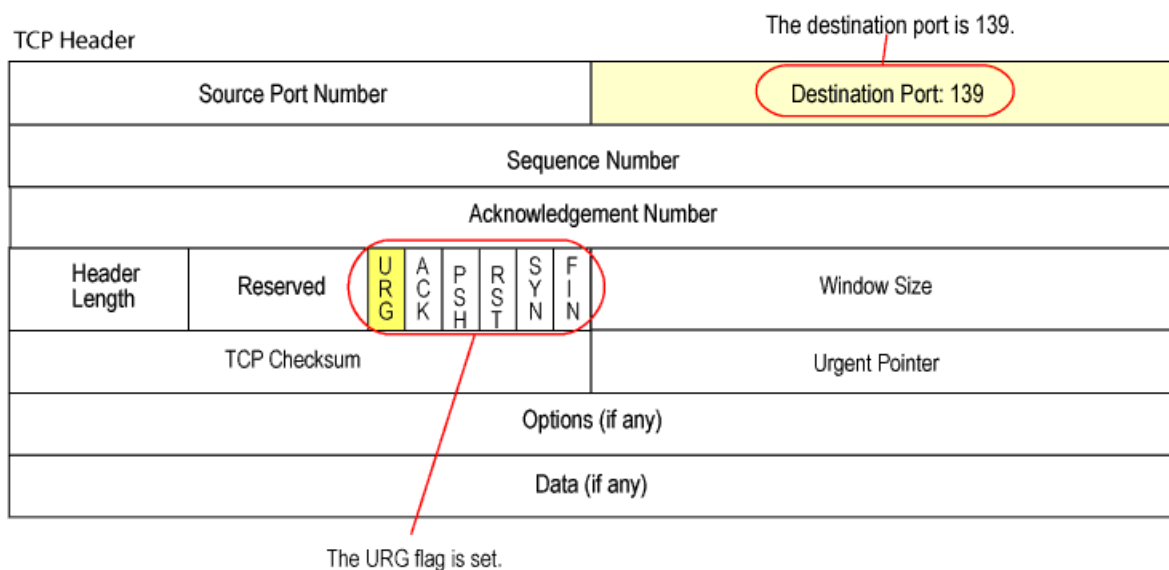
OS-specific DoS attacks such as WinNuke attacks can cripple a system with minimum effort.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “OS-Specific DoS Attacks Overview” on page 168.

WinNuke is a DoS attack targeting any computer on the Internet running Windows. The attacker sends a TCP segment—usually to NetBIOS port 139 with the urgent (URG) flag set—to a host with an established connection (See Figure 40 on page 174). This introduces a NetBIOS fragment overlap, which causes many machines running Windows to crash. After rebooting the attacked machine, the following message appears, indicating that an attack has occurred:

```
An exception OE has occurred at 0028:[address] in VxD MSTCP(01) +
000041AE. This was called from 0028:[address] in VxD NDIS(01) +
00008660. It may be possible to continue normally.
Press any key to attempt to continue.
Press CTRL+ALT+DEL to restart your computer. You will lose any unsaved information
in all applications.
Press any key to continue.
```

**Figure 40: WinNuke Attack Indicators**

If you enable the WinNuke attack defense screen option, JUNOS software scans any incoming Microsoft NetBIOS session service (port 139) packets. If JUNOS software observes that the URG flag is set in one of those packets, it unsets the URG flag, clears the URG pointer, forwards the modified packet, and makes an entry in the event log noting that it has blocked an attempted WinNuke attack.

## Related Topics

- Enabling Protection Against a WinNuke Attack on page 174

## Enabling Protection Against a WinNuke Attack

WinNuke is a DoS attack targeting any computer on the Internet running Windows.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read "Understanding WinNuke Attacks" on page 173.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to enable protection against a WinNuke attack. The specified zone is where the attack originates.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 175
- CLI Configuration on page 175
- Related Topics on page 175



## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure screens:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Screen**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Ids** option, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **winnuke**.
6. Next to **Tcp**, click **Configure**.
7. Next to **Winnuke**, select the check box and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Zones**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Security zone**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **zone**.
6. In the **Screen** box, type **winnuke** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

```
user@host# set security screen winnuke tcp winnuke
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone screen winnuke
```

## ***Related Topics***

- Enabling Protection Against a Ping of Death Attack on page 169
- Enabling Protection Against a Teardrop Attack on page 172

## Configuring Firewall Screen Options—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure Firewall/NAT flow

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Configuring Host Inbound Traffic” on page 75
- “Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview” on page 91
- “Understanding Operating System Probes” on page 101
- “Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques” on page 107

Figure 41 on page 176 shows the Quick Configuration for Firewall/NAT Screen page.

**Figure 41: Quick Configuration Page for Firewall/NAT Screen**

Configuration > Quick Configuration > Firewall/NAT > Screen

### Quick Configuration

#### Firewall/NAT [Add a Screen Object](#)

---

**Screen**

\* Name  ?

---

**Generate Alarms without Dropping Packet** ☐ ?

---

☐ **Scan/Spoof/Sweep Defense**

---

☐ **MS-Windows Defense**

---

☐ **Denial of Service Defense**

---

☐ **IP Option Anomalies**

---

☐ **TCP/IP Anomalies**

---

☐ **Flood Defense**

---

To configure screen options with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Firewall/NAT > Screen**.
2. Click **Add** to define screen objects; the screen objects page appears as shown in Figure 41 on page 176.
3. Fill in the screen options as shown in Table 61 on page 177.
4. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 61: Firewall/NAT Screen Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>Screen</b>		
Name	Name of the screen object.	Specify a unique name for the screen object you are defining.
Generate Alarms without Dropping Packets	Generates alarms without dropping packets.	Select this check box to enable alarm generation but do not drop any packets.
<b>Scan/Spoof/Sweep Defense</b>		
IP Address Spoof	Enables IP address spoofing. IP spoofing is when a bogus source address is inserted in the packet header to make the packet appear to come from a trusted source.	Select this check box to enable IP address spoofing.
IP Address Sweep	Number of ICMP address sweeps. An IP address sweep can occur with the intent of triggering responses from active hosts.	Select this check box to enable IP address sweep.  Configure a time interval (in microseconds). If a remote host sends ICMP traffic to 10 addresses within this interval, an address sweep attack is flagged and further ICMP packets from the remote host are rejected. Valid values are between 1000 and 1000000 microseconds. The default value is 5000 microseconds.
Port Scan	Number of TCP port scans. The purpose of this attack is to scan the available services in the hopes that at least one port will respond, thus identifying a service to target.	Select this check box to enable port scanning.  Configure a time interval (in microseconds). If a remote host scans 10 ports within this interval, a port scan attack is flagged and further packets from the remote host are rejected. Valid values are between 1000 and 1000000 microseconds. The default value is 5000 microseconds.
<b>MS-Windows Defense</b>		
WinNuke Attack Protection	Number of Transport Control Protocol (TCP) WinNuke attacks. WinNuke is a DoS attack targeting any computer on the Internet running Windows.	Select this check box to enable WinNuke attack protection option.

**Table 61: Firewall/NAT Screen Configuration Options** (continued)

Field	Function	Action
<b>Denial of Service Defense</b>		
Land Attack Protection	Number of land attacks. Land attacks occur when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets containing the IP address of the victim as both the destination and source IP address.	Select this check box to enable land attack protection option.
Teardrop Attack Protection	Number of teardrop attacks. Teardrop attacks exploit the reassembly of fragmented IP packets.	Select this check box to enable teardrop protection option.
ICMP Fragment Protection	Number of ICMP fragments. Because ICMP packets contain very short messages, there is no legitimate reason for ICMP packets to be fragmented. If an ICMP packet is so large that it must be fragmented, something is amiss.	Select this check box to enable ICMP fragment protection option.
Ping of Death Attack Protection	ICMP ping of death counter. Ping of death occurs when IP packets are sent that exceed the maximum legal length (65,535 bytes).	Select this check box to enable ping of death attack protection option.
Large Size ICMP Packet Protection	Number of large ICMP packets.	Select this check box to enable large (size > 1024) ICMP packet protection option.
Block Fragment Traffic	Number of IP block fragments.	Select this check box to enable IP fragment blocking.
Source IP Based Session Limit	Limits sessions from the same source IP.	<p>Select this check box to enable source IP based session limit.</p> <p>Configure the threshold between 1 and 50000 sessions. The default value is 128 sessions.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For SRX series devices, the applicable range is 1 through 8000000 sessions per second.</p>
Destination IP Based Session Limit	Limits sessions to the same destination IP.	<p>Select this check box to enable destination IP based session limit.</p> <p>Configure the threshold between 1 and 50000 sessions. The default value is 128 sessions.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For SRX-series devices, the applicable range is 1 through 8000000 sessions per second.</p>
SYN-ACK-ACK Proxy Protection	Number of TCP flags enabled with SYN-ACK-ACK. This is designed to prevent flooding with SYN-ACK-ACK sessions. After the number of connections from the same IP address reaches the SYN-ACK-ACK proxy threshold, JUNOS 8.5 software rejects further connection requests from that IP address.	<p>Select this check box to enable the SYN-ACK-ACK proxy protection screen option.</p> <p>Configure the threshold value between 1 and 250000 unauthenticated connections. The default value is 512.</p>
<b>IP Option Anomalies</b>		
Bad IP Option	Number of bad options counter.	Select this check box to enable IP with bad option IDs screen option.

**Table 61: Firewall/NAT Screen Configuration Options** (continued)

Field	Function	Action
Record Route Option	Records the IP addresses of the network devices along the path that the IP packet travels.	Select this check box to enable IP with record route option.
Timestamp Option	Records the time (in Universal Time) when each network device receives the packet during its trip from the point of origin to its destination.	Select this check box to enable IP with timestamp option.
Security Option	Provides a way for hosts to send security.	Select this check box to enable IP with security option.
Stream Option	Provides a way for the 16-bit SATNET stream identifier to be carried through networks that did not support the stream concept.	Select this check box to enable IP with stream option.
Loose Source Route Option	Specifies a partial route list for a packet to take on its journey from source to destination.	Select this check box to enable IP with loose source route option.
Strict Source Route Option	Specifies the complete route list for a packet to take on its journey from source to destination.	Select this check box to enable IP with strict source route option.
Source Route Option	Number of IP addresses of the devices set at the source that an IP transmission is allowed to take along the path on its way to its destination.	Select this check box to enable IP with source route option.
<b>TCP/IP Anomalies</b>		
SYN Fragment Protection	Number of TCP SYN fragments.	Select this check box to enable SYN Fragment option.
SYN and FIN Flags Set Protection	Number of TCP SYN and FIN flags. When you enable this option, JUNOS software checks if the SYN and FIN flags are set in TCP headers. If it discovers such a header, it drops the packet.	Select this check box to enable SYN and FIN flags Set option.
FIN Flag without ACK Flag Set Protection	Number of TCP FIN flags without the acknowledge (ACK) flag. When you enable this option, JUNOS software checks if the FIN flag is set but not the ACK flag in TCP headers. If it discovers a packet with such a header, it drops the packet.	Select this check box to enable FIN flag without ACK option and FIN Flag Set option.
TCP Packet without Flag Set Protection	Number of TCP headers without flags set. A normal TCP segment header has at least one flag control set.	Select this check box to enable TCP Packet without Flag Set option.
Unknown Protocol Protection	Number of internet protocols (IP) that are unknown.	Select this check box to enable Unknown Protocol Protection option.
<b>Flood Defense</b>		

**Table 61: Firewall/NAT Screen Configuration Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
ICMP Flood Protection	Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) flood counter. An ICMP flood typically occurs when ICMP echo requests use all resources in responding, such that valid network traffic can no longer be processed.	<p>Select this check box to enable ICMP Flood Protection option.</p> <p>Configure threshold value for ICMP flood between 1 and 100000 ICMP packets per second (pps).</p> <p>The default value is 1000 pps.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For SRX-series devices, the applicable range is 1 through 4000000 ICMP Packets per second.</p>
UDP Flood Protection	User Datagram Protocol (UDP) flood counter. UDP flooding occurs when an attacker sends IP packets containing UDP datagrams with the purpose of slowing down the resources, such that valid connections can no longer be handled.	<p>Select this check box to enable UDP Flood Protection option.</p> <p>Configure threshold value for UDP flood between 1 and 100000 UDP packets with same destination address per second (pps).</p> <p>The default value is 1000 pps.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> For SRX-series devices, the applicable range is 1 through 4000000 UDP packets per second.</p>

**Table 61: Firewall/NAT Screen Configuration Options** (continued)

Field	Function	Action
SYN Flood Protection	Attack Threshold—Number of SYN packets per second required to trigger the SYN proxy mechanism.	Attack Threshold—Configure a value between 1 and 100000 proxied requests per second. The default value is 200.
	Alarm Threshold—Define the number of half-complete proxy connections per second at which the device makes entries in the event alarm log.	<b>NOTE:</b> For SRX-series devices, the applicable range is 1 through 1000000 proxied requests per second.  Alarm Threshold—Configure a value between 1 and 100000 segments received per second for SYN flood alarm. The default value is 512.
	Source Threshold—Number of SYN segments received per second from a single source IP address (regardless of the destination IP address and port number) before the device begins dropping connection requests from that source.	<b>NOTE:</b> For SRX-series devices, the applicable range is 1 through 1000000 segments per second.
	Destination Threshold—Number of SYN segments received per second for a single destination IP address before the device begins dropping connection requests to that destination. If a protected host runs multiple services, you might want to set a threshold based only on destination IP address, regardless of the destination port number.	Source Threshold—Configure a value for SYN flood from the same source between 4 and 100000 segments received per second. The default value is 4000.  <b>NOTE:</b> For SRX-series devices, the applicable range is 4 through 1000000 segments per second.
	Timeout—Maximum length of time before a half-completed connection is dropped from the queue. You can decrease the timeout value until you see any connections dropped during normal traffic conditions.	Destination Threshold—Configure a value for SYN flood to the same destination between 4 and 100000. The default value is 4000.  <b>NOTE:</b> For SRX-series devices, the applicable range is 4 through 1000000 segments per second.  Timeout—Configure a value for SYN attack protection between 1 and 50 seconds. The default value is 20 seconds.

## Verifying Application Security Information Using Trace Options

The JUNOS software trace function provides a tool for applications to write security debugging information to a file. The information that appears in this file is based on criteria you set. You can use this information to analyze security application issues.

The trace function operates in a distributed manner, with each thread writing to its own trace buffer. These trace buffers are then collected at one point, sorted, and written to trace files. Trace messages are delivered using the IPC (InterProcess Communications) protocol. A trace message has a lower priority than that of control

protocol packets such as BGP, OSPF, and IKE and therefore delivery is not considered to be as reliable.

## Setting Security Trace Options

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 182
- CLI Configuration on page 183
- Example: Show Security Traceoptions Output on page 184

### J-Web Configuration

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > Traceoptions Configure**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Select the **No remote trace** checkbox to disable remote tracing.
3. In the **Rate limit** edit box, enter parameters to limit the incoming rate of trace messages. The edit field here accepts a numeric value between 0 and 4294967295.
4. Select the **Use local files** checkbox to write trace messages to a local file. The trace file is saved in the `/var/log/` directory.
5. In the **Filename** edit box, enter a name for the file to which you want trace information written. This name is a text string between 1 and 1024 character and it cannot include spaces, `/` or `%` characters. If you do not create a name, the default name for this file is “security.”
6. In the **Files** edit box, enter the maximum number of trace files that can accumulate. This is a numeric value between 2 and 1000 used to limit the amount of trace files created. The default value is 3.
7. In the **Match** edit box, enter matching criteria in the for information logged to the trace file. This is a regular expression for matching against. Wildcard (\*) characters are accepted.
8. In the **Size** edit box, enter size parameters to limit the maximum size to which a trace file can grow. This is a numeric value from 10240 to 1073741824. Once the file reaches that size, it is compressed and renamed to `< filename > 0.gz` and the next one is named `< filename > 1.gz`, and so on.
9. Select either the **Yes** or the **No Word readable** checkbox. If you select Yes, you are allowing any user to read the trace file.
10. To turn traceoptions on and to perform more than one tracing operation, click the **Add new entry** link beside **Flag** to include multiple flag commands. You can include the following flags:
  - **all** — Trace everything
  - **compilation** — Trace compilation events
  - **configuration** — Trace configuration events
  - **routing-socket** — Trace routing socket events



11. Click **OK** to return to the configuration page.
12. In the **Advanced** section, you can enter groups to which to apply these trace option settings or you can enter groups to exclude from these settings. Click the **Add new entry** link beside the **Apply groups** or **Apply groups except** option to enter one or more groups for inclusion or exclusion.
13. When finished, click one of the following buttons:
  - **OK** — This applies your settings and returns you to the previous level in the configuration hierarchy.
  - **Cancel** — This clears the settings you have not yet applied and returns you to the previous level in the configuration hierarchy.
  - **Refresh** — This updates the display with any changes to the configuration made by other users.
  - **Commit** — This verifies your entries and applies them to the current configuration file running on the routing platform.
  - **Discard** — This removes settings applied to, or deletes existing statements or identifiers from, the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

Use the following commands to set the described trace options:

- Set remote tracing as disabled.  

```
user@host # set security traceoptions no-remote-trace
```
- Set the local writing of trace files. (The trace file is saved in the `/var/log/` directory.)  

```
user@host # set security traceoptions use-local-files
```
- Set file name. If you do not create a name, the default name for this file is “security.”  

```
user@host # set security traceoptions file <filename>
```
- Set the maximum number of trace files that can accumulate. (The default is 3.)  

```
user@host # set security traceoptions file files 3
```
- Set matching criteria for logging data to the trace file. This criteria is a regular expression for matching against. Wildcard (\*) characters are accepted.  

```
user@host # set security traceoptions file match *thread
```
- Set world-readable or not.  

```
user@host # set security traceoptions file world-readable
user@host # set security traceoptions file no-world-readable
```

- Set maximum trace file size. Once the file reaches that size, it is compressed and renamed to < filename > 0.gz and the next one is named < filename > 1.gz, and so on.

```
user@host # set security traceoptions file size 10240
```

- To turn traceoptions on and to perform more than one tracing operation, set the following flags:

```
user@host # set security traceoptions flag all
user@host # set security traceoptions flag compilation
user@host # set security traceoptions flag configuration
user@host # set security traceoptions flag routing-socket
```

- Set trace options to apply to entered groups or to exclude entered groups. You can enter groups to which to apply trace option settings or you can enter groups to exclude from trace option settings.

```
user@host # set security traceoptions apply-groups <value>
user@host # set security traceoptions apply-groups-except <value>
```

### Example: Show Security Traceoptions Output

The following CLI command is used as follows:

```
user@host # show security traceoptions file usp_trace
user@host # show security traceoptions flag all
user@host # show security traceoptions rate-limit 888
```

The output is as follows:

```
Apr 11 16:06:42
 21:13:15.750395:CID-906489336:FPC-01:PIC-01:THREAD_ID-01:PFE:now update
 0x3607edf8df8in 0x3607e8d0
Apr 11 16:06:42
 21:13:15.874058:CID-1529687608:FPC-01:PIC-01:THREAD_ID-01:CTRL:Enter
 Function[util_ssam_handler]
Apr 11 16:06:42
 21:13:15.874485:CID-00:FPC-01:PIC-01:THREAD_ID-01:CTRL:default1: Rate limit
 changed to 888
Apr 11 16:06:42
 21:13:15.874538:CID-00:FPC-01:PIC-01:THREAD_ID-01:CTRL:default1: Destination
 ID set to 1
Apr 11 16:06:42
 21:13:15.874651:CID-00:FPC-01:PIC-01:THREAD_ID-01:CTRL:default2: Rate limit
 changed to 888
Apr 11 16:06:42
 21:13:15.874832:CID-00:FPC-01:PIC-01:THREAD_ID-01:CTRL:default2: Destination
 ID set to 1
Apr 11 16:06:42
 21:13:15.874942:CID-00:FPC-01:PIC-01:THREAD_ID-01:CTRL:default3: Rate limit
 changed to 888
Apr 11 16:06:42
 21:13:15.874997:CID-00:FPC-01:PIC-01:THREAD_ID-01:CTRL:default3: Destination
 ID set to 1
```

## Verifying Application Security Flow Information

For flow trace options, you can define a packet filter using combinations of destination-port, destination-prefix, interface, protocol, source-port, and source-prefix. If the security flow trace flag for a certain module is set, the packet matching the specific packet filter triggers flow tracing and writes debugging information to the trace file.

The following example displays the options you can set by using :

- For the packet filter named filter1 , set the destination port “imap” for matching.

```
user@host # set security flow traceoptions packet-filter filter1 destination-port
imap
```

- For the packet filter named filter1 , set the destination IPv4 prefix address 1.2.3.4.

```
user@host # set security flow traceoptions packet-filter filter1 destination-prefix
1.2.3.4
```

- For the packet filter named filter1 , set the logical interface as fxp0.

```
user@host # set security flow traceoptions packet-filter filter1 interface fxp0
```

- For the packet filter named filter1 , set the IP protocol for matching as TCP.

```
user@host # set security flow traceoptions packet-filter filter1 protocol tcp
```

- For the packet filter named filter1 , set the source port for matching as http.

```
user@host # set security flow traceoptions packet-filter filter1 source-port http
```

- For the packet filter named filter1 , set the source IPv4 prefix address as 5.6.7.8.

```
user@host # set security flow traceoptions packet-filter filter1 source-prefix 5.6.7.8
```



## Chapter 9

# Network Address Translation

Network Address Translation (NAT) is a method by which IP addresses in a packet are mapped from one group to another and, optionally, port numbers in the packet are translated into different port numbers.

NAT is described in RFC 1631 to solve IP (version 4) address depletion problems. Since then, NAT has been found to be a useful tool for firewalls, traffic redirect, load sharing, network migrations, and so on.

This section includes:

- Understanding NAT on page 188
- Destination IP Address Translation Overview on page 190
- Understanding Static NAT on page 191
- Example: Configuring Static NAT on page 191
- Understanding Rule-Based Destination NAT on page 192
- Example: Configuring Destination NAT on page 193
- Source IP Address Translation Overview on page 194
- Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools on page 195
- Understanding NAT Source Pools with PAT on page 195
- Understanding NAT Source Pools Without PAT on page 196
- Understanding NAT Static Source Pools on page 197
- Understanding NAT Allow-Incoming Source Pools on page 198
- Understanding NAT Source Pool Sets on page 198
- Example: Configuring Source NAT on page 199
- Verifying Static NAT Summary on page 201
- Example: Configuring a Persistent Address on page 201
- Configuring Proxy ARP on page 202
- Verifying NAT Configuration on page 202
- Configuring Source NAT—Quick Configuration on page 203
- Configuring Destination NAT—Quick Configuration on page 204
- Configuring Interface NAT—Quick Configuration on page 207

- Configuring Firewall/NAT Flow—Quick Configuration on page 210
- Configuring Stateful Firewall or NAT Screen—Quick Configuration on page 214

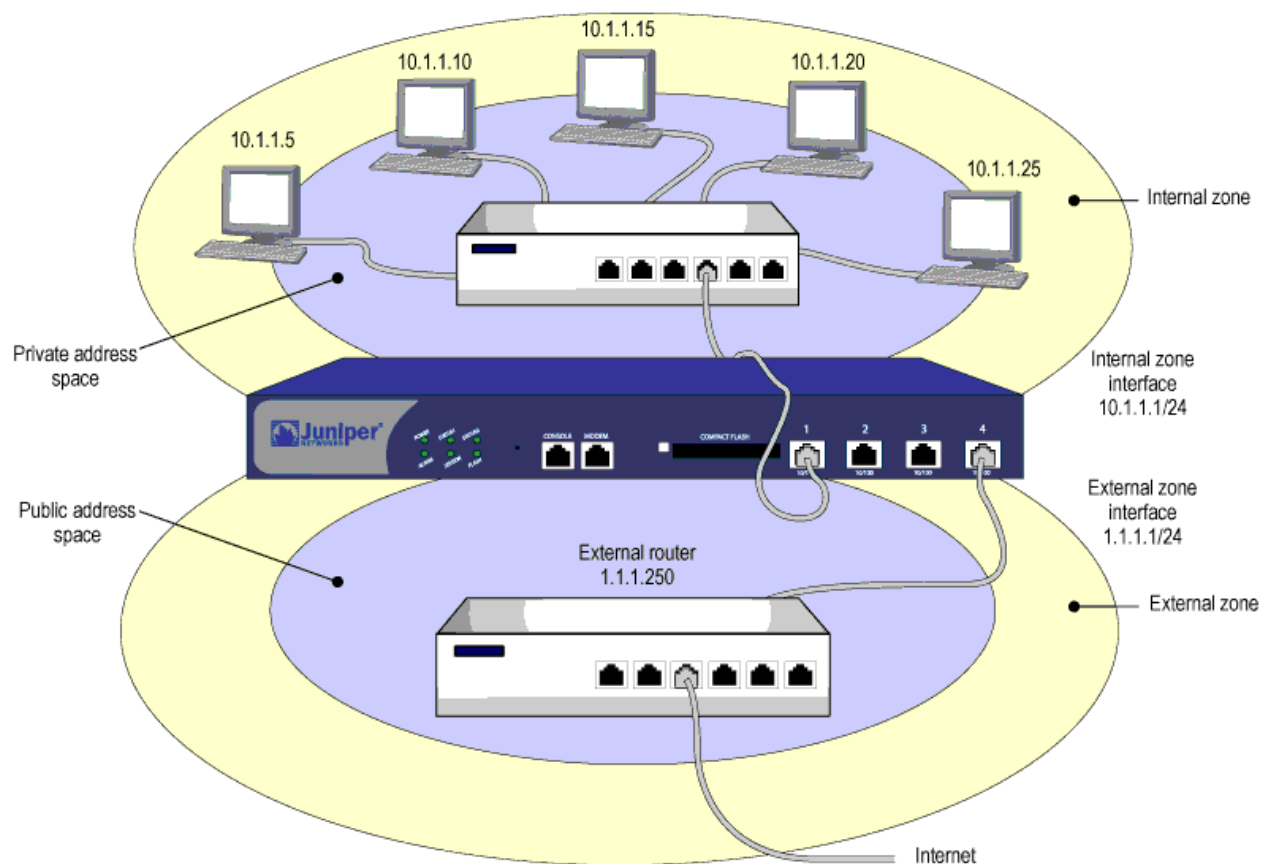
## Understanding NAT

NAT can include one of the following attributes with or without port address translation:

- Destination IP address translation
- Source IP address translation
- Both

When a configuration includes Network Address Translation (NAT) in its match criteria, the J-series Services Router, acting like a Layer 3 switch (or router), translates two components in the header of an outgoing IP packet destined for the external zone: its source IP address and source port number. The router replaces the source IP address of the originating host with the IP address of the external zone interface. Also, it replaces the source port number with another random port number generated by the router. See Figure 42 on page 188.

**Figure 42: NAT Topology**



When the reply packet arrives at the device, the device translates two components in the IP header of the incoming packet (the destination address and port number) which are translated back to the original numbers. The device then forwards the packet to its destination.

The addresses of hosts sending traffic through the interface in an internal zone (where NAT is configured) are never exposed to hosts in the external zone, unless the two zones are in the same virtual routing domain and the device is advertising routes to peers through a Dynamic Routing Protocol (DRP). Even then, the internal zone addresses are only reachable if you have a policy permitting inbound traffic to them. (If you want to keep the internal zone addresses hidden while using a DRP, then put the external zone in the external-vr and the internal zone in the internal-vr, and do not export routes for internal addresses in the internal-vr to the external-vr.)

Also, NAT preserves the use of public IP addresses. In many environments, resources are not available to provide public IP addresses for all devices on the network. NAT services allow many private IP addresses to have access to Internet resources through one or a few public IP addresses. The following IP address ranges are reserved for private IP networks and must not get routed on the Internet:

- 10.0.0.0 — 10.255.255.255
- 172.16.0.0 — 172.31.255.255
- 192.168.0.0 — 192.168.255.255

NAT can involve either destination IP address translation or source IP address translation, or both, with or without port address translation.

This topic covers:

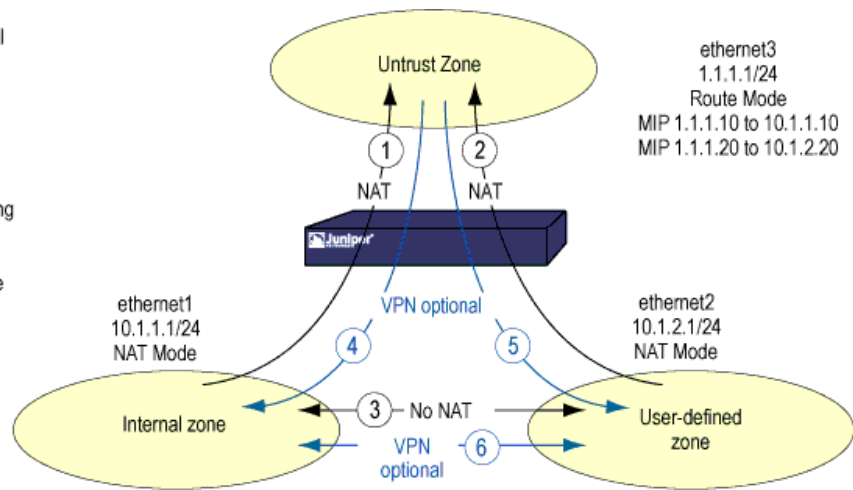
- Inbound and Outbound NAT Traffic on page 189
- Related Topics on page 190

### ***Inbound and Outbound NAT Traffic***

A host in a zone sending traffic through an interface in NAT mode can initiate traffic to the external zone—assuming that a rule permits it. However, if issues of privacy and private IP addresses are not a concern, traffic from the external zone can reach hosts behind an interface in NAT mode directly, without the use of a VPN. See Figure 43 on page 190.

**Figure 43: NAT Traffic Flow**

1. Interface-based NAT on traffic from an internal zone to an external zone.
  2. Interface-based NAT on traffic from the user-defined zone to the external zone.
- (Note: This is possible only if the user-defined and external zones are in different virtual routing domains.)
3. No interface-based NAT on traffic between the internal and user-defined zones.
  - 4 and 5. You can use VPNs for traffic from the external zone to reach the internal zone or the user-defined zone, but they are not required.



## Related Topics

- Destination IP Address Translation Overview on page 190
- Source IP Address Translation Overview on page 194
- Example: Configuring a Persistent Address on page 201

## Destination IP Address Translation Overview

When performing destination IP address translation, JUNOS software translates the original destination IP address, port number, or both to a different one.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding NAT” on page 188.

Destination NAT can be performed in one of the following ways:

- Static NAT defined on an interface
- Rule-based destination NAT defined on SRX-series services gateways
- Allow-incoming table dynamically generated by VoIP ALGs



## Related Topics

- Understanding Rule-Based Destination NAT on page 192

## Understanding Static NAT

---

JUNOS software allows you to create static NAT rules that configure a one-to-one static mapping between original destination address or subnet and translated destination address or subnet. For a NAT device, the original destination address is the virtual host IP address while the mapped-to address is the real host IP address.



**NOTE:** The original destination addresses, along with other addresses in source and destination NAT pools should never be overlapped within one routing instance.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194.

---

The mapping from original destination address or subnet to translated destination address or subnet in static NAT rule's specify a destination NAT rule. The reverse mapping from translated destination address or subnet to original destination address or subnet in static NAT rule's specify a source NAT rule.

When static NAT is configured on the J-series or SRX-series device, the static NAT rules takes precedence over the destination NAT rules during mapping. Similarly it takes precedence over source NAT rules during reverse mapping.

## Related Topics

- Example: Configuring Static NAT on page 191

## Example: Configuring Static NAT

---

JUNOS software allows you to define static NAT rules to perform one-to-one static mapping from one IP address or subnet to another IP address or subnet without port address translation.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Static NAT on page 191
-

In this example, you perform the following tasks:

- Define a static NAT rule for traffic from zone **red** to address **20.1.1.100**. Translate the destination IP to **10.0.0.200** and routing-instance **ri-green**.
- Define a static NAT rule for traffic from zone **red** to address **20.1.1.101**. Translate the destination IP to **10.0.1.200** and routing-instance **ri-blue**.
- Define a static NAT rule for traffic from interface **ge-0/0/0.0** to address **30.1.1.3**. Translate the destination IP to **10.0.2.200**.
- Define a static NAT rule for traffic from routing-instance **ri-red** to address subnet **30.1.1.0/24**. Translate the destination address subnet to **172.16.0.0/24**.

## CLI Configuration

```

user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs3 from zone red
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs3 rule r1 match destination-address
20.1.1.100
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs3 rule r1 then static-nat prefix
10.0.0.200
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs3 rule r1 then static-nat prefix
10.0.0.200 routing-instance ri-green

user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs3 from zone red
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs3 rule r2 match destination-address
20.1.1.101
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs3 rule r2 then static-nat prefix
10.0.1.200
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs3 rule r2 then static-nat prefix
10.0.1.200 routing-instance ri-blue

user@host#set security nat static rule-set rs3 from interface ge-0/0/0.0
user@host#set security nat static rule-set rs3 rule r3 match destination address
30.1.1.3
user@host#set security nat static rule-set rs3 rule r3 then static-nat prefix
10.0.2.200

user@host#set security nat static rule-set rs4 from routing-instance ri-red
user@host#set security nat static rule-set rs4 rule r3 match destination-address
30.1.1.0/24
user@host#set security nat static rule-set rs4 rule r3 then static-nat prefix
172.16.0.0/24

```

## Understanding Rule-Based Destination NAT

---

JUNOS software allows you to create NAT rules to translate the destination address from one IP address to another.



**NOTE:** When performing destination NAT, the address in question is first translated according to configured NAT destination rules and then security policies are applied.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Destination IP Address Translation Overview” on page 190.

The following types of destination NAT are supported on:

- Translation of the original destination IP address to an IP address from a defined pool. This type of translation is one-to-one and does not include Port Address Translation (PAT).
- Translation of the original destination IP address (and optional port number) to one specific IP address (and port number) from a defined pool.

The main configuration tasks for destination NAT are as follows:

- Configure a destination NAT pool that aligns with your network and security requirements.
- Configure destination NAT rules that align with your network and security requirements.
- Configure NAT proxy ARP entries for IP addresses in the same subnet of the ingress interface.



**NOTE:** When you configure a security policy on J-series or SRX-series devices, each policy optionally indicates whether it allows NAT translation, does not allow NAT translation, or does not care.

## Example: Configuring Destination NAT

JUNOS software allows you to define NAT rules to translate the destination address from one IP address to another.

In this example, you perform the following tasks:

- Define a destination NAT rule for traffic from routing-instance **ri-1** to address **1.1.1.1**. Translate the destination IP address to **2.2.2.10**.
- Define a destination NAT rule for traffic from zone **Z2** to address **1.1.1.1**. Translate the destination IP address to **2.2.2.20**.
- Define a destination NAT rule for traffic from interface **fe-0/0/0.0** to address **1.1.1.1**. Translate the destination IP address to **2.2.2.30**.

## CLI Configuration

```

user@host# set security nat destination pool dpool-1 routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat destination pool dpool-1 address 2.2.2.10
user@host# set security nat destination pool dpool-2 routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat destination pool dpool-2 address 2.2.2.20
user@host# set security nat destination pool dpool-3 routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat destination pool dpool-3 address 2.2.2.30

user@host# set security nat destination rule-set rs2 from routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat destination rule-set rs2 rule r1 match destination-address
1.1.1.1
user@host# set security nat destination rule-set rs2 rule r1 then destination-nat
pool dpool-1

user@host# set security nat destination rule-set rs3 from zone Z2
user@host# set security nat destination rule-set rs3 rule r2 match destination-address
1.1.1.1
user@host# set security nat destination rule-set rs3 rule r2 then destination-nat
pool dpool-2

user@host# set security nat destination rule-set rs4 from interface fe-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security nat destination rule-set rs4 rule r3 match destination-address
1.1.1.1
user@host# set security nat destination rule-set rs4 rule r3 then destination-nat
pool dpool-3

```

## Source IP Address Translation Overview

During source IP address translation, the original source IP address, port number, or both are translated to a different number.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding NAT on page 188
- Example: Configuring Security Policies—Detailed Configuration on page 446

JUNOS software performs NAT in the following ways:

- Reverse mapping in static NAT—There is no explicit NAT action in a policy to trigger this type of NAT-src. As long as the traffic matches a “permit” policy and reverse mapping in static NAT is found on the egress interface, the source IP address will get translated according to reverse mapping.
- Source pool defined on egress interface—When performing source network translation (NAT-src), source pool provides JUNOS software with a supply of addresses from which to draw. When a policy requires NAT-src and references a specific source pool, JUNOS software draws addresses from that pool when translation is performed.

## Related Topics

- Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools on page 195
- Understanding NAT Source Pools with PAT on page 195
- Understanding NAT Source Pools Without PAT on page 196
- Understanding NAT Static Source Pools on page 197
- Understanding NAT Allow-Incoming Source Pools on page 198
- Understanding NAT Source Pool Sets on page 198

## Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools

---

When traffic requires source IP address translation and references a specific source pool, JUNOS software draws addresses from that pool when translation is performed. The interface source pool is predefined.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194.

---

You can reference an interface source pool in a policy or rule by setting a NAT action. JUNOS software translates the source IP address to the address of the egress interface for the traffic matching a policy or rule that references the interface source pool. JUNOS software always applies port address translation (PAT) for the interface source pool.

## Related Topics

- Understanding NAT Source Pools with PAT on page 195
- Example: Configuring Source NAT on page 199

## Understanding NAT Source Pools with PAT

---

Using the source pool with Port Address Translation (PAT), JUNOS software translates both the source IP address and the port number of the packets. Using PAT, multiple hosts can share the same IP address.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194.

---

JUNOS software maintains a list of assigned port numbers to distinguish what session belongs to which host. When PAT is enabled, up to 64,500 hosts can share a single IP address. Each source pool can contain multiple IP addresses, multiple IP address ranges, or both. For a source pool with PAT, JUNOS software may assign different addresses to a single host for different concurrent sessions, unless the source pool or JUNOS software has the persistent address feature enabled.

This topic covers:

- Port Ranges on page 196
- Address Persistent on page 196
- Related Topics on page 196

## **Port Ranges**

For interface source pool and source pool with PAT, range (1024, 65535) is available for port number mapping per IP address. Within range (1024, 63487) one port is allocated at a time. In range (63488, 65535), two ports are allocated at a time for RTP/RTCP applications such as SIP, H.323, and RTSP.

## **Address Persistent**

When a host initiates several sessions that match a policy that requires network address translation and is assigned an address from a source pool that has PAT enabled, the device assigns a different source IP address for each session. Such random address assignment can be problematic for services that create multiple sessions that require the same source IP address for each session. For example, it is important to have the same IP address for multiple sessions when using the AOL Instant Message (AIM) client.

To ensure that the router assigns the same IP address from a source pool to a host for multiple concurrent sessions, you can enable a persistent IP address per router.

## **Related Topics**

- Example: Configuring Source NAT on page 199
- Example: Configuring a Persistent Address on page 201

## **Understanding NAT Source Pools Without PAT**

---

When you define a source pool, JUNOS software enables PAT by default. To disable PAT, you must specify no port translation when you are defining a source pool.

### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194.

---

When using a source pool without PAT, JUNOS software performs source Network Address Translation for the IP address without performing PAT for the source port number. For applications that require that a particular source port number remain fixed, you must use source pool without PAT.

The source pool can contain multiple IP addresses, multiple IP address ranges, or both. For source pool without PAT, JUNOS software assigns one translated source address to the same host for all its concurrent sessions.

This topic covers:

- Source Pool Utilization Alarm on page 197
- Related Topics on page 197

### **Source Pool Utilization Alarm**

Pool utilization for each source pool without PAT is computed. You can turn on pool utilization alarm by configuring alarm thresholds. An SNMP trap is triggered every time pool utilization rises above a threshold and goes below a threshold.

### **Related Topics**

- Example: Configuring Source NAT on page 199

## **Understanding NAT Static Source Pools**

---

You can define a one-to-one mapping from an original source IP address to a translated source IP address for a range of IP addresses using the static source pool. Such a mapping ensures that the device always translates a particular source IP address from within that range to the same translated address within a source pool.

### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194.

It is possible to use a static source pool enabled in a rule that applies to source addresses beyond the range specified in the pool. In such scenarios, the router allows traffic from all source addresses permitted in the policy, applying source IP address translation (NAT-src) to those addresses that fall within the static source pool range but leaving those addresses unchanged that fall outside the static source pool range. If you want the router to apply NAT-src to all source addresses, make sure that the range of source addresses is smaller than the range specified for the static source pool.

## Related Topics

- Example: Configuring Source NAT on page 199

## Understanding NAT Allow-Incoming Source Pools

---

Source pool is designed to support source IP address translation, port address translation, or both. You can define a source pool with PAT to support VoIP incoming calls.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194.

---

The allow-incoming calls feature is supported on an interface source pool. When the allow-incoming feature is enabled on a source pool (p1), the following format *incoming\_nat\_p1* (or as *incoming\_nat\_ge-0/0/0.0* for an interface source pool on an interface *ge-0/0/0.0*) is referenced in a rule. Similar to static NAT, such a reference can be used as a destination address in the rule configuration to regulate the VoIP incoming traffic and to perform destination IP and port number translations.

## Related Topics

- Example: Configuring Source NAT on page 199
- Example: Configuring a Persistent Address on page 201

## Understanding NAT Source Pool Sets

---

JUNOS software NAT is interface-based, whereas NAT is zone based. Each zone can contain multiple interfaces. You can define a source pool on each egress interface in the zone, group these source pools into a pool set, and then reference the pool set in one policy or rule.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Source IP Address Translation Overview” on page 194.

---

The device can perform source IP or port address translation using proper source pools within the pool set for the traffic to match the policy or rule and to exit on certain egress interfaces in the zone.



## Related Topics

- Example: Configuring a Persistent Address on page 201

## Example: Configuring Source NAT

When performing source Network Address Translation, source pools provide JUNOS software with a supply of addresses from which to draw. When a NAT rule requires NAT and references a specific source pool, JUNOS software draws addresses from that pool when translation is performed.



**NOTE:** When performing source NAT, security policies are applied first and then the address in question is translated according to configured NAT source rules.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Source IP Address Translation Overview on page 194
- Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools on page 195
- Understanding NAT Source Pools with PAT on page 195
- Understanding NAT Source Pools Without PAT on page 196
- Understanding NAT Static Source Pools on page 197
- Understanding NAT Allow-Incoming Source Pools on page 198
- Example: Configuring Security Policies—Detailed Configuration on page 446

Source NAT rules have three available actions:

- off — Do not perform source NAT.
- pool — Use user-defined source NAT pools to perform source NAT.
- interface — Use the egress interface IP address to perform source NAT.



**NOTE:** is a useful command for detail control when you are configuring source NAT rules. For example, you can configure a rule that says, “if rule A is from zone1 to zone2, do source NAT.” However, you do not want to do source NAT if the traffic egresses from interface if2, which belongs to zone2. In that case, you can define a rule B, which is from zone1 to if2 with as the source NAT action.

In this example, you perform the following tasks:

- Define a source NAT pool for traffic from routing-instance **ri-2** to routing-instance **ri-1** with any source IP address and destination IP address **30.1.1.1**. Map the source IP address to **10.1.1.1**.
- Define a source NAT pool for traffic from zone **z3** or **z4** to routing-instance **ri-1** with any source IP address and destination IP address **30.1.1.2**. Map the source IP address to **10.1.1.2**.
- Define a source NAT pool for traffic from interface **fe-0/0/0.0** or **fe-0/0/1.0** to interface **ge-1/0/0.0** or **ge-1/0.1.0** with any source IP address and destination IP address **30.1.1.3**. Map the source IP address to **10.1.1.3**.
- Define a source NAT pool for traffic from routing-instance **ri-2** to zone **z2** with any source IP address and destination IP address **30.1.1.4**. Map the source IP address to **10.1.1.4**.
- Define a source NAT pool for traffic from routing-instance **ri-2** to routing-instance **ri-1** with any source IP address and destination IP address **30.1.1.5**. Map the source IP address to **10.1.1.5**.

## CLI Configuration

```

user@host# set security nat source pool spool-1 routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat source pool spool-1 address 10.1.1.1
user@host# set security nat source pool spool-2 routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat source pool spool-2 address 10.1.1.2
user@host# set security nat source pool spool-3 routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat source pool spool-3 address 10.1.1.3
user@host# set security nat source pool spool-4 routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat source pool spool-4 address 10.1.1.4
user@host# set security nat source pool spool-5 routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat source pool spool-5 address 10.1.1.5

user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs1 from routing-instance ri-2
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs1 to routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address
30.1.1.1
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 then source-nat pool spool-1
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r5 match destination-address
30.1.1.5
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r5 then source-nat pool spool-5

user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs2 from zone [z3 z4]
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs2 to routing-instance ri-1
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs2 rule r2 match destination-address
30.1.1.2
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs2 rule r2 then source-nat pool spool-2

user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs3 from interface [fe-0/0/0.0
fe-0/0/1.0]
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs3 to interface [ge-1/0/0.0 ge-1/0.1.0]
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs3 rule r3 match destination-address
30.1.1.3
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs3 rule r3 then source-nat pool spool-3

```

```
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs4 from routing-instance ri-2
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs4 to zone z2
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs4 rule r4 match destination-address
30.1.1.4
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs4 rule r4 then source-nat pool spool-4
```

## Verifying Static NAT Summary

- Purpose** Display static NAT summary information.
- Action** Use the `show security nat static-nat summary` CLI command to verify static NAT information. You get the following output:

```
user@host> show security nat static-nat summary
Total static NAT mappings: 3, Maximum: 300
Ingress Interface  Destination  Host          Virtual Router
ge-0/0/0.0         1.1.1.1/32   10.1.1.1/32   trust-vr
ge-0/0/0.0         1.1.3.0/24   10.1.3.0/24   trust-vr
ge-0/0/0.1         2.2.2.1/32   20.1.1.1/32   trust-vr
```

- What it Means** The output displays information about the total static NAT mappings, destination IP address and subnet mask, name of the interface on which static NAT is defined, and the name of the virtual router that performs route lookup for the host IP address and the subnet mask.

## Example: Configuring a Persistent Address

You can enable the persistent address feature on a router to ensure that the router assigns the same IP address from a source pool to a host for multiple concurrent sessions. You can reference a pool set within a policy to easily reference multiple interfaces within a zone.

### Before You Begin

- For background information, read:
- Address Persistent on page 196
  - Understanding NAT Source Pool Sets on page 198

In this example, you perform the following tasks:

- Enable a persistent address globally.
- Configure pool utilization thresholds.

To configure a persistent address and pool sets, use the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 202
- Related Topics on page 202

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security nat source address-persistent
user@host# set security nat source pool-utilization-alarm raise-threshold 90
user@host# set security nat source pool-utilization-alarm clear-threshold 80
```

## Related Topics

- Example: Configuring Source NAT on page 199

## Configuring Proxy ARP

You use NAT proxy ARP functionality to configure proxy ARP entries for IP addresses that require either source or destination NAT and that are in the same subnet as the ingress interface.



**NOTE:** On SRX-series devices, you must explicitly configure NAT proxy ARP.

When configuring NAT proxy ARP, you must specify the interface on which to configure proxy ARP. It should be the logical interface. Then you enter an address or address range.

The device performs proxy ARP for the following conditions:

- When addresses defined in the static NAT and source NAT pool are in the same subnet as that of the ingress interface
- When addresses in the original destination address entry in the destination NAT rules are in the same subnet as that of the ingress interface

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security nat proxy-arp interface fe-0/0/0.0 address 10.1.1.10 to
10.1.1.20
```

## Verifying NAT Configuration

The NAT trace options hierarchy configures trace file and flags for verification purposes. J-series and SRX-series devices have two main components. Those are the Routing Engine (RE) and the Packet Processing Engine (PFE). The PFE is divided into the ukernel portion and the real-time portion. For verification, you can turn on flags individually to debug NAT functionality on the RE, ukernel PFE, or real-time PFE.



**NOTE:** The trace data is written to `/var/log/security-trace` by default.

CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag all
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag destination-nat-pfe
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag destination-nat-re
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag destination-nat-rti
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag destination-nat-pfe
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag source-nat-pfe
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag source-nat-re
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag source-nat-rt
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag static-nat-pfe
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag static-nat-re
user@host# set security nat traceoptions flag static-nat-rt
```

Configuring Source NAT—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure source NAT.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read:

- Configuring Host Inbound Traffic on page 75
- Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools on page 195

Figure 44 on page 203 shows the Quick Configuration for Source NAT page.

Figure 44: Quick Configuration Page for Source NAT

Configuration > Quick Configuration > Firewall/NAT > Source NAT

Quick Configuration

Firewall/NAT

Source NAT

Address Persistent ☐ ?

Pool Utilization Alarm

Raise Threshold  ?

Clear Threshold  ?

Pool Set

No source NAT pool sets have been defined.

Add

OK

Cancel

Apply

To configure source NAT with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Firewall/NAT > Source NAT**. See Figure 44 on page 203.
2. Fill in the options as shown in Table 62 on page 204.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 62: Source NAT Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>Source NAT</b>		
Address Persistent	Ensures that the router assigns the same IP address from a source pool to a host for multiple concurrent sessions.	Enable Address Persistent.
Pool Utilization Alarm	Turns on pool utilization alarm by configuring alarm thresholds.	Raise Threshold—Enter a number between 50-100 to raise the threshold for the pool utilization alarm.  Clear Threshold—Enter a number between 40-100 to clear the threshold for the pool utilization alarm.
<b>Pool Set</b>		
Add Pool Sets	Defines one or more source pool sets (group of source pools).	Click <b>Add</b> .
Pool Set Name	Descriptive name for the pool set.	Type a name for the pool set.
Pool	Name of the pools to be included in the address pool set.	Select the pools to be added and click <b>Add</b> .

## Configuring Destination NAT—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure destination NAT.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding NAT on page 188
- Destination IP Address Translation Overview on page 190
- Example: Configuring Destination NAT on page 193

Figure 45 on page 205 shows the Quick Configuration for Destination NAT page.

Figure 46 on page 205 shows the Destination NAT page.

Figure 45: Quick Configuration Page for Destination NAT

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Firewall/NAT](#) > [Destination NAT](#)

Quick Configuration

Firewall/NAT

Add a Destination NAT

Destination NAT

\* Name

?

☒ IP Address Range

~

?

☐ IP Address

?

Port

?

OK

Cancel

Figure 46: Destination NAT

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Firewall/NAT](#) > [Destination NAT](#)

Quick Configuration

Firewall/NAT

Destination NAT

List 15 per page

	Name	IP Address/Port	IP Address Range
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">dstNAT1</a>		30.1.1.0 - 30.1.1.255
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">dstNAT2</a>	20.1.1.1/8080	

Add

Delete

OK

Cancel

Apply

To configure destination NAT with Quick Configuration:

1. Select [Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Firewall/NAT](#) > [Destination NAT](#). See Figure 45 on page 205.
2. Click [Add](#). The Quick Configuration screen for destination NAT appears as shown in Figure 46 on page 205.
3. Fill in either an IP address range or a single IP address with its port number. See Table 63 on page 206 for more information on these options.

4. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**. The Destination NAT screen appears as shown in Figure 46 on page 205.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.
5. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To add another destination NAT configuration, click **Add**. You will return to the configuration screen as shown in Figure 45 on page 205.
  - To delete an already configured destination NAT, select the desired dst\_NAT from the list and click **Delete**.
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 63: Destination NAT Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>Destination NAT</b>		
Name	Name for the destination NAT.	Specify a name for the destination NAT.
IP Address Range	A range of IP addresses for destination address translation. Multiple address ranges can be specified in a pool.	Specify an address range, a low IP address to specify the start address in the range and a high IP address to specify the end address in the range.  For example, 30.1.1.0 to 30.1.1.255.
IP Address	IP address to which destination IP addresses are translated.	Specify an IP address. This can be a fixed IP address for a subnet.
Port	(Optional) Port number to which destination IP addresses are translated.	Specify a port number.



## Configuring Interface NAT—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure interface NAT.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read:

- Understanding NAT on page 188
- Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools on page 195
- Understanding Security Zone Interfaces on page 83

Figure 47 on page 207 shows the Quick Configuration for Interface NAT page.

**Figure 47: Quick Configuration Page for Interface NAT**

Configuration > Quick Configuration > Firewall/NAT > Interface NAT

Quick Configuration

Firewall/NAT

Add an Interface NAT

Interface NAT

\* Name

?

Allow Incoming Traffic

☐

?

[Enable proxy ARP on IP addresses](#)

[Configure source NAT](#)

[Configure static NAT](#)

OK

Cancel

To configure interface NAT with Quick Configuration:

1. Select Configuration > Quick Configuration > Firewall/NAT > Interface NAT.
2. Click Add. The Quick Configuration screen for interface NAT appears as shown in Figure 47 on page 207.
3. Fill in either an IP address range or a single IP address with its port number. See Table 64 on page 208 for more information on these options.
4. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click Apply.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click OK.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click Cancel.

**Figure 48: Source NAT Pool Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Firewall/NAT](#) > [Interface NAT](#)

---

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Firewall/NAT** Add a source NAT pool

---

**Source NAT Pool**

\* **Name**  ?

**Low Host Address**  ?

**Disable Port Translation** ☐ ?

**Allow Incoming Traffic** ☐ ?

---

**Overflow Pool**  ?

---

\* **Addresses** (Either IP Address or IP Address Range must be configured)

**IP Address** ?

**IP Address Range** ?

-

---

**Table 64: Interface NAT Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>Interface NAT</b>		
Name	Indicates name of the interface.	Provide an already defined logical interface name. For example, ge-0/0/0.0.
Allow Incoming Traffic	Supports VoIP incoming calls—that is, the calls that are initiated from the public network to the private network.	Select this option to enable incoming traffic.
<b>Enable Proxy ARP</b>		

**Table 64: Interface NAT Configuration Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
IP Address	Configures proxy ARP for a single IP address.	Specify the IP address for which you want to configure proxy ARP.
IP Address Range	Configures proxy ARP for a range of IP addresses.	Specify the IP address range for which you want to configure proxy ARP. For example, a low IP address (10.1.1.150) to specify the start address in the range and a high IP address (10.1.1.200) to specify the end address in the range.  Click <b>OK</b> .
Configure Source NAT	Indicates name of the source address pool.	Specify a name for the source address pool.
Interface Source NAT Pools	Indicates predefined source pool.	Click <b>Add</b> . The Source NAT Pool configuration screen displays as shown in Figure 48 on page 208.
<b>Name</b>		
Low Host Address	Indicates lower limit of the original source address range that is used to define the static source pool.	Specify the start address of the IP address range.
Disable Port Translation	Makes the pool perform address translation only.	Select the checkbox to disable port translation.
Allow Incoming Traffic	Allows VoIP incoming calls.	Select the checkbox to allow this pool to support incoming traffic.
Overflow Pool	Indicates a source pool to use when the current address pool is exhausted.	From the dropdown list, select the overflow pool.
Addresses	Indicates IP address(es) for the source NAT pool.	Configure either a single IP address or an IP address range for the source NAT pool. For more information, see “Configuring Source NAT—Quick Configuration” on page 203.  Click <b>OK</b> .
<b>Configure Static NAT</b>		
Static NAT	Indicates a direct one-to-one mapping of one IP address to another  without port address translation.	Click <b>Add</b> to define static NAT.
Mapped Address	Indicates IP address to map.	Specify the IP address to be mapped.
Host Address	Indicates IP address of host	Specify the IP address of the host to which another address is mapped.
Virtual Router	Indicates virtual router name.	Specify the name of the virtual router that is to perform route lookup for the host address(es).  Click <b>OK</b> .

## Configuring Firewall/NAT Flow—Quick Configuration

---

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure stateful firewall or NAT flow

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- [Configuring Host Inbound Traffic on page 75](#)
- [Destination IP Address Translation Overview on page 190](#)
- [Understanding NAT Interface Source Pools on page 195](#)

Figure 49 on page 211 shows the Quick Configuration for Stateful Firewall or NAT Flow page.

**Figure 49: Quick Configuration Page for Stateful Firewall or NAT Flow**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Firewall/NAT](#) > [Flow](#)

---

### Quick Configuration

#### Firewall/NAT

---

**Allow DNS Reply** ☐ ?

**Route Change Timeout**  ?

**SYN Flood Protectin Mode**

☒ SYN Cookie

☐ SYN Proxy

---

#### Aging

**Early Ageout**  ? (default: 20 seconds)

**High Watermark**  ? (default: 100 seconds)

**Low Watermark**  ? (default: 100 seconds)

---

#### TCP MSS

**All TCP** ☐ ?

**All TCP MSS**  ?

**GRE in** ☐ ?

**MSS**  ? (default: 1320)

**GRE out** ☐ ?

**MSS**  ? (default: 1320)

**IPSec VPN** ☐ ?

**MSS**  ? (default: 1320)

---

#### TCP Session

**No Sequence Check** ☐ ?

**No SYN Check** ☐ ?

**No SYN Check in Tunnel** ☐ ?

**RST Invalidate Session** ☐ ?

**RST Sequence Check** ☐ ?

**TCP Initial Timeout**  ? (default: 20 seconds)

---

To configure Firewall/NAT Flow with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Firewall/NAT > Flow**. See Figure 49 on page 211.
2. Fill in the options as shown in Table 65 on page 212.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 65: Firewall or NAT Flow Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>Firewall NAT</b>		
Allow DNS Reply	Allows an incoming DNS reply packet without a matched request. By default, if the query request does not match, the router drops the packet, does not create a session, and increments the illegal packet flow counter for the interface. Using the allow-dns-reply statement directs the router to skip the check.	Select this checkbox to enable DNS replies.
Route Change Timeout	Applies the session timeout value on a route change to a nonexistent route. By default, this feature is disabled. If the timeout is not defined, sessions discovered to have no route are aged out using their current session timeout values.	Specify a value between 6 and 1800 seconds.
SYN Flood Protection Mode	Enables SYN-cookie defenses or SYN-proxy defenses against SYN attacks. Sets the flow from traditional SYN Proxy mode to SYN Cookie mode. SYN Cookie is enabled globally on the security router and is activated when the configured syn-flood attack-threshold is exceeded.	Select <b>SYN Cookie</b> or <b>SYN Proxy</b> .
<b>Aging</b>		
Early Ageout	Defines the ageout value before the router aggressively ages out a session from its session table.	Specify a value between 1 and 65535 seconds. The default value is 20 seconds.
High Watermark	Sets percentage of session table capacity at which the aggressive aging-out process begins.	Specify a value between 0 and 100 percent. The default value is 100 percent.
Low Watermark	Sets percentage of session-table capacity at which aggressive aging-out ends.	Specify a value between 0 and 100 percent. The default value is 100 percent.
<b>TCP MSS</b>		
All TCP	Sets all TCP packets for network traffic.	Select the <b>All TCP</b> check box to enable all TCP packets.
All TCP MSS	Sets the TCP-maximum segment size (TCP-MSS) value for all TCP packets for network traffic.	Specify a value between 64 and 65535.
GRE in	Enables MSS override for all Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) packets exiting an IPsec tunnel.	Select the <b>GRE in</b> check box to enable TCP-MSS for GRE.
MSS	Enables and specifies the TCP-MSS for GRE packets that are about to go into an IPsec VPN tunnel. By default, a TCP-MSS for GRE packets is not set.	Specify a value between 64 and 65,535 bytes. The default value is 1320 bytes.
GRE out	Enables MSS override for all GRE packets entering an IPsec tunnel.	Select the <b>GRE out</b> check box to enable.

**Table 65: Firewall or NAT Flow Configuration Options** (continued)

Field	Function	Action
MSS	Enables and specifies the TCP-MSS for GRE packets that are leaving an IPsec VPN tunnel. By default, a TCP-MSS for GRE packets is not set.	Specify a value between 64 and 65,535 bytes. The default value is 1320 bytes.
IPsec VPN	Enables MSS override for all packets entering an IPsec tunnel.	Select the <b>IPSec VPN</b> check box to enable MSS override for all packets that enter an IPsec tunnel.
MSS	Enables and specifies the TCP-MSS for all packets that are entering an IPsec VPN tunnel.	Specify a value between 64 and 65,535 bytes. The default value is 1320 bytes.
<b>TCP Session</b>		
No Sequence Check	Disables the checking of sequence numbers in TCP segments during stateful inspection. By default, the router monitors the sequence numbers in TCP segments.	Select the checkbox to disable sequence number checking.
No SYN Check	Disables the checking of the TCP SYN bit before creating a session. By default, the router checks that the SYN bit is set in the first packet of a session. If it is not set, the router drops it.	Select the checkbox to disable creation time SYN-flag check.
No SYN Check in Tunnel	Disables the checking TCP SYN bit before creating a session for tunneled packets. By default, the router checks that the SYN bit is set in the first packet of a VPN session. If it is not set, the router drops it.	Select the checkbox to disable creation time SYN-flag check for tunnel packets.
RST Invalidate Session	Marks a session for immediate termination when it receives a TCP reset (RST) segment. By default, this statement is unset. When unset, the router applies the normal session timeout interval—for TCP, session timeout is 30 minutes; for HTTP, it is 5 minutes; and for UDP, it is 1 minute.	Select this checkbox to immediately end session on receipt of reset (RST) segment.
RST Sequence Check	Checks that the TCP sequence number in a TCP segment with the RST bit enabled matches the previous sequence number for a packet in that session or is the next higher number incrementally. By default, this check is disabled.	Select this checkbox to enable checking of sequence numbers in a RST statement.
Strict SYN check	Enables the strict three-way handshake check for the TCP session. It enhances security by dropping data packets before the three-way handshake is done. By default this check is disabled.	Select this checkbox to enable strict SYN checking.
TCP Initial Timeout	Defines the length of time (in seconds) that the router keeps an initial TCP session in the session table before dropping it, or until the router receives a FIN or RST packet.	Specify a value between 20 and 300 seconds. The default value is 20 seconds.

## Configuring Stateful Firewall or NAT Screen—Quick Configuration

---

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure stateful firewall or NAT screen options.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding NAT on page 188
  - Understanding IP Address Sweeps on page 92
  - Understanding Network Reconnaissance Using IP Options on page 97
  - Understanding Operating System Probes on page 101
  - Understanding Attacker Evasion Techniques on page 107
- 

For more information on configuring firewall screen options using Quick Configuration, see “Configuring Firewall Screen Options—Quick Configuration” on page 176.



## Chapter 10

# Chassis Cluster

This section includes:

- Understanding Chassis Cluster on page 216
- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
- Understanding Monitoring on page 223
- Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 226
- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
- Understanding the Data Plane on page 230
- Understanding Failover on page 233
- Hardware Setup for SRX-series Chassis Clusters on page 234
- Hardware Setup for J-series Chassis Clusters on page 235
- What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster on page 236
- Creating an SRX-series Chassis Cluster—Overview on page 242
- Creating a J-series Chassis Cluster—Overview on page 244
- Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID on page 247
- Configuring the Management Interface on page 248
- Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration on page 249
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces—Quick Configuration on page 252
- Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256
- Configuring the Fabric on page 257
- Configuring Redundancy Groups on page 258
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
- Configuring Control Link Recovery on page 261
- Configuring Interface Monitoring on page 262
- Initiating a Manual Redundancy Group Failover on page 263
- Configuring Conditional Route Advertising on page 264
- Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration on page 266
- SNMP Failover Traps on page 271

- Upgrading Chassis Cluster on page 271
- Disabling Chassis Cluster on page 272
- Chassis Cluster Configuration Scenarios on page 272

## Understanding Chassis Cluster

---

Chassis clustering provides network node redundancy by grouping a pair of the same kind of supported SRX-series devices or J-series devices into a cluster. The devices must be running JUNOS software. The control ports on the respective nodes are connected to form a control plane that synchronizes configuration and kernel state to facilitate the high availability of interfaces and services. Similarly, the data plane on the respective nodes is connected over the fabric ports to form a unified data plane. The fabric link allows for the management of cross-node flow processing and for the management of session redundancy.

The control plane software operates in active/backup mode. When configured as a chassis cluster, the two nodes back up each other, with one node acting as the primary device and the other as the secondary device, ensuring stateful failover of processes and services in the event of system or hardware failure. If the primary device fails, the secondary device takes over processing of traffic.

The data plane software operates in active/active mode. In a chassis cluster, session information is updated as traffic traverses either device and this information is transmitted between the nodes over the fabric link to guarantee that established sessions are not dropped when a failover occurs. In active/active mode, it is possible for traffic to ingress the cluster on one node and egress from the other node.



**NOTE:** For an SRX-series chassis cluster, the fabric interfaces can also be connected over 10-Gigabit Ethernet links.



**NOTE:** For an SRX 5600 or SRX 5800 chassis cluster, nodes must be interconnected with a fiber optic cable.

---

Chassis cluster functionality includes:

- Resilient system architecture, with a single active control plane for the entire cluster and multiple Packet Forwarding Engines. This architecture presents a single device view of the cluster.
- Synchronization of configuration and dynamic runtime states between nodes within a cluster.
- Monitoring of physical interfaces, and failover if the failure parameters cross a configured threshold.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217

## Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation

---

To form a chassis cluster, a pair of the same kind of supported SRX-series devices or J-series devices are combined to act as a single system that enforces the same overall security. For SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 chassis clusters, the placement and type of Services Processing Cards (SPCs) must match in the two clusters. For SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 chassis clusters, the placement and type of SPCs, Input/Output Cards (IOCs), and Networking Processing Cards (NPCs) must match in the two devices. No such limitation exists for SRX 210 devices.

For J-series chassis clusters, although the devices must be the same kind, they can contain different Physical Interface Modules (PIMs).

When a device joins a cluster, it becomes a node of that cluster. With the exception of unique node settings and management IP addresses, nodes in a cluster share the same configuration.

You can deploy up to 15 chassis clusters in a Layer 2 domain. Clusters and nodes are identified in the following way:

- A cluster is identified by a *cluster ID (cluster-id)* specified as a number from 1 through 15.
- A cluster node is identified by a *node ID (node)* specified as a number from 0 to 1.

### Before You Begin

Read “Understanding Chassis Cluster” on page 216

---

## Related Topics

- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
- Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 226
- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
- Understanding the Data Plane on page 230
- Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID on page 247
- Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration on page 249
- What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster on page 236
- Understanding Failover on page 233

## Understanding Redundancy Groups

---

Chassis clustering provides high availability of interfaces and services through redundancy groups and primacy within groups.

### Before You Begin

Read “Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation” on page 217

---

This topic includes:

- About Redundancy Groups on page 218
- Redundancy Group 0: Routing Engines on page 219
- Redundancy Groups 1 Through 128 on page 219
- Redundancy Group Interface Monitoring on page 222
- Related Topics on page 223

### About Redundancy Groups

A redundancy group is an abstract construct that includes and manages a collection of objects. A redundancy group contains objects on both nodes. A redundancy group is primary on one node and backup on the other at any time. When a redundancy group is said to be primary on a node, its objects on that node are active.

Redundancy groups are independent units of failover. Each redundancy group fails over from one node to the other independent of other redundancy groups. When a redundancy group fails over, all its objects fail over together.

Three things determine the primacy of a redundancy group: the priority configured for the node, the node ID (in case of tied priorities), and the order in which the node comes up. If a lower priority node comes up first, then it will assume the primacy for a redundancy group (and will stay as primary if preempt is not enabled).

A chassis cluster can include many redundancy groups, some of which might be primary on one node and some of which might be primary on the other. Alternatively, all redundancy groups can be primary on a single node. One redundancy group's primacy does not affect another redundancy group's primacy. You can create up to 128 redundancy groups.



**NOTE:** The maximum number of redundancy groups is equal to the number of redundant Ethernet interfaces that you configure.

---

You can configure redundancy groups to suit your deployment. You configure a redundancy group to be primary on one node and backup on the other node. You specify the node on which the group is primary by setting priorities for both nodes

within a redundancy group configuration. The node with the higher priority takes precedence, and the redundancy group's objects on it are active.

If a redundancy group is configured so that both nodes have the same priority, the node with the lowest node ID number always takes precedence, and the redundancy group is primary on it. In a two-node cluster, node 0 always takes precedence in a priority tie.

## **Redundancy Group 0: Routing Engines**

When you initialize a device in chassis cluster mode, the system creates a redundancy group referred to in this document as redundancy group 0. Redundancy group 0 manages the primacy and failover between the Routing Engines on each node of the cluster. As is the case for all redundancy groups, redundancy group 0 can be primary on only one node at a time. The node on which redundancy group 0 is primary determines which Routing Engine is active in the cluster. A node is considered the primary node of the cluster if its Routing Engine is the active one.

The redundancy group 0 configuration specifies the priority for each node. Below is how redundancy group 0 primacy is determined. Note that the three seconds value is the interval if the default `heartbeat-threshold` and `heartbeat-interval` values are used.

- The node that comes up first (at least three seconds prior to the other node) is the primary node.
- If both nodes come up at the same time (or within three seconds of each other):
  - The node with the higher configured priority is the primary node.
  - If there is a tie (either because the same value was configured or because default settings were used), the node with the lower node ID (node 0) is the primary node.

The above priority scheme applies to redundancy groups *x* as well, provided preempt is not configured.

You cannot enable preemption for redundancy group 0. If you want to change the primary node for redundancy group 0, you must do a manual failover.



**CAUTION:** Be cautious and judicious in your use of redundancy group 0 manual failovers. A redundancy group 0 failover implies a Routing Engine failover, in which case all processes running on the primary node are killed and then spawned on the new primary Routing Engine. This failover could result in loss of state, such as routing state, and degrade performance by introducing system churn.

---

## **Redundancy Groups 1 Through 128**

You can configure one or more redundancy groups numbered 1 through 128, referred to in this chapter as redundancy group *x*. Each redundancy group *x* acts as an independent unit of failover and is primary on only one node at a time.

Each redundancy group  $x$  contains one or more redundant Ethernet interfaces. A redundant Ethernet interface is a pseudo interface that contains a pair of physical Gigabit Ethernet interfaces or a pair of Fast Ethernet interfaces. If a redundancy group is active on node 0, then the child links of all the associated redundant Ethernet interfaces on node 0 are active. If the redundancy group fails over to node 1, then the child links of all redundant Ethernet interfaces on node 1 become active.

On J-series and SRX-series chassis clusters, you can configure multiple redundancy groups to load-share traffic across the cluster. For example, you can configure some redundancy groups  $x$  to be primary on one node and some redundancy groups  $x$  to be primary on the other node. You can also configure a redundancy group  $x$  in a one-to-one relationship with a single redundant Ethernet interface to control which interface traffic flows through.

The traffic for a redundancy group is processed on the node where the redundancy group is active. Because more than one redundancy group can be configured, it is possible that the traffic from some redundancy groups will be processed on one node while the traffic for other redundancy groups is processed on the other node (depending on where the redundancy group is active). Multiple redundancy groups make it possible for traffic to arrive over an interface of one redundancy group and egress over an interface that belongs to another redundancy group. In this situation, the ingress and egress interfaces might not be active on the same node. When this happens, the traffic is forwarded over the fabric link to the appropriate node.

When you configure a redundancy group  $x$ , you must specify a priority for each node to determine the node on which the redundancy group  $x$  is primary. The node with the higher priority is selected as primary. The primacy of a redundancy group  $x$  can fail over from one node to the other. When a redundancy group  $x$  fails over to the other node, its redundant Ethernet interfaces on that node are active and their interfaces are passing traffic.

Table 66 on page 220 gives an example of redundancy group  $x$  in an SRX-series chassis cluster and indicates the node on which the group is primary. It shows the redundant Ethernet interfaces and their interfaces configured for redundancy group  $x$ .



**NOTE:** SRX 210 devices have both Gigabit Ethernet ports and Fast Ethernet ports.

**Table 66: Redundancy Groups Example for an SRX-series Chassis Cluster (SRX 3000 and 5000 Lines)**

Group	Primary	Priority	Objects	Interface	Interface
Redundancy group 0	Node 0	Node 0: 254	Routing Engine on node 0	—	—
		Node 1: 2	Routing Engine on node 1	—	—

**Table 66: Redundancy Groups Example for an SRX-series Chassis Cluster (SRX 3000 and 5000 Lines) (continued)**

Group	Primary	Priority	Objects	Interface	Interface
Redundancy group 1	Node 0	Node 0: 254	Redundant Ethernet interface 0	ge-1/0/0	ge-23/0/0
		Node 1: 2	Redundant Ethernet interface 1	ge-1/3/0	ge-23/3/0
Redundancy group 2	Node 1	Node 0: 2	Redundant Ethernet interface 2	ge-2/0/0	ge-24/0/0
		Node 1: 254	Redundant Ethernet interface 3	ge-2/3/0	ge-24/3/0
Redundancy group 3	Node 0	Node 0: 254	Redundant Ethernet interface 4	ge-3/0/0	ge-25/0/0
		Node 1: 2	Redundant Ethernet interface 5	ge-3/3/0	ge-25/3/0

As the example for an SRX-series chassis cluster in Table 66 on page 220 shows:

- The Routing Engine on node 0 is active because redundancy group 0 is primary on node 0. (The Routing Engine on node 1 is passive, serving as backup.)
- Redundancy group 1 is primary on node 0. Interfaces **ge-1/0/0** and **ge-1/3/0** belonging to redundant Ethernet interface 0 and redundant Ethernet interface 1 are active and handling traffic.
- Redundancy group 2 is primary on node 1. Interfaces **ge-24/0/0** and **ge-24/3/0** belonging to redundant Ethernet interface 2 and redundant Ethernet interface 3 are active and handling traffic.
- Redundancy group 3 is primary on node 0. Interfaces **ge-3/0/0** and **ge-3/3/0** belonging to redundant Ethernet interface 4 and redundant Ethernet interface 5 are active and handling traffic.

Table 67 on page 222 gives an example of redundancy groups *x* in a J-series chassis cluster and indicates the node on which each group is primary. It shows the redundant Ethernet interfaces and their interfaces configured for each redundancy group *x*.

**Table 67: Redundancy Groups Example for a J-series Chassis Cluster**

Group	Primary	Priority	Objects	Interface	Interface
Redundancy group 0	Node 1	Node 0: 50	Routing Engine on node 0	—	—
		Node 1: 100	Routing Engine on node 1	—	—
Redundancy group 1	Node 1	Node 0: 50	Redundant Ethernet interface 0	fe-1/0/0	fe-8/0/0
		Node 1: 100	Redundant Ethernet interface 1	fe-1/0/1	fe-8/0/1
Redundancy group 2	Node 1	Node 0: 50	Redundant Ethernet interface 2	ge-2/0/0	ge-9/0/0
		Node 1: 100	Redundant Ethernet interface 3	ge-2/0/1	ge-9/0/1
Redundancy group 3	Node 0	Node 0: 100	Redundant Ethernet interface 4	ge-3/0/0	ge-10/0/0
		Node 1: 50	Redundant Ethernet interface 5	ge-3/0/1	ge-10/0/1

As the example for a J-series chassis cluster in Table 67 on page 222 shows:

- The Routing Engine on node 1 is active because redundancy group 0 is primary on node 1. (The Routing Engine on node 0 is passive, serving as backup.)
- Redundancy group 1 is primary on node 1. Interfaces **fe-8/0/0** and **fe-8/0/1** belonging to redundant Ethernet interface 0 and redundant Ethernet interface 1 are active and handling traffic.
- Redundancy group 2 is primary on node 1. Interfaces **ge-9/0/0** and **ge-9/0/1** belonging to redundant Ethernet interface 2 and redundant Ethernet interface 3 are active and handling traffic.
- Redundancy group 3 is primary on node 0. Interfaces **ge-3/0/0** and **ge-3/0/1** belonging to redundant Ethernet interface 4 and redundant Ethernet interface 5 are active and handling traffic.

## Redundancy Group Interface Monitoring



**NOTE:** Interface monitoring is not supported for redundancy group 0.



For a redundancy group  $x$  to automatically fail over to another node, its interfaces must be monitored. When you configure a redundancy group  $x$ , you can specify a set of interfaces that the redundancy group  $x$  is to monitor for status (or “health”) to determine whether the interface is up or down. A monitored interface can be a child interface of any of its redundant Ethernet interfaces. When you configure an interface for a redundancy group  $x$  to monitor, you give it a weight.

Every redundancy group  $x$  has a threshold tolerance value initially set to 255. When an interface monitored by a redundancy group  $x$  becomes unavailable, its weight is subtracted from the redundancy group  $x$ 's threshold. When a redundancy group  $x$ 's threshold reaches 0, it fails over to the other node. For example, if redundancy group 1 was primary on node 0, on the threshold-crossing event, redundancy group 1 becomes primary on node 1. In this case, all the child interfaces of redundancy group 1's redundant Ethernet interfaces begin handling traffic.

A redundancy group  $x$  failover occurs because the cumulative weight of the redundancy group  $x$ 's monitored interfaces has brought its threshold value to 0. When the monitored interfaces of a redundancy group  $x$  on both nodes reach their thresholds at the same time, the redundancy group  $x$  is primary on the node with the lower node ID, in this case node 0.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 226
- Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration on page 249
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
- Initiating a Manual Redundancy Group Failover on page 263

## Understanding Monitoring

---

There are various types of objects to monitor as you work with devices configured as chassis clusters, including global-level objects and objects that are specific to redundancy groups. This section describes the monitoring of global-level objects. For information about monitoring objects specific to redundancy groups, see “Understanding Redundancy Groups” on page 218.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218

The SRX 3000 and 5000 lines have one or more Services Processing Units (SPUs) that run on a Services Processing Card (SPC). All flow-based services run on the SPU. Other SRX-series devices and all J-series devices have a flow-based forwarding process, *flowd*, which forwards packets through the device.

This topic includes:

- SPU Monitoring on page 224
- Flowd Monitoring on page 224
- Cold-Sync Monitoring on page 225
- Related Topics on page 226

## SPU Monitoring

SPU monitoring tracks the health of the SPUs and of the central point (CP). The chassis manager on each SPC monitors the SPUs and the central point, and also maintains the heartbeat with the routing engine (RE) chassisd. In this hierarchical monitoring system, chassisd is the center for hardware failure detection. SPU monitoring is enabled by default.



**NOTE:** SPU monitoring is supported on the SRX 3000 and 5000 lines.

---

Persistent SPU and central point failure on a node is deemed a catastrophic Packet Processing Engine (PFE) failure. In this case, the node's PFE will be disabled in the cluster by reducing the priorities of redundancy groups  $x$  to 0.

- A central point failure triggers failover to the secondary node. The failed node's PFE, which includes all SPCs and all I/O cards (IOCs), will automatically be restarted. If the secondary central point has failed as well, the cluster will be unable to come up because there will be no primary device. Only the data plane (redundancy group  $x$ ) will be failed over.
- A single, failed SPU causes failover of redundancy group  $x$  to the secondary node. All IOCs and SPCs on the failed node will be restarted and redundancy group  $x$  will be failed over to the secondary node. Failover to the secondary node is automatic without the need for user intervention. When the failed (former) primary node has its failing component restored, failback will be determined by the preempt configuration for the redundancy group  $x$ . The interval for dead SPU detection is 30 seconds.

## Flowd Monitoring

Flowd monitoring tracks the health of the flowd process. Flowd monitoring is enabled by default.



**NOTE:** Flowd monitoring is supported on SRX 210 devices. It is not supported on J-series devices.

---

Persistent flowd failure on a node is deemed a catastrophic Packet Processing Engine (PFE) failure. In this case, the node's PFE will be disabled in the cluster by reducing the priorities of redundancy groups  $x$  to 0.

A failed flowd process causes failover of redundancy group  $x$  to the secondary node. Failover to the secondary node is automatic without the need for user intervention. When the failed (former) primary node has its failing component restored, failback will be determined by the preempt configuration for the redundancy group  $x$ .

### **Cold-Sync Monitoring**

The process of synchronizing the data plane runtime objects (RTOs) on the startup of the SPUs or flowd is called *cold sync*. When all the RTOs are synchronized, the cold-sync process is complete and, the SPU or flowd on the node is ready to take over for the primary node, if needed. The process of monitoring the cold-sync state of all the SPUs or flowd on a node is called *cold-sync monitoring*. Keep in mind that when preempt is enabled, cold-sync monitoring will prevent the node from taking over the mastership until the cold-sync process is completed for the SPUs or flowd on the node. Cold-sync monitoring is enabled by default.

When the node is rebooted, or when the SPUs or flowd come back up from failure, the priority for all the redundancy groups  $x$  is 0. When an SPU or flowd comes up, it tries to start the cold-sync process with its mirror SPU or flowd on the other node.

If this is the only node in the cluster, the priorities for all the redundancy groups  $x$  stay at 0 until a new node joins the cluster. Although the priority is at 0, the device will still be able to receive and send traffic over its interfaces. A priority of 0 implies that it will not be able to fail over in case of a failure. When a new node joins the cluster, all the SPUs or flowd, as they come up, will start the cold-sync process with the mirror SPUs or flowd of the existing node.

When the SPU or flowd of a node that is already up detects the cold-sync request from the SPU or flowd of the peer node, it posts a message to the system indicating that the cold-sync process is complete. The SPUs or flowd of the newly joined node will post a similar message. However, they post this message only after all the RTOs are learned and cold-sync is complete. On receipt of completion messages from all the SPUs or flowd, the priority for redundancy groups  $x$  will move to the configured priority on each node if there are no other failures of monitored components, such as interfaces. This action ensures that the existing primary node for redundancy  $x$  groups always moves to the configured priority first. The node joining the cluster later will move to its configured priorities only after all its SPUs or flowd have completed their cold-sync process. This action in turn guarantees that the newly added node is ready with all the RTOs before it takes over mastership.

## Related Topics

- Redundancy Group Interface Monitoring on page 222

## Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces

---

A redundant Ethernet interface is a pseudo interface that includes a physical interface from each node of the cluster.

### Before You Begin

Read “Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation” on page 217 and “Understanding Redundancy Groups” on page 218

---

A redundant Ethernet interface can contain either a pair of Fast Ethernet interfaces or a pair of Gigabit Ethernet interfaces that are referred to as child interfaces of the redundant Ethernet interface (the redundant parent). Each redundant Ethernet interface can contain only two interfaces because a cluster contains only two nodes. A single redundant Ethernet interface might include a Fast Ethernet from node 0 and a Fast Ethernet from node 1 or a Gigabit Ethernet from node 0 and a Gigabit Ethernet from node 1. Although a redundant Ethernet interface's interfaces must be the same kind—either Fast Ethernet or Gigabit Ethernet—they do not need to be in the same slots on each node.



**NOTE:** A redundant Ethernet interface is referred to as a *reth* in configuration commands.

---

A redundant Ethernet interface's child interface is associated with the redundant Ethernet interface as part of the child interface configuration. The redundant Ethernet interface child interface inherits most of its configuration from its parent.

A redundant Ethernet interface inherits its failover properties from the redundancy group *x* that it belongs to. A redundant Ethernet interface remains active as long as its primary child interface is available/active. For example, if *reth0* is associated with redundancy group 1 and redundancy group 1 is active on node 0, then *reth0* will be up as long as the node 0 child of *reth0* is up.

A redundancy group *x* can contain up to 15 redundant Ethernet interfaces.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259

- Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration on page 249
- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
- Understanding the Data Plane on page 230
- Understanding Failover on page 233

## Understanding the Control Plane

---

The control plane software, which operates in active/backup mode, is an integral part of JUNOS software that is active on the primary node of a cluster. It achieves redundancy by communicating state, configuration, and other information to the inactive Routing Engine on the secondary node. If the primary Routing Engine fails, the secondary one is ready to assume control.

### Before You Begin

Read “Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation” on page 217

---

This topic includes:

- About the Control Link on page 228
- About Heartbeats on page 228
- About Control Link Failure and Recovery on page 228
- Related Topics on page 230

The control plane software:

- Runs on the Routing Engine and oversees the entire chassis cluster system, including interfaces on both nodes
- Manages system and data plane resources, including the Packet Forwarding Engine (PFE) on each node
- Synchronizes the configuration over the control link
- Establishes and maintains sessions, including authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) functions
- Manages application-specific signaling protocols
- Establishes and maintains management sessions, such as Telnet connections
- Handles asymmetric routing
- Manages routing state, Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) processing, and Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) processing

Information from the control plane software follows two paths:

- On the primary node (where the Routing Engine is active), control information flows from the Routing Engine to the local Packet Forwarding Engine.

- Control information flows across the control link to the secondary node's Routing Engine and Packet Forwarding Engine.

The control plane software running on the primary Routing Engine maintains state for the entire cluster, and only processes running on its node can update state information. The primary Routing Engine synchronizes state for the secondary node and also processes all host traffic.

### **About the Control Link**

The control link relies on a proprietary protocol to transmit session state, configuration, and liveness signals across the nodes.

On SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices, by default, all control ports are disabled. Each SPC in a device has two control ports, and each device can have multiple SPCs plugged into it. To set up the control link in a chassis cluster with SRX 5600 or SRX 5800 devices, you connect and configure the control ports that you will use on each device (`fpcn` and `fpcn`) and then initialize the device in cluster mode.

For SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices, there are dedicated chassis cluster (HA) control ports on the switch fabric board. No control link configuration is needed for SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.

For SRX 210 devices, the `fe-0/0/7` interface is used for the control link.

In a J-series chassis cluster, the control link is a physical connection between the `ge-0/0/3` ports on each device, with both transformed into `fxp1`.

To set up the control link on J-series devices, you connect the control interfaces on the two devices back-to-back. When you initialize a device in cluster mode, JUNOS software renames the control interface to `fxp1` and uses that interface for the cluster control link. To enable the control link to transmit data, the system provides each `fxp1` control link interface with an internal IP address.

### **About Heartbeats**

JUNOS software transmits heartbeat signals over the control link at a configured interval. The system uses heartbeat transmissions to determine the “health” of the control link. If the number of missed heartbeats has reached the configured threshold, the system assesses whether a failure condition exists.

You specify the heartbeat threshold and heartbeat interval when you configure the chassis cluster.

The system monitors the control link's status by default.

### **About Control Link Failure and Recovery**

If the control link fails, JUNOS software disables the secondary node to prevent the possibility of each node becoming primary for all redundancy groups, including redundancy group 0.

In the event of a legitimate control link failure, redundancy group 0 remains primary on the node on which it is currently primary, inactive redundancy groups  $x$  on the primary node become active, and the secondary node enters a disabled state in which it is not handling traffic.



**NOTE:** When the secondary node is disabled, you can still log in to the management port and run diagnostics.

---

To determine if a legitimate control link failure has occurred, the system relies on redundant liveliness signals sent across the control link and the data link.

The system periodically transmits probes over the fabric data link and heartbeat signals over the control link. Probes and heartbeat signals share a common sequence number that maps them to a unique time event. The software identifies a legitimate control link failure if the following two conditions exist:

- The threshold number of heartbeats were lost.
- At least one probe with a sequence number corresponding to that of a missing heartbeat signal was received on the data link.

When a legitimate control link failure occurs, the following conditions apply:

- Redundancy group 0 remains primary on the node on which it is presently primary (and thus its Routing Engine remains active), and all redundancy groups  $x$  on the node become primary.

If the system cannot determine which Routing Engine is primary, the node with the higher priority value for redundancy group 0 is primary and its Routing Engine is active. (You configure the priority for each node when you configure the **redundancy-group** statement for redundancy group 0.)

- The system disables the secondary node.

To recover a device from disabled mode, you must reboot the device. When you reboot the disabled node, the node will synchronize its dynamic state with the primary node.



**NOTE:** If you make any changes to the configuration while the secondary node is disabled, execute the **commit** command to synchronize the configuration after you reboot the node. If you did not make configuration changes, the configuration file remains synchronized with that of the primary node.

---

You cannot enable preemption for redundancy group 0. If you want to change the primary node for redundancy group 0, you must do a manual failover.

You can specify that control link recovery be done automatically by the system by setting the **control-link-recovery** statement. In this case, once the system determines that the control link is healthy, it issues an automatic reboot on the disabled node. When the disabled node reboots, the node joins the cluster again.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
- Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 226
- Understanding Failover on page 233

## Understanding the Data Plane

---

The data plane software, which operates in active/active mode, manages flow processing and session state redundancy and processes transit traffic. All packets belonging to a particular session are processed on the same node to ensure that the same security treatment is applied to them. The system identifies the node on which a session is active and forwards its packets to that node for processing. (After a packet is processed, the Packet Forwarding Engine transmits the packet to the node on which its egress interface exists if that node is not the local one.)

To provide for session (or flow) redundancy, the data plane software synchronizes its state by sending special payload packets called runtime objects (RTOs) from one node to the other across the fabric data link. By transmitting information about a session between the nodes, RTOs ensure the consistency and stability of sessions if a failover were to occur, and thus they enable the system to continue to process traffic belonging to existing sessions. To ensure that session information is always synchronized between the two nodes, the data plane software gives RTOs transmission priority over transit traffic.

### Before You Begin

Read “Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation” on page 217

---

This topic includes:

- About Session RTOs on page 230
- About the Fabric Data Link on page 231
- About Data Forwarding on page 231
- About Fabric Data Link Failure and Recovery on page 232
- Related Topics on page 232

## About Session RTOs

The data plane software creates RTOs for UDP and TCP sessions and tracks state changes. It also synchronizes traffic for IPv4 passthrough protocols such as Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) and IPsec.

RTOs for synchronizing a session include:



- Session creation RTOs on the first packet
- Session deletion and ageout RTOs
- Change-related RTOs, which include:
  - TCP state changes
  - Timeout synchronization request and response messages
  - RTOs for creating and deleting temporary openings in the firewall (pinholes) and child session pinholes

### **About the Fabric Data Link**

The data link is referred to as the fabric interface. It is used by the cluster's Packet Forwarding Engines to transmit transit traffic and to synchronize data plane dynamic runtime state. When the system creates the fabric interface, the software assigns it an internally derived IP address to be used for packet transmission.

The fabric is a physical connection between two nodes of a cluster and is formed by connecting a pair of Ethernet interfaces back-to-back (one from each node).

Unlike for the control link, whose interfaces are determined by the system, you specify the physical interfaces to be used for the fabric data link in the configuration.

For most SRX-series chassis clusters and for all J-series chassis clusters, the fabric link can be any pair of Ethernet interfaces spanning the cluster. For SRX 210 devices, the fabric link can be any pair of Ethernet ports.

The fabric data link does not support fragmentation. To accommodate this state, jumbo frame support is enabled by default on the link with an MTU size of 8980 bytes. To ensure that traffic that transits the data link does not exceed this size, we recommend that no other interface exceed the fabric data link's MTU size.

### **About Data Forwarding**

For JUNOS software, flow processing occurs on a single node on which the session for that flow was established and is active. This approach ensures that the same security measures are applied to all packets belonging to a session.

A chassis cluster can receive traffic on an interface on one node and send it out an interface on the other node. (In active/active mode, the ingress interface for traffic might exist on one node and its egress interface on the other.)

This traversal is required in the following situations:

- When packets are processed on one node, but need to be forwarded out an egress interface on the other node
- When packets arrive on an interface on one node, but must be processed on the other node

If the ingress and egress interfaces for a packet are on one node, but the packet must be processed on the other node because its session was established there,

it must traverse the data link twice. This can be the case for some complex media sessions, such as voice-over-IP (VoIP) sessions.

### **About Fabric Data Link Failure and Recovery**



**NOTE:** Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) services do not support failover. For this reason, IDP services will not be applied for sessions that were present prior to the failover. IDP services will be applied for new sessions created on the new primary node.

The fabric data link is vital to the chassis cluster. If the link is unavailable, traffic forwarding and RTO synchronization are affected, which can result in loss of traffic and unpredictable system behavior.

To eliminate this possibility, JUNOS software detects fabric faults and disables one node of the cluster. It determines that a fabric fault has occurred if a fabric probe is not received but the fabric interface is active.

To recover from this state, you must reboot the disabled node. When you reboot it, the node synchronizes its state and RTOs with the primary node.



**NOTE:** If you make any changes to the configuration while the secondary node is disabled, execute the `commit` command to synchronize the configuration after you reboot the node. If you did not make configuration changes, the configuration file remains synchronized with that of the primary node.

### **Related Topics**

- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218

## Understanding Failover

---

Chassis cluster employs a number of highly efficient failover mechanisms that promote high availability to increase your system's overall reliability and productivity.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
  - Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
  - Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 226
  - Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
  - Understanding the Data Plane on page 230
- 

This topic includes:

- About Redundancy Group Failover on page 233
- About Manual Failover on page 233

### About Redundancy Group Failover

A redundancy group is a collection of objects that fail over as a group. Each redundancy group monitors a set of objects (physical interfaces), and each monitored object is assigned a weight. Each redundancy group has an initial threshold of 255. When a monitored object fails, the weight of the object is subtracted from the threshold value of the redundancy group. When the threshold value reaches zero, the redundancy group fails over to the other node. As a result, all the objects associated with the redundancy group will fail over as well. For more information, refer to “Redundancy Group Interface Monitoring” on page 222.

### About Manual Failover

You can initiate a redundancy group *x* failover manually. A manual failover applies until a failback event occurs.

For example, suppose that the user manually does a redundancy group 1 failover from node 0 to node 1. Then an interface that redundancy group 1 is monitoring fails, dropping the threshold value of the new primary redundancy group to zero. This event is considered a failback event, and the system returns control to the original redundancy group.

You can also initiate a redundancy group 0 failover manually if you want to change the primary node for redundancy group 0. You cannot enable preemption for redundancy group 0.



**CAUTION:** Be cautious and judicious in your use of redundancy group 0 manual failovers. A redundancy group 0 failover implies a Routing Engine failover, in which case all processes running on the primary node are killed and then spawned on the new primary Routing Engine. This failover could result in loss of state, such as routing state, and degrade performance by introducing system churn.

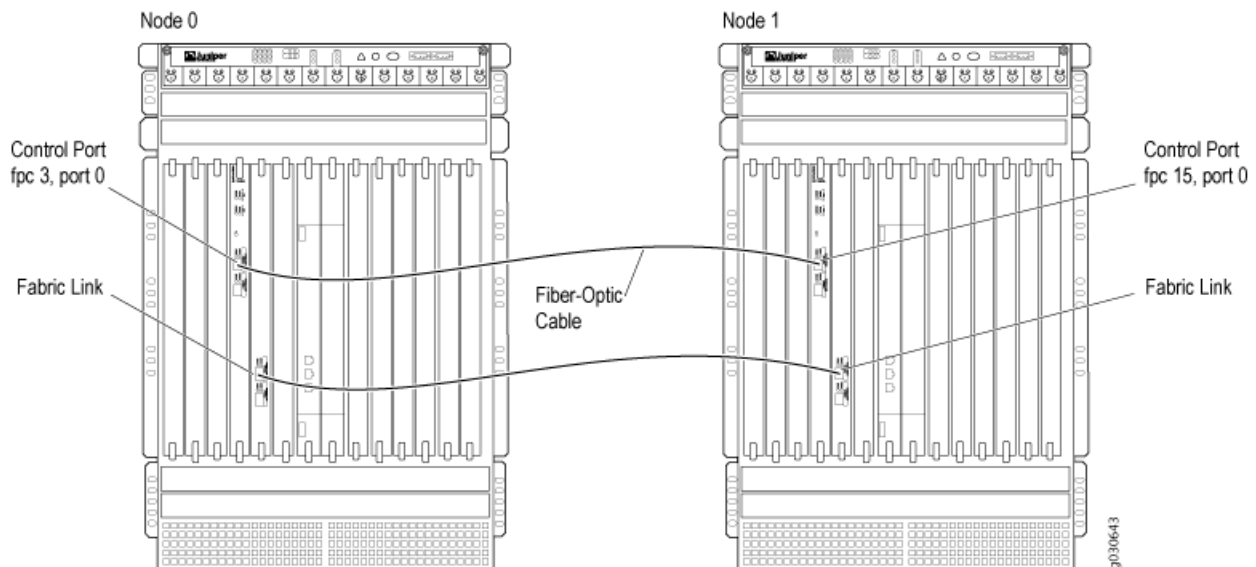
## Hardware Setup for SRX-series Chassis Clusters

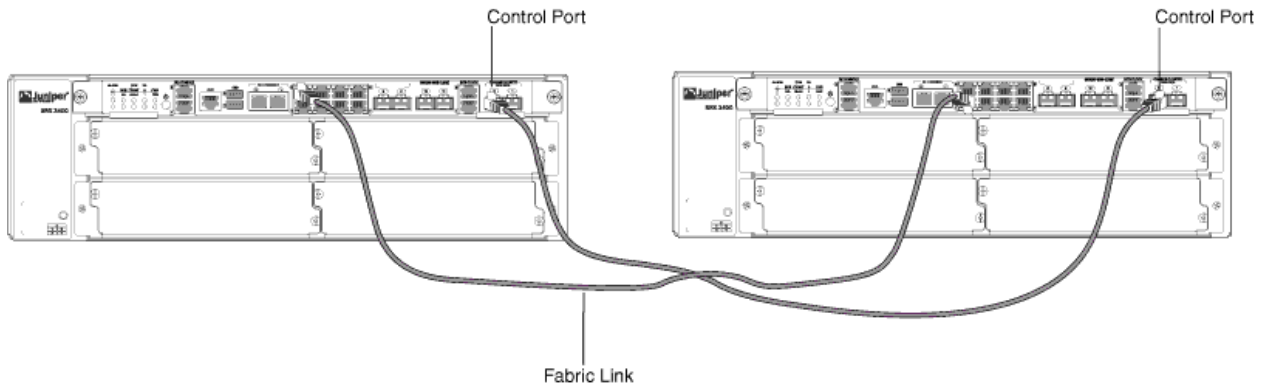
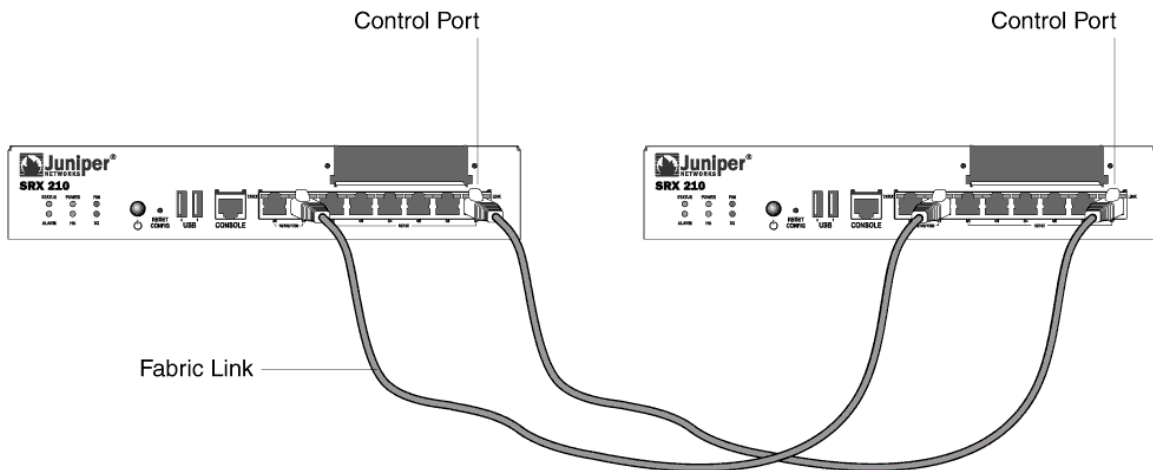
To create most SRX-series chassis clusters, you must physically connect a pair of the same kind of supported SRX-series devices back-to-back over a pair of Gigabit Ethernet connections or a pair of 10-Gigabit Ethernet connections. For SRX 210 devices, you must connect devices back-to-back over a pair of Fast Ethernet connections. The connection that serves as the control link must be the built-in controller port on each device. The fabric link connection can be a combination of any pair of Gigabit Ethernet interfaces on the devices. Figure 50 on page 234, Figure 51 on page 235, and Figure 52 on page 235 show pairs of SRX-series devices with the fabric links and control links connected.



**NOTE:** For the SRX 3000 and 5000 lines, the control link ports are a one-to-one mapping with the Routing Engine slot. If your Routing Engine is in slot 0, you must use control port 0 to link the Routing Engines.

**Figure 50: Connecting SRX-series Devices in a Cluster (SRX 5800 Devices)**

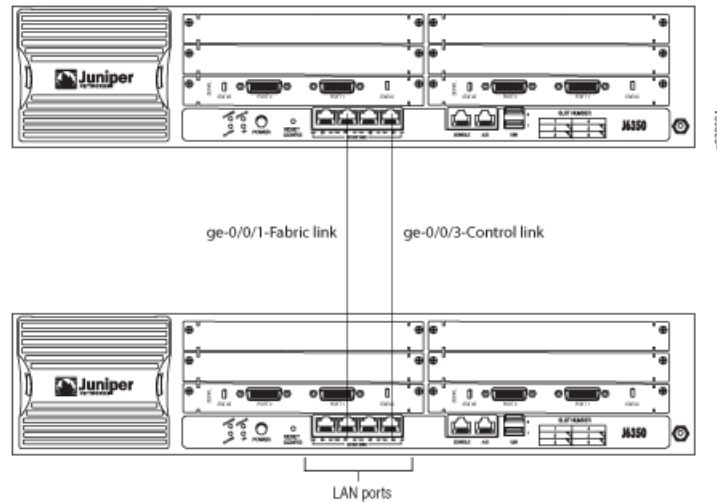


**Figure 51: Connecting SRX-series Devices in a Cluster (SRX 3400 Devices)****Figure 52: Connecting SRX-series Devices in a Cluster (SRX 210 Devices)**

90303006

## Hardware Setup for J-series Chassis Clusters

To create a J-series chassis cluster, you must physically connect a pair of the same kind of supported J-series devices back-to-back over a pair of Gigabit Ethernet connections. The connection that serves as the control link must be the built-in interface `ge-0/0/3`. The fabric link connection can be a combination of any pair of Gigabit Ethernet interfaces on the devices. Figure 53 on page 236 shows two J-series devices connected using the built-in interfaces for both the fabric and control links.

**Figure 53: Connecting J-series Devices in a Cluster (J6350 Devices)**

## What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster

After wiring the two devices together as described in “Hardware Setup for SRX-series Chassis Clusters” on page 234 or “Hardware Setup for J-series Chassis Clusters” on page 235, you use CLI *operational mode* commands to enable chassis clustering by assigning a cluster ID and node ID on each chassis in the cluster. The cluster ID is the same on both nodes. To do this, you connect to the console port on the device that will be the primary, give it a node ID, and identify the cluster it will belong to, then reboot the system. You then connect the console port to the other device, give it a node ID, and assign it the same cluster ID you gave to the first node, then reboot the system. In both instances, you can cause the system to boot automatically by including the **reboot** parameter in the CLI command line. (For further explanation of primary and secondary nodes, see “Understanding Redundancy Groups” on page 218.)

Figure 54 on page 238 shows how the SPC slots are numbered on two nodes in an SRX-series chassis cluster. Figure 57 on page 241 shows how the PIM slots are numbered on two nodes in a J-series chassis cluster.

This topic includes:

- Node Interfaces on SRX-series Chassis Clusters on page 237
- Node Interfaces on J-series Chassis Clusters on page 240
- Management Interfaces on page 241
- Fabric Interface on page 241
- Control Interfaces on page 242
- Related Topics on page 242

## Node Interfaces on SRX-series Chassis Clusters

Normally, on SRX-series devices, the built-in interfaces are numbered as follows:

For Most SRX Devices	ge-0/0/0	ge-0/0/1	ge-0/0/2	ge-0/0/3	...
For SRX 210 Devices	ge-0/0/0	ge-0/0/1	fe-0/0/2	fe-0/0/3	...

For chassis clustering, most SRX-series devices have a built-in management interface named **fxp0**. For SRX 210 devices, there is no management interface; the console connection is the best connection to reach both devices.

For SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices, control interfaces are configured on SPCs. For SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices, control interfaces are dedicated Gigabit Ethernet ports. For SRX 210 devices, **fe-0/0/7** is used for the control interface.

Table 68 on page 237 shows an example of how these interfaces could be named and numbered for SRX-series chassis clusters.

**Table 68: Example of SRX-series Chassis Cluster Interface Naming Scheme**

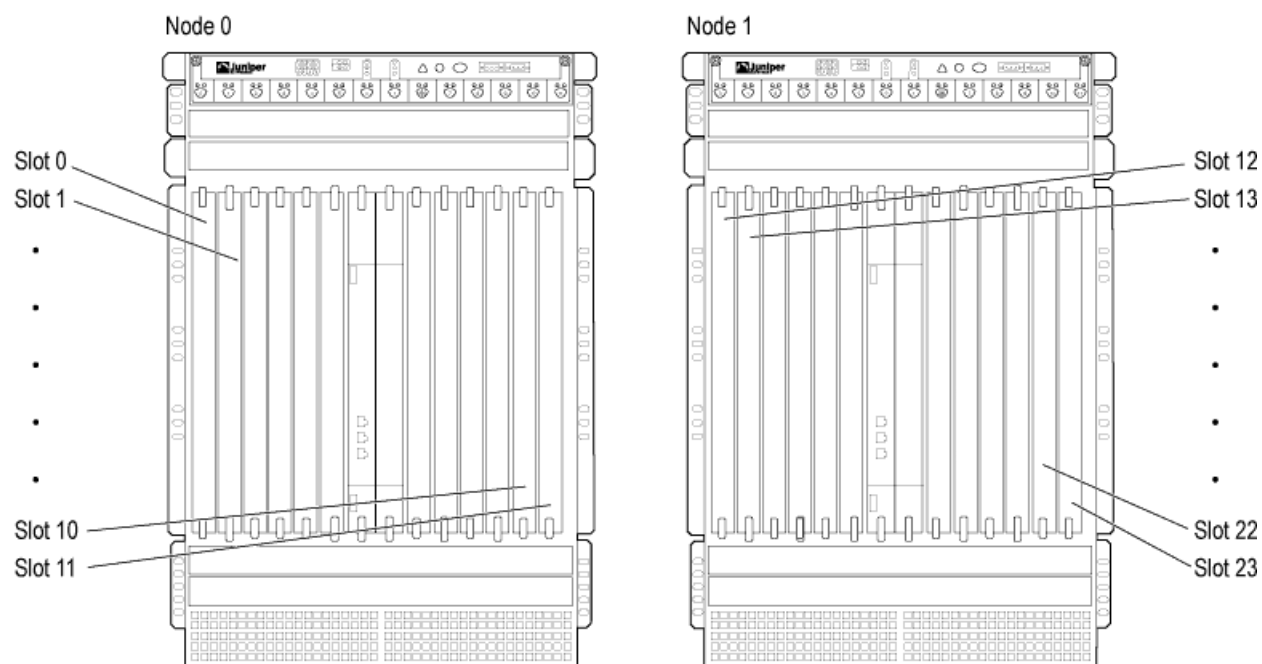
Model	Chassis	Interface	Interface	Management Interface	Control Interface
5600	Node 0	ge-0/0/0	ge-0/0/1	fxp0	fpc3, port 1
	Node 1	ge-6/0/0	ge-6/0/1	fxp0	fpc9, port 1
5800	Node 0	ge-0/0/0	ge-0/0/1	fxp0	fpc3, port 1
	Node 1	ge-12/0/0	ge-12/0/1	fxp0	fpc 15, port 1
3400	Node 0	ge-0/0/0	ge-0/0/1	fxp0	Dedicated Gigabit Ethernet port
	Node 1	ge-8/0/0	ge-8/0/1	fxp0	Dedicated Gigabit Ethernet port
3600	Node 0	ge-0/0/0	ge-0/0/1	fxp0	Dedicated Gigabit Ethernet port
	Node 1	ge-13/0/0	ge-13/0/1	fxp0	Dedicated Gigabit Ethernet port
210	Node 0	fe-0/0/7	fe-0/0/7	None	Dedicated Fast Ethernet port
	Node 1	fe-2/0/7	fe-2/0/7	None	Dedicated Fast Ethernet port



**NOTE:** See the appropriate *Services Gateway Hardware Guide* for details about SRX-series devices. The *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide* provides a full discussion of the interface naming convention.

After you enable chassis clustering, the two chassis joined together cease to exist as individuals and now represent a single system. As a single system, the cluster now has twice as many FPC slots. (See Figure 54 on page 238, Figure 55 on page 239, and Figure 56 on page 240.)

**Figure 54: FPC Slot Numbering in an SRX-series Chassis Cluster (SRX 5800 Devices)**







**NOTE:** SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices have Flex I/O Cards (flex IOCs) that have two slots to accept the following port modules:

- SRX-IOC-4XGE-XFP 4-Port XFP
- SRX-IOC-16GE-TX 16-Port RJ-45
- SRX-IOC-16GE-SFP 16-Port SFP

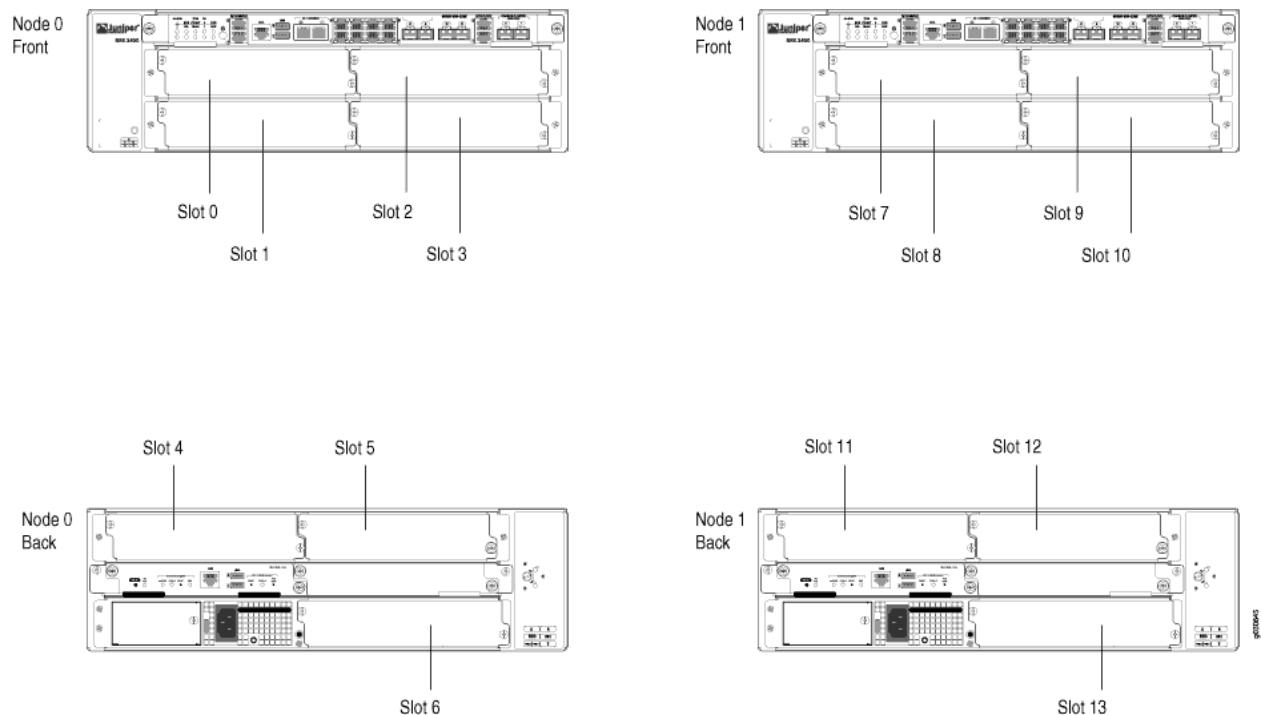
You can use these port modules to add from 4 to 16 Ethernet ports to your SRX device. Port numbering for these modules is

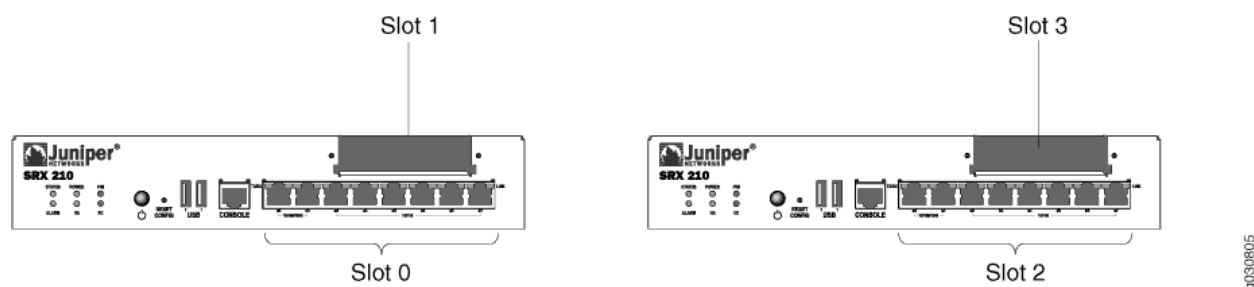
*slot/port module/port*

where *slot* is the number of the slot in the device in which the flex IOC is installed; *port module* is 0 for the upper slot in the flex IOC or 1 for the lower slot when the card is vertical, as in an SRX 5800 device; and *port* is the number of the port on the port module. When the card is horizontal, as in an SRX 5600 device, *port module* is 0 for the left-hand slot or 1 for the right-hand slot.

For more information, see the *SRX 5600 Services Gateway Hardware Guide* and the *SRX 5800 Services Gateway Hardware Guide*.

**Figure 55: CFM Slot Numbering in an SRX-series Chassis Cluster (SRX 3600 Devices)**



**Figure 56: FPC Slot Numbering in an SRX-series Chassis Cluster (SRX 210 Devices)**

### Node Interfaces on J-series Chassis Clusters

Normally, on J-series devices, the built-in interfaces are numbered as follows:

ge-0/0/0      ge-0/0/1      ge-0/0/2      ge-0/0/3      ...

After you enable chassis clustering and reboot the system, two of the built-in interfaces are repurposed as the management and control interfaces and are automatically renamed **fxp0** and **fxp1**, respectively. Table 69 on page 240 shows how these interfaces are renamed and how they are renumbered for a chassis cluster for the various J-series devices.

**Table 69: J-series Chassis Cluster Interface Naming Scheme**

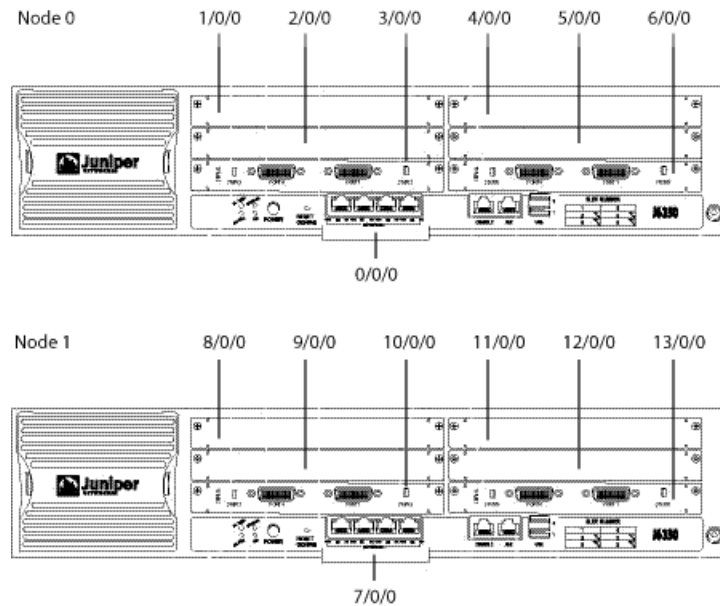
Model	Chassis	Interface	Interface	Management Interface	Control Interface
J2320	Node 0	ge-0/0/0	ge-0/0/1	fxp0	fxp1
	Node 1	ge-4/0/0	ge-4/0/1	fxp0	fxp1
J2350	Node 0	ge-0/0/0	ge-0/0/1	fxp0	fxp1
	Node 1	ge-6/0/0	ge-6/0/1	fxp0	fxp1
J4350 and J6350	Node 0	ge-0/0/0	ge-0/0/1	fxp0	fxp1
	Node 1	ge-7/0/0	ge-7/0/1	fxp0	fxp1



**NOTE:** See the *J-series Services Routers Hardware Guide* for details about J-series devices. The *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide* provides a full discussion of the interface naming convention.

After you enable chassis clustering, the two chassis joined together cease to exist as individuals and now represent a single system. As a single system, the cluster now has twice as many PIM slots. (See Figure 57 on page 241.)

**Figure 57: PIM Slot Numbering in a J-series Chassis Cluster (J6350 Devices)**



## Management Interfaces



**NOTE:** The SRX 210 device does not have any management interface.

The `fxp0` interfaces function like standard management interfaces on SRX-series and J-series devices and allow network access to each node in the cluster. You must, however, first connect to each node through the console port and assign a unique IP address to each `fxp0` interface.

## Fabric Interface

The fabric is the data link between the nodes and is used to forward traffic between the chassis. Traffic arriving on a node that needs to be processed on the other is forwarded over the fabric data link. Similarly, traffic processed on a node that needs to exit through an interface on the other node is forwarded over the fabric. The fabric also provides for synchronization of session state objects created by operations such as authentication, Network Address Translation (NAT), Application Layer Gateways (ALGs), and IP Security (IPsec) sessions. For most SRX-series chassis clusters and for J-series chassis clusters, the fabric link can be any pair of Ethernet interfaces spanning the cluster.

## Control Interfaces

The control interfaces provide the control link between the two nodes in the cluster and are used for routing updates and for control plane signal traffic, such as heartbeat and threshold information that triggers node failover. The control link is also used to synchronize the configuration between the nodes. When you submit configuration statements to the cluster, the configuration is automatically synchronized over the control link.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
- Understanding the Data Plane on page 230
- Disabling Chassis Cluster on page 272

## Creating an SRX-series Chassis Cluster—Overview

---

This section provides an overview of the basic steps to create an SRX-series chassis cluster.

For the basic steps to set up a J-series chassis cluster, see “Creating a J-series Chassis Cluster—Overview” on page 244.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Hardware Setup for SRX-series Chassis Clusters on page 234
- What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster on page 236



**NOTE:** For SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 chassis clusters, the placement and type of SPCs must match in the two devices. For SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 chassis clusters, the placement and type of SPCs, IOCs, and NPCs must match in the two devices.

To create an SRX-series chassis cluster:

1. Physically connect a pair of the same kind of supported SRX-series devices together:
  - a. To create the fabric link between two nodes in a cluster, connect any pair of Ethernet interfaces. For most SRX devices, the only requirement is that both interfaces be Gigabit Ethernet interfaces (or 10-Gigabit Ethernet interfaces). For SRX 210 devices, both interfaces must be of a similar type

(that is, a pair of Fast Ethernet interfaces or a pair of Gigabit Ethernet interfaces).

Figure 50 on page 234 shows nodes connected using built-in I/O ports for the fabric link.

- b. Connect the control ports that you will use on each device (for example, **fpc3** and **fpc15**). For SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices, the control ports are dedicated Gigabit Ethernet ports. For SRX 210 devices, the control port is the highest numbered port (**fe-0/0/7**). For SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices, control ports should be on corresponding slots in the two devices, with the following slot numbering offsets:

Model	Offset
5600	6 (for example, <b>fpc3</b> and <b>fpc9</b> )
5800	12 (for example, <b>fpc3</b> and <b>fpc15</b> )

2. On the first device to be initialized in the cluster—this is the node that will form the cluster—connect to the console port.

For connection instructions, see the appropriate *Services Gateway Getting Started Guide*.



**NOTE:** Step 3 does not apply to SRX 210 devices.

3. Configure the control ports.
4. Use CLI operational mode commands to enable clustering:
  - a. Identify the cluster by giving it the cluster ID.
  - b. Identify the node by giving it its own node ID and then reboot the system.
5. On the other device, connect to the console port and use CLI operational mode commands to enable clustering:
  - a. Identify the cluster that the device is joining by setting the same cluster ID you set on the first node.
  - b. Identify the node by giving it its own node ID and then reboot the system.



**NOTE:** Step 6 does not apply to SRX 210 devices.

6. Configure the management interfaces on the cluster.
 

See “Configuring the Management Interface” on page 248.
7. Configure the cluster:

To use J-Web Quick Configuration, see:

- a. Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration on page 249
- b. Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces—Quick Configuration on page 252

To configure the cluster with the CLI, see:

- a. Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256
  - b. Configuring the Fabric on page 257
  - c. Configuring Redundancy Groups on page 258
  - d. Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
  - e. Configuring Interface Monitoring on page 262
8. To initiate manual failover, see “Initiating a Manual Redundancy Group Failover” on page 263.
  9. To configure conditional route advertisement over redundant Ethernet interfaces, see “Configuring Conditional Route Advertising” on page 264.
  10. To verify the configuration, see “Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration” on page 266.

## **Related Topics**

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster on page 236
- Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration on page 249
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces—Quick Configuration on page 252
- Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256
- Configuring the Fabric on page 257
- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
- Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 226

## **Creating a J-series Chassis Cluster—Overview**

---

This section provides an overview of the basic steps to create a J-series chassis cluster.

For the basic steps to set up an SRX-series chassis cluster, see “Creating an SRX-series Chassis Cluster—Overview” on page 242.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Hardware Setup for J-series Chassis Clusters on page 235
- What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster on page 236



**NOTE:** For J-series chassis clusters, the two nodes in a cluster must be identical models, but can have any combination of PIMs installed.

To create a J-series chassis cluster:

1. Physically connect a pair of the same kind of supported J-series devices together:
  - a. To create the fabric link between two nodes in a cluster, connect any pair of Gigabit Ethernet interfaces, either the built-in interfaces or interfaces on the PIMs. The only requirement is that both interfaces be Gigabit Ethernet interfaces.

Figure 53 on page 236 shows nodes connected using the built-in **ge-0/0/1** interface for the fabric link.

- b. Connect the **ge-0/0/3** interfaces together to create the control link.
2. On the first device to be initialized in the cluster—this is the node that will form the cluster—connect to the console port.

For connection instructions, see the *J-series Services Routers Hardware Guide*.

3. Use CLI operational mode commands to enable clustering:
  - a. Identify the cluster by giving it a cluster ID.
  - b. Identify the node by giving it its own node ID and then reboot the system.
4. On the other device, connect to the console port and use CLI operational mode commands to enable clustering:
  - a. Identify the cluster that the device is joining by setting the same cluster ID you set on the first node.
  - b. Identify the node by giving it its own node ID and then reboot the system.
5. Configure the management interfaces on the cluster.

See “Configuring the Management Interface” on page 248.

6. Configure the cluster:

To use J-Web Quick Configuration, see:

- a. Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration on page 249
- b. Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces—Quick Configuration on page 252

To configure the cluster with the CLI, see:

- a. Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256
  - b. Configuring the Fabric on page 257
  - c. Configuring Redundancy Groups on page 258
  - d. Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
  - e. Configuring Interface Monitoring on page 262
7. To initiate manual failover, see “Initiating a Manual Redundancy Group Failover” on page 263.
  8. To configure conditional route advertisement over redundant Ethernet interfaces, see “Configuring Conditional Route Advertising” on page 264.
  9. To verify the configuration, see “Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration” on page 266.

## ***Related Topics***

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster on page 236
- Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration on page 249
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces—Quick Configuration on page 252
- Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256
- Configuring the Fabric on page 257
- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
- Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 226



## Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID

After connecting the two devices together, you configure a cluster ID and a node ID. A cluster ID identifies the cluster that the two nodes belong to. A node ID identifies a unique node within a cluster.

### Before You Begin

Read:

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218

The system uses node IDs and cluster IDs to apply the correct configuration for each node when you use the **apply-group** command described in “Configuring Chassis Cluster Information” on page 256. The node ID and cluster ID statements are written to the EPROM, and when the system is rebooted, they take effect.

You can deploy up to 15 clusters in a Layer 2 domain. Each cluster is defined by a **cluster-id** value within the range of 1 through 15. A device can belong to only one cluster at any given time. Nodes in a cluster are numbered 0 and 1.

This topic includes:

- CLI Configuration on page 247
- Related Topics on page 248

## CLI Configuration

To set the node IDs and cluster IDs, connect to each device through the console port and enter the following operational commands, then reboot the system.

- Enter the cluster ID and node ID information for the first node. If you want redundancy groups to be primary on this node when priority settings for both nodes are the same, make it node 0.

```
user@host> set chassis cluster node 0 cluster-id 1
warning: A reboot is required for chassis cluster to be enabled
```

- Enter the cluster ID and node ID for the other node. If you want redundancy groups to be secondary on this node when priority settings for both nodes are the same, make it node 1.

```
user@host> set chassis cluster node 1 cluster-id 1 reboot
Successfully enabled chassis cluster. Going to reboot now.
```

After you set the cluster ID and node ID for each node and the system reboots, the built-in interfaces are automatically renamed (see Table 69 on page 240). Use the **show chassis cluster status** operational command to view node status.

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# show chassis cluster status
Cluster ID: 3
Node name          Priority    Status    Preempt  Manual failover

Redundancy group: 0 , Failover count: 1
  node0             254        secondary no        no
  node1             2          primary  no        no

Redundancy group: 1 , Failover count: 1
  node0             101        Secondary no        no
  node1             99         primary  no        no
```

When you complete the chassis cluster basic configuration, any subsequent configuration changes you make are automatically synchronized on both nodes.

## Related Topics

- [Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256](#)
- [Configuring the Fabric on page 257](#)
- [Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259](#)
- [Configuring Conditional Route Advertising on page 264](#)
- [Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration on page 266](#)

## Configuring the Management Interface

You must assign a unique IP address to each node in the cluster to provide network management access. This configuration is not replicated across the two nodes.

### Before You Begin

Read:

- [Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217](#)
- [Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID on page 247](#)



**NOTE:** The SRX 210 device does not have any management interface.

In an SRX-series chassis cluster, the **fxp0** interface is a dedicated port.

In a J-series chassis cluster, you configure management access to the cluster by defining a unique hostname for each node and assigning a unique IP address to the **fxp0** interface on each node. The **fxp0** interface is created when the system reboots the devices after you designate one node as the primary device and the other as the secondary device.



**NOTE:** If you try to access the nodes in a cluster over the network before you configure the fxp0 interface, you will lose access to the cluster.

This topic includes:

- CLI Configuration on page 249
- Related Topics on page 249

## CLI Configuration

From the console port connection to the device you want to designate as the primary node, in configuration mode enter the following commands to name the node node0-router and assign IP address 10.1.1.1/24 to it:

```
user@host# set groups node0 system host-name node0-router
user@host# set groups node0 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
```

From the console port connection of the device you want to designate the secondary node, in configuration mode enter the following commands to name the node node1-router and assign IP address 10.1.1.2/24 to it:

```
user@host# set groups node1 system host-name node1-router
user@host# set groups node1 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.2/24
```

Enter the following command in configuration mode to apply these unique configurations to the appropriate node. (If you are migrating from a device to a cluster, delete the hostname from the configuration and then use the `apply-groups` command.)

This configuration is not replicated across the two nodes.

```
user@host# set apply-groups "${node}"
```

## Related Topics

- Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256
- Configuring the Fabric on page 257
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
- Configuring Conditional Route Advertising on page 264
- Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration on page 266

## Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure chassis clusters, as well as their redundancy groups. See Figure 58 on page 250.



**CAUTION:** Before you can use J-Web Quick Configuration to configure the chassis cluster parameters, you must:

- Set the cluster ID and node ID for each node.
- Configure management interfaces.

#### Before You Begin

Read:

- Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID on page 247 for details on information you must configure first
- Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256

Figure 58 on page 250 shows the Chassis Cluster page.

**Figure 58: Chassis Cluster Page**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Chassis Cluster](#)

---

Quick Configuration

**Chassis Cluster**

---

Chassis Cluster

Redundant ether-Interfaces Count  ?

Heartbeat Interval  ? (default: 1000)

Heartbeat Threshold  ? (default: 3)

Initial Hold  ? (default: 5)

---

Nodes

\* Nodes

0

1

0

---

⊞ Redundancy Group

---

To configure chassis cluster with J-Web Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Chassis Cluster**.
2. Fill in the parameter settings as described in Table 70 on page 251.
3. Click one of the following buttons:

- To apply the configuration and stay on the quick configuration Chassis Cluster page, click **Apply**.
- To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

Go on to “Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces—Quick Configuration” on page 252.

**Table 70: Chassis Cluster Options**

Field	Function	Action
Chassis Cluster		
Redundant ether-Interface Count	Specifies the number of redundant Ethernet Interfaces to be created for the cluster.	Specify a value between <b>1</b> and <b>128</b> .  For SRX 210 devices, specify a value between <b>1</b> and <b>8</b> .
Heartbeat Interval	Specifies, in milliseconds, how often heartbeats are sent out to the other nodes in the cluster.  The default heartbeat interval is 1000.	Specify a value between <b>1000</b> and <b>1200</b> .
Heartbeat Threshold	Specifies the number of consecutive missed heartbeats that indicate a cluster failure.  The default number is 3.	Specify a value between <b>3</b> and <b>8</b> .
Nodes	Specifies the nodes to be used for the chassis cluster.	To specify a node, select the node from the list and click <b>Add</b> .  To delete a node, select the node you want to delete and click <b>Delete</b> .
Group Number	Displays the selected redundancy group information or creates or modifies a redundancy group.	Select a group number from the list of configured redundancy groups.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To modify information for a redundancy group, select the corresponding group number. Specify a value between <b>1</b> and <b>128</b>.</li> <li>■ To create a new redundancy group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Assign a group ID to the redundancy group. Specify a value between <b>1</b> and <b>128</b>.</li> <li>■ Configure the redundancy group with information described in the rest of this table.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

**Table 70: Chassis Cluster Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
Gratuitous ARP Count	For a redundancy group, specifies the number of gratuitous Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) requests that a newly elected master sends out on the active redundant Ethernet interface child links to notify network devices of a change in mastership on the redundant Ethernet interface links.  The default value is 4.	Specify a value between 1 and 16.
Preempt	For a redundancy group, allows a node with a better priority to initiate a failover. By default, this feature is disabled. When disabled, a node with a better priority does not initiate a redundancy group failover (unless some other factor, such as faulty network connectivity identified for monitored interfaces, causes a failover).	Select the check box.
Priorities	For a redundancy group, specifies the priority value of each node. The redundancy group becomes primary on the node with the best (higher) priority.  By default, this feature is disabled.	Select a node and a priority number, then click <b>Add</b> . The value is a number between 1 and 225.
Interface Monitor	For a redundancy group, specifies the interfaces to be monitored by the redundancy group and their respective weights.	Select the interface from the list and enter its weight. The value is a number between 1 and 255.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
- Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID on page 247
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
- Understanding the Data Plane on page 230

## Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces—Quick Configuration



**NOTE:** For SRX 210 devices, you can configure a maximum of eight redundant Ethernet interfaces.

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure redundant Ethernet (reth) interfaces. A redundant Ethernet interface is a pseudo interface that manages two “child” physical interfaces, one on each node of the cluster. Configuration

parameters set for a redundant Ethernet interface are inherited by its child interfaces. A redundant Ethernet interface allows the chassis cluster to share one IP address across two links. When a redundancy group that the redundant Ethernet interface belongs to fails over, its redundant Ethernet interfaces fail over with it and their interfaces on the new node become active.

---

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces” on page 226

---



**NOTE:** Before configuring redundant Ethernet interfaces, you must specify the reth-count so that reth interfaces will show in the configuration or J-Web interfaces screen. For example, to specify that there will be five redundant Ethernet interfaces, enter:

```
{primary:node1}  
user@host# set chassis cluster reth-count 5
```

---

Figure 59 on page 254 shows the Interface page.

**Figure 59: Interface Page**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Interfaces](#)

Quick Configuration

**Interfaces**

Interface Name	Link State	Configured	Description
<a href="#">ge-0/0/0</a>		Yes	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/0.0</a>		No	Logical Unit 0 on Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/1</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/1'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/1.0</a>		No	Logical Unit 0 on Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/1'
<a href="#">ge-5/0/0</a>		Yes	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-5/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-5/0/0.0</a>		No	Logical Unit 0 on Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-5/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-5/0/1</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-5/0/1'
<a href="#">ge-5/0/2</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-5/0/2'
<a href="#">ge-5/0/3</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-5/0/3'
<a href="#">ge-5/0/4</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-5/0/4'
<a href="#">ge-5/0/5</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-5/0/5'
<a href="#">ge-5/0/6</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-5/0/6'
<a href="#">ge-5/0/7</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-5/0/7'
<a href="#">ge-6/0/0</a>		Yes	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-6/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-6/0/0.0</a>		No	Logical Unit 0 on Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-6/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-6/0/1</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-6/0/1'
<a href="#">ge-6/0/1.0</a>		No	Logical Unit 0 on Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-6/0/1'
<a href="#">ge-11/0/0</a>		Yes	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-11/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-11/0/0.0</a>		No	Logical Unit 0 on Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-11/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-11/0/1</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-11/0/1'
<a href="#">ge-11/0/2</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-11/0/2'
<a href="#">ge-11/0/3</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-11/0/3'
<a href="#">ge-11/0/4</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-11/0/4'
<a href="#">ge-11/0/5</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-11/0/5'
<a href="#">ge-11/0/6</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-11/0/6'
<a href="#">ge-11/0/7</a>		No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-11/0/7'
<a href="#">fxp0</a>		Yes	Management Interface 'fxp0'
<a href="#">fxp0.0</a>		Yes	Logical Unit 0 on Management Interface 'fxp0'
<a href="#">fxp1</a>		No	Management Interface 'fxp1'
<a href="#">fxp1.0</a>		No	Logical Unit 0 on Management Interface 'fxp1'
<a href="#">lo0</a>		Yes	Loopback Interface 'lo0'
<a href="#">lo0.0</a>		Yes	Logical Unit 0 on Loopback Interface 'lo0'
<a href="#">lo0.16384</a>		No	Logical Unit 16384 on Loopback Interface 'lo0'
<a href="#">pp0</a>		No	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet Interface 'pp0'
<a href="#">reth0</a>		Yes	Other Interface 'reth0'
<a href="#">reth0.0</a>		Yes	Logical Unit 0 on Other Interface 'reth0'

OK Cancel Apply

Figure 60 on page 255 shows the Redundant Ethernet Interface Configuration page.



**Figure 60: Redundant Ethernet Interface Configuration page**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Interfaces](#)

---

Quick Configuration

---

**Interfaces** Physical Interface: 'ge-0/0/0'

---

Logical Interfaces

	Logical Interface Name	Link State	Configured	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ge-0/0/0.0</a>	Up	Yes	Logical Unit 0 on Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/0'

Physical Interface Description

MTU (bytes)  ?

Per Unit Scheduler ☐ ?

---

Gigabit Ethernet Options

Loopback ☐ Yes ☐ No ?

Auto Negotiation ☐ Yes ☐ No ?

Auto Negotiation Remote Fault

Source MAC Address Filters

?

Redundant Parent  ?

---

To configure redundant Ethernet interfaces with J-Web Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Interfaces**.
2. Click an interface name by which to group physical Ethernet interfaces for redundancy. See Figure 59 on page 254.
3. To add an interface to a redundant Ethernet interface, click **Add**.
4. Fill in the parameter settings for the logical interfaces as described in Table 71 on page 256. For details, see the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
5. Fill in the information for **Redundant Parent** to specify the redundant parent Ethernet interface of the child physical interface.
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.

- To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 71: Redundant Ethernet Interface Options**

Field	Function	Action
Logical Interfaces		
Add Logical Interfaces	Defines one or more logical units that you connect to this physical redundant Ethernet interface. You must define at least one logical unit for a redundant Ethernet interface.	Click <b>Add</b> .  To delete a logical interface, select the check box corresponding to the interface you want to delete and click <b>Delete</b> .
High Availability		
Redundancy Number	Specifies the number of the redundancy group to which the redundant interface belongs. Failover properties of the interface are inherited from the redundancy group.	Select a number from 0 through 225.
Loop Back	Enables or disables the loopback option.	By default, the loopback is disabled. Select <b>Yes</b> to enable loopback mode.
Flow Control	Enables flow control on the Ethernet interface.	Select <b>Yes</b> .
Sources Filtering	Enables the filtering of media access control (MAC) source addresses to block all incoming packets to that interface.	By default, the source address filtering is disabled. Select <b>Yes</b> .
Redundant Parent	Specifies the name of the redundant Ethernet interface that a physical interface is associated with to form a redundant Ethernet interface pair.	Specify a redundant Ethernet interface name.

## Configuring Chassis Cluster Information

For the chassis cluster configuration, you specify the number of redundant Ethernet interfaces that the cluster contains and the information used to monitor the “health” of the cluster.

### Before You Begin

Read:

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID on page 247
- Configuring a Chassis Cluster and Redundancy Groups—Quick Configuration on page 249

You must configure the redundant Ethernet interfaces count for the cluster in order for the redundant Ethernet interfaces that you configure to be recognized.

This topic includes:

- CLI Configuration on page 257
- Related Topics on page 257

## CLI Configuration

Use the following command in configuration mode to define the number of redundant Ethernet interfaces for the cluster:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster reth-count 3
```

## Related Topics

- Configuring the Fabric on page 257
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
- Configuring Conditional Route Advertising on page 264
- Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration on page 266

## Configuring the Fabric

The fabric is the back-to-back data connection between the nodes in a cluster. Traffic on one node that needs to be processed on the other node or to exit through an interface on the other node passes over the fabric. Session state information also passes over the fabric.

### Before You Begin

Read:

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID on page 247
- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227

In most SRX devices in a chassis cluster, you can configure any pair of Gigabit Ethernet interfaces or any pair of 10-Gigabit interfaces to serve as the fabric between nodes. For SRX 210 devices, both interfaces must be of a similar type (that is, a pair of Fast Ethernet interfaces or a pair of Gigabit Ethernet interfaces) and can use any port other than fe-0/2/0/7.

In a J-series chassis cluster, you can configure any pair of Gigabit Ethernet interfaces to serve as the fabric between nodes.

You cannot configure filters, policies, or services on the fabric interface. Fragmentation is not supported on the fabric link. The maximum transmission unit (MTU) size is 8,980 bytes. We recommend that no interface in the cluster exceed this MTU. Jumbo frame support on the member links is enabled by default.

This topic includes:

- CLI Configuration on page 258
- Related Topics on page 258

## CLI Configuration

Enter the following commands to join **ge-0/0/1** on one node in the cluster and **ge-7/0/1** on the other to form the fabric:

```
{primary:node0}
user@host# set interfaces fab0 fabric-options member-interfaces ge-0/0/1
{secondary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fab1 fabric-options member-interfaces ge-7/0/1
```

## Related Topics

- Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
- Configuring Conditional Route Advertising on page 264
- Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration on page 266

## Configuring Redundancy Groups

---

A redundancy group is an abstract entity that includes and manages a collection of objects. A redundancy group can be primary on only one node at a time.

### Before You Begin

Read:

- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
  - Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID on page 247
  - Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256
  - Configuring the Fabric on page 257
- 

Before you can create redundant Ethernet interfaces, you must first create their redundancy groups.

This topic includes:

- CLI Configuration on page 259
- Related Topics on page 259

## CLI Configuration

Use the following command in configuration mode to specify the number of gratuitous Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) requests that an interface can send to notify other network devices of its presence after the redundancy group it belongs to has failed over:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 gratuitous-arp-count 4
```

Use the following command in configuration mode to identify an interface to be monitored by a specific redundancy group and give it a weight. You can configure a redundancy group to monitor any interfaces, not only those belonging to its redundant Ethernet interfaces.

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 interface-monitor fe-3/1/1/1
weight 100
```

Use the following commands in configuration mode to specify a redundancy group's priority for primacy on each node of the cluster. The higher number takes precedence.

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 node 1 priority 100
{secondary:node0}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 node 0 priority 200
```

Use the following command in configuration mode to specify if a node with a better (higher) priority can initiate a failover to become primary for the redundancy group:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 preempt
```

## Related Topics

- [Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259](#)
- [Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration on page 266](#)

## Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces

---

A redundant Ethernet interface is a pseudo interface that contains two physical interfaces, one from each node of the cluster. To create a redundant Ethernet interface, you configure the two physical interfaces independently. You configure the rest of the configuration that pertains to them at the level of the redundant Ethernet interface, and each of the child interfaces inherits this configuration.



**NOTE:** A redundant Ethernet interface is referred to as a *reth* in configuration commands.

#### Before You Begin

Read:

- Setting the Node ID and Cluster ID on page 247
- Configuring Chassis Cluster Information on page 256
- Configuring the Fabric on page 257
- Configuring Redundancy Groups on page 258
- Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 226

This topic includes:

- CLI Configuration on page 260
- Related Topics on page 261

## CLI Configuration

Use the following commands to bind redundant child physical interfaces to reth1:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 gigether-options redundant-parent reth1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces ge-7/0/0 gigether-options redundant-parent reth1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fe-1/0/0 fast-ether-options redundant-parent reth1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fe-8/0/0 fast-ether-options redundant-parent reth1
```

Use the following commands to:

- Add reth 1 to redundancy group 1.
- Set the MTU size to 1500 bytes.
- Assign IP address 10.1.1.3/24 to reth1.

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces reth1 redundant-ether-options redundancy-group 1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces reth1 unit 0 family inet mtu 1500
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces reth1 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.3/24
```

Use the following command to associate reth1.0 with a security zone named Trust. Security zone configuration is the same for redundant Ethernet interfaces as for any other interface.

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set security zones security-zone Trust interfaces reth1.0
```

## Related Topics

- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
- Configuring Conditional Route Advertising on page 264
- Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration on page 266

## Configuring Control Link Recovery

---

Although control link recovery is disabled by default, you can configure it.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- About the Control Link on page 228
  - About Control Link Failure and Recovery on page 228
- 

This topic includes:

- CLI Configuration on page 261
- Related Topics on page 262

## CLI Configuration

Use the following command to configure control link recovery:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster control-link-recovery
```

Control link recovery is done automatically by the system. After the control link recovers, the system takes the following actions:

- It checks whether it receives at least 30 consecutive heartbeats on the control link. This is to ensure that the control link is not flapping and is perfectly healthy.
- After it determines that the control link is healthy, the system issues an automatic reboot on the node that was disabled when the control link failed. When the disabled node reboots, it can rejoin the cluster. There is no need for any manual intervention.

## Related Topics

- Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration on page 266

## Configuring Interface Monitoring

---

Redundancy group failover is triggered by the results from monitoring the health of interfaces that belong to the redundancy group. When you assign a weight to an interface to be monitored, the system monitors the interface for availability. If a physical interface fails, the weight is deducted from the corresponding redundancy group's threshold. Every redundancy group has a threshold of 255. If the threshold hits 0, a failover is triggered. Failover is triggered even if the redundancy group is in manual failover mode and preempt is not enabled.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Redundancy Groups on page 218
  - Understanding Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 226
- 

This topic includes:

- CLI Configuration on page 262
- Related Topics on page 262

## CLI Configuration

Use the following command to set interface monitoring on `ge-7/0/3`:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 interface-monitor ge-7/0/3
weight 255
```

## Related Topics

- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259
- Configuring Redundancy Groups on page 258



## Initiating a Manual Redundancy Group Failover

You can initiate a failover manually with the **request** command. A manual failover bumps up the priority of the redundancy group for that member to 255.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Configuring Redundancy Groups on page 258
- Configuring Redundant Ethernet Interfaces on page 259

After a manual failover, the new primary device continues in that role until there is a failback. If there is a failback, the manual failover is lost and state election is made based on priority and preempt settings. A failback in manual failover mode can occur if the primary node fails or if the threshold of a redundancy group 0 reaches 0.



**CAUTION:** Be cautious and judicious in your use of redundancy group 0 manual failovers. A redundancy group 0 failover implies a Routing Engine (RE) failover, in which case all processes running on the primary node are killed and then spawned on the new primary Routing Engine (RE). This failover could result in loss of state, such as routing state, and degrade performance by introducing system churn.

This topic includes:

- CLI Configuration on page 263

## CLI Configuration

Use the **show** command to display the status of nodes in the cluster:

```
{primary:node0}
user@host> show chassis cluster status redundancy-group 0
Cluster ID: 3
Node name           Priority    Status    Preempt  Manual failover

Redundancy group: 0 , Failover count: 0
node0                254        primary   no        no
node1                 2          secondary no        no
```

Output to this command indicates that node 0 is primary.

Use the **request** command to trigger a failover and make node 1 primary:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> request chassis cluster failover redundancy-group 0 node 1
-----
Initiated manual failover for redundancy group 0
```

Use the **show** command to display the new status of nodes in the cluster.

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> show chassis cluster status redundancy-group 0
Cluster ID: 1
  Node name          Priority    Status      Preempt  Manual failover

Redundancy-group: 0, Failover count: 1
  node0              254       secondary   no       yes
  node1              2         primary     no       yes
```

Output to this command shows that node 1 is now primary.

You can reset the failover for redundancy groups by using the **request** command. This change is propagated across the cluster.

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> request chassis cluster failover reset redundancy-group 0 node 0
node0:
-----
Successfully reset manual failover for redundancy group 1
node1:
-----
```

With back-to-back failovers, after doing a manual failover, you must issue the **reset failover** command before requesting another failover.

When the primary node fails and comes back up, election of the primary node is done based on regular criteria (priority and preempt).

## Configuring Conditional Route Advertising

Route advertisement over redundant Ethernet interfaces in a chassis cluster is complicated by the fact that the active node in the cluster can change dynamically. Conditional route advertisement enables you to advertise routes in such a way that incoming traffic from the core network is attracted to the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) interface that exists on the same node as the currently active redundant Ethernet interface. In this way, traffic is processed by the active node and does not traverse the fabric interface between nodes. You do this by manipulating the BGP attribute at the time routes are advertised by BGP.

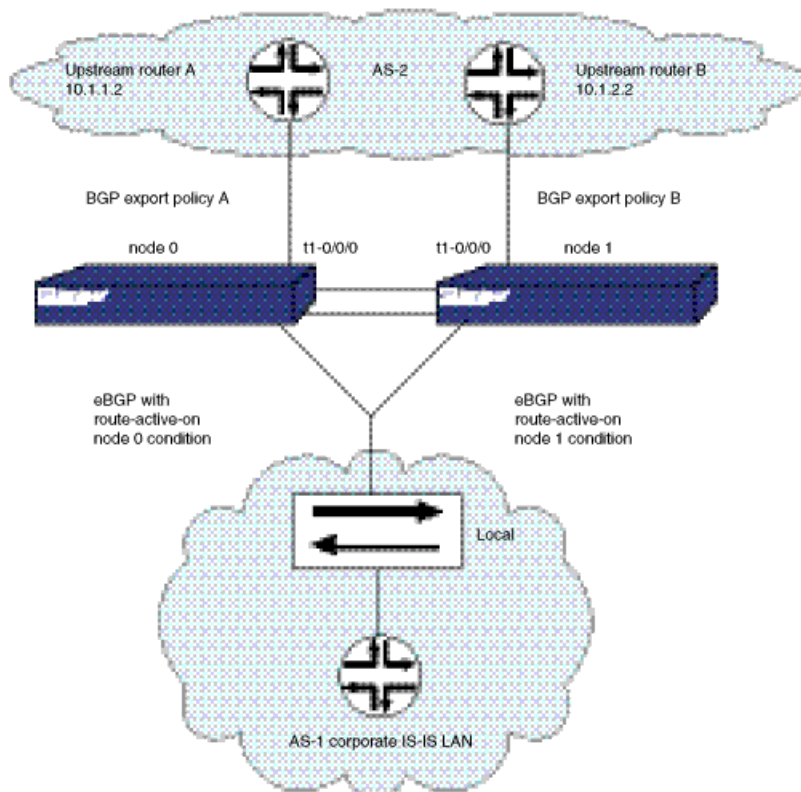
### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation” on page 217

The goal of conditional route advertisement in a chassis cluster is to ensure that incoming traffic from the upstream network arrives on the node that is on the currently active redundant Ethernet interface. To understand how this works, bear in mind that in a chassis cluster, each node has its own set of interfaces. Figure 61

on page 265 shows a typical scenario, with a redundant Ethernet interface connecting the corporate LAN, through a chassis cluster, to an external network segment.

**Figure 61: Conditional Route Advertising**



## CLI Configuration

As illustrated in Figure 61 on page 265, routing prefixes learned from the redundant Ethernet interface through the interior gateway protocol (IGP) are advertised toward the network core using BGP. Two BGP sessions are maintained, one off interface `t1-1/0/0` and one off `t1-1/0/1` for BGP multihoming. All routing prefixes are advertised on both sessions. Thus, for a route advertised by BGP, learned over a redundant Ethernet interface, if the active redundant Ethernet interface is on the same node as the BGP session, you advertise the route with a “good” BGP attribute.

To achieve this behavior, you apply a policy to BGP before exporting routes. An additional term in the policy match condition determines the current active redundant Ethernet interface child interface of the next hop before making the routing decision. When the active status of a child redundant Ethernet interface changes, BGP reevaluates the export policy for all routes affected.

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set policy-options policy-statement reth-nh-active-on-0 term ospf-on-0
           from protocol ospf
{primary:node1}
user@host# set policy-options policy-statement reth-nh-active-on-0 term ospf-on-0
           from condition reth-nh-active-on-0
{primary:node1}
user@host# set policy-options policy-statement reth-nh-active-on-0 term ospf-on-0
           then metric 10
{primary:node1}
user@host# set policy-options policy-statement reth-nh-active-on-0 term ospf-on-0
           then accept
{primary:node1}
user@host# set policy-options condition reth-nh-active-on-0 route-active-on node0

```

The condition statement in this configuration works as follows. The command states that any routes evaluated against this condition will pass only if:

- The routes have a redundant Ethernet interface as their next-hop interface.
- The current child interface of the redundant Ethernet interface above is active at node 0 (as specified by the `route-active-on node0` keyword).

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set policy-options condition reth-nh-active-on-0 route-active-on
           node0

```

Note that a route might have multiple equal-cost next hops, and those next hops might be redundant Ethernet interfaces, regular interfaces, or a combination of both. The route still satisfies the requirement that it has a redundant Ethernet interface as its next hop.

If you use the BGP export policy set for node 0 in the previous example command, only OSPF routes that satisfy the following requirements will be advertised through the session:

- The OSPF routes have a redundant Ethernet interface as their next hop.
- The current child interface of the redundant Ethernet interface is currently active at node 0.

You must also create and apply a separate policy statement for the other BGP session by using this same process.

In addition to the BGP MED attribute, you can define additional BGP attributes, such as `origin-code`, `as-path`, and `community`.

## Related Topics

“Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration” on page 266

## Verifying the Chassis Cluster Configuration

To verify the chassis cluster configuration, perform the following tasks:

- Verifying the Chassis Cluster on page 267
- Verifying Chassis Cluster Interfaces on page 267
- Verifying Chassis Cluster Statistics on page 268
- Verifying Chassis Cluster Status on page 270
- Verifying Chassis Cluster Redundancy Group Status on page 270

## Verifying the Chassis Cluster

**Purpose** Display chassis cluster verification options.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show chassis cluster ?` command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> show chassis cluster ?
Possible completions:
  interfaces      Display chassis-cluster interfaces
  statistics      Display chassis-cluster traffic statistics
  status          Display chassis-cluster status
```

**What it Means** The output shows a list of all chassis cluster verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- Interfaces—Displays information about chassis cluster interfaces.
- Statistics—Displays information about chassis cluster services and interfaces.
- Status—Displays failover status about nodes in a cluster.

## Related Topics

- Verifying Chassis Cluster Interfaces on page 267
- Verifying Chassis Cluster Statistics on page 268
- Verifying Chassis Cluster Status on page 270
- Verifying Chassis Cluster Redundancy Group Status on page 270

## Verifying Chassis Cluster Interfaces

**Purpose** Display information about chassis cluster interfaces.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show chassis cluster interfaces` command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> show chassis cluster interfaces
Control link name: em0.0

Redundant-ethernet Information:
  Name      Status      Redundancy-group
  reth0     Up          1

Interface Monitoring:
```

Interface	Weight	Status	Redundancy-group
ge-6/0/0	200	Up	1

**What it Means** The output shows the state of fxp1, the control link between the nodes, and provides information about the link state. The output also shows the state of the fabric interface between the nodes and provides information about traffic on that link.

## Verifying Chassis Cluster Statistics

**Purpose** Display information about chassis cluster services and interfaces.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the show chassis cluster statistics command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> show chassis cluster statistics

Control link statistics:
  Heartbeat packets sent: 798
  Heartbeat packets received: 784
Fabric link statistics:
  Probes sent: 793
  Probes received: 0
Services Synchronized:
  Service name                RT0s sent  RT0s received
  Translation context          0           0
  Incoming NAT                 0           0
  Resource manager             0           0
  Session create               0           0
  Session close                0           0
  Session change               0           0
  Gate create                  0           0
  Session ageout refresh requests 0           0
  Session ageout refresh replies 0           0
  IPSec VPN                   0           0
  Firewall user authentication 0           0
  MGCP ALG                     0           0
  H323 ALG                     0           0
  SIP ALG                      0           0
  SCCP ALG                     0           0
  PPTP ALG                     0           0
  RTSP ALG                     0           0
```

**What it Means** The output shows the control link statistics (heartbeats sent and received), the fabric link statistics (probes sent and received), and the number of RTOs sent and received for services.

**Purpose** Clear displayed information about chassis cluster services and interfaces.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the clear chassis cluster statistics command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> clear chassis cluster statistics

Cleared control-plane statistics
Cleared data-plane statistics
```

**Purpose** Display chassis cluster control-plane statistics.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the show chassis cluster control-plane statistics command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> show chassis cluster control-plane statistics

Control link statistics:
  Heartbeat packets sent: 124
  Heartbeat packets received: 125
Fabric link statistics:
  Probes sent: 124
  Probes received: 125
```

**What it Means** The output shows the control link statistics (heartbeats sent and received) and the fabric link statistics (probes sent and received).

**Purpose** Clear displayed chassis cluster control plane statistics.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the clear chassis cluster control—plane statistics command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> clear chassis cluster control-plane statistics
```

Cleared control-plane statistics

**Purpose** Display chassis cluster data plane statistics.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the show chassis cluster data-plane statistics command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> show chassis cluster data-plane statistics

Services Synchronized:
  Service name                                RTOs sent  RTOs received
  Translation context                          0           0
  Incoming NAT                               0           0
  Resource manager                           0           0
  Session create                             0           0
  Session close                             0           0
  Session change                             0           0
  Gate create                               0           0
  Session ageout refresh requests             0           0
  Session ageout refresh replies             0           0
  IPSec VPN                                  0           0
  Firewall user authentication                0           0
  MGCP ALG                                   0           0
  H323 ALG                                   0           0
  SIP ALG                                    0           0
  SCCP ALG                                   0           0
  PPTP ALG                                   0           0
  RTSP ALG                                   0           0
```

**What it Means** The output shows the number of RTOs sent and received for services.

**Purpose** Clear displayed chassis cluster data plane statistics.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the clear chassis cluster data-plane statistics command:

```
{primary:node1}
```

```
user@host> clear chassis cluster data-plane statistics
```

```
Cleared data-plane statistics
```

## Verifying Chassis Cluster Status

**Purpose** Display the failover status of a chassis cluster.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the show chassis cluster status command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> show chassis cluster status
Cluster ID: 3
  Node name          Priority    Status    Preempt  Manual failover

Redundancy-group: 0, Failover count: 1
  node0              254       primary   no       no
  node1              2         secondary no       no

Redundancy-group: 1, Failover count: 1
  node0              254       primary   no       no
  node1              1         secondary no       no
```

**What it Means** The output shows the failover status of the chassis cluster in addition to information about the chassis cluster redundancy groups.

**Purpose** Clear the failover status of a chassis cluster.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the clear chassis cluster failover-count command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> clear chassis cluster failover-count
Cleared failover-count for all redundancy-groups
```

## Verifying Chassis Cluster Redundancy Group Status

**Purpose** Display the failover status of a chassis cluster redundancy group.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the show chassis cluster status redundancy-group command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> show chassis cluster status redundancy-group 2
Cluster ID: 14
  Node name          Priority    Status    Preempt  Manual failover

Redundancy-Group: 2, Failover count: 1
  node0              50         secondary no       no
  node1              100        primary   no       no
```

**What it Means** The output shows state and priority of both nodes in a cluster and indicates whether the primary has been preempted or whether there has been a manual failover.



## SNMP Failover Traps

---

Chassis clustering supports SNMP traps, which are triggered whenever there is a redundancy group failover.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read about enterprise-specific MIBs for JUNOS software in the *JUNOS Network Management Configuration Guide*.

---

The trap message can help you troubleshoot failovers. It contains the following information:

- The cluster ID and node ID
- The reason for the failover
- The redundancy group that is involved in the failover
- The redundancy group's previous state and current state

These are the different states that a cluster can be in at any given instant: hold, primary, secondary, ineligible, and disabled. Traps are generated for the following state transitions (only a transition from a hold state does not trigger a trap):

- Primary < - > Secondary
- Secondary - > Ineligible
- Ineligible - > Disabled
- Ineligible - > Primary
- Secondary - > Disabled

A transition can be triggered due to any event, such as interface monitoring, SPU monitoring, failures, and manual failovers.

The trap will be forwarded over the control link if the outgoing interface is on a node different from the node on the Routing Engine that generates the trap.

You can specify that a trace log be generated by setting the `traceoptions flag snmp` statement.

### Related Topics

- Understanding Failover on page 233

## Upgrading Chassis Cluster

---

To upgrade a chassis cluster:



---

**NOTE:** During cluster upgrade, a service disruption of about three to five minutes will occur.

---

1. Load the new image file on node 0.
2. Perform the image upgrade without rebooting the node by entering:  
  
    `user@host> request system software add <image_name>`
3. Load the new image file on node 1.
4. Repeat Step 2.
5. Reboot both nodes simultaneously.

### **Related Topics**

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
- Understanding the Data Plane on page 230
- What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster on page 236

## **Disabling Chassis Cluster**

---

To disable chassis cluster, enter the following command:

```
{primary:node1}
user@host> set chassis cluster disable reboot
Successfully disabled chassis cluster. Going to reboot now.
```

After the system reboots, the chassis cluster is disabled.

### **Related Topics**

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Understanding the Control Plane on page 227
- Understanding the Data Plane on page 230
- What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster on page 236

## **Chassis Cluster Configuration Scenarios**

---

This section describes the following deployment scenarios for J-series chassis clusters:

- Active/Passive Chassis Cluster Scenario on page 273

- Asymmetric Routing Chassis Cluster Scenario on page 278

#### Before You Begin

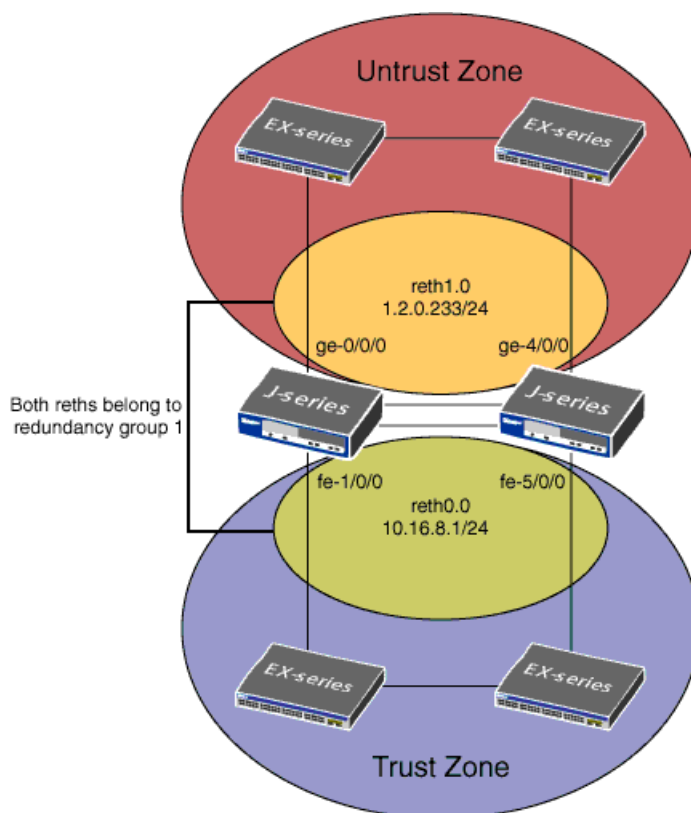
For background information, read:

- Understanding Chassis Cluster Formation on page 217
- Hardware Setup for J-series Chassis Clusters on page 235
- What Happens When You Enable Chassis Cluster on page 236
- Creating a J-series Chassis Cluster—Overview on page 244

### Active/Passive Chassis Cluster Scenario

In this case, a single device in the cluster is used to route all traffic while the other device is used only in the event of a failure. When a failure occurs, the backup device becomes master and controls all forwarding.

**Figure 62: Active/Passive Chassis Cluster Scenario**



An active/passive chassis cluster can be achieved by using redundant Ethernet interfaces reth0 and reth1. If any of the interfaces in a reth fails, the group is declared inactive and all its interfaces fail over to the other group. This configuration minimizes

the traffic over the fabric link because only one node in the cluster will forward traffic at any given time.

## CLI Configuration

### 1. Basic chassis cluster

```
user@host> set chassis cluster node 0 cluster-id 1
warning: A reboot is required for chassis cluster to be enabled
user@host> set chassis cluster node 1 cluster-id 1 reboot
Successfully enabled chassis cluster. Going to reboot now.
```

### 2. Management interface

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set groups node0 system host-name J2320-A
{primary:node1}
user@host# set groups node0 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address
192.168.3.110/24
{primary:node1}
user@host# set groups node1 system host-name J2320-B
{primary:node1}
user@host# set groups node1 interfaces fxp0 unit 0 family inet address
192.168.3.111/24
{primary:node1}
user@host# set apply-groups "${node}"
```

### 3. Fabric interface

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fab0 fabric-options member-interfaces ge-0/0/1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fab1 fabric-options member-interfaces ge-4/0/1
```

### 4. Redundancy groups

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster reth-count 2
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster heartbeat-interval 1000
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster heartbeat-threshold 3
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster node 0
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster node 1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 0 node 0 priority 100
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 0 node 1 priority 1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 node 0 priority 100
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 node 1 priority 1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 preempt
```

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 interface-monitor fe-1/0/0
weight 255
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 interface-monitor fe-5/0/0
weight 255
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 interface-monitor ge-0/0/0
weight 255
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 interface-monitor ge-4/0/0
weight 255

```

(Optional) Redundancy group 0 (to monitor physical interfaces if data processing and control plane functions are in same node)

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 0 interface-monitor fe-1/0/0
weight 255
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 0 interface-monitor fe-5/0/0
weight 255
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 0 interface-monitor ge-0/0/0
weight 255
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 0 interface-monitor ge-4/0/0
weight 255

```

#### 5. Redundant Ethernet interfaces

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 gigether-options redundant-parent reth1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces ge-4/0/0 gigether-options redundant-parent reth1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fe-1/0/0 fastether-options redundant-parent reth0
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fe-5/0/0 fastether-options redundant-parent reth0
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces reth0 redundant-ether-options redundancy-group 1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces reth0 unit 0 family inet address 10.16.8.1/24
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces reth1 redundant-ether-options redundancy-group 1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces reth1 unit 0 family inet address 1.2.0.233/24

```

#### 6. Security zone

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set security zones security-zone Untrust interfaces reth1.0
{primary:node1}
user@host# set security zones security-zone Trust interfaces reth0.0

```

#### 7. Access

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set security policies from-zone Trust to-zone Untrust policy ANY
match source-address any
{primary:node1}
user@host# set security policies from-zone Trust to-zone Untrust policy ANY
match destination-address any
{primary:node1}
user@host# set security policies from-zone Trust to-zone Untrust policy ANY
match application any
{primary:node1}
user@host# set security policies from-zone Trust to-zone Untrust policy ANY
then permit

```

## J-Web Configuration

### 1. Basic chassis cluster

See Step 1 in “CLI Configuration” on page 274.

### 2. Management interface

See Step 2 in “CLI Configuration” on page 274.

### 3. Fabric interface

See Step 3 in “CLI Configuration” on page 274.

### 4. Redundancy groups

- Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Chassis Cluster**.

- Enter the following, then click **Apply**:

Redundant ether-Interface Count: 2

Heartbeat Interval: 1000

Heartbeat Threshold: 3

Nodes: 0

Group Number: 0

Priorities: 100

- Enter the following, then click **Apply**:

Nodes: 0

Group Number: 1

Priorities: 1

- Enter the following, then click **Apply**:

Nodes: 1

Group Number: 0

Priorities: 100

- Enter the following, then click **Apply**:
    - Nodes: 1
    - Group Number: 1
    - Priorities: 1
    - Preempt: Select the check box.
    - Interface Monitor—Interface: **fe-1/0/0**
    - Interface Monitor—Weight: 255
    - Interface Monitor—Interface: **fe-5/0/0**
    - Interface Monitor—Weight: 255
    - Interface Monitor—Interface: **ge-0/0/0**
    - Interface Monitor—Weight: 255
    - Interface Monitor—Interface: **ge-4/0/0**
    - Interface Monitor—Weight: 255
  - (Optional) Redundancy group 0 (to monitor physical interfaces if data processing and control plane functions are in same node)
    - Interface Monitor—Interface: **fe-1/0/0**
    - Interface Monitor—Weight: 255
    - Interface Monitor—Interface: **fe-5/0/0**
    - Interface Monitor—Weight: 255
    - Interface Monitor—Interface: **ge-0/0/0**
    - Interface Monitor—Weight: 255
    - Interface Monitor—Interface: **ge-4/0/0**
    - Interface Monitor—Weight: 255
5. Redundant Ethernet interfaces
- Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Interfaces**.
  - Select **ge-0/0/0**.
  - Enter the following:
    - Redundant Parent: **reth1**
  - Click **Apply**.
  - Select **ge-4/0/0**.

- Enter the following:  
Redundant Parent: **reth1**
  - Click **Apply**.
  - Select **fe-1/0/0**.
  - Enter the following:  
Redundant Parent: **reth0**
  - Click **Apply**.
  - Select **fe-5/0/0**.
  - Enter the following:  
Redundant Parent: **reth0**
  - Click **Apply**.
  - For last four configuration settings of Step 5, see Step 5 in “CLI Configuration” on page 274.
6. Security zone  
See Step 6 in “CLI Configuration” on page 274.
  7. Access  
See Step 7 in “CLI Configuration” on page 274.

### ***Asymmetric Routing Chassis Cluster Scenario***

In this case, chassis cluster makes use of its asymmetric routing capability. Traffic received by a node is matched against that node’s session table. The result of this lookup determines whether that node processes the session or forwards it to the other node over the fabric link. Sessions are anchored on the node in which the first packet created the session, and the session is synced to the other node. If traffic is received on the node in which the session is not anchored, those packets are forwarded over the fabric link.



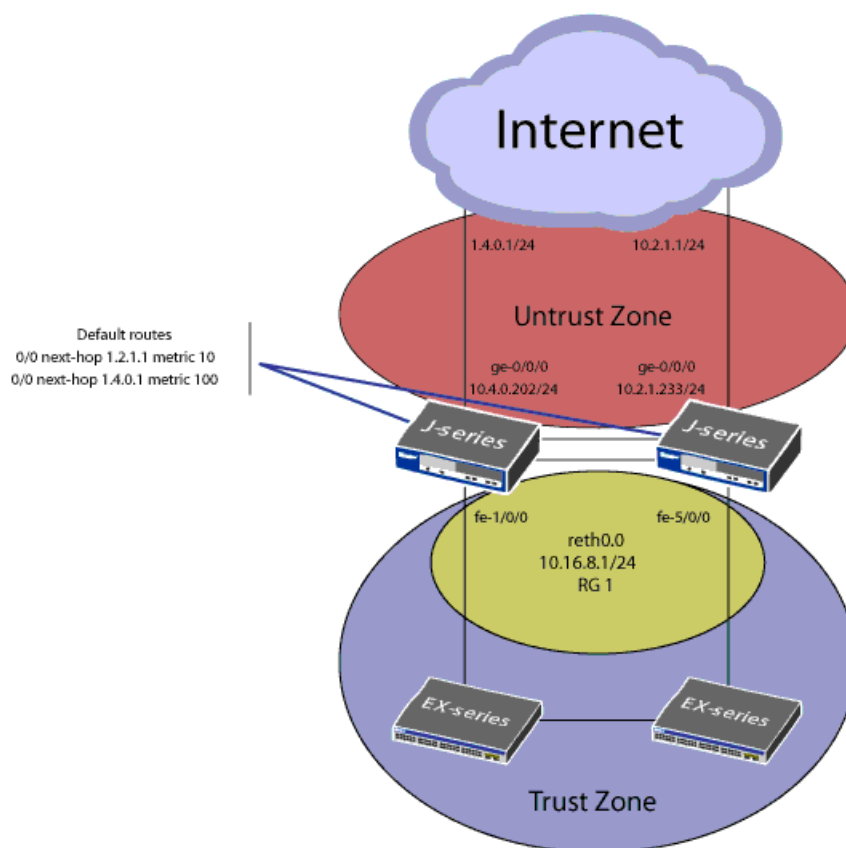
**Figure 63: Asymmetric Routing Chassis Cluster Scenario**

Figure 63 on page 279 illustrates how asymmetric routing is supported in a chassis cluster. In this scenario, two Internet connections are used, with one being preferred. The connection to the Trust zone is done by using a reth interface to provide LAN redundancy for the devices in the Trust zone. This scenario describes two failover cases in which sessions originate in the Trust zone with a destination of the Internet (Untrust zone).

### Case 1: Failures in the Trust Zone reth

Under normal operating conditions, traffic flows from the Trust zone to interface **fe-1/0/0** belonging to **reth0.0** on node 0. Because the primary Internet connection is in node 0, sessions are created in both node 0 and node 1, but active in only node 0.

A failure in interface **fe-1/0/0** triggers a failover of the redundancy group, causing interface **fe-5/0/0** in node 1 to become active. After the failover, traffic arrives at node 1. After session lookup, the traffic is sent to node 0 because the session is active on this node. Node 0 then processes the traffic and forwards it to the Internet. The return traffic follows a similar process—traffic arrives at node 0, is processed at node 0 because the session is anchored to this node, and is sent to node 1 through the fabric interface, where node 1 forwards it through interface **fe-5/0/0**.

## Case 2: Failures in the Untrust Zone Interfaces

In this case, sessions are migrated from node to node. Under normal operating conditions, traffic is processed by only node 0. A failure of interface **ge-0/0/0** on node 0 causes a change in the routing table, so that it now points to interface **ge-4/0/0** in node 1. After the failure, sessions in node 0 become inactive, and the passive sessions in node 1 become active. Traffic arriving from the Trust zone is still received on interface **fe-1/0/0**, but is forwarded to node 1 for processing. After traffic is processed in node 1, it is forwarded to the Internet through interface **ge-4/0/0**.

In this chassis cluster configuration, redundancy group 1 is used to control the reth interface connected to the Trust zone. This redundancy group (and, therefore, **reth0**) fails over only if interface **fe-1/0/0** or **fe-5/0/0** fails, but not if any of the interfaces connected to the Internet fail.

## CLI Configuration



**NOTE:** First, do basic chassis cluster and management interfaces setup.

### 1. Fabric interface

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fab0 fabric-options member-interfaces ge-0/0/1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fab1 fabric-options member-interfaces ge-4/0/1
```

### 2. Redundancy groups

```
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster reth-count 1
user@host# set chassis cluster heartbeat-interval 1000
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster heartbeat-threshold 3
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster node 0
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster node 1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 node 0 priority 100
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 node 1 priority 1
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 interface-monitor fe-1/0/0
weight 255
{primary:node1}
user@host# set chassis cluster redundancy-group 1 interface-monitor fe-5/0/0
weight 255
```

### 3. Redundant Ethernet interfaces

```
{primary:node1}
```

```

user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 1.4.0.202/24
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fe-1/0/0 fastether-options redundant-parent reth0
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fe-1/0/1 disable
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces ge-4/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 1.2.1.233/24
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces fe-5/0/0 fastether-options redundant-parent reth0
{primary:node1}
user@host# set interfaces reth0 unit 0 family inet address 10.16.8.1/24

```

4. Static routes (one to each ISP, with preferred route through ge-0/0/0)

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set routing-options static route 0.0.0.0/0 qualified-next-hop 1.4.0.1
metric 10
{primary:node1}
user@host# set routing-options static route 0.0.0.0/0 qualified-next-hop 1.2.1.1
metric 100

```

5. Security zone

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set security zones security-zone Untrust interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
host-inboundtraffic system-services dhcp
{primary:node1}
user@host# set security zones security-zone Untrust interfaces ge-4/0/0.0
host-inboundtraffic system-services dhcp

```

6. Access

```

{primary:node1}
user@host# set security policies from-zone Trust to-zone Untrust policy ANY
match source-address any
{primary:node1}
user@host# set security policies from-zone Trust to-zone Untrust policy ANY
match destination-address any
{primary:node1}
user@host# set security policies from-zone Trust to-zone Untrust policy ANY
match application any
{primary:node1}
user@host# set security policies from-zone Trust to-zone Untrust policy ANY
then permit

```

## J-Web Configuration



**NOTE:** First, do basic chassis cluster and management interfaces setup.

### 1. Fabric interface

See Step 1 in “CLI Configuration” on page 280.

### 2. Redundancy groups

- Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Chassis Cluster**.

- Enter the following, then click **Apply**:

Redundant ether-Interface Count: **1**

Heartbeat Interval: **1000**

Heartbeat Threshold: **3**

Nodes: **0**

Group Number: **1**

Priorities: **100**

- Enter the following, then click **Apply**:

Nodes: **1**

Group Number: **1**

Priorities: **1**

Interface Monitor—Interface: **fe-1/0/0**

Interface Monitor—Weight: **255**

Interface Monitor—Interface: **fe-5/0/0**

Interface Monitor—Weight: **255**

### 3. Redundant Ethernet interfaces

- Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Interfaces**.

- Select **fe-1/0/0**.

- Enter the following:

Redundant Parent: **reth0**

- Click **Apply**.

- Select **fe-5/0/0**.

- Enter the following:

Redundant Parent: **reth0**

- Click **Apply**.
  - For other configuration settings in Step 3, see Step 3 in “CLI Configuration” on page 280.
4. Static routes (one to each ISP, with preferred route through **ge-0/0/0**)
- Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Routing and Protocols > Static Routing**.
  - Click **Add**.
  - Enter the following, then click **Apply**:  
Static Route Address: **0.0.0.0/0**  
Next-Hop Addresses: **1.4.0.1, 1.2.1.1**
5. Security zone
- See Step 5 in “CLI Configuration” on page 280.
6. Access
- See Step 6 in “CLI Configuration” on page 280.



## Chapter 11

# Application Layer Gateways (ALGs)

An Application Layer Gateway (ALG) is a software component that is designed to manage specific protocols such as Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) or File Transfer Protocol (FTP) on J-series Services Routers and SRX-series services gateways running JUNOS software. The ALG intercepts and analyzes the specified traffic, allocates resources, and defines dynamic policies to permit the traffic to pass securely through the Juniper Networks device.

A security policy contains many elements including services and applications. Services are objects that identify application protocols using Layer 4 information, such as standard and accepted TCP and UDP port numbers for application services like Telnet, FTP, SMTP, and HTTP.

The application option specifies the Layer 7 application that maps to a Layer 4 service. A predefined service already has a mapping to a Layer 7 application. However, for custom services, you must link the service to an application explicitly, especially if you want the policy to apply an Application Layer Gateway (ALG).

This chapter describes voice-over-IP (VoIP) ALGs and basic data ALGs. VoIP ALGs provide stateful application layer inspection and Network Address Translation (NAT) capabilities to VoIP signaling and media traffic. The ALG inspects the state of transactions, or calls, and forwards or drops packets based on the those states. The RPC ALG is a data ALG.

JUNOS software supports the ALGs described in the following sections.

This section includes:

- Understanding Application Layer Gateways on page 287
- Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration on page 287
- Understanding the H.323 ALG on page 290
- Configuring the H.323 ALG—Quick Configuration on page 292
- Setting H.323 Endpoint Registration Timeout on page 294
- Setting H.323 Media Source Port Range on page 295
- Configuring H.323 Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 296
- Allowing Unknown H.323 Message Types on page 297
- Verifying the H.323 Configuration on page 299
- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Internal Zone on page 301

- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone on page 304
- Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls on page 310
- Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Incoming Calls on page 312
- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318
- Configuring the SIP ALG—Quick Configuration on page 319
- Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 322
- Setting SIP Call Duration and Inactive Media Timeout on page 323
- Configuring SIP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 325
- Allowing Unknown SIP Message Types on page 326
- Disabling SIP Call ID Hiding on page 328
- Retaining SIP Hold Resources on page 329
- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339
- Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 342
- Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls on page 344
- Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 349
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone on page 354
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Public Zone on page 356
- Configuring a Three-Zone SIP Scenario on page 361
- Verifying the SIP Configuration on page 370
- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Configuring the SCCP ALG—Quick Configuration on page 381
- Setting SCCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 383
- Allowing Unknown SCCP Message Types on page 384
- Configuring SCCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 386
- Configuring Call Manager/TFTP Server in the Private Zone on page 387
- Verifying the SCCP Configuration on page 389
- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Configuring the MGCP ALG—Quick Configuration on page 398
- Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 400
- Setting MGCP Call Duration on page 401
- Setting MGCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 403
- Setting the MGCP Transaction Timeout on page 404
- Configuring MGCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 405
- Allowing Unknown MGCP Message Types on page 406
- Configuring a Media Gateway in Subscribers' Homes on page 408



- Configuring Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service Using Source and Static NAT on page 415
- Verifying the MGCP Configuration on page 419
- Understanding the RPC ALG on page 422
- Disabling and Enabling RPC ALG on page 426
- Verifying the RPC ALG Tables on page 427

## Understanding Application Layer Gateways

---

The ALG module is responsible for application-layer aware packet processing. ALG functionality can be triggered either by a service or application configured in the policy. ALGs for packets destined to well-known ports are triggered by service type. When a packet arrives at the Juniper Networks device, the flow module forwards the packet according to the security rule set in the policy. If a policy is found to permit the packet, the associated service type or application type is assigned and a session is created for this type of traffic. If a session is found for the packet, no policy rule match is needed. ALG module is triggered if that particular service or application type requires the supported ALG processing.

The ALG also inspects the packet for embedded IP address and port information in the packet payload, and performs Network Address Translation (NAT) processing if necessary. The ALG also opens a gate for the IP address and port number to permit data exchange for the session. The control session and data session can be coupled to have the same timeout value, or they can be independent.

### Related Topics

- Reconnaissance Deterrence Overview on page 91
- Suspicious Packet Attributes Overview on page 120
- Denial-of-Service Attack Overview on page 135

## Configuring Application Layer Gateways—Quick Configuration

---

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly enable or disable JUNOS software Application Layer Gateways (ALGs). All ALGs are enabled by default.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Application Layer Gateways” on page 287

---

**Figure 64: Quick Configuration Page for General ALGs**

Quick Configuration [Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [ALG](#)

**ALG**

---

**Multimedia Application Protocols**

REAL ☐

RTSP ☐

---

**Basic Internet Protocols**

DNS ☐

FTP ☐

TFTP ☐

TALK ☐

RSH ☐

PPTP ☐

---

**Database and Network Support Protocols**

SQL ☐

---

OK Cancel Apply

To enable or disable an ALG with Quick Configuration:

1. In the J-Web user interface, select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > ALG > General ALG**.

Figure 64 on page 288 shows the General ALG page.

2. Select the check box next to an ALG, described in Table 72 on page 288, then click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 72: General Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>Multimedia Application Protocols</b>		
REAL	Provides an ALG for the RealAudio and RealVideo Protocol. The REAL ALG processes Progressive Networks Audio (PNA) packets over the TCP connection and looks for the control commands in the packet where the port number is embedded. It performs NAT and opens gates for the UDP data connection.	Select the check box to enable the ALG.
RTSP	Provides an ALG for the Real-Time Streaming Protocol.	Select the check box to enable the ALG.

**Table 72: General Configuration Options** (continued)

Field	Function	Action
<b>Multimedia Application Protocols</b>		
<b>Basic Internet Protocols</b>		
DNS	Provides an ALG for the Domain Name System. The DNS ALG monitors DNS query and reply packets and closes session if the DNS flag indicates the packet is a reply message.	Select the check box to enable the ALG.
FTP	Provides an ALG for the File Transfer Protocol. The FTP ALG monitors PORT, PASV and 227 commands. It performs NAT of IP/port in the message and gate opening on the device as necessary. The FTP ALG supports FTP put and FTP get command blocking. When the FTP_NO_PUT or FTP_NO_GET is set in the policy, the FTP ALG sends back a blocking command and closes the associated opened gate when FTP STOR or FTP RETR command is observed.	Select the check box to enable the ALG.
TFTP	Provides an ALG for the Trivial File Transfer Protocol. The TFTP ALG processes TFTP packet that initiate the request and opens a gate to allow return packets from the reverse direction to the port that sends the request.	Select the check box to enable the ALG.
TALK	Provides an ALG for the TALK Protocol. The TALK protocol uses UDP port 517 and port 518 for control channel connections. The talk program consists of a server and a client. The server handles client notifications and helps to establish talk sessions. There are two types of talk servers: ntalk and talkd. The TALK ALG processes packets of both ntalk and talkd formats. It also performs NAT and gate opening as necessary.	Select the check box to enable the ALG.
RSH	Provides an ALG for the Remote Shell. The RSH ALG handles TCP packets destined for port 514 and process the RSH port command. The RSH ALG performs NAT on the port in the port command and opens gates as necessary.	Select the check box to enable the ALG.

**Table 72: General Configuration Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
<b>Multimedia Application Protocols</b>		
PPTP	Provides an ALG for the Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol. The PPTP is a layer 2 protocol that tunnels PPP data across TCP/IP networks. The PPTP client is freely available on Windows systems and is widely deployed for building Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).	Select the check box to enable the ALG.
<b>Database and Network Support Protocols</b>		
SQL	Provides an ALG for the Structured Query Language. The SQLNET ALG processes SQL TNS response frame from the server side. It parses the packet and looks for (HOST = ipaddress), (PORT = port) pattern and performs NAT and gate opening on the client side for the TCP data channel.	Select the check box to enable the ALG.

## Understanding the H.323 ALG

The H.323 standard is a legacy VoIP protocol defined by the International Telecommunication Union (ITU-T). H.323 consists of a suite of protocols (such as H.225.0 and H.245) that are used for call signaling and call control for VoIP.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Application Layer Gateways (ALGs)” on page 285.

H.323 uses the ASN.1 coding format. It sets up the dynamic links for data, video, and audio streams, following the protocols Q.931 (with port number 1720) and H.245. There are three major processes in H.323:

- Gatekeeper Discovery—An endpoint finds its gatekeeper through the gatekeeper discovery process, through broadcast or unicast (to a known IP and the well-known UDP port 1719). (JUNOS software supports unicast only.)
- Endpoint Registration, Admission, and Status—An endpoint registers to a gatekeeper and asks for its management. Before making a call, an endpoint asks its gatekeeper for permission to place the call. In both registration and admission phases, the remote access server (RAS) channel is used. The Transport Service Access Point (TSAP) may be either the well-known UDP port (1719), or a dynamically assigned port from the discovery or registration phase.
- Call Control and Call Setup—Calls can be established within a zone or across two zones, or even across multiple zones (multipoint conference). The call setup and teardown is performed through the call signaling channel whose TSAP is the

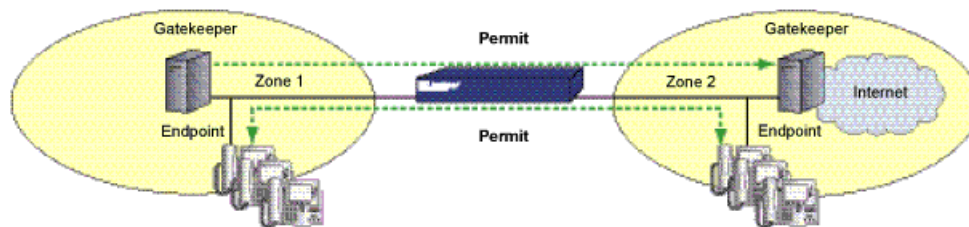
well-known TCP port (1720). The call control, including opening/closing media channels between two endpoints, is performed through the call control channel whose TSAP is dynamically assigned from the previous call signaling process. H.245 messages are used in the call control channel, and are encoded using ASN.1.



**NOTE:** Detailed information on H.323 can be found in ITU-T RECOMMENDATION H.323.

The H.323 ALG lets you secure VoIP communication between terminal hosts, such as IP phones and multimedia devices. In such a telephony system, gatekeeper J-series device manage call registration, admission, and call status for VoIP calls. Gatekeepers can reside in the two different zones or in the same zone. (See Figure 65 on page 291.)

**Figure 65: H.323 Protocol**



**NOTE:** The illustrations use IP phones for illustrative purposes, although it is possible to make configurations for other hosts that use VoIP, such as Microsoft NetMeeting multimedia devices.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Setting H.323 Endpoint Registration Timeout on page 294
- Setting H.323 Media Source Port Range on page 295
- Configuring H.323 Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 296
- Allowing Unknown H.323 Message Types on page 297
- Verifying the H.323 Configuration on page 299
- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Internal Zone on page 301
- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone on page 304

- Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Incoming Calls on page 312
- Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls on page 310

## Configuring the H.323 ALG—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure H.323 ALG Parameters

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290

To configure the H.323 ALG with Quick Configuration:

**Figure 66: H.323 ALG Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [ALG](#)

### Quick Configuration

### ALG

---

H323
MGCP
SCCP
SIP

**ALG H323**

**Enable H323 ALG** ☒

**Endpoint Registration Timeout**  ?

**Media Source Port Any** ☐ ?

**Message Flood Gatekeeper Threshold**  ?

**Permit NAT Applied Unknown Message** ☐ ?

**Permit Routed Unknown Message** ☐ ?

To configure the H.323 ALG with Quick Configuration:

1. In the J-Web user interface, select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > ALG > VoIP ALG**.

Figure 66 on page 292 shows the H.323 ALG page.

2. Select the H.323 tab if it is not selected.
3. Fill in the parameter settings as described in Table 73 on page 293 and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.

- To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 73: H.323 Configuration Options**

Enable H323 ALG	Enable or disable the H.323 ALG	Click the check box.
Endpoint Registration Timeout	Controls how long entries remain in the NAT table.	Enter a value between 10 and 50,000 seconds.
Media Source Port Any	Allows media traffic from any port number. By default, this feature is disabled. When disabled, the J-series device allows a temporary opening, or pinhole, in the firewall as needed for media traffic.	Enter a value between 1 and 50,000 seconds.
Message Flood Gatekeeper Threshold	Limits the rate per second at which remote access server (RAS) requests to the gatekeeper are processed. Messages exceeding the threshold are dropped. This feature is disabled by default.	Enter a value
Permit NAT Applied Unknown Message	<p>Specifies how unidentified H.323 messages are handled by the J-series device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Permitting unknown messages can compromise security and is not recommended. However, in a secure test or production environment, this statement can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. By permitting unknown H.323 (unsupported) messages, you can get your network operational and later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.</p> <p>This statement applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol, the message is forwarded without processing.</p>	Click the check box.
Permit Routed Unknown Message	Specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode. (Sessions in Transparent mode are treated as Route mode.)	Click the check box.

## Setting H.323 Endpoint Registration Timeout

---

You set an endpoint registration timeout to specify how long an endpoint registration entry remains in the NAT table

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290.

---

In NAT mode, when endpoints in the protected network behind the J-series device register with the H.323 gatekeeper, the device adds an entry to the NAT table containing a mapping of the public-to-private address for each endpoint. These entries make it possible for endpoints in the protected network to receive incoming calls. To ensure uninterrupted incoming call service, set the endpoint registration timeout to a value equal to or greater than the keepalive value the administrator configures on the gatekeeper. The range is 10 to 50000 seconds, the default value is 3600 seconds.

To set the H.323 endpoint registration, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 294
- CLI Configuration on page 294
- Related Topics on page 295

### J-Web Configuration

To specify endpoint registration timeout using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration** > **View and Edit** > **Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to ALG, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to H323, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. In the Endpoint-registration-timeout box, type **5000** and click **OK**.
6. If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.
7. To check the configuration, see “Verifying the H.323 Configuration” on page 299.

### CLI Configuration

In this example, you set the endpoint registration timeout to 5,000 seconds.



```
user@host# set security alg h323 endpoint-registration-timeout 5000
```

If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.

To check the configuration, see “Verifying the H.323 Configuration” on page 299.

## Related Topics

- Allowing Unknown H.323 Message Types on page 297
- Configuring H.323 Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 296
- Setting H.323 Media Source Port Range on page 295
- Verifying the H.323 Configuration on page 299

## Setting H.323 Media Source Port Range

The media source port feature enables you to configure the J-series device to allow media traffic on a narrow or wide range of ports.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290.

By default, the J-series device listens for H.323 traffic on a wide range of ports. If your endpoint equipment allows you to specify a sending port and a listening port, you might want to narrow the range of ports the device allows media traffic on. This enhances security by opening a smaller pinhole for H.323 traffic.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 295
- CLI Configuration on page 296
- Related Topics on page 296

## J-Web Configuration

To configure the J-series device to open a narrow gate for media traffic by disabling the media source port feature using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to ALG, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to H323, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. Select the **Media source port any** check box and click **OK**.

6. If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.
7. To check the configuration, see “Verifying the H.323 Configuration” on page 299.

## CLI Configuration

In this example, you configure the J-series device to open a narrow gate for media traffic by disabling the media source port feature.

```
user@host# set security alg h323 media-source-port-any disable
```

If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.

To check the configuration, see “Verifying the H.323 Configuration” on page 299.

## Related Topics

- Setting H.323 Endpoint Registration Timeout on page 294
- Allowing Unknown H.323 Message Types on page 297
- Configuring H.323 Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 296
- Verifying the H.323 Configuration on page 299

## Configuring H.323 Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection

---

You can protect the H.323 gatekeeper from flood attacks by limiting the number of remote access service (RAS) messages per second it will attempt to process.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290.

---

Incoming RAS request messages exceeding the threshold you specify are dropped by H.323 ALG. The range is 1 to 50000 messages per second, the default value is 1000.

To configure the H.323 DoS attack protection feature, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 297
- CLI Configuration on page 297
- Related Topics on page 297

## **J-Web Configuration**

To limit the number of incoming RAS request messages to the H.323 gatekeeper to 5,000 messages per second using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to ALG, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to H323, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. Next to Application Screen, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
6. Next to Message flood, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. To specify the gatekeeper threshold, in the Threshold box, type **5000** and click **OK**.
8. If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.
9. To check the configuration, see “Verifying the H.323 Configuration” on page 299.

## **CLI Configuration**

In this example, you limit the number of incoming RAS request messages to the H.323 gatekeeper to 5,000 messages per second.

```
user@host# set security alg h323 application-screen message-flood message-flood
gatekeeper threshold 5000
```

If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.

To check the configuration, see “Verifying the H.323 Configuration” on page 299.

## **Related Topics**

- Setting H.323 Endpoint Registration Timeout on page 294
- Setting H.323 Media Source Port Range on page 295
- Allowing Unknown H.323 Message Types on page 297
- Verifying the H.323 Configuration on page 299

## **Allowing Unknown H.323 Message Types**

---

To accommodate on-going development of the H.323 protocol, you might want to allow traffic containing new H.323 message types. The unknown H.323 message

type feature enables you to configure the J-series device to accept H.323 traffic containing unknown message types in both NAT and route modes.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290.

This feature enables you to specify how unidentified H.323 messages are handled by the J-series device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. We do not recommend permitting unknown messages because they can compromise. However, in a secure test or production environment, this command can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. Permitting unknown H.323 messages can help you get your network operational, so that you can analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.

Note that this command applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol and you have configured the J-series device to permit unknown message types, the message is forwarded without processing.

- **permit-nat-applied**—Specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode.
- **permit-routed**—Specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in route mode.

To configure the allow unknown messages feature, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 298
- CLI Configuration on page 299
- Related Topics on page 299

## J-Web Configuration

To configure the J-series device to allow unknown H.323 message types in both route and NAT modes using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to ALG, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to H323, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. Next to Application screen, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
6. Next to Unknown message, click **Configure** or **Edit**.

7. Select one of the following boxes:
  - To allow unknown message types in NAT mode, select the **Permit nat applied** check box and click **OK**.
  - To allow unknown message types in route mode, select the **Permit route** check box and click **OK**.
8. If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.
9. To check the configuration, see “Verifying the H.323 Configuration” on page 299.

## CLI Configuration

In this example, you configure the J-series device to allow unknown H.323 message types in both route and NAT modes.

```
user@host# set security alg h323 application-screen unknown-message
permit-nat-applied permit-routed
```

If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.

To check the configuration, see “Verifying the H.323 Configuration” on page 299.

## Related Topics

- Setting H.323 Endpoint Registration Timeout on page 294
- Setting H.323 Media Source Port Range on page 295
- Configuring H.323 Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 296
- Verifying the H.323 Configuration on page 299

## Verifying the H.323 Configuration

---

To verify the H.323 configuration, perform this task.

### Verifying H.323 Counters

**Purpose** Display information about active calls.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor > ALGs > H323**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg sip calls` command.

```
user@host> show security alg h323 counters
H.323 counters summary:
Packets received      : 0
Packets dropped       : 0
RAS message received  : 0
Q.931 message received: 0
H.245 message received: 0
Number of calls       : 0
Number of active calls: 0
H.323 error counters:
```

```

Decoding errors           : 0
Message flood dropped     : 0
NAT errors                : 0
Resource manager errors   : 0
H.323 message counters:
RRQ                       : 0
RCF                       : 0
ARQ                       : 0
ACF                       : 0
URQ                       : 0
UCF                       : 0
DRQ                       : 0
DCF                       : 0
Oth RAS                   : 0
Setup                    : 0
Alert                    : 0
Connect                  : 0
CallProd                 : 0
Info                     : 0
RelCmpl                  : 0
Facility                  : 0
Empty                    : 0
OLC                      : 0
OLC-ACK                  : 0
Oth H245                  : 0

```

**What it Means** The output provides counts at the packet, message, and call levels. Verify the following information:

- Number of packets received and dropped
- Number of remote access service (RAS), Q.931, and H.245 messages received
- Number of calls and active calls
- Number of all types of H.323 messages

Note that H.323 counters for calls and active calls in the output to this show security command do not apply to the proprietary Avaya implementation of H.323. This is because Q.931 setup and connect messages are exchanged right after the phone is powered up and call creation and tear down is done by Facility messages.

Note also that counters for calls and active calls are increased when the resources allocated for calls are increased—that is, messages belonging to the same call and that pass the firewall multiple times increment the counters. This applies when resources for a call need to be allocated multiple times. For example, in a two-zone scenario the setup and connect message pair allocates one call resource, and the active call counter is increased by one. But in a three-zone scenario the setup and connect message pair passes the firewall twice, each time allocating different call resources. In this case, the counter is incremented.

Counters for H.245 messages received also will not be accurate in the case of H.245 tunneling. Because H.245 messages are encapsulated in Q.931 packets, the counter for H.245 messages received will remain zero even when there are H.245 messages. The **Other H245** counter will, however, reflect these packet transmissions.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the H.323 ALG on page 290

## Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Internal Zone

In the following example, you set up two policies that allow H.323 traffic to pass between IP phone hosts and a gatekeeper in the private zone, and an IP phone host (2.2.2.5) in the public zone.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290.

In this example, the J-series device can be in either route or NAT mode. See Figure 67 on page 301.

**Figure 67: H.323 Gatekeeper in Zone1**



To configure a gatekeeper in the internal zone, use either J-Web or the CLI Configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 301
- CLI Configuration on page 303
- Related Topics on page 304

## J-Web Configuration

To configure an address book, to configure a policy from the internal zone to the external zone, and to configure policies from the external zone to the internal zone using the J-Web configuration editor, follow the sequence of steps listed below:

To configure an address book:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.

3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **public**.
6. Next to Address book, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address name box, type **ip\_phone 2.2.2.5/32** and click **OK**.

To configure a policy from the internal zone to the external zone:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From-zone name box, type **private**.
6. In the To-zone name box, type **public** and click **OK**.
7. Under the From zone name column, click **private**.
8. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Policy name box, type **p1**.
10. Select the **Match** check box.
11. Select the **Then** check box.
12. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
13. From the Source address list, select **Source address**.
14. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
15. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
16. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
17. Next to destination address, click **Add new entry**.
18. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
19. In the Address box, type **ip\_phone** and click **OK**.
20. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
21. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
22. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-h323** and click **OK**.
23. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
24. Next to Action, select **permit** and click **OK**.

To configure policies from the external zone to the internal zone:



1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Policies**, select the check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Under **From zone name** column, click **private**.
5. Next to **Policy**, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the **From zone name** box, type **private**.
7. In the **To zone name** box, type **public** and click **OK**.
8. Under the **From zone name** column, click **private**.
9. Next to **Policy**, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the **Policy name** box, type **p2**.
11. Select the **Match** check box.
12. Select the **Then** check box.
13. Next to **Match**, click **Configure**.
14. From the **Source address** list, select **Source address**.
15. Next to **Source address**, click **Add new entry**.
16. From the **Value keyword** list, select **any** and click **OK**.
17. Next to **Destination address**, click **Add new entry**.
18. From the **Value keyword** list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
19. In the **Address** box, type **ip\_phone** and click **OK**.
20. Next to **Application**, click **Add new entry**.
21. In the **Value keyword** box, type **junos-h323** and click **OK**.
22. Next to **Then**, click **Configure**.
23. From the **Action** list, select **permit** and click **OK**.
24. If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

To configure an address book, to configure a policy from the internal zone to the external zone, and to configure policies from the external zone to the internal zone, follow the sequence of steps listed below:

1. Configure an address book.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address ip_phone
2.2.2.5/32
```

2. Configure a policy from the internal zone to the external zone.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy p1 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy p1 match
destination-address ip_phone
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy p1 match
application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy p1 then
permit

```

3. Configure policies from the external zone to the internal zone.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy p2 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy p2 match
destination-address ip_phone
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy p2 match
application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy p2 then
permit

```

4. If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.

## Related Topics

- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone on page 304
- Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls on page 310
- Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Incoming Calls on page 312
- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Setting SCCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 383
- Configuring a Media Gateway in Subscribers' Homes on page 408

## Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone

Because route mode does not require address mapping of any kind, a J-series device configuration for a gatekeeper in the external, or public, zone is usually identical to the configuration for a gatekeeper in an internal, or private, zone.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290.

In the following example, you set up two policies to allow H.323 traffic to pass between IP phone hosts in the internal zone, and the IP phone at IP address 2.2.2.5 (and the gatekeeper) in the external zone. The J-series device can be in transparent or route mode. See Figure 68 on page 305.

**Figure 68: H.323 Gatekeeper in Zone2**

To configure a gatekeeper in the external zone, use either J-Web or the CLI Configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 305
- CLI Configuration on page 308
- Related Topics on page 309

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure addresses, to configure a policy from the internal zone to the external zone, and to configure a policy to allow traffic between the internal zone and the gatekeeper in the external zone using the J-Web configuration editor, follow the sequence of steps listed below:

To configure addresses:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **external**.
6. Next to Address book, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address name box, type **ip\_phone 2.2.2.5/32** and click **OK**.
9. To configure another security zone **internal**, repeat Step 2 through Step 4 and click **OK**.
10. Next to Address book, click **Configure**.
11. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
12. In the Address name box, type **gatekeeper 2.2.2.10/32** and click **OK**.

To configure a policy from the internal zone to the external zone:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **internal**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **external** and click **OK**.
7. Under the From zone name column, click **internal**.
8. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Name box, type **p\_1**.
10. Select the **Match** check box.
11. Select the **Then** check box.
12. Next to Match, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
13. Next to Source address, select **Enter Source address** and click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
15. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
16. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
17. In the Address box, type **ip\_phone** and click **OK**.
18. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
19. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-h323** and click **OK**.
20. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
21. Next to Action, enter **permit** and click **OK**.

To configure a policy to allow traffic between the internal zone and the gatekeeper in the external zone:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **internal**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **external** and click **OK**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **p\_2**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.

10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
12. Next to Source address, select **Enter Source address** and click **Add new entry**.
13. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
14. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
15. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
16. Next to Address box, type **gatekeeper** and click **OK**.
17. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
18. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-h323** and click **OK**.
19. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
20. Next to Action, enter **permit** and click **OK**.

To configure a policy to allow traffic between phones in the internal zone and the external zone:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Policy, **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **external**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **internal** and click **OK**.
7. Under the From zone name column, click **external**.
8. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Policy name box, type **p\_3**.
10. Select the **Match** check box.
11. Select the **Then** check box.
12. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
13. Next to Source address, select **Enter Source address** and click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **ip\_phone** and click **OK**.
15. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
16. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
17. In the Address box, type **any** and click **OK**.
18. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
19. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-h323** and click **OK**.

20. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
21. Next to Action, enter **permit** and click **OK**.

To configure a policy to allow traffic between phones in the internal zone and the gatekeeper in the external zone:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Select the Policies check box, and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Policy, **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **external**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **internal** and click **OK**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. Under the From zone name column, click **external**.
9. In the Policy name box, type **p\_4**.
10. Select the **Match** check box.
11. Select the **Then** check box.
12. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
13. Next to Source address, select **Enter Source address** and click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **gatekeeper** and click **OK**.
15. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
16. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
17. In the Address box, type **any** and click **OK**.
18. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
19. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-h323** and click **OK**.
20. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
21. Next to Action, enter **permit** and click **OK**.
22. If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure addresses.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone external address-book address
IP_Phone 2.2.2.5/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone internal address-book address
gatekeeper 2.2.2.10/32
```

2. Configure a policy from the internal zone to the external zone.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy p_1
match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy p_1
match destination-address IP_Phone
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy p_1
match application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy p_1
then permit

```

3. Configure a policy to allow traffic between the internal zone and the gatekeeper in the external zone.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external p_2 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy p_2
match destination-address gatekeeper
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy p_2
match application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy p_2
then permit

```

4. Configure a policy to allow traffic between phones in the internal zone and the external zone.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy p_3
match source-address IP_Phone
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy p_3
match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy p_3
match application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy p_3
then permit

```

5. Configure a policy to allow traffic between phones in the internal zone and the gatekeeper in the external zone.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy id_4
match source-address gatekeeper
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy p_4
match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy p_4
match application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy p_4
then permit

```

6. If you are finished configuring the J-series device, commit the configuration.

## **Related Topics**

- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Internal Zone on page 301
- Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Incoming Calls on page 312
- Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls on page 310
- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313

- Setting SCCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 383
- Configuring a Media Gateway in Subscribers' Homes on page 408

## Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls

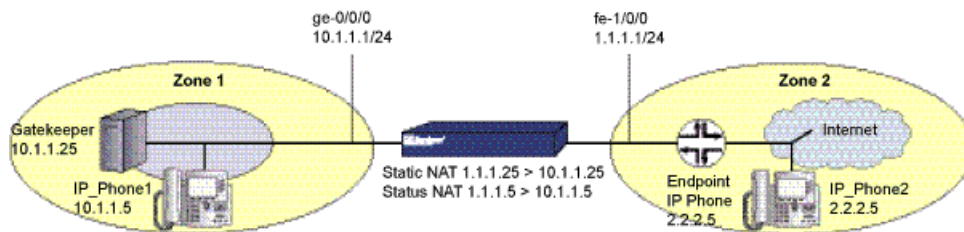
In this example, the devices in the external zone include the endpoint host (10.1.1.5) and the gatekeeper (10.1.1.25). IP\_Phone2 (2.2.2.5) is in Zone2. You configure the J-series device to allow traffic between the endpoint host IP\_Phone1 and the gatekeeper in the external zone and the endpoint host IP\_Phone2 in the internal zone.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290.

When the J-series device uses NAT, a gatekeeper or endpoint device in the external zone has a private address, and when it is in the internal zone, it has a public address. See Figure 69 on page 310.

**Figure 69: Network Address Translation—Outgoing Calls**



You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to enable outgoing calls.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 310
- Related Topics on page 311

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure interfaces.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces fe-1/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone1 interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone2 interfaces fe-1/0/0.0
```

2. Configure zones.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone1 interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
```



```

user@host# set security zones security-zone zone1 address-book address
IP_Phone1 10.1.1.5/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone1 address-book address
gatekeeper 10.1.1.25/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone2 interfaces fe-1/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone2 address-book address
IP_Phone2 2.2.2.5/32
user@host# set security zones Global

```

### 3. Configure interface NAT.

```

user@host# set security nat interface fe-1/0/0.0 static-nat 1.1.1.5/32 host
10.1.1.5/32
user@host# set security nat interface fe-1/0/0.0 static-nat 1.1.1.25/32 host
10.1.1.25/32

```

### 4. Configure policies.

```

user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
zone1_to_zone2 match source-address IP_Phone1
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
zone1_to_zone2 match source-address gatekeeper
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
zone1_to_zone2 match destination-address IP_Phone2
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
zone1_to_zone2 match application junos-h323
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
zone1_to_zone2 then permit
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone2 to-zone Global policy
zone2_to_Global match source-address IP_Phone2
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone2 to-zone Global policy
zone2_to_Global match destination-address static_nat_1.1.1.5_32
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone2 to-zone Global policy
zone2_to_Global match destination-address static_nat_1.1.1.25_32
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone2 to-zone Global policy
zone2_to_Global match application junos-h323
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone2 to-zone Global policy
zone2_to_Global then permit

```

## Related Topics

- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Internal Zone on page 301
- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone on page 304
- Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls on page 310
- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Setting SCCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 383
- Configuring a Media Gateway in Subscribers' Homes on page 408

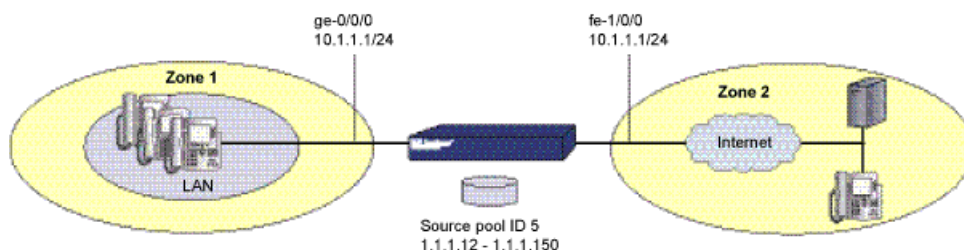
## Using NAT and the H.323 ALG to Enable Incoming Calls

In this example, you configure the J-series device to accept incoming calls over a NAT boundary. To do this, you can create an interface NAT address pool for dynamically allocating destination addresses. This differs from most configurations, where a source pool provides source addresses only. See Figure 70 on page 312.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the H.323 ALG” on page 290.

**Figure 70: Network Address Translation—Incoming Calls**



Interface NAT is when the source pool uses the same address as an interface IP address. You can use such address entries as destination addresses in policies, together with H.323, SIP, or other VoIP protocols, to support incoming calls.

To configure incoming calls using NAT, use either the J-Web or CLI Configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 312
- Related Topics on page 313

### CLI Configuration

In the following example, you configure interfaces, a NAT address pool, zones, and security policies for incoming and outgoing traffic:

1. Configure interfaces.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces fe-1/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
```

2. Configure interface NAT.

```
user@host# set security nat source-nat address-persistent
user@host# set security nat interface fe-1/0/0.0 source-nat pool p1 address-range
low 1.1.1.12 high 1.1.1.150
```

## 3. Configure zones.

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone zone1 interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone1 address-book address
  IP_Phone1 10.1.1.5/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone1 address-book address
  gatekeeper 10.1.1.25/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone2 interfaces fe-1/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone zone2 address-book address
  IP_Phone2 2.2.2.5/32
user@host# set security zones Global

```

## 4. Configure policies for outgoing traffic.

```

user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
  zone1_to_zone2 match source-address IP_Phone1
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
  zone1_to_zone2 match source-address gatekeeper
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
  zone1_to_zone2 match destination-address IP_Phone2
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
  zone1_to_zone2 match application junos-h323
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone1 to-zone zone2 policy
  zone1_to_zone2 then permit source-nat pool p1

```

## 5. Configure policies for incoming traffic.

```

user@host# set security policy from-zone zone2 to-zone Global policy
  zone2_to_Global match source-address IP_Phone2
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone2 to-zone Global policy
  zone2_to_Global match destination-address incoming_nat_p1
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone2 to-zone Global policy
  zone2_to_Global match application junos-h323
user@host# set security policy from-zone zone2 to-zone Global policy
  zone2_to_Global then permit

```

**Related Topics**

- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Internal Zone on page 301
- Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone on page 304
- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Setting SCCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 383
- Configuring a Media Gateway in Subscribers' Homes on page 408

**Understanding the SIP ALG**

Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)-standard protocol for initiating, modifying, and terminating multimedia sessions over the Internet. Such sessions might include conferencing, telephony, or multimedia, with

features such as instant messaging and application-level mobility in network environments.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Application Layer Gateways (ALGs)” on page 285.

J-series devices support SIP as a service and screen SIP traffic, allowing and denying it based on a policy that you configure. SIP is a predefined service in JUNOS software and uses port 5060 as the destination port.

SIP's primary function is to distribute session-description information and, during the session, to negotiate and modify the parameters of the session. SIP is also used to terminate a multimedia session.

Session-description information is included in INVITE and ACK messages and indicates the multimedia type of the session, for example, whether it is voice or video. Although SIP can use different description protocols to describe the session, the Juniper Networks SIP ALG supports only the Session Description Protocol (SDP).

SDP provides information that a system can use to join a multimedia session. SDP might include information such as IP addresses, port numbers, times, and dates. Note that the IP address and port number in the SDP header (the `c =` and `m =` fields, respectively) are the address and port where the client wants to receive the media streams and not the IP address and port number from which the SIP request originates (although they can be the same).

SIP messages consist of requests from a client to a server and responses to the requests from a server to a client with the purpose of establishing a session (or a call). A User Agent (UA) is an application that runs at the endpoints of the call and consists of two parts:

- User Agent Client (UAC), which sends SIP requests on behalf of the user
- User Agent Server (UAS), which listens to the responses and notifies the user when they arrive

Examples of UAs are SIP proxy servers and phones.

This topic covers:

- SIP ALG Operation on page 314
- SDP Session Descriptions on page 316
- Pinhole Creation on page 317

## SIP ALG Operation

There are two types of SIP traffic, the signaling and the media stream. SIP signaling traffic consists of request and response messages between client and server and uses transport protocols such as UDP or TCP. The media stream carries the data (audio

data, for example) and uses Application Layer protocols such as Real-Time Protocol (RTP) over UDP.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the SIP ALG” on page 313.

J-series devices support SIP signaling messages on port 5060. You can simply create a policy that permits SIP service, and the J-series device filters SIP signaling traffic like any other type of traffic, permitting or denying it. The media stream, however, uses dynamically assigned port numbers that can change several times during the course of a call. Without fixed ports, it is impossible to create a static policy to control media traffic. In this case, the J-series device invokes the SIP ALG. The SIP ALG reads SIP messages and their SDP content and extracts the port-number information it needs to dynamically open pinholes to let the media stream traverse the J-series device.



**NOTE:** We refer to a pinhole as the limited opening of a port to allow exclusive traffic.

The SIP ALG monitors SIP transactions and dynamically creates and manages pinholes based on the information it extracts from these transactions. The Juniper Networks SIP ALG supports all SIP methods and responses (see “SIP ALG Request Methods Overview” on page 318 and “Classes of SIP Responses” on page 338). You can allow SIP transactions to traverse the Juniper Networks firewall by creating a static policy that permits SIP service. This policy enables the J-series device to intercept SIP traffic and do one of the following actions: permit or deny the traffic or enable the SIP ALG to open pinholes to pass the media stream. The SIP ALG needs to open pinholes only for the SIP requests and responses that contain media information (SDP). For SIP messages that do not contain SDP, the J-series device simply lets them through.

The SIP ALG intercepts SIP messages that contain SDP and, using a parser, extracts the information it requires to create pinholes. The SIP ALG examines the SDP portion of the packet, and a parser extracts information such as IP addresses and port numbers, which the SIP ALG records in a pinhole table. The SIP ALG uses the IP addresses and port numbers recorded in the pinhole table to open pinholes and allow media streams to traverse the J-series device.



**NOTE:** J-series devices do not support encrypted SDP. If a J-series device receives a SIP message in which SDP is encrypted, the SIP ALG permits it through the firewall but generates a log message informing the user that it cannot process the packet. If SDP is encrypted, the SIP ALG cannot extract the information it needs from SDP to open pinholes. As a result, the media content that SDP describes cannot traverse the J-series device.

## SDP Session Descriptions

A Session Description Protocol (SDP) session description is text-based and consists of a set of lines. It can contain session-level and media-level information. The session-level information applies to the whole session, while the media-level information applies to a particular media stream. An SDP session description always contains session-level information, which appears at the beginning of the description, and might contain media-level information, which comes after.




---

**NOTE:** In the SDP session description, the media-level information begins with the `m =` field.

---

Of the many fields in the SDP description, two are particularly useful to the SIP ALG because they contain Transport Layer information.

- `c=` for connection information

This field can appear at the session or media level. It displays in this format:

`c = <network type> <address type> <connection address>`

Currently, the J-series device supports only “IN” (for Internet) as the network type, “IP4” as the address type, and a unicast IP address or domain name as the destination (connection) IP address.

If the destination IP address is a unicast IP address, the SIP ALG creates pinholes using the IP address and port numbers specified in the media description field `m =`.

- `m=` for media announcement

This field appears at the media level and contains the description of the media. It displays in this format:

`m = <media> <port> <transport> <fmt list>`

Currently, the J-series device supports only “audio” as the media and “RTP” as the Application Layer transport protocol. The port number indicates the destination (not the origin) of the media stream. The format list (fmt list) provides information on the Application Layer protocol that the media uses.

The J-series device opens ports only for RTP and RTCP. Every RTP session has a corresponding Real Time Control Protocol (RTCP) session. Therefore, whenever a media stream uses RTP, the SIP ALG must reserve ports (create pinholes) for both RTP and RTCP traffic. By default, the port number for RTCP is one higher than the RTP port number.

## Pinhole Creation

Both pinholes for the RTP and RTCP traffic share the same destination IP address. The IP address comes from the `c =` field in the SDP session description. Because the `c =` field can appear in either the session-level or media-level portion of the SDP session description, the parser determines the IP address based on the following rules (in accordance with SDP conventions):

- First, the SIP ALG parser verifies if there is a `c =` field containing an IP address in the media level. If there is one, the parser extracts that IP address, and the SIP ALG uses it to create a pinhole for the media.
- If there is no `c =` field in the media level, the SIP ALG parser extracts the IP address from the `c =` field in the session level, and the SIP ALG uses it to create a pinhole for the media. If the session description does not contain a `c =` field in either level, this indicates an error in the protocol stack, and the J-series device drops the packet and logs the event.

The SIP ALG needs the following information to create a pinhole. This information comes from the SDP session description and parameters on the J-series device:

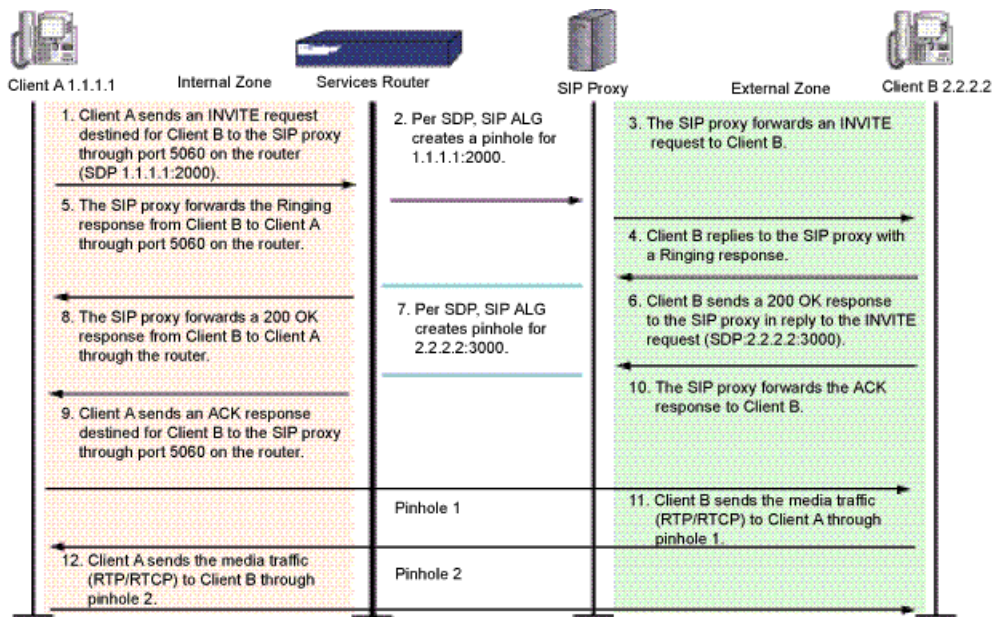
- Protocol—UDP.
- Source IP—Unknown.
- Source port—Unknown.
- Destination IP—The parser extracts the destination IP address from the `c =` field in the media or session level.
- Destination port—The parser extracts the destination port number for RTP from the `m =` field in the media level and calculates the destination port number for RTCP using the following formula:

*RTP port number + one*

- Lifetime—This value indicates the length of time (in seconds) during which a pinhole is open to allow a packet through. A packet must go through the pinhole before the lifetime expires. When the lifetime expires, the SIP ALG removes the pinhole.

When a packet goes through the pinhole within the lifetime period, immediately afterwards the SIP ALG removes the pinhole for the direction from which the packet came.

Figure 71 on page 318 describes a call setup between two SIP clients and how the SIP ALG creates pinholes to allow RTP and RTCP traffic. The illustration assumes that the J-series device has a policy that permits SIP, thus opening port 5060 for SIP signaling messages.

**Figure 71: SIP ALG Call Setup**

**NOTE:** The SIP ALG does not create pinholes for RTP and RTCP traffic when the destination IP address is 0.0.0.0, which indicates that the session is on hold. To put a session on hold during a telephone communication, for example, user A sends user B a SIP message in which the destination IP address is 0.0.0.0. Doing so indicates to user B that it should not send any media until further notice. If user B sends media anyway, the J-series device drops the packets.

## SIP ALG Request Methods Overview

The SIP transaction model includes a number of request and response messages, each of which contains a *method* field that denotes the purpose of the message.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the SIP ALG” on page 313.

JUNOS software supports the following method types and response codes:

- **INVITE**—A user sends an INVITE request to invite another user to participate in a session. The body of an INVITE request may contain the description of the session.
- **ACK**—The user from whom the INVITE originated sends an ACK request to confirm reception of the final response to the INVITE request. If the original INVITE request did not contain the session description, the ACK request must include it.



- **OPTIONS**—Used by the User Agent (UA) to obtain information about the capabilities of the SIP proxy. A server responds with information about what methods, session description protocols, and message encoding it supports.
- **BYE**—A user sends a BYE request to abandon a session. A BYE request from either user automatically terminates the session.
- **CANCEL**—A user can send a CANCEL request to cancel a pending INVITE request. A CANCEL request has no effect if the SIP server processing the INVITE had sent a final response for the INVITE before it received the CANCEL.
- **REGISTER**—A user sends a REGISTER request to a SIP registrar server to inform it of the current location of the user. A SIP registrar server records all the information it receives in REGISTER requests and makes this information available to any SIP server attempting to locate a user.
- **Info**—Used to communicate mid-session signaling information along the signaling path for the call.
- **Subscribe**—Used to request current state and state updates from a remote node.
- **Notify**—Sent to inform subscribers of changes in state to which the subscriber has a subscription.
- **Refer**—Used to refer the recipient (identified by the Request-URI) to a third party by the contact information provided in the request.

For example, if user A in a private network refers user B, in a public network, to user C, who is also in the private network, the SIP ALG allocates a new IP address and port number for user C so that user C can be contacted by user B. If user C is registered with a registrar, however, its port mapping is stored in the ALG NAT table and is reused to perform the translation.

- **Update**—Used to open pinhole for new or updated SDP information. The Via:, From:, To:, Call-ID:, Contact:, Route:, and Record-Route: header fields are modified.
- **1xx, 202, 2xx, 3xx, 4xx, 5xx, 6xx Response Codes**—Used to indicate the status of a transaction. Header fields are modified.

## Related Topics

- Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 322

## Configuring the SIP ALG—Quick Configuration

---

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure SIP ALG Parameters

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the SIP ALG” on page 313

---

Figure 72 on page 320 shows the SIP ALG configuration page.

**Figure 72: SIP ALG Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [ALG](#)

### Quick Configuration

## ALG

---

H323
MGCP
SCCP
SIP

#### ALG SIP

**Enable SIP ALG** ☒

**C Timeout**  ?

**Inactive Media Timeout**  ?

**Maximum Call Duration**  ?

**T1 Interval**  ?

**T4 Interval**  ?

**Disable Call ID Hiding** ☐ ?

**Retain Hold Resource** ☐ ?

**Permit NAT Applied Unknown Message** ☐ ?

**Permit Routed Unknown Message** ☐ ?

**Timeout**  ?

**Attack Protection**

☒ None ?  
☐ All ?  
☐ Destination IP ?

To configure the SIP ALG with Quick Configuration:

1. In the J-Web user interface, select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > ALG > VoIP ALG**.
2. Select the **SIP** tab if it is not selected.
3. Fill in the parameter settings as described in Table 74 on page 321 and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 74: SIP ALG Configuraiton Options**

Enable SIP ALG	Enables or disables the SIP ALG.	Click the check box.
C Timeout	Specifies the INVITE transaction timeout at the proxy, in minutes; the default is 3. Because the SIP ALG is in the middle, instead of using the INVITE transaction timer value B (which is $(64 * T1) = 32$ seconds), the SIP ALG gets its timer value from the proxy.	Select a value between 3 and 10 minutes.
Inactive Media Timeout	Specifies the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the temporary openings (pinholes) in the firewall SIP ALG opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, the range is from 10 to 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.	Select a value between 10 and 2,550 seconds.
Maximum Call Duration	Sets the absolute maximum length of a call. When a call exceeds this parameter setting, the SIP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. The default setting is 720 minutes, the range is from 3 to 7200 minutes.	Select a value between 3 and 7,200 minutes.
T1 Interval	Specifies the roundtrip time estimate, in seconds, of a transaction between endpoints. The default is 500 milliseconds. Because many SIP timers scale with the T1-Interval (as described in RFC 3261), when you change the value of the T1-Interval timer, those SIP timers also are adjusted.	Select a value between 500 and 5,00 milliseconds.
T4 Interval	Specifies the maximum time a message remains in the network. The default is 5 seconds, the range is 5 to 10 seconds. Because many SIP timers scale with the T4-Interval (as described in RFC 3261), when you change the value of the T4-Interval timer, those SIP timers also are adjusted.	Select a value between 5 and 10 seconds..
Disable Call ID Hiding	Enables or disable translation of the host IP address in the call-ID header. Translation is enabled by default.	Click the check box.
Retain Hold Resource	Enable or disables whether the J-series device frees media resources for a Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG), even when a media stream is placed on hold. By default, media stream resources are released when the media stream is held.	Click the check box.

**Table 74: SIP ALG Configuraiton Options** *(continued)*

Permit NAT Applied Unknown Message	<p>Specifies how unidentified SIP messages are handled by the J-series device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Permitting unknown messages can compromise security and is not recommended. However, in a secure test or production environment, this statement can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. By permitting unknown SIP (unsupported) messages, you can get your network operational and later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.</p> <p>This statement applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol, the message is forwarded without processing.</p>	Click the check box.
Permit Routed Unknown Message	Specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode. (Sessions in Transparent mode are treated as Route mode.)	Click the check box.
Timeout	Specifies the amount of time (in seconds) to make an attack table entry for each INVITE, which is listed in the application screen.	Enter a value between 1 and 3,600 seconds.
Attack Protection	Protects servers against INVITE attacks. Configure the SIP application screen to protect the server at some or all destination IP addresses against INVITE attacks. You can include up to 16 destination IP addresses of servers to be protected.	Select <b>None</b> , <b>All</b> or, if you select <b>Destination IP</b> , enter or select an IP address.

## Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts

The call duration and timeout features give you control over SIP call activity and help you to manage network resources.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318

Typically a call ends when one of the clients sends a BYE or CANCEL request. The SIP ALG intercepts the BYE or CANCEL request and removes all media sessions for that call. There could be reasons or problems preventing clients in a call from sending BYE or CANCEL requests, for example, a power failure. In this case, the call might go on indefinitely, consuming resources on the J-series device.

A call can have one or more voice channels. Each voice channel has two sessions (or two media streams), one for Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) traffic and one for Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) signalling. When managing the sessions, the J-series device considers the sessions in each voice channel as one group. Timeouts and call duration settings apply to a group as opposed to each session.

The following parameters govern SIP call activity:

- **inactive-media-timeout**—This parameter indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the temporary openings (pinholes) in the firewall the SIP ALG opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, the range is from 10 to 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.
- **maximum-call-duration**—This parameter sets the absolute maximum length of a call. When a call exceeds this parameter setting, the SIP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. The default setting is 720 minutes, the range is from 3 to 7200 minutes.
- **t1-interval**—This parameter specifies the roundtrip time estimate, in seconds, of a transaction between endpoints. The default is 500 milliseconds. Because many SIP timers scale with the T1-Interval (as described in RFC 3261), when you change the value of the T1-Interval timer, those SIP timers also are adjusted.
- **t4-interval**—This parameter specifies the maximum time a message remains in the network. The default is 5 seconds, the range is 5 to 10 seconds. Because many SIP timers scale with the T4-Interval (as described in RFC 3261), when you change the value of the T4-Interval timer, those SIP timers also are adjusted.
- **c-timeout**—This parameter specifies the INVITE transaction timeout at the proxy, in minutes; the default is 3. Because the SIP ALG is in the middle, instead of using the INVITE transaction timer value B (which is  $(64 * T1) = 32$  seconds), the SIP ALG gets its timer value from the proxy.

## Related Topics

- Setting SIP Call Duration and Inactive Media Timeout on page 323

## Setting SIP Call Duration and Inactive Media Timeout

The call duration and inactive media timeout features help you to conserve network resources and maximise throughput.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 322

You use the **maximum-call-duration** parameter to set the maximum allowable length of time a call can be active. When the duration is exceeded, the SIP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. This setting also frees up bandwidth in cases where calls fail to properly terminate.

This parameter indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the SIP ALG temporary openings (pinholes) in the firewall opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, the range is from 10 to 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.



**NOTE:** You must use the CLI to set SIP-signaling and media-inactivity timeouts.

---

Use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 324
- CLI Configuration on page 324
- Related Topics on page 325

## ***J-Web Configuration***

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > ALG > SIP**.
2. Enter a value for any of the following parameters:
3. **C timeout**
4. **Inactive media timeout**
5. **Maximum call duration**
6. **T1 interval**
7. **T4 interval**
8. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

In the following example, you set call duration to 3000 minutes and the media inactivity timeout to 90 seconds:

```
user@host# set security alg sip maximum-call-duration 3000
```

```
user@host# set security alg sip inactive-media-timeout 90
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 322
- Configuring SIP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 325
- Allowing Unknown SIP Message Types on page 326

## Configuring SIP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection

---

The ability of the SIP proxy server to process calls can be impacted by repeat SIP INVITE requests—requests that it initially denied. The DoS protection feature enables you to configure the J-series device to monitor INVITE requests and proxy server replies to them. If a reply contains a 3xx, 4xx, or 5xx response code (see “Classes of SIP Responses” on page 338), the ALG stores the source IP address of the request and the IP address of the proxy server in a table. Subsequently, the J-series device checks all INVITE requests against this table and, for a configurable number of seconds (the default is 3), discards any packets that match entries in the table. You can configure the J-series device to monitor and deny repeat INVITE requests to all proxy servers, or you can protect a specific proxy server by specifying the destination IP address. SIP attack protection is configured globally.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318

To configure DoS attack protection, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 325
- CLI Configuration on page 326
- Related Topics on page 326

## J-Web Configuration

1. In the J-Web user interface, select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > ALG > SIP**.
2. Click **Application Screen**.
3. Click **Protect**.
4. Click the **Deny** check box.
5. Click one of the following buttons:

- To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
- To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## CLI Configuration

In this example, you configure the J-series device to protect a single SIP proxy server (1.1.1.3) from repeat INVITE requests to which it has already denied service. Packets are dropped for a period of 5 seconds, after which the J-series device resumes forwarding INVITE requests from those sources.

```
user@host# set security alg sip application-screen protect deny destination-ip 1.1.1.3
user@host# set security alg sip application-screen protect deny timeout 5
```

## Related Topics

- [Configuring SIP Denial of Service \(DoS\) Attack Protection on page 325](#)
- [Allowing Unknown SIP Message Types on page 326](#)

## Allowing Unknown SIP Message Types

To accommodate on-going development of the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP), you might want to allow traffic containing new SIP message types. The unknown SIP message type feature enables you to configure the J-series device to accept SIP traffic containing unknown message types in both NAT and route modes.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- [Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313](#)
- [SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318](#)

This feature enables you to specify how unidentified SIP messages are handled by the J-series device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. We do not recommend permitting unknown messages because they can compromise security. However, in a secure test or production environment, this command can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. Permitting unknown SIP messages can help you get your network operational, so you can later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.

Note that this command applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol and you have configured the J-series device to permit unknown message types, the message is forwarded without processing.



- **permit-nat-applied** specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode.
- **permit-routed** specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode.

To allow unknown messages, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 327
- CLI Configuration on page 327
- Related Topics on page 327

### ***J-Web Configuration***

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security Edit > ALG Configure > SIP Configure > Application screen configure > Unknown message Configure**.
2. Click one of the following check boxes:
  - To allow unknown message types in NAT mode, click the **Permit nat applied** Yes check box.
  - To allow unknown message types in route mode, click the **Permit routed** Yes check box.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

### ***CLI Configuration***

In this example, you configure the J-series device to allow unknown message types in SIP traffic in both route and NAT modes.

```
user@host# set security alg sip application-screen unknown-message permit-nat-applied
permit-routed
```

### ***Related Topics***

- Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 322
- Setting SIP Call Duration and Inactive Media Timeout on page 323
- Configuring SIP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 325

## Disabling SIP Call ID Hiding

---

The Call-ID header in a SIP packet contains the hostname or IP address of the calling entity. In NAT mode, this identifying information is replaced by a public IP address and port number. This is a SIP requirement, and the default behavior of the J-series device. If your implementation of SIP includes proprietary packet headers that you want to reveal, you can use the disable call ID hiding feature to disable this function and enable those call flows. This behavior does not conform to the SIP standard.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318

To disable SIP call hiding, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 328
- CLI Configuration on page 328
- Related Topics on page 328

### J-Web Configuration

1. Select Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security Edit > ALG Configure > SIP Configure.
2. Click the Disable call id hiding Yes check box.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click OK.
  - To apply the configuration, click Commit.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click Cancel.

### CLI Configuration

Use the following command to allow proprietary SIP call flows:

```
user@host# set security alg sip disable-call-id-hiding
```

### Related Topics

- Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 322

- Setting SIP Call Duration and Inactive Media Timeout on page 323
- Configuring SIP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 325

## Retaining SIP Hold Resources

---

When a user puts a call on hold, the SIP ALG releases SDP media resources, such as pinholes and translation contexts. When the user resumes the call, an INVITE request message negotiates a new SDP offer and answer and the SIP ALG reallocates resources for the media stream. This can result in new translated IP address and port numbers for the media description even when the media description is the same as the previous description. This is compliant with *RFC 3264 An Offer/Answer Model with the Session Description Protocol (SDP)*.

Some proprietary SIP implementations have designed call flows so that the user agent (UA) module ignores the new SDP INVITE offer and continues to use the SDP offer of the previous negotiation. To accommodate this functionality, you must configure the J-series device to retain SDP media resources when a call is put on hold for reuse when the call is resumed.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318

To retain SIP hold resources, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 329
- CLI Configuration on page 330
- Related Topics on page 330

## J-Web Configuration

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > ALG > SIP**.
2. Click the **Retain hold resources** check box.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## CLI Configuration

Use the following command to accommodate proprietary SIP call flows:

```
user@host# set security alg sip retain-hold-resource
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318
- SDP Session Descriptions on page 316
- Pinhole Creation on page 317

## Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT)

---

The Network Address Translation (NAT) protocol enables multiple hosts in a private subnet to share a single public IP address to access the Internet. For outgoing traffic, NAT replaces the private IP address of the host in the private subnet with the public IP address. For incoming traffic, the public IP address is converted back into the private address, and the message is routed to the appropriate host in the private subnet.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318

Using NAT with the SIP service is more complicated because SIP messages contain IP addresses in the SIP headers as well as in the SIP body. When using NAT with the SIP service, the SIP headers contain information about the caller and the receiver, and the J-series device translates this information to hide it from the outside network. The SIP body contains the Session Description Protocol (SDP) information, which includes IP addresses and port numbers for transmission of the media. The J-series device translates SDP information for allocating resources to send and receive the media.

How IP addresses and port numbers in SIP messages are replaced depends on the direction of the message. For an outgoing message, the private IP address and port number of the client are replaced with the public IP address and port number of the Juniper Networks firewall. For an incoming message, the public address of the firewall is replaced with the private address of the client.

When an INVITE message is sent out across the firewall, the SIP ALG collects information from the message header into a call table, which it uses to forward subsequent messages to the correct endpoint. When a new message arrives, for

example an ACK or 200 OK, the ALG compares the “ From:”, “ To:”, and “ Call-ID:” fields against the call table to identify the call context of the message. If a new INVITE message arrives that matches the existing call, the ALG processes it as a REINVITE.

When a message containing SDP information arrives, the ALG allocates ports and creates a NAT mapping between them and the ports in the SDP. Because the SDP requires sequential ports for the Real-Time Protocol (RTP) and Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) channels, the ALG provides consecutive even-odd ports. If it is unable to find a pair of ports, it discards the SIP message.

This topic covers:

- Outgoing Calls on page 331
- Incoming Calls on page 331
- Forwarded Calls on page 332
- Call Termination on page 332
- Call Re-INVITE Messages on page 332
- Call Session Timers on page 332
- Call Cancellation on page 333
- Forking on page 333
- SIP Messages on page 333
- SIP Headers on page 333
- SIP Body on page 335
- SIP NAT Scenario on page 336
- Classes of SIP Responses on page 338
- Related Topics on page 339

## **Outgoing Calls**

When a SIP call is initiated with a SIP request message from the internal to the external network, NAT replaces the IP addresses and port numbers in the SDP and binds the IP addresses and port numbers to the Juniper Networks firewall. Via, Contact, Route, and Record-Route SIP header fields, if present, are also bound to the firewall IP address. The ALG stores these mappings for use in retransmissions and for SIP response messages.

The SIP ALG then opens pinholes in the firewall to allow media through the J-series device on the dynamically assigned ports negotiated based on information in the SDP and the Via, Contact, and Record-Route header fields. The pinholes also allow incoming packets to reach the Contact, Via, and Record-Route IP addresses and ports. When processing return traffic, the ALG inserts the original Contact, Via, Route, and Record-Route SIP fields back into the packets.

## **Incoming Calls**

Incoming calls are initiated from the public network to public static NAT addresses or to interface IP addresses on the J-series device. Static NATs are statically configured

IP addresses that point to internal hosts; interface IP addresses are dynamically recorded by the ALG as it monitors REGISTER messages sent by internal hosts to the SIP registrar. When the J-series device receives an incoming SIP packet, it sets up a session and forwards the payload of the packet to the SIP ALG.

The ALG examines the SIP request message (initially an INVITE) and, based on information in the SDP, opens gates for outgoing media. When a 200 OK response message arrives, the SIP ALG performs NAT on the IP addresses and ports and opens pinholes in the outbound direction. (The opened gates have a short time-to-live, and they time out if a 200 OK response message is not received quickly.)

When a 200 OK response arrives, the SIP proxy examines the SDP information and reads the IP addresses and port numbers for each media session. The SIP ALG on the J-series device performs NAT on the addresses and port numbers, opens pinholes for outbound traffic, and refreshes the timeout for gates in the inbound direction.

When the ACK arrives for the 200 OK, it also passes through the SIP ALG. If the message contains SDP information, the SIP ALG ensures that the IP addresses and port numbers are not changed from the previous INVITE—if they are, the ALG deletes old pinholes and creates new pinholes to allow media to pass through. The ALG also monitors the Via, Contact, and Record-Route SIP fields and opens new pinholes if it determines that these fields have changed.

## **Forwarded Calls**

A forwarded call is when, for example, user A outside the network calls user B inside the network, and user B forwards the call to user C outside the network. The SIP ALG processes the INVITE from user A as a normal incoming call. But when the ALG examines the forwarded call from B to C outside the network and notices that B and C are reached using the same interface, it does not open pinholes in the firewall, because media will flow directly between user A and user C.

## **Call Termination**

The BYE message terminates a call. When the J-series device receives a BYE message, it translates the header fields just as it does for any other message. But because a BYE message must be acknowledged by the receiver with a 200 OK, the ALG delays call teardown for five seconds to allow time for transmission of the 200 OK.

## **Call Re-INVITE Messages**

Re-INVITE messages are used to add new media sessions to a call, and to remove existing media sessions. When new media sessions are added to a call, new pinholes are opened in the firewall and new address bindings created. The process is identical to the original call setup. When one or more media sessions are removed from a call, pinholes are closed and bindings released just as with a BYE message.

## **Call Session Timers**

The SIP ALG uses the Session-Expires value to time out a session if a Re-INVITE or UPDATE message is not received. The ALG gets the Session-Expires value, if present, from the 200 OK response to the INVITE and uses this value for signaling timeout.

If the ALG receives another INVITE before the session times out, it resets all timeout values to this new INVITE or to default values, and the process is repeated.

As a precautionary measure, the SIP ALG uses hard timeout values to set the maximum amount of time a call can exist. This ensures that the J-series device is protected should one of the following events occur:

- End systems crash during a call and a BYE message is not received.
- Malicious users never send a BYE in an attempt to attack a SIP ALG.
- Poor implementations of SIP proxy fail to process Record-Route and never send a BYE message.
- Network failures prevent a BYE message from being received.

## **Call Cancellation**

Either party can cancel a call by sending a CANCEL message. Upon receiving a CANCEL message, the SIP ALG closes pinholes through the firewall—if any have been opened—and releases address bindings. Before releasing the resources, the ALG delays the control channel age-out for approximately five seconds to allow time for the final 200 OK to pass through. The call is terminated when the five second timeout expires, regardless of whether a 487 or non-200 response arrives.

## **Forking**

Forking enables a SIP proxy to send a single INVITE message to multiple destinations simultaneously. When the multiple 200 OK response messages arrive for the single call, the SIP ALG parses but updates call information with the first 200 OK message it receives.

## **SIP Messages**

The SIP message format consists of a SIP header section and the SIP body. In request messages, the first line of the header section is the request line, which includes the method type, request-URI, and protocol version. In response messages, the first line is the status line, which contains a status code. SIP headers contain IP addresses and port numbers used for signaling. The SIP body, separated from the header section by a blank line, is reserved for session description information, which is optional. J-series devices currently support the Session Description Protocol (SDP) only. The SIP body contains IP addresses and port numbers used to transport the media.

## **SIP Headers**

In the following sample SIP request message, NAT replaces the IP addresses in the header fields—shown in bold font—to hide them from the outside network.

```
INVITE bob@10.150.20.5 SIP/2.0
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP 10.150.20.3:5434
From: alice@10.150.20.3
To: bob@10.150.20.5
Call-ID: a12abcde@10.150.20.3
```

Contact: alice@10.150.20.3:5434  
 Route: <sip:netscreen@10.150.20.3:5060>  
 Record-Route: <sip:netscreen@10.150.20.3:5060>

How IP address translation is performed depends on the type and direction of the message. A message can be any of the following:

- Inbound request
- Outbound response
- Outbound request
- Inbound response

Table 75 on page 334 shows how NAT is performed in each of these cases. Note that for several of the header fields the ALG must know more than just whether the messages comes from inside or outside the network. It must also know what client initiated the call, and whether the message is a request or response.

**Table 75: Requesting Messages with NAT Table continued on next page**

Inbound Request (from public to private)	To:	Replace domain with local address
	From:	None
	Call-ID:	None
	Via:	None
	Request-URI:	Replace ALG address with local address
	Contact:	None
	Record-Route:	None
	Route:	None
Outbound Response (from private to public)	To:	Replace ALG address with local address
	From:	None
	Call-ID:	None
	Via:	None
	Request-URI:	N/A
	Contact:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Record-Route:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Route:	None



**Table 75: Requesting Messages with NAT Table continued on next page** *(continued)*

Outbound Request	To:	None
(from private to public)	From:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Call-ID:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Via:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Request-URI:	None
	Contact:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Record-Route:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Route:	Replace ALG address with local address
Outbound Response	To:	None
(from public to private)	From:	Replace ALG address with local address
	Call-ID:	Replace ALG address with local address
	Via:	Replace ALG address with local address
	Request-URI:	N/A
	Contact:	None
	Record-Route:	Replace ALG address with local address
	Route:	Replace ALG address with local address

## SIP Body

The SDP information in the SIP body includes IP addresses the ALG uses to create channels for the media stream. Translation of the SDP section also allocates resources, that is, port numbers to send and receive the media.

The following excerpt from a sample SDP section shows the fields that are translated for resource allocation.

```
o=user 2344234 55234434 IN IP4 10.150.20.3
c=IN IP4 10.150.20.3
m=audio 43249 RTP/AVP 0
```

SIP messages can contain more than one media stream. The concept is similar to attaching multiple files to an e-mail message. For example, an INVITE message sent from a SIP client to a SIP server might have the following fields:

```
c=IN IP4 10.123.33.4
m=audio 33445 RTP/AVP 0
c=IN IP4 10.123.33.4
m=audio 33447 RTP/AVP 0
```

```
c=IN IP4 10.123.33.4  
m=audio 33449 RTP/AVP 0
```

J-series devices support up to 6 SDP channels negotiated for each direction, for a total of 12 channels per call. For more information, see “SDP Session Descriptions” on page 316.

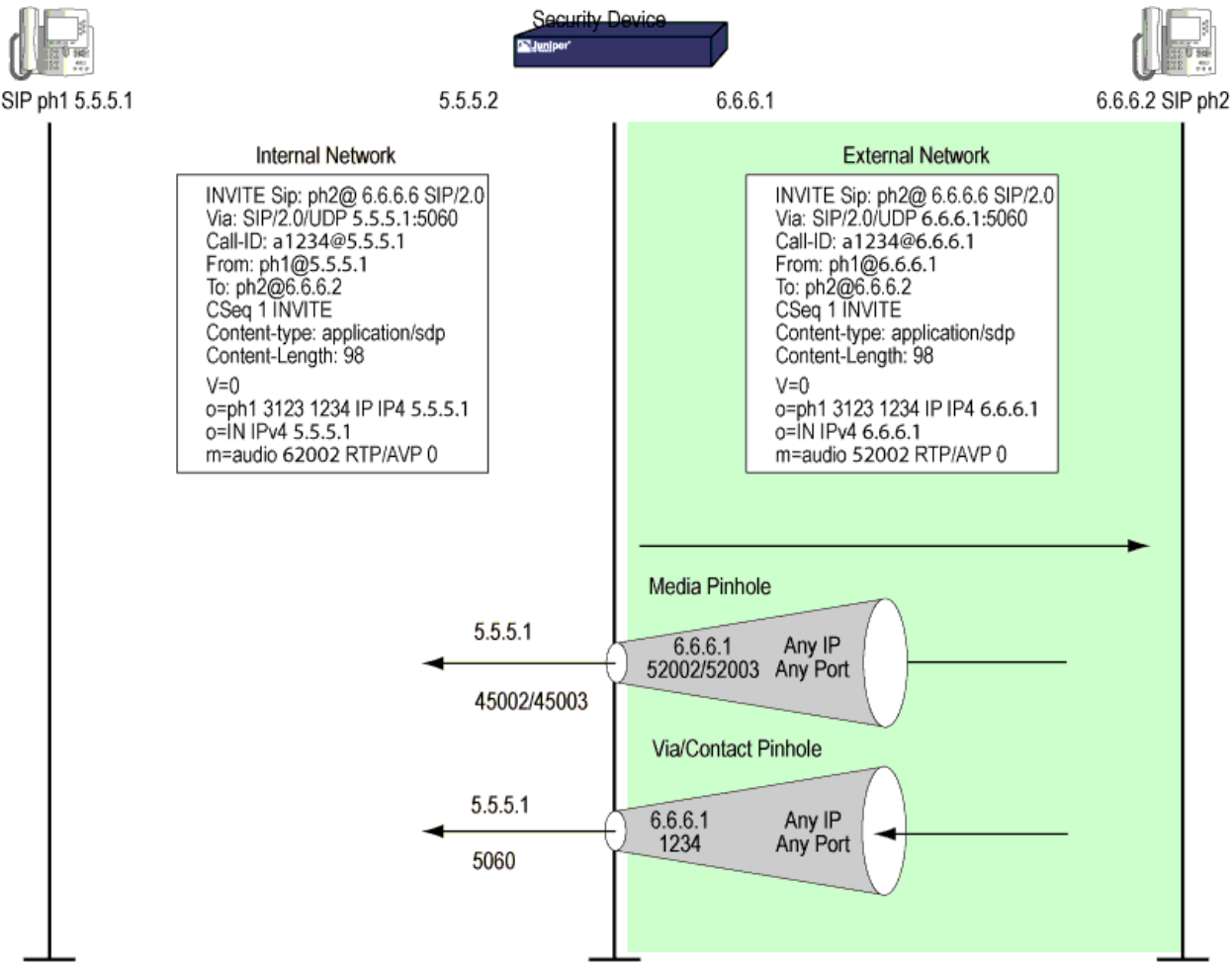
## ***SIP NAT Scenario***

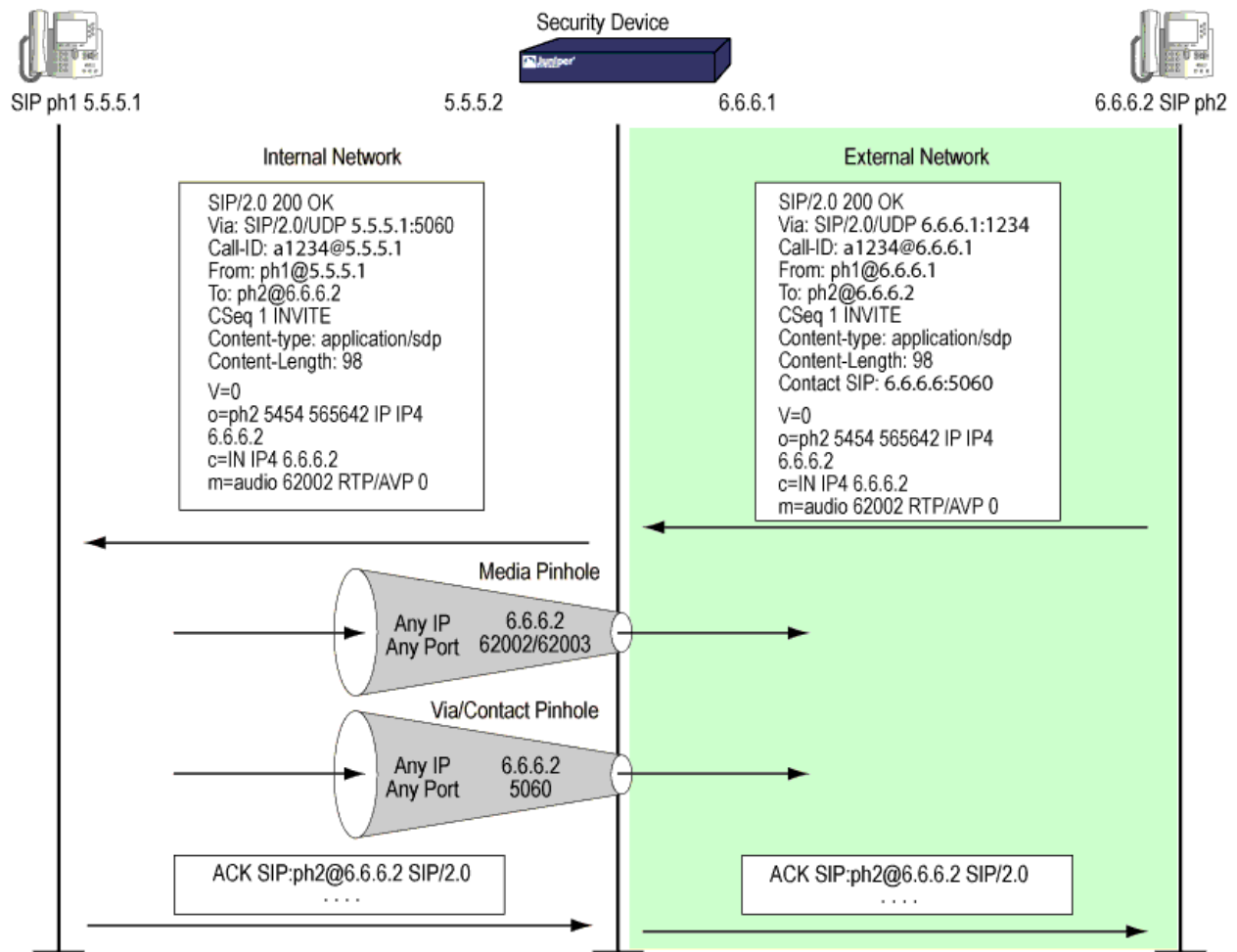
Figure 73 on page 337 and Figure 74 on page 338 show a SIP call INVITE and 200 OK. In Figure 73 on page 337, ph1 sends a SIP INVITE message to ph2. Note how the IP addresses in the header fields—shown in bold font—are translated by the J-series device.

The SDP section of the INVITE message indicates where the caller is willing to receive media. Note that the Media Pinhole contains two port numbers, 52002 and 52003, for RTCP and RTP. The Via/Contact Pinhole provides port number 5060 for SIP signaling.

Observe how, in the 200 OK response message in Figure 74 on page 338, the translations performed in the INVITE message are reversed. The IP addresses in this message, being public, are not translated, but gates are opened to allow the media stream access to the private network.

Figure 73: SIP NAT Scenario 1



**Figure 74: SIP NAT Scenario 2**

### Classes of SIP Responses

SIP responses provide status information about SIP transactions and include a response code and a reason phrase. SIP responses are grouped into the following classes:

- Informational (100 to 199)—Request received, continuing to process the request.
- Success (200 to 299)—Action successfully received, understood, and accepted.
- Redirection (300 to 399)—Further action required to complete the request.
- Client Error (400 to 499)—Request contains bad syntax or cannot be fulfilled at this server.
- Server Error (500 to 599)—Server failed to fulfill an apparently valid request.
- Global Failure (600 to 699)—Request cannot be fulfilled at any server.

Table 76 on page 339 provides a complete list of current SIP responses, all of which are supported on J-series devices.

**Table 76: SIP Responses**

Informational	100 Trying	180 Ringing	181 Call is being forwarded
	182 Queued	183 Session progress	
Success	200 OK	202 Accepted	
Redirection	300 Multiple choices	301 Moved permanently	302 Moved temporarily
	305 Use proxy	380 Alternative service	
Client Error	400 Bad request	401 Unauthorized	402 Payment required
	403 Forbidden	404 Not found	405 Method not allowed
	406 Not acceptable	407 Proxy authentication required	408 Request time-out
	409 Conflict	410 Gone	411 Length required
	413 Request entity too large	414 Request-URL too large	415 Unsupported media type
	420 Bad extension	480 Temporarily not available	481 Call leg/transaction does not exist
	482 Loop detected	483 Too many hops	484 Address incomplete
	485 Ambiguous	486 Busy here	487 Request canceled
	488 Not acceptable here		
Server Error	500 Server internal error	501 Not implemented	502 Bad gateway
	502 Service unavailable	504 Gateway time-out	505 SIP version not supported
Global Failure	600 Busy everywhere	603 Decline	604 Does not exist anywhere
	606 Not acceptable		

**Related Topics**

- Configuring Host Inbound Traffic on page 75
- Understanding Security Zones on page 69

**Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar**

SIP registration provides a discovery capability by which SIP proxies and location servers are able to identify the location or locations where users want to be contacted. A user registers one or more contact locations by sending a REGISTER message to the registrar. The To and Contact fields in the REGISTER message contain the address-of-record Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) and one or more contact URIs,

as shown in Figure 75 on page 341. Registration creates bindings in a location service that associates the address-of-record with the contact address or addresses.

---

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read

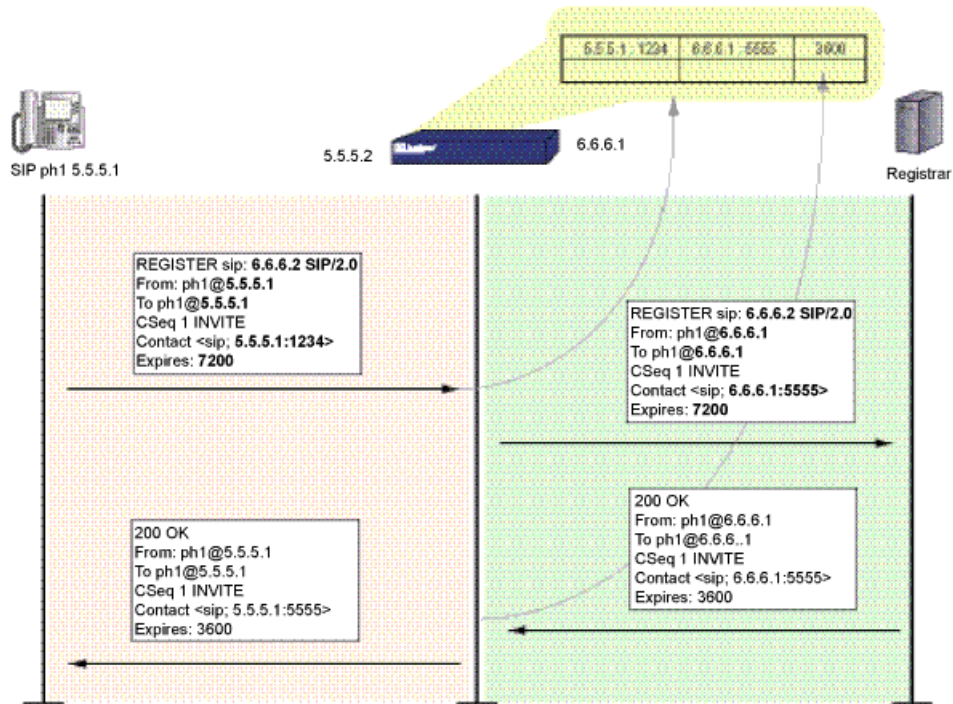
- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
  - SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318
  - Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- 

The J-series device monitors outgoing REGISTER messages, performs NAT on these addresses, and stores the information in an Incoming Incoming NAT table. Then, when an INVITE message is received from outside the network, the J-series device uses the Incoming NAT table to identify which internal host to route the INVITE message to. You can take advantage of SIP proxy registration service to allow incoming calls by configuring interface source NAT or NAT pools on the egress interface of the J-series device. Interface source NAT is adequate for handling incoming calls in a small office, while we recommend setting up source NAT pools for larger networks or an enterprise environment.



**NOTE:** Incoming call support using interface source NAT or a source NAT pool is supported for SIP and H.323 services only. For incoming calls, J-series devices currently support UDP and TCP only. Domain name resolution is also currently not supported; therefore, URIs must contain IP addresses, as shown in Figure 75 on page 341.

---

**Figure 75: Using the SIP Registrar****Related Topics**

- Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 342
- Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls on page 344
- Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 349
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone on page 354
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Public Zone on page 356
- Configuring a Three-Zone SIP Scenario on page 361
- Incoming Calls on page 331
- Outgoing Calls on page 331

## Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls

In a two-zone scenario with the SIP proxy server in an external, or public zone, you can use NAT for incoming calls by configuring source NAT on the interface to the public zone.

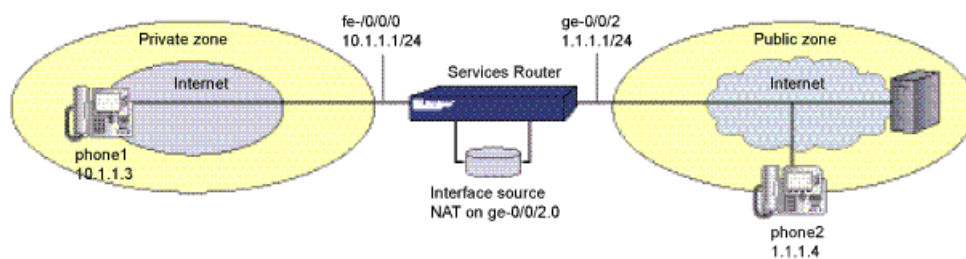
### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318
- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339

In this example, phone1 is on the ge-0/0/0 interface in the private zone, and phone2 and the proxy server are on the ge-0/0/2 interface in the public zone. You configure interface source NAT on ge-0/0/2.0 for incoming calls, then create a policy permitting SIP traffic from the public zone to the private zone and reference the source NAT in the policy. You also create a policy that permits SIP traffic from the private to the public zone, again referencing the source NAT address pool. This enables phone1 in the private zone to register with the proxy in the public zone. See Figure 76 on page 342.

**Figure 76: Source NAT for Incoming Calls**



To configure interface source NAT for incoming calls, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 342
- Related Topics on page 343

### CLI Configuration

1. Configure interfaces.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
```



```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone private interface ge-0/0/0.0
```

2. Configure addresses.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1
10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address proxy
10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2
1.1.1.4/32
```

3. Configure zones.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private
user@host# set security zones security-zone public
user@host# set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
```

4. Configure source NAT.

```
user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/2.0 source-nat allow-incoming
user@host# set security nat source-nat address-persistent
```

5. Configure policies.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
match source-address phone1 destination-address any application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
then permit source-nat interface
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
match source-address any destination-address incoming-nat-fe0/0/2.0
application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
then permit
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339
- Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 349
- Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls on page 344
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone on page 354
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Public Zone on page 356
- Configuring a Three-Zone SIP Scenario on page 361

## Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls

In a two-zone scenario with the SIP proxy server in an external, or public zone, you can use NAT for incoming calls by configuring a NAT pool on the interface to the public zone.

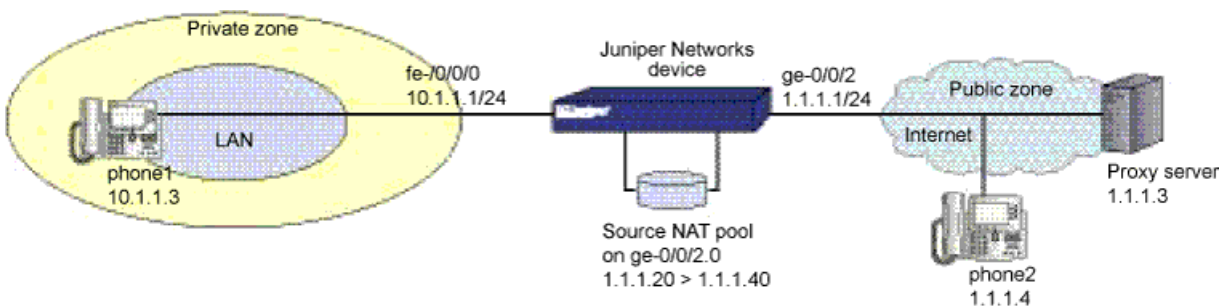
### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318
- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339

In this example, phone1 is in the private zone, and phone2 and the proxy server are in the public zone. You configure a source NAT pool on the ge-0/0/2.0 interface to do NAT on incoming calls, then set a policy permitting SIP traffic from the public zone to the private zone and reference the NAT pool in the policy. You also create a policy that permits SIP traffic from the private to the public zone.. This enables phone1 in the private zone to register with the proxy in the public zone. See Figure 77 on page 344.

**Figure 77: Source NAT Pool for Incoming Calls**



To configure a source NAT pool for incoming calls, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 344
- CLI Configuration on page 348
- Related Topics on page 349

### J-Web Configuration

To configure interfaces:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Interfaces, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Interface, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Interface name box, type **ge-0/0/0**.
5. Next to Unit, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Interface unit number box, type **0**.
7. Under Family, select **inet** and click **Configure**.
8. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
9. To specify the source address, next to Source box, type **10.1.1.1/24** and click **OK**.
10. To configure other interface, **ge-0/0/2**, and to add address, repeat Step 2 through Step 9 and click **OK**.
11. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure a private zone and assign an interface to it:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **private**.
6. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/0.0** and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure addresses:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **private**.
6. Next to Address book click **Configure**.
7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address name box, type **phone1 10.1.1.3/32** and click **OK**.

9. To configure more security zones, public, and address books entries such as proxy 10.1.1.3/32 and phone2 1.1.1.4/32, repeat Step 3 through Step 7 and click **OK**.
10. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **private** and click **OK**.
6. To specify the name of the another security zone, click **Add new entry** next to Security zone.
7. Next to the Name box, type **public** and click **OK**.
8. To configure an interface to the private zone, click **private**.
9. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/0.0** and click **OK**.
11. To configure an interface to the public zone, click **public**.
12. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
13. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/2.0** and click **OK**.
14. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure source NAT pool:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Source Nat, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Address persistent, select the check box and click **OK**.
5. Next to Interface, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Name box, type **ge-0/0/2.0**.
7. Next to Source nat, click **Configure**.
8. Next to Pool, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Name box, type **sip-pool**.
10. Next to Address range, click **Add new entry**.
11. Next to High box, type **1.1.1.60** and next to Low box, type **1.1.1.20** and click **OK**.

12. Next to Allow incoming, select the check box and click **OK**.
13. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure policies:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **private**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **public**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **outgoing**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.
10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Next to Match check box, click **Configure**.
12. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
15. In the Address box, type **phone1** and click **OK**.
16. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
17. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
18. Next to Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
19. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
20. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
21. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-sip** and click **OK**.
22. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
23. Next to Action, select **permit**.
24. Click **Configure** next to Permit.
25. Next to Source nat, select the check box and click **Configure**.
26. From the Source nat choice list, select **interface** and click **OK**.
27. In the From zone name box, type **private**.
28. In the To zone name box, type **public**.
29. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
30. In the Policy name box, type **incoming**.

31. Select the **Match** check box.
32. Select the **Then** check box.
33. Click **Configure** next to Match check box.
34. Next to Source address choice list select **Source address**.
35. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
36. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
37. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
38. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
39. Next to Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
40. To specify the address, type **incoming-nat-fe0/0/2.0** and click **OK**.
41. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
42. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
43. Next to Value keyword box, type **junos-sip** and click **OK**.
44. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
45. Next to Action, select **permit**.
46. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure interfaces.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone private interface ge-0/0/0.0
```

2. Configure addresses.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1
10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address proxy
10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2
1.1.1.4/32
```

3. Configure zones.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private
user@host# set security zones security-zone public
user@host# set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
```

4. Configure the source NAT pool.

```
user@host# set security nat source-nat address-persistent
user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/2.0 source-nat pool sip-pool
address-range low 1.1.1.20 high 1.1.1.60
```

```
user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/2.0 source-nat pool sip-pool allow incoming
```

5. Configure policies.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
match source-address phone1 destination-address any application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
then permit source-nat pool sip-pool
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy incoming
match source-address any destination-address incoming-nat-sip-pool application
junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
then permit
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339
- Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 342
- Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 349
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone on page 354
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Public Zone on page 356
- Configuring a Three-Zone SIP Scenario on page 361

## Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls

---

When you locate the SIP proxy server in an external, or public, zone, static NAT configured on the interface to the public will enable callers in the internal, or private, zone to register with the proxy.

---

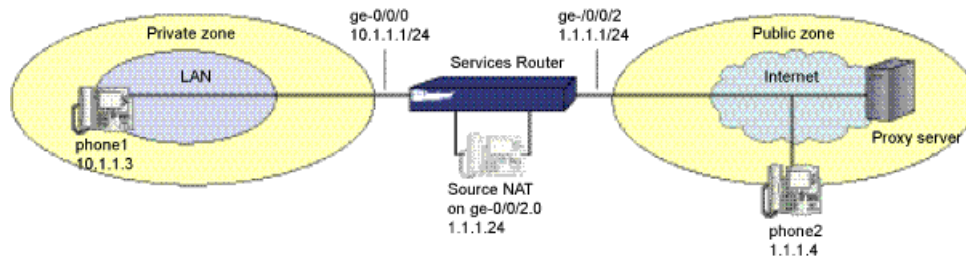
For background information, read

- “Understanding the SIP ALG” on page 313
  - “SIP ALG Request Methods Overview” on page 318
  - “Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT)” on page 330
  - “Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar” on page 339
- 

In this example, phone1 is on the ge-0/0/0 interface in the private zone, and phone2 and the proxy server are on the ge-0/0/2 interface in the public zone. You configure static NAT on the ge-0/0/2.0 interface to phone1, then create policies that allow SIP traffic from the public zone to the private zone, and reference the static NAT in the policy. This example is similar to the (“Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls” on page 342 and “Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls” on page 344, except that with static NAT you need one public address for each private

address in the private zone, while with a DIP pool a single interface address can serve multiple private addresses. See Figure 78 on page 350.

**Figure 78: Static NAT for Incoming Calls**



To configure static NAT for incoming calls, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 350
- CLI Configuration on page 353
- Related Topics on page 354

## J-Web Configuration

To configure interfaces:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Interfaces, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Interface name box, type **ge-0/0/0**.
5. Next to Unit, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Interface unit number box, type **0**.
7. Under Family, select **inet** and click **Configure**.
8. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Source box, type **10.1.1.1/24** and click **OK**.
10. To configure other interface, ge-0/0/2, and to add address, repeat Step 2 through Step 9, and click **OK**.
11. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure a zone and assign an interface:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.



3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **private**.
6. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/0.0** and click **OK**.
8. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure addresses:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **private**.
6. Next to Address book, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address name box, type **phone1 10.1.1.3/32**.
9. To configure more security zones, public, and address books entries such as proxy 10.1.1.3/32 and phone2 1.1.1.4/32, repeat Step 3 through Step 8 and click **OK**.
10. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **private** and click **OK**.
6. To specify the name of the another security zone, next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Name box, type **public** and click **OK**.
8. To configure an interface to the private zone, click **private**.
9. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/0.0** and click **OK**.
11. To configure an interface to the public zone, click **public**.
12. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.

13. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/0.0** and click **OK**.
14. To configure an interface to the private zone, click **private**.
15. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
16. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/2.0** and click **OK**.
17. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure static NAT:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Nat, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ge-0/0/2.0** and click **OK**.
6. Under the Name column, click **ge-0/0/2.0**.
7. Next to Static nat, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address box, type **1.1.1.3/32**.
9. In the Host box, type **10.1.1.3/32** and click **OK**.
10. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure policies:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **public**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **private** and click **OK**.
7. Under the From zone name column, click **public**.
8. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Policy name box, type **incoming**.
10. Select the **Match** check box.
11. Select the **Then** check box.
12. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
13. Next to Source address, select **Source address**.
14. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
15. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.

16. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
17. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
18. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
19. In the Address box, type **static\_nat\_1.1.1.3-32** and click **OK**.
20. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
21. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
22. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-jsrp** and click **OK**.
23. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
24. Next to Action, select **permit** and click **OK**.
25. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure interfaces.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone private interface ge-0/0/0.0
```

2. Configure addresses.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1
10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address proxy
10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2
1.1.1.4/32
```

3. Configure zones.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private
user@host# set security zones security-zone public
user@host# set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
```

4. Configure static NAT.

```
user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/2.0 static-nat 1.1.1.3/32 host
10.1.1.3/32
```

5. Configure Policies.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
match source-address any destination-address static_nat_1.1.1.3-32 application
junos-jsrp
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
then permit
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339
- Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 342
- Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls on page 344
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone on page 354
- Configuring a Three-Zone SIP Scenario on page 361

## Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone

With the SIP proxy server in the internal, or private, zone, static NAT on the interface to the external, or public, zone is sufficient to allow callers in the public zone to register with the proxy server.

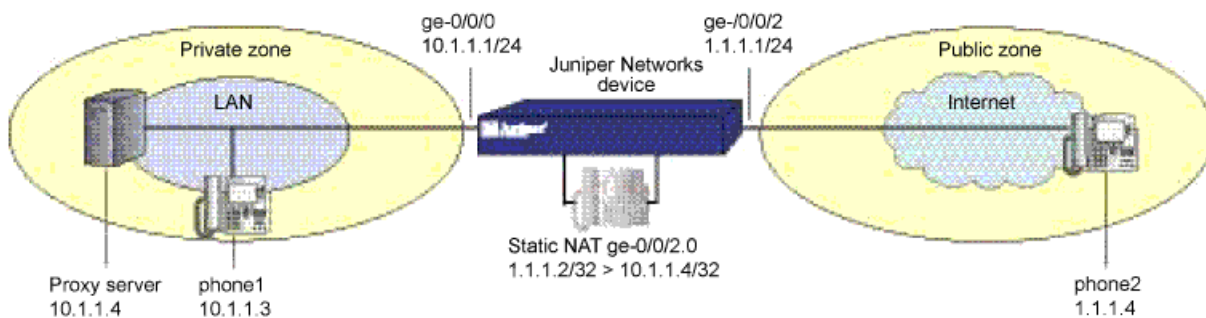
### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318
- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339

In this example, phone1 and the SIP proxy server are on the ge-0/0/0 interface in the private zone, and phone2 is on the ge-0/0/2 interface in the public zone. You configure static NAT on the ge-0/0/2 interface to the proxy server to allow phone2 to register with the proxy, then create a policy allowing SIP traffic from the public to the private zone to enable callers in the public zone to register with the proxy, and a policy from the private to the public zone to allow phone1 to call out. See Figure 79 on page 354.

**Figure 79: Proxy in the Private Zone**



Use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 355
- Related Topics on page 356

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure interfaces.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
```

2. Configure zones.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private
user@host# set security zones security-zone public
user@host# set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
```

3. Configure addresses.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1
10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone private address-book address proxy
10.1.1.4/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2
1.1.1.4/32
```

4. Configure static-NAT.

```
user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/2.0 static-nat 1.1.1.2/32 host
10.1.1.4/32
```

5. Configure policies.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
match destination-address phone2
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
match application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
then permit source-nat interface
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
match source-address phone2
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
match destination-address static_nat_1.1.1.2_32
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
match application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
then permit
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339
- Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls on page 344
- Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 349
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone on page 354
- Configuring a Three-Zone SIP Scenario on page 361
- Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 349

## Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Public Zone

When you locate the SIP proxy server in an external, or public, zone, you will typically want to configure NAT on the interface to that zone.

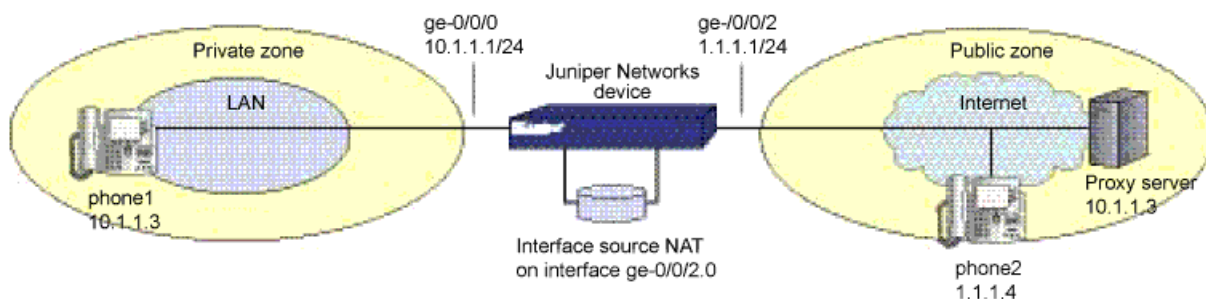
### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- SIP ALG Request Methods Overview on page 318
- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339

In this example, phone1 is on the ge-0/0/0.0 interface in the private zone, and the proxy server and phone2 are on the ge-0/0/2.0 interface in the public zone. You configure source NAT on interface 0/0/2.0 in the public zone, then create a policy permitting SIP traffic from the public zone to the private zone and reference the NAT interface. You also create a policy from private to public to allow phone1 to register with the proxy server in the public zone. See Figure 80 on page 356.

**Figure 80: Proxy in the Public Zone**



To configure the SIP proxy in the public zone, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 357
- CLI Configuration on page 360
- Related Topic on page 361

## **J-Web Configuration**

To configure interfaces:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Interfaces**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Interface**, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the **Interface name** box, type **ge-0/0/0**.
5. Next to **Unit**, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to **Interface unit number**, type **0**.
7. Next to **Inet**, select the check box and click **Configure**.
8. Next to **Address**, click **Add new entry**.
9. Next to **Source**, type **10.1.1.1/24** and click **OK**.
10. To configure another interface, ge-0/0/2, and address, 1.1.1.1/24, repeat Step 2 through Step 9 and click **OK**.
11. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Zones**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Security zones**, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the **Name** box, type **private** and click **OK**.
6. Next to **Security zone**, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the **Name** box, type **public** and click **OK**.
8. To configure an interface to the private zone, click **private**.
9. Next to **Interfaces**, click **Add new entry**.
10. Next to **Interface unit box**, type **ge-0/0/0.0** and click **OK**.
11. To configure an interface to the public zone, click **public**.

12. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
13. Next to Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/2.0** and click **OK**.
14. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure addresses:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **private**.
6. Next to Address book, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address name box, type **phone1 10.1.1.3/32** and click **OK**.
9. To configure another security zone public and address books entries such as phone2 1.1.1.4/32 and proxy 1.1.1.3/32, repeat Step 4 through Step 8 and click **OK**.
10. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To interface Source-Nat:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Nat, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Source nat, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Address persistent, select the check box and click **OK**.
6. Next to Interface, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Name box, type **ge-0/0/2.0**.
8. Next to Allow incoming, select the check box and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure policies:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **private**.



6. In the To zone name box, type **public** and click **OK**.
7. Under the From zone name column, click **private**.
8. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Policy name box, type **outgoing**.
10. Select the **Match** check box.
11. Select the **Then** check box.
12. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
13. Next to Source address, select **Source address**.
14. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
15. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
16. In the Address box, type **phone1** and click **OK**.
17. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
18. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
19. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
20. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
21. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
22. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-sip** and click **OK**.
23. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
24. Next to Action, select **permit** and click **OK**.
25. Next to Permit, click **Configure**.
26. Select the Source Nat check box, and click **Configure**.
27. From the Source nat list, select **Interface** and click **OK**.
28. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure another policy From-zone, public, and To zone, private, follow the sequence of steps listed below:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **public**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **private** and click **OK**.
7. Under the From zone name column, click **public**.
8. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Policy name box, type **incoming**.

10. Select the **Match** check box.
11. Select the **Then** check box.
12. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
13. Next to Source address, select **Source address**.
14. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
15. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
16. In the Address box, type **phone2** and click **OK**.
17. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
18. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
19. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
20. In the Address box, type **incoming\_nat\_ge-0/0/2.0** and click **OK**.
21. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
22. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
23. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-sip** and click **OK**.
24. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
25. Next to Action, select **permit** and click **OK**.
26. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure interfaces.
 

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
```
2. Configure zones.
 

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private
user@host# set security zones security-zone public
user@host# set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
```
3. Configure addresses.
 

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1
10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2
1.1.1.4/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address proxy
1.1.1.3/32
```
4. Configure interface source-Nat.
 

```
user@host# set security nat source-nat address-persistent
user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/2.0 allow-incoming
```

## 5. Configure policies.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
match source-address phone1
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
match application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing
then permit source-nat interface
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
match destination-address incoming_nat_ge-0/0/2.0
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
match application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming
then permit

```

**Related Topic**

- “Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT)” on page 330
- “Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar” on page 339
- “Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls” on page 342
- “Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls” on page 344
- “Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls” on page 349
- “Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone” on page 354
- “Configuring a Three-Zone SIP Scenario” on page 361

**Configuring a Three-Zone SIP Scenario**

In a three-zone SIP configuration, the SIP proxy server is typically in a different zone than the calling and called parties. Such a scenario requires additional address and zone configuration, and policies to ensure that all parties have access to each other and to the proxy server.

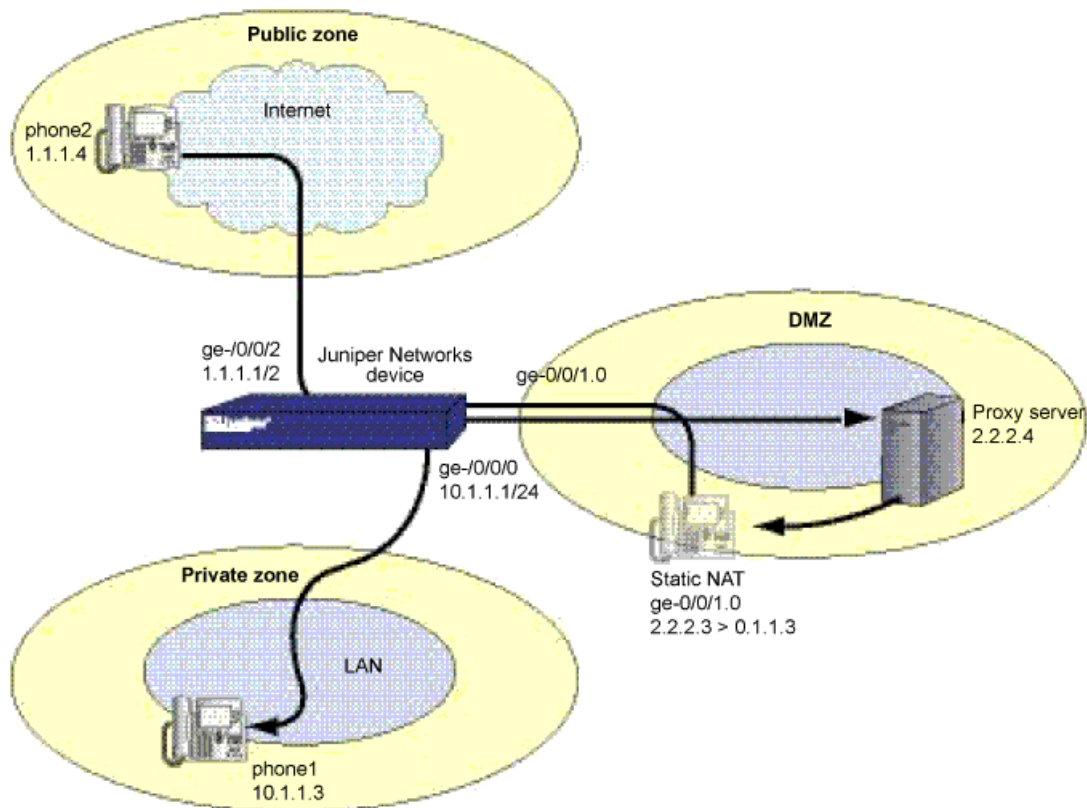
**Before You Begin**

For background information, read

- “Understanding the SIP ALG” on page 313.
- “SIP ALG Request Methods Overview” on page 318.
- “Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT)” on page 330.
- “Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar” on page 339.

In this example, phone1 is on the ge-0/0/0 interface in the private zone, phone2 is on the ge-0/0/2 interface in the public zone, and the proxy server is on the ge-0/0/1.0 interface in the DMZ. You configure static NAT on the ge-0/0/1 interface to phone1 in the private zone. You then create policies from the private zone to the DMZ and from the DMZ to the private zone, from the public zone to the DMZ and from the DMZ to the public zone, and from the private zone to the public zone. The arrows in Figure 81 on page 362 show the flow of SIP signaling traffic when phone2 in the public zone places a call to phone1 in the private zone. After the session is initiated, the media flows directly between phone1 and phone2.

**Figure 81: Three-Zone, Proxy in the DMZ**



To configure a three-zone SIP scenario, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 362
- CLI Configuration on page 368
- Related Topics on page 370

## J-Web Configuration

To configure interfaces:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Interfaces, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Interface, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Interface name box, type **ge-0/0/0**.
5. Next to Unit, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Interface unit number, type **0**.
7. Next to Inet, select the check box and click **Configure**.
8. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
9. Next to Source, type **10.1.1.1/24** and click **OK**.
10. To configure another interface, ge-0/0/1 and ge-0/0/2, and addresses, 2.2.2.2/24 and 1.1.1.1/24, repeat Step 2 through Step 9 and click **OK**.
11. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **private** and click **OK**.
6. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Name box, type **public** and click **OK**.
8. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Name box, type **dmz** and click **OK**.
10. To configure an interface to the private zone, click **private**.
11. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
12. Next to Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/0.0** and click **OK**.
13. To configure an interface to the public zone, click **public**.
14. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
15. Next to Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/2.0** and click **OK**.
16. To configure an interface to the dmz, click **dmz**.
17. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
18. Next to Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.0** and click **OK**.
19. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure addresses:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **private**.
6. Next to Address book, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address name box, type **phone1 10.1.1.3/32** and click **OK**.
9. To configure more security zones, public and dmz, and address books entries such as phone2 1.1.1.4/32 and proxy 2.2.2.4/32, repeat Step 4 through Step 8, and click **OK**.
10. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure static NAT:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Nat, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ge-0/0/1.0**.
6. Next to Static nat, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Address box, type **2.2.2.3/32**.
8. In the Host box, type **10.1.1.3/32** and click **OK**.
9. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure policies:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **private**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **dmz**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **private-to-proxy**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.

10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Next to Match check box, click **Configure**.
12. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
15. In the Address box, type **phone1** and click **OK**.
16. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
17. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
18. Next to Value keyword list, select **proxy** and click **OK**.
19. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
20. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
21. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-sip** and click **OK**.
22. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
23. Next to Action, select **permit**.
24. Click **Configure** next to Permit.
25. Next to Source nat, select the check box and click **Configure**.
26. From the Source nat choice list, select **interface** and click **OK**.

To configure from zone, public, and to zone, dmz, and the respective source address, destination address, and application:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **public**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **private**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **public-to-proxy**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.
10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Click **Configure** next to Match check box.
12. Next to Source address choice list select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, type **phone2** and click **OK**.
15. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.

16. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
17. Next to Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
18. To specify the address, type **proxy** and click **OK**.
19. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
20. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
21. Next to Value keyword box, type **junos-sip** and click **OK**.
22. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
23. Next to Action, select **permit** and click **OK**.

To configure from zone, private, and to zone, public, and the respective source address, destination address, and application:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **private**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **public**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **private-to-public**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.
10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Next to Match check box, click **Configure**.
12. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
15. In the Address box, type **phone1** and click **OK**.
16. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
17. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
18. Next to Value keyword list, type **phone2** and click **OK**.
19. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
20. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
21. In the Value keyword box, type **junos-sip** and click **OK**.
22. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
23. Next to Action, select **permit**.
24. Click **Configure** next to Permit.



25. Next to Source nat, select the check box and click **Configure**.
26. From the Source nat choice list, select **interface** and click **OK**.

To configure from zone, dmz, and to zone, private, and the respective source address, destination address, and application:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**
5. In the From zone name box, type **dmz**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **private**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **proxy-to-private**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.
10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Click **Configure** next to Match check box.
12. Next to Source address choice list select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, type **proxy** and click **OK**.
15. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
16. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
17. Next to Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
18. To specify the address, type **static\_nat\_2.2.2.3\_32** and click **OK**.
19. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
20. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
21. Next to Value keyword box, type **junos-sip** and click **OK**.
22. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
23. Next to Action, select permit and click **OK**.

To configure from zone, dmz, and to zone, public, and the respective source address, destination address, and application:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**

5. In the From zone name box, type **dmz**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **public**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **proxy-to-public**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.
10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Click **Configure** next to Match check box.
12. Next to Source address choice list select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, type **proxy** and click **OK**.
15. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
16. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
17. Next to Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
18. To specify the address, type **phone2** and click **OK**.
19. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
20. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
21. Next to Value keyword box, type **junos-sip** and click **OK**.
22. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
23. Next to Action, select **permit** and click **OK**.
24. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.
25. To check the configuration, see “Verifying the SIP Configuration” on page 522.

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure interfaces.
 

```

user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 2.2.2.2/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
      
```
2. Configure zones.
 

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
      
```
3. Configure addresses.
 

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1
10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2
1.1.1.4/32
      
```

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz address-book address proxy
2.2.2.4/32
```

4. Configure static-NAT.

```
user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/1.0 static-nat 2.2.2.3/32 host
10.1.1.3/32
```

5. Configure policies.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone dmz policy
private-to-proxy match source-address phone1
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone dmz policy
private-to-proxy match destination-address proxy
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone dmz policy
private-to-proxy match application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone dmz policy
private-to-proxy then permit source-nat interface
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone dmz policy public-to-proxy
match source-address phone2
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone dmz policy public-to-proxy
match destination-address proxy
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone dmz policy public-to-proxy
match application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone dmz policy public-to-proxy
then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy
private-to-public match source-address phone1
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy
private-to-public match destination-address phone2
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy
private-to-public match application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy
private-to-public then permit source-nat interface
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone private policy
proxy-to-private match source-address proxy
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone private policy
proxy-to-private match destination-address static_nat_2.2.2.3_32
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone private policy
proxy-to-private match application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone private policy
proxy-to-private then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone public policy proxy-to-public
match source-address proxy
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone public policy proxy-to-public
match destination-address phone2
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone public policy proxy-to-public
match application junos-sip
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone public policy proxy-to-public
then permit
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding SIP with Network Address Translation (NAT) on page 330
- Understanding Incoming SIP Call Support Using the SIP Registrar on page 339
- Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 342
- Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls on page 344
- Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 349
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone on page 354
- Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Public Zone on page 356

## Verifying the SIP Configuration

---

To verify the SIP configuration, perform these tasks:

- “Verifying SIP Calls” on page 371
- “Verifying SIP Call Detail” on page 372
- “Verifying SIP Transactions” on page 372
- “Verifying SIP Counters” on page 373
- “Verifying the Rate of SIP Messages” on page 374

## Verifying the SIP ALG

**Purpose** Display SIP verification options.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show security alg sip ?` command.

```
user@host> show security alg sip ?
Possible completions:
calls           Show SIP calls
counters        Show SIP counters
rate            Show SIP rate
transaction     Show SIP transactions
```

**What it Means** The output shows a list of all SIP verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- Calls—Lists all SIP calls.
- Counters—Provides counters of response codes for each SIP request method and error type.
- Rate—Provides speed and periodicity of SIP signaling messages.
- Transaction—provides passage time for last message, for all messages, and the rate at which messages transit the network.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Verifying SIP Calls on page 371
- Verifying SIP Call Detail on page 372
- Verifying SIP Transactions on page 372
- Verifying SIP Counters on page 373
- Verifying the Rate of SIP Messages on page 374

## Verifying SIP Calls

**Purpose** Display information about active calls.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor > ALGs > SIP > Calls**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg sip calls` command.

```
user@host> show security alg sip calls
Total number of calls: 1
  Call leg 1 zone: 1
    UAS call ID: 000ed748-5533005e-11d97de9-77759865@10.10.10.254 (pending
transactions 0)
    Local tag   : 000f90542e7e005c7807c3a0-0647d41e
    Remote tag  : 000ed748553300724648b313-2ccd0d9a
    State       : STATE_ESTABLISHED
  Call leg 2 zone: 1
    UAC call ID: 000ed748-5533005e-11d97de9-77759865@10.10.10.254 (pending
transactions 0)
    Local tag   : 000ed748553300724648b313-2ccd0d9a
    Remote tag  : 000f90542e7e005c7807c3a0-0647d41e
    State       : STATE_ESTABLISHED
```

**What it Means** The output shows a list of all active SIP calls. Verify the following information:

- Each call leg and associated zone.
- The User Agent Server (UAS) call ID and local and remote tags, and the state of the call.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Verifying the SIP ALG on page 370
- Verifying SIP Call Detail on page 372
- Verifying SIP Transactions on page 372
- Verifying SIP Counters on page 373
- Verifying the Rate of SIP Messages on page 374

## Verifying SIP Call Detail

**Purpose** Display address and Session Description Protocol (SDP) about active calls.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor > ALGs > SIP > Calls**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg sip calls detail` command.

```
user@host> show security alg sip calls detail
Total number of calls: 1
  Call ID   : 000ed748-5533005e-11d97de9-77759865@10.10.10.254
  Local tag : 000f90542e7e005c7807c3a0-0647d41e
  Remote tag : 000ed748553300724648b313-2ccd0d9a
  State     : STATE_ESTABLISHED
  RM Group  : 2048
```

	Local Info		Remote Info		RM Info
	-----		-----		-----
Call leg 1:	IP	Port	IP	Port	RSC id
Host	10.10.10.10	5060	10.10.10.10	5060	
Contact	10.10.10.100	5060	10.10.10.254	1025	8191
Contact maddr-			-		
SDP:c	10.10.10.100		10.10.10.254		
SDP:m	10.10.10.100	18902	10.10.10.254	64518	8192 ,8185
Call leg 2:					
Host	10.10.10.10	5060	10.10.10.10	5060	
Contact	10.10.10.254	1025	10.10.10.100	5060	8188
Contact maddr-			-		
SDP:c	10.10.10.254		10.10.10.100		
SDP:m	10.10.10.254	64518	10.10.10.100	18902	8186 ,8187

**What it Means** The output provides detail about all active SIP calls. Verify the following information:

- The total number of calls, their ID and tag information, and state
- Remote group ID
- The IP addresses and port numbers for each call leg, and Session Description Protocol (SDP) connection and media details

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Verifying the SIP ALG on page 370
- Verifying SIP Calls on page 371
- Verifying SIP Transactions on page 372
- Verifying SIP Counters on page 373
- Verifying the Rate of SIP Messages on page 374

## Verifying SIP Transactions

**Purpose** Display information about SIP transactions.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor > ALGs > SIP > Transactions**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg sip transactions` command.

```
user@host> show security alg sip transaction
Total number of transactions: 1
  Transaction Name  Method  CSeq    State      Timeout  VIA RSC ID
  UAS:tsx0x4b06ddf4  BYE     101     Proceeding -1        -
  UAC:tsx0x4b06f610  BYE     101     Calling    27        8185
```

**What it Means** The output provides a history of SIP call transactions. Verify the following information:

- The total number of transactions
- Information about the User Agent Client (UAC) and User Agent Server (UAS) for each transaction.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Verifying the SIP ALG on page 370
- Verifying SIP Calls on page 371
- Verifying SIP Call Detail on page 372
- Verifying SIP Counters on page 373
- Verifying the Rate of SIP Messages on page 374

## Verifying SIP Counters

**Purpose** Display information about SIP counters.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor > ALGs > SIP > Counters**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg sip counters` command.

```
user@host> show security alg sip counters
Method      T      1xx      2xx      3xx      4xx      5xx      6xx
            RT      RT      RT      RT      RT      RT      RT
INVITE      2       4       2       0       0       0       0
            1       1       0       0       0       0       0
CANCEL      0       0       0       0       0       0       0
            0       0       0       0       0       0       0
ACK         2       0       0       0       0       0       0
            0       0       0       0       0       0       0
BYE         2       0       1       0       0       0       0
            0       0       0       0       0       0       0
REGISTER    0       0       0       0       0       0       0
            0       0       0       0       0       0       0
OPTIONS     0       0       0       0       0       0       0
            0       0       0       0       0       0       0
INFO        0       0       0       0       0       0       0
            0       0       0       0       0       0       0
MESSAGE     0       0       0       0       0       0       0
            0       0       0       0       0       0       0
NOTIFY      0       0       0       0       0       0       0
            0       0       0       0       0       0       0
```

PRACK	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
PUBLISH	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
REFER	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
SUBSCRIBE	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
UPDATE	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
BENOTIFY	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
SERVICE	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
OTHER	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## SIP Error Counters

```

-----
Total Pkt-in                               :15
Total Pkt dropped on error                 :0
Transaction error                         :0
Call error                                :0
IP resolve error                          :0
NAT error                                  :0
Resource manager error                    :0
RR header exceeded max                    :0
Contact header exceeded max               :0
Invite Dropped due to call limit          :0
SIP msg not processed by stack            :0
SIP msg not processed by alg              :0
SIP unknown method dropped                :0
Decoding error                            :0
Request for disconnected call               :0
Request out of state                      :0

```

**What it Means** The output provides a count of all SIP response codes transmitted and received, and of SIP errors. Verify the following information:

- A count of transmissions of response codes for each SIP request method
- A count of all possible error types

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Verifying the SIP ALG on page 370
- Verifying SIP Calls on page 371
- Verifying SIP Call Detail on page 372
- Related Topics on page 373
- Verifying the Rate of SIP Messages on page 374

## Verifying the Rate of SIP Messages

**Purpose** Display information about SIP message rate.



**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor > ALGs > SIP > Rate**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg sip rate` command.

```
user@host> show security alg sip rate
CPU ticks per us is 166
Time taken for the last message is 1103 us
Total time taken for 3124 messages is 6221482 us(in less than 10 minutes)
Rate: 502 messages/second
```

**What it Means** The output provides information about CPU usage for messages, and speed and periodicity of SIP signaling messages. Verify the following information:

- CPU ticks per US
- Passage time for last message, for all messages, and the rate at which messages transit the network

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Verifying the SIP ALG on page 370
- Verifying SIP Calls on page 371
- Verifying SIP Call Detail on page 372
- Verifying SIP Transactions on page 372
- Verifying SIP Counters on page 373

## Understanding the SCCP ALG

---

The Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) is a Cisco proprietary protocol for call signaling. Skinny is based on a call-agent-based call-control architecture. The control protocol uses binary-coded frames encoded on TCP frames sent to well-known TCP port number destinations to set up and tear down RTP media sessions.

The SCCP protocol just as other call control protocols, negotiates media endpoint parameters—specifically the RTP port number and the IP address of media termination—by embedding information in the control packets. The SCCP ALG implemented on a J-series device (or firewall) parses these control packets and facilitates media and control packets to flow through the J-series device.

The SCCP ALG also implements rate limiting of calls and helps protect critical resources from overloading and denial of service attacks.

The following functions are implemented by the SCCP ALG in JUNOS software:

- Validation of SCCP protocol data units
- Translation of embedded IP address and port numbers
- Allocation of firewall resources (pinholes and gates) to pass media
- Aging out idle calls

- Configuration API for SCCP ALG parameters
- Operational mode API for displaying counters, status and statistics

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Application Layer Gateways (ALGs) on page 285
- Understanding NAT on page 188
- Pinhole Creation on page 317

In the SCCP architecture, a proxy, known as the CallManager, does most of the processing. IP phones, also called End Stations, run the SCCP client and connect to a primary (and, if available, a secondary) CallManager over TCP on port 2000 and register with the primary CallManager. This connection is then used to establish calls coming to or from the client.

The SCCP ALG supports the following:

- Call flow from a SCCP client, through the CallManager, to another SCCP client.
- Seamless failover—Switches over all calls in process to the standby firewall during failure of the primary.
- VoIP signaling payload inspection—Fully inspects the payload of incoming VoIP signaling packets. Any malformed packet attack is blocked by the ALG.
- SCCP signaling payload inspection—Fully inspects the payload of incoming SCCP signaling packets. Any malformed-packet attack is blocked by the ALG.
- Stateful processing—Invokes the corresponding VoIP-based state machines to process the parsed information. Any out-of-state or out-of-transaction packet is identified and properly handled.
- Network Address Translation (NAT)—Translates any embedded IP address and port information in the payload, based on the existing routing information and network topology, with the translated IP address and port number, if necessary.
- Pinhole creation and management for VoIP traffic—Identifies IP address and port information used for media or signaling and dynamically opens (and closes) pinholes to securely stream the media.

This topic covers:

- SCCP Security on page 377
- SCCP Components on page 377
- SCCP Transactions on page 378
- SCCP Control Messages and RTP Flow on page 379
- SCCP Messages on page 380
- Related Topics on page 381

## SCCP Security

The SCCP ALG includes the following security features:

- Stateful inspection of SCCP control messages over TCP and validation of the message format, and message validity for the current call state. Invalid messages are dropped.
- Security policy enforcement between Cisco IP phones and Cisco CallManager
- Protect against call flooding by rate limiting the number of calls processed by the ALG
- Seamless failover of calls, including the ones in progress in case of J-series device failure in a clustered deployment.

## SCCP Components

The principal components of the SCCP VoIP architecture include the following:

- “SCCP Client” on page 377
- “CallManager” on page 377
- “Cluster” on page 377

### SCCP Client

The SCCP client runs on an IP phone, also called an *End Station*, which uses SCCP for signaling and for making calls. For an SCCP client to make a call, it must first register with a Primary CallManager (and a secondary, if available). The connection between the client and the CallManager is over TCP on port 2000. This connection is then used to establish calls to or from the client. Transmission of media is over RTP, UDP, and IP.

### CallManager

The CallManager implements SCCP call control server software and has overall control of all devices and communication in the SCCP VoIP network. Its functions include defining, monitoring and controlling SCCP groups, regions of numbers, and route plans; providing initialization, admission, and registration of devices on the network; providing a redundant database that contains addresses, phone numbers, and number formats; and initiating contact with called devices or their agents to establish logical sessions in which voice communication can flow.

### Cluster

A Cluster is a collection of SCCP clients and a CallManager. The CallManager in the cluster knows about all SCCP clients in the cluster. There can be more than one CallManager for backup in a cluster. CallManager behavior varies in each of the following cluster scenarios:

- Intra-Cluster, in which the CallManager knows about each SCCP client, and the call is between SCCP clients of the same cluster.
- Inter-Cluster, in which the CallManager needs to communicate with another CallManager using H.323 for call setup.
- Inter-Cluster calls using the gatekeeper for admission control and address resolution.

CallManager behavior also varies with calls between an SCCP client and a phone in a public switched telephone network (PSTN), and with calls between an SCCP client and a phone in another administrative domain that is using H.323.

## SCCP Transactions

SCCP transactions are the processes that need to take place in order for an SCCP call to proceed. SCCP transactions include the following processes:

- “Client Initialization” on page 378
- “Client Registration” on page 378
- “Call Setup” on page 379
- “Media Setup” on page 379

### Client Initialization

To initialize, the SCCP client needs to know the IP address of the CallManager, its own IP address, and other information about the IP gateway and DNS servers. Initialization takes place on the local LAN. The client sends a Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP) request to get an IP address, the DNS server address, and the TFTP server name and address. The client needs the TFTP server name to download the configuration file called `sepmacaddr.cnf`. If the TFTP name is not given, the client uses the default filename in the IP phone. The client then downloads the `.cnf` (xml) configuration file from TFTP server. CNF files contain the IP address or addresses of the primary and secondary Cisco CallManager. With this information, the client contacts the CallManager to register.

### Client Registration

The SCCP client, after initialization, registers with the CallManager over a TCP connection on well-known default port 2000. The client registers by providing the CallManager with its IP address, the MAC address of the phone, and other information, such as protocol and version. The client cannot initiate or receive calls until it is registered. Keepalive messages keep this TCP connection open between the client and CallManager so that the client can initiate or receive calls at any time, provided that a policy on the J-series device allows this.

Table 77 on page 379 lists SCCP messages and indicates messages that are of interest to the J-series device.

**Table 77: SCCP Registration Messages**

RegisterMessage	b
IPortMessage	b
RegisterAckMessage	b
CapabilititsRequest	
CapabilitiesResMessage	
ButtonTemplateReqMessage	
ButtonTemplateResMessage	
SoftKeyTemplateReqMessage	
SoftKeyTemplateResMessage	
LineStatReqMessage	b
LineStatMessage	b

### Call Setup

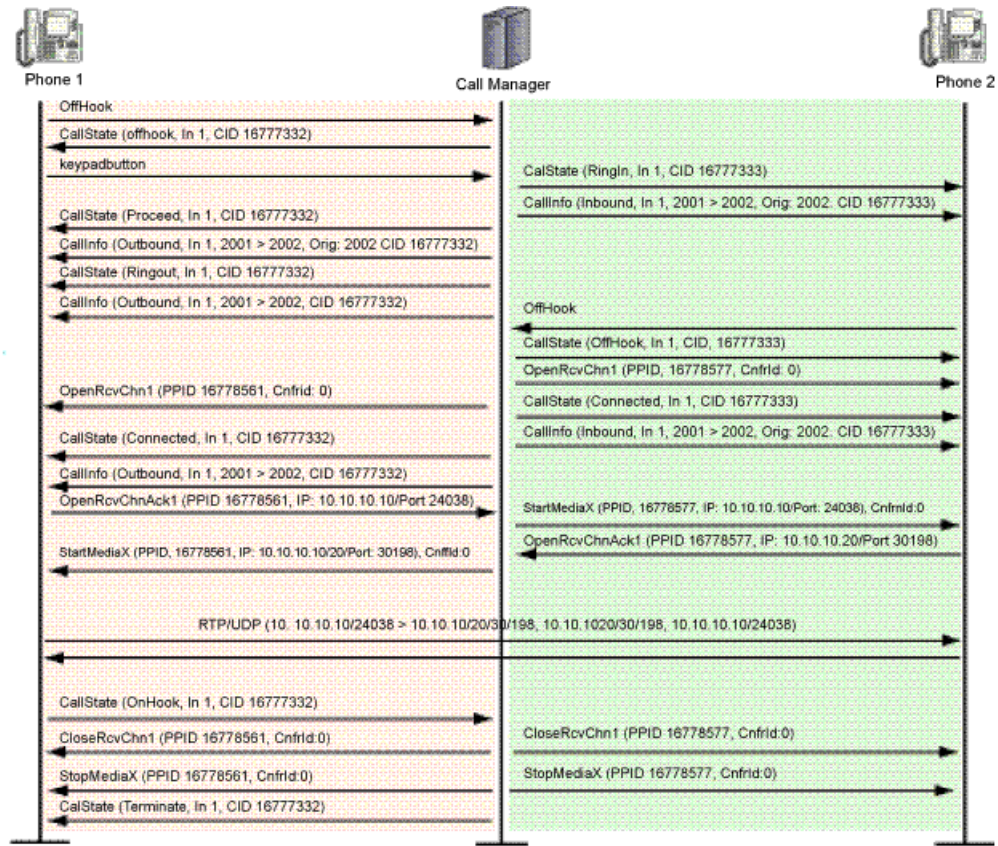
IP phone-to-IP phone call setup using SCCP is always handled by the CallManager. Messages for call setup are sent to the CallManager, which returns messages appropriate to the status of the call. If call setup is successful, and a policy on the J-series device allows the call, the CallManager sends the media setup messages to the client.

### Media Setup

The CallManager sends the IP address and port number of the called party to the calling party. The CallManager also sends the media IP address and port number of the calling party to the called party. After media setup, media is transmitted directly between clients. When the call ends, the CallManager is informed and terminates the media streams. At no time during this process does the CallManager hand over call-setup function to the client. Media is streamed directly between clients through RTP/UDP/IP.

### SCCP Control Messages and RTP Flow

Figure 82 on page 380 shows the SCCP control messages used to set up and tear down a simple call between *Phone1* and *Phone2*. Except for the OffHook message initiating the call from *Phone1* and the OnHook message signaling the end of the call, all aspects of the call are controlled by the CallManager.

**Figure 82: Call Setup and Teardown**

## SCCP Messages

Table 78 on page 380, Table 79 on page 380, Table 80 on page 381, and Table 81 on page 381 list the SCCP call message IDs in the four intervals allowed by the J-series device.

**Table 78: Station to CallManager Messages**

#define STATION_REGISTER_MESSAGE	0x00000001
#define STATION_IP_PORT_MESSAGE	0x00000002
#define STATION_ALARM_MESSAGE	0x00000020
#define STATION_OPEN_RECEIVE_CHANNEL_ACK	0x00000022

**Table 79: CallManager to Station Messages**

#define STATION_START_MEDIA_TRANSMISSION	0x00000001
#define STATION_STOP_MEDIA_TRANSMISSION	0x00000002

**Table 79: CallManager to Station Messages (continued)**

#define STATION_CALL_INFO_MESSAGE	0x00000020
#define STATION_OPEN_RECEIVE_CHANNEL_ACK	0x00000022
#define STATION_CLOSE_RECEIVE_CHANNEL	0x00000106

**Table 80: CallManager 4.0 Messages and Post Sccp 6.2**

#define STATION_REGISTER_TOKEN_REQ_MESSAGE	0x00000029
#define STATION_MEDIA_TRANSMISSION_FAILURE	0x0000002A
#define STATION_OPEN_MULTIMEDIA_RECEIVE_CHANNEL_ACK	0x00000031

**Table 81: CallManager to Station**

#define STATION_OPEN_MULTIMEDIA_RECEIVE_CHANNEL	0x00000131
#define STATION_START_MULTIMEDIA_TRANSMISSION	0x00000132
#define STATION_STOP_MULTIMEDIA_TRANSMISSION	0x00000133
#define STATION_CLOSE_MULTIMEDIA_RECEIVE_CHANNEL	0x00000136

## Related Topics

- Configuring the H.323 ALG—Quick Configuration on page 292
- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392

## Configuring the SCCP ALG—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure SCCP ALG Parameters

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the SCCP ALG” on page 375

Figure 83 on page 382 shows the SCCP ALG configuration page.

**Figure 83: SCCP ALG Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [ALG](#)

---

**Quick Configuration**

**ALG**

---

H323
MGCP
**SCCP**
SIP

**ALG SCCP**

**Enable SCCP ALG** ☒

**Inactive Media Timeout**  ?

**Call Flood Threshold**  ?

**Permit NAT Applied Unknown Message** ☐ ?

**Permit Routed Unknown Message** ☐ ?

OK
Cancel
Apply

To configure the SCCP ALG with Quick Configuration:

1. In the J-Web user interface, select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > ALG > VoIP ALG**.
2. Select the **SCCP** tab if it is not selected.
3. Enter your parameter settings as described in Table 82 on page 382 and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 82: SCCP ALG Configuration Options**

Enable SCCP ALG	Enables or disables the SCCP ALG.	Click the check box.
Inactive Media Timeout	Indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) ALG the gates opened for media are closed.	Select a value from 10 to 600 seconds.
Call Flood Threshold	Protect Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) ALG clients from flood attacks by limiting the number of calls they attempt to process	Select a value from 2 to 1,000.



Table 82: SCCP ALG Configuration Options (continued)

Permit NAT Applied Unknown Message	<p>Specifies how unidentified SCCP messages are handled by the J-series device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Permitting unknown messages can compromise security and is not recommended. However, in a secure test or production environment, this statement can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. By permitting unknown SCCP (unsupported) messages, you can get your network operational and later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.</p> <p>This statement applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol, the message is forwarded without processing.</p>	Click the check box.
Permit Routed Unknown Message	<p>Specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode. (Sessions in Transparent mode are treated as Route mode.)</p>	Click the check box.

Setting SCCP Inactive Media Timeout

The inactive media timeout feature helps you to conserve network resources and maximize throughput.

Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the SCCP ALG” on page 375.

This parameter indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the gates the Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, the range is from 10 to 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.



**NOTE:** You must use the CLI to set SIP-signaling and media-inactivity timeouts.

To configure inactive media timeout, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 384
- CLI Configuration on page 384
- Related Topics on page 384

## ***J-Web Configuration***

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security Edit > ALG Configure > SCCP Configure**.
2. Enter a value in the Inactive media timeout field,
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

In the following example, you set the media inactivity timeout to 90 seconds:

```
user@host# set security alg sccp inactive-media-timeout 90
```

## ***Related Topics***

- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Allowing Unknown SCCP Message Types on page 384
- Configuring SCCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 386
- Verifying the SCCP Configuration on page 389

## **Allowing Unknown SCCP Message Types**

---

To accommodate on-going development of the Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP), you might want to allow traffic containing new SCCP message types. The unknown SCCP message type feature enables you to configure the J-series device to accept SCCP traffic containing unknown message types in both NAT and route modes.

### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Understanding the SCCP ALG” on page 375.

---

This feature enables you to specify how unidentified SCCP messages are handled by the J-series device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. We do

not recommend permitting unknown messages because they can compromise security and is not recommended. However, in a secure test or production environment, this command can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. Permitting unknown SCCP messages can help you get your network operational so that you can later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.

Note that this command applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol and you have configured the device to permit unknown message types, the message is forwarded without processing.

- **permit-nat-applied** specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode.
- **permit-routed** specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in route mode.

To allow unknown message types, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 385
- CLI Configuration on page 385
- Related Topics on page 386

## ***J-Web Configuration***

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security Edit > ALG Configure > SCCP Configure > Application Screen Configure > Unknown message Configure**
2. Click one of the following check boxes:
  - To allow unknown message types in NAT mode, click **Permit nat applied Yes** check box.
  - To allow unknown message types in route mode, click **Permit routed Yes** check box.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

In this example, you configure the device to allow unknown SCCP message types in both route and NAT modes.

```
user@host# set security alg sccp application-screen unknown-message
permit-nat-applied permit-routed
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Setting SCCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 383
- Configuring SCCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 386
- Verifying the SCCP Configuration on page 389

## Configuring SCCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection

You can protect Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) ALG clients from flood attacks by limiting the number of calls they attempt to process.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the SCCP ALG” on page 375.

When you configure SCCP call flood protection, the SCCP ALG drops any calls exceeding the threshold you set. The range is 2 to 1,000 calls per second per client, the default is 20.

To configure DoS attack protection, use the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 386
- CLI Configuration on page 387
- Related Topics on page 387

## J-Web Configuration

To configure the Services Router to drop any calls exceeding 500 per second per client:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **Security**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Alg**, click **Configure**.
4. Next to **Sccp**, click **Configure**.
5. Next to **Application screen**, click **Configure**.
6. In the **Threshold** box, type **500** and click **OK**.
7. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

In this example, you configure the J-series device to drop any calls exceeding 500 per second per client.

```
user@host# set security alg sccp application-screen call-flood threshold 500
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Setting SCCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 383
- Allowing Unknown SCCP Message Types on page 384
- Verifying the SCCP Configuration on page 389

## Configuring Call Manager/TFTP Server in the Private Zone

---

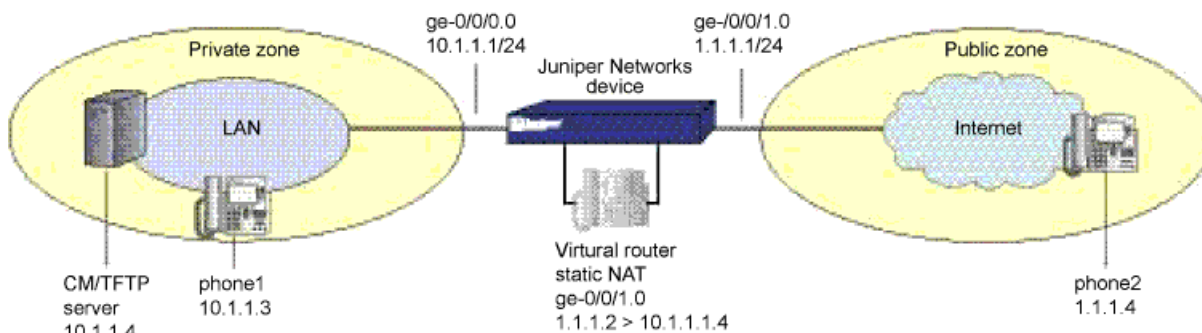
When the same device serves as both the Call Manager and the TFTP server and are located in the private network, you might want to configure static NAT on the outgoing interface of the Juniper Networks device.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Configuring the SCCP ALG—Quick Configuration on page 381

In this example, phone1 and the Call Manager/TFTP Server are on the ge-0/0/0.0 interface in the private zone, and phone2 is on the ge-0/0/1.0 interface in the public zone. You configure static NAT for the Call Manager/TFTP Server on the ge-0/0/1.0 interface, so that when phone2 boots up it can contact the TFTP Server and obtain the IP address of the Call Manager. (We recommend that you change the IP address of the Call Manager in the TFTP Server config file (sep < mac\_addr > .cnf) to the NAT IP address of the Call Manager.) You then create a policy allowing SCCP traffic from the public to the private zone and reference that NAT in the policy. You also create a policy from the Trust to the Untrust zone to allow phone1 to call out. See Figure 84 on page 388.

**Figure 84: Call Manager/TFTP Server in the Private Zone**

Use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 388

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure interfaces.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
```

2. Configure zone.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone private interface ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone private address-book address
phone1 10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone private address-book address
cm-tftp_server 10.1.1.4/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone public interface ge-0/0/1.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2
1.1.1.4/32
```

3. Configure static NAT.

```
user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/1.0 static 1.1.1.2 host 10.1.1.4
```

4. Configure policies.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy out-pol
match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy out-pol
match destination-address phone2
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy out-pol
match application junos-sccp
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy out-pol
then permit source-nat interface
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone junos-global policy
in-pol match source-address phone2
```

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone junos-global policy
in-pol match destination-address static_nat_1.1.1.2_32
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone junos-global policy
in-pol match application junos-sccp
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone junos-global policy
in-pol then permit

```

## Verifying the SCCP Configuration

---

To verify the SCCP configuration, perform these tasks:

- “Verifying the SCCP ALG” on page 389
- “Verifying SCCP Call Details” on page 390
- “Verifying SCCP Counters” on page 391

### Verifying the SCCP ALG

**Purpose** Display SCCP verification options.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show security alg sccp` command.

```

user@host> show security alg sccp ?
Possible completions:
  calls           Show SCCP calls
  counters        Show SCCP counters

```

**What it Means** The output shows a list of all SCCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- All SCCP calls
- Counters for all SCCP calls

### Related Topics

- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Verifying SCCP Calls on page 389
- Verifying SCCP Call Details on page 390
- Verifying SCCP Counters on page 391

### Verifying SCCP Calls

**Purpose** Display a list of all SCCP calls

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show security alg sccp calls` command.

```

user@host> show security alg sccp calls
Possible completions:
  calls           Show SCCP calls

```

	counters	Show SCCP counters
	endpoints	Show SCCP endpoints
<b>What it Means</b>	The output shows a list of all SCCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All SCCP calls</li> <li>■ Counters for all SCCP calls</li> <li>■ Information about all SCCP endpoints</li> </ul>	

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Verifying the SCCP ALG on page 389
- Verifying SCCP Call Details on page 390
- Verifying SCCP Counters on page 391

## Verifying SCCP Call Details

**Purpose** Display details about all SCCP calls.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show security alg sccp calls detail` command.

```

user@host> show security alg sccp calls detail
Client IP address: 11.0.102.91
Client zone: 7
CallManager IP: 13.0.99.226
Conference ID: 16789504
Resource manager group: 2048
SCCP channel information:
Media transmit channel address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
Media transmit channel translated address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
Media transmit channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 0
Media transmit channel resource ID: 0
Media receive channel address (IP address/Port): 11.0.102.91:20060
Media receive channel translated address (IP address/Port): 25.0.0.1:1032
Media receive channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 16934451
Media receive channel resource ID: 8185
Multimedia transmit channel address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
Multimedia transmit channel translated address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
Multimedia transmit channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 0
Multimedia transmit channel resource ID: 0
Multimedia receive channel address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
Multimedia receive channel translated address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
Multimedia receive channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 0
Multimedia receive channel resource ID: 0
Total number of calls = 1

```

<b>What it Means</b>	The output shows a list of all SCCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Client zone</li> <li>■ CallManager IP address: 13.0.99.226</li> </ul>	



- Conference ID
- Resource manager group
- SCCP channel information
- Total number of calls

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Verifying the SCCP ALG on page 389
- Verifying SCCP Calls on page 389
- Verifying SCCP Counters on page 391

## Verifying SCCP Counters

**Purpose** Display a list of all SCCP counters

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor > ALGs > SCCP > Counters**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg sccp counters` command.

```
user@host> show security alg sccp counters
SCCP call statistics:
  Active client sessions      : 0
  Active calls                : 0
  Total calls                 : 0
  Packets received           : 0
  PDUs processed              : 0
  Current call rate           : 0
Error counters:
  Packets dropped             : 0
  Decode errors               : 0
  Protocol errors             : 0
  Address translation errors  : 0
  Policy lookup errors        : 0
  Unknown PDUs                : 0
  Maximum calls exceeded      : 0
  Maximum call rate exceeded  : 0
  Initialization errors       : 0
  Internal errors              : 0
  Nonspecific error           : 0
  No active calls to delete    : 0
  No active client sessions to delete : 0
  Session cookie create errors : 0
  Invalid NAT cookie detected  : 0
```

**What it Means** The output shows a list of all SCCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- SCCP call statistics
- Error counters

## Related Topics

- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Verifying the SCCP ALG on page 389
- Verifying SCCP Calls on page 389
- Verifying SCCP Call Details on page 390

## Understanding the MGCP ALG

---

The Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) is a text-based Application Layer protocol used for call setup and call control between the media gateway and the media gateway controller (MGC).

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Application Layer Gateways (ALGs) on page 285
- Understanding NAT on page 188
- Pinhole Creation on page 317

The protocol is based on a master/slave call control architecture: the media gateway controller (call agent) maintains call control intelligence, and media gateways carry out the instructions from the call agent. Both signaling packets and media packets are transmitted over UDP. JUNOS software supports MGCP in route mode and Network Address Translation (NAT) mode.

The MGCP ALG performs the following procedures:

- Conducts VoIP signaling payload inspection. The payload of the incoming VoIP signaling packet is fully inspected based on related RFCs and proprietary standards. Any malformed packet attack is blocked by the ALG.
- Conducts MGCP signaling payload inspection. The payload of the incoming MGCP signaling packet is fully inspected in accordance with RFC 3435. Any malformed-packet attack is blocked by the ALG.
- Provides stateful processing. The corresponding VoIP-based state machines are invoked to process the parsed information. Any out-of-state or out-of-transaction packet is identified and properly handled.
- Performs NAT. Any embedded IP address and port information in the payload is properly translated based on the existing routing information and network topology, and is then replaced with the translated IP address and port number, if necessary.
- Manages pinholes for VoIP traffic. To keep the VoIP network secure, the IP address and port information used for media or signaling is identified by the ALG, and any needed pinhole is dynamically created and closed during call setup.

This topic covers:

- MGCP Security on page 393
- Entities in MGCP on page 393
- Commands on page 394
- Response Codes on page 397
- Related Topics on page 398

## **MGCP Security**

The MGCP ALG includes the following security features:

- Denial of Service (DoS) attack protection.—the ALG performs stateful inspection at the UDP packet level, the transaction level, and at the call level. MGCP packets matching the RFC3435 message format, transaction state, and call state, are processed. All other messages are dropped.
- Security policy enforcement between gateway and gateway controller (signaling policy).
- Security policy enforcement between gateways (media policy).
- Per-gateway MGCP message flooding control. Any malfunctioning or hacked gateway will not disrupt the whole VoIP network. Combined with per-gateway flooding control, damage is contained within the impacted gateway.
- Per-gateway MGCP connection flooding control.
- Seamless switchover/failover if calls, including calls in progress, are switched to the standby firewall in case of system failure.

## **Entities in MGCP**

There are four basic entities in MGCP:

- “Endpoint” on page 393
- “Connection” on page 394
- “Call” on page 394
- “Call Agent” on page 394

### **Endpoint**

A media gateway is a collection of endpoints. An endpoint can be an analog line, trunk, or any other access point. An endpoint contains the following elements:

`local-endpoint-name@domain-name`

The following examples are some valid endpoint IDs:

```
group1/Trk8@mynetwork.net
group2/Trk1/*@[192.168.10.8] (wild-carding)
$@voiptel.net (any endpoint within the media gateway)
```

\*@voiptel.net (all endpoints within the media gateway)

## Connection

Connections are created on each endpoint by an MG during call setup. A typical VoIP call involves two connections. A complex call, for example a three-party call or conference call, might require more connections. The media gateway controller (MGC) can instruct media gateways to create, modify, delete and audit a connection.

A connection is identified by its connection ID which is created by the MG when it is requested to create a connection. Connection ID is presented as a hexadecimal string, and its maximum length is 32 characters

## Call

A call is identified by its call ID, which is created by the MGC when establishing a new call. Call ID is a hexadecimal string with a maximum length of 32 characters. Call ID is unique within the MGC. Two or more connections can have the same call ID if they belong to the same call.

## Call Agent

One or more call agents (also called media gateway controllers) are supported in MGCP to enhance reliability in the VoIP network. The following two examples are of call agent names:

```
CallAgent@voipCA.mynetwork.com
voipCA.mynetwork.com
```

Several network addresses can be associated under one domain name in the Domain Name System (DNS). By keeping track of the time to live (TTL) of DNS query/response data and implementing retransmission using other alternative network addresses, switchover and failover is achieved in MGCP.

The concept of a *notified entity* is essential in MGCP. The notified entity for an endpoint is the call agent currently controlling that endpoint. An endpoint should send any MGCP command to its notified entity. However, different call agents might send MGCP commands to this endpoint.

The notified entity is set to a provisioned value upon startup, but can be changed by a call agent through the use of the **NotifiedEntity** parameter contained in an MGCP message. If the notified entity for an endpoint is empty or has not been set explicitly, its value defaults to the source address of the last successful non-audit MGCP command received for that endpoint.

## Commands

The MGCP protocol defines nine commands for controlling endpoints and connections. All commands are composed of a command header, optionally followed by Session Description Protocol (SDP) information. A command header has the following elements:

- A command line: command verb + transaction ID + endpointId + MGCP version.
- Zero or more parameter lines, composed of a parameter name followed by a parameter value.

Table 83 on page 395 lists supported MGCP commands and includes a description of each, the command syntax, and examples. Refer to RFC 2234 for a complete explanation of command syntax.

**Table 83: MGCP Commands**

EPCF	EndpointConfiguration—used by a call agent to inform a gateway of coding characteristics (a-law or mu-law) expected by the line side of the endpoint.	ReturnCode[PackageList] EndpointConfiguration (EndpointId,[BearerInformation])	EPCF 2012 wxx/T2@mynet.com MGCP 1.0B: e:mu
CRCX	CreateConnection—used by a call agent to instruct the gateway to create a connection with, and endpoint inside, the gateway.	ReturnCode, [ConnectionId,] [SpecificEndPointId,] [LocalConnectionDescriptor,] [SecondEndPointId,] [SecondConnectionId,] [PackageList] CreateConnection (CallId, EndpointId, [NotifiedEntity,] [LocalConnectionOption,] Mode, [{RemoteConnectionDescriptor   SecondEndPointId},] [encapsulated RQNT,] [encapsulated EPCF])	CRCX 1205 aaln/1@gw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0C: A3C47F21456789F0L: p:10, a:PCMUM: sendrecvX: 0123456789ADR: L/hdS: L/rgv = 0o = - 25678 753849 IN IP4 128.96.41.1s = -c = IN IP4 128.96.41.1t = 0 0m = audio 3456 RTP/AVP 0
MDCX	ModifyConnection—used by a call agent to instruct a gateway to change the parameters for an existing connection.	ReturnCode[LocalConnectionDescriptor,PackageList] ModifyConnection (CallId, EndpointId, ConnectionId, [NotifiedEntity,] [LocalConnectionOption,] [Mode,]  [RemoteConnectionDescriptor,] [encapsulated RQNT,] [encapsulated EPCF])	MDCX 1210 aaln/1@rgw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0C: A3C47F21456789F0L: FDE234C8M: recvonlyX: 0123456789AER: L/huS: G/rtv = 0o = - 4723891 7428910 IN IP4 128.96.63.25s = -c = IN IP4 128.96.63.25t = 0 0m = audio 3456 RTP/AVP 0

**Table 83: MGCP Commands** *(continued)*

DLCX	<p>DeleteConnection—used by a call agent to instruct a gateway to delete an existing connection.</p> <p>DeleteConnection can also be used by a gateway to release a connection that can no longer be sustained.</p>	<p>ReturnCode, ConnectionParameters, PackageList DeleteConnection (CallId, EndpointId, ConnectionId, [NotifiedEntity,] [encapsulated RQNT,] [encapsulated EPCF])</p>	<p>Example 1: MGC -&gt; MG</p> <p>DLCX 9210 aaln/1 @rgw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0C: A3C47F21456789F0I: FDE234C8</p> <p>Example 2: MG -&gt; MGC</p> <p>DLCX 9310 aaln/1 @rgw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0C: A3C47F21456789F0I: FDE234C8E: 900 - Hardware errorP: PS = 1245, OS = 62345, PR = 780, OR = 45123, PL = 10, JI = 27, LA = 48</p>
RQNT	NotificationRequest command—used by a call agent to instruct an MG to monitor for certain event(s) or signal(s) for a specific endpoint.	<p>ReturnCode, [PackageList] NotificationRequest([EndpointId, [NotifiedEntity,] [RequestedEvents,] RequestIdentifier, [DigitMap,] [SignalRequests,] [QuarantineHandling,] [DetectEvents,] [encapsulated EPCF])</p>	<p>RQNT 1205 aaln/1 @rgw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0N: ca-new@callagent-ca.att.netX: 0123456789AAR: L/hd(A, E(S(Ldl),R(Loc,Lhu,D/[0-9#*T](D))))D: (OT[00T]xx 91xxxxxxxxxx 9011xT)ST: G/ft</p>
NTFY	Notify—used by a gateway to inform the call agent when requested event(s) or signal(s) occur.	<p>ReturnCode, [PackageList] Notify (EndpointID, [NotifiedEntity,] RequestIdentifier, ObservedEvents)</p>	<p>NTFY 2002 aaln/1 @rgw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0N: ca@ca1.att.net:5678X: 0123456789ACO: L/hd,D9,D/1,D2,D0,D/1,D8,D2,D9,D4, D/2,D/6,D/6</p>
AUEP	AuditEndpoint—used by a call agent to audit the status of the endpoint.	<p>ReturnCode, EndPointIdList, { [RequestedEvents,] [QuarantineHandling,] [DigitMap,] [SignalRequests,] [RequestedIdentifier,] [NotifiedEntity,] [ConnectionIdentifier,] [DetectEvents,] [ObservedEvents,] [EventStats,] [BearerInformation,] [BearerMethod,] [RestartDelay,] [ReasonCode,] [MaxMGCPDatagram,] [Capabilities]} [PackageList] AuditEndpoint (EndpointId, [RequestedInfo])</p>	<p>Example 1:</p> <p>AUEP 1201 aaln/1 @rgw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0F: A, R,D,S,X,N,I,T,OExample 2:AUEP 1200 * @rgw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0</p>

**Table 83: MGCP Commands** *(continued)*

AUCX	AuditConnection—used by a call agent to collect the parameters applied to a connection.	ReturnCode, [CallId,] [NotifiedEntity,] [LocalConnectionOptions,] [Mode,] [RemoteConnectionDescriptor,] [LocalConnectionDescriptor,] [ConnectionParameters,] [PackageList] AuditConnection (EndpointId, ConnectionId, RequestedInfo)	AUCX 3003 aaln/1@rgw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0I: 32F345E2F: C,N,L,M,LC,P
RSIP	RestareInProgress—used by a gateway to notify a call agent that one or more endpoints are being taken out of service or placed back in service.	ReturnCode,[NotifiedEntity,][PackageList] RestartInProgress (EndpointId, RestartMethod, [RestartDelay,] [ReasonCode])	RSIP 5200 aaln/1@rgw-25.att.net MGCP 1.0RM: gracefulRD: 300

## Response Codes

Every command sent by the calling agent or gateway, whether successful or not, requires a response code. The response code is in the header of the response message, and optionally is followed by session description information.

The response header is composed of a response line, followed by zero or more parameter lines, each containing a parameter name letter followed by its value. The response header is composed of a three-digit response code, transaction ID, and optionally followed by commentary. The response header in the following response message shows the response code 200 (successful completion), followed by ID 1204 and the comment:OK.

```
200 1204 OK
I: FDE234C8
v=0
o=- 25678 753849 IN IP4 128.96.41.1
s=-
c=IN IP4 128.96.41.1
t=0 0
m=audio 3456 RTP/AVP 96
a=rtpmap:96 G726-32/8000
```

The ranges of response codes are defined as follows:

- 000 — 099 indicate a response acknowledgement.
- 100 — 199—indicate a provisional response.
- 200 — 299 indicate a successful completion (final response).
- 400 — 499 indicate a transient error (final response).
- 500 — 599 indicate a permanent error (final response).

Refer to RFC 3661 for detailed information about response codes.

A response to a command is sent to the source address of the command, not to the current notified entity. A media gateway can receive MGCP commands from various network addresses simultaneously, and send back responses to corresponding network addresses. However, it sends all MGCP commands to its current notified entity.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the H.323 ALG on page 290
- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Configuring a Media Gateway in Subscribers' Homes on page 408

## Configuring the MGCP ALG—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure MGCP ALG Parameters

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the MGCP ALG” on page 392

Figure 85 on page 398 shows the MGCP ALG configuration page.

**Figure 85: MGCP ALG Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [ALG](#)

### Quick Configuration

#### ALG

---

H323
**MGCP**
SCCP
SIP

**ALG MGCP**

**Enable MGCP ALG** ☒

**Inactive Media Timeout**  ?

**Maximum Call Duration**  ?

**Transaction Timeout**  ?

**Connection Flood Threshold**  ?

**Message Flood Threshold**  ?

**Permit NAT Applied Unknown Message** ☐ ?

**Permit Routed Unknown Message** ☐ ?



To configure the MGCP ALG with Quick Configuration:

1. In the J-Web user interface, select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > ALG > VoIP ALG**.
2. Select the **MGCP** tab if it is not selected.
3. Fill in the options as described in Table 84 on page 399 and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 84: MGCP Configuration Options**

Enable MGCP ALG	Enables or disables the MGCP ALG.	Click the check box.
Inactive Media Timeout	Specifies the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the temporary openings (pinholes) in the firewall SIP ALG opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, the range is from 10 to 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.	Select a value between 10 and 2,550 seconds.
Maximum Call Duration	Sets the absolute maximum length of a call. When a call exceeds this parameter setting, the SIP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. The default setting is 720 minutes, the range is from 3 to 7200 minutes.	Select a value between 3 and 7,200 minutes.
Transaction Timeout	Specifies a timeout value for MGCP transactions. A transaction is a signalling message, for example, a NTFY from the gateway to the call agent or a 200 OK from the call agent to the gateway. The Juniper Networks device tracks these transactions, and clears them when they time out.	Enter a value from 3 to 50 seconds.
Connection Flood Threshold	Limits the number of new connection requests allowed per Media Gateway (MG) per second. Messages exceeding the ALG.	Enter a value from 2 to 10,000.
Message Flood Threshold	Limits the rate per second at which message requests to the Media Gateway are processed. Messages exceeding the threshold are dropped by the Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG). This feature is disabled by default.	Enter a value from 2 to 50,000 seconds per media gateway.

**Table 84: MGCP Configuration Options** *(continued)*

Permit NAT Applied Unknown Message	<p>Specifies how unidentified SIP messages are handled by the Juniper Networks device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Permitting unknown messages can compromise security and is not recommended. However, in a secure test or production environment, this statement can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. By permitting unknown SIP (unsupported) messages, you can get your network operational and later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.</p> <p>This statement applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol, the message is forwarded without processing.</p>	Click the check box.
Permit Routed Unknown Message	Specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode. (Sessions in Transparent mode are treated as Route mode.)	Click the check box.
Attack Protection	Protects servers against INVITE attacks. Configure the SIP application screen to protect the server at some or all destination IP addresses against INVITE attacks. You can include up to 16 destination IP addresses of servers to be protected.	Select <b>None</b> , <b>All</b> or, if you select <b>Destination IP</b> , enter or select an IP address.

## Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts

The call duration feature gives you control over SIP call activity and helps you to manage network resources.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the MGCP ALG” on page 392.

Typically a call ends when one of the clients sends a BYE or CANCEL request. The MGCP ALG intercepts the BYE or CANCEL request and removes all media sessions for that call. There could be reasons or problems preventing clients in a call from sending BYE or CANCEL requests, for example, a power failure. In this case, the call might go on indefinitely, consuming resources on the Juniper Networks device.

A call can have one or more voice channels. Each voice channel has two sessions (or two media streams), one for Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) traffic and one for Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) signaling. When managing the sessions, the device considers the sessions in each voice channel as one group. Timeouts and call duration settings apply to a group as opposed to each session.

The following parameters govern MGCP call activity:

- **inactive-media-timeout**—This parameter indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the SIP ALG gates opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, the range is from 10 to 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.
- **transaction-timeout**—The device tracks transactions between the gateway and the call agent and clears transactions when they time out. Timeout range for MGCP transactions is from 3 to 50 seconds, the default is 30 seconds.
- **maximum-call-duration**—This parameter sets the absolute maximum length of a call. When a call exceeds this parameter setting, the SIP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. The default setting is 720 minutes, the range is from 3 to 7200 minutes.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Setting MGCP Call Duration on page 401
- Setting MGCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 403
- Setting the MGCP Transaction Timeout on page 404
- Configuring MGCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 405
- Allowing Unknown MGCP Message Types on page 406

## Setting MGCP Call Duration

---

The call duration feature helps you to conserve network resources and maximize throughput.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
  - Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 400
- 

You use the call duration parameter to set the maximum allowable length of time a call can be active. When the duration is exceeded, the SIP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. This setting also frees up bandwidth in cases where calls fail to properly terminate.

Use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 402
- CLI Configuration on page 402
- Related Topics on page 402

## ***J-Web Configuration***

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > ALG > MGCP**.
2. Enter a value in the Maximum call duration box.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## ***CLI Configuration***

In the following example, you set call duration to 3000 minutes.

```
user@host# set security alg mgcp maximum-call-duration 3000
```

## ***Related Topics***

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 400
- Setting MGCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 403
- Setting the MGCP Transaction Timeout on page 404
- Configuring MGCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 405
- Allowing Unknown MGCP Message Types on page 406

## Setting MGCP Inactive Media Timeout

The inactive media timeout feature helps you to conserve network resources and maximize throughput.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 400
- Setting the MGCP Transaction Timeout on page 404

You use the inactive media parameter to set the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the SIP ALG closes the gates it opened for media. The default setting is 120 seconds, the range is from 10 to 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.

To set an inactive media timeout value, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 403
- CLI Configuration on page 403
- Related Topics on page 404

### J-Web Configuration

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > ALG > MGCP**.
2. Enter a value in the Inactive media timeout box.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

### CLI Configuration

In the following example, you set the inactive media timeout to 90 seconds:

```
user@host# set security alg mgcp inactive-media-timeout 90
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 400
- Setting MGCP Call Duration on page 401
- Setting the MGCP Transaction Timeout on page 404
- Configuring MGCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 405
- Allowing Unknown MGCP Message Types on page 406

## Setting the MGCP Transaction Timeout

---

The transaction timeout feature helps you to conserve network resources and maximize throughput.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Understanding the MGCP ALG” on page 392.
- “Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts” on page 400.
- “Setting MGCP Inactive Media Timeout” on page 403.

A transaction is a signaling message, for example, a NOTIFY from the gateway to the call agent or a 200 OK from the call agent to the gateway. The Juniper Networks device tracks these transactions, and clears them when they time out. The timeout range for MGCP transactions is from 3 to 50 seconds, the default is 30 seconds.

Use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 404
- CLI Configuration on page 405
- Related Topics on page 405

## J-Web Configuration

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > ALG > MGCP**.
2. Enter a value in the Transaction timeout box.
3. Click one of the following buttons:

- To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
- To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## CLI Configuration

In the following example, you set the transaction timeout to 20 seconds:

```
user@host# set security alg mgcp transaction-timeout 20
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 400
- Setting MGCP Call Duration on page 401
- Setting MGCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 403
- Configuring MGCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 405
- Allowing Unknown MGCP Message Types on page 406

## Configuring MGCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection

You can protect the MGCP media gateway from flood attacks by limiting the number of remote access service (RAS) messages and connections per second it will attempt to process.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Understanding the MGCP ALG” on page 392.
- “Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts” on page 400.

When you configure MGCP message flood protection, the MGCP ALG drops any messages exceeding the threshold you set. The range is 2 to 50,000 messages per second per media gateway, the default is 1,000 messages per second per media gateway.

When you configure MGCP connection flood protection, the MGCP ALG drops any connection request exceeding the threshold you set. This limits the rate of processing of **CreatConnection (CRCX)** commands, thereby indirectly limiting pinhole creation. The range is 2 to 10,000 connection requests per second per media gateway, the default is 200.

Use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 406
- CLI Configuration on page 406
- Related Topics on page 406

## **J-Web Configuration**

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > ALG > MGCP**.
2. Click **Application Screen**.
3. Under **Connection flood**, enter a value in the **Threshold** box.
4. Under **Message flood**, enter a value in the **Threshold** box.
5. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## **CLI Configuration**

In this example, you configure the device to drop any message requests exceeding 10,000 requests per second and to drop any connection requests exceeding 4,000 per second.

```
user@host# set security alg sip application-screen message-flood threshold 10000
user@host# set security alg sip application-screen connection-flood threshold 4000
```

## **Related Topics**

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 400
- Setting MGCP Call Duration on page 401
- Setting MGCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 403
- Setting the MGCP Transaction Timeout on page 404
- Allowing Unknown MGCP Message Types on page 406

## **Allowing Unknown MGCP Message Types**

---

To accommodate on-going development of the Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP), you might want to allow traffic containing new MGCP message types. The unknown SIP message type feature enables you to configure the Juniper Networks



device to accept MGCP traffic containing unknown message types in both NAT and route modes.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the MGCP ALG” on page 392.

This feature enables you to specify how unidentified MGCP messages are handled by the Juniper Networks device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Unknown messages can compromise security. However, in a secure test or production environment, this command can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. Permitting unknown MGCP messages can help you get your network operational so that you can later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.

Note that this command applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol and you have configured the device to permit unknown message types, the message is forwarded without processing.

- **permit-nat-applied**—Specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode.
- **permit-routed**—Specifies that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode.

To allow unknown message types, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 407
- CLI Configuration on page 408
- Related Topics on page 408

### J-Web Configuration

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security Edit > ALG Configure > MGCP Configure > Application screen configure > Unknown message Configure**.
2. Click one of the following check boxes:
  - To allow unknown message types in NAT mode, click the **Permit nat applied** Yes check box.
  - To allow unknown message types in route mode, click the **Permit routed** Yes check box.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.

- To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## CLI Configuration

In this example, you configure the device to allow unknown MGCP message types in both route and NAT modes.

```
user@host# set security alg mgcp application-screen unknown-message
permit-nat-applied permit-routed
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 322
- Setting MGCP Call Duration on page 401
- Setting MGCP Inactive Media Timeout on page 403
- Configuring MGCP Denial of Service (DoS) Attack Protection on page 405

## Configuring a Media Gateway in Subscribers' Homes

---

When a cable service provider offers MGCP services to residential subscribers, typically they locate the Juniper Networks device and the call agent on their premises and install an Integrated Access Device (IAD), or set-top box, in each subscriber's home. The IADs act as gateways for the residences.

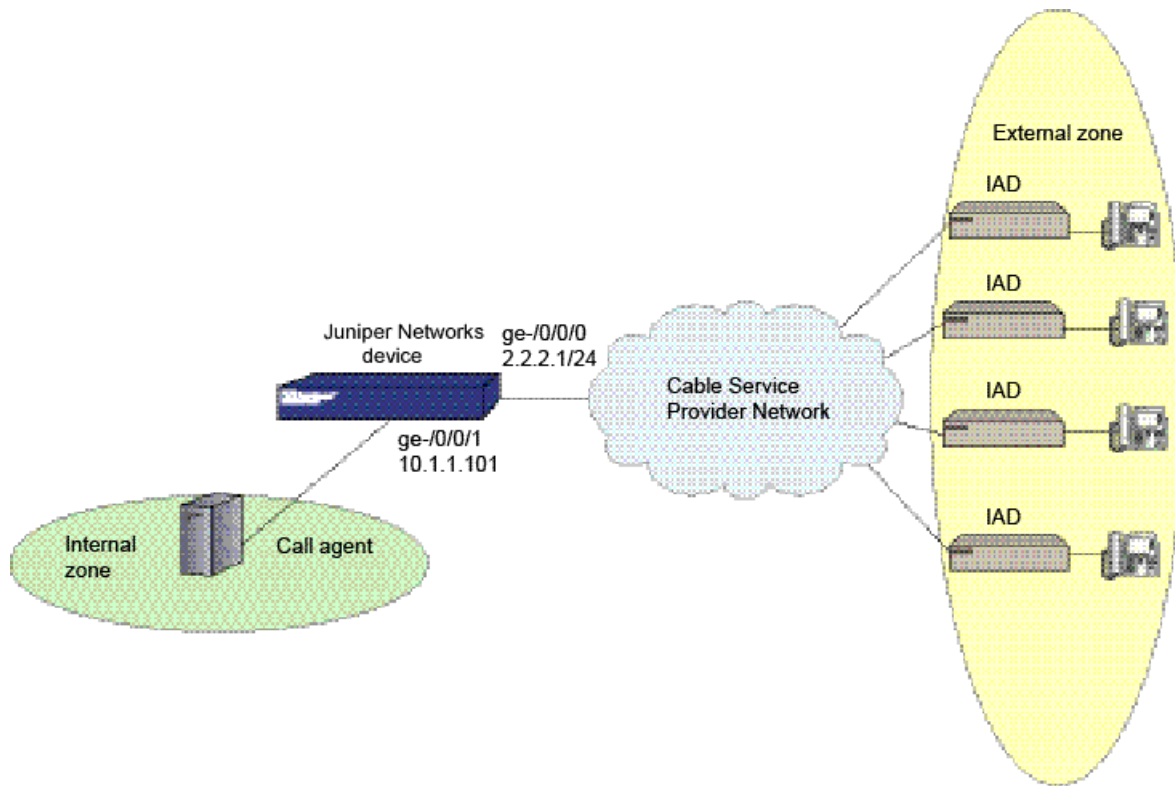
### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the MGCP ALG” on page 392.

---

After creating zones—`external_subscriber` for the customer and `internal_ca` for the service provider—you configure addresses, then interfaces, and finally policies to allow signaling between endpoints. Note that although gateways frequently reside in different zones, requiring policies for media traffic, in this example both gateways are in the same subnet. Note also that because Real-time Transport Protocol (RTP) traffic between the gateways never passes through the device, no policy is needed for the media. See Figure 86 on page 409.

Use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

**Figure 86: Media Gateway in Subscribers' Home**

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 409
- CLI Configuration on page 414
- Related Topics on page 415

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **external\_subscriber**.
6. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure**.
7. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Service name, select all and click **OK**.
9. Next to Protocols, click **Add new entry**.

10. Next to Protocol name box, select all and click **OK**.
11. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
12. In the Name box, type **internal\_ca**.
13. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure**.
14. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
15. Next to Service name, select all and click **OK**.
16. Next to Protocols, click **Add new entry**.
17. Next to Protocol name box, select all and click **OK**.
18. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure addresses:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **internal\_ca**.
6. Next to Address book, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address name box, type **ca\_agent1 10.1.1.101/32** and click **OK**.
9. To configure another security zone external\_subscriber, repeat Step 2 through Step 9 and click **OK**.
10. Next to Address book, click **Configure**.
11. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
12. In the Address name box, type **SubscriberSubNet 2.2.2.1/24** and click **OK**.
13. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure interfaces:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **internal\_ca**.
6. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/01** and click **OK**.
8. Next to Interfaces, click **Configure** or **Edit**.

9. Next to Interface, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Interface name box, type **ge-0/0/1**.
11. Next to unit, click **Add new entry**.
12. In the Interface unit number box, type **0**.
13. Under Family, next to Inet, select the check box, and click **Configure**.
14. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
15. Next to Source, type **2.2.2.1/24** and click **OK**.
16. To configure another security zone, external \_subscriber, and interface, ge-0/0/0, Step 1 through Step 7 and click **OK**.
17. To configure another interface, ge-0/0/0, repeat Step h to Step l.
18. Under Family, next to Inet, select the check box and click **OK**.
19. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure internal-to-external zone policies:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **internal\_ca**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **external\_subscriber**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. To specify the Policy name, next to Policy name box, type **Pol-CA-To-Subscribers**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.
10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Click **Configure** next to Match check box.
12. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
15. In the Address box, type **ca-agent1** and click **OK**.
16. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
17. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
18. Next to Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
19. In the Address box, type **SubscriberSubNet** and click **OK**.
20. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
21. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.

22. Next to Value keyword box, type **junos-mgcp** and click **OK**.
23. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
24. Next to Action, select **permit** and click **OK**.
25. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure from zone, **external\_subscriber**, and to zone, **internal\_ca**:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **external\_subscriber**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **internal\_ca**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **Pol-Subscribers-To-CA**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.
10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Next to Match check box, click **Configure**.
12. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
15. In the Address name box, type **SubscriberSubnet** and click **OK**.
16. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
17. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
18. Next to Value keyword list, select **Enter Specific Value**.
19. In the Address name box, type **call\_agent1** and click **OK**.
20. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
21. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
22. Next to Value keyword box, type **junos-mgcp** and click **OK**.
23. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
24. Next to Action, select **permit** and click **OK**.
25. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure from zone and to zone as **internal\_ca**:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **internal\_ca**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **internal\_ca**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **Pol-Intra-CA**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.
10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Next to Match check box, click **Configure**.
12. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
15. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
16. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
17. Next to Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
18. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
19. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
20. Next to Value keyword box, select **any** and click **OK**.
21. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
22. Next to Action, select **permit**.
23. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

To configure from zone and to zone as external\_subscriber:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type **external\_subscriber**.
6. In the To zone name box, type **external\_subscriber**.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **Pol-Intra-subscriber**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.

10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Next to Match check box, click **Configure**.
12. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
15. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
16. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
17. Next to Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
18. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
19. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
20. Next to Value keyword box, select **any** and click **OK**.
21. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
22. Next to Action, select **permit**.
23. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure zones.

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone external_subscriber
user@host# set security zones security-zone external_subscriber
  host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set security zones security-zone external_subscriber
  host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host# set security zones security-zone internal_ca
user@host# set security zones security-zone internal_ca host-inbound-traffic
  system-services all
user@host# set security zones security-zone internal_ca host-inbound-traffic
  protocols all

```

2. Configure addresses.

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone internal_ca address-book address
  ca_agent1 10.1.1.101/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone external_subscriber address-book
  address SubscriberSubNet 2.2.2.1/24

```

3. Configure interfaces.

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone internal_ca interfaces ge-0/0/1
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 2.2.2.1/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone external_subscriber interfaces
  ge-0/0/0
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet

```

4. Configure internal-to-external zone policies.



```

user@host# set security policies from-zone internal_ca to-zone external_subscriber
policy Pol-CA-To-Subscribers match source-address ca_agent1
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal_ca to-zone external_subscriber
policy Pol-CA-To-Subscribers match destination-address SubscriberSubNet
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal_ca to-zone external_subscriber
policy Pol-CA-To-Subscribers match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal_ca to-zone external_subscriber
policy Pol-CA-To-Subscribers then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone external_subscriber to-zone internal_ca
policy Pol-Subscribers-To-CA match source-address SubscriberSubNet
user@host# set security policies from-zone external_subscriber to-zone internal_ca
policy Pol-Subscribers-To-CA match destination-address call_agent1
user@host# set security policies from-zone external_subscriber to-zone internal_ca
policy Pol-Subscribers-To-CA match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set security policies from-zone external_subscriber to-zone internal_ca
policy Pol-Subscribers-To-CA then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal_ca to-zone internal_ca policy
Pol-Intra-CA match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal_ca to-zone internal_ca policy
Pol-Intra-CA match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal_ca to-zone internal_ca policy
Pol-Intra-CA match application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal_ca to-zone internal_ca policy
Pol-Intra-CA then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone external_subscriber to-zone
external_subscriber policy Pol-Intra-subscriber match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone external_subscriber to-zone
external_subscriber policy Pol-Intra-subscriber match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone external_subscriber to-zone
external_subscriber policy Pol-Intra-subscriber match application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone external_subscriber to-zone
external_subscriber policy Pol-Intra-subscriber then permit

```

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Configuring Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service Using Source and Static NAT on page 415

## Configuring Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service Using Source and Static NAT

When an Internet service provider (ISP) in one geographical location provides service to two networks in different geographical locations, a three-zone configuration might be necessary.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding the MGCP ALG” on page 392.

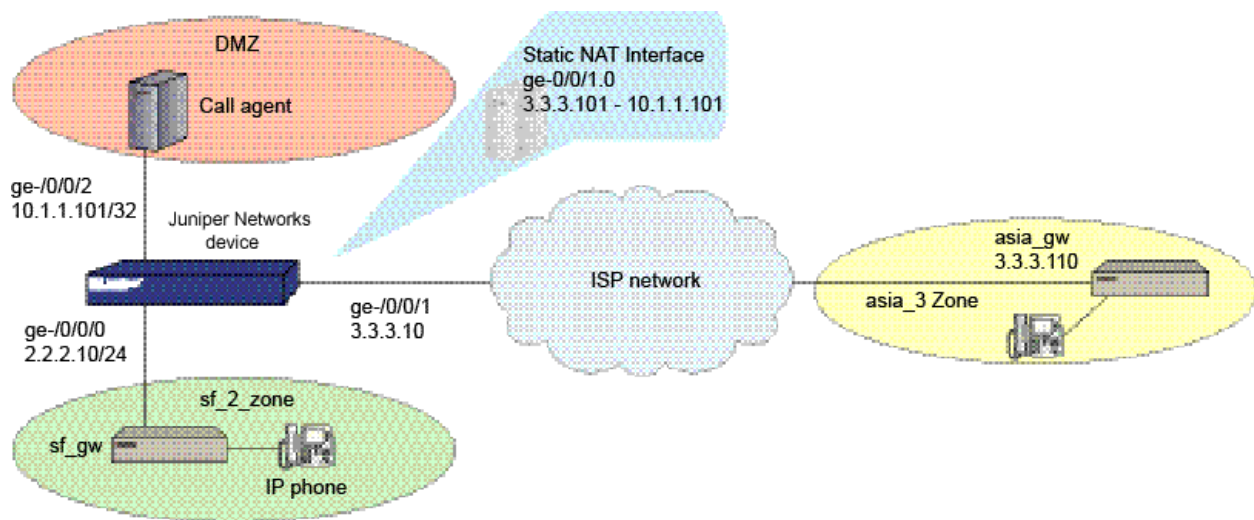
In this example, (see Figure 87 on page 416) an ISP located on the American west coast provides MGCP service to customers in separate networks in Asia and San Francisco. Asia customers are in the `asia_3` zone and supported by the `asia_gw` gateway; San Francisco customers are in the `sf_2` zone and supported by the `sf_gw` gateway; and the `west_ca` call agent is in the DMZ. The gateways and the call agent are listed in Table 85 on page 416, showing the corresponding IP address, interface, and zone.

**Table 85: Three-Zone ISP-Host Service**

<code>sf_gw</code>	2.2.2.201	<code>ge-0/0/0</code>	<code>sf_2</code>
<code>asia-gw</code>	3.3.3.110	<code>ge-0/0/1</code>	<code>asia_3</code>
<code>west_ca</code>	10.1.1.101	<code>ge-0/0/2</code>	DMZ

After creating zones and setting addresses for the gateways and the call agent, you associate the zones and addresses to interfaces, and then configure NAT (`ge-0/0/1.0`) and policies.

**Figure 87: Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service**



To configure a three-zone ISP-hosted service using source and static NAT, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 416
- Related Topics on page 419

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure interfaces.

```

user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 2.2.2.10/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 3.3.3.10/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.2/24

```

2. Configure addresses.

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone sf_2 address-book address sf_gw
2.2.2.201/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone asia_3 address-book address asia_gw
3.3.3.110/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz address-book address west_ca
10.1.1.101/32

```

3. Associate the zones and addresses to interfaces.

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone sf_2 interfaces ge-0/0/0
user@host# set security zones security-zone asia_3 interfaces ge-0/0/1
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz interfaces ge-0/0/2

```

4. Configure zones sf\_2, asia\_3, and DMZ to allow incoming VoIP traffic.

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone sf_2
user@host# set security zones security-zone sf_2 host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
user@host# set security zones security-zone sf_2 host-inbound-traffic protocols
all
user@host# set security zones security-zone asia_3
user@host# set security zones security-zone asia_3 host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
user@host# set security zones security-zone asia_3 host-inbound-traffic protocols
all
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz host-inbound-traffic protocols
all

```

5. Configure static NAT on interface ge-0/0/1 and source NAT on interface ge-0/0/2.

```

user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/1.0 static-nat 3.3.3.101/32 host
10.1.1.101/32
user@host# set security nat interface ge-0/0/2.0 source-nat pool src-nat-pool
address 2.2.2.10

```

6. Configure policies.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-dmz-to-asia_3 match source-address west_ca
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-dmz-to-asia_3 match destination-address asia_gw
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-dmz-to-asia_3 match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-dmz-to-asia_3 then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone asia_3 to-zone dmz policy
pol-asia_3-to-dmz match source-address asia_gw

```

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone asia_3 to-zone dmz policy
pol-asia_3-to-dmz match destination-address 3.3.3.101
user@host# set security policies from-zone asia_3 to-zone dmz policy
pol-asia_3-to-dmz match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set security policies from-zone asia_3 to-zone dmz policy
pol-asia_3-to-dmz then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone dmz policy pol-sf_2-to-dmz
match source-address sf_gw
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone dmz policy pol-sf_2-to-dmz
match destination-address west-ca
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone dmz policy pol-sf_2-to-dmz
match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone dmz policy pol-sf_2-to-dmz
then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone sf_2 policy pol-dmz-to-sf_2
match source-address west_ca
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone sf_2 policy pol-dmz-to-sf_2
match destination-address sf_gw
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone sf_2 policy pol-dmz-to-sf_2
match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone sf_2 policy pol-dmz-to-sf_2
then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-sf_2-to-asia_3 match source-address sf_gw
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-sf_2-to-asia_3 match destination-address asia_gw
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-sf_2-to-asia_3 match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-sf_2-to-asia_3 then permit source-nat pool src-nat-pool
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-sf_2-to-asia_3 match source-address sf_gw
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-sf_2-to-asia_3 match destination-address asia_gw
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-sf_2-to-asia_3 match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-sf_2-to-asia_3 then permit source-nat pool src-nat-pool
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy pol-intra-sf_2
match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy pol-intra-sf_2
match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy pol-intra-sf_2
match application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy pol-intra-sf_2
then permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-intra-asia_3 match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-intra-asia_3 match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-intra-asia_3 match application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone sf_2 to-zone asia_3 policy
pol-intra-asia_3 then permit

```

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Configuring a Media Gateway in Subscribers' Homes on page 408

## Verifying the MGCP Configuration

---

To verify the MGCP configuration, perform these tasks:

- Verifying MGCP Calls on page 419
- Verifying MGCP Endpoints on page 420
- Verifying MGCP Counters on page 421

## Verifying the MGCP ALG

**Purpose** Display MGCP verification options.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show security alg mgcp ?` command.

```
user@host> show security alg mgcp ?
Possible completions:
calls           Show MGCP calls
counters        Show MGCP counters
endpoints       Show MGCP endpoints
```

**What it Means** The output shows a list of all MGCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- All MGCP calls
- Counters for all MGCP calls
- Information about all MGCP endpoints

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Verifying MGCP Calls on page 419
- Verifying MGCP Endpoints on page 420
- Verifying MGCP Counters on page 421

## Verifying MGCP Calls

**Purpose** Display information about active calls.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select Monitor > ALGs > MGCP > Calls. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg mgcp calls` command.

```

user@host> show security alg mgcp calls
Endpoint@GW          Zone      Call ID      RM Group
d001@101.50.10.1     Trust     10d55b81140e0f76  512
  Connection Id> 0
    Local SDP> o: 101.50.10.1      x_o: 101.50.10.1
                c: 101.50.10.1/32206 x_c: 101.50.10.1/32206
    Remote SDP> c: 3.3.3.5/16928    x_c: 3.3.3.5/16928
Endpoint@GW          Zone      Call ID      RM Group
d001@3.3.3.5         Untrust   3a104e9b41a7c4c9  511
  Connection Id> 0
    Local SDP> o: 3.3.3.5          x_o: 3.3.3.5
                c: 3.3.3.5/16928    x_c: 3.3.3.5/16928
    Remote SDP> c: 101.50.10.1/32206 x_c: 101.50.10.1/32206

```

**What it Means** The output displays information about all MGCP calls. Verify the following information:

- Endpoint
- Zone
- Call identifier
- Resource Manager group

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Verifying the MGCP ALG on page 419
- Verifying MGCP Endpoints on page 420
- Verifying MGCP Counters on page 421

## Verifying MGCP Endpoints

**Purpose** Display information about MGCP endpoints.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor > ALGs > MGCP > Endpoints**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg mgcp endpoints` command.

```

user@host> show security alg mgcp endpoints
Gateway: 101.50.10.1 Zone: Trust IP: 101.50.10.1 -> 101.50.10.1
  Endpoint      Trans #  Call #  Notified Entity
  d001          1        1      0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
Gateway: 3.3.3.5 Zone: Untrust IP: 3.3.3.5 -> 3.3.3.5
  Endpoint      Trans #  Call #  Notified Entity
  d001          1        1      0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0

```

**What it Means** The output displays information about all MGCP endpoints. Verify the following information:

- Gateway IP address and zone of both endpoints
- Endpoint identifier, Trans #, Call #, and notified entity for each gateway

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Verifying the MGCP ALG on page 419
- Verifying MGCP Calls on page 419
- Verifying MGCP Counters on page 421

## Verifying MGCP Counters

**Purpose** Display information about MGCP counter.

**Action** From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor > ALGs > MGCP > Counters**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the `show security alg mgcp counters` command.

```
user@host> show security alg mgcp counters
MGCP counters summary:
Packets received           :284
Packets dropped            :0
Message received           :284
Number of connections      :4
Number of active connections :3
Number of calls            :4
Number of active calls     :3
Number of transactions     :121
Number of active transactions:52
Number of re-transmission  :68
MGCP Error Counters:
Unknown-method             :0
Decoding error             :0
Transaction error          :0
Call error                 :0
Connection error           :0
Connection flood drop      :0
Message flood drop         :0
IP resolve error           :0
NAT error                  :0
Resource manager error     :0
MGCP Packet Counters:
CRCX      :4      MDCX      :9      DLCX      :2
AUEP      :1      AUCX      :0      NTFY      :43
RSIP      :79     EPCF      :0      RQNT      :51
000-199   :0      200-299  :95     300-999   :0
```

**What it Means** The output displays information about all MGCP counters. Verify the following information:

- Summary of MGCP counters
- MGCP error counters
- MGCP packet counters

## Related Topics

- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Verifying the MGCP ALG on page 419
- Verifying MGCP Calls on page 419
- Verifying MGCP Endpoints on page 420

## Understanding the RPC ALG

---

JUNOS software supports basic Remote Procedure Call Application Layer Gateway (RPC ALG) services. RPC is a protocol that allows an application running in one address space to access the resources of applications running in another address space as if the resources were local to the first address space. The RPC ALG is responsible for RPC packet processing.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Application Layer Gateways (ALGs) on page 285
- Understanding NAT on page 188

The RPC ALG in JUNOS software supports the following services and features:

- Sun Microsystems RPC Open Network Computing (ONC)
- Microsoft RPC Distributed Computing Environment (DCE)
- Dynamic port negotiation
- Ability to allow and deny specific RPC services
- Static NAT and source NAT (with no port translation)
- RPC applications in security policies

Use the RPC ALG if you need RPC-based applications, such as NFS or Microsoft Outlook from the J-series device. The RPC ALG functionality is enabled by default.

The RPC ALG can be applied by using:

- ALG Default Application

Use the default application set:

- application-set junos-sun-rpc (for control sessions)
- application-set junos-sun-rpc-portmap (for data sessions)

In the policy, use the predefined application set for Control and Data Connections.



- Default Control Application

Use the predefined control via junos-sun-rpc:

- Create an application for Data USER\_DEFINED\_DATA. You can make a set of your own data (for example, my\_rpc\_application\_set) and use it in the policy.
- In the policy, use the predefined application set for Control and Customized Data Application.
  - junos-sun-rpc
  - USER\_DEFINED\_DATA

- Custom Control And Custom Data Application

Use the customized application:

- Create an application for Control USER\_DEFINED\_CONTROL and Data USER\_DEFINED\_DATA
- In the policy, use the user-defined application set for Control and Customized Data Application:
  - USER\_DEFINED\_CONTROL
  - USER\_DEFINED\_DATA

This topic covers:

- Sun RPC ALG on page 423
- Microsoft RPC ALG on page 425
- Related Topics on page 426

## **Sun RPC ALG**

Sun Microsystems Remote Procedure Call—also known as Open Network Computing Remote Procedure Call (ONC RPC)—provides a way for a program running on one host to call procedures in a program running on another host. Because of the large number of RPC services and the need to broadcast, the transport address of an RPC service is dynamically negotiated based on the service's program number and version number. Several binding protocols are defined for mapping the RPC program number and version number to a transport address.

J-series devices running JUNOS software support the Sun RPC as a predefined service and allow and deny traffic based on a security policy you configure. The Application Layer Gateway (ALG) provides the functionality for J-series devices to handle the dynamic transport address negotiation mechanism of the Sun RPC and to ensure program number-based security policy enforcement. You can define a security policy to permit or deny all RPC requests, or to permit or deny by specific program number. The ALG also supports route and NAT mode for incoming and outgoing requests. The following SUN RPC topics are addressed in this section:

- “Typical RPC Call Scenario” on page 424

- “Sun RPC Services” on page 424
- “Customizing Sun RPC Services” on page 424

### Typical RPC Call Scenario

When an application or a PC client calls a remote service, it needs to find the transport address of the service. In the case of TCP/UDP, the address is a port number. A typical procedure for this case is as follows:

1. The client sends the GETPORT message to the RPCBIND service on the remote machine. The GETPORT message contains the program number, and version and procedure number of the remote service it is attempting to call.
2. The RPCBIND service replies with a port number.
3. The client calls the remote service using the port number returned.
4. The remote service replies to the client.

A client also can use the CALLIT message to call the remote service directly, without determining the port number of the service. In this case, the procedure is as follows:

1. The client sends a CALLIT message to the RPCBIND service on the remote machine. The CALLIT message contains the program number, and the version and procedure number of the remote service it attempting to call.
2. RPCBIND calls the service for the client.
3. RCPBIND replies to the client if the call has been successful. The reply contains the call result and the services's port number.

### Sun RPC Services

Table 86 on page 424 lists predefined Sun RPC services.

**Table 86: Predefined Sun RPC Services**

junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp	junos-sun-rpc-portmap
junos-sun-rpc-portmap-udp	

### Customizing Sun RPC Services

All Sun RPC applications can be customized by using a predefined application set. For example, an application can be customized to open the control session only and not allow any data sessions:

```
application-set junos-sun-rpc {
  application junos-sun-rpc-tcp;
  application junos-sun-rpc-udp;
```

```
}
```

In the following example, the predefined application set allows data sessions only. It will not work without the control session.

```
application-set junos-sun-rpc-portmap {
    application junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp;
    application junos-sun-rpc-portmap-udp;
}
```

To customize all Sun RPC applications with predefined application sets, use both application sets in the policy:

```
application-set [junos-sun-rpc junos-sun-rpc-portmap]
```



**NOTE:** Microsoft Remote Procedure Call (MS RPC) applications are customized in the same way as SUN RPC applications.

---

## Microsoft RPC ALG

Microsoft Remote Procedure Call (MS RPC) is the Microsoft implementation of the Distributed Computing Environment (DCE) RPC. Like the Sun RPC (see “Sun RPC ALG” on page 423), MS RPC provides a way for a program running on one host to call procedures in a program running on another host. Because of the large number of RPC services and the need to broadcast, the transport address of an RPC service is dynamically negotiated based on the service program's Universal Unique IDentifier (UUID). The specific UUID is mapped to a transport address.

J-series device running JUNOS software support MS RPC as a predefined service and allow and deny traffic based on a policy you configure. The ALG provides the functionality for J-series Services devices to handle the dynamic transport address negotiation mechanism of the MS RPC, and to ensure UUID-based security policy enforcement. You can define a security policy to permit or deny all RPC requests, or to permit or deny by specific UUID number. The ALG also supports route and NAT mode for incoming and outgoing requests.

### MS RPC Services in Security Policies

- 0e4a0156-dd5d-11d2-8c2f-00c04fb6bcde
- 1453c42c-0fa6-11d2-a910-00c04f990f3b
- 10f24e8e-0fa6-11d2-a910-00c04f990f3b
- 1544f5e0-613c-11d1-93df-00c04fd7bd09

The corresponding TCP/UDP ports are dynamic. To permit them, you use a **set applications *application-name* term *term-name* uuid *hex-number*** statement for each number. The ALG maps the program numbers into dynamically negotiated TCP/UDP

ports based on these four UUIDs and permits or denies the service based on a policy you configure.

**Predefined Microsoft RPC Services**

Table 87 on page 426 lists predefined Microsoft services, parameters associated with each service, and a brief description of each service. Parameters include Universal Unique Identifiers (UUIDs) and TCP/UDP source and destination ports. A UUID is a 128-bit unique number generated from a hardware address, a timestamp, and seed values.

**Table 87: Predefined Microsoft RPC Services**

junos-ms-rpc-portmap-tcp	junos-ms-rpc-portmap
junos-ms-rpc-portmap-udp	

**Related Topics**

- Understanding the SIP ALG on page 313
- Understanding the SCCP ALG on page 375
- Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 392
- Disabling and Enabling RPC ALG on page 426
- Verifying the RPC ALG Tables on page 427

**Disabling and Enabling RPC ALG**

The RPC ALG functionality is enabled by default and requires no configuration. You can disable the RPC ALG

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Understanding the RPC ALG” on page 422.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 426
- CLI Configuration on page 427
- Related Topics on page 427

**J-Web Configuration**

The Sun RPC ALG and MS RPC ALG are enabled by default. To disable or re-enable the RPC ALGs:

- To disable or re-enable the Sun RPC ALG:
  1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > ALG**

To disable or re-enable the Microsoft RPC ALG:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > ALG**

## CLI Configuration

The Sun RPC ALG and MS RPC ALG are enabled by default.

To disable or re-enable the Sun RPC ALG:

- To disable the ALG, enter the following command:
 

```
user@host# set security alg sunrpc disable
```
- To re-enable the ALG, enter the following command:
 

```
user@host# delete security alg sunrpc
```

To disable or re-enable the Microsoft RPC ALG:

- To disable the ALG, enter the following command:
 

```
user@host# set security alg msrpc disable
```
- To re-enable the ALG, enter the following command:
 

```
user@host# delete security alg msrpc
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding the RPC ALG on page 422
- Verifying the RPC ALG Tables on page 427

## Verifying the RPC ALG Tables

---

To verify the RPC ALG, perform these tasks:

- Display the MS UUID mapping table

### Display the Sun RPC Port Mapping Table

**Purpose** Display the Sun RPC port map table. The Sun RPC ALG monitors packets on TCP or UDP port 111.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show security alg sunrpc portmap` command.

```
user@host> show security alg sunrpc portmap
IP          Port    Protocol Program
10.209.17.127 32835   TCP      100005
10.209.17.127 2049    UDP      100003
10.209.17.127 111     UDP      100000
10.209.17.127 111     TCP      100000
```

**What it Means** The output displays the server IP address, TCP or UDP port, and corresponding program number for each program being called with the Sun RPC ALG process:

- Server's IP address and port that maps to the program
- Protocol used to support the process
- Program ID number

### **Display the MS RPC UUID Mapping Table**

**Purpose** Display the MS RPC UUID-to-Object ID (OID) map table. The MS RPC ALG monitors packets on TCP port 135. (You can display the MS RPC port map table with the `show security alg msrpc portmap` command.)

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show security alg msrpc object-id-map` command.

```
user@host> show security alg msrpc object-id-map
UUID                               OID
1be617c0-31a5-11cf-a7d8-00805f48a135 0x80000020
e3514235-4b06-11d1-ab04-00c04fc2dcd2 0x80000002
67df7c70-0f04-11ce-b13f-00aa003bac6c 0x80000014
```

**What it Means** The output displays mapping of the UUID to the OIDs. Verify the following information:

- MS RPC UUID
- MS RPC object ID

### **Related Topics**

- Understanding the RPC ALG on page 422
- Disabling and Enabling RPC ALG on page 426

## **Part 3**

# **Policy Features**

- Security Policies on page 431
- Security Policy Address Books and Address Sets on page 455
- Security Policy Schedulers on page 463
- Security Policy Applications on page 473





## Chapter 12

# Security Policies

With the advent of the Internet, the need for a secure network has become vital for businesses with an Internet connection. Before a network can be secured for a business, a network security policy has to outline all the network resources within that business and identify the required security level for those resources. The network security policy also defines the security threats and the actions taken for such threats. JUNOS software stateful firewall policy provides a set of tools to network administrators, enabling them to implement network security for their organizations.

This section includes:

- Security Policies Overview on page 431
- Understanding Policies on page 432
- Understanding Policy Ordering on page 436
- Configuring Policies—Quick Configuration on page 438
- Configuring Policies on page 441
- Verifying Policy Configuration on page 445
- Example: Configuring Security Policies—Detailed Configuration on page 446
- Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic on page 446
- Configuring a Policy to Deny Traffic on page 448
- Reordering Policies After They Have Been Created on page 450
- Troubleshooting Policy Configuration on page 451
- Monitoring Policy Statistics on page 452

### Security Policies Overview

---

In a JUNOS software stateful firewall, the security policies enforce rules for the transit traffic, in terms of what traffic can pass through the firewall, and the actions that need to take place on the traffic as it passes through the firewall. From the perspective of security policies, the traffic enters one security zone and exits another security zone. This combination of a *from-zone* and *to-zone* is called a *context*. Each context contains an *ordered list* of policies.

A security policy, which can be configured from the user interface, controls the traffic flow from one zone to another zone by defining the kind(s) of traffic permitted from specified IP sources to specified IP destinations at scheduled times.

Policies allow you to deny, permit, reject (deny and send a TCP RST or ICMP port unreachable message to the source host), encrypt and decrypt, authenticate, prioritize, schedule, filter, and monitor the traffic attempting to cross from one security zone to another. You decide which users and what data can enter and exit, and when and where they can go.



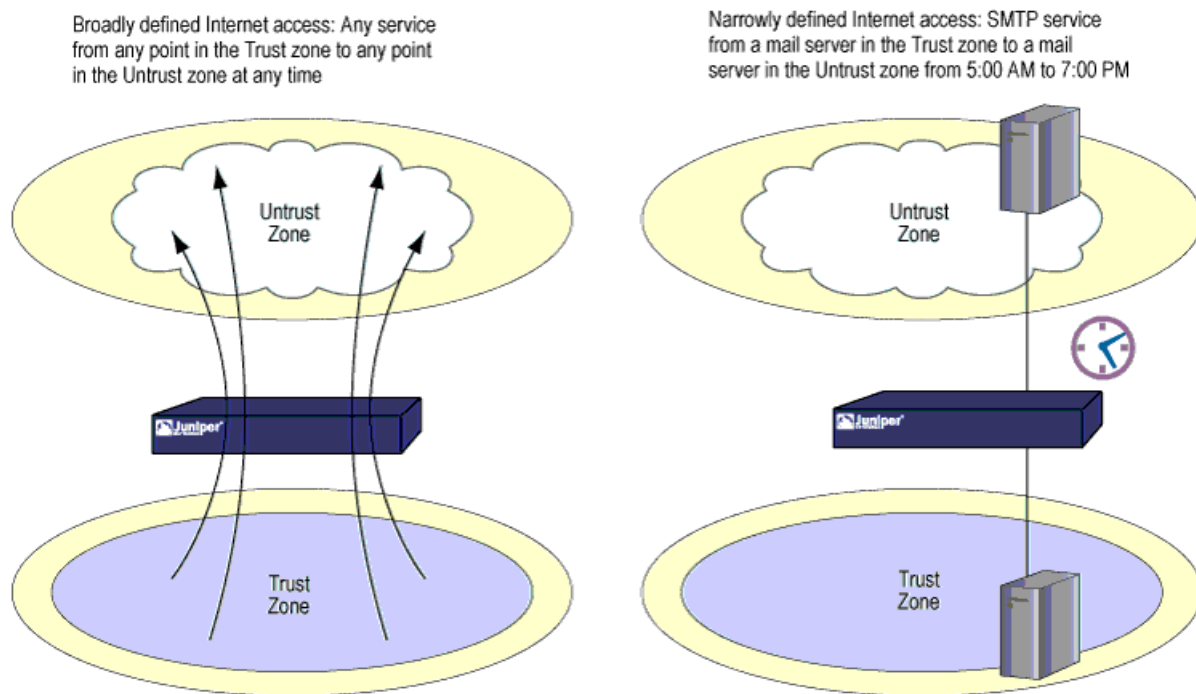
**NOTE:** For a J-series or SRX-series device that supports virtual systems, policies set in the root system do not affect policies set in virtual systems.

## Understanding Policies

A J-series or SRX-series device secures a network by inspecting, and then allowing or denying, all connection attempts that require passage from one security zone to another.

By default, a device denies all traffic in all directions. Through the creation of policies, you can control the traffic flow from zone to zone by defining the kinds of traffic permitted to pass from specified sources to specified destinations at scheduled times. At the broadest level, you can allow all kinds of traffic from any source in one zone to any destination in all other zones without any scheduling restrictions. At the narrowest level, you can create a policy that allows only one kind of traffic between a specified host in one zone and another specified host in another zone during a scheduled interval of time. See Figure 88 on page 432.

**Figure 88: Default Policy**



Every time a packet attempts to pass from one zone to another or between two interfaces bound to the same zone, the device checks for a policy that permits such traffic (see “Policy Application Sets Overview” on page 474). To allow traffic to pass from one security zone to another—for example, from zone A to zone B—you must configure a policy that permits zone A to send traffic to zone B. To allow traffic to flow the other way, you must configure another policy permitting traffic from zone B to zone A.

To allow data traffic to pass between zones, you must configure firewall policies.

This topic covers:

- Understanding Policy Rules on page 433
- Understanding Policy Elements on page 434
- Understanding Policy Configuration on page 435
- Related Topics on page 436

## Understanding Policy Rules

The security policy applies the security rules to the transit traffic within a context (from-zone to to-zone). Each policy is uniquely identified by its name. The traffic is classified by matching its source and destination zones, the source and destination addresses, and the application that the traffic carries in its protocol headers with the policy database in the data plane.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policies Overview” on page 431.

Each policy is associated with the following characteristics:

- A source zone
- A destination zone
- One or many source address names or address set names
- One or many destination address names or address set names
- One or many application names or application set names

These characteristics are called the *match criteria*. Each policy also has actions associated with it: permit, deny, and reject. You have to specify the match condition arguments when you configure a policy, source address, destination address, and application name. If you do not want to specify a specific application, enter **any** as the default application, indicating all possible applications. For example, if you do not supply an application name, then the policy is installed with the application as a wildcard (default). Therefore, any data traffic that matches the rest of the parameters in a given policy would match the policy regardless of the application type of the data traffic.

When you are creating a policy, the following policy rules apply:

- Security policies are configured in a **from-zone** to **to-zone** direction. Under a specific zone direction, each security policy contains a name, match criteria, an action, and miscellaneous options.
- The policy name, match criteria, and action are required.
- The policy name is a keyword.
- The source address in the match criteria is composed of one or more address names or address set names in the **from-zone**.
- The destination address of the match criteria is composed of one or more address names or address set names in the **to-zone**.
- The application name in the match criteria is composed of the name of one or more applications or application sets.
- One of the following actions is required: permit, deny, or reject.
- When logging is enabled, the system logs at session close time by default. You can enable logging at session creation, too.
- When the count alarm is turned on, you can, optionally, specify alarm thresholds in bytes per second and kilobytes per minute.
- You cannot specify **global** as either the **from-zone** or the **to-zone** except under following condition:

Any policy configured with the **to-zone** as a global zone must have a single destination address to indicate that either static NAT or incoming NAT has been configured in the policy.

- In SRX-series services gateways, policy permit option with NAT is simplified. Each policy will optionally indicate whether it allows NAT translation, no NAT translation or do not care.
- Address names cannot begin with the following reserved prefixes. These are used only for address NAT configuration:
  - `static_nat_`
  - `incoming_nat_`
  - `junos_`
- Application names cannot begin with the `junos_` reserved prefix.

## Understanding Policy Elements

A policy permits, denies, or tunnels specified types of traffic unidirectionally between two points.

To define a policy, you need:

- An incoming zone (the **from-zone**)
- An outgoing zone (the **to-zone**)
- An ordered set of policies between the **from-zone** and **to-zone**

Each policy consists of:

- A unique name for the policy.
- A set of match criteria defining the conditions that must be satisfied to apply the policy rule. The match criteria are based on a source IP address, destination IP address, and applications.
- A set of actions to be performed in case of a match—permit, deny, or reject.
- Accounting and auditing elements—counting, logging, or structured system logging.

The following example shows a policy configuration that allows traffic from the green zone (**from-zone**) to the red zone (**to-zone**).

- The red zone's address book contains the abc address.
- The green zone's address book contains the public address.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy
abctopublic
match source-address abc
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone red to-zone green policy
abctopublic
match destination-address public
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone red to-zone green policy
abctopublic
match application ssh
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone red to-zone green policy
abctopublic
then permit
```

For more information on the policy configuration syntax and options, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Understanding Policy Configuration

You must complete the following tasks to create a security policy:

1. Configure a security zone's host addresses and subnet addresses in its address book.
2. Configure application or application sets.
3. Create the policy.
4. Create schedulers if you plan to use them for your policies.
5. Bind a policy to a schedule.

## Related Topics

- Configuring Policies on page 441
- Security Policy Address Books and Address Sets on page 455
- Security Policy Schedulers on page 463
- Security Policy Applications on page 473

## Understanding Policy Ordering

---

JUNOS software offers a tool for verifying that the order of policies in the policy list is valid.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policies Overview” on page 431.

---

It is possible for one policy to eclipse, or *shadow*, another policy. Consider the following example:

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 1 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 1 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 1 match
application junos-http
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 1 then
permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 2 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 2 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 2 match
application junos-http
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 2 then deny

```

Because JUNOS software performs a policy lookup starting from the top of the list, when it finds a match for traffic received, it does not look any lower in the policy list. In the previous example, JUNOS software never reaches policy 2 because the destination address *any* in policy 1 includes the more specific *dst-A* address in policy 2. When an HTTP packet arrives at JUNOS software from an address in the Internal zone bound for *dst-A* in the External zone, JUNOS software always first finds a match with policy 1.

To correct the previous example, you can simply reverse the order of the policies, putting the more specific one first:

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 2 match
source-address any

```

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 2 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 2 match
application junos-http
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 2 then deny
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 1 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 1 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 1 match
application junos-http
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy 1 then
permit

```

Of course, this example is purposefully simple to illustrate the basic concept. In cases where there are dozens or hundreds of policies, the eclipsing of one policy by another might not be so easy to spot. To check if there is any policy shadowing in your policy list, you can use the following CLI command:

```
show policy-options <policy-name>
```

This command reports the shadowing and shadowed policies. It is then the administrator's responsibility to correct the situation.



**NOTE:** The concept of policy *shadowing* refers to the situation where a policy higher in the policy list always takes effect before a subsequent policy. Because the policy lookup always uses the first policy it finds that matches the five-part tuple of source and destination zone, source and destination address, and application type, if another policy applies to the same tuple (or a subset of the tuple), the policy lookup uses the first policy in the list and never reaches the second one.

---

The policy verification tool cannot detect the case where a combination of policies shadows another policy. In the following example, no single policy shadows policy 3; however, policies 1 and 2 together do shadow it:

```

user@host# set security zones security-zone trust address-book address-set grp1
address host1
user@host# set security zones security-zone trust address-book address-set grp1
address host2
user@host# set policy id 1 from trust to untrust host1 server1 HTTP permit
user@host# set policy id 2 from trust to untrust host2 server1 HTTP permit
user@host# set policy id 3 from trust to untrust grp1 server1 HTTP deny

```

## Related Topics

- Understanding Policies on page 432
- Example: Configuring Security Policies—Detailed Configuration on page 446

## Configuring Policies—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure security policies.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
2. Configure security zones and interfaces. See “Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration” on page 73.
3. Configure address books. See “Configuring Address Books” on page 460.

To configure security policies with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration>Quick Configuration>Security Policies>FW/VPN Policies**.
2. Select the Default Policy Action, **Deny All** or **Permit All**.
3. Select the zone direction (from zone and to zone) as shown in Figure 89 on page 438. You must have preconfigured the security zones for which you want to set policies. For more information on zones, see “Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration” on page 73.

**Figure 89: Quick Configuration Policies Page for Security Policies**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Security Policies](#)

---

Quick Configuration

**Security Policies**

---

Policy Action

Default Policy Action Deny-All ?

---

Zone Direction

From Zone zone1 ?

To Zone zone1 ?

Show Configured Policies

---

OK Cancel Apply

1. Click **Show Policies**. The screen displays the message “No policies have been defined for the selected zone direction.”
2. Click **Add a policy** to configure a new policy.
3. Specify a policy name.
4. Specify a policy action. The form changes depending on the action specified (Selecting permit displays additional fields as shown in Figure 90 on page 439). See Table 88 on page 440 for the extended policy configuration fields.



**Figure 90: Security Policies Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Security Policies](#)

---

Quick Configuration

**Security Policies** [Add a Policy](#)

---

Policy

\* Policy Name

---

⊞ Match Criterias

---

Policy Action

\* Policy Action Permit

IPSec-VPN Tunnel  ?

Pair Policy  ?

Source NAT ☐ ?

☐ Interface ?

☐ Pool  ?

☐ Pool Set  ?

Destination NAT ☐ ?

?

Firewall Authentication

☐ **Pass-through** ?

Access-Profile  ?

Client Name  ?

Web-Redirect ☐ ?

☐ **Web-authentication** ?

Client Name  ?

---

⊞ Additional Policy Actions

---

Scheduler

Scheduler Name

---

1. Optionally, you can select a scheduler name that you created earlier and whose schedule you want to associate with the policy. See “Configuring Schedulers” on page 465.
2. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 88: Security Policies Configuration Options**

Policy Action	Description
Match Criteria	<p>Source Address—Name of the source address or address set as entered in the source zone's address book.</p> <p>Destination Address—Name of the destination address or address set as entered in the destination zone's address book.</p> <p>Application—Name of a preconfigured or custom application or application set.</p>
Policy Action	<p>Permit—Allows the packet to pass through the firewall.</p> <p>Reject—Blocks the packet from traversing the firewall. The firewall drops the packet and sends a TCP reset (RST) segment to the source host for TCP traffic and an ICMP destination unreachable, port unreachable message (type 3, code 3) for UDP traffic.</p> <p>For TCP and UDP traffic, the firewall drops the packet and notifies the source host as action Deny.</p> <p>Deny—Blocks and drops the packet from traversing the firewall, but does not send notification back to the source.</p>
IPsec-VPN Tunnel	Name of the IPsec-VPN tunnel.
Pair Policy	Name of the policy with the same IPsec-VPN in the reverse direction to create a pair policy.
Source NAT	Enable source Network Address Translation (NAT-src) and permit address and port translation on the permitted traffic.
Destination NAT	Enable destination Network Address Translation (NAT-dst) and permit address and port translation on the permitted traffic.
Firewall Authentication	<p>Authenticate the client before forwarding the traffic. Two types of firewall authentication:</p> <p>Pass-through—Verifies traffic as it attempts to pass through the firewall.</p> <p>Web authentication—Verifies client authentication.</p> <p>For more information on authentication, see “Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509.</p>
Additional Policy Actions	<p>Count—If count is enabled, counters are collected for the number of packets, bytes, and sessions that enter the firewall for a given policy. For counts (only for packets and bytes), you can specify that alarms be generated whenever the traffic exceeds specified thresholds.</p> <p>Log (session-init and session-close)—Logs session creation and session close events.</p>
Scheduler	Optionally, name a scheduler whose schedule determines when the policy is active.

## Configuring Policies

---

A security policy applies security rules to transit traffic.

### Before You Begin

Before creating policies to control traffic between different security zones, you must first design the environment in which to apply those policies:

1. Create zones. See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
2. Configure the address book for the policy. (See “Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic” on page 446.)
3. Create addresses for use in the policies.
4. Create an application (or application set) that indicates that the policy applies to traffic of that type.

After completing Step 1 through Step 4, you can then create the policies necessary to permit or deny traffic in and out of your protected network. For background information, read “Security Policies Overview” on page 431.

A packet is matched against policies to determine how it is to be treated. The packet is matched against a policy's source and destination zones, source and destination addresses, and the application or application sets that the policy specifies. If the packet matches all elements of a policy, that policy's action is applied to the packet. See “Understanding Policy Rules” on page 433.

The action of the first policy that the traffic matches is applied to the packet. If there is no matching policy, the packet is dropped. Policies are searched from top to bottom, so it is a good idea to place more specific policies near the top of the list. You should also place IPsec VPN tunnel policies near the top. Place the more general policies, such as one that would allow certain users access to all Internet applications, at the bottom of the list.

Policies are applied after the packet has passed through the firewall's screens and the system has looked up its route. The packet's destination address determines its destination zone.

Depending on the policies you create, any of the actions shown in Table 88 on page 440 could be applied to the packet.

To define a policy, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 442
- CLI Configuration on page 444
- Related Topics on page 445

## J-Web Configuration

To configure policies using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Interfaces, click **Configure**.
3. Next to Interface, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Interface name box, type **ge-0/0/1**.
5. Next to Unit, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Interface unit number box, type **0**.
7. Under Family, select **inet** and click **Configure**.
8. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Source box, type **10.1.1.1/24** and click **OK**.
10. To configure the other interfaces such as **ge-0/0/2** and **ge-0/0/3** and addresses such as **1.2.2.1/24** and **1.1.1.1/24**, repeat Step 2 through Step 9 and click **OK**.

To configure interfaces:

1. Select **Configuration>View and Edit>Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **internal**.
6. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.0** and click **OK**.
8. To configure security zones such as **dmz** and **external**, and interfaces such as **ge-0/0/2.0** and **ge-0/0/3.0**, repeat Step 3 through Step 7 and click **OK**.

To configure addresses:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zones, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **internal**.

6. Next to the Address book, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Address name box, type **corp\_net 10.1.1.0/24** and click **OK**.
9. To configure more security zones such as **dmz** and **external**, and address books entries such as **mail\_svr 1.2.2.5/32** and **r-mail\_svr 2.2.2.5/32**, repeat Step 3 through Step 8 and click **OK**.

To configure application sets:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Applications, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Application set, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Application set name box, type **MAIL-POP3**.
5. In the Application name box, type **junos-mail** and click **OK**,

To create Policies:

1. Select **Configuration>View and Edit>Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Policy, select the check box and click **Configure**.
3. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the From zone name box, type **internal**.
5. In the To zone name box, type **dmz corp\_net**.
6. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Policy name box, type **Pol1**.
8. Select the **Match** check box.
9. Select the **Then** check box.
10. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
11. To match the policy to an application name, from the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
12. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
13. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter specific value**.
14. To specify the address of the address book, In the Address box, type **corp\_net** and click **OK**.
15. To match the policy to a destination address, from the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
16. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
17. In the Value keyword list, select **Enter specific value**.

18. To specify the destination address for the policy, in the Address box, type `mail_svr` and click **OK**.
19. To match the policy to an application set name, from the Application Choice list, select **Application**.
20. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
21. To specify the application set name to match the policy, from the Value keyword list, type **MAIL-POP3** and click **OK**.
22. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
23. From the Action list, select **Permit** and click **OK**.
24. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
25. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Policy Configuration” on page 445.

## CLI Configuration

1. Set interfaces.

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.2.2.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/3 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone internal interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
user@host# set security zones security-zone external interfaces ge-0/0/3.0
```

2. Configure addresses.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone internal address-book address
corp_net 10.1.1.0/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone dmz address-book address mail_svr
1.2.2.5/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone external address-book address
r-mail_svr 2.2.2.5/32
```

3. Configure application sets.

```
user@host# set applications application-set MAIL-POP3 application junos-mail
user@host# set applications application-set MAIL-POP3 application junos-pop3
```

4. Create policies.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone dmz corp_net mail_svr
MAIL-POP3 permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone external mail_svr r-mail_svr
MAIL permit
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone dmz r-mail_svr mail_svr
MAIL permit
```

5. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
6. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Policy Configuration” on page 445.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Policies on page 432
- Configuring Address Books on page 460
- Policy Application Sets Overview on page 474
- Example: Configuring Applications and Application Sets on page 496
- Configuring Schedulers on page 465
- Verifying Policy Configuration on page 445

## Verifying Policy Configuration

---

A scheduler is referred by security policies to activate or deactivate a policy according to scheduled times. Use the **show schedulers** command to verify that your configured policies are associated with the appropriate schedulers. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*

**Purpose** Display information about address books and zones.

**Action** Use the **show security policies** CLI command to display a summary of all security policies configured on the device. If a particular policy is specified, display information particular to that policy:

```
user@host> show security policies
From zone: ZoneA, To zone: ZoneB
Policy: p1, Sequence number: 1, State: enabled
Source addresses: v-2-2-2-0
Destination addresses: v-1-1-1-0
Applications: any
Action: permit, log, scheduled
Policy: p2, Sequence number: 2, State: enabled
Source addresses: v-2-2-2-0
Destination addresses: v-1-1-1-0
Applications: any
Action: deny, scheduled
```

**What it Means** The output displays information about policies configured on the system. Verify the following information:

- From and to zones.
- Source and destination addresses.
- Match criteria.

## Example: Configuring Security Policies—Detailed Configuration

---

The following instructions include a sample configuration and step-by-step guidelines explaining how to configure policies to protect resources and allow traffic through the firewall.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
  2. For background information, read:
    - Security Policies Overview on page 431
    - Address Books and Address Sets Overview on page 455
- 

The following steps show how to configure policies:

1. Configure a policy to permit traffic. For more information, see “Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic” on page 446.
2. Configure a policy to deny traffic. For more information, see “Configuring a Policy to Deny Traffic” on page 448.
3. Configure a policy with pass-through authentication. For more information, see “Configuring for Pass-Through Authentication” on page 514.
4. Configure a policy with WebAuth authentication. For more information, see “Configuring for Web Authentication” on page 519.
5. Reorder policies after they have been created. For more information, see “Reordering Policies After They Have Been Created” on page 450.

## Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic

---

Configuring a policy to permit traffic is the first step in the sample configuration explaining how to configure a policy.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
  2. Create zones. See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
  3. Configure the address book for the policy. (See “Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic” on page 446.)
  4. For background information, read “Example: Configuring Security Policies—Detailed Configuration” on page 446.
- 

To configure a policy to permit traffic, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. The following configuration commands allow traffic between the loopback addresses of both the Juniper Networks devices.



This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 447
- CLI Configuration on page 448
- Related Topics on page 448

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure a policy to permit traffic using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. In the From zone name box, type **green**.
5. In the To zone name box, type **red**.
6. In the Policy name box, type **allowin**.
7. Select the **Match** check box.
8. Select the **Then** check box.
9. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
10. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
11. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
12. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter specific value**.
13. In the Address box, type **netTopLoopInt** and click **OK**.
14. To match the policy to a destination address, from the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
15. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
16. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter specific value**.
17. In the Address box, type **netBottomLoopInt** and click **OK**.
18. To match the policy to an application set name, from the Application Choice list, select **Application**.
19. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
20. To specify the application set name to match the policy, from the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
21. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
22. From the Action list, select **Permit** and click **OK**.
23. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
24. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Policy Configuration” on page 445.

## CLI Configuration

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone RED to-zone GREEN policy allowIn match
source-address netTopLoopInt
user@host# set security policies from-zone RED to-zone GREEN policy allowIn match
destination-address netBottomLoopInt
user@host# set security policies from-zone RED to-zone GREEN policy allowIn match
application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone RED to-zone GREEN policy allowIn then
permit

```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

To check the configuration, see “Verifying Policy Configuration” on page 445.

## Related Topics

- [Configuring a Policy to Deny Traffic on page 448](#)
- [Monitoring Policy Statistics on page 452](#)

## Configuring a Policy to Deny Traffic

Configuring a policy to deny traffic is the second step in the sample configuration explaining how to configure a policy.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
2. Create zones. See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
3. Configure the address book for the policy. (See “Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic” on page 446.)
4. Configure a policy to permit traffic. (See “Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic” on page 446.)
5. For background information, read “Example: Configuring Security Policies—Detailed Configuration” on page 446.

To configure a policy to deny traffic, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. The following configuration commands deny traffic between the loopback addresses of both the Juniper Networks devices.

This topic covers:

- [J-Web Configuration on page 449](#)
- [CLI Configuration on page 450](#)
- [Related Topics on page 450](#)

## J-Web Configuration

To configure a policy to deny traffic using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. In the From zone name box, type **green**.
5. In the To zone name box, type **red**.
6. In the Policy name box, type **denyin**.
7. Select the **Match** check box.
8. Select the **Then** check box.
9. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
10. To match the policy to an application name, from the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
11. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
12. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter specific value**.
13. In the Address box, type **netTopLoopInt** and click **OK**.
14. To match the policy to a destination address, from the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
15. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
16. From the Value keyword list, select **Enter specific value**.
17. In the Address box, type **netBottomLoopInt** and click **OK**.
18. To match the policy to an application set name, from the Application choice list, select **Application**.
19. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
20. To specify the application set name to match the policy, from the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
21. To complete matching the policy to the specific source address, destination address, and application name, click **OK**.
22. Next to Then, click **Configure**.
23. From the Action list, select **Deny** and click **OK**.
24. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
25. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Policy Configuration” on page 445.

## CLI Configuration

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone RED to-zone GREEN policy DenyIn match
source-address netTopLoopInt
user@host# set security policies from-zone RED to-zone GREEN policy DenyIn match
destination-address netBottomLoopInt
user@host# set security policies from-zone RED to-zone GREEN policy DenyIn match
application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone RED to-zone GREEN policy DenyIn then
deny

```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

To check the configuration, see “Verifying Policy Configuration” on page 445.

## Related Topics

- Configuring for Web Authentication on page 519
- Verifying Scheduled Policies on page 470

## Reordering Policies After They Have Been Created

---

Reordering policies is the last step in the sample configuration explaining how to configure a policy.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
  2. Create zones. (See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.)
  3. Configure the address book for the policy. (See “Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic” on page 446.)
  4. Configure a policy to permit traffic. (See “Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic” on page 446.)
  5. Configure a policy to deny traffic. (See “Configuring a Policy to Deny Traffic” on page 448.)
  6. Configure a policy with pass-through authentication. (See “Configuring for Pass-Through Authentication” on page 514.)
  7. Configure a policy with WebAuth authentication. (See “Configuring for Web Authentication” on page 519.)
  8. For background information, read “Example: Configuring Security Policies—Detailed Configuration” on page 446.
- 

The following configuration commands show how to move policies around after they have been created.

```

user@host#edit security policies from-zone RED to-zone GREEN
insert policy passTauth after policy wAuth

```

## Related Topics

- Understanding Policies on page 432
- Understanding Policy Configuration on page 435

## Troubleshooting Policy Configuration

---

Most policy configuration failures occur during a commit or runtime.

This topic covers:

- Checking Commit Failure on page 451
- Verifying Commit on page 451
- Debugging Policy Lookup on page 452

### Checking Commit Failure

Commit failures are reported directly on the CLI when you execute the CLI command **commit-check** in configuration mode. These errors are configuration errors and you cannot commit the configuration without fixing these errors.

To fix these errors, do the following:

1. Review your configuration data.
2. Open the file `/var/log/nsd_chk_only`. This file is overwritten each time you perform a commit check and contains detailed failure information.

### Verifying Commit

Upon performing a policy configuration commit, if you notice that the system behavior is incorrect, use the following steps to troubleshoot this problem:

1. Operational **show** Commands—Execute the operational commands for security policies and verify that the information shown in the output is consistent with what you expected. If not, the configuration needs to be changed appropriately.
2. Traceoptions—Set the **traceoptions** command in your policy configuration. The flags under this hierarchy can be selected as per user analysis of the **show** command output. If you cannot determine what flag to use, the flag option **all** can be used to capture all trace logs.

```
user@host# set security policies traceoptions <flag all>
```

You can also configure an optional filename to capture the logs.

```
user@host# set security policies traceoptions <filename>
```

If you specified a filename in the traceoptions, you can look in the `/var/log/<filename>` for the log file to ascertain if any errors were reported in the

file. (If you did not specify a filename, the default filename is eventd.) The error messages indicate the place of failure and the appropriate reason.

After configuring the trace options, you must recommit the configuration change that caused incorrect system behavior.

## Debugging Policy Lookup

When you have the correct configuration, but some traffic was incorrectly dropped or permitted, you can enable the **lookup** flag in the security policies traceoptions. The **lookup** flag logs the lookup related traces in the trace file.

```
user@host# set security policies traceoptions <flag lookup>
```

## Monitoring Policy Statistics

---

JUNOS software can monitor and record traffic that it permits or denies based on previously configured policies.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Security Policies Overview on page 431
- Understanding Policy Rules on page 433

To monitor traffic, enable the count and log options.

**Count**—Can be configured in an individual policy. If count is enabled, counters are collected for the number of packets, bytes, and sessions that enter the firewall for a given policy. For counts (only for packets and bytes), you can specify that alarms be generated whenever the traffic exceeds specified thresholds.

**Log**—Consists of trace options and a structured system log.

- Trace options: Tracing operations for a policy.

To trace security policies, include the **traceoptions** command at the [edit] hierarchy level.

```
set security policies traceoptions < filename > < flag >
```

*filename*—Name of the file in which the output of the tracing operation is saved. All files are placed in the directory `/var/log < " filename" >`. Enclose the name of the security-trace file within quotation marks. By default, commit script process tracing output is placed in the file. If you include the file command, you must specify a filename. To retain the default, you can specify eventd as the filename.

The default file size is 128 KB, and 10 files are created before the first one gets overwritten.

*flag*—Tracing operation to perform. To perform more than one tracing operation, include multiple *flag* commands. You can include the following flags:

- **all**—All tracing operations
- **authentication**—Trace authentication events
- **configuration**—Trace configuration events
- **setup**—Trace setup of firewall authentication service
- **Structured Log**: Has one directive for all policies.





## Chapter 13

# Security Policy Address Books and Address Sets

Each security zone contains an address book. Before you can set up policies between two zones, you must define the addresses for each of the zone's address books. To manage an address book with large numbers of addresses, you can create groups of addresses called address sets.

This section includes:

- Address Books and Address Sets Overview on page 455
- Configuring Addresses and Address Sets—Quick Configuration on page 458
- Configuring Address Books on page 460
- Verifying Address Book Configuration on page 461

### Address Books and Address Sets Overview

---

A security zone is a logical group of interfaces with identical security requirements. Each security zone contains an address book. Before you can set up policies between two zones, you must define the addresses for each of the zone's address books. A zone's address book must contain entries for the addressable networks and end hosts (and, thus, users) belonging to the zone.

### Understanding Address Books

The following guidelines apply to address books:

- An address book for a security zone contains the IP address or domain names of hosts and subnets whose traffic is either allowed, blocked, encrypted, or user-authenticated.
- Address books can have address sets. Each address set has a name and a list of address names.
- Addresses and address sets in the same zone must have distinct names.
- Addresses must conform to the security requirements of the zone.
- IP addresses can be configured as IPv4 addresses with the number of prefix bits, or as Domain Name System (DNS) names.

- The predefined address any is automatically created for each security zone.
- The address book of a security zone must contain all IP addresses that are reachable within that zone.

Policies contain both source and destination zones and addresses. An address is referred to in a policy by the name you give it in its zone's address book.

- When traffic is sent to a zone, the zone and address to which the traffic is sent are used as the destination zone and address-matching criteria in policies.
- When traffic is sent from a zone, the zone and address from which it is sent are used as the matching source zone and address in policies.

For more information on the address book configuration syntax and options, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*



**NOTE:** Specify addresses as network prefixes in the **prefix/length** format. For example, 1.2.3.0/24 is an acceptable address book address because it translates to a network prefix. However, 1.2.3.4/24 is not acceptable for an address book because it exceeds the subnet length of 24 bits. Everything beyond the subnet length must be entered as 0 (zero). In special scenarios, you can enter a hostname because it can use the full 32-bit address length.

---

## Understanding Address Sets

An address book can grow to contain large numbers of addresses and become difficult to manage. To manage an address book with large numbers of addresses, you can create groups of addresses called *address sets*. You can reference an address set in a policy as you would an individual address book entry.

The following example shows addresses and address sets in the green zone:

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone green address-book address src_addr1
64.10.4.44/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone green address-book address src_addr2
64.10.9.28/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone green address-book address src_addr3
10.10.10.10/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone green address-book address bbc dns-name
www.bbc.com
user@host# set security zones security-zone green address-book address-set
my_source_addresses address src_addr1
user@host# set security zones security-zone green address-book address-set
my_source_addresses address src_addr2
user@host# set security zones security-zone green address-book address-set
my_source_addresses address src_addr3
```

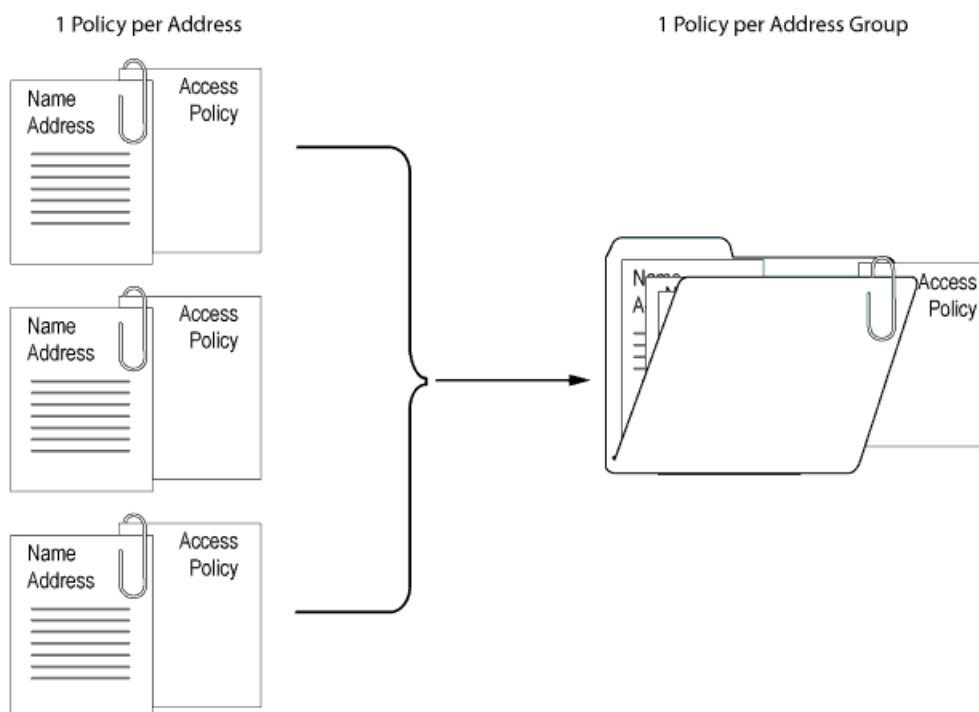
For more information on the address set configuration syntax and options, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*



**NOTE:** Consider that for each address set, the system creates individual rules for its members. It creates an internal rule for each member in the group as well as for each service configured for each user. If you configure address books without taking this into account, you can exceed the number of available policy resources, especially if both the source and destination addresses are address groups and the specified service is a service group.

When you add addresses to policies, sometimes the same subset of addresses can be present in multiple policies, making it difficult to manage how policies affect each address entry. JUNOS software allows you to create groups of addresses called *address sets*. Address sets simplify the process by allowing you to add multiple addresses within an address set and therefore manage a small number of address sets, rather than manage a large number of individual address entries. See Figure 91 on page 457.

**Figure 91: Address Sets**



The address set option has the following features:

- You can create address sets in any zone.
- You can create address sets with existing users, or you can create empty address sets and later fill them with users.
- You can reference an address set entry in a policy like an individual address book entry.



**NOTE:** JUNOS software applies policies automatically to each address set member, so you do not have to create them one by one for each address. Furthermore, JUNOS software writes these policies to ASIC, which makes lookups run very fast.

- When you delete an individual address book entry from the address book, you must remove the address (wherever it is referred) from all the address sets.

The following constraints apply to address sets:

- To configure an address set, you need more than an address in the address book.
- Address sets can only contain address names that belong to the same security zone.
- Address names cannot be the same as address set names. For example, if the name **Paris** is used for an address in an individual address entry, it cannot be used for an address set name.
- If an address set is referenced in a policy, the address set cannot be removed without removing its reference in the policy. It can, however, be edited.
- You cannot add the predefined address **any** to an address book.

## Configuring Addresses and Address Sets—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure address books and address sets.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read “Understanding Security Zones” on page 69 and “Configuring Address Books” on page 460.
2. Configure zones. For more information, see “Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration” on page 73.

To configure addresses and address sets with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Policy Elements > Address Books**.
2. Select the zone for which you want to configure address books. For more information on creating zones, see “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
3. Click **Add** to add IP addresses to the address book. See Figure 92 on page 459.

Figure 92: Quick Configuration Policy Elements Page for Address Books

Quick Configuration

Policy ElementsAdd an Address

Address Information

\* Address Name

IP Address/Prefix

?

DNS Name

?

OK

Cancel

4. Specify an address name.
5. Specify either an IP address or a DNS name. The IP address must be an IPv4 address with the number of prefix bits. You can use domain names only if the system is configured to use DNS services.
6. Click one of the following buttons:

■ To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click OK.

■ To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click Cancel.
7. Continue adding addresses using Step 2 through Step 5. Once you have the addresses you need to create an address set, select the **Address Sets** tab.
8. Click Add. See Figure 93 on page 459.

Figure 93: Configuring Address Sets

Quick Configuration

Policy ElementsAdd an Address-set

Address Set Information

\* Address-set Name

Addresses in this set

Addresses out of the set

ca\_addr

OK

Cancel

9. Specify an Address Set name.

10. To add the predefined addresses in the “Addresses in this set” column, use the left and right arrows.
11. Click **OK** to save the configuration and return to the main Configuration page.

## Configuring Address Books

---

This section describes the addresses and address sets configured for the address books of the green zone. The IntranetGREEN zone contains two servers. These servers belong to the same subnet, but they are separately addressable.

This example adds individual addresses for both servers to the zone's address list to accommodate users who have access rights to one server and not the other. It also adds an address set to combine the two servers into a single addressable entity.

To create address books, use either J-Web or the CLI Configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 460
- CLI Configuration on page 461
- Related Topics on page 461

### J-Web Configuration

To create address books using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration>View and Edit>Edit Configuration**.
- The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
  5. In the Name box, type **IntranetGREEN**.
  6. Next to Address Book, click **Configure**.
  7. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
  8. In the Address name box, type **G1 10.1.10.0/24** and click **OK**.
  9. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.

You need to have more than one address in the Address book to configure an Address Set.

10. In the Address name box, type **G2 10.1.10.0/32** and click **OK**.
11. Next to Address Set, click **Add new entry**.
12. In the Address set name box, type **SerAll** and click **OK**.

13. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
14. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Address Book Configuration” on page 461.

## CLI Configuration

1. To configure address book entries for the Intranet zone, enter the following commands in edit mode.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone IntranetGREEN address-book address
G1 10.1.10.0/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone IntranetGREEN address-book address
G2 10.1.10.0/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone IntranetGREEN address-book
address-set SerAll address G1 address G2
```

2. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
3. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Address Book Configuration” on page 461.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Policy Configuration on page 435
- Policy Application Sets Overview on page 474
- Example: Configuring Applications and Application Sets on page 496
- Configuring Policies on page 441
- Configuring Schedulers on page 465

## Verifying Address Book Configuration

**Purpose** Display information about address books and zones.

**Action** Use the `show security zones` CLI command to verify the address book and address set configuration. You get the following output:

```
user@host# show security zones
security-zone green {
  address-book {
    address src_addr3 10.10.10.10/24;
    address src_addr1 64.10.4.44/32;
    address src_addr2 64.10.9.28/32;
    address bbc dns-name www.bbc.com;
    address-set my_source_addresses {
      address src_addr1;
      address src_addr2;
      address src_addr3;
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }  
}
```

**What it Means** The output displays information about all the addresses configured in an address book in the specified. Verify the following information:

- Configured addresses belong to the correct address book.
- Configured address book belongs to the correct zone.



## Chapter 14

# Security Policy Schedulers

Schedulers are powerful features that allow a policy to be activated for a specified duration. You can define schedulers for a single (non-recurrent) or recurrent time slot within which a policy is active. You can create schedulers irrespective of a policy, meaning that a scheduler cannot be used by any policies. However, if you want a policy to be active within a scheduled time, then you must first create a scheduler.

When a scheduler times out, the associated policy is deactivated and all sessions associated with the policy are also timed out.

If a policy contains a reference to a scheduler, the schedule determines when the policy is active, that is, when it can be used as a possible match for traffic. Schedulers allow you to restrict access to a resource for a period of time or remove a restriction.



**NOTE:** A scheduler can have multiple policies associated with it; however, a policy cannot be associated with multiple schedulers.

This section includes:

- Configuring a Scheduler—Quick Configuration on page 463
- Configuring Schedulers on page 465
- Associating a Policy to a Scheduler on page 468
- Verifying Scheduled Policies on page 470

## Configuring a Scheduler—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure a schedule for the security policies. See Figure 94 on page 464.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
2. Configure security zones and interfaces. See “Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration” on page 73.
3. Configure address books. See “Configuring Address Books” on page 460.
4. Configure security policies that are going to be associated with a schedule. See “Configuring Policies—Quick Configuration” on page 438.

**Figure 94: Quick Configuration Policies Page for Schedulers**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Schedulers](#)

---

Quick Configuration

**Schedulers**

---

List 15 per page

	Scheduler Name	Start Date	Stop Date
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">weekly-schedule</a>	07-10.00:00	10-10.00:00

---

To configure a scheduler with Quick Configuration:

1. Select [Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Schedulers](#).
2. Click **Add**. See Figure 95 on page 464.

**Figure 95: Scheduler Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Schedulers](#)

---

Quick Configuration

**Schedulers** [Add a Scheduler](#)

---

\* Scheduler Name

Start Date  ?

Stop Date  ?

---

Recurrent-Periods

☐ **Sunday** ☐ All-Day ? ☐ Exclude ?

☐ **Monday**

☐ **Tuesday**

☐ **Wednesday**

☐ **Thursday**

☐ **Friday**

☐ **Saturday**

---

1. Specify a scheduler name.
2. Specify the start and stop date and times in the YYYY.MM.DD.hh.mm (year, month, date, hour, minutes) format.
3. Select the **Recurrent-Period**, if needed. Click the plus sign by a specific day to select all day or exclude a day from the weekly schedule.
4. Click one of the following buttons:

- To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## Configuring Schedulers

---

The following guidelines apply to schedulers:

- A policy is active during the time when the scheduler it refers to is also active.
- When a scheduler is off, the policy is unavailable for policy lookup.
- A scheduler can be configured as one of the following:
  - Scheduler can be active for a single time slot, as specified by a start date and time and a stop date and time.
  - Scheduler can be active forever (recurrent), but as specified by the daily schedule. The schedule on a specific day (time slot) takes priority over the daily schedule.
  - Scheduler can be active within a time slot as specified by the weekday schedule.
  - Scheduler can have a combination of two time slots (daily and timeslot).

To configure a scheduler, you enter a meaningful name and a start and stop time for the scheduler. You can also attach comments.

To configure a scheduler, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 465
- CLI Configuration on page 467
- Related Topics on page 468

### J-Web Configuration

To set a schedule that allows a policy to be used for packet match checks using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Schedulers, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Scheduler, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Scheduler name box, type **Sch1**.
5. Next to the Start Date box, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Start date box, type **2007-10-01.08:00**.

7. In the Stop date box, type **2008-04-01.21:00**.
8. Specify the days when the policy cannot be used for packet matches:
  - a. To exclude Saturdays from the schedule, next to Saturday, click **Configure**.
  - b. From the Daily Type list, select **Exclude** and click **OK**.
  - c. To exclude Sundays from the schedule, next to Sunday, click **Configure**.
  - d. From the Daily Type list, select **Exclude** and click **OK**.

To associate the schedule with the policy, allowing access during regular work hours:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. In the From zone name box, type **green**.
4. In the To zone name box, type **red**.
5. In the Policy name box, type **abc**.
6. In the Scheduler name box, type **sch1** and click **OK**.

To set schedulers that allow associated policies to check for packet matches from noon to 6 PM on Saturdays and Sundays:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. In the Scheduler name box, type scheduler **SatHrs**.
3. Next to Saturday, click **Configure**.
4. From the Daily type list, select **Start time**.
5. Next to Start time, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Start time value box, type **12:00:00**.
7. In the Stop time box, type **18:00:00** and click **OK**.
8. To set the scheduler that allow associated policies to check for packet matches from noon to 6 PM on Sundays, repeat Step 1 through Step 7 and click **OK**.

To bind these schedules with the policy, allowing access during the specified weekend hours:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. In the From zone name box, type **green**.
4. In the To zone name box, type **red**.

5. In the Policy name box, type **abc**.
6. To bind these schedules to the policy during Saturdays, in the Scheduler name box, type **SatHrs** and click **OK**.
7. To bind these schedules to the policy during Sundays, in the Scheduler name box, type **SunHrs** and click **OK**.
8. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
9. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Scheduled Policies” on page 470.

## CLI Configuration

1. Use the following commands to set a schedule that allows a policy, which refers to it, to be used for packet match checks from 8 AM to 9 PM all days of the week from October 1, 2007 to April 1, 2008 except Saturdays and Sundays. Otherwise, the policy is inactive.

```
user@host# set schedulers scheduler sch1 start-date 2007-10-01.08:00 stop-date
2008-04-01.21:00
user@host# set schedulers scheduler sch1 saturday exclude
user@host# set schedulers scheduler sch1 sunday exclude
```

2. Use the following command to associate the schedule to the policy, allowing access during regular work hours, as specified.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy abc
scheduler-name sch1
```

3. Use the following commands to set schedulers that allow associated policies to check for packet matches from noon to 6 PM on Saturdays and Sundays. Otherwise the policy is inactive.

```
user@host# set schedulers scheduler SatHrs saturday start-time 12:00:00
stop-time 18:00:00
user@host# set schedulers scheduler SunHrs sunday start-time 12:00 stop-time
18:00
```

4. Use the following commands to bind these schedules to the policy, allowing access during the specified weekend hours.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy abc
scheduler-name SatHrs
user@host# set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy abc
scheduler-name SunHrs
```

5. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
6. You can verify the schedules using the show schedulers CLI command. See “Verifying Scheduled Policies” on page 470.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Policy Configuration on page 435
- Associating a Policy to a Scheduler on page 468
- Configuring Address Books on page 460
- Example: Configuring Applications and Application Sets on page 496
- Configuring Policies on page 441

## Associating a Policy to a Scheduler

---

A scheduler is referred by security policies to activate or deactivate a policy according to scheduled times. You can associate a policy with a scheduler as you create the policy.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
  2. For background information, read:
    - Security Policies Overview on page 431
    - Address Books and Address Sets Overview on page 455
- 

To associate a policy to a scheduler, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 468
- CLI Configuration on page 469
- Related Topics on page 470

## J-Web Configuration

To associate a policy to a scheduler using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. From the list of configured policies, click the policy you need to associate with a scheduler.
3. Under the Nested Configuration column, click **Policy**.
4. Under the Actions column, click **Edit**.
5. To specify the name of the schedule you wish to associate with the policy, in the Scheduler name box, type **SatHrs** and click **OK**.

To set schedulers that allow associated policies to check for packet matches from noon to 6 PM on Saturdays and Sundays:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. In the Scheduler name box, type **scheduler SatHrs**.
3. Next to Saturday, click **Configure**.
4. From the Daily type list, select **Start time**.
5. Next to Start time, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Start time box, type **12:00:00**.
7. In the Stop time box, type **18:00:00** and click **OK**.
8. To set the scheduler that allow associated policies to check for packet matches from noon to 6 PM on Sundays, repeat Step 1 through Step 7.

To bind these schedules to the policy, allowing access during the specified weekend hours:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. In the From zone name box, type **green**.
5. In the To zone name box, type **red**.
6. In the Policy name box, type **abc**.
7. In the Scheduler name box, type **SatHrs** and click **OK**.
8. In the Scheduler name box, type **SunHrs** and click **OK**.
9. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
10. You can verify the schedules using the **show schedulers** CLI command. See “Verifying Scheduled Policies” on page 470.

## CLI Configuration

In the following example, you configure schedulers that allow associated policies to be used to check for packet matches from noon to 6 PM on Saturdays and Sundays. Otherwise the policy is inactive.

```
user@host# set schedulers scheduler SatHrs saturday start-time 12:00 stop-time 18:00
user@host# set schedulers scheduler SunHrs sunday start-time 12:00 stop-time 18:00
```

The following commands bind these schedules to policy **abc** allowing access during the specified weekend hours.

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy abc scheduler-name
SatHrs
user@host# set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy abc scheduler-name
SunHrs

```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

You can verify the schedules using the `show schedulers` CLI command. See “Verifying Scheduled Policies” on page 470.

## Related Topics

- Configuring Policies on page 441
- Configuring Schedulers on page 465
- Verifying Scheduled Policies on page 470

## Verifying Scheduled Policies

---

A scheduler is referred by security policies to activate or deactivate a policy according to scheduled times. Use the `show schedulers` command to verify that your configured policies are associated with the appropriate schedulers. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

**Purpose** Display information about address books and zones.

**Action** Use the `show schedulers` CLI command to display information about schedulers configured on the system. If a specific scheduler is identified, detailed information is displayed for that scheduler only.

```

user@host# #show schedulers
scheduler sche1 {
    /* This is sched1 */
    start-date 2006-11-02.12:12 stop-date 2007-11-02.12:11;
}
scheduler sche2 {
    daily {
        all-day;
    }
    sunday {
        start-time 16:00 stop-time 17:00;
    }
    friday {
        exclude;
    }
}
scheduler sche3 {
    start-date 2006-11-02.12:12 stop-date 2007-11-02.12:11;
    daily {
        start-time 10:00 stop-time 17:00
    }
    sunday {
        start-time 12:00 stop-time 14:00;
        start-time 16:00 stop-time 17:00;
    }
}

```



```
monday {  
    all-day;  
}  
friday {  
    exclude;  
}  
}
```

**What it Means** The output displays information about schedulers configured on the system. Verify the following information:

- Daily (recurrent) and one-time only (nonrecurrent) schedulers are configured correctly.
- Schedulers are active if policies are associated.



## Chapter 15

# Security Policy Applications

Applications are types of traffic for which protocol standards exist. Each application has a transport protocol and destination port number(s) associated with it, such as TCP/port 21 for FTP and TCP/port 23 for Telnet. When you create a policy, you must specify an application for it.

You can select one of the predefined applications from the application book, or a custom application or application set that you created. You can see which application you can use in a policy by using the **show application** CLI command.



**NOTE:** Each predefined application has a source port range of 1-65535, which includes the entire set of valid port numbers. This prevents potential attackers from gaining access by using a source port outside of the range. If you need to use a different source port range for any predefined application, create a custom application. For information, see “Understanding Custom Policy Applications” on page 493.

---

This section includes:

- Policy Application Sets Overview on page 474
- Understanding the ICMP Predefined Policy Application on page 475
- Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications on page 479
- Understanding Microsoft Predefined Policy Applications on page 481
- Understanding Dynamic Routing Protocols Predefined Policy Applications on page 484
- Understanding Streaming Video Predefined Policy Applications on page 485
- Understanding Sun RPC Predefined Policy Applications on page 486
- Understanding Security and Tunnel Predefined Policy Applications on page 487
- Understanding IP-Related Predefined Policy Applications on page 488
- Understanding Instant Messaging Predefined Policy Applications on page 488
- Understanding Management Predefined Policy Applications on page 489
- Understanding Mail Predefined Policy Applications on page 491
- Understanding UNIX Predefined Policy Applications on page 491
- Understanding Miscellaneous Predefined Policy Applications on page 492
- Understanding Custom Policy Applications on page 493

- Configuring Applications and Application Sets—Quick Configuration on page 494
- Example: Configuring Applications and Application Sets on page 496
- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499
- Example: Defining a Custom Internet Control Message Protocol Application on page 501
- Understanding Policy Application Timeouts on page 503
- Setting a Policy Application Timeout on page 506

## Policy Application Sets Overview

---

When you create a policy, you must specify an application, or service, for it to indicate that the policy applies to traffic of that type. Sometimes the same applications or a subset of them can be present in multiple policies, making it difficult to manage. JUNOS software allows you to create groups of applications called *application sets*. Application sets simplify the process by allowing you to manage a small number of application sets, rather than a large number of individual application entries.

The application (or application set) is referred to by security policies as match criteria for packets initiating sessions. If the packet matches the application type specified by the policy and all other criteria match, then the policy action is applied to the packet.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Security Policies Overview on page 431
- Understanding Policies on page 432

You can specify the name of an application set in a policy. In this case, if all of the other criteria match, any one of the applications in the application set serves as valid matching criteria; **any** is the default application name that indicates all possible applications.

Applications are created in the `.../applications/application/<application-name>` directory. You do not need to configure an application for any of the services that are predefined by the system.

In addition to predefined services, you can configure a custom service. After you create a custom service, you can refer to it in a policy.

## Related Topics

- Security Policy Applications on page 473
- Example: Configuring Applications and Application Sets on page 496

Understanding the ICMP Predefined Policy Application

When you create a policy, you can specify the ICMP predefined application for the policy.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) is a part of IP and provides a way to query a network (ICMP query messages) and to receive feedback from the network for error patterns (ICMP error messages). ICMP does not, however, guarantee error message delivery or report all lost datagrams; and it is not a reliable protocol. ICMP codes and type codes describe ICMP query messages and ICMP error messages.

You can choose to permit or deny any or specific types of ICMP messages to improve network security. Some types of ICMP messages can be exploited to gain information about your network that might compromise security. For example, ICMP, TCP, or UDP packets can be constructed to return ICMP error messages that contain information about a network, such as its topology, and access list filtering characteristics. Table 89 on page 475 lists ICMP message names, the corresponding code, type, and description.

Table 89: ICMP Messages

ICMP Message Name	Type	Code	Description
ICMP-ANY	all	all	ICMP-ANY affects any protocol using ICMP.  Denying ICMP-ANY impairs any attempt to ping or monitor a network using ICMP.  Permitting ICMP-ANY allows all ICMP messages.
ICMP-ADDRESS-MASK	17	0	ICMP address mask query is used for systems that need the local subnet mask from a bootstrap server.
■ Request	18	0	Denying ICMP address mask request messages can adversely affect diskless systems.
■ Reply			Permitting ICMP address mask request messages might allow others to fingerprint the operating system of a host in your network.

**Table 89: ICMP Messages** (continued)

ICMP Message Name	Type	Code	Description
ICMP-DEST-UNREACH	3	0	<p>ICMP destination unreachable error message indicates that the destination host is configured to reject the packets.</p> <p>Codes 0, 1, 4, or 5 can be from a gateway. Codes 2 or 3 can be from a host (RFC 792).</p> <p>Denying ICMP destination unreachable error messages can remove the assumption that a host is up and running behind a J-series or SRX-series device.</p> <p>Permitting ICMP destination unreachable error messages can allow some assumptions, such as security filtering, to be made about the network.</p>
ICMP Fragment Needed	3	4	<p>ICMP fragmentation error message indicates that fragmentation is needed but the don't fragment flag is set.</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages from the Internet to an internal network.</p>
ICMP FragmentReassembly	11	1	<p>ICMP fragment reassembly time exceeded error indicates that a host reassembling a fragmented message ran out of time and dropped the packet. This message is sometimes sent.</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages from the Internet (external) to the trusted (internal) network.</p>
ICMP-HOST-UNREACH	3	1	<p>ICMP host unreachable error messages indicate that routing table entries do not list or list as infinity a particular host. Sometimes this error is sent by gateways that cannot fragment when a packet requiring fragmentation is received.</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages from the Internet to a trusted network.</p> <p>Permitting these messages allows others to be able to determine your internal hosts IP addresses by a process of elimination or make assumptions about gateways and fragmentation.</p>
ICMP-INFO	15	0	ICMP-INFO query messages allow diskless host systems to query the network and self-configure.
■ Request	16	0	<p>Denying ICMP address mask request messages can adversely affect diskless systems.</p> <p>Permitting ICMP address mask request messages might allow others to broadcast information queries to a network segment to determine computer type.</p>
■ Reply			

**Table 89: ICMP Messages** *(continued)*

ICMP Message Name	Type	Code	Description
ICMP-PARAMETER-PROBLEM	12	0	<p>ICMP parameter problem error messages notify you when incorrect header parameters are present and have caused a packet to be discarded.</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages from the Internet to a trusted network.</p> <p>Permitting ICMP parameter problem error messages allows others to make assumptions about your network.</p>
ICMP-PORT-UNREACH	3	3	<p>ICMP port unreachable error messages indicate that gateways processing datagrams requesting certain ports are unavailable or unsupported in the network.</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages from the Internet to a trusted network.</p> <p>Permitting ICMP port unreachable error messages can allow others to determine which ports you use for certain protocols.</p>
ICMP-PROTOCOL-UNREACH	3	2	<p>ICMP protocol unreachable error messages indicate that gateways processing datagrams requesting certain protocols are unavailable or unsupported in the network.</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages from the Internet to a trusted network.</p> <p>Permitting ICMP protocol unreachable Error messages can allow others to determine what protocols your network is running.</p>
ICMP-REDIRECT	5	0	<p>ICMP redirect network error messages are sent by a J-series or SRX-series device.</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages from the Internet to a trusted network.</p>
ICMP-REDIRECT-HOST	5	1	<p>ICMP redirect messages indicate datagrams destined for the specified host to be sent along another path.</p>
ICMP-REDIRECT-TOS-HOST	5	3	<p>ICMP redirect type of service (TOS) and host error is a type of message.</p>
ICMP-REDIRECT-TOS-NET	5	2	<p>ICMP redirect TOS and network error is a type of message.</p>

**Table 89: ICMP Messages** *(continued)*

ICMP Message Name	Type	Code	Description
ICMP-SOURCE-QUENCH	4	0	<p>ICMP source quench error message indicates that a device does not have the buffer space available to accept, queue, and send the packets on to the next hop.</p> <p>Denying these messages will not help or impair internal network performance.</p> <p>Permitting these messages can allow others to know that a device is congested, making it a viable attack target.</p>
ICMP-SOURCE-ROUTE-FAIL	3	5	<p>ICMP source route failed error message</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages from the Internet (external).</p>
ICMP-TIME-EXCEEDED	11	0	<p>ICMP time-to-live (TTL) exceeded error message indicates that a packet's TTL setting reached zero before the packet reached its destination. This ensures that older packets are discarded before resent ones are processed.</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages from a trusted network out to the Internet.</p>
ICMP-TIMESTAMP	13	0	<p>ICMP-TIMESTAMP query messages provide the mechanism to synchronize time and coordinate time distribution in a large, diverse network.</p>
■ Request	14	0	
■ Reply			
Ping (ICMP ECHO)	8	0	<p>Ping is a utility to determine whether a specific host is accessible by its IP address.</p> <p>Denying ping functionality removes your ability to check to see if a host is active.</p> <p>Permitting ping can allow others to execute a denial-of-service (DoS) or Smurf attack.</p>
ICMP-ECHO-FRAGMENT-ASSEMBLY-EXPIRE	11	1	<p>ICMP fragment echo reassembly time expired error message indicates that the reassembly time was exceeded.</p> <p>We recommend denying these messages.</p>
Traceroute	30	0	<p>Traceroute is a utility to indicate the path to access a specific host.</p> <p>We recommend denying this utility from the Internet (external) to your trusted network (internal).</p>
■ Forward	30	1	
■ Discard			



Handling ICMP Unreachable Errors

For different levels of security, the default behavior for ICMP unreachable errors from downstream Juniper Networks device is handled as follows:

- Sessions do not close for ICMP type-3 code-4 messages.  
  
ICMP messages pass through without dropping sessions. Packets are, however, dropped per session.
- Sessions do not close on receiving any kind of ICMP unreachable messages.
- Sessions store ICMP unreachable message, thereby restricting the number of messages flowing through to 1.  
  
One ICMP unreachable message is generated globally per router. The remaining ICMP unreachable errors are dropped.

Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

Understanding Internet-Related Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined Internet-related applications for the policy.

Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 90 on page 479 lists Internet-related predefined applications. Depending on your network requirements, you can choose to permit or deny any or all of these applications. Each entry lists the application name, default receiving port, and application description.

Table 90: Predefined Applications

Application Name	Port(s)	Application Description
AOL	5190-5193	America Online Internet service provider (ISP) provides Internet, chat, and instant messaging applications.
DHCP relay	67 (default)	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol.
DHCP	68 client 67 server	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol allocates network addresses and delivers configuration parameters from server to hosts.

**Table 90: Predefined Applications** *(continued)*

Application Name	Port(s)	Application Description
DNS	53	Domain Name System translates domain names into IP addresses.
FTP		File Transfer Protocol (FTP) allows the sending and receiving of files between machines. You can choose to deny or permit ANY (GET or PUT) or to selectively permit or deny either GET or PUT. GET receives files from another machine and PUT sends files to another machine.
■ FTP-Get	20 data	
■ FTP-Put	21 control	We recommend denying FTP applications from untrusted sources (Internet).
Gopher	70	Gopher organizes and displays Internet servers' contents as a hierarchically structured list of files.  We recommend denying Gopher access to avoid exposing your network structure.
HTTP	8080	HyperText Transfer Protocol is the underlying protocol used by the World Wide Web (WWW).  Denying HTTP application disables your users from viewing the Internet.  Permitting HTTP application allows your trusted hosts to view the Internet.
HTTP-EXT	—	Hypertext Transfer Protocol with extended non-standard ports
HTTPS	443	Hypertext Transfer Protocol with Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is a protocol for transmitting private documents through the Internet.  Denying HTTPS disables your users from shopping on the Internet and from accessing certain online resources that require secure password exchange.  Permitting HTTPS allows your trusted hosts to participate in password exchange, shop online, and visit various protected online resources that require user login.
Internet Locator Service	—	Internet Locator Service includes LDAP, User Locator Service, and LDAP over TSL/SSL.
IRC	6665-6669	Internet Relay Chat (IRC) allows people connected to the Internet to join live discussions.
LDAP	389	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol is a set of protocols used to access information directories.
PC-Anywhere	—	PC-Anywhere is a remote control and file transfer software.
TFTP	69	Trivial File transfer Protocol (TFTP) is a protocol for simple file transfer.
WAIS	—	Wide Area Information Server is a program that finds documents on the Internet.

Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

Understanding Microsoft Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined Microsoft applications for the policy.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 91 on page 481 lists predefined Microsoft applications, parameters associated with each application, and a brief description of each application. Parameters include universal unique identifiers (UUIDs) and TCP/UDP source and destination ports. A UUID is a 128-bit unique number generated from a hardware address, a timestamp, and seed values.

Table 91: Predefined Microsoft Applications

Application	Parameter/UUID	Description
MS-RPC-EPM	135  e1af8308-5d1f-11c9-91a4-08002b14a0fa	Microsoft remote procedure call (RPC) Endpoint Mapper (EPM) Protocol
MS-RPC-ANY	—	Any Microsoft remote procedure call (RPC) applications
MS-AD	4 members	Microsoft Active Directory application Group includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ MS-AD-BR</li><li>■ MS-AD-DRSUAPI</li><li>■ MS-AD-DSROLE</li><li>■ MS-AD-DSSETUP</li></ul>
MS-EXCHANGE	6 members	Microsoft Exchange application group includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ MS-EXCHANGE-DATABASE</li><li>■ MS-EXCHANGE-DIRECTORY</li><li>■ MS-EXCHANGE-INFO-STORE</li><li>■ MS-EXCHANGE-MTA</li><li>■ MS-EXCHANGE-STORE</li><li>■ MS-EXCHANGE-SYSATD</li></ul>

**Table 91: Predefined Microsoft Applications** (continued)

Application	Parameter/UUID	Description
MS-IIS	6 members	Microsoft IIS Server application group includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ MS-IIS-COM</li> <li>■ MS-IIS-IMAP4</li> <li>■ MS-IIS-INETINFO</li> <li>■ MS-IIS-NNTP</li> <li>■ MS-IIS-POP3</li> <li>■ MS-IIS-SMTP</li> </ul>
MS-AD-BR	ecec0d70-a603-11d0-96b1-00a0c91ece30 16e0cf3a-a604-11d0-96b1-00a0c91ece30	Microsoft Active Directory backup and restore application
MS-AD-DRSUAPI	e3514235-4b06-11d1-ab04-00c04fc2dcd2	Microsoft Active Directory replication
MS-AD-DSROLE	1cbcad78-df0b-4934-b558-87839ea501c9	Microsoft Active Directory DSROLE application
MS-AD-DSSETUP	3919286a-b10c-11d0-9ba8-00c04fd92ef5	Microsoft Active Directory setup application
MS-DTC	906b0ce0-c70b-1067-b317-00dd010662da	Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator application
MSEXCHANGE-DATABASE	1a190310-bb9c-11cd-90f8-00aa00466520	Microsoft Exchange Database application
MSEXCHANGE-DIRECTORY	f5cc5a18-4264-101a-8c59-08002b2f8426 f5cc5a7c-4264-101a-8c59-08002b2f8426 f5cc59b4-4264-101a-8c59-08002b2f8426	Microsoft Exchange Directory application
MSEXCHANGE-INFOSTORE	0e4a0156-dd5d-11d2-8c2f-00c04fb6bcde 1453c42c-0fa6-11d2-a910-00c04f990f3b 10f24e8e-0fa6-11d2-a910-00c04f990f3b 1544f5e0-613c-11d1-93df-00c04fd7bd09	Microsoft Exchange Information Store application
MS-EXCHANGE-MTA	9e8ee830-4459-11ce-979b-00aa005ffebe 38a94e72-a9bc-11d2-8faf-00c04fa378ff	Microsoft Exchange MTA application
MS-EXCHANGE-STORE	99e66040-b032-11d0-97a4-00c04fd6551d 89742ace-a9ed-11cf-9c0c-08002be7ae86 a4f1db00-ca47-1067-b31e-00dd010662da a4f1db00-ca47-1067-b31f-00dd010662da	Microsoft Exchange Store application

**Table 91: Predefined Microsoft Applications** (continued)

Application	Parameter/UUID	Description
MS-EXCHANGE-SYSATD	67df7c70-0f04-11ce-b13f-00aa003bac6c	Microsoft Exchange System Attendant application
	f930c514-1215-11d3-99a5-00a0c9b61b04	
	83d72bf0-0d89-11ce-b13f-00aa003bac6c	
	469d6ec0-0d87-11ce-b13f-00aa003bac6c	
	06ed1d30-d3d3-11cd-b80e-00aa004b9c30	
MS-FRS	f5cc59b4-4264-101a-8c59-08002b2f8426	Microsoft File Replication application
	d049b186-814f-11d1-9a3c-00c04fc9b232	
	a00c021c-2be2-11d2-b678-0000f87a8f8e	
MS-IIS-COM	70b51430-b6ca-11d0-b9b9-00a0c922e750	Microsoft Internet Information Server COM GUID/UUID application
	a9e69612-b80d-11d0-b9b9-00a0c922e70	
MS-IIS-IMAP4	2465e9e0-a873-11d0-930b-00a0c90ab17c	Microsoft Internet Information Server IMAP4 application
MS-IIS-INETINFO	82ad4280-036b-11cf-972c-00aa006887b0	Microsoft Internet Information Server Administration application
MS-IIS-NNTP	4f82f460-0e21-11cf-909e-00805f48a135	Microsoft Internet Information Server NNTP application
MS-IIS-POP3	1be617c0-31a5-11cf-a7d8-00805f48a135	Microsoft Internet Information Server POP3 application
MS-IIS-SMTP	8cfb5d70-31a4-11cf-a7d8-00805f48a135	Microsoft Internet Information Server SMTP application
MS-ISMSERV	68dcd486-669e-11d1-ab0c-00c04fc2dcd2	Microsoft Inter-site Messaging application
	130ceefb-e466-11d1-b78b-00c04fa32883	
MS-MESSENGER	17fdd703-1827-4e34-79d4-24a55c53bb37	Microsoft Messenger application
	5a7b91f8-ff00-11d0-a9b2-00c04fb6e6fc	
MS-MQQM	fdb3a030-065f-11d1-bb9b-00a024ea5525	Microsoft Windows Message Queue Management application
	76d12b80-3467-11d3-91ff-0090272f9ea3	
	1088a980-eae5-11d0-8d9b-00a02453c33	
	5b5b3580-b0e0-11d1-b92d-0060081e87f0	
	41208ee0-e970-11d1-9b9e-00e02c064c39	
MS-NETLOGON	12345678-1234-abcd-ef00-01234567cffb	Microsoft Netlogon application

**Table 91: Predefined Microsoft Applications** *(continued)*

Application	Parameter/UUID	Description
MS-SCHEDULER	1ff70682-0a51-30e8-076d-740be8cee98b	Microsoft Scheduler application
	378e52b0-c0a9-11cf-822d-00aa0051e40f	
	0a74ef1c-41a4-4e06-83ae-dc74fb1cdd53	
MS-WIN-DNS	50abc2a4-574d-40b3-9d66-ee4fd5fba076	Microsoft Windows DNS server
MS-WINS	45f52c28-7f9f-101a-b52b-08002b2efabe	Microsoft WINS application
	811109bf-a4e1-11d1-ab54-00a0c91e9b45	

### Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

## Understanding Dynamic Routing Protocols Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined dynamic routing protocol applications for the policy.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Depending on your network requirements, you can choose to permit or deny messages generated from and packets of these dynamic routing protocols. Table 92 on page 484 lists each supported dynamic routing protocol by name, port, and description.

**Table 92: Dynamic Routing Protocols**

Dynamic Routing Protocol	Port	Description
RIP	520	RIP is a common distance-vector routing protocol.
OSPF	89	OSPF is a common link-state routing protocol.
BGP	179	BGP is an exterior/interdomain routing protocol.

**Related Topics**

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

**Understanding Streaming Video Predefined Policy Applications**

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined streaming video applications for the policy.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 93 on page 485 lists each supported streaming video application by name and includes the default port and description. Depending on your network requirements, you can choose to permit or deny any or all of these applications.

**Table 93: Supported Streaming Video Applications**

Application	Port	Description
H.323	TCP source 1-65535; TCP destination 1720, 1503, 389, 522, 1731  UDP source 1-65535; UDP source 1719	H.323 is a standard approved by the International Telecommunication Union (ITU) that defines how audiovisual conference data is transmitted across networks.
NetMeeting	TCP source 1-65535; TCP destination 1720, 1503, 389, 522  UDP source 1719	Microsoft NetMeeting uses TCP to provide teleconferencing (video and audio) applications over the Internet.
Real media	TCP source 1-65535; TCP destination 7070	Real Media is streaming video and audio technology.
RTSP	554	Real-Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP) is for streaming media applications
SIP	5056	Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is an Application-Layer control protocol for creating, modifying, and terminating sessions.
VDO Live	TCP source 1-65535; TCP destination 7000-7010	VDOLive is a scalable, video streaming technology.

**Related Topics**

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498

- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

## Understanding Sun RPC Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined Sun RPC applications for the policy.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 94 on page 486 lists each Sun remote procedure call Application Layer Gateway (RPC ALG) application name, parameters, and full name.

**Table 94: RPC ALG Applications**

Application	Program Numbers	Full Name
SUN-RPC-PORTMAPPER	111100000	Sun RPC Portmapper protocol
SUN-RPC-ANY	ANY	Any Sun RPC applications
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-MOUNTD	100005	Sun RPC Mount Daemon
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-NFS	100003	Sun RPC Network File System
	100227	
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-NLOCKMGR	100021	Sun RPC Network Lock Manager
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-RQUOTAD	100011	Sun RPC Remote Quota Daemon
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-RSTATD	100001	Sun RPC Remote Status Daemon
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-RUSERD	100002	Sun RPC Remote User Daemon
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-SADMIND	100232	Sun RPC System Administration Daemon
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-SPRAYD	100012	Sun RPC Spray Daemon
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-STATUS	100024	Sun RPC Status
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-WALLD	100008	Sun RPC Wall Daemon
SUN-RPC-PROGRAM-YPBIND	100007	SUN RPC Yellow Page Bind application

## Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498



- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

**Understanding Security and Tunnel Predefined Policy Applications**

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined security and tunnel applications for the policy.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 95 on page 487 lists each supported application and gives the default port(s) and a description of each entry.

**Table 95: Supported Applications**

Application	Port	Description
IKE	UDP source 1-65535; UDP destination 500  4500 (used for NAT traversal)	Internet Key protocol (IKE) is a protocol to obtain authenticated keying material for use with ISAKMP.  When configuring auto IKE, you can choose from three predefined Phase 1 or Phase 2 proposals: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Standard: AES and 3DES</li><li>■ Basic: DES and two different types of authentication algorithms</li><li>■ Compatible: Four commonly used authentication and encryption algorithms</li></ul>
L2TP	1723	L2TP combines PPTP with Layer 2 Forwarding (L2F) for remote access.
PPTP	—	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol allows corporations to extend their own private network through private <i>tunnels</i> over the public Internet.

**Related Topics**

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

## Understanding IP-Related Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined IP-related applications for the policy.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 96 on page 488 lists the predefined IP-related applications. Each entry includes the default port and a description of the application.

**Table 96: Predefined IP-related Applications**

Application	Port	Description
Any	—	Any application
TCP-ANY	1-65535	Any protocol using the TCP TCPMUX port 1
UDP-ANY	137	Any protocol using the UDP

### Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

## Understanding Instant Messaging Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined instant messaging applications for the policy.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 97 on page 489 lists predefined Internet-messaging applications. Each entry includes the name of the application, the default or assigned port, and a description of the application.

**Table 97: Predefined Internet-messaging Applications**

Application	Port	Description
Gnutella	6346 (default)	Gnutella is a public domain file sharing protocol that operates over a distributed network. You can assign any port, but the default is 6346.
MSN	1863	Microsoft Network Messenger is a utility that allows you to send instant messages and talk online.
NNTP	119	Network News Transport Protocol is a protocol used to post, distribute, and retrieve USENET messages.
SMB	445	Server Message Block (SMB) over IP is a protocol that allows you to read and write files to a server on a network.
YMSG	5010	Yahoo! Messenger is a utility that allows you to check when others are online, send instant messages, and talk online.

### Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

## Understanding Management Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined management applications for the policy.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 98 on page 489 lists the predefined management applications. Each entry includes the name of the application, the default or assigned port, and a description of the application.

**Table 98: Predefined Management Applications**

Application	Port	Description
NBNAME	137	NetBIOS Name application displays all NetBIOS name packets sent on UDP port 137.
NDBDS	138	NetBIOS Datagram application, published by IBM, provides connectionless (datagram) applications to PCs connected with a broadcast medium to locate resources, initiate sessions, and terminate sessions. It is unreliable and the packets are not sequenced.

**Table 98: Predefined Management Applications** *(continued)*

Application	Port	Description
NFS	—	Network File System uses UDP to allow network users to access shared files stored on computers of different types. SUN RPC is a building block of NFS.
NS Global	—	NS-Global is the central management protocol for Juniper Networks Firewall/VPN devices.
NS Global PRO	—	NS Global-PRO is the scalable monitoring system for the Juniper Networks Firewall/VPN device family.
NSM	—	NetScreen-Security Manager
NTP	123	Network Time Protocol provides a way for computers to synchronize to a time reference.
RLOGIN	513	RLOGIN starts a terminal session on a remote host.
RSH	514	RSH executes a shell command on a remote host.
SNMP	161	Simple Network Management Protocol is a set of protocols for managing complex networks.
SQL*Net V1	66	SQL*Net Version 1 is a database language that allows for the creation, access, modification, and protection of data.
SQL*Net V2	66	SQL*Net Version 2 is a database language that allows for the creation, access, modification, and protection of data.
MSSQL	1433 (default instance)	Microsoft SQL is a proprietary database server tool that allows for the creation, access, modification, and protection of data.
SSH	22	SSH is a program to log into another computer over a network through strong authentication and secure communications on an unsecure channel.
SYSLOG	514	Syslog is a UNIX program that sends messages to the system logger.
Talk	517-518	Talk is a visual communication program that copies lines from your terminal to that of another user.
Telnet	23	Telnet is a UNIX program that provides a standard method of interfacing terminal devices and terminal-oriented processes to each other.
WinFrame	—	WinFrame is a technology that allows users on non-Windows machines to run Windows applications.
X-Windows	—	X-Windows is the windowing and graphics system that Motif and OpenLook are based on.

## Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

## Understanding Mail Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined mail applications for the policy.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 99 on page 491 lists the predefined mail applications. Each includes the name of the application, the default or assigned port number, and a description of the application.

**Table 99: Predefined Mail Applications**

Application	Port	Description
IMAP	143	Internet Message Access Protocol is used for retrieving messages.
Mail (SMTP)	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is used to send messages between servers.
POP3	110	Post Office Protocol is used for retrieving e-mail.

### Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

## Understanding UNIX Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify predefined UNIX applications for the policy.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 100 on page 492 lists the predefined UNIX applications. Each entry includes the name of the application, the default or assigned port, and a description of the application.

**Table 100: Predefined UNIX Applications**

Application	Port	Description
FINGER	79	Finger is a UNIX program that provides information about the users.
UUCP	117	UNIX-to-UNIX Copy Protocol (UUCP) is a UNIX utility that enables file transfers between two computers over a direct serial or modem connection.

### Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

## Understanding Miscellaneous Predefined Policy Applications

When you create a policy, you can specify miscellaneous predefined applications for the policy.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

Table 101 on page 492 lists predefined miscellaneous applications. Each entry includes the application name, default or assigned port, and a description of the application.

**Table 101: Predefined Miscellaneous Applications**

Application	Port	Description
CHARGEN	19	Character Generator Protocol is a UDP- or TCP-based debugging and measurement tool.
DISCARD	9	Discard protocol is an Application Layer protocol that describes a process for discarding TCP or UDP data sent to port 9.
IDENT	113	Identification protocol is a TCP/IP Application Layer protocol used for TCP client authentication.
LPR	515 listen; 721-731 source range (inclusive)	Line Printer Daemon protocol is a TCP-based protocol used for printing applications.
RADIUS	1812	Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service application is a server program used for authentication and accounting purposes.
SQLMON	1434 (SQL Monitor Port)	SQL monitor (Microsoft)

**Table 101: Predefined Miscellaneous Applications** *(continued)*

Application	Port	Description
VNC	5800	Virtual Network Computing facilitates viewing and interacting with another computer or mobile Juniper Networks device connected to the Internet.
WHOIS	43	Network Directory Application Protocol is a way to look up domain names.
IPsec-NAT	—	IPSEC-NAT allows Network Address Translation for ISAKMP and ESP packets.
SCCP	2000	Cisco Station Call Control Protocol (SCCP) uses the signaling connection control port to provide high availability and flow control.
VoIP	—	Voice over IP application group provides voice applications over the Internet and includes H.323 and Session Initiation Protocol (SIP).

### Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499

## Understanding Custom Policy Applications

If you do not want to use predefined applications in your policy, you can easily create custom applications.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Security Policy Applications” on page 473.

You can assign each custom application the following attributes:

- Name
- Transport protocol
- Source and destination port numbers for applications using TCP or UDP
- Type and code values for applications using ICMP
- Timeout value

This topic covers:

- Custom Application Mappings on page 494
- Related Topics on page 494

## Custom Application Mappings

The application option specifies the Layer 7 application that maps to the Layer 4 application that you reference in a policy. A predefined application already has a mapping to a Layer 7 application. However, for custom applications, you must link the application to an application explicitly, especially if you want the policy to apply an Application Layer Gateway (ALG) or deep inspection to the custom application.



**NOTE:** JUNOS software supports ALGs for numerous applications, including DNS, FTP, H.323, HTTP, RSH, SIP, Telnet, and TFTP.

Applying an ALG to a custom application involves the following two steps:

- Define a custom application with a name, timeout value, transport protocol, and source and destination ports.
- When configuring a policy, reference that application and the application type for the ALG that you want to apply.

## Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499
- Example: Defining a Custom Internet Control Message Protocol Application on page 501

## Configuring Applications and Application Sets—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure application and application sets for a security policy.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read “Security Policies Overview” on page 431 and “Understanding Policies” on page 432.
2. Configure zones. For more information, see “Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration” on page 73.
3. Configure address books. For more information, see “Configuring Addresses and Address Sets—Quick Configuration” on page 458.

To configure applications and application sets with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Policy Elements > Applications / Application Sets**.
2. Select the **Application Sets** tab. See Figure 96 on page 495.



Figure 96: Quick Configuration Page for Configuring Applications or Application Sets

Quick Configuration

Policy Elements

Pre-defined Applications

Custom-Applications

Application Sets

Application Sets

List 15 per page

	Application-Set Name	Members
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-mgcp</a>	junos-mgcp-ca, junos-mgcp-ua
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-ms-rpc</a>	junos-ms-rpc-tcp, junos-ms-rpc-udp
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-ms-rpc-msexchange</a>	junos-ms-rpc-epm, junos-ms-rpc-msexchange-directory-rsp, junos-ms-rpc-msexchange-directory-rft, junos-ms-rpc-msexchange-info-store, junos-ms-rpc-tcp, ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-routing-inbound</a>	junos-bgp, junos-ldp-tcp, junos-ldp-udp, junos-rip
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-sun-rpc</a>	junos-sun-rpc-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-udp
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-sun-rpc-mountd</a>	junos-sun-rpc-mountd-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-mountd-udp, junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-portmap-udp, junos-sun-rpc-tcp, ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-sun-rpc-nfs</a>	junos-sun-rpc-nfs-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-nfs-udp, junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-portmap-udp, junos-sun-rpc-tcp, ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-sun-rpc-nfs-access</a>	junos-sun-rpc-mountd-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-mountd-udp, junos-sun-rpc-nfs-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-nfs-udp, junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp, ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-sun-rpc-portmap</a>	junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-portmap-udp, junos-sun-rpc-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-udp
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-sun-rpc-status</a>	junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-portmap-udp, junos-sun-rpc-status-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-status-udp, junos-sun-rpc-tcp, ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-sun-rpc-ybind</a>	junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-portmap-udp, junos-sun-rpc-tcp, junos-sun-rpc-udp, junos-sun-rpc-ybind-tcp, ...

Add...

Delete

Apply

3. Click Add. The Add an Application Set window appears as shown in Figure 97 on page 495.

Figure 97: Adding Application Sets

Quick Configuration

Policy Elements

Add an Application-set

\* Application-set Name

Applications in this set

-->

--<

any

junos-aol

junos-bgp

junos-biff

junos-bootpc

?

OK

Cancel

4. Enter an application set name (name for one or a group of preconfigured applications).
5. Use the left and right arrows to add or remove applications from the Applications in this set column.
6. Click one of the following buttons:

- To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## Example: Configuring Applications and Application Sets

---

Rather than create or add multiple individual application names to a policy, you can create an application set and refer to the name of the set in a policy. For example, for a group of employees, you can create an application set that contains all the approved applications.

The following example shows how to create an application set for the three applications that are used to log into the servers in the **ABC** (intranet) zone, to use the database, and to transfer files.

To configure applications and application sets, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 496
- CLI Configuration on page 497
- Related Topics on page 497

### J-Web Configuration

To specify applications and application sets using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. To create an application set for the three applications, next to Applications, click **Configure or Edit**.
3. Next to Application set, click **Configure or Edit**.
4. In the Application set name box, type **MgrAppSet**.
5. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Application name box, type **ssh** and click **OK**.
7. To specify the second application name:
  - a. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
  - b. In the Application name box, type **telnet** and click **OK**.
8. To specify the third application name:
  - a. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
  - b. In the Application name box, type **Cust App** and click **OK**.

To create an application set for the applications for e-mail and Web-based applications delivered by the two servers in the external zone:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Applications, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Application set box, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Application set name box, type **WebMailApps**.
5. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Application name box, type **smtp** and click **OK**.
7. To specify another application name:
  - a. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
  - b. In the Application name box, type **http** and click **OK**.
8. To specify another application name:
  - a. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
  - b. In the Application name box, type **https** and click **OK**.
9. To specify another application name:
  - a. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
  - b. In the Application name box, type **POPS** and click **OK**.
10. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

Managers in zoneA and managers in zoneB use these services. Therefore, the application set is given a generic name such as MgrAppSet

```
user@host# set applications application-set MgrAppSet application ssh
user@host# set applications application-set MgrAppSet application telnet
user@host# set applications application-set MgrAppSet application custApp
```

The following example shows how to create an application set for the applications that are used for e-mail and Web-based applications delivered by the two servers in the external zone.

```
user@host# set applications application-set WebMailApps application smtp
user@host# set applications application-set WebMailApps application http
user@host# set applications application-set WebMailApps application https
user@host# set applications application-set WebMailApps application POPS
```

## Related Topics

- Security Policies Overview on page 431
- Policy Application Sets Overview on page 474

## Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application

Applications are types of traffic for which protocol standards exist. When you create a policy, you must specify a application for it.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
2. Create addresses. See “Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic” on page 446.
3. Create zones. See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
4. For background information, read:
  - Understanding Custom Policy Applications on page 493
  - Security Policy Applications on page 473

To add a custom application to the application book, you need the following information:

- A name for the application: in this example, **cust-telnet**.
- A range of source port numbers: **1—65535**.
- A range of destination port numbers to receive the application request: for example: **23000—23000**.
- Whether the application uses TCP or UDP protocol, or some other protocol as defined by the Internet specifications.

To add a custom application to the application book, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. In this example, the protocol is TCP.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 498
- CLI Configuration on page 499
- Related Topics on page 499

### J-Web Configuration

To add a custom application to application book using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Applications, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Application name box, type **cust-telnet**.
5. From the Protocol list, select **tcp**.

6. From the Source port list, select **Enter specific value**.
7. In the Range box, type **1—65535**.
8. From the Destination port list, select **Enter specific value**.
9. In the Range box, type **23000—23000** and click **OK**.
10. In the Inactivity-timeout box, type **30** and click **OK**.
11. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

In this example, the protocol is TCP.

```
user@host# set applications application cust-telnet protocol tcp source-port 1-65535
destination-port 23000-23000
user@host# set applications application cust-telnet inactivity-timeout 30
```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.



**NOTE:** The timeout value is in minutes. If you do not set it, the timeout value of a custom application is 180 minutes. If you do not want an application to time out, type **never**.

## Related Topics

- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499
- Example: Defining a Custom Internet Control Message Protocol Application on page 501

## Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application

Applications are types of traffic for which protocol standards exist. When you create a policy, you must specify an application for it.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
2. Create addresses. See “Configuring a Policy to Permit Traffic” on page 446.
3. Create zones. See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
4. For background information, read:
  - Understanding Custom Policy Applications on page 493
  - Security Policy Applications on page 473

Use the `delete applications application_name` CLI command to remove the definition of a custom application without removing the application from the application book.

```
user@host# delete applications application cust-telnet
```

To modify the custom policy application, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 500
- CLI Configuration on page 500
- Related Topics on page 500

## J-Web Configuration

To modify the custom policy application using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Applications, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Application name box, type `cust-telnet` and click **OK**.
5. From the Application protocol list, select `cust-telnet` and click **OK**.
6. From the Protocol list, select `ftp`.
7. From the Source port list, select **Enter specific value**.
8. In the Range box, type `1—65535`.
9. From the Destination port list, select **Enter specific value**.
10. In the Range box, type `23230—23230` and click **OK**.
11. If you are finished modifying the custom policy application, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

```
user@host# set applications application cust-telnet application-protocol ftp source-port
1-65535 destination-port 23230-23230
```

If you are finished modifying the custom policy application, commit the configuration.

## Related Topics

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Defining a Custom Internet Control Message Protocol Application on page 501

Example: Defining a Custom Internet Control Message Protocol Application

JUNOS software supports Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)—as well as several ICMP messages—as predefined or custom applications. When configuring a custom ICMP application, you must define a type and code.

Before You Begin

- 1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
- 2. For background information, read:
  - Understanding the ICMP Predefined Policy Application on page 475
  - Understanding Custom Policy Applications on page 493
  - Security Policy Applications on page 473

There are different message types within ICMP. For example:

- type 0 = Echo Request message
  - type 3 = Destination Unreachable message



**NOTE:** For more information about ICMP types and codes, refer to RFC 792, *Internet Control Message Protocol*.

An ICMP message type can also have a message code. The code provides more specific information about the message, as shown in Table 102 on page 501.

Table 102: Message Descriptions

Message Type	Message Code
5 = Redirect	0 = Redirect datagram for the network (or subnet)
	1 = Redirect datagram for the host
	2 = Redirect datagram for the type of application and network
	3 = Redirect datagram for the type of application and host
11 = Time Exceeded Codes	0 = Time to live exceeded in transit
	1 = Fragment reassembly time exceeded

JUNOS software supports any type or code within the 0—255 range.

To define a Custom Internet Control Message Protocol application (ICMP) as the transport protocol, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

In this example, you define a custom application named “host-unreachable” using ICMP as the transport protocol. The type is **3** (for destination unreachable) and the code is **1** (for host unreachable). You set the timeout value at **4** minutes.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 502
- CLI Configuration on page 502
- Related Topics on page 502

## ***J-Web Configuration***

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Applications, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Application name box, type **host-unreachable**.
5. From the ICMP type list, select **Enter specific value**.
6. In the Number box, type **5**.
7. From the ICMP code list, select **Enter specific value**.
8. In the Number box, type **0** and click **OK**.
9. To specify the inactivity timeout, corresponding to the application name **host-unreachable**, click **Edit**.
10. In the Inactivity timeout box, type **4** and click **OK**.
11. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## ***CLI Configuration***

```
user@host# set applications application host-unreachable icmp-type 5 icmp-code 0
user@host# set applications application host-unreachable inactivity-timeout 4
```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## ***Related Topics***

- Example: Adding a Custom Policy Application on page 498
- Example: Modifying a Custom Policy Application on page 499
- Example: Defining a Custom Internet Control Message Protocol Application on page 501



## Understanding Policy Application Timeouts

The application timeout value you set for an application determines the session timeout. You can set the timeout threshold for a predefined or custom application; you can use the application default timeout, specify a custom timeout, or use no timeout at all. Application timeout behavior is the same in virtual systems (vsys) security domains as at the root level.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Security Policy Applications on page 473
- Understanding Policies on page 432

This topic covers:

- Application Timeout Configuration and Lookup on page 503
- Contingencies on page 504
- Related Topics on page 506

### Application Timeout Configuration and Lookup

Application timeout values are stored in the application entry database and in the corresponding vsys TCP and UDP port-based timeout tables. When you set a application timeout value, JUNOS software updates these tables with the new value. There are also default timeout values in the applications entry database, which are taken from predefined applications. You can set a timeout, but you cannot alter the default values.

Applications with multiple rule entries share the same timeout value. If multiple applications share the same protocol and destination port range, all applications share the last timeout value configured.

For single application entries, an application timeout lookup proceeds as follows:

1. The specified timeout in the application entry database, if set.
2. The default timeout in the application entry database, if specified in the predefined application.
3. The protocol-based default timeout table. See Table 103 on page 503.

**Table 103: Protocol-Based Default Timeout**

Protocol	Default Timeout (minutes)
TCP	30
UDP	1

**Table 103: Protocol-Based Default Timeout** (*continued*)

Protocol	Default Timeout (minutes)
ICMP	1
OSPF	1
Other	30

For application groups, including hidden groups created in multi-cell policy configurations, and for the predefined application **ANY** (if timeout is not set), application timeout lookup proceeds as follows:

1. The vsys TCP and UDP port-based timeout table, if a timeout is set.
2. The protocol-based default timeout table.

## Contingencies

When setting timeouts, be aware of the following contingencies:

- If an application contains several application rule entries, all rule entries share the same timeout. The timeout table is updated for each rule entry that matches the protocol (for UDP and TCP—other protocols use the default). You need to define the application timeout only once. For example, if you create an application with two rules, the following commands will set the timeout to 20 minutes for both rules:

```
user@host# set applications application test protocol tcp destination-port
1035-1035 inactivity-timeout 20

user@host# set applications application test term test protocol udp

user@host# set applications application test term test source-port 1-65535

user@host# set applications application test term test destination-port
1111-1111
```

- If multiple applications are configured with the same protocol and overlapping destination ports, the latest application timeout configured overrides the others in the port-based table. For example:

```
user@host# set applications application ftp-1 protocol tcp source-port
0-65535 destination-port 2121-2121 inactivity-timeout 10

user@host# set applications application telnet-1 protocol tcp source-port
0-65535 designating-port 2100-2148 inactivity-timeout 20
```

With this configuration, JUNOS software applies the 20-minute timeout for destination port 2121 in an application group, because the destination port

numbers for telnet-1 (2100-2148) overlap those for ftp-1 (2121), and you defined telnet-1 after you defined ftp-1.

To modify an application timeout when multiple applications use the same protocol and an overlapping destination port range, you must unset the application and reset it with the new timeout value. This is because, during reboot, applications are loaded according to creation time, not modification time.

To avoid the unintended application of the wrong timeout to an application, do not create applications with overlapping destination port numbers.

- If you unset an application timeout, the default protocol-based timeout in the application entry database is used, and the timeout values in both the application entry and port-based timeout tables are updated with the default value.

If the modified application has overlapping destination ports with other applications, the default protocol-based timeout might not be the desired value. In that case, reboot JUNOS software, or set the application timeout again for the desired timeout to take effect.

- When you modify a predefined application and reboot, the modified application might not be the last one in the configuration. This is because predefined applications are loaded before custom applications, and any change made to a custom application, even if made earlier, will show as later than the predefined application change when you reboot.

For example, if suppose you create the following application:

```
user@host# set applications application my-application protocol tcp
destination-port 179-179 inactivity-timeout 20
```

Later you modify the timeout of the predefined application BGP as follows:

```
user@host# set applications application bgp inactivity-timeout 75
```

The BGP application will use the 75-minute timeout value, because it is now written to the application entry database. But the timeout for port 179, the port BGP uses, is also changed to 75 in the TCP port-based timeout table. After you reboot, the BGP application will continue to use the 75-minute timeout which, as a single application, it gets from the application entry database. But the timeout in the TCP port-based table for port 179 will now be 60. You can verify this by entering the `show applications application bgp` command.

The BGP application has no effect on single applications. But if you add BGP or my\_application to an application group, the 60-minute timeout value will be used for destination port 179. This is because application group timeout is taken from the port-based timeout table, if one is set.

To ensure predictability when you modify a predefined application timeout, therefore, you can create a similar application, for example:

```
user@host# set applications application my-bgp protocol tcp
destination-port 179-179 inactivity-timeout 75
```

## Related Topics

- Setting a Policy Application Timeout on page 506
- Understanding Policies on page 432
- Policy Application Sets Overview on page 474

## Setting a Policy Application Timeout

---

Application timeout values are stored in the application entry database and in the corresponding vsys TCP and UDP port-based timeout tables. When you set an application timeout value, JUNOS software updates these tables with the new value.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
  2. For background information, read:
    - Understanding Policy Application Timeouts on page 503
    - Address Books and Address Sets Overview on page 455
- 

In the following example, you change the timeout threshold for the FTP predefined application to 75 minutes.

```
user@host# set applications application ftp inactivity-timeout 75
```

## Related Topics

- Understanding Policy Application Timeouts on page 503

## **Part 4**

# **User Authentication Features**

- Firewall User Authentication on page 509
- Infranet Authentication on page 541



## Chapter 16

# Firewall User Authentication

Firewall user authentication enables administrators to restrict and permit users (firewall users) accessing protected resources (different zones) behind a firewall based on their source IP address and other credentials.

This section includes:

- Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 509
- Understanding Authentication Schemes on page 511
- Configuring for Pass-Through Authentication on page 514
- Configuring for Web Authentication on page 519
- Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication on page 524
- Configuring for External Authentication Servers on page 526
- Understanding SecurID User Authentication on page 530
- Configuring the SecurID Server on page 531
- Displaying the Authentication Table on page 533
- Understanding Banner Customization on page 534
- Customizing a Banner on page 535
- Configuring Firewall Authentication—Quick Configuration on page 537
- Verifying Firewall User Authentication on page 539

## Firewall User Authentication Overview

---

A firewall user is a network user who must provide a username and password for authentication when initiating a connection across the firewall. JUNOS software supports the following types of users:

- Administrators. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*
- Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) users. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*
- Firewall users. Firewall user authentication enables administrators to restrict and permit users (firewall users) accessing protected resources (different zones) behind a firewall based on their source IP address and other credentials.

This topic covers:

- Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) Servers on page 510
- Types of Firewall User Authentication on page 510
- Related Topics on page 511

## **Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) Servers**

AAA provides an extra level of protection and control for user access in the following ways:

- Authentication determines the firewall user.
- Authorization determines what the firewall user can do.
- Accounting determines what the firewall user did on the network.

You can use authentication alone or with authorization and accounting. Authorization always requires a user to be authenticated first. You can use accounting alone, or with authentication and authorization.

Once the user's credentials are collected, they are processed in one of the following ways:

- Administrative authentication supports the following types of servers:
  - local
  - RADIUS
  - TACACS +

For more information on administrative authentication, see the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*.

- Firewall user authentication supports the following types of servers:
  - Local authentication and authorization
  - RADIUS authentication and authorization (compatible with Funk RADIUS server)
  - LDAP authentication only (supports LDAP version 3 and compatible with Windows AD)
  - SecurID authentication only (using an RSA SecurID external authentication server)

## **Types of Firewall User Authentication**

JUNOS software supports the following two types of firewall user authentication:

- Pass-Through Authentication—A host or a user from one zone tries to access resources on another zone. You must use an FTP, Telnet, or HTTP client to access the IP address of the protected resource and to get authenticated by the firewall. The device uses FTP, Telnet, or HTTP to collect username and password



information, and subsequent traffic from the user or host is allowed or denied based on the result of this authentication.

- Web Authentication—Users try to connect, using HTTP, to an IP address on the device that is enabled for Web authentication; in this scenario, you do not use HTTP to get to the IP address of the protected resource. You are prompted for the username and password that are verified by the device. Subsequent traffic from the user or host to the protected resource is allowed or denied based on the result of this authentication.

## **Related Topics**

- Understanding Authentication Schemes on page 511
- Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication on page 524
- Understanding Banner Customization on page 534

## **Understanding Authentication Schemes**

---

After you define firewall users, you can create a policy that requires the users to authenticate themselves through one of two authentication schemes.

### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read “Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509.

---

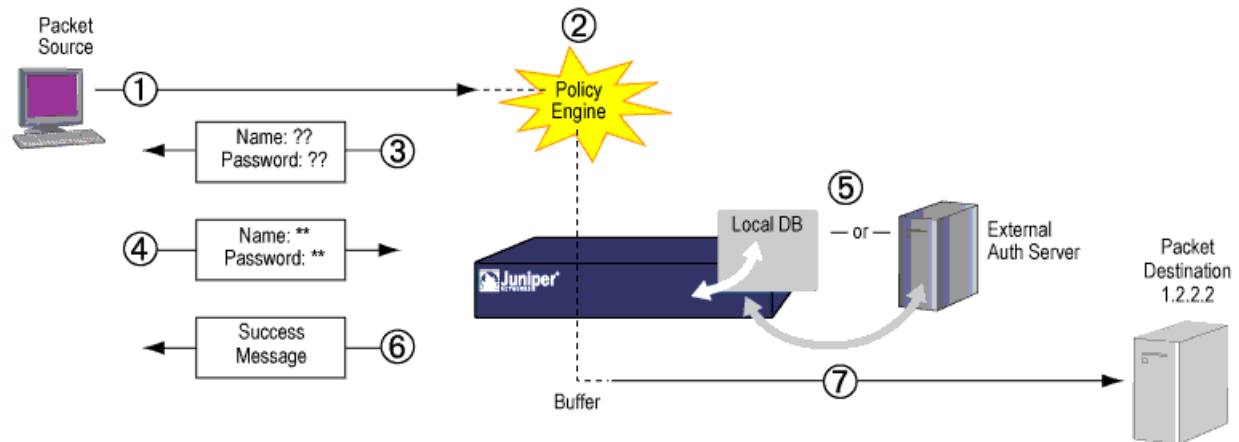
The first scheme authenticates users when FTP, HTTP, or Telnet traffic matching a policy requiring authentication reaches the Juniper Networks device. In the second scheme, users authenticate themselves before sending traffic (of any kind—not just FTP, HTTP, or Telnet) that has a policy requiring user authentication.

This topic covers:

- Pass-Through Authentication on page 511
- Web Authentication on page 512
- Related Topics on page 514

## **Pass-Through Authentication**

When a user attempts to initiate an HTTP, an FTP, or a Telnet connection request that has a policy requiring authentication, the Juniper Networks device intercepts the request and prompts the user to enter a name and password. Before granting permission, the device validates the username and password by checking them against those stored in the local database or on an external authentication server. See Figure 98 on page 512.

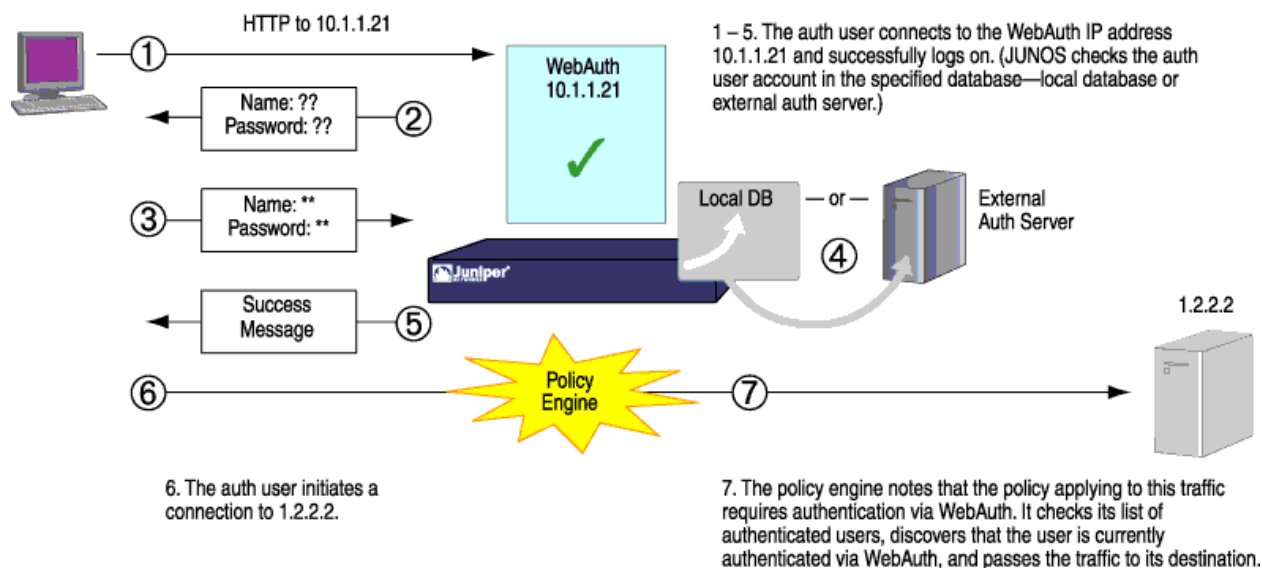
**Figure 98: Policy Lookup for a User**

1. A client user sends an FTP, an HTTP, or a Telnet packet to 1.2.2.2.
2. The Juniper Networks device intercepts the packet, notes that its policy requires authentication from either the local database or an external authentication server, and buffers the packet.
3. The Juniper Networks device prompts the user for login information through FTP, HTTP, or Telnet.
4. The user replies with a username and password.
5. The Juniper Networks device either checks for an authentication user account on its local database or it sends the login information to the external authentication server as specified in the policy.
6. Finding a valid match (or receiving notice of such a match from the external authentication server), the Juniper Networks device informs the user that the login has been successful.
7. The Juniper Networks device forwards the packet from its buffer to its destination IP address 1.2.2.2.

After a Juniper Networks device authenticates a user at a particular source IP address, it subsequently permits traffic—as specified in the policy requiring authentication through pass through—from any other user at that same address. This might be the case if the user originates traffic from behind a NAT device that changes all original source addresses to a single translated address.

## Web Authentication

Web Authentication is an alternate form of firewall user authentication. Instead of pointing to the resource you want to connect to from your client browser, you point the browser to an IP address on the device that is enabled for Web authentication. This initiates an HTTP session to the IP address hosting the Web Authentication feature on the device. The device then prompts you for your username and password and caches the result in the device. Later when traffic encounters a **web-authentication** policy, you are allowed or denied access based on the prior Web authentication results as shown in Figure 99 on page 513.

**Figure 99: Web Authentication Example**

Follow these Web Authentication guidelines:

- You can leave the default Web Authentication server as the local database or you can choose an external auth server for the role. The default Web Authentication profile determines if the user authenticates using the local database or the external authentication server. An access profile stores usernames and passwords of users or points to external authentication servers where such information is stored.
- The Web Authentication address must be in the same subnet as the interface that you want to use to host it. For example, if you want authentication users to connect using Web Authentication through ethernet3, which has IP address 1.1.1.1/24, then you can assign Web Authentication an IP address in the 1.1.1.0/24 subnet.
- You can put a Web Authentication address in the same subnet as the IP address of any physical interface or virtual security interface (VSI). (For information about different types of interfaces, see “Security Zones and Interfaces” on page 69.)
- You can put Web Authentication addresses on multiple interfaces.
- After a device authenticates a user at a particular source IP address, it subsequently permits traffic—as specified in the policy requiring authentication through Web Authentication—from any other user at that same address. This might be the case if the user originates traffic from behind a NAT device that changes all original source addresses to a single translated address.
- With Web Authentication enabled, any HTTP traffic to the IP address will get the Web Authentication login page instead of the admin login page. Disabling this option will show the admin login page (assuming that [system services web-management HTTP] is enabled).
- We recommend that you have a separate primary or preferred IP address, if an address is used for Web Authentication.

## Related Topics

- Configuring for Pass-Through Authentication on page 514
- Configuring for Web Authentication on page 519

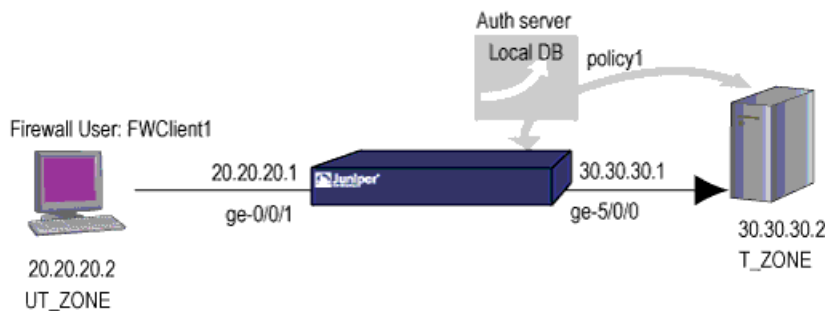
## Configuring for Pass-Through Authentication

Pass-through firewall user authentication occurs when the client is trying to access a destination on another zone using FTP, Telnet, or HTTP. After authenticating successfully, the firewall acts as a proxy for an FTP, Telnet, or HTTP server so that it can first authenticate the user before allowing access to the actual FTP, Telnet, or HTTP server behind the firewall. See Figure 100 on page 514.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
2. Read “Understanding Authentication Schemes” on page 511.
3. Read “Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509.

**Figure 100: Configuring Pass-Through Firewall Authentication**



To configure pass-through firewall authentication, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 515
- CLI Configuration on page 517
- Related Topics on page 518

## J-Web Configuration

To create IP addresses for the interfaces on the device using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Interfaces, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Interface, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Interface name box, type `ge-0/0/1`.
5. Next to Unit, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the interface unit number, type `0`.
7. Under Family, select **Inet** and click **OK**.
8. Next to Address book, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
9. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Address name box, type `20.20.20.1/24` and click **OK**.
11. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
12. In the Address name box, type `20.20.20.2/24` and click **OK**.
13. To configure another interface `ge-5/0/0` and more addresses like `30.30.30.1/24` and `30.30.30.1/24`, repeat Step 2 through Step 9 and click **OK**.

To create an access profile:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Access, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Profile name box, type `FWAuth`.
5. Next to Client, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Name box, type `FWClient1`.
7. Next to Firewall User, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
8. In the Password box, type `pwd` and click **OK**.

To add the **FWAuth** profile for pass-through firewall authentication:

1. Next to Firewall Authentication, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
2. Next to Pass through, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. In the Default profile box, type `FWAuth`.

To define a success banner for Telnet sessions:

1. Next to Telnet box, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
2. Next to Banner, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. In the Success box, type “ WELCOME TO JUNIPER TELNET SESSION” and click **OK**.

To create security zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type UT-ZONE.
6. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
8. From the Service name list, select **all** and click **OK**.
9. To configure an interface for the created security zone, corresponding to the security zone, click **Edit**.
10. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
11. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.0** and click **OK**.
12. Next to Protocols, click **Add new entry**.
13. Next to the Protocol name box, type **all** and click **OK**.
14. To specify another interface **fe-5/0/0.0** for the zone, repeat Step 9 and Step 10 and click **OK**.
15. To add another security zone **T-ZONE**, repeat Step 3 through Step 7 and click **OK**.

To assign a security policy to the zone:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policy, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type UT-ZONE.
6. In the To zone name box, type T-ZONE.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **Policy-W**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.

10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Next to Match, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
12. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
15. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
16. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
17. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
18. From the Application Choice list, select **Application**.
19. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
20. In the Value keyword list, type **junos-telnet** and click **OK**.
21. Next to Then, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
22. From the Action list, select **Permit** and click **OK**.
23. Next to Permit, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
24. Next to Firewall Authentication, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
25. From the Auth type list, select **Pass through**.
26. Next to Pass through, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
27. In the Client match box, type **FW Client1** and click **OK**.
28. To authenticate the firewall user authentication, telnet **FWClient1** to **host2**.
29. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
30. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539.

## CLI Configuration

To configure the device for pass-through firewall authentication as shown in Figure 100 on page 514, follow these steps:

1. Create IP addresses for the interfaces on the device.

```

user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1
user@host# set unit 0 family inet address 20.20.20.1/24
user@host# set unit 0 family inet address 20.20.20.2/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-5/0/0
user@host# set unit 0 family inet address 30.30.30.1/24
user@host# set unit 0 family inet address 30.30.30.2/24

```

2. Create an access profile, **FWAUTH**, for **FWClient1** and specify a password, **pwd**.

```

user@host# set access profile FWAUTH client FWClient1 firewall-user password
pwd

```

3. Add the FWAUTH profile for pass-through firewall authentication and define a success banner for Telnet sessions.

```
user@host# set access firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile
FWAUTH
user@host# set access firewall-authentication pass-through telnet banner
success "WELCOME TO JUNIPER TELNET SESSION"
```

4. Create security zones.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone UT-ZONE host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
user@host# set security zones security-zone UT-ZONE interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host# set security zones security-zone T-ZONE host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
user@host# set security zones security-zone T-ZONE interfaces fe-5/0/0.0
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
```

5. Assign a security policy, policy1, to the zones.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy
policy1 match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy
policy1 match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy
policy1 match application junos-telnet
user@host# set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy
policy1 then permit firewall-authentication pass-through client-match
FWclient1
```

6. Use Telnet to authenticate firewall user, FWClient1, to host2.

```
regress@FWClient1# run telnet 30.30.30.2
Trying 30.30.30.2...
Connected to 30.30.30.2.
Escape character is '^]'.
Firewall User Authentication
Username: FWClient1
Password:***
WELCOME TO JUNIPER TELNET SESION
Host1 (ttyp0)
login: regress
Password:
— JUNOS 8.5R1.1 built 2007-10-12 13:30:18 UTC
%
```

7. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
8. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539.

## Related Topics

- Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 509



- Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication on page 524

## Configuring for Web Authentication

To enable Web Authentication, you must specify the IP address of the device hosting the HTTP session.

### Before You Begin

1. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
2. Read “Understanding Authentication Schemes” on page 511.
3. Read “Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509.

These settings are used if the firewall user accessing a protected resource wants to be authenticated by directly accessing the Web Server for Web authentication.

When referencing the following example, note that to enable or disable Web Authentication, you must add or remove the Web authentication HTTP flag under the interface's address hierarchy.

The following example shows how to set up a policy allowing access to FWClient1, when traffic encounters a policy that has Web-authentication enabled (Policy-W). FWClient1 should already have been authenticated through the Web Authentication login page as explained in “Configuring for External Authentication Servers” on page 526.

To configure a server for web authentication in the scenario shown in Figure 99 on page 513, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 519
- CLI Configuration on page 522
- Related Topics on page 523

## J-Web Configuration

To configure the device for Web authentication using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Interfaces, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Interface, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Interface name box, type **ge-0/0/1**.
5. Next to Unit, click **Add new entry**.

6. In the interface unit number, type 0.
7. Under Family, select **Inet** and click **OK**.
8. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Address name box, type 20.20.20.1/24 and click **OK**.
10. Next to Web authentication box, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
11. Select the **Http** check box and click **OK**.
12. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
13. In the Address name box, type 20.20.20.2/24 and click **OK**.
14. To configure another interface **ge-5/0/0**, repeat Step 2 through Step 9.
15. To configure more addresses like 30.30.30.1/24 and 30.30.30.1/24, repeat Step 2 through Step 4 and click **OK**.

To create an access profile:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Access, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Profile name box, type **WebAuth**.
5. Next to Client, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Name box, type **FWClient1**.
7. Next to Firewall User, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
8. In the Password box, type **pwd** and click **OK**.

To add the **WebAuth** profile for firewall web authentication:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Access, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Firewall Authentication, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Web authentication, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. In the Default profile box, type **FWAuth**.

To define a success banner for Telnet sessions:

1. Next to Telnet box, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
2. Next to Banner, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. In the Success box, type “**WELCOME TO JUNIPER TELNET SESSION**” and click **OK**.

To create security zones:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Zones, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Security zone, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type UT-ZONE.
6. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure**.
7. Next to System services, click **Add new entry**.
8. From the Service name list, select **all** and click **OK**.
9. Next to Interfaces, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Interface unit box, type **ge-0/0/1.0** and click **OK**.
11. Next to Host inbound traffic, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
12. Next to Protocols, click **Add new entry**.
13. From the Protocol name list, select **all** and click **OK**.
14. To specify another interface **fe-5/0/0.0** for the zone, repeat Step 9 and Step 10, and click **OK**.
15. To add another security zone **T-ZONE**, repeat Step 3 through Step 7 and click **OK**.

To assign a security policy to the zone:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policy, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the From zone name box, type UT-ZONE.
6. In the To zone name box, type T-ZONE.
7. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
8. In the Policy name box, type **Policy-W**.
9. Select the **Match** check box.
10. Select the **Then** check box.
11. Next to Match, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
12. From the Source address choice list, select **Source address**.
13. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
14. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.

15. From the Destination address choice list, select **Destination address**.
16. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
17. From the Value keyword list, select **any** and click **OK**.
18. From the Application Choice list, select **Application**.
19. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
20. In the Value keyword list, type **any** and click **OK**.
21. Next to Then, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
22. From the Action list, select **Permit** and click **OK**.
23. Next to Permit, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
24. Next to Firewall Authentication, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
25. From the Auth type list, select **Web authentication**.
26. Next to Web authentication, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
27. In the Client match box, type **FW Client1** and click **OK**.

To activate the Http daemon on your device:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to System, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Services, select the check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Web management, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. Select the **Http** check box and click **OK**.
6. To authenticate the firewall user authentication, point the browser to the Web Authentication IP (20.20.20.1).
7. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
8. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539

## CLI Configuration

1. Create IP addresses for the interfaces on the device.

```

user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1
user@host# set unit 0 family inet address 20.20.20.1/24 web authentication
http
user@host# set unit 0 family inet address 20.20.20.2/24
user@host# set interfaces fe-5/0/0
user@host# set unit 0 family inet address 30.30.30.1/24
user@host# set unit 0 family inet address 30.30.30.2/24

```

2. Create an access profile, WEBAUTH, for FWClient1 and specify a password, pwd.

```
user@host# set access profile WEBAUTH client FWClient1 firewall-user password
pwd
```

3. Add the above WEBAUTH profile for firewall Web authentication and define a success banner for Telnet sessions.

```
user@host# set access firewall-authentication web-authentication default-profile
WEBAUTH banner success "WEB AUTH LOGIN SUCCESS"
```

4. Create security zones.

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone UT-ZONE host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
user@host# set security zones security-zone UT-ZONE interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host# set security zones security-zone T-ZONE host-inbound-traffic
system-services all
user@host# set security zones security-zone T-ZONE interfaces fe-5/0/0.0
host-inbound-traffic protocols all
```

5. Assign a security policy, policy-W, to the zones.

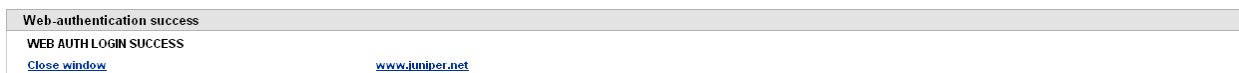
```
user@host# set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy
policy-W match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy
policy-W match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy
policy-W match application any
user@host# set security policies from-zone UT-ZONE to-zone T-ZONE policy
policy-W then permit firewall-authentication web-authentication client-match
FWclient1
```

6. Activate the HTTP daemon on your device.

```
user@host# set system services web-management http
```

7. Firewall user FWClient1 does the following to get authenticated:
  - a. Points the browser to the Web Authentication IP (20.20.20.1) to get authenticated first.
  - b. Starts traffic to access resources specified by policy, policy-W.
8. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
9. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539.

The following screen appears after the firewall user is authenticated.



## Related Topics

- Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication on page 524

- Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 509

## Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication

---

To manage a number of firewall users, you can create user or client groups and store the information either on the local Juniper Networks device or on an external RADIUS or LDAP server.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509.

A client group is a list of groups that the client belongs to. As with client-idle timeout, a client group is used only if the external authentication server does not return a value in its response (for example, LDAP servers do not return such information).

The RADIUS server sends the client's group information to the Juniper Networks device using Juniper VSA (46). The client-match portion of the policy accepts a string that can either be the username or groupname the client belongs to.

Example 1 shows client groups configured for a client. If a client group is not defined for the client, then the client group under the hierarchy `access> profile>session-options` is used.

Two example configurations are shown below. The first shows how to configure a local user called `client1` for groups `G1`, `G2`, and `G3` using J-Web and the CLI configuration editor. Within this example, client groups are configured for a client. If a client group is not defined for the client, then the client group under the hierarchy `access> profile>session-options` is used. The example configuration shows how to configure the default client group for all users in a profile called `managers` using J-Web and the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 524
- CLI Configuration on page 525
- J-Web Configuration on page 525
- CLI Configuration on page 526
- Related Topics on page 526

### J-Web Configuration

To configure a local user called `client1` for groups `G1`, `G2`, and `G3` using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration>View and Edit>Edit Configuration**.  
The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Access, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Profile name box, type **Managers**.
5. Next to Client, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Name, type **Client1**.
7. Next to Firewall User, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
8. In the Password box, type **test** and click **OK**.
9. Next to Client group, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Value box, type **[g1 g2 g3]** and click **OK**.
11. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
12. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539.

## CLI Configuration

To configure a local user called client1 for groups G1, G2, and G3, enter the following:

```
user@host# set access profile managers client client1 firewall-user password test
client-group [g1 g2 g3]
```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539.

## J-Web Configuration

To configure a default client group for all users using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.  
The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Access, click **Configure**.
3. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Profile name box, type **Managers**.
5. Next to Session options, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
6. Next to Client group, click **Add new entry**.
7. In the Value box, type **[m1 m2]** and click **OK**.

8. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
9. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539.

## CLI Configuration

To configure a default client group for all users in a profile called managers, enter the following:

```
user@host# set access profile managers session-options client-group [m1 m2]
```

If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539.

If a client belonging to the profile, managers, does not have any group information configured, then the client automatically inherits the groups m1 and m2.

The reason to have a single database for different types of clients (except admins) is based on the assumption that a single client can be of multiple types. For example, a firewall user client can also be an L2TP client.

## Related Topics

- Configuring for External Authentication Servers on page 526

## Configuring for External Authentication Servers

---

You can put several user accounts together to form a user group, which you can store on the local database or on a RADIUS, LDAP, or SecurID server. When you reference an authentication user group and an external authentication server in a policy, the traffic matching the policy provokes an authentication check.

In this example, the access profile called prof\_1 is configured for external authentication. Two RADIUS servers and one LDAP server are configured in the access profile. However, the order of authentication specifies RADIUS server only, so if the RADIUS server authentication fails, then the firewall user fails to authenticate. The local database is not accessed.





**NOTE:** If the firewall clients are authenticated by the RADIUS server, then the group-membership VSA returned by the RADIUS server should contain alpha, beta, or gamma client-groups in the RADIUS server configuration or in the access profile, prof\_1. Access profiles store usernames and passwords of users or point to external authentication servers where such information is stored.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509.

To configure a server for external authentication, use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 527
- CLI Configuration on page 529
- Related Topics on page 530

### J-Web Configuration

To specify the RADIUS server for external authentication order using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Access, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Profile name box, type **prof1**.
5. Next to Authentication order, click **Add new entry**.
6. From the Value choice list, select **radius** and click **OK**.

To configure firewall user (ClientsA-E) and assign firewall users (ClientA and ClientB) to client groups alpha, beta, and gamma:

1. Next to Client, click **Add new entry**.
2. In the Name box, type **ClientA**.
3. Next to Client group, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. In the Value box, type **alpha** and click **OK**.
5. To specify another client group, in the Value box, type **beta** and click **OK**.
6. To specify another client group, in the Value box, type **gamma** and click **OK**.
7. Next to Firewall User, click **Configure** or **Edit**.

8. In the Password box, type **pwd1** and click **OK**.
9. Next to Client, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Name box, type **ClientB** and click **OK**.
11. In the Value box, type **alpha** and click **OK**.
12. To specify another client group, in the Value box, type **beta** and click **OK**.
13. Next to Firewall User, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
14. In the Password box, type **pwd3** and click **OK**.
15. To specify another client, next to Client, click **Add new entry**.
16. In the Name box, type **ClientC** and click **OK**.
17. Next to Firewall User, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
18. In the Password box, type **pwd4** and click **OK**.
19. To specify another client, next to Client, click **Add new entry**.
20. In the Name box, type **ClientD** and click **OK**.
21. Next to Firewall User, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
22. In the Password box, type **pwd5** and click **OK**.
23. To specify another client, next to Client, click **Add new entry**.
24. In the Name box, type **ClientE** and click **OK**.
25. Next to Firewall User, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
26. In the Password box, type **pwd2** and click **OK**.

To configure client groups in the session options:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Access, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
4. In the Profile name box, type **prof1**.
5. Next to Session options, click **Configure**.
6. In the Value box, type **u1** and click **OK**.
7. To specify another client group, in the Value box, type **alpha** and click **OK**.
8. To specify another client group, in the Value box, type **gamma** and click **OK**.
9. In the Client idle timeout box, type **255**.
10. In the Client session timeout box, type **4** and click **OK**.

To configure the IP address for the LDAP server and LDAP server options:

1. Next to Ldap options, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
2. In the Base distinguished name box, type  
CN=Users,DC=screenos,DC=spg,DC=juniper,DC=net
3. From the Search type list, select **Search**.
4. Next to Search, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. In the Search filter box, type sAMAccountName= and click **OK**.
6. Select the **Admin search** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. In the Distinguished name box, type  
cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=screenos,dc=spg,dc=juniper,dc=net.
8. In the Password box, type pwd10 and click **OK**.
9. Next to Ldap server, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Name box, type 3.3.3.3 and click **OK**.

To configure the IP addresses for the two RADIUS servers:

1. Next to Radius server, click **Add new entry**.
2. In the Address box, type 4.4.4.4 and click **OK**.
3. In the Secret box, type any unreadable data.
4. In the Retry box, type 10 and click **OK**.
5. Next to Radius server, click **Add new entry**.
6. In the Address box, type 5.5.5.5 and click **OK**.
7. In the Secret box, type any unreadable data.
8. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
9. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539

## CLI Configuration

To configure the device for external authentication using a RADIUS server follow these steps:

1. Specify the RADIUS server for external authentication order. This restricts firewall users to authenticate through the RADIUS server only. If the RADIUS server authentication fails and the default password (local database) option is not specified, the firewall user is locked out.

```
user@host# set access profile prof_1 authentication-order radius
```

2. Configure firewall user (ClientsA-E) and assign firewall users (ClientA and ClientB) to client groups alpha, beta, and gamma.

```
user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientA client-group alpha
user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientA client-group beta
user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientA client-group gamma
```

```

user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientA firewall-user password pwd1
user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientB client-group alpha
user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientB client-group beta
user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientB firewall-user password pwd3
user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientC firewall-user password pwd4
user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientD firewall-user password pwd5
user@host# set access profile prof_1 client clientE firewall-user password pwd2

```

3. Configure client groups in the session options.

```

user@host# set access profile prof_1 session-options client-group u1
user@host# set access profile prof_1 session-options client-group alpha
user@host# set access profile prof_1 session-options client-group gamma
user@host# set access profile prof_1 session-options client-idle-timeout 255
user@host# set access profile prof_1 session-options client-session-timeout 4

```

4. Configure the IP address for the LDAP server and LDAP server options.

```

user@host# set access profile prof_1 ldap-options base-distinguished-name
CN=Users,DC=screenos,DC=spg,DC=juniper,DC=net
user@host# set access profile prof_1 ldap-options search search-filter
sAMAccountName=
user@host# set access profile prof_1 ldap-options search admin-search
distinguished-name
cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=screenos,dc=spg,dc=juniper,dc=net
user@host# set access profile prof_1 ldap-options search admin-search password
pwd10
cn=administrator,cn=users,dc=screenos,dc=spg,dc=juniper,dc=net
user@host# set access profile prof_1 ldap-server 3.3.3.3

```

5. Configure the IP addresses for the two RADIUS servers.

```

user@host# set access profile prof_1 radius-server 4.4.4.4
user@host# set access profile prof_1 radius-server 4.4.4.4 secret
user@host# set access profile prof_1 radius-server 4.4.4.4 retry 10
user@host# set access profile prof_1 radius-server 5.5.5.5 secret

```

6. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
7. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539

## Related Topics

- “Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509
- “Understanding Client Groups for Firewall Authentication” on page 524

## Understanding SecurID User Authentication

SecurID is an authentication method that allows users to enter either static or dynamic passwords as their credentials. A dynamic password is a combination of a user's PIN and a randomly generated token that is valid for a short period of time, approximately one minute. A static password is set for the user on the SecurID server. For example,

the SecurID server administrator might set a temporary static password for a user who lost his or her SecurID token.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Firewall User Authentication Overview” on page 509.

When a user attempts to access a resource protected by a policy and SecurID is configured in the profile **authentication-order** parameter as either the only authentication mode or the first one to be used, the device forwards the user's credentials to the SecurID server for authentication. If the user enters valid values, the user is allowed access to the requested resource.

The SecurID server includes a feature that presents a user with a challenge if the user provides wrong credentials repeatedly. However, JUNOS software does not support the challenge feature. Instead, the SecurID server administrator must resynchronize the RSA token for the user.

### Related Topics

- Configuring the SecurID Server on page 531
- Configuring for External Authentication Servers on page 526

## Configuring the SecurID Server

You can put several user accounts together to form a user group, which you can store on the local database or on a RADIUS, LDAP, or SecurID server. When you reference an authentication user group and an external authentication server in a policy, the traffic matching the policy provokes an authentication check.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding SecurID User Authentication” on page 530.

This example uses SecurID as the external authentication server.

The topic covers:

- Configuring SecurID as the External Authentication Server on page 532
- CLI Configuration on page 532
- Deleting the Node Secret File on page 533
- Related Topics on page 533

## Configuring SecurID as the External Authentication Server

For SecurID, you configure information about the Juniper Networks device on the SecurID server and this information is exported to a file called `sdconf.rec`.

To install the `sdconf.rec` file on the device, you must use an out-of-band method such as FTP. Install the file in a directory whose files are not deleted regularly. Do not put it in a temporary directory. For example, you might install it in `/var/db/secureid/server1/sdconf.rec`.

The `sdconf.rec` file contains information that provides the Juniper Networks device with the address of the SecurID server. You do not need to configure this information explicitly when you configure the SecurID server to be used as the external authentication server.

## CLI Configuration

1. For this example, specify that `server1` is to be used as the SecurID server and that the configuration file for it resides on the device in the `/var/db/securid/server1/sdconf.rec` file.

```
user@host> set access securid-server name server1 config-file "  
/var/db/securid/server1/sdconf.rec"
```

2. For `prof_2` profile, configure SecurID as the server to be used for external authentication. This restricts firewall users to authenticate through the SecurID server only. If the SecurID server authentication fails, the firewall user is locked out.

```
user@host# set access profile prof_2 authentication-order [securid]
```

To share a single SecurID server across multiple profiles, for each profile set the `authentication-order` parameter to include `securid` as the authentication mode.

3. Configure firewall user (ClientsA-E) and assign firewall users (ClientA and ClientB) to client groups alpha, beta, and gamma.

```
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientA client-group alpha  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientA client-group beta  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientA client-group gamma  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientA firewall-user password pwd1  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientB client-group alpha  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientB client-group beta  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientB firewall-user password pwd3  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientC firewall-user password pwd4  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientD firewall-user password pwd5  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 client clientE firewall-user password pwd2
```

4. Configure client groups in the session options.

```
user@host# set access profile prof_2 session-options client-group u1  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 session-options client-group alpha  
user@host# set access profile prof_2 session-options client-group gamma
```

```
user@host# set access profile prof_2 session-options client-idle-timeout 255
user@host# set access profile prof_2 session-options client-session-timeout 4
```

## Deleting the Node Secret File

When the Juniper Networks device initially communicates successfully with the SecurID server, a node secret file is created for it automatically. The file is created as a result of the handshake between the Juniper Networks device and the SecurID server after the software authenticates the first user successfully. All subsequent communication between the Juniper Networks device and the SecurID server relies on this secret as a representation of trust between the two nodes instead of repeating the handshake with each authentication request.

Under normal circumstances you should not delete the node secret file. In the rare case that you must do so, for example, to debug a serious problem, you can use the clear command to remove the file.



**WARNING:** If you delete the file, you must deselect a box on the SecurID server to indicate that the node secret file for the Juniper Networks device and the SecurID server no longer exists. Otherwise authentication attempts will fail.

---

To delete the node secret file, enter the following command. During subsequent user authentication, the device reestablishes a shared secret with the SecurID server and re-creates the node secret file.

```
user@host> clear network-access securid-node-secret-file
```

## Related Topics

- Configuring for External Authentication Servers on page 526
- Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 509

## Displaying the Authentication Table

---

The authentication table allows you to view a list of users and IP addresses that are currently authenticated by the Juniper Networks device.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 533
- CLI Configuration on page 534
- Related Topics on page 534

## J-Web Configuration

To display the authentication table, select **Monitor > Firewall Authentication** as shown in Figure 101 on page 534.

**Figure 101: Firewall Authentication Table**

[Monitor](#) > [Firewall Authentication](#) > [Authentication Table](#)

---

Firewall Authentication

**Authentication Table**

---

Firewall Authentication Users

Total users in table: 1

---

Authentication Table

	ID	Source Ip	Age	Status	User
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	20.20.20.5	0	Success	umpire

## CLI Configuration

To display the authentication table, enter the following commands:

- show security firewall-authentication users
- show security firewall-authentication users identifier <num>
- show security firewall-authentication users address <ipaddress>

where:

users—Shows the list of users and IP addresses currently authenticated by JUNOS software.

identifier—Shows more details on a specific row.

address—Shows more details on a specific IP address.

## Related Topics

- Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 509
- Understanding Authentication Schemes on page 511

## Understanding Banner Customization

A banner is a message that appears on a monitor in different places depending on the type of login:

**Figure 102: Banner Customization**

Web-authentication success	
WEB AUTH LOGIN SUCCESS	<a href="http://www.juniper.net">www.juniper.net</a>
<a href="#">Close window</a>	

- At the top of a browser screen after a user has successfully logged onto a Web Authentication address as shown Figure 102 on page 534.



- Before or after a Telnet, an FTP, or an HTTP login prompt, success message, and fail message for users

All of the banners, except for the one for a console login, already have default messages. You can customize the messages that appear on the banners to better suit the network environment in which you use the device.

## Related Topics

- Customizing a Banner on page 535

## Customizing a Banner



**NOTE:** In this example, you change the message that appears in the browser to indicate that a user has successfully authenticated after successfully logging in through Web Authentication. The new message is “ Web Authentication is successful.” If the authentication fails, then the new message reads “ Authentication failed.”

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Banner Customization” on page 534.

To customize a banner, use either the J-Web or CLI configuration editor.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 535
- CLI Configuration on page 536
- Related Topics on page 537

## J-Web Configuration

To specify the banner text for failed pass-through authentication through FTP using the J-Web configuration editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Access, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Firewall Authentication, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Pass through, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. In the Default profile box, type **Prof1**.
6. Next to Ftp, click **Configure** or **Edit**.

7. Next to Banner, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
8. In the Fail box, type “ Authentication failed” and click **OK**.

To specify the banner text for successful Web authentication:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.

The Configuration page appears.

2. Next to Access, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Firewall Authentication, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Web authentication, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. In the Default profile box, type Prof1.
6. Next to Banner, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
7. In the Success box, type “ Web Authentication is successful” and click **OK**.
8. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
9. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539

## CLI Configuration

To customize the banner text, do the following:

1. Specify the banner text for failed pass-through authentication through FTP.

```
user@host# set access firewall-authentication pass-through default-profile prof_1
user@host# set access firewall-authentication pass-through ftp banner fail “
Authentication failed”
```

2. Specify the banner text successful Web authentication.

```
user@host# set access web-authentication default-profile prof_1
user@host# set access web-authentication banner success “ Web Authentication
is successful”
```

3. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
4. To check the configuration, see “Verifying Firewall User Authentication” on page 539.

## ***Related Topics***

- Understanding Banner Customization on page 534

## **Configuring Firewall Authentication—Quick Configuration**

---

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure banner pages for firewall authentication. Figure 103 on page 538 shows the Quick Configuration banner page for authentication.

### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read

- Firewall User Authentication Overview on page 509
  - Understanding Banner Customization on page 534
  - Customizing a Banner on page 535
-

**Figure 103: Quick Configuration Page for Firewall Authentication Banners**

Quick Configuration	
<b>Authentication</b>	
<hr/>	
<b>Pass-through Firewall Authentication Settings</b>	
* Default Profile	<input type="text" value=""/>
<div> <div>HTTP Banner</div> <div> <div>Login</div> <div>Fail</div> <div>Success</div> </div> <div> <div>User Authentication</div> <div>Firewall User Authentication: Failed</div> <div>Firewall User Authentication: Accepted</div> </div> <div>?</div> <div>?</div> <div>?</div> </div>	
<div> <div>FTP Banner</div> <div> <div>Login</div> <div>Fail</div> <div>Success</div> </div> <div> <div>Firewall User Authentication Ready</div> <div>Authentication - Failed</div> <div>Authentication - Accepted (Closed connection - reconnect to server)</div> </div> <div>?</div> <div>?</div> <div>?</div> </div>	
<div> <div>Telnet Banner</div> <div> <div>Login</div> <div>Fail</div> <div>Success</div> </div> <div> <div>Firewall User Authentication</div> <div>Firewall User Authentication: Failed</div> <div>Firewall User Authentication: Accepted</div> </div> <div>?</div> <div>?</div> <div>?</div> </div>	
<hr/>	
<b>Web Authentication Settings</b>	
Default Profile	<input type="text" value=""/>
Banner (Success)	<input type="text" value="Web-authentication Success"/> ?

To configure banners for firewall authentication with Quick Configuration, follow these steps:

1. In the J-Web user interface, select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Authentication > Firewall Authentication**.
2. Enter information into the Quick Configuration page for Firewall Authentication banners as described in Table 104 on page 539.
3. From the Quick Configuration page, click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 104: Firewall Authentication**

Field	Function	Action
Pass-Through Firewall Authentication Settings		
Default Profile	Policies use this profile to authenticate users. The profile may contain authentication servers or users.	Select the authentication profile to use if a profile is not specified in a policy.
HTTP Banner	Customize banner text for users logging in using HTTP:  Login: This message displays the login prompt.  Fail: This message displays failed login.  Success: This message displays a successful login.	Enter a string up to 250 characters in length.
FTP Banner	Customize banner text for users logging in using FTP:  Login: This message displays the login prompt.  Fail: This message displays failed login.  Success: This message displays a successful login.	Enter a string up to 250 characters in length.
Telnet Banner	Customize banner text for users logging in using Telnet:  Login: This message displays the login prompt.  Fail: This message displays failed login.  Success: This message displays a successful login.	Enter a string up to 250 characters in length.
Web Authentication Settings		
Default Profile	Policies use this profile to authenticate users. The profile may contain authentication servers or users.	Select the authentication profile to use if a profile is not specified in a policy.
Banner (Success)	Customize banner text for users logging in through the Web browser.  Success: This message displays a successful login.	Enter a string up to 250 characters in length.

## Verifying Firewall User Authentication

**Purpose** Displays firewall authentication user history.

**Action** Use the `show security firewall-authentication` CLI command to display information on authenticated firewall users. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

```

user@host# show security firewall-authentication history
History of firewall authentication data:
Authentications: 2
Id Source Ip Date Time Duration Status User
1 99.99.99.1 2007-10-12 21:24:02 0:00:24 Failed troy
2 99.99.99.1 2007-10-12 21:24:48 0:00:22 Success voyager
user@host> show security firewall-authentication history identifier 1
Username: troy
Source IP: 99.99.99.1
Authentication state: Failed
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Access start date: 2007-10-12
Access start time: 21:24:02
Duration of user access: 0:00:24
Policy name: lnx2-telnet-lnx1
Source zone: d12
Destination zone: d11
Access profile: wonder
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 2660
Client-groups: Sunnyvale Bangalore
user@host> show security firewall-authentication users
Firewall authentication data:
Total users in table: 1
Id Source Ip Src zone Dst zone Profile Age Status User
3 99.99.99.1 d12 d11 wonder 1 Failed TechPubs
user@host> show security firewall-authentication users identifier 3
Username: TechPubs
Source IP: 99.99.99.1
Authentication state: Failed
Authentication method: Pass-through using Telnet
Age: 1
Access time remaining: 9
Source zone: d12
Destination zone: d11
Policy name: lnx2-telnet-lnx1
Access profile: wonder
Interface Name: ge-0/0/1.0
Bytes sent by this user: 0
Bytes received by this user: 1521

```

**What it Means** The output displays information about firewall users authenticating to the network. Verify the following information:

- Number of firewall users who successfully authenticated and firewall users who failed to log in.
- Details on each firewall user trying to authenticate.

## Chapter 17

# Infranet Authentication

This chapter includes the following information on how you can use SRX-series or J-series devices as JUNOS Enforcers in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment:

- Unified Access Control Overview on page 541
- Enabling Unified Access Control on the SRX-series and J-series Devices on page 546
- Configuring the SRX-series and J-series Devices as a JUNOS Enforcer on page 547
- Configuring the JUNOS Enforcer Failover Options on page 548
- Enabling the JUNOS Enforcer Test-Only Mode on page 549

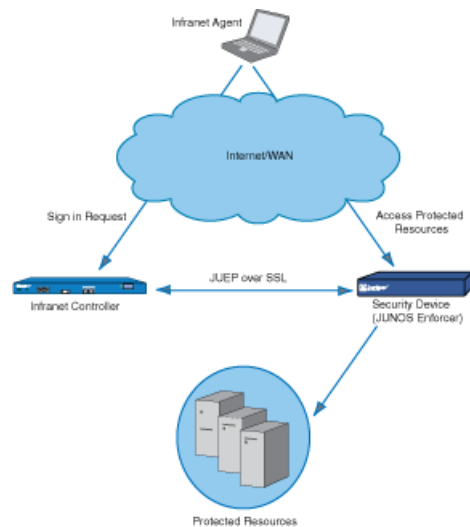
### Unified Access Control Overview

---

A Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment uses the following components to secure a network and ensure that only qualified end users can access protected resources:

- **Infranet Controllers**—An Infranet Controller is a policy decision point in the network. It uses authentication information and policy rules to determine whether or not to provide access to individual resources on the network. You can deploy one or more Infranet Controllers in your network.
- **Infranet Enforcers**—An Infranet Enforcer is a policy enforcement point in the network. It receives policies from the Infranet Controller and uses the rules defined in those policies to determine whether or not to allow an endpoint access to a resource. You deploy the Infranet Enforcers in front of the servers and resources that you want to protect.
- **Infranet Agents**—An Infranet Agent is a client-side component that runs directly on network endpoints (such as users' computers). The agent checks that the endpoint complies to the security criteria specified in Host Checker policies and relays that compliance information to the Infranet Enforcer. The Infranet Enforcer then allows or denies the endpoint access based on the compliance results.

An SRX-series or J-series device can act as an Infranet Enforcer in a UAC network. Specifically, it acts as a Layer 3 enforcement point, controlling access by using IP-based policies pushed down from the Infranet Controller. When deployed in a UAC network, an SRX-series or J-series device is called a *JUNOS Enforcer*.

**Figure 104: Integrating a JUNOS Security Device into a Unified Access Control Network**

This topic includes the following information about deploying an SRX-series or J-series device as a JUNOS Enforcer in a UAC network:

- Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and the Infranet Controller on page 542
- JUNOS Enforcer Policy Enforcement on page 543
- Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and a Cluster of Infranet Controllers on page 544
- Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and the Infranet Agent on page 545
- Related Topics on page 546

### ***Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and the Infranet Controller***

When you configure an SRX-series or J-series device to connect to an Infranet Controller through the JUNOS CLI, the SRX-series or J-series device and the Infranet Controller establish secure communications as follows:

1. The Infranet Controller presents its server certificate to the SRX-series or J-series device. If configured to do so, the SRX-series or J-series device verifies the certificate. (Server certificate verification is not required; however, as an extra security measure you can verify the certificate to implement an additional layer of trust.)
2. The SRX-series or J-series device and the Infranet Controller perform mutual authentication using the proprietary challenge-response authentication. For security reasons, the password is not included in the message sent to the Infranet Controller.
3. After successfully authenticating the SRX-series or J-series device, the Infranet Controller sends it user authentication and resource access policy information.



The SRX-series and J-series devices use this information to act as the JUNOS Enforcer in the UAC network.

4. Thereafter, the Infranet Controller and the JUNOS Enforcer can communicate freely with one another over the SSL connection. The communications are controlled by a proprietary protocol called *JUNOS UAC Enforcer Protocol (JUEP)*.

## **JUNOS Enforcer Policy Enforcement**

Once the SRX-series or J-series device has successfully established itself as the JUNOS Enforcer, it secures traffic as follows:

1. First, the JUNOS Enforcer uses the appropriate JUNOS security policy to process the traffic. A *security policy* uses criteria such as the traffic's source IP address or the time of day that the traffic was received to determine whether or not the traffic should be allowed to pass. (For more information about security policies, see "Policy Features" on page 429.)



**NOTE:** IPsec is currently not supported in JUNOS-Unified Access Control (UAC) deployments. As such, you should use IP-based security policies.

---

2. Once it determines that the traffic may pass based on the JUNOS security policy, the JUNOS Enforcer maps the traffic flow to an authentication table entry. The JUNOS Enforcer uses the source IP address of the first packet in the flow to create the mapping.

An *authentication table entry* contains the source IP address and user role(s) of a user who has already successfully established a UAC session. A *user role* identifies a group of users based on criteria such as type (for instance, "Engineering" or "Marketing") or status (for instance, "Antivirus Running"). The JUNOS Enforcer determines whether to allow or deny the traffic to pass based on the authentication results stored in the appropriate authentication table entry. (For more information about authentication tables and user roles, see the *Unified Access Control Administration Guide*.)

The Infranet Controller pushes authentication table entries to the JUNOS Enforcer when the devices first connect to one another (as explained in "Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and the Infranet Controller" on page 542) and as necessary throughout the session. For example, the Infranet Controller might push updated authentication table entries to the JUNOS Enforcer when the user's computer becomes noncompliant with endpoint security policies, when you change the configuration of a user's role, or when you disable all user accounts on the Infranet Controller in response to a security problem such as a virus on the network.

If the JUNOS Enforcer drops a packet due to a missing authentication table entry, the device sends a message to the Infranet Controller, which in turn may provision a new authentication table entry and send it to the JUNOS Enforcer. This process is called *dynamic authentication table provisioning*.

To display a summary of the authentication table entries configured from the Infranet Controller, use the `show services unified-access-control authentication-table` command.

3. Once it determines that the traffic may pass based on the authentication table entries, the JUNOS Enforcer maps the flow to a resource. The JUNOS Enforcer uses the destination IP address specified in the flow to create the mapping. Then the device uses that resource as well as the user role specified in the authentication table entry to map the flow to a resource access policy.

A *resource access policy* specifies a particular resource to which you want to control access based on user role. For instance, you might create a resource access policy that only allows users who are members of the “Engineering” and “Antivirus Running” user roles access to the “Engineering-Only” server. Or you might create a resource access policy that allows members of the “No Antivirus Running” user role access to the “Remediation” server where antivirus software is available for download. (For more information about resource access policies, see the *Unified Access Control Administration Guide*.)

The Infranet Controller pushes resource access policies to the JUNOS Enforcer when the devices first connect to one another (as explained in “Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and the Infranet Controller” on page 542) and when you modify your resource access policy configurations on the Infranet Controller.

If the JUNOS Enforcer drops the packet due to a “deny” policy, the JUNOS Enforcer sends a message to the Infranet Controller, which in turn sends a message to the endpoint’s Odyssey Access Client (if available). (The Infranet Controller does not send “deny” messages to the “agentless” client.)

To display a summary of UAC resource access policies configured from the Infranet Controller, use the `show services unified-access-control policies` command.

4. Once it determines that the traffic may pass based on the resource access policies, the JUNOS Enforcer processes the traffic using the remaining application services defined in the JUNOS policy. The JUNOS Enforcer runs the remaining services in the following order: Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP), URL filtering, and Application Layer Gateways (ALGs).

## **Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and a Cluster of Infranet Controllers**

You can configure a JUNOS Enforcer to work with more than one Infranet Controller in a high availability configuration known as an Infranet Controller cluster. The JUNOS Enforcer communicates with only one Infranet Controller at a time; the other Infranet Controllers are used for failover. If the JUNOS Enforcer cannot connect to the first Infranet Controller you added to a cluster, it tries to connect to the failed Infranet Controller again. Then it fails over to the other Infranet Controllers in the cluster. It continues trying to connect to Infranet Controllers in the cluster until a connection occurs.

When the JUNOS Enforcer cannot establish a connection to an Infranet Enforcer, it preserves all its existing authentication table entries and Unified Access Control (UAC) policies and takes the timeout action that you specify. Timeout actions include:

- **close**—Close existing sessions and block any further traffic. This is the default option.
- **no-change**—Preserve existing sessions and require authentication for new sessions.
- **open**—Preserve existing sessions and allow new sessions access.

Once the JUNOS Enforcer is able to reestablish a connection to an Infranet Controller, the Infranet Controller compares the authentication table entries and UAC policies stored on the JUNOS Enforcer with the authentication table entries and policies stored on the Infranet Controller and reconciles the two as required.

The Infranet Controllers configured on a JUNOS Enforcer should all be members of the same Infranet Controller cluster.

### **Communications Between the JUNOS Enforcer and the Infranet Agent**

An Infranet Agent helps you secure traffic on your network starting with the endpoints that initiate communications as follows:

1. The Infranet Agent, which runs directly on the endpoint, checks that the endpoint is compliant with your Unified Access Control (UAC) Host Checker policies. You can use a wide variety of criteria within a UAC Host Checker policy to determine compliance. For example, you can configure the Host Checker policy to confirm that the endpoint is running antivirus software or a firewall or that the endpoint is not running specific types of malware or processes.
2. The Infranet Agent transmits the compliance information to the JUNOS Enforcer.
3. The JUNOS Enforcer allows or denies the endpoint access to the resources on your network based on the Host Checker compliance results.

Because the Infranet Agent runs directly on the endpoint, you can use the Infranet Agent to check the endpoint for security compliance at any time. For instance, when a user tries to sign into the Infranet Controller, you can require the Infranet Agent to send compliance results immediately—the user will not even see the sign-in page until the Infranet Agent returns positive compliance results to the Infranet Controller. You can also configure the Infranet Agent to check for compliance after the user signs in or periodically during the user session. For more information about the Infranet Agent, see the *Unified Access Control Administration Guide*.

To integrate the Infranet Agent into a JUNOS-UAC deployment, no special configuration is required on the JUNOS Enforcer. You simply need to create IP-based security policies enabling access to the appropriate endpoints as you would for any other JUNOS-UAC deployment. (For more information, see “JUNOS Enforcer Policy Enforcement” on page 543.) If the endpoints running the Infranet Agent have appropriate access, they will automatically send their compliance results to the Infranet Controller and the Infranet Controller will update the authentication table entries accordingly and push them to the JUNOS Enforcer. The JUNOS Enforcer supports connections with the Odyssey Access Client and “agentless” Infranet Agents.

## Related Topics

- Enabling Unified Access Control on the SRX-series and J-series Devices on page 546
- Configuring the SRX-series and J-series Devices as a JUNOS Enforcer on page 547
- Configuring the JUNOS Enforcer Failover Options on page 548
- Enabling the JUNOS Enforcer Test-Only Mode on page 549

## Enabling Unified Access Control on the SRX-series and J-series Devices

JUNOS security policies enforce rules for transit traffic, defining what traffic can pass through the firewall. The policies control traffic that enters from one zone (**from-zone**) and exits another (**to-zone**). To enable an SRX-series or J-series device as a JUNOS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment, you must identify the zones through which UAC traffic will travel, define JUNOS security policies that encompass those zones, and enable UAC for those policies.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read “Unified Access Control Overview” on page 541.
2. Set up the interfaces through which UAC traffic should enter the SRX-series or J-series device. See “Understanding Security Zone Interfaces” on page 83 for background information and “Configuring Interfaces—Quick Configuration” on page 84 for instructions.
3. Group interfaces with identical security requirements into zones. See “Understanding Security Zones” on page 69 for background information and “Creating Security Zones” on page 71 for instructions.
4. Create security policies to control the traffic that passes through the security zones. See “Security Policies Overview” on page 431 for background information and “Configuring Policies” on page 441 for instructions.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 546
- Related Topics on page 546

## CLI Configuration

To configure enable UAC through a JUNOS security policy, use the `application-services` statement:

```
edit security policies from-zone zone-name to-zone zone-name policy match then permit
  application-services uac-policy
```

## Related Topics

- Configuring the SRX-series and J-series Devices as a JUNOS Enforcer on page 547

- Configuring the JUNOS Enforcer Failover Options on page 548
- Enabling the JUNOS Enforcer Test-Only Mode on page 549

## Configuring the SRX-series and J-series Devices as a JUNOS Enforcer

To configure a SRX-series or J-series devices to act as a JUNOS Enforcer in a Unified Access Control (UAC) deployment, you must specify an Infranet Controller to which the SRX-series or J-series device should connect.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read “Unified Access Control Overview” on page 541.
2. Enable UAC through the relevant JUNOS security policies. See “Enabling Unified Access Control on the SRX-series and J-series Devices” on page 546
3. (Optional) Import the Infranet Controller’s server certificate onto the SRX-series or J-series device and create a profile for the certificate authority (CA) that signed the certificate. See “Using Digital Certificates” on page 616 for background information and “Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually” on page 626 for instructions.
4. Configure user authentication and authorization by setting up user roles, authentication and authorization servers, and authentication realms on the Infranet Controller. For more information, see the *Unified Access Control Administration Guide*.
5. Configure resource access policies on the Infranet Controller to specify which endpoints are allowed or denied access to protected resources. For more information, see the *Unified Access Control Administration Guide*.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 547
- Related Topics on page 548

### CLI Configuration

To configure an SRX-series or J-series device to act as a JUNOS Enforcer:

1. Specify the Infranet Controller(s) to which the SRX-series or J-series device should connect:
  - Specify the Infranet Controller’s host name:
 

```
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname
```
  - Specify the Infranet Controller’s IP address:
 

```
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname address ip-address
```



**NOTE:** When configuring access to multiple Infranet Controllers, you must define each separately. For example:

```
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC1
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC2
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC3

edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC1 address 10.10.10.01
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC2 address 10.10.10.02
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller IC3 address 10.10.10.03
```

Make sure that all of the Infranet Controllers are members of the same cluster.

2. Specify the Infranet Controller port to which the SRX-series or J-series device should connect:

```
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname port port
```

3. Specify the JUNOS interface to which the Infranet Controller should connect:

```
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname interface
interface-name
```

4. Specify the password that the SRX-series or J-series device should use to initiate secure communications with the Infranet Controller:

```
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname password password
```

5. (Optional) Specify information about the certificate that the device should use for SSL communications with the Infranet Controller:

- Specify the certificate that the device should use:

```
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname
server-certificate-subject certificate-name
```

- Specify the certificate authority (CA) profile associated with the certificate:

```
edit services unified-access-control infranet-controller hostname ca-profile
ca-profile
```

## Related Topics

- Configuring the JUNOS Enforcer Failover Options on page 548
- Enabling the JUNOS Enforcer Test-Only Mode on page 549

## Configuring the JUNOS Enforcer Failover Options

To configure Infranet Controller failover processing, you must configure the JUNOS Enforcer to connect to a cluster of Infranet Controllers. The JUNOS Enforcer

communicates with one of these Infranet Controllers at a time and uses the others for failover processing.

#### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read “Unified Access Control Overview” on page 541.
2. Enable UAC through the relevant JUNOS security policies. See “Enabling Unified Access Control on the SRX-series and J-series Devices” on page 546
3. Configure the SRX-series or J-series device as a JUNOS Enforcer. During the configuration, define a cluster of Infranet Controllers to which the JUNOS Enforcer should connect. See “Configuring the SRX-series and J-series Devices as a JUNOS Enforcer” on page 547.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 549
- Related Topics on page 549

## CLI Configuration

To configure failover processing:

1. Specify how often (in seconds) the JUNOS Enforcer should expect a heartbeat signal from the Infranet Controller indicating an active connection:

```
edit services unified-access-control interval seconds
```

2. Specify the interval (in seconds) at which the JUNOS Enforcer should consider the current connection timed out:

```
edit services unified-access-control timeout seconds
```

3. Specify how the JUNOS Enforcer should handle all current and subsequent traffic sessions when its connection to an Infranet Controller cluster times out:

```
edit services unified-access-control timeout-action (close | no-change | open)
```

## Related Topics

- Enabling the JUNOS Enforcer Test-Only Mode on page 549

## Enabling the JUNOS Enforcer Test-Only Mode

When configured in test-only mode, the SRX-series or J-series device enables all Unified Access Control (UAC) traffic to go through regardless of the UAC policy

settings. The device logs the UAC policy's access decisions without enforcing them so you can test the implementation without impeding traffic.

---

**Before You Begin**

1. For background information, read “Unified Access Control Overview” on page 541.
  2. Enable UAC through the relevant JUNOS security policies. See “Enabling Unified Access Control on the SRX-series and J-series Devices” on page 546
  3. Configure the SRX-series and J-series devices as a JUNOS Enforcer. See “Configuring the SRX-series and J-series Devices as a JUNOS Enforcer” on page 547.
  4. If you are connecting to a cluster of Infranet Controllers, enable failover options. See “Configuring the JUNOS Enforcer Failover Options” on page 548.
- 

To activate or deactivate test-only mode, use the **test-only-mode** configuration statement:

```
edit services unified-access-control test-only-mode (true | false)
```



## **Part 5**

# **Virtual Private Network Features**

- Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) on page 553
- Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
- Dynamic Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) on page 639
- NetScreen-Remote VPN Client on page 683



## Chapter 18

# Internet Protocol Security (IPsec)

IP Security (IPsec) is a suite of related protocols for cryptographically securing communications at the IP Packet Layer. IPsec also provides methods for the manual and automatic negotiation of security associations (SAs) and key distribution, all the attributes for which are gathered in a Domain of Interpretation (DOI). The IPsec DOI is a document containing definitions for all the security parameters required for the successful negotiation of a VPN tunnel—essentially, all the attributes required for SA and IKE negotiations. See *RFC 2407* and *RFC 2408* for more information.

This chapter includes:

- Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview on page 554
- Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing on page 562
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568
- Configuring VPN Global Settings (Standard VPNs) on page 570
- Configuring VPN Global Settings—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 571
- Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 573
- Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 574
- Configuring an IKE Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 578
- Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 579
- Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 583
- Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 584
- Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 589
- Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 590
- Configuring an IPsec Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 594
- Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 595
- Configuring IPsec AutoKey (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 600
- Configuring IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 601

## Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview

---

A virtual private network (VPN) provides a means for securely communicating among remote computers across a public wide area network (WAN), such as the Internet.

A VPN connection can link two local area networks (LANs) (site-to-site VPN) or a remote dial-up user and a LAN. The traffic that flows between these two points passes through shared resources such as routers, switches, and other network equipment that make up the public WAN. To secure VPN communication while passing through the WAN, the two participants create an IP Security (IPsec) tunnel.



**NOTE:** The term *tunnel* does not denote tunnel mode (see “Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode” on page 562). Instead, it refers to the IPsec connection.

---

This topic covers:

- Security Associations (SAs) on page 554
- IPsec Key Management on page 555
- IPsec Security Protocols on page 557
- IPsec Tunnel Negotiation on page 558
- Related Topics on page 562

### Security Associations (SAs)

A security association (SA) is a unidirectional agreement between the VPN participants regarding the methods and parameters to use in securing a communication channel. Through the SA, an IPsec tunnel can provide the following security functions:

- Privacy (through encryption)
- Content integrity (through data authentication)
- Sender authentication and—if using certificates—nonrepudiation (through data origin authentication)

The security functions you employ depend on your needs. If you only need to authenticate the IP packet source and content integrity, you can authenticate the packet without applying any encryption. On the other hand, if you are only concerned with preserving privacy, you can encrypt the packet without applying any authentication mechanisms. Optionally, you can both encrypt and authenticate the packet. Most network security designers choose to encrypt, authenticate, and replay-protect their VPN traffic.

An IPsec tunnel consists of a pair of unidirectional SAs—one at each end of the tunnel—that specify the security parameter index (SPI), destination IP address, and security protocol (Authentication Header or Encapsulating Security Payload) employed. An SA groups together the following components for securing communications:

- Security algorithms and keys
- Protocol mode, either transport or tunnel. JUNOS devices always use tunnel mode. (For more information, see “Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode” on page 562.)
- Key-management method, either manual key or AutoKey IKE. (For more information, see “IPsec Key Management” on page 555.)
- SA lifetime

For inbound traffic, JUNOS software looks up the SA by using the following triplet:

- Destination IP address
- Security protocol, either AH or ESP (see “IPsec Security Protocols” on page 557)
- Security parameter index (SPI) value

For outbound VPN traffic, the policy invokes the SA associated with the VPN tunnel.

## IPsec Key Management

The distribution and management of keys are critical to using VPNs successfully. JUNOS software supports IPsec technology for creating VPN tunnels with three kinds of key creation mechanisms:

- Manual key
- AutoKey IKE with a preshared key or a certificate
- Diffie-Hellman key

You can choose your key creation mechanism—also called authentication method—during phase 1 and phase 2 proposal configuration. For more information, see “IPsec Tunnel Negotiation” on page 558.



**NOTE:** Manual key creation and AutoKey IKE with certificates are not supported with the dynamic VPN feature at this time.

---

### Manual Key

With manual keys, administrators at both ends of a tunnel configure all the security parameters. This is a viable technique for small, static networks where the distribution, maintenance, and tracking of keys are not difficult. However, safely distributing manual-key configurations across great distances poses security issues. Aside from passing the keys face-to-face, you cannot be completely sure that the keys have not been compromised while in transit. Also, whenever you want to change the key, you are faced with the same security issues as when you initially distributed it.

## AutoKey IKE

When you need to create and manage numerous tunnels, you need a method that does not require you to configure every element manually. IPsec supports the automated generation and negotiation of keys and security associations using the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol. JUNOS software refers to such automated tunnel negotiation as AutoKey IKE and supports AutoKey IKE with preshared keys and AutoKey IKE with certificates.

### *AutoKey IKE with Preshared Keys*

Using AutoKey IKE with preshared keys to authenticate the participants in an IKE session, each side must configure and securely exchange the preshared key in advance. In this regard, the issue of secure key distribution is the same as that with manual keys. However, once distributed, an autokey, unlike a manual key, can automatically change its keys at predetermined intervals using the IKE protocol. Frequently changing keys greatly improves security, and automatically doing so greatly reduces key-management responsibilities. However, changing keys increases traffic overhead; therefore, doing so too often can reduce data transmission efficiency.



**NOTE:** A preshared key is a key for both encryption and decryption, which both participants must have before initiating communication.

---

### *AutoKey IKE with Certificates*

When using certificates to authenticate the participants during an AutoKey IKE negotiation, each side generates a public-private key pair and acquires a certificate. As long as the issuing certificate authority (CA) is trusted by both sides, the participants can retrieve the peer's public key and verify the peer's signature. There is no need to keep track of the keys and SAs; IKE does it automatically.

## Diffie-Hellman Exchange

A Diffie-Hellman (DH) exchange allows the participants to produce a shared secret value. The strength of the technique is that it allows the participants to create the secret value over an unsecured medium without passing the secret value through the wire. There are five Diffie-Hellman groups; JUNOS software supports groups 1, 2, and 5. The size of the prime modulus used in each group's calculation differs as follows:

- **DH Group 1**—768-bit modulus
- **DH Group 2**—1024-bit modulus
- **DH Group 5**—1536-bit modulus



**NOTE:** The strength of DH Group 1 security has depreciated; therefore we do not recommend its use.

---

The larger the modulus, the more secure the generated key is considered to be; however, the larger the modulus, the longer the key-generation process takes. Because the modulus for each DH group is a different size, the participants must agree to use the same group.



**NOTE:** If you configure multiple (up to four) proposals for Phase 1 negotiations, use the same Diffie-Hellman group in all proposals. The same guideline applies to multiple proposals for Phase 2 negotiations.

## IPsec Security Protocols

IPsec uses two protocols to secure communications at the IP layer:

- Authentication Header (AH)—A security protocol for authenticating the source of an IP packet and verifying the integrity of its content
- Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)—A security protocol for encrypting the entire IP packet (and authenticating its content)

You can choose your security protocols—also called authentication and encryption algorithms—during phase 1 and phase 2 proposal configuration. For more information, see “IPsec Tunnel Negotiation” on page 558.

### Authentication Header (AH) Protocol

The Authentication Header (AH) protocol provides a means to verify the authenticity/integrity of the content and origin of a packet. You can authenticate the packet by the checksum calculated through a Hash Message Authentication Code (HMAC) using a secret key and either MD5 or SHA-1 hash functions.

- **Message Digest 5 (MD5)**—An algorithm that produces a 128-bit hash (also called a *digital signature* or *message digest*) from a message of arbitrary length and a 16-byte key. The resulting hash is used, like a fingerprint of the input, to verify content and source authenticity and integrity.
- **Secure Hash Algorithm-1 (SHA-1)**—An algorithm that produces a 160-bit hash from a message of arbitrary length and a 20-byte key. It is generally regarded as more secure than MD5 because of the larger hashes it produces. Because the computational processing is done in the ASIC, the performance cost is negligible.



**NOTE:** For more information on MD5 hashing algorithms, see *RFCs 1321* and *RFC 2403*. For more information on SHA hashing algorithms, see *RFC 2404*. For more information on HMAC, see *RFC 2104*.

### Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) Protocol

The Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol provides a means to ensure privacy (encryption) and source authentication and content integrity (authentication). ESP in tunnel mode encapsulates the entire IP packet (header and payload) and then

appends a new IP header to the now-encrypted packet. This new IP header contains the destination address needed to route the protected data through the network. (For more information about tunnel mode, see “Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode” on page 562.)

With ESP, you can both encrypt and authenticate, encrypt only, or authenticate only. For encryption, you can choose one of the following encryption algorithms:

- **Data Encryption Standard (DES)**—A cryptographic block algorithm with a 56-bit key.
- **Triple DES (3DES)**—A more powerful version of DES in which the original DES algorithm is applied in three rounds, using a 168-bit key. DES provides a significant performance savings but is considered unacceptable for many classified or sensitive material transfers.
- **Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)**—An emerging encryption standard which, when adopted by Internet infrastructures worldwide, will offer greater interoperability with other devices. JUNOS software supports AES with 128-bit, 192-bit, and 256-bit keys.

For authentication, you can use either MD5 or SHA-1 algorithms.



**NOTE:** Even though it is possible to select **NULL** for encryption, it has been demonstrated that IPsec might be vulnerable to attack under such circumstances. Therefore, we suggest that you choose an encryption algorithm for maximum security.

---

## IPsec Tunnel Negotiation

To establish an AutoKey IKE IPsec tunnel, two phases of negotiation are required:

- In Phase 1, the participants establish a secure channel in which to negotiate the IPsec security associations (SAs).
- In Phase 2, the participants negotiate the IPsec SAs for encrypting and authenticating the ensuing exchanges of user data.

For a manual key IPsec tunnel, because all of the SA parameters have been previously defined, there is no need to negotiate which SAs to use. In essence, the tunnel has already been established. When traffic matches a policy using that manual key tunnel or when a route involves the tunnel, the Juniper Networks device simply encrypts and authenticates the data, as you determined, and forwards it to the destination gateway.

### Phase 1 of IKE Tunnel Negotiation

Phase 1 of an AutoKey IKE tunnel negotiation consists of the exchange of proposals for how to authenticate and secure the channel. The participants exchange proposals for acceptable security services such as:

- Encryption algorithms (DES and 3DES) and authentication algorithms (MD5 and SHA-1). (For more information, see “IPsec Security Protocols” on page 557.)



- A Diffie-Hellman group. (For more information, see “Diffie-Hellman Exchange” on page 556.)
- Preshared Key or RSA/DSA certificates. (For more information, see “IPsec Key Management” on page 555.)

A successful Phase 1 negotiation concludes when both ends of the tunnel agree to accept at least one set of the Phase 1 security parameters proposed and then process them. Juniper Networks devices support up to four proposals for Phase 1 negotiations, allowing you to define how restrictive a range of security parameters for key negotiation you will accept.

The predefined Phase 1 proposals that JUNOS software provides are as follows:

- **Standard**—pre-g2-aes128-sha and pre-g2-3des-sha
- **Compatible**—pre-g2-3des-sha, pre-g2-3des-md5, pre-g2-des-sha, and pre-g2-des-md5
- **Basic**—pre-g1-des-sha and pre-g1-des-md5

You can also define custom Phase 1 proposals.



**NOTE:** If you are using the dynamic VPN feature, note that you must create a custom Phase 1 proposal. Predefined Phase 1 proposals are not available at this time.

---

Phase 1 exchanges can take place in either main or aggressive mode. You can choose your mode during IKE policy configuration.

### **Main Modes**

In main mode, the initiator and recipient send three two-way exchanges (six messages total) to accomplish the following services:

- First exchange (messages 1 and 2)—Propose and accept the encryption and authentication algorithms.
- Second exchange (messages 3 and 4)—Execute a Diffie-Hellman exchange, and the initiator and recipient each provide a pseudo-random number.
- Third exchange (messages 5 and 6)—Send and verify their identities.

The information transmitted in the third exchange of messages is protected by the encryption algorithm established in the first two exchanges. Thus, the participants' identities are not transmitted in the clear.

### **Aggressive Mode**

In aggressive mode, the initiator and recipient accomplish the same objectives, but in only two exchanges, with a total of three messages:

- First message—The initiator proposes the SA, initiates a Diffie-Hellman exchange, and sends a pseudo-random number and its IKE identity.

- Second message—The recipient accepts the SA; authenticates the initiator; and sends a pseudo-random number, its IKE identity, and, if using certificates, the recipient's certificate.
- Third message—The initiator authenticates the recipient, confirms the exchange, and, if using certificates, sends the initiator's certificate.

Because the participants' identities are exchanged in the clear (in the first two messages), aggressive mode does not provide identity protection.



**NOTE:** When a dialup VPN user negotiates an AutoKey IKE tunnel with a preshared key, aggressive mode must be used. Therefore, you must always use aggressive mode with the dynamic VPN feature. Note also that a dialup VPN user can use an e-mail address, a fully qualified domain name (FQDN), or an IP address as its IKE ID. A dynamic peer can use either an e-mail address or FQDN, but not an IP address.

---

## Phase 2 of IKE Tunnel Negotiation

After the participants have established a secure and authenticated channel, they proceed through Phase 2, in which they negotiate the SAs to secure the data to be transmitted through the IPsec tunnel.

Similar to the process for Phase 1, the participants exchange proposals to determine which security parameters to employ in the SA. A Phase 2 proposal also includes a security protocol—either Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) or Authentication Header (AH)—and selected encryption and authentication algorithms. The proposal can also specify a Diffie-Hellman group, if Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) is desired.

Regardless of the mode used in Phase 1, Phase 2 always operates in quick mode and involves the exchange of three messages.

Juniper Networks devices support up to four proposals for Phase 2 negotiations, allowing you to define how restrictive a range of tunnel parameters you will accept. The predefined Phase 2 proposals that JUNOS software provides are as follows:

- **Standard**—g2-esp-3des-sha and g2-esp-aes128-sha
- **Compatible**—nopfs-esp-3des-sha, nopfs-esp-3des-md5, nopfs-esp-des-sha, and nopfs-esp-des-md5
- **Basic**—nopfs-esp-des-sha and nopfs-esp-des-md5

You can also define custom Phase 2 proposals.



**NOTE:** If you are using the dynamic VPN feature, note that you must create a custom Phase 2 proposal. Predefined Phase 2 proposals are not available at this time.

---

**Proxy IDs**

In Phase 2, the peers exchange proxy IDs. A proxy ID is a three-part tuple consisting of local IP address-remote IP address-service. The proxy ID for both peers must match, which means that the service specified in the proxy ID for both peers must be the same, and the local IP address specified for one peer must be the same as the remote IP address specified for the other peer.

You can specify the format of Proxy IDs during IPsec Autokey configuration.

**Perfect Forward Secrecy**

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) is a method for deriving Phase 2 keys independent from and unrelated to the preceding keys. Alternatively, the Phase 1 proposal creates the key (the SKEYID\_d key) from which all Phase 2 keys are derived. The SKEYID\_d key can generate Phase 2 keys with a minimum of CPU processing. Unfortunately, if an unauthorized party gains access to the SKEYID\_d key, all your encryption keys are compromised.

PFS addresses this security risk by forcing a new Diffie-Hellman key exchange to occur for each Phase 2 tunnel. Using PFS is thus more secure, although the rekeying procedure in Phase 2 might take slightly longer with PFS enabled.

You can enable PFS during IPsec policy configuration.

**Replay Protection**

A replay attack occurs when somebody intercepts a series of packets and uses them later either to flood the system, causing a denial-of-service (DoS), or to gain entry to the trusted network. JUNOS software provides a replay protection feature, which enables devices to check every IPsec packet to see if it has been received previously. If packets arrive outside a specified sequence range, JUNOS software rejects them. Use of this feature does not require negotiation because packets are always sent with sequence numbers. You simply have the option of checking or not checking the sequence numbers.

You can enable replay protection during IPsec Autokey configuration.

**Distributed VPN in SRX-series Services Gateways**

In the SRX 3000 line and the SRX 5000 line, the IKE provides tunnel management for IPsec and authenticates end entities. The IKE performs a Diffie-Hellman key exchange to generate an IPsec tunnel between network devices. The IPsec tunnels generated by IKE are used to encrypt, decrypt, and authenticate user traffic between the network devices at the IP layer.

The VPN is created by distributing the IKE and IPsec workload among the multiple Security Processing Units (SPUs) of the platform. The IKE workload is distributed based on a key generated from the IKE packet's 4 tuples (source IP address, destination IP addresses, and UDP ports). The workload is distributed by assigning anchoring SPUs logically and mapping the logical SPUs to physical SPU based on the

composition at that given time. This distribution prevents any change in the number and composition of SPUs in the device, which may happen due to hot swap or SPC failure. The SPU in a device communicates with the Routing Engine to create a distributed VPN.

In IPsec, the workload is distributed by the same algorithm that distributes the IKE. The Phase 2 SA for a given VPN tunnel termination points pair is exclusively owned by a particular SPU, and all IPsec packets belonging to this Phase 2 SA are forwarded to the anchoring SPU of that security association for IPsec processing.

## ***Related Topics***

- Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing on page 562
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

## **Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing**

---

An IPsec VPN tunnel consists of tunnel setup and applied security. During tunnel setup, the peers establish security associations (SAs), which define the parameters for securing traffic between themselves. (For more information, see “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.) After the tunnel is established, IPsec protects the traffic sent between the two tunnel endpoints by applying the security parameters defined by the SAs during tunnel setup. Within the JUNOS implementation, IPsec is applied in tunnel mode, which supports the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) and Authentication Header (AH) protocols.

This topic covers:

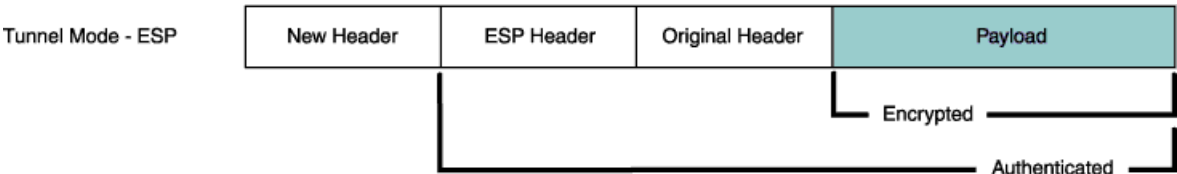
- Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode on page 562
- IKE Packet Processing on page 564
- IPsec Packet Processing on page 566
- Related Topics on page 568

## ***Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode***

IPsec operates in in one of two modes—transport or tunnel. When both ends of the tunnel are hosts, you can use either mode. When at least one of the endpoints of a tunnel is a security gateway, such as a JUNOS router or firewall, you must use tunnel mode. Juniper Networks devices always operate in tunnel mode for IPsec tunnels.

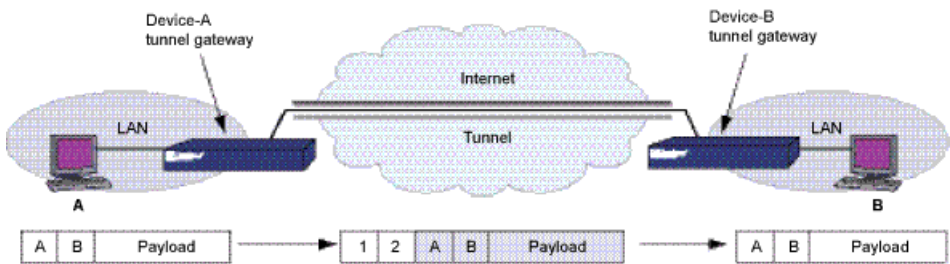
In tunnel mode, the entire original IP packet—payload and header—is encapsulated within another IP payload and a new header is appended to it, as shown in Figure 105 on page 563. The entire original packet can be encrypted, authenticated, or both. With the Authentication Header (AH) protocol, the AH and new headers are also authenticated. With the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol, the ESP header can also be authenticated.

Figure 105: Tunnel Mode



In a site-to-site VPN, the source and destination addresses used in the new header are the IP addresses of the outgoing interface. See Figure 106 on page 563.

Figure 106: Site-to-Site VPN in Tunnel Mode

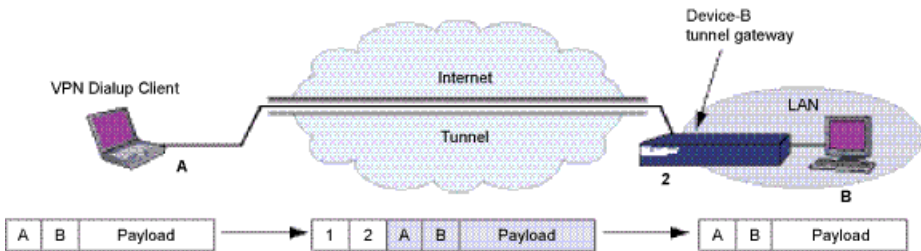


In a dial-up VPN, there is no tunnel gateway on the VPN dial-up client end of the tunnel; the tunnel extends directly to the client itself (see Figure 107 on page 563). In this case, on packets sent from the dial-up client, both the new header and the encapsulated original header have the same IP address: that of the client's computer. See Figure 107 on page 563.



**NOTE:** Some VPN clients such as the dynamic VPN client and Netscreen-Remote use a virtual inner IP address (also called a “sticky address”). Netscreen-Remote enables you to define the virtual IP address. The dynamic VPN client uses the virtual IP address assigned by the Radius server during the Xauth configuration exchange. In such cases, the virtual inner IP address is the source IP address in the original packet header of traffic originating from the client, and the IP address that the ISP dynamically assigns the dial-up client is the source IP address in the outer header.

Figure 107: Dial-up VPN in Tunnel Mode

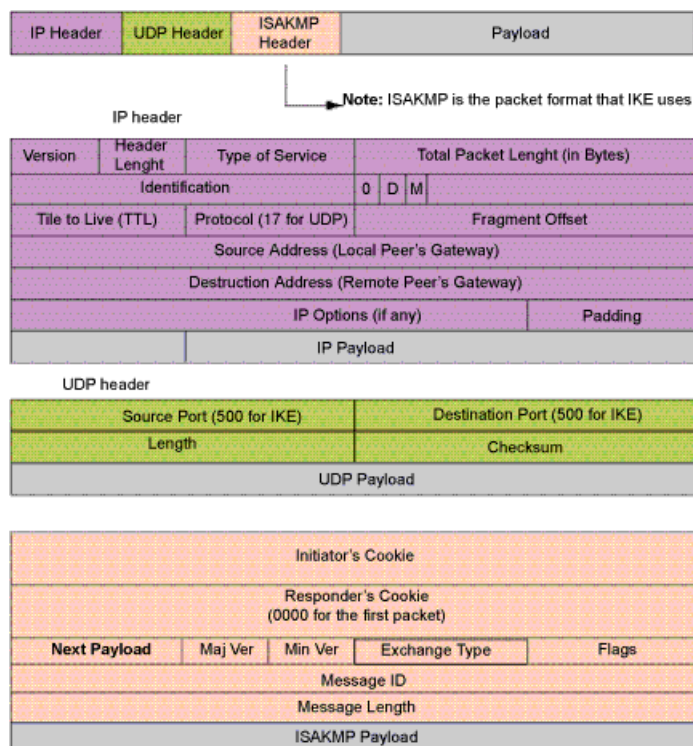


## IKE Packet Processing

When a clear-text packet arrives on a Juniper Networks device that requires tunneling, and no active Phase 2 SA exists for that tunnel, JUNOS software begins IKE negotiations and drops the packet. The source and destination addresses in the IP packet header are those of the local and remote IKE gateways, respectively. In the IP packet payload, there is a UDP segment encapsulating an ISAKMP (IKE) packet. The format for IKE packets is the same for Phase 1 and Phase 2. See Figure 108 on page 564.

Meanwhile, the source host has resent the dropped packet. Typically, by the time the second packet arrives, IKE negotiations are complete and JUNOS software protects it—and all subsequent packets in the session—with IPsec before forwarding it.

**Figure 108: IKE Packet for Phases 1 and 2**



The Next Payload field contains a number indicating one of the following payload types:

- 0002—SA Negotiation Payload contains a definition for a Phase 1 or Phase 2 SA.
- 0004—Proposal Payload can be a Phase 1 or Phase 2 proposal.
- 0008—Transform Payload gets encapsulated in a proposal payload that gets encapsulated in an SA payload.

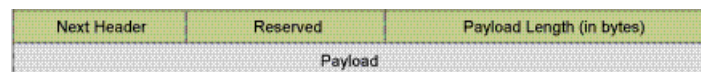
- 0010—Key Exchange (KE) Payload contains information necessary to perform a key exchange, such as a Diffie-Hellman public value.
- 0020—Identification (IDx) Payload.
  - In Phase 1, IDii indicates the initiator ID, and IDir indicates the responder ID.
  - In Phase 2, IDui indicates the user initiator, and IDur indicates the user responder.

The IDs are IKE ID types such as FQDN, U-FQDN, IP address, and ASN.1\_DN.

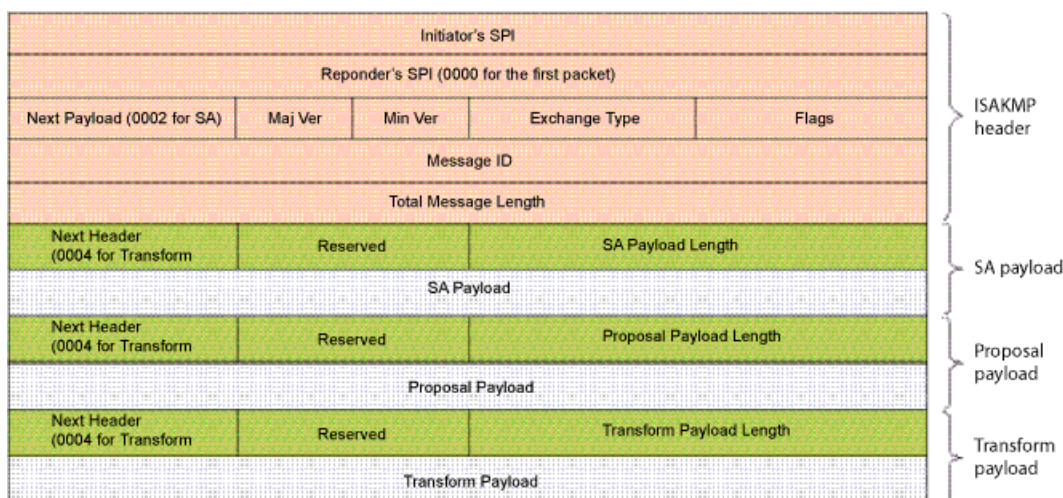
- 0040—Certificate (CERT) Payload.
- 0080—Certificate Request (CERT\_REQ) Payload.
- 0100—Hash (HASH) Payload contains the digest output of a particular hash function.
- 0200—Signature (SIG) Payload contains a digital signature.
- 0400—Nonce (Nx) Payload contains some pseudo-random information necessary for the exchange).
- 0800—Notify Payload.
- 1000—ISAKMP Delete Payload.
- 2000—Vendor ID (VID) Payload can be included anywhere in Phase 1 negotiations. JUNOS software uses it to mark support for NAT-T.

Each ISAKMP payload begins with the same generic header, as shown in Figure 109 on page 565.

**Figure 109: Generic ISAKMP Payload Header**



There can be multiple ISAKMP payloads chained together, with each subsequent payload type indicated by the value in the Next Header field. A value of **0000** indicates the last ISAKMP payload. See Figure 110 on page 566 for an example.

**Figure 110: ISAKMP Header with Generic ISAKMP Payloads**

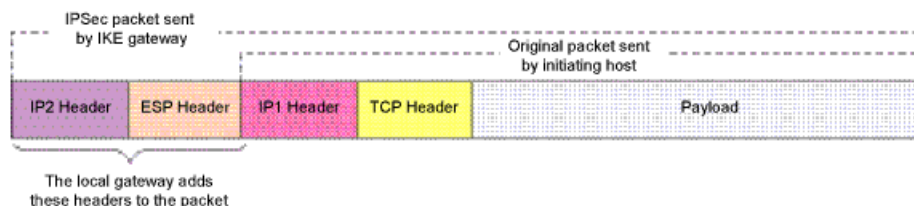
## IPsec Packet Processing

After IKE negotiations complete and the two IKE gateways have established Phase 1 and Phase 2 security associations (SAs), the device applies IPsec protection to subsequent clear-text IP packets that hosts behind one IKE gateway send to hosts behind the other gateway (assuming that policies permit the traffic). If the Phase 2 SA specifies the Encapsulating Security Protocol (ESP) in tunnel mode, the packet looks like the one shown below. The device adds two additional headers to the original packet that the initiating host sends.



**NOTE:** For information about ESP, see “Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) Protocol” on page 557. For information about tunnel mode, see “Packet Processing in Tunnel Mode” on page 562.

As shown in Figure 111 on page 566, the packet that the initiating host constructs includes the payload, the TCP header, and the inner IP header (IP1).

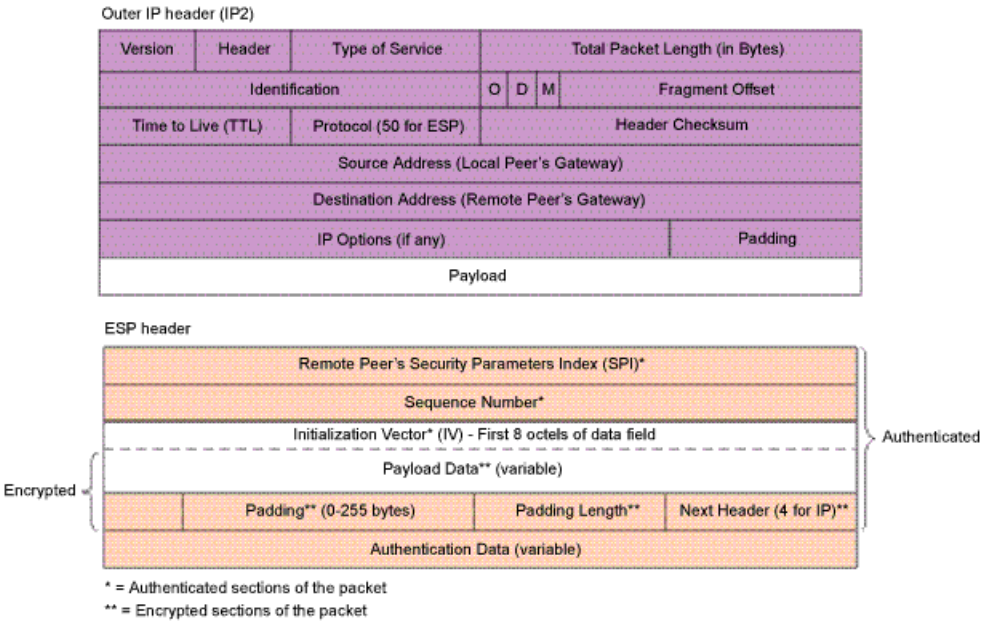
**Figure 111: IPsec Packet—ESP in Tunnel Mode**

The outer IP header (IP2), which JUNOS software adds, contains the IP address of the remote gateway as the destination IP address and the IP address of the local router as the source IP address. JUNOS software also adds an ESP header between the outer and inner IP headers. The ESP header contains information that allows the

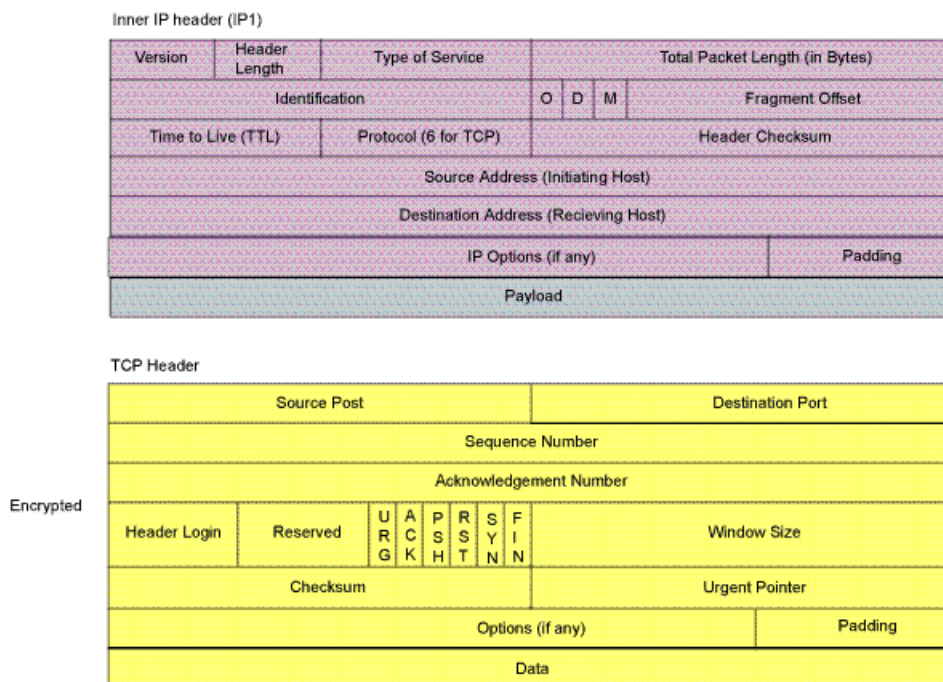


remote peer to properly process the packet when it receives it. This is illustrated in Figure 112 on page 567.

**Figure 112: Outer IP Header (IP2) and ESP Header**



The Next Header field indicates the type of data in the payload field. In tunnel mode, this value is 4, indicating IP-in-IP. See Figure 113 on page 568.

**Figure 113: Inner IP Header (IP1) and TCP Header**

## Related Topics

- Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview on page 554
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

## Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview

IKE IPsec tunnel negotiation occurs in two phases. In Phase 1, participants establish a secure channel in which to negotiate the IPsec security association (SA). In Phase 2, participants negotiate the IPsec SA for authenticating traffic that will flow through the tunnel.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.

Tunnel configuration can be confusing, and a good way to understand it is to keep in mind that just as there are two phases to tunnel negotiation, there are two phases to tunnel configuration. The following procedure lists the order in which you must configure an IPsec tunnel if you use either the J-Web or the J-Web Quick Configuration. Although you need not follow this sequence when using the CLI configuration editor,

we recommend that you do. If, for example, you go out of sequence and configure a Phase 1 policy before you have configured a proposal, you cannot easily reference the proposal in the policy because it will not appear in the interface.

#### 1. Phase 1

- a. Configure IKE Phase 1 proposals. For instructions, see:
  - Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 573
  - Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 574
- b. Configure IKE policies (and reference the proposals). For instructions, see:
  - Configuring an IKE Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 578
  - Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 579
- c. Configure IKE gateway (and reference the policy). For instructions, see:
  - Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 583
  - Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 584

#### 2. Phase 2

- a. Configure Phase 2 proposals. For instructions, see:
  - Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 589
  - Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 590
- b. Configure policies (and reference proposals). For instructions, see:
  - Configuring an IPsec Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 594
  - Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 595
- c. Configure IPsec Autokey IKE (and reference the policy and gateway). For instructions, see:
  - Configuring IPsec AutoKey (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 600
  - Configuring IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 601

In addition to configuring tunnel settings, you should also review your global VPN settings. For more information, see:

- Configuring VPN Global Settings (Standard VPNs) on page 570
- Configuring VPN Global Settings—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs) on page 571

## Configuring VPN Global Settings (Standard VPNs)

Global VPN settings help you monitor and maintain the efficient operation of your VPN. The following example-based instructions show how to configure global IPsec VPN settings.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

Peers in a Security Association (SA) can become unsynchronized when one of the peers fails, for example, and reboots, causing it to send an incorrect SPI. You enable the device to detect such an event and resynchronize the peers by configuring the bad SPI response feature, and VPN monitoring.

In this example, you configure the device to detect and respond five times to a bad IPsec SPI before deleting the SA and initiating a new one. You also configure the device to monitor the VPN by sending Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) requests to the peer every 15 seconds, and to declare the peer unreachable after 15 unsuccessful pings.

To configure VPN global settings, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. (For information about configuring global settings using J-Web Quick Configuration pages, see “Configuring VPN Global Settings—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 571.)

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 570
- CLI Configuration on page 571

### J-Web Configuration

To configure global VPN settings in J-Web:

1. In the J-Web user interface, select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > IKE**.
2. Check the **Respond Bad SPI** check box, then click **Configure**.
3. Enter a value in the **Max responses** field.
4. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.

- To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.
- 5. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration > Security > IPsec**.
- 6. Check the **VPN monitor options** check box, and then click **Configure**.
- 7. Enter a value in the **Interval** field.
- 8. Enter a value in the **Threshold** field.
- 9. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To apply the configuration, click **Commit**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure global VPN settings in the CLI editor:

```
user@host# set security ike respond-bad-spi 5
user@host# set security ipsec vpn-monitor-options interval 15 threshold 15
```

## Configuring VPN Global Settings—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)

---

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure VPN global settings. (For information about configuring global settings using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring VPN Global Settings (Standard VPNs)” on page 570.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
  - “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.
  - Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568
- 

Figure 114 on page 572 shows the VPN quick configuration page.

**Figure 114: VPN Global Settings**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [Global Settings](#)

## Quick Configuration

### VPN

#### IKE Global Settings

**Response Bad SPI** ☐ ?

**Maximum Responses**  ? (default: 5)

#### IPSec Global Settings

**VPN Monitor Options** ☐ ?

**Interval**  ? (default: 10 seconds)

**Threshold**  ? (default: 10)

[Configure IKE](#)

[Configure IPSec AutoKey](#)

[Configure IPSec Manual Key](#)

To configure VPN global settings with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration** > **Quick Configuration** > **VPN** > **Global Settings**.
2. Fill in the options as shown in Table 105 on page 572, then click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 105: VPN Global Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IKE Global Settings</b>		
Response Bad SPI	Enable response to invalid IPsec Security Parameter Index (SPI) values. If the SAs between two peers of an IPsec VPN become unsynchronized, the device resets the state of a peer so that the two peers are synchronized.	Click the check box if you want the device to respond to IPsec packets with bad SPI values.
Maximum Responses	Number of times to respond to invalid SPI values per gateway	Enter a value between 1 and 30. The default is 5. Disabled by default.

**Table 105: VPN Global Configuration Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
<b>IPsec Global Settings</b>		
VPN Monitor Options	Configure VPN monitoring options.	Click the check box if you want the device to monitor VPN liveliness.
Interval	Interval at which to send ICMP requests to the peer.	Enter a value from 1 through 36,000 seconds.
Threshold	The number of consecutive unsuccessful pings before the peer is declared unreachable.	Enter a value from 1 through 65,536.

## Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)

When configuring Phase 1 of an IPsec tunnel using IKE, you first configure proposals, then policies, and finally you configure the gateway. The following example-based instructions show how to create the proposal portion of the IKE gateway.

### Before You Begin

For background information about standard IPsec VPNs, read:

- Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview on page 554
- Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing on page 562
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

For background information about dynamic IPsec VPNs, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

In Phase 1 proposal configuration, you must set the authentication method and authentication and encryption algorithms that will be used to open a secure channel between participants. In this example, you create an IKE proposal called `ike_prop_1` and specify that peers use preshared keys for encryption and decryption, and that they use Diffie-Helman group 2 to produce the shared secret for the keys. You specify `md5` as the authentication algorithm and 3DES cypher block chaining (CBC) for encryption. And you specify that after 300 seconds the participants renegotiate a new security association (SA).



**NOTE:** When configuring a Phase 1 proposal for the dynamic VPN feature, note that you must set the authentication method to preshared keys.

To configure Phase 1 proposals, use the J-Web or CLI configuration editor. (For information about configuring Phase 1 proposals using the J-Web Quick Configuration pages, see “Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard

VPNs)” on page 574 or “Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 657.)

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 574
- CLI Configuration on page 574

## **J-Web Configuration**

To configure a Phase 1 proposal in J-Web:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Ike, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Proposal, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ike\_prop\_1**.
6. From the Authentication algorithm list, select **md5**.
7. From the Authentication method list, select **pre-shared-keys**.
8. In the Description box, type **new Ike proposal**.
9. From the Dh-group list, select **group2**.
10. From the Encryption algorithm list, select **3des-cbc**.
11. In the Lifetime seconds box, type **300** and click **OK**.
12. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## **CLI Configuration**

To configure a Phase 1 proposal using the CLI editor:

```
user@host# set security ike proposal ike_prop_1 description "new ike proposal"
user@host# set security ike proposal ike_prop_1 authentication-method
pre-shared-keys
user@host# set security ike proposal ike_prop_1 dh-group group2
user@host# set security ike proposal ike_prop_1 authentication-algorithm md5
user@host# set security ike proposal ike_prop_1 encryption-algorithm 3des-cbc
user@host# set security ike proposal ike_prop_1 lifetime-seconds 300
```

Use the following command to display information about IKE proposals:

```
user@host# show security ike
```

## **Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)**

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure an IKE Phase 1 proposal. (For information about configuring Phase 1 proposals using the CLI editor or the



standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 573.)

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

Figure 1 15 on page 575 shows the quick configuration page where can you select an existing Phase 1 proposal, or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Figure 115: IKE Phase 1 Proposal Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [IKE](#)

Quick Configuration

VPN

IKE GatewayIKE Policy**Phase 1 Proposal**

Phase 1 Proposal

List 5 per pagePage: 1Showing 1 to 5 of 256 total. (Page 1 of 52)

	Name	Authentication Method	Dh Group	Encryption/Authentication algorithm	Lifetime
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_prop_0</a>	pre-shared-keys	group2	3des-cbc/sha1	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_prop_1</a>	pre-shared-keys	group2	3des-cbc/sha1	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_prop_2</a>	pre-shared-keys	group2	3des-cbc/sha1	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_prop_3</a>	pre-shared-keys	group2	3des-cbc/sha1	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_prop_4</a>	pre-shared-keys	group2	3des-cbc/sha1	-

AddDelete

OKCancelApply

Figure 1 16 on page 576 shows the IKE Phase 1 Proposal Configuration Options page.

Figure 116: IKE Phase 1 Proposal Configuration Options

Configuration > Quick Configuration > VPN > IKE

Quick Configuration

VPN Add an IKE proposal (P1)

IKE Proposal (Phase 1)

\* Name

?

\* Authentication algorithm

md5

?

\* Authentication method

pre-shared-keys

?

Description

?

Dh group

?

\* Encryption algorithm

3des-cbc

?

Lifetime seconds

?

OK

Cancel

To configure an IKE proposal with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > VPN > IKE**.
  2. Select the **Phase 1 Proposal** tab if it is not selected.
  3. To use an existing proposal, select it from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
    - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
    - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
    - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.
  4. To configure a new IKE policy, click **Add**.
- Figure 116 on page 576 shows the quick configuration page where you create a new IKE proposal.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 106 on page 576.
  6. Click one of the following buttons:
    - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
    - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

Table 106: Phase 1 Proposal Configuration Options

Field	Function	Action
IKE Proposal (Phase 1)		
Name	The name of the proposal.	Enter a name.

**Table 106: Phase 1 Proposal Configuration Options** (continued)

Field	Function	Action
Authentication algorithm	<p>The Authentication Header (AH) algorithm the device uses to verify the authenticity and integrity of a packet. Supported algorithms include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>md5</b>—Produces a 128-bit digest.</li> <li>■ <b>sha1</b>—Produces a 160-bit digest.</li> <li>■ <b>sha-256</b>—Produces a 256-bit digest.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The sha-256 authentication algorithm is not supported with the dynamic VPN feature.</p>	Select an algorithm.
Authentication method	<p>The method the device uses to authenticate the source of Internet Key Exchange (IKE) messages. Options include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>pre-shared-keys</b>—Key for encryption and decryption that both participants must have before beginning tunnel negotiations.</li> <li>■ <b>rsa-key</b>—Kinds of digital signatures, which are certificates that confirm the identity of the certificate holder.</li> </ul>	Select an authentication method.
Description	Easy identification of the proposal.	Enter brief description of the IKE proposal.
Dh group	The Diffie-Hellman exchange allows participants to produce a shared secret value over an unsecured medium without actually transmitting the value across the connection.	Select a group. If you configure multiple (up to four) proposals for Phase 1 negotiations, use the same Diffie-Hellman group in all proposals.
Encryption algorithm	<p>Supported Internet Key Exchange (IKE) proposals include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>3des-cbc</b>—3DES-CBC encryption algorithm.</li> <li>■ <b>aes-128-cbc</b>—AES-CBC 128-bit encryption algorithm.</li> <li>■ <b>aes-192-cbc</b>—AES-CBC 192-bit encryption algorithm.</li> <li>■ <b>aes-256-cbc</b>—AES-CBC 256-bit encryption algorithm.</li> <li>■ <b>des-cbc</b>—DES-CBC encryption algorithm.</li> </ul>	Select an encryption algorithm.
Lifetime seconds	The lifetime (in seconds) of an IKE security association (SA). When the SA expires, it is replaced by a new SA and security parameter index (SPI) or terminated.	<p>Select a lifetime for the IKE SA.</p> <p>Default: 3,600 seconds.</p> <p>Range: 180 through 86,400 seconds.</p>

## Configuring an IKE Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)

When configuring Phase 1 of an IPsec tunnel using IKE, you first configure proposals, then policies, and finally you configure the gateway. The following example-based instructions show how to create the policy portion of the IKE gateway.

### Before You Begin

For background information about standard IPsec VPNs, read:

- Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview on page 554
- Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing on page 562
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

For background information about dynamic IPsec VPNs, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

During policy configuration, you must set the mode in which the Phase 1 channel will be negotiated, specify the type of key exchange to be used, and reference the Phase 1 proposal. In this example, you create a policy called `ike_pol_1`, specify that participants exchange proposals in aggressive mode, and reference the proposal called `ike_prop_1`. You specify that the preshared key be of type ASCII, and enter the key.



**NOTE:** When configuring an IKE policy for the dynamic VPN feature, note that you must set the mode to aggressive. Also note that you must use preshared keys rather than manual keys or certificates.

To configure IKE policies, use the J-Web or CLI configuration editor. (For information about configuring IKE policies using J-Web Quick Configuration pages, see “Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 579 or “Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 660.)

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 578
- CLI Configuration on page 579

### J-Web Configuration

To configure an IKE policy in J-Web:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.

3. Next to Ike, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **Ike\_pol\_1**.
6. In the Description box, type **new Ike policy**.
7. From the Mode box, select **aggressive**.
8. Next to Pre shared key, click **Configure**.
9. From the key choice list, select **Ascii text**.
10. In the Ascii textbox, type **\$9\$UQiqf36A1RSTzRSreXxDik.Tzn/CuBI** and click **OK**.
11. Next to Proposals, click **Add new entry**.
12. In the Value keyword box, type **Ike\_prop\_1** and click **OK**.
13. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure and IKE policy using the CLI Editor:

```
user@host# set security ike policy ike_pol_1 mode aggressive
user@host# set security ike policy ike_pol_1 description "new ike policy"
user@host# set security ike policy ike_pol_1 proposals ike_prop_1
user@host# set security ike policy ike_pol_1 pre-shared-key ascii-text
"$9$UQiqf36A1RSTzRSreXxDik.Tzn/CuBI"
```

Use the following command to display information about this IKE policy:

```
user@host# show security ike policy ike_pol_1
```

## Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure an IKE policy, authentication, and to reference a proposal. (For information about configuring IKE policies using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IKE Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 578.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

Figure 117 on page 580 shows the quick configuration page where you can select an existing policy, or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Figure 117: IKE Policy Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [IKE](#)

---

Quick Configuration

**VPN**

---

IKE Gateway    **IKE Policy**    Phase 1 Proposal

**IKE Policy**

List 5 per page      Page: 1      Showing 1 to 5 of 256 total. (Page 1 of 52)

	Name	Mode	Proposals
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_policy_0</a>	aggressive	ike_prop_0
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_policy_1</a>	aggressive	ike_prop_1
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_policy_2</a>	aggressive	ike_prop_2
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_policy_3</a>	aggressive	ike_prop_3
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ike_policy_4</a>	aggressive	ike_prop_4

Figure 118 on page 581 shows the IKE Policy, Authentication, and Proposal Configuration page.

**Figure 118: IKE Policy, Authentication, and Proposal Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [IKE](#)

---

Quick Configuration

---

**VPN** [Add an IKE policy](#)

---

**IKE Policy**

\* **Name**  ?

**Description**  ?

**Mode** main ▼ ?

---

☒ **Pre shared key**

☐ **Ascii text**  ?

☐ **Hexadecimal**  ?

☐ **Certificate**

**Local Certificate**  ?

**Peer Certificate Type** x509-signature ▼ ?

**Trusted CA**

☒ **None**

☐ **Use all** ?

☐ **Ca index**  ?

---

**Proposal**

☒ **None**

☐ **Predefined** basic ▼ ?

☐ **User Defined**

Phase 1 Proposal ?

↑  
↓  
✕

▼ Add

---

OK Cancel

To configure an IKE policy with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration** > **Quick Configuration** > **VPN** > **IKE**.
2. Select **IKE Policy** tab if it is not selected.

3. To use an existing policy, select it from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
    - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
    - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
    - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.
  4. To configure a new IKE policy, authentication, and to reference a proposal, click **Add**.
- Figure 118 on page 581 shows the quick configuration page where you create a new IKE policy.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 107 on page 582.
  6. Click one of the following buttons:
    - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
    - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 107: IKE Policy, Authentication, and Proposal Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IKE Policy</b>		
Name	Name of the policy.	Enter a name.
Description	Description of the policy.	Enter a description.
Mode	Use Main or Aggressive mode.	Select a mode.
Pre shared key	Use one of the following preshared key types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ASCII text</li> <li>■ Hexadecimal</li> </ul>	Click <b>Pre shared key</b> , click the type of key, and enter the key in the appropriate format.
Certificate	Use certificates	Click <b>Certificate</b> .
Local Certificate	Use a particular certificate when the local device has multiple loaded certificates.	Enter a local certificate identifier.
Peer Certificate Type	Use a preferred type of certificate (PKCS7 or X509).	Select a certificate type.
Trusted CA	Use a trusted certificate authority.	Click <b>None</b> or <b>Use all</b> , or click <b>Ca index</b> and select from the list.
<b>Proposal</b>		
None	Do not use proposals	Click <b>None</b> .



**Table 107: IKE Policy, Authentication, and Proposal Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
Predefined	Use one of the following types of predefined Phase 1 proposals: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Basic</li> <li>■ Compatible</li> <li>■ Standard</li> </ul>	Click <b>Predefined</b> and select a proposal type.
User Defined	Use a user-defined Phase 1 Proposal.	Click <b>User Defined</b> , select a proposal from the pop-up menu, and click <b>Add</b> .

## Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)

When configuring Phase 1 of an IPsec tunnel using IKE, you first configure proposals, then policies, and finally you configure the gateway. The following example-based instructions show how to create the IKE gateway.

### Before You Begin

For background information about standard IPsec VPNs, read:

- Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview on page 554
- Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing on page 562
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

For background information about dynamic IPsec VPNs, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

When creating the gateway, you must reference the Phase 1 policy. In this example, you create an IKE gateway called `ike_gateway_1`, reference the policy `ike_pol_1`, and configure an IP address for the gateway. You configure dead peer detection (DPD) to send a DPD request packet when the device has not received traffic from a peer for 10 seconds, and to consider the peer unavailable after five sequences of waiting 10 seconds and sending a DPD request packet. You also specify `ge-0/0/0` as the outgoing interface.

To configure a gateway for an IKE tunnel, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. (For information about configuring IKE gateways using J-Web Quick Configuration pages, see “Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 584 or “Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 662)

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 584
- CLI Configuration on page 584

## J-Web Configuration

To configure an IKE gateway in J-Web:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Ike, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Gateway, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Gateway name box, type **Ike\_gateway\_1**.
6. Next to Dead peer detection, select the check box and click **Configure**.
7. In the Interval box, type **10**.
8. In the Threshold box, type **5** and click **OK**.
9. In the External interface box, type **ge-0/0/0**.
10. In the Ike policy box, type **ike\_pol\_1**.
11. From the Remote identifier list, select **Address**.
12. Next to Address, click **Add new entry**.
13. In the Value box, type **1.1.1.2**.
14. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure an IKE gateway using the CLI editor:

```
user@host# set security ike gateway ike_gateway_1 ike-policy ike_pol_1
user@host# set security ike gateway ike_gateway_1 address 1.1.1.2
user@host# set security ike gateway ike_gateway_1 dead-peer-detection interval
10
user@host# set security ike gateway ike_gateway_1 dead-peer-detection threshold
5
user@host# set security ike gateway ike_gateway_1 external-interface ge-0/0/0
```

Use the following command to display information about this IKE gateway:

```
user@host# show security ike gateway ike_gateway_1
```

## Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure an IKE gateway. (For information about configuring IKE gateways using the CLI editor or the standard

J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 583.)

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

Figure 119 on page 585 shows the quick configuration page where you can select an existing gateway, or click Add to create a new one.

**Figure 119: IKE Gateway Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [IKE](#)

Quick Configuration

VPN

IKE Gateway | IKE Policy | Phase 1 Proposal

IKE Gateway

List 5 per page      Page: 1      Showing 1 to 5 of 256 total. (Page 1 of 52)

	Name	IKE Policy	External Interface	Local Identity	Remote Identity
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">jsr_gateway_0</a>	ike_policy_0	fe-3/0/1.0	-	1.1.1.2
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">jsr_gateway_1</a>	ike_policy_1	fe-3/0/1.1	-	1.1.2.3
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">jsr_gateway_2</a>	ike_policy_2	fe-3/0/1.2	-	1.1.3.4
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">jsr_gateway_3</a>	ike_policy_3	fe-3/0/1.3	-	1.1.4.5
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">jsr_gateway_4</a>	ike_policy_4	fe-3/0/1.4	-	1.1.5.6

Add

Delete

OK

Cancel

Apply

Figure 120 on page 586 shows the quick configuration page where you create a new IKE gateway.

**Figure 120: IKE Gateway and Peer Authentication Options**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [IKE](#)

---

**Quick Configuration**

---

**VPN** **Add an IKE gateway**

---

**IKE Gateway**

\* **Name**  ?

\* **IKE Policy**  ?

\* **External Interface**  ?

**NAT Keepalive Interval**  ? (default: 5 seconds)

**Disable NAT-Traversal** ☐ ?

---

**Local Identity**  ?

---

☐ \* **Remote Identifier**

---

**Dead Peer Detection**

**Enable DPD** ☐ ?

**Always send** ☐ ?

**Interval**  ? (default: 10 seconds)

**Threshold**  ? (default: 5)

---

**XAuth**

**Access Profile**  ?

---

To configure an IKE gateway with Quick Configuration:

1. In the J-Web user interface, select **Configuration** > **Quick Configuration** > **VPN** > **IKE**.
2. Select the IKE Gateway tab if it is not selected.
3. To use an existing gateway, select one from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.
4. To configure a new IKE gateway, click **Add**.

5. Fill in the options as described in Table 108 on page 587.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
  - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 108: IKE Gateway and Peer Authentication Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IKE Gateway</b>		
Name	Name of the destination peer gateway, specified as an alphanumeric string	Enter a name.
IKE Policy	The IKE policy to be used for communication with the destination peer gateway.	Select the IKE policy to use for the peer gateway
External Interface	Name of the interface to be used to send traffic to the IPsec VPN.	Specify the outgoing interface for IKE SAs. This interface is associated with a zone that acts as its carrier, providing firewall security for it.
NAT Keepalive Interval	The interval at which NAT keepalive packets can be sent so that NAT translation continues.	Specify a maximum interval in seconds at which NAT keepalive packets can be sent. Range: 1 through 300 seconds. Default: 5 seconds.
Disable NAT Traversal	Disables UDP encapsulation of IPsec Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) packets, otherwise known as Network Address Translation Traversal (NAT-T). NAT-T is enabled by default.	Click the check box to disable or enable.
Local Identity	<p>The local IKE identity to send in the exchange with the destination peer so that the destination peer can communicate with the local peer. If you do not configure a local-identity, the device uses the IP address corresponding to the local endpoint. You can identify the local identity in either of the following ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>IP Address</b>—IPv4 IP address to identify the dynamic peer.</li> <li>■ <b>Hostname</b>—Fully qualified domain name (FQDN) to identify the dynamic peer.</li> <li>■ <b>User at Hostname</b>—E-mail address to identify the dynamic peer.</li> <li>■ <b>Distinguished Name</b>—Name to identify the dynamic peer. The distinguished name appears in the subject line of the Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) certificate. For example: Organization: juniper, Organizational unit: slt, Common name: common.</li> </ul>	Specify an IP address, hostname, user-at-hostname, or distinguished name.
Remote Identifier	Provides information about remote peer.	Click the check box to expand the field.
Address	Static address or hostname of remote peer.	Specify one primary and up to four backups.

**Table 108: IKE Gateway and Peer Authentication Options** (*continued*)

Field	Function	Action
Dynamic	Dynamic address of remote peer.	Select.
Connections limit	Maximum number of concurrent connections allowed.	Specify the maximum number of concurrent users that can be connected to the gateway. When the maximum number of connections is reached, no more dynamic VPN endpoint dial-up users attempting to access an IPsec VPN are allowed to begin Internet Key Exchange (IKE) negotiations.
IKE user type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>group-ike-id</b>— E-mail address or fully qualified domain name (FQDN) shared for a group of remote access users so that each one does not need a separate IKE profile configured.</li> <li>■ <b>shared-ike-id</b>—E-mail address shared for a large number of remote access users so that each one does not need a separate IKE profile configured.</li> </ul>	Select the type of IKE user for a remote access connection.
Remote id type	Type of identifier for remote peer.	Select IP Address, Hostname, User at hostname, or Distinguished name.
IP Address	Use an IPv4 IP address to identify the dynamic peer.	Enter an IP address.
Hostname	Use a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) to identify the dynamic peer.	Select and enter the FQDN.
User at hostname	Use an e-mail address to to identify the dynamic peer.	Select and enter the remote identity as an e-mail address.
Distinguished name	Use a distinguished name to identify the dynamic peer. The distinguished name appears in the subject line of the Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) certificate. For example: Organization: juniper, Organizational unit: slt, Common name: common.	Select and specify a container or a wildcard.
container	The distinguished name of the remote peer.	Enter the distinguished name string exactly as it appears in the certificate.
wildcard	All or part of the distinguished name of the remote peer.	Enter all or parts of a distinguished name, in any order.
<b>Dead Peer Detection</b>		
Enabled DPD	<i>RFC 3706</i> Dead Peer Detection.	Click the check box.
Always Send	Instructs the device to send dead peer detection (DPD) requests regardless of whether there is outgoing IPsec traffic to the peer.	Click the check box.

**Table 108: IKE Gateway and Peer Authentication Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
Interval	The amount of time that the peer waits for traffic from its destination peer before sending a dead peer detection (DPD) request packet.	Enter the interval at which to send DPD messages. Range: 1 through 60 seconds.
Threshold	The maximum number of unsuccessful dead peer detection (DPD) requests that can be sent before the peer is considered unavailable.	Enter the maximum number of unsuccessful DPD requests to be sent. Range: 1 through 5. Default: 5.
<b>XAuth</b>		
Access Profile	Provides extended authentication (XAuth), in addition to IKE authentication for remote users trying to access a VPN tunnel.	Select a previously created access profile to reference for authentication information.

## Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)

When configuring Phase 2 of an IPsec tunnel, you first configure proposals, then policies, and finally you configure IPsec AutoKey (IKE). The following example-based instructions show how to create the initial proposal.

### Before You Begin

For background information about standard IPsec VPNs, read:

- Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview on page 554
- Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing on page 562
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

For background information about dynamic IPsec VPNs, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

In Phase 2 proposal configuration, you must create a proposal, specify a security protocol, and select authentication and encryption algorithms for the traffic that will flow through the tunnel. In this example, you create a proposal called `ipsec_prop_1`, specify ESP as the security protocol, and set `hmac-md5-96` as the authentication algorithm and `3des-cbc` as the encryption algorithm. You also specify that the security association (SA) terminate after 1,800 KB of data pass through it.

To configure Phase 2 proposals, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. (For information about configuring Phase 2 proposals using J-Web Quick Configuration pages, see “Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 590 or “Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 666.)

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 590
- CLI Configuration on page 590

## J-Web Configuration

To configure an IPsec Phase 2 proposal in J-Web:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Ipsec, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Proposal, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **ipsec\_prop\_1**.
6. From the Authentication algorithm, select **hmac-md5-96**.
7. In the Description box, type **new ipsec proposal**.
8. From the Encryption algorithm, select **3des-cbc**.
9. In the Lifetime seconds box, type **1800** and click **OK**.
10. From the Protocol list, select **esp**.
11. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure an IPsec Phase 2 proposal using the CLI editor:

```
user@host# set security ipsec proposal ipsec_prop_1 description "new ipsec
proposal"
user@host# set security ipsec proposal ipsec_prop_1 protocol esp
user@host# set security ipsec proposal ipsec_prop_1 authentication-algorithm
hmac-md5-96
user@host# set security ipsec proposal ipsec_prop_1 encryption-algorithm 3des-cbc
user@host# set security ipsec proposal ipsec_prop_1 lifetime-seconds 1800
```

Use the following command to display information about this IKE proposal:

```
user@host# show security ipsec proposal ipsec_prop_1
```

## Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure IPsec phase 2 proposals. (For information about configuring Phase 2 proposals using the CLI editor or the



standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 589.)

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

Figure 121 on page 591 shows the quick configuration page where you can select an existing proposal, or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Figure 121: IPsec Phase 2 Proposal Configuration**

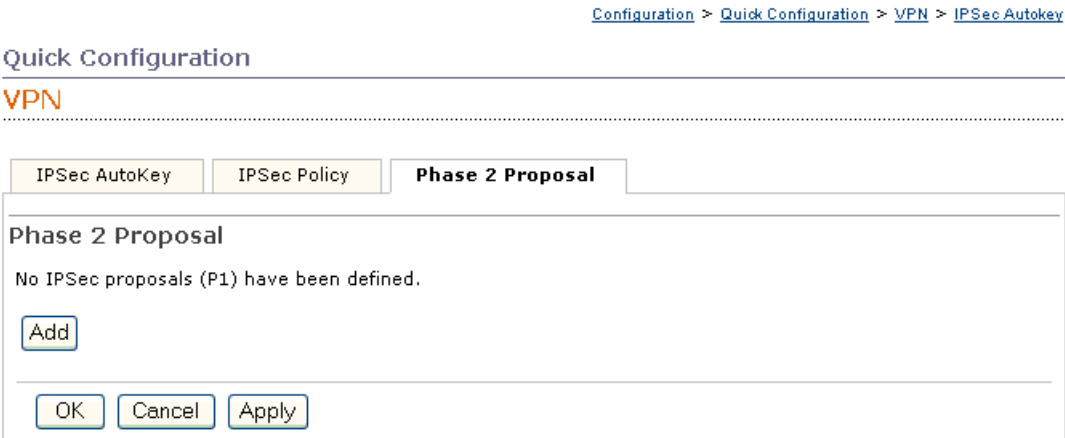


Figure 122 on page 592 shows the quick configuration page where you create a new proposal.

**Figure 122: IPsec Phase 2 Proposal Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [IPSec Autokey](#)

---

**Quick Configuration**

---

**VPN** **Add an IPsec proposal (P2)**

---

**IPsec Proposal (Phase 2)**

**\* Name**  ?

**Description**  ?

**Authentication algorithm**  ?

**Encryption algorithm**  ?

**Lifetime kilobytes**  ?

**Lifetime seconds**  ?

**Protocol**  ?

---

To configure an IPsec Phase 2 proposal with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration** > **Quick Configuration** > **VPN** > **IPSec AutoKey**.
2. Select the IPsec **Phase 2 Proposal** tab if it is not selected
3. To use an existing proposal, select one from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.
4. To configure a new IPsec phase 2 proposal, click **Add**.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 109 on page 593.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
  - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 109: IPsec Phase 2 Proposal Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IPsec Proposal (Phase 2)</b>		
Name	Description of the Phase 2 proposal.	Enter a name.
Description	Identify the proposal	Enter a text description.
Authentication algorithm	<p>Hash algorithm that authenticates packet data. It can be one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>hmac-md5-96</b>—Produces a 128-bit digest.</li> <li>■ <b>hmac-sha1-96</b>—Produces a 160-bit digest.</li> </ul>	Select a hash algorithm.
Encryption algorithm	<p>Configures an IKE encryption algorithm.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>3des-cbc</b>—Has a block size of 24 bytes; the key size is 192 bits long.</li> <li>■ <b>des-cbc</b>—Has a block size of 8 bytes; the key size is 48 bits long.</li> <li>■ <b>aes-128-cbc</b>—AES 128-bit encryption algorithm.</li> <li>■ <b>aes-192-cbc</b>—AES 192-bit encryption algorithm.</li> <li>■ <b>aes-256-cbc</b>—AES 256-bit encryption algorithm.</li> </ul>	Select an encryption algorithm.
Lifetime kilobytes	The lifetime (in kilobytes) of an IPsec security association (SA). The SA is terminated when the specified number of kilobytes of traffic have passed.	Enter a value from 64 through 1,048,576 bytes.
Lifetime seconds	The lifetime (in seconds) of an IKE security association (SA). When the SA expires, it is replaced by a new SA and security parameter index (SPI) or terminated.	Enter a value from 180 through 86,400 seconds.
Protocol	The type of security protocol.	Select a protocol for the proposal.

## Configuring an IPsec Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)

---

When configuring Phase 2 of an IPsec tunnel, you first configure proposals, then policies, and finally you configure IPsec AutoKey (IKE). The following example-based instructions show how to create the policy.

### Before You Begin

For background information about standard IPsec VPNs, read:

- Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview on page 554
- Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing on page 562
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

For background information about dynamic IPsec VPNs, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

In Phase 2 IPsec policy configuration, you must create a policy and reference a Phase 2 proposal. In this example, you create a policy called `ipsec_pol_1` and reference the proposal `ipsec_prop_1`. You also configure Perfect Forward Secrecy to use Diffie-Hellman Group 2 as the method the device uses to generate the encryption key.

To configure IPsec policies, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. (For information about configuring IPsec policies using J-Web Quick Configuration pages, see “Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 595 or “Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 669.)

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 594
- CLI Configuration on page 595

### J-Web Configuration

To configure an IPsec policy in J-Web:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Ipsec, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **Ipsec\_pol\_1**.
6. In the Description box, type **new Ipsec policy**.

7. Next to Perfect forward secrecy, click **Configure**.
8. From the Keys list, select **group2** and click **OK**.
9. Next to Proposals, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Value keyword box, type **Ipsec\_prop\_1** and click **OK**.
11. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure an IPsec policy using the CLI editor:

```
user@host# set security ipsec policy ipsec_pol_1 description "new ipsec policy"
user@host# set security ipsec policy ipsec_pol_1 perfect-forward-secrecy keys
group2
user@host# set security ipsec policy ipsec_pol_1 proposals ipsec_prop_1
```

Use the following command to display information about this IKE proposal:

```
user@host# show security ipsec policy ipsec_pol_1
```

## Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure an IPsec policy. (For information about configuring IPsec policies using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IPsec Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 594.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

Figure 123 on page 596 shows the quick configuration page where you can select an existing policy, or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Figure 123: IPsec Policy Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [IPSec Autokey](#)

---

Quick Configuration

---

VPN

---

IPSec AutoKey    **IPSec Policy**    Phase 2 Proposal

---

IPSec Policy

List 15 per page

	Name	Proposals	Perfect Forward Secrecy
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ipsec_policy_0</a>	ipsec_prop_0	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ipsec_policy_1</a>	ipsec_prop_1	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ipsec_policy_2</a>	ipsec_prop_2	-
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">ipsec_policy_3</a>	ipsec_prop_3	-

---

Figure 124 on page 597 shows the quick configuration page where you create a new IPsec policy.

**Figure 124: IPsec Policy Configuration**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [IPSec Autokey](#)

---

**Quick Configuration**

---

**VPN** [Add an IPsec policy](#)

---

**IPSec Policy**

\* **Name**  ?

**Description**  ?

**Perfect Forward Secrecy**  ?

---

**Proposal**

☒ **None**

☐ **Predefined**  ?

☐ **User Defined**

Phase 2 Proposal  ?

To configure an IPsec policy with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration** > **Quick Configuration** > **VPN** > **IPsec Policy**.
2. Select the **IPsec Policy** tab if it is not selected.
3. To use an existing policy, select one from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.
4. To configure a new IPsec policy, click **Add**.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 110 on page 598.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.

- To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 110: IPsec Policy Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IPsec Policy</b>		
Name	Name of the IPsec policy.	Enter a name.
Description	Description of the policy.	Enter a text description.
Perfect Forward Secrecy	<p>The method the device uses to generate the encryption key. PFS generates each new encryption key independently from the previous key.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>group1</b>—Diffie-Hellman Group 1.</li> <li>■ <b>group2</b>—Diffie-Hellman Group 2.</li> <li>■ <b>group5</b>—Diffie-Hellman Group 5.</li> </ul>	Select a method.
<b>Proposal</b>		
None	Do not use a proposal.	Click <b>None</b> .



**Table 110: IPsec Policy Configuration Options** (continued)

Field	Function	Action
Predefined	<p>A set of default Internet Key Exchange (IKE) proposals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>basic</b>—Basic set of two IKE proposals: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Proposal 1—Preshared key, Data Encryption Standard (DES) encryption, and Diffie-Hellman Group 1 and Secure Hash Algorithm 1 (SHA-1) authentication</li> <li>■ Proposal 2—Preshared key, DES encryption, and Diffie-Hellman Group 1 and MD5 authentication</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ <b>compatible</b>—Set of four commonly used IKE proposals: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Proposal 1—Preshared key, triple DES (3DES) encryption, and G2 and SHA-1 authentication</li> <li>■ Proposal 2—Preshared key, 3DES, and Diffie-Hellman Group 2 and MD5 authentication</li> <li>■ Proposal 3—Preshared key, DES encryption, and Diffie-Hellman Group 2 and SHA-1 authentication</li> <li>■ Proposal 4—Preshared key, DES encryption, and Diffie-Hellman Group 2 and MD5 authentication</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ <b>standard</b>—Standard set of two IKE proposals: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Proposal 1—Preshared key, 3DES encryption, and Diffie-Hellman Group 2 and SHA-1 authentication</li> <li>■ Proposal 2—Preshared key, Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) 128-bit encryption, and Diffie-Hellman Group 2 and SHA-1 authentication</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Click <b>Predefined</b>, and select one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ basic</li> <li>■ predefined</li> <li>■ standard</li> </ul>
User Defined	A list of proposals you previously defined.	Click <b>User Defined</b> and select proposals from the pop-up menu, then click <b>Add</b> .

## Configuring IPsec AutoKey (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)

---

When configuring Phase 2 of an IPsec tunnel, you first configure proposals, then policies, and finally you configure IPsec AutoKey (IKE). The following example-based instructions show how to configure the IPsec AutoKey.

### Before You Begin

For background information about standard IPsec VPNs, read:

- Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview on page 554
- Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing on page 562
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

For background information about dynamic IPsec VPNs, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

In Phase 2 IPsec AutoKey configuration, you must create a VPN tunnel name, specify a gateway, and reference a Phase 2 policy. If you are using Route mode, you must bind the tunnel to an interface. In this example, you create a VPN tunnel named `vpn_1` and bind it to interface `st0.0`, and you specify `ike_gateway_1` as the gateway for the VPN tunnel and reference the IPsec policy `ipsec_pol_1`.

To configure AutoKey IKE, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. (For information about configuring IPsec AutoKey using J-Web Quick Configuration pages, see “Configuring IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 601 or “Configuring an IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 671.)

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 600
- CLI Configuration on page 601

### J-Web Configuration

To configure an IPsec Autokey in J-Web:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Ipsec, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Vpn, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, type **vpn\_1**.
6. In the Bind interface box, type **st0.0**.

7. From the Negotiation list, select **Ike**.
8. Next to Ike, click **Configure**.
9. In the Gateway box, type **Ike\_gateway\_1**.
10. In the Ipsec policy box, type **Ipsec\_pol\_1** and click **OK**.
11. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure an IPsec Autokey using the CLI editor:

```
user@host# set security ipsec vpn vpn_1 bind-interface st0.0
user@host# set security ipsec vpn vpn_1 ike gateway ike_gateway_1
user@host# set security ipsec vpn vpn_1 ike ipsec-policy ipsec_pol_1
```

Use the following command to display information about this IKE proposal:

```
user@host# show security ipsec vpn vpn_1
```

## Configuring IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure IPsec AutoKey. (For information about configuring IPsec AutoKey using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring IPsec AutoKey (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 600.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.
- Configuring an IPsec Tunnel—Overview on page 568

Figure 125 on page 602 shows the quick configuration page, where you can select an existing AutoKey VPN, or click **Add** to create a new one.

Figure 125: IPsec AutoKey Configuration

Configuration > Quick Configuration > VPN > IPsec Autokey

Quick Configuration

VPN

IPsec AutoKeyIPsec PolicyPhase 2 Proposal

AutoKey VPN

List 15 per page

	Name	Gateway	Bind Interface	Df bit	Establish tunnels
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">group id test vpn 0</a>	jsr_gateway_0	-	-	on-traffic
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">group id test vpn 1</a>	jsr_gateway_1	-	-	on-traffic
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">group id test vpn 2</a>	jsr_gateway_2	-	-	on-traffic
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">group id test vpn 3</a>	jsr_gateway_3	-	-	on-traffic

AddDelete

OKCancelApply

Figure 126 on page 603 shows the quick configuration page where you create a new IPsec AutoKey VPN.

**Figure 126: IPsec AutoKey Configuration Options**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [VPN](#) > [IPsec Autokey](#)

---

Quick Configuration

---

**VPN** Add an IPsec AutoKey VPN

---

IPsec AutoKey VPN

\* **VPN Name**  ?

\* **Remote gateway**  ?

**Idle time**  ?

**Install interval**  ? (default: 1 second)

\* **IPsec policy**  ?

**Disable anti replay** ☐ ?

---

**Use proxy identity** ☐ ?

**Local IP/Netmask**  ?

**Remote IP/Netmask**  ?

**Service**  ?

---

**Bind to tunnel interface**  ?

**Don't Fragment bit**  ?

**Establish tunnels** on-traffic  ?

---

**Enable VPN monitor** ☐ ?

**Destination ip**  ?

**Optimized** ☐ ?

**Source interface**  ?

---

To configure an AutoKey VPN with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration** > **Quick Configuration** > **VPN** > **IPsec Autokey**.
2. Select the **IPsec AutoKey** tab if it is not selected.
3. To use an existing IPsec AutoKey VPN, select one from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and stay on the Quick Configuration page, click **Apply**.
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

4. To configure a new IPsec AutoKey VPN, click **Add**.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 111 on page 604.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
  - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 111: IPsec AutoKey Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IPsec Autokey VPN</b>		
VPN Name	Name of the IPsec tunnel.	Enter a name.
Remote gateway	Name of the remote gateway.	Select a name.
Idle time	The maximum amount of time to allow a security association (SA) to be idle before deleting it.	Specify a value between 60 and 999,999 seconds.
Install interval	The maximum number of seconds to allow the installation of a rekeyed outbound security association (SA) on the device.	Specify a value between 0 and 10 seconds.
IPsec policy	Associate a policy with this IPsec tunnel.	Select a policy.
Disable anti replay	Disable the anti-replay checking feature of IPsec. By default, anti-replay checking is enabled.	Click the check box.
Use proxy identity	Optionally, specify the IPsec proxy identity to use in IKE negotiations. The default behavior is to use the identities taken from the firewall policies.	Click the check box.
Local IP/Netmask	The local IP address and subnet mask for the proxy identity.	Enter an IP address and subnet mask.
Remote IP/Netmask	The remote IP address and subnet mask for the proxy identity.	Enter an IP address and subnet mask.
Service	The service (port and protocol combination) to protect.	Select a service.
Bind to tunnel interface	The tunnel interface to which the route-based virtual private network (VPN) is bound.	Select an interface.
Don't fragment bits	Specifies how the device handles the Don't Fragment (DF) bit in the outer header. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>clear</b>—Clear (disable) the DF bit from the outer header. This is the default.</li> <li>■ <b>copy</b>—Copy the DF bit to the outer header.</li> <li>■ <b>set</b>—Set (enable) the DF bit in the outer header.</li> </ul>	Choose an option.

**Table 111: IPsec AutoKey Configuration Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
Establish tunnels	<p>Specifies when IKE is activated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>immediately</b>—IKE is activated immediately after VPN configuration and configuration changes are committed.</li> <li>■ <b>on-traffic</b>—IKE is activated only when data traffic flows and must be negotiated.</li> </ul>	Choose an option.
Enable VPN monitor	Allows for monitoring of the VPN.	Click the check box.
Destination ip	IP address of the destination peer.	Enter an IP address.
Optimized	Specifies that the device uses traffic patterns as evidence of peer liveliness. If enabled, ICMP requests are suppressed. This feature is disabled by default.	Click the check box.
Source interface	The source interface for ICMP requests (VPN monitoring “ hellos” ). If no source interface is specified, the device automatically uses the local tunnel endpoint interface.	Specify a source interface.





## Chapter 19

# Public Key Cryptography for Certificates

The public-private key pairs used in public key cryptography play an important role in the use of digital certificates. The procedure for signing a certificate by a certificate authority (CA) and then verifying the signature, by the recipient, works as described in the topics in this chapter. The topics in this chapter also describe how to use self-signed certificates either automatically generated by the system or ones that you manually create.

This section includes:

- Understanding Public Key Cryptography on page 608
- Understanding Certificates on page 608
- Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
- Understanding Public Key Infrastructure on page 611
- Understanding Self-Signed Certificates on page 614
- Understanding Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 615
- Understanding Manually Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 616
- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile on page 619
- Enrolling a CA Certificate Online on page 621
- Enrolling a Local Certificate Online on page 622
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device on page 629
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Using Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 633
- Manually Generating Self-Signed Certificates on page 634
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Understanding Public Key Cryptography

---

In public key cryptography, a public-private key pair is used to encrypt and decrypt data. Data encrypted with a public key, which the owner makes available to the public, can be decrypted with the corresponding private key only, which the owner keeps secret and protected. For example, if Alice wants to send Bob an encrypted message, Alice can encrypt it with Bob's public key and send it to him. Bob then decrypts the message with his private key.

The reverse process is also useful: encrypting data with a private key and decrypting it with the corresponding public key. This process is known as creating a digital signature. For example, if Alice wants to present her identity as the sender of a message, she can encrypt the message with her private key and send the message to Bob. Bob then decrypts the message with Alice's public key, thus verifying that Alice is indeed the sender.

### Related Topics

- Understanding Certificates on page 608
- Understanding Self-Signed Certificates on page 614
- Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
- Understanding Public Key Infrastructure on page 611
- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Using Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 633
- Manually Generating Self-Signed Certificates on page 634

## Understanding Certificates

---

A digital certificate is an electronic means for verifying your identity through a trusted third party, known as a certificate authority (CA). Alternatively, you can use a self-signed certificate to attest to your identity. For details on self-signed certificates, see “Understanding Self-Signed Certificates” on page 614.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read “Understanding Public Key Cryptography” on page 608.

The CA server you use can be owned and operated by an independent CA or by your own organization, in which case you become your own CA. If you use an independent CA, you must contact them for the addresses of their CA and certificate revocation list (CRL) servers (for obtaining certificates and certificate revocation lists) and for the information they require when submitting personal certificate requests. When you are your own CA, you determine this information yourself.



**NOTE:** The following CAs are supported: Entrust, Microsoft, and Verisign.

---

This topic covers:

- Certificate Signatures on page 609
- Certificate Verification on page 609
- Internet Key Exchange on page 610
- Related Topics on page 610

## **Certificate Signatures**

The certificate authority (CA) that issues a certificate uses an MD5 or SHA-1 hash algorithm to generate a digest, then “signs” the certificate by encrypting the digest with its private key. The result is a digital signature. The CA then makes the digitally signed certificate available for download to the person who requested it. Figure 127 on page 610 illustrates this process.

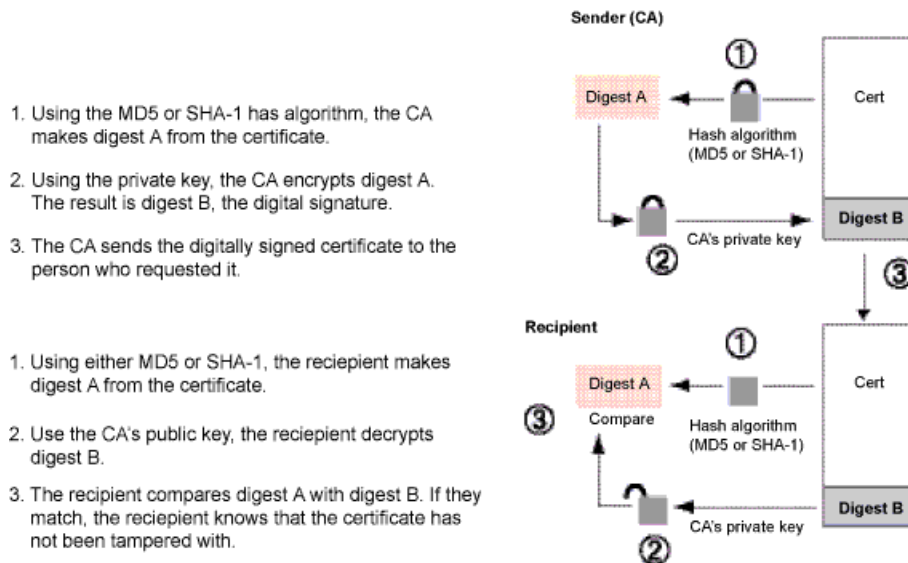
## **Certificate Verification**

The recipient of the certificate generates another digest by applying the same MD5 or SHA-1 hash algorithm to the certificate file, then uses the CA's public key to decrypt the digital signature. By comparing the decrypted digest with the digest just generated, the recipient is able to confirm the integrity of the CA's signature and, by extension, the integrity of the accompanying certificate. Figure 127 on page 610 illustrates this process.



**NOTE:** If the issuer of the end-entity (EE) certificate is not a root certificate, up to eight levels are verified (as explained in “Understanding Public Key Infrastructure” on page 611). Revocation status of each certificate in the verification chain is also verified. A certificate revocation status is considered “good” when its serial number is not in the CRL, which satisfies the refresh requirement per CA profile.

---

**Figure 127: Digital Signature Verification**

## Internet Key Exchange

The procedure for digitally signing messages sent between two participants in an Internet Key Exchange (IKE) session is similar to digital certificate verification, with the following differences:

- Instead of making a digest from the CA certificate, the sender makes it from the data in the IP packet payload.
- Instead of using the CA's public-private key pair, the participants use the sender's public-private key pair.

## Related Topics

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611

## Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists

---

In the normal course of business, certificates are revoked for various reasons. You might wish to revoke a certificate if you suspect that it has been compromised, for example, or when a certificate holder leaves the company.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding Public Key Cryptography on page 608
- Understanding Certificates on page 608

You can manage certificate revocations and validations in two ways:

- Locally— a limited solution.
- By referencing a CA's certificate revocation list (CRL). You can automatically access the CRL online at intervals you specify or at the default interval set by the CA.

In Phase 1 negotiations, participants check the CRL list to see if certificates received during an IKE exchange are still valid. If a CRL did not accompany a CA certificate and is not loaded on the device, the device tries to download it automatically from the CRL distribution point of the local certificate. If the device fails to connect to the URL in the certificate distribution point (CDP), it tries to retrieve the CRL from the URL configured in the CA profile.

If the certificate does not contain a certificate distribution point extension, and you cannot automatically retrieve the CRL through LDAP or HTTP, you can retrieve a CRL manually and load that in the device.

### Related Topics

- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637
- Understanding Public Key Infrastructure on page 611

## Understanding Public Key Infrastructure

---

Public key infrastructure (PKI) refers to the hierarchical structure of trust required for the successful implementation of public key cryptography. To verify the trustworthiness of a certificate, you must be able to track a path of certified CAs from

the one issuing your local certificate back to a root authority of a CA domain. See Figure 128 on page 612.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding Public Key Cryptography on page 608
- Understanding Certificates on page 608
- Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611

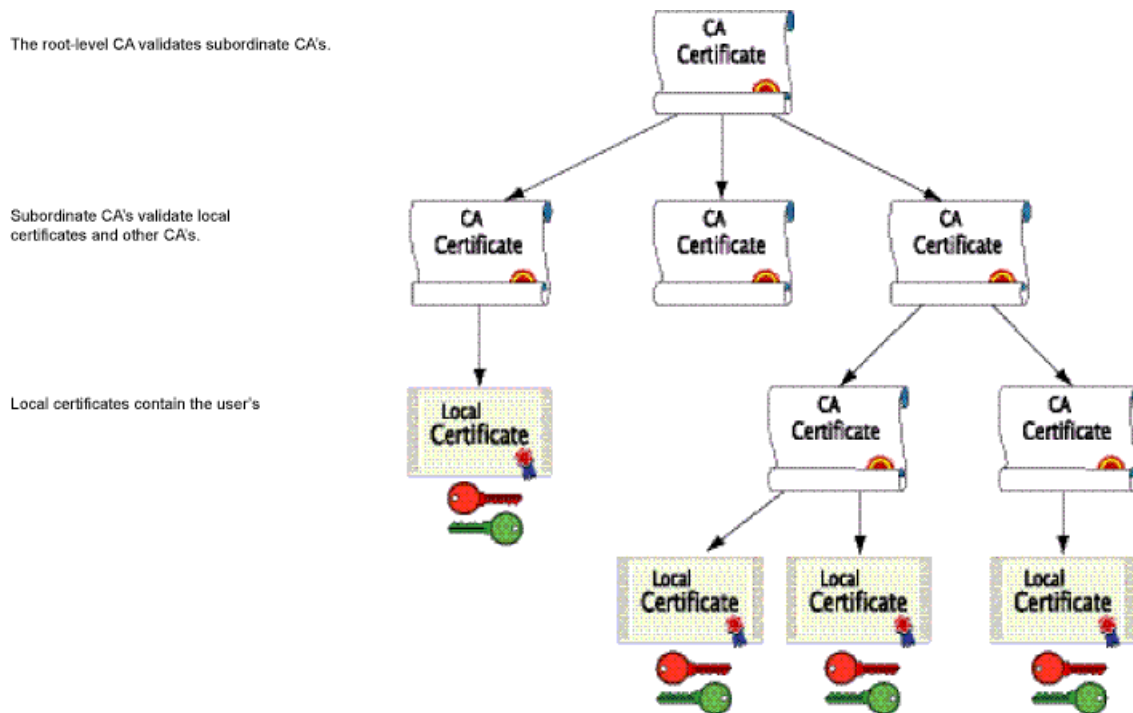
This topic covers:

- PKI Hierarchy for a Single CA Domain or Across Domains on page 612
- PKI Management and Implementation on page 613
- Related Topics on page 613

### PKI Hierarchy for a Single CA Domain or Across Domains

Figure 128 on page 612 shows the structure of a single-domain certificate authority.

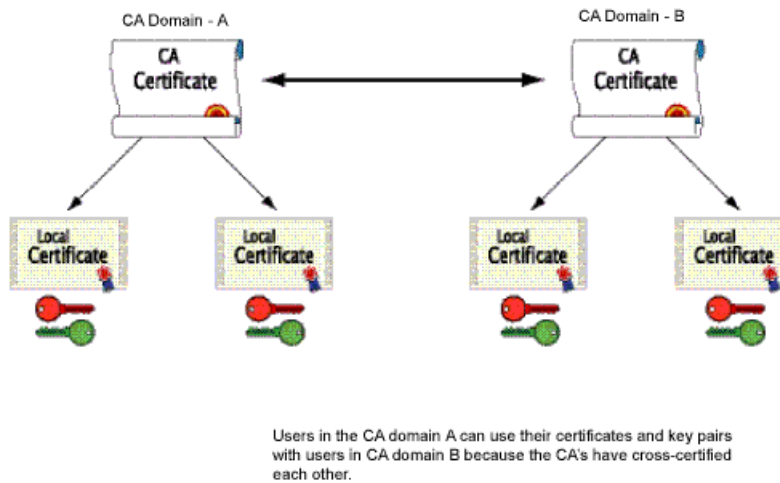
**Figure 128: PKI Hierarchy of Trust—CA Domain**



If certificates are used solely within an organization, that organization can have its own CA domain within which a company CA issues and validates certificates for its employees. If that organization later wants its employees to exchange their certificates

with those from another CA domain (for example, with employees at another organization that also has its own CA domain), the two CAs can develop cross-certification by agreeing to trust the authority of each other. In this case, the PKI structure does not extend vertically but does extend horizontally. See Figure 129 on page 613.

**Figure 129: Cross-Certification**



## PKI Management and Implementation

For convenience and practicality, PKI must be transparently managed and implemented. Toward this goal, JUNOS software supports the following features:

- Generates a public-private key pair.
- Loads multiple local certificates from different CAs.
- Delivers a certificate when establishing an IPsec tunnel.
- Validates a certificate path upward through eight levels of CA authorities in the PKI hierarchy.
- Supports the Public-Key Cryptography #7 (PKCS-7) cryptographic standard. As a result, the device can accept X.509 certificates and CRLs packaged within a PKCS-7 envelope.



**NOTE:** JUNOS software supports a PKCS-7 file size of up to 7 KB.

- Retrieves CRLs online retrieval through LDAP or HTTP.

## Related Topics

- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624

- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Understanding Self-Signed Certificates

---

A self-signed certificate is a certificate that is signed by its creator rather than by a Certificate Authority (CA).

Self-signed certificates allow for use of SSL-based (Secure Sockets Layer) services without requiring that the user or administrator undertake the considerable task of obtaining an identity certificate signed by a CA

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding Public Key Cryptography on page 608
  - Understanding Certificates on page 608
- 



**NOTE:** Self-signed certificates do not provide additional security as do those generated by CAs. This is because a client cannot verify that the server he or she has connected to is the one advertised in the certificate.

---

This topic covers:

- About Generating Self-Signed Certificates on page 614
- Related Topics on page 615

### About Generating Self-Signed Certificates

JUNOS software provides two methods for generating a self-signed certificate:

- Automatic generation

In this case, the creator of the certificate is the Juniper Networks device. An automatically generated self-signed certificate is configured on the device by default.

After the device is initialized, it checks for the presence of an automatically generated self-signed certificate. If it does not find one, the device generates one and saves it in the file system.

- Manual generation

In this case, you create the self-signed certificate for the device.



At any time, you can use the CLI to generate a self-signed certificate. These certificates are also used to gain access to SSL services.

Self-signed certificates are valid for five years from the time they were generated.

## **Related Topics**

- Understanding Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 615
- Understanding Manually Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 616
- Using Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 633
- Manually Generating Self-Signed Certificates on page 634
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Understanding Public Key Cryptography on page 608

## **Understanding Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates**

---

An automatically generated self-signed certificate allows for use of SSL-based (Secure Sockets Layer) services without requiring that the administrator obtain an identity certificate signed by a CA.

A self-signed certificate that is automatically generated by the device is similar to an SSH (Secure Shell) host key. It is stored in the file system, not as part of the configuration. It persists when the device is rebooted, and it is preserved when a `request system snapshot` command is issued.

### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read:

- Understanding Self-Signed Certificates on page 614
- Understanding Certificates on page 608

## **Related Topics**

- Using Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 633
- Understanding Manually Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 616
- Manually Generating Self-Signed Certificates on page 634
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Understanding Public Key Cryptography on page 608

## Understanding Manually Generated Self-Signed Certificates

---

A self-signed certificate that you manually generate allows for use of SSL-based (Secure Sockets Layer) services without requiring that you obtain an identity certificate signed by a CA. A manually generated self-signed certificate is one example of a PKI local certificate. As is true of all PKI local certificates, manually generated self-signed certificates are stored in the file system.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Self-Signed Certificates on page 614
- Understanding Certificates on page 608
- Understanding Public Key Cryptography on page 608

You generate this kind of named local certificate using the command-line interface (CLI).

### Related Topics

- Manually Generating Self-Signed Certificates on page 634
- Understanding Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 615
- Using Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 633
- Deleting Certificates on page 636

## Using Digital Certificates

---

Digital certificates authenticate your identity when establishing secure virtual private network (VPN) connections.

To use a digital certificate to authenticate your identity when establishing a secure VPN connection, you must first do the following:

- Obtain a certificate authority (CA) certificate from which you intend to obtain a personal certificate, and then load the CA certificate in the device.

The CA certificate can contain a certificate revocation list (CRL) to identify invalid certificates.

- Obtain a local certificate (also known as a personal certificate) from the CA whose CA certificate you have previously loaded, and then load the local certificate in the device. The local, or end-entity (EE), certificate establishes the identity of the Juniper Networks device with each tunnel connection.

You can obtain CA and local certificates manually, or online using Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP). Certificates are verifiable and renewable, and you can delete them when they are no longer needed.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding Public Key Cryptography on page 608
- Understanding Certificates on page 608
- Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
- Understanding Public Key Infrastructure on page 611

This topic covers:

- Obtaining Digital Certificates Online on page 617
- Obtaining Digital Certificates Manually on page 617
- Verifying the Validity of a Certificate on page 618
- Deleting a Certificate on page 618

## Obtaining Digital Certificates Online

Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) uses the online method to request digital certificates. To obtain a certificate online, do the following:

1. Generate a key pair in the device. See “Generating a Public-Private Key Pair” on page 618.
2. Create a CA profile containing information specific to a CA. You can have multiple CA profiles on the device. For example, you might have one profile for Microsoft and one for Entrust. See “Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile” on page 619.
3. Enroll the CA certificate onto the device. See “Enrolling a CA Certificate Online” on page 621.
4. Obtain a local certificate (also known as a personal certificate) online from the CA whose CA certificate you have previously loaded. See “Enrolling a Local Certificate Online” on page 622.
5. Configure automatic re-enrollment. See “Understanding SecurID User Authentication” on page 530.

## Obtaining Digital Certificates Manually

To obtain digital certificates manually, do the following:

1. Generate a key pair in the device. See “Generating a Public-Private Key Pair” on page 618.
2. Create a CA profile containing information specific to a CA. You can have multiple CA profiles on the device. For example, you might have one profile for Microsoft

and one for Entrust. See “Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile” on page 619.

3. Generate a certificate request using the key pair, and manually copy that request and paste it into the appropriate field at the CA Web site to obtain a personal certificate (also known as a local certificate). See “Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually” on page 624.
4. Load the certificate onto the device. See “Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually” on page 626.
5. Configure automatic re-enrollment. See “Understanding SecurID User Authentication” on page 530.
6. If necessary, load the certificate's CRL on the device. See “Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device” on page 629.

## Verifying the Validity of a Certificate

You can verify the validity of a certificate in one of the following ways:

- To verify manually, see “Verifying Certificate Validity” on page 630.
- To verify manually with CRLs, see “Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs” on page 631.

## Deleting a Certificate

To delete a certificate or a CRL, see “Deleting Certificates” on page 177 and “Deleting a Loaded CRL” on page 179.

## Generating a Public-Private Key Pair

When you generate a public-private key pair, the device automatically saves the key pair in a file in the certificate store, where it is subsequently used in certificate request commands.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Understanding Public Key Cryptography on page 608
- Understanding Certificates on page 608
- Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
- Using Digital Certificates on page 616

If the device renews a great number of certificates at once, thus using up keys rapidly, it might run out of pregenerated keys and have to generate them promptly for each new request. In this case, the generation of keys might affect the performance of the device, especially in a high-availability environment where the performance of the device might slow down for a number of minutes.

You must have root-level privileges to generate a public-private key pair. When you generate a public-private key pair on the device, the generated key pair is saved as *certificate-id.priv*.

This topic covers:

- CLI Operation on page 619
- Related Topics on page 619

## CLI Operation

1. To generate a public-private key pair named, for example, *ca-ipsec*, with a key size of 1024 bits, enter the following command:

```
user@host> request security pki generate-key-pair certificate-id ca-ipsec
```



**NOTE:** The default RSA key size is 1024 bits. If you are using SCEP, JUNOS software supports RSA only.

2. Go on to “Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile” on page 619.

## Related Topics

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile

A certificate authority (CA) profile configuration contains information specific to a CA. You can have multiple CA profiles on the device. For example, you might have one profile for Microsoft and one for Entrust. Each profile is associated with a CA certificate. If you want to load a new CA certificate without removing the older one, you must create a new CA profile (for example, Microsoft-2008).

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
- Understanding Certificates on page 608
- Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
- Using Digital Certificates on page 616

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 620
- Related Topics on page 620

## CLI Configuration

To configure a CA profile:

1. Create a CA profile. For example, the following command creates a CA profile called **ca-profile-ipsec** with CA identity **microsoft-2008**, specifies that the CRL be refreshed every 48 hours, location to retrieve the CRL from to **http://www.my-ca.com**:

```
user@host# set security pki ca-profile ca-profile-ipsec ca-identity microsoft-2008
revocation-check crl refresh-interval 48 url http://www.my-ca.com
```

2. Specify the number of times a device resends a certificate request for online enrollment when attempts to enroll in Step 1 fail. For example, the following command sets the enrollment retry to 20 times:

```
user@host# set security pki ca-profile ca-profile-ipsec enrollment retry 20
```

The default value for **retry** is 10.

3. Specify the time interval in seconds between attempts to automatically enroll the CA certificate online. For example, the following command specifies automatic certificate polling every 30 minutes:

```
user@host# set security pki ca-profile ca-profile-ipsec enrollment retry-interval
1800
```

If you configure **retry** only without configuring a **retry interval**, then the default **retry interval** is 900 seconds (15 minutes). If you do not configure **retry** or a **retry interval**, then there is no polling.

## Related Topics

- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Enrolling a CA Certificate Online on page 621
- Enrolling a Local Certificate Online on page 622
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Enrolling a CA Certificate Online

With Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP), you can configure your Juniper Networks device to obtain a CA certificate online and start the online enrollment for the specified certificate ID. The CA public key verifies certificates from remote peers.

### Before You Begin

1. Generate a public and private key pair. See “Generating a Public-Private Key Pair” on page 618.
2. Configure a CA profile. See “Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile” on page 619.
3. For background information, read
  - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
  - Understanding Certificates on page 608
  - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
  - Using Digital Certificates on page 616

This topic covers:

- CLI Operation on page 621
- Related Topics on page 622

### CLI Operation

1. Use the following command to get the CA certificate online using SCEP. The attributes required to reach the CA server are obtained from the defined CA profile.

```
user@host> request security pki ca-certificate enroll ca-profile ca-profile_name
```

The command is processed synchronously to provide the fingerprint of the received CA certificate as shown below:

```
Fingerprint:
e6:fa:d6:da:e8:8d:d3:00:e8:59:12:e1:2c:b9:3c:c0:9d:6c:8f:8d (sha1)
82:e2:dc:ea:48:4c:08:9a:fd:b5:24:b0:db:c3:ba:59 (md5)
Do you want to load the above CA certificate ? [yes,no]
```

You must confirm that the correct certificate is loaded. The CA certificate is loaded only when you type yes at the CLI prompt. For more information on the certificate, such as the bit length of the key pair, use the command **show security pki ca-certificate** described in the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

2. Go on to “Enrolling a Local Certificate Online” on page 622.

## Related Topics

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631

## Enrolling a Local Certificate Online

---

With Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP), you can configure your Juniper Networks device to obtain a local certificate online and start the online enrollment for the specified certificate ID.

### Before You Begin

1. Generate a public and private key pair. See “Generating a Public-Private Key Pair” on page 618.
  2. Configure a CA profile. See “Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile” on page 619.
  3. Enroll a CA certificate. See “Enrolling a CA Certificate Online” on page 621.
  4. For background information, read:
    - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
    - Understanding Certificates on page 608
    - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
    - Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- 

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 622
- Related Topics on page 623

## CLI Configuration

To configure the device for online enrollment:

1. Specify the CA profile—for example, **wincs-5**—and specify the CA location for your device to send the SCEP-based certificate enrollment requests. To specify the CA location by naming the CA URL, include the **url** statement. For example:

```
user@host# set security pki ca-profile winsc-5 enrollment url
http://10.155.8.1/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
```

2. Using the **request security pki local-certificate enroll** command, start the online enrollment for the specified certificate ID. You must specify the CA profile name



(for example, **wincs-5**), the certificate ID (for example, **qqq**), and the following information:



**NOTE:** SCEP sends a PKCS-10 format certificate request enveloped in PKCS-7 format.

- Specify the **challenge CA password** for certificate enrollment and revocation—for example, **aaa**. If the CA does not provide the challenge password, then choose your own password.
- Specify at least one of the following values:
  - Enter the domain name to identify the certificate owner in IKE negotiations—for example, **qqq.juniper.net**.
  - Specify the identity of the certificate owner for IKE negotiation with the e-mail statement—for example, **qqq@juniper.net**.
  - Enter an IP address if the Service router is configured for a static IP address—for example, **10.10.10.10**.
- Specify the subject name in the distinguished name format in quotation marks, including the domain component (DC), common name (CN), organizational unit name (OU), organization name (O), locality (L), state (ST), and country (C).

For example:

```
user@host> request security pki local-certificate enroll ca-profile winsc-5
certificate-id qqq challenge-password aaa domain-name qqq.juniper.net
email qqq@juniper.net ip-address 10.10.10.10 subject DC=juniper,
CN=router3, OU=marketing, O=juniper, L=sunnyvale, ST=california, C=us
```

The device certificate is obtained and the online enrollment begins for the certificate ID. The command is processed asynchronously.

3. Go on to “Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically” on page 627

The device certificate is obtained and the online enrollment begins for the certificate ID. The command is processed asynchronously.

1. Go on to “Understanding SecurID User Authentication” on page 530.

## Related Topics

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630

- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually

---

When you create a local certificate request, the device generates a CA certificate in PKCS-10 format from a key pair you previously generated using the same certificate ID.

### Before You Begin

1. Generate a public and private key. See “Generating a Public-Private Key Pair” on page 618.
  2. Create a CA profile. See “Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile” on page 619.
  3. For background information, read
    - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
    - Understanding Certificates on page 608
    - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
    - Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- 

A subject name is associated with the local certificate request in the form of a common name (CN), organizational unit (OU), organization (O), locality (L), state (ST), country (C), and domain component (DC). Additionally, a subject alternative name is associated in the following form:

- IP address
  - E-mail address
  - Fully qualified domain name (FQDN)
- 



**NOTE:** Some CAs do not support an e-mail address as the domain name in a certificate. If you do not include an e-mail address in the local certificate request, you cannot use an e-mail address as the local IKE ID when configuring the device as a dynamic peer. Instead, you can use a fully qualified domain name (if it is in the local certificate), or you can leave the local ID field empty. If you do not specify a local ID for a dynamic peer, enter the *hostname.domain-name* of that peer on the device at the other end of the IPsec tunnel in the peer ID field.

---

This topic covers:

- CLI Operation on page 625
- Related Topics on page 625

## CLI Operation

1. To generate a certificate request using the certificate ID (`ca-ipsec`) of a public-private key pair you previously generated and specifying the domain name `juniper.net` and the associated common name `abc`, enter the following command:

```
user@host> request security pki generate-certificate-request certificate-id
ca-ipsec domain-name juniper.net subject CN=abc
```

The following certificate request is displayed in PEM format.

```
Generated certificate request
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIHxMIGcAgEAMA4xDDAKBgNVBAMTA2htMTBcMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA0sAMEgC
QQCbhaiWzmctH0ZD1dCn+mSNM62kyiSgc4cmN68U/j9E109/DgGoMny2y+RYA1xU
sr4BONedGrZZJx5L1sIYjHr/AgMBAAAGgKTAkBgkqhkiG9w0BCQ4xGjAYMBYGA1Ud
EQQPMA2CC2p1bm1wZXIubmV0MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA0EAE1eLR6Hp2ity8Dugs
MW4HI6SxfwMc2eYM5Nj2UhwpeEpsce77dUBZriKdehAg1i7vwNsHG1uhHjEaFzf0
hpM3tA==
-----END CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
Fingerprint:
9e:d5:7d:44:e8:e7:b6:d7:4b:58:d4:4e:2b:fb:c6:b2:4b:b7:8b:82 (sha1)
b0:8d:c7:6d:41:d5:58:61:dc:a0:3e:4e:d6:39:02:d7 (md5)
```

Copy the generated certificate request and paste it into the appropriate field at the CA Web site to obtain a local certificate. Refer to the CA server documentation to determine where to paste the certificate-request.

When PKCS-10 content is displayed, the SHA-1 hash and MD5 hash of the PKCS-10 file is also displayed. For more information on the certificate, such as the bit length of the key pair, use the command `show security pki certificate-request` described in the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

2. Go on to “Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually” on page 626.

## Related Topics

- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually

After you download certificates from a certificate authority (CA), you transfer them to the device (for example, using FTP), then load them.

### Before You Begin

1. Generate a public-private key pair. See “Generating a Public-Private Key Pair” on page 618.
2. Create a CA profile. See “Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile” on page 619.
3. Generate a certificate request. See “Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually” on page 624 .
4. For background information, read
  - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
  - Understanding Certificates on page 608
  - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
  - Using Digital Certificates on page 616

You can load the following certificates files onto a device running JUNOS software:

- A local or end-entity (EE) certificate that identifies your local device. This certificate is your public key.
- A CA certificate that contains the CA's public key.
- A CRL that lists any certificates revoked by the CA.



**NOTE:** You can load multiple EE certificates onto the device.

This topic covers:

- CLI Operation on page 626
- Related Topics on page 627

### CLI Operation

In this example, you have downloaded the following certificates and saved them to the `/var/tmp/` directory on the device:

- `local.cert`
- `ca.cert`

1. To load the local certificate called `local.cert` from the `/var/tmp` directory on the device, enter the following command:

```
user@host> request security pki local-certificate load certificate-id local.cert
filename /var/tmp/local.cert
```

2. To load the CA certificate called **ca.cert** from the **/var/tmp** directory on the device, enter the following command. The CA profile is called **ca-profile-ipsec**.

```
user@host> request security pki ca-certificate load ca-profile ca-profile-ipsec
filename /var/tmp/ca.cert
```

3. Go on to “Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically” on page 627.

## Related Topics

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically

---

You can enable the device to automatically renew certificates that was acquired by online enrollment or loaded manually. This feature saves you from having to remember to renew certificates on the device before they expire, and helps maintain valid certificates at all times.

Automatic certificate renewal is disabled by default. You can configure the device to automatically send out a request to renew a certificate before it expires. You can set the time when you want the device to send out the certificate renewal request in number of days and minutes before the expiration date. By setting different times for each certificate, you prevent the device from having to renew all certificates at the same time.

### Before You Begin

1. Obtain a certificate either online or manually. See “Obtaining Digital Certificates Online” on page 617 or “Obtaining Digital Certificates Manually” on page 617.
  2. For background information, read:
    - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
    - Understanding Certificates on page 608
    - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
    - Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- 

For this feature to work, the device must be able to reach the SCEP server, and the certificate must be present on the device during the renewal process. Furthermore,

for this feature to work, you must also ensure that the CA issuing the certificate can return the same DN (domain name). The CA must not modify the subject name and Alternate Subject Name extension in the new certificate.

You can enable and disable automatic SCEP certificate renewal for all SCEP certificates or on a per-certificate basis.

This topic covers:

- CLI Configuration on page 628
- Related Topics on page 628

## CLI Configuration

To enable and configure certificate re-enrollment use the **set security pki auto-re-enrollment** command with the following information:

- Certificate ID of the CA certificate—for example, **sm1**.
- Name of the CA profile associated with the certificate—for example, **aaa**.
- Challenge password for CA certificate enrollment and revocation. This password must be the same one configured previously for the CA—for example, **abc**.
- Trigger time for the re-enrollment. This value sets the certificate re-enrollment time as a percentage of the time left before expiration. For example, to start re-enrollment when 10 percent of the certificate time remains, specify **10**.
- During automatic re-enrollment, by default the Juniper Networks device uses the existing key pair. To generate a new key pair, specify **re-generate-key-pair**.

For example:

```
user@host# set security pki auto-re-enrollment certificate-id sm1 ca-profile-name  
aaa challenge-password abc re-enroll-trigger-time-percentage 10  
re-generate-keypair
```

## Related Topics

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Manually Loading a CRL onto the Device

---

You can load a certificate revocation list (CRL) manually, or you can have the device load it automatically when you verify certificate validity. To load a CRL manually, you obtain the CRL from a CA and transfer it to the device (for example, using FTP).

### Before You Begin

1. Generate a public and private key pair. See “Generating a Public-Private Key Pair” on page 618.
  2. Generate a certificate request. See “Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually” on page 624.
  3. Configure a CA profile. See “Configuring a Certificate Authority Profile” on page 619.
  4. Load your certificate onto the device. See “Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually” on page 626.
  5. For background information, read
    - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
    - Understanding Certificates on page 608
    - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
    - Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- 

This topic covers:

- CLI Operation on page 629
- Related Topics on page 629

### CLI Operation

With the following command, you load a CRL certificate called `revoke.crl` from the `/var/tmp` directory on the device. The CA profile is called `ca-profile-ipsec`. (Maximum file size is 5 MB.)

```
user@host> request security pki crl load ca-profile ca-profile-ipsec filename
/var/tmp/revoke.crl
```



**NOTE:** JUNOS software supports loading of CA certificates in X509, PKCS-7, DER, or PEM formats.

---

### Related Topics

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626

- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Verifying Certificate Validity

---

The CRL is updated automatically, but you must verify certificates manually to find out if a certificate has been revoked, or if the CA certificate used to create a local certificate is no longer present on the device.

When you verify certificates manually, the device uses the CA certificate to verify the local certificate. If the local certificate is valid, and if **revocation-check** is enabled in the CA profile, the device verifies that the CRL is loaded and valid. If not, the device downloads the new CRL.

### Before You Begin

1. Obtain a certificate either online or manually. See “Obtaining Digital Certificates Online” on page 617 or “Obtaining Digital Certificates Manually” on page 617.
  2. For background information, read
    - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
    - Understanding Certificates on page 608
    - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
    - Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- 

You verify certificates from the CLI in operational mode.

This topic covers:

- CLI Operation on page 630
- Related Topics on page 631

## CLI Operation

Use the following command to verify the validity of a local certificate called **local.cert**:

```
user@host> request security pki local-certificate verify certificate-id local.cert
```

Use the following command to verify the validity of a CA certificate called **ca-cert**:

```
user@host> request security pki ca-certificate verify certificate-id ca-cert
```



**NOTE:** The associated private key and the signature are also verified.

---



For more information on the certificate, use the show commands (**show security pki ca-certificate** and **show security pki certificate-request**) described in the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs

In Phase 1 negotiations, participants check the CRL list to see if certificates received during an IKE exchange are still valid. If a CRL did not accompany a CA certificate and is not loaded on the device, JUNOS software tries to retrieve the CRL through the LDAP or HTTP CRL location defined within the CA certificate itself. If no URL address is defined in the CA certificate, the device uses the URL of the server that you define for that CA certificate. If you do not define a CRL URL for a particular CA certificate, the device gets the CRL from the URL in the CA profile configuration.

### Before You Begin

1. Obtain a certificate either online or manually. See “Obtaining Digital Certificates Online” on page 617 or “Obtaining Digital Certificates Manually” on page 617.
2. For background information, read:
  - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
  - Understanding Certificates on page 608
  - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
  - Using Digital Certificates on page 616



**NOTE:** The CRL distribution point extension (.cdp) in an X509 certificate can be added to either an HTTP URL or an LDAP URL.

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 632
- CLI Configuration on page 632
- Related Topics on page 632

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure a certificate authority profile.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to PKI, select the check box and click **Configure**.
4. Next to Ca profile, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Ca profile name box, type **my\_profile**.
6. In the Ca identity box, type **sm1**.
7. Next to Revocation check, click **Configure**.
8. Next to Crl, click **Configure**.
9. Next to Url, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Url string, type **http://abc** and click **OK**.
11. If you are finished configuring the router, **Commit** the configuration.
12. To check the configuration, see Verifying the Validity of a Certificate

## ***CLI Configuration***

With the following command, you direct the device to check the validity of the CA profile called **my\_profile** and, if a CRL did not accompany a CA certificate and is not loaded on the device, to retrieve the CRL from the URL **http://abc**.

```
user@host# set security pki ca-profile my_profile revocation-check crl url http://abc
```

## ***Related Topics***

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Verifying Certificate Validity on page 630
- Deleting Certificates on page 636
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637

## Using Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates

After the device is initialized, it checks for the presence of a self-signed certificate. If a self-signed certificate is not present, the device automatically generates one.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Self-Signed Certificates on page 614
- Understanding Manually Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 616
- Understanding Certificates on page 608

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 633
- CLI Configuration on page 633
- Related Topics on page 634

### J-Web Configuration

To use the automatically generated self-signed certificate. The following tasks specify that the automatically generated self-signed certificate is used for Web management HTTPS services.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to System, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Services, select the check box, and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Web management, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. Next to Https, select the check box, and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
6. From the Certificate choice list, select System generated certificate and click **OK**.
7. If you are finished configuring the router, **commit** the configuration.
8. To check the configuration, see Verifying the Validity of a Certificate on page 74.

### CLI Configuration

You can add the following statement to your configuration if you want to use the automatically generated self-signed certificate to provide access to HTTPS services:

```
system {
  services {
    web-management {
      http {
```

```

    interface [ ... ];
  } https {
    system-generated-certificate;
    interface [ ... ];
  }
}
}
}

```

The device uses the following distinguished name for the automatically generated certificate:

“CN=<device serial number>, CN=system generated, CN=self-signed”

Use the following command to specify that the automatically generated self-signed certificate is to be used for Web management HTTPS services:

```
user@host# set system services web-management https system-generated-certificate
```

Use the following operational command to delete the automatically generated self-signed certificate:

```
user@host# clear security pki local-certificate system-generated
```

After you delete the system-generated self-signed certificate, the device automatically generates a new one and saves it in the file system.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Manually Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 616
- Manually Generating Self-Signed Certificates on page 634
- Understanding Public Key Infrastructure on page 611

## Manually Generating Self-Signed Certificates

---

You can use the CLI to manually generate a self-signed certificate. For a manually generated self-signed certificate, you specify the distinguished name (DN) when you create it. (For an automatically generated self-signed certificate, the system supplies the DN, identifying itself as the creator.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Self-Signed Certificates on page 614
  - Understanding Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 615
  - Understanding Certificates on page 608
-

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 635
- CLI Configuration on page 635
- Related Topics on page 635

## **J-Web Configuration**

To direct the router to use a manually generated self-signed certificate. The following tasks are used to direct the router to use a manually generated self-signed certificate called self-cert for Web management.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to **System**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to **Services**, select the check box, and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to **Web management**, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
5. Next to **Https**, select the check box, and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
6. From the Certificate choice list, select **Pki local certificate** and click **OK**.
7. If you are finished configuring the router, **commit** the configuration.
8. To check the configuration, see **Verifying the Validity of a Certificate** on page 74.

## **CLI Configuration**

Use the following CLI command to manually generate a self-signed certificate created and signed by the user whose e-mail address is mholmes:

```
user@host# request security pki local-certificate generate-self-signed certificate-id
self-cert subject cn=abc domain-name Juniper.net ip-address 1.2.3.4 email
mholmes@juniper.net
```

Use the following CLI command to direct the device to use a manually generated self-signed certificate called self-cert for Web management:

```
user@host# set system services web-management https pki-local-certificate self-cert
```

## **Related Topics**

- Understanding Manually Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 616
- Manually Generating Self-Signed Certificates on page 634
- Understanding Public Key Infrastructure on page 611

## Deleting Certificates

---

You can delete a local or trusted CA certificate that is automatically or manually generated.

### Before You Begin

1. Obtain a certificate either online or manually. See “Obtaining Digital Certificates Online” on page 617 or “Obtaining Digital Certificates Manually” on page 617.
  2. For background information, read
    - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
    - Understanding Certificates on page 608
    - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
    - Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- 

This topic covers:

- CLI Operation on page 636
- Related Topics on page 637

### CLI Operation

Use the following command to delete a local certificate:

```
user@host> clear security pki local certificate certificate-id (certificate-id | all | system-generated )
```

Specify a certificate ID to delete a local certificate with a specific ID, use **all** to delete all local certificates, or specify **system-generated** to delete the automatically generated self-signed certificate.

When you delete an automatically generated self-signed certificate, the device generates a new one.

To delete a CA certificate:

```
user@host> clear security pki ca-certificate ca-profile (ca-profile-name | all)
```

Specify a CA profile to delete a specific CA certificate, or use **all** to delete all CA certificates present in the persistent store.



**NOTE:** You are asked for confirmation before a CA certificate can be deleted.

---

## Related Topics

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting a Loaded CRL on page 637
- Understanding Automatically Generated Self-Signed Certificates on page 615

## Deleting a Loaded CRL

---

You can choose to delete a loaded CRL if you no longer need to use it to manage certificate revocations and validation.

### Before You Begin

1. Obtain a certificate either online or manually. See “Obtaining Digital Certificates Online” on page 617 or “Obtaining Digital Certificates Manually” on page 617.
  2. For background information, read
    - Public Key Cryptography for Certificates on page 607
    - Understanding Certificates on page 608
    - Understanding Certificate Revocation Lists on page 611
    - Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- 

This topic covers:

- CLI Operation on page 637
- Related Topics on page 638

## CLI Operation

Use the following command to delete a loaded certificate revocation list:

```
user@host> clear security pki crl ca-profile (ca-profile | all)
```

Specify a CA profile to delete a CRL associated with the CA identified by the profile, or use **all** to delete all CRLs.

## ***Related Topics***

- Using Digital Certificates on page 616
- Generating a Public-Private Key Pair on page 618
- Generating a Local Certificate Request Manually on page 624
- Loading CA and Local Certificates Manually on page 626
- Re-enrolling Local Certificates Automatically on page 627
- Checking Certificate Validity Using CRLs on page 631
- Deleting Certificates on page 636



## Chapter 20

# Dynamic Virtual Private Networks (VPNs)

This chapter includes:

- Dynamic VPN Overview on page 639
- Access Manager Client-Side Reference on page 648
- Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview on page 655
- Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 657
- Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 660
- Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 662
- Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 666
- Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 669
- Configuring an IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 671
- Creating a Client Configuration—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 675
- Creating a Client Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 678
- Configuring Global Client Download Settings—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 679
- Configuring Global Client Download Settings (Dynamic VPNs) on page 681

## Dynamic VPN Overview

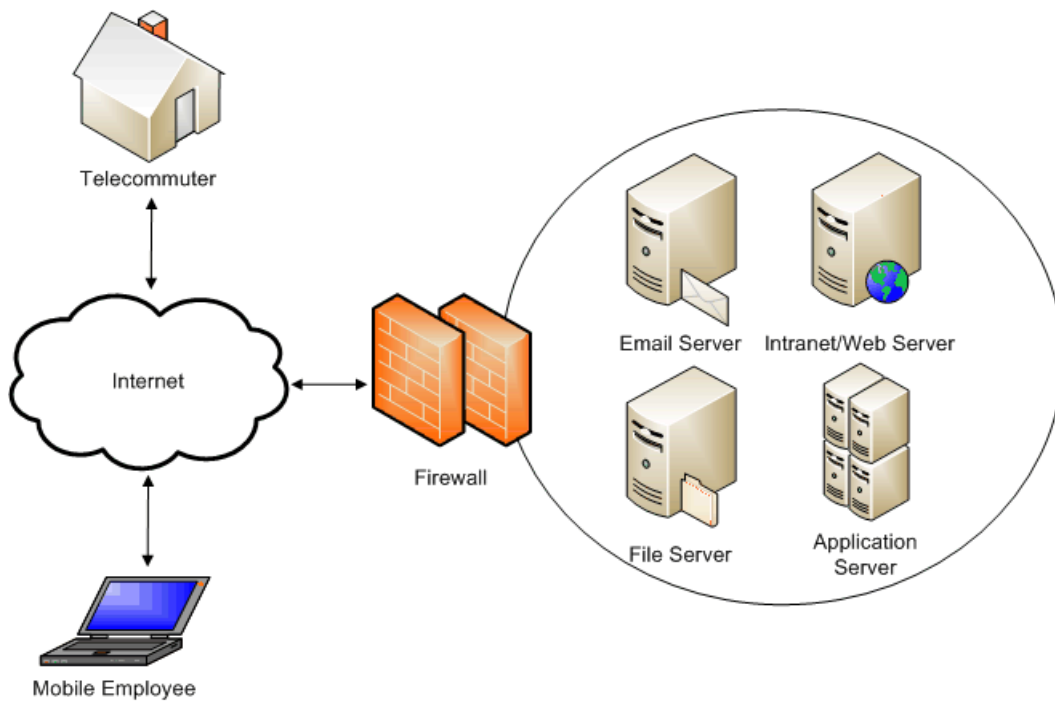
---

Virtual private network (VPN) tunnels enable users to securely access assets such as e-mail servers and application servers that reside behind a firewall. End-to-site VPN tunnels are particularly helpful to remote users such as telecommuters because a single tunnel enables access to all of the resources on a network—the users do not need to configure individual access settings to each application and server.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.

**Figure 130: Using a VPN Tunnel to Enable Remote Access to a Corporate Network**

The dynamic VPN feature further simplifies remote access by enabling users to establish Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) VPN tunnels without having to manually configure VPN settings on their PCs or laptops. Instead, authenticated users can simply download the Access Manager Web client to their computers. This Layer 3 remote access client uses client-side configuration settings that it receives from the server to create and manage a secure end-to-site VPN tunnel to the server.

From the user's perspective, creating a secure VPN tunnel is very simple. The first time a user needs to establish a VPN tunnel, they simply navigate to <https://<serverhost>/dynamic-vpn> and enter their username and password in the login page that appears. Assuming that the user authenticates successfully and has administrator privileges, the Juniper Networks device (also called the Remote Access Server) installs Access Manager on the user's computer and provides a VPN configuration that is specific to the user. The Access Manager client provides the user with a simple GUI for launching the client configuration; the client configuration does all the work of establishing and negotiating the IPsec VPN tunnel for the user. Once installed, Access Manager and the client configuration are available for future IPsec VPN sessions.

The following sections describe how the Remote Access Server, Access Manager, and the client configuration work together to make the user experience simple:

- Connecting to the Remote Access Server for the First Time (Pre-IKE Phase) on page 641
- Connecting to the Remote Access Server for Subsequent Sessions (Pre-IKE Phase) on page 644

- Establishing an IPsec VPN Tunnel (IKE Phase) on page 645
- Related Topics on page 648

### **Connecting to the Remote Access Server for the First Time (Pre-IKE Phase)**

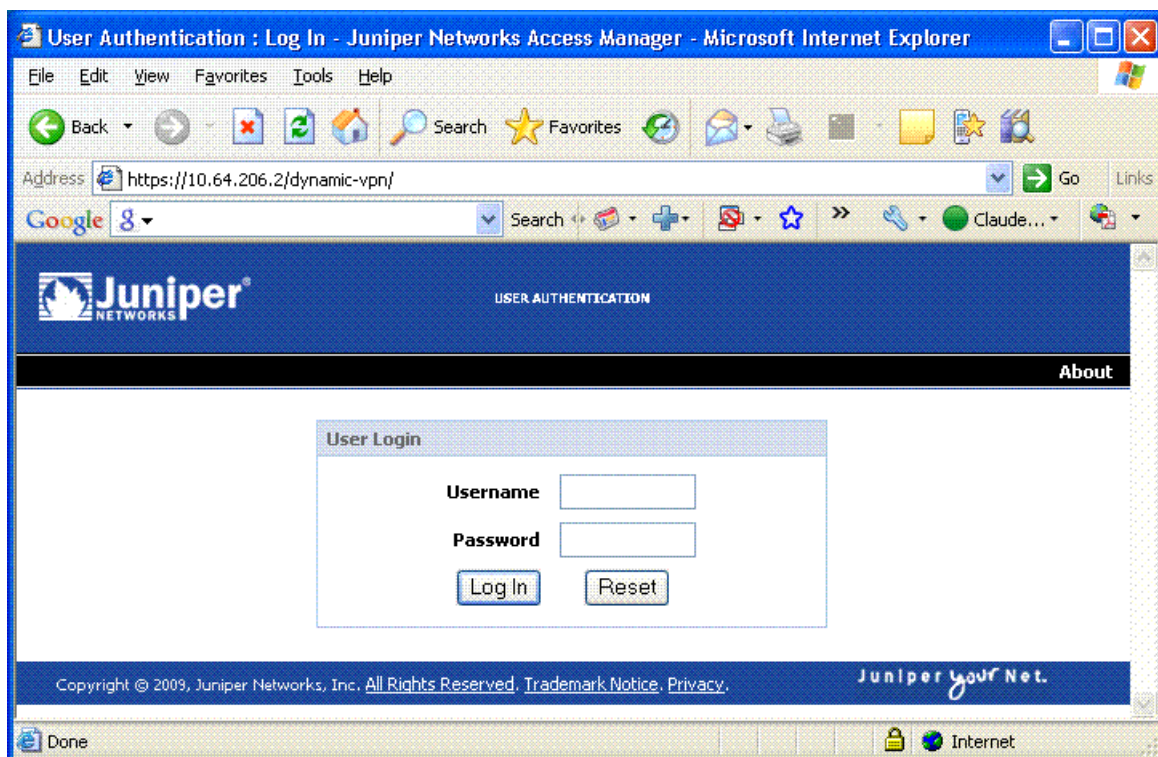
In order to establish a secure VPN tunnel from the user's computer to the Remote Access Server, the user must first authenticate into the server and download the client-side files as follows:

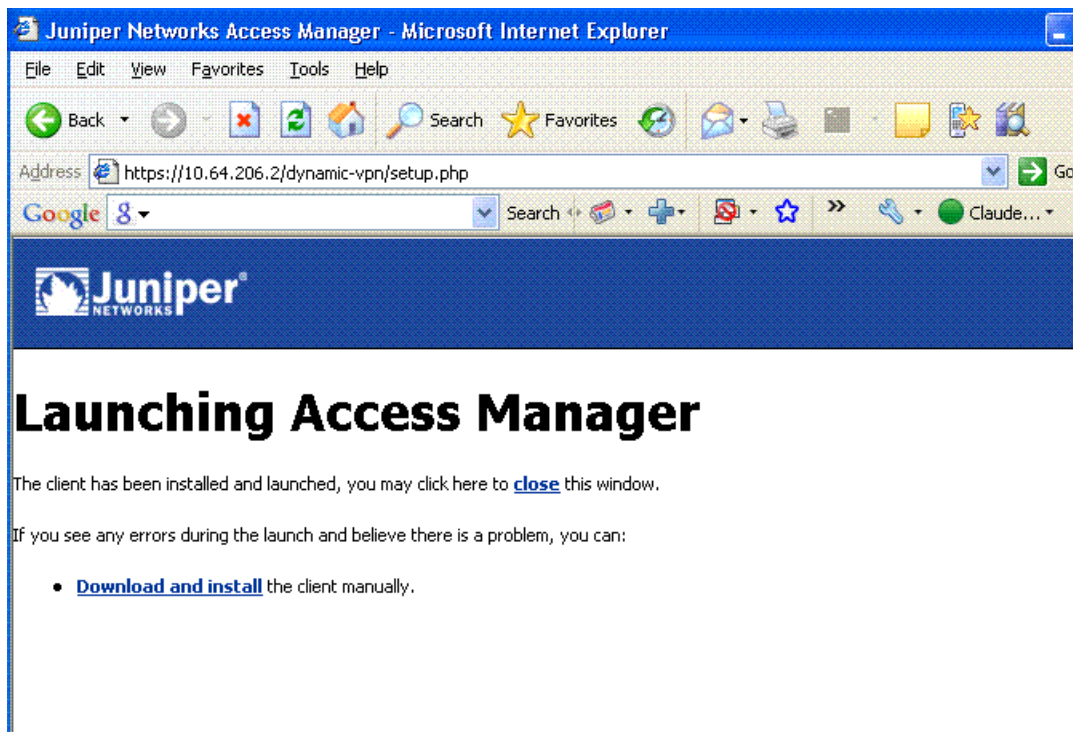
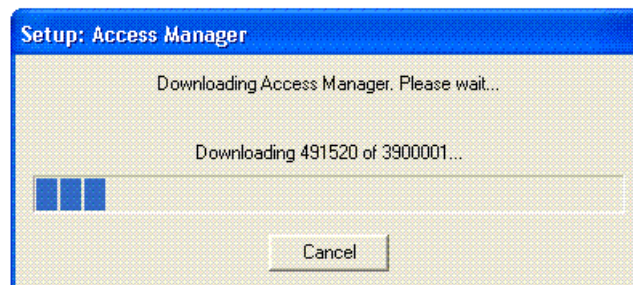
1. **The user accesses the server's URL.** The user navigates to the `https://<serverhost>/dynamic-vpn` URL through a Web browser. This URL directs the user to the dynamic VPN login page on the Remote Access Server.
2. **The user signs into the server.** The user enters the appropriate username and password into the login page, and the Remote Access Server sends them to the authentication server for validation.
3. **The server retrieves a client configuration.** Once the server determines that the user has successfully authenticated, the server determines which client configuration to use when creating a secure VPN tunnel. The configuration includes an IKE ID for the user (such as `johndoe.yourcompany.com`), a Phase 1 security key, and a generated token to establish eligibility for future client downloads.
4. **The server downloads the setup client to the user's computer.** The server downloads the setup client (along with the client version information, client initialization parameters, and client VPN configuration parameters) to the user's computer:
  - If the user is using Internet Explorer with Active-X enabled, the Remote Access Server downloads an Active-X setup client to the user's computer.
  - Otherwise, if the user is using a Web browser with Java enabled, the Remote Access Server downloads an Java setup client to the user's computer.
  - If the user does not have Active-X or Java enabled, the server presents a download page to the user, enabling the user to manually download the setup client.
5. **The setup client checks that the user has administrator privileges.** Once the server has successfully downloaded the setup client to the user's computer, the setup client checks that the user has the proper rights to install a new client. (Administrator privileges are required only to install the client, but not to upgrade it.)
6. **The setup client installs Access Manager.** The setup client installs Access Manager on the user's computer. The user will be prompted to restart the computer to finish the installation.

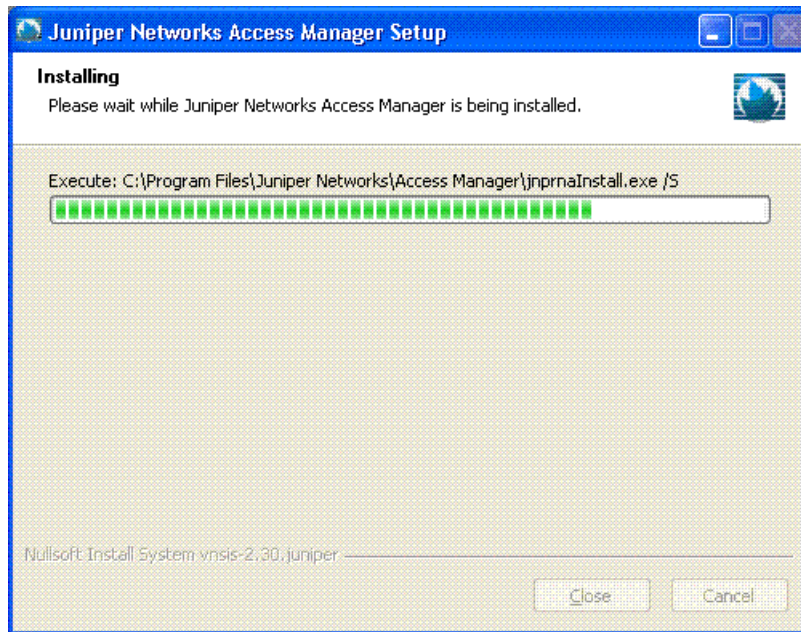
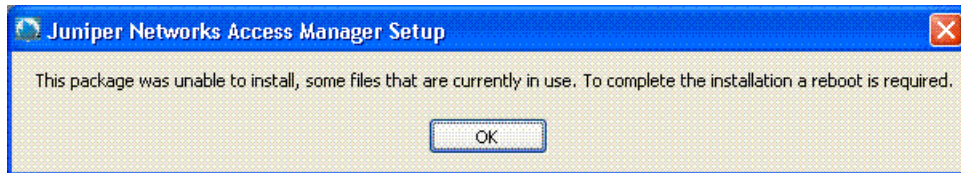
Once the Access Manager client is successfully launched, the user can initiate a secure VPN connection to the Remote Access Server from Access Manager. For more information, see "Establishing an IPsec VPN Tunnel (IKE Phase)" on page 645.

**NOTE:**

- You can also download the latest version of the Access Manager client from the Juniper Networks Support site.
- The user can connect to the Remote Access Server and initiate a client download before you have finished configuring the dynamic VPN feature. In this case, the user can still authenticate into the server, but will not be able to establish a secure VPN tunnel.

**Figure 131: Access Manager User Login**

**Figure 132: Access Manager Setup Client Installation Prompt****Figure 133: Access Manager Manual Installation Prompt****Figure 134: Downloading Access Manager**

**Figure 135: Installing Access Manager****Figure 136: Access Manager Reboot Prompt**

### **Connecting to the Remote Access Server for Subsequent Sessions (Pre-IKE Phase)**

If the user has already downloaded Access Manager, the process for signing into the Remote Access Server for subsequent sessions is as follows:

1. **The user accesses the server.** The user launches the Access Manager client that is preinstalled on the computer (recommended). Alternatively, the user can access the server through the dynamic VPN URL (<https://<serverhost>/dynamic-vpn>). If the user chooses to use this method, however, the server downloads Access Manager to the user's desktop—even if the client already exists. As part of this process, the Remote Access Server prompts the user for a username and password, checks that the user has the proper install privileges, generates a new connection token, and downloads the setup client, as explained in “Connecting to the Remote Access Server for the First Time (Pre-IKE Phase)” on page 641.
2. **The client determines if an upgrade is required.** The client checks the client configuration version installed on the user's computer. If a more recent version of the client is available, the client code either automatically upgrades the client software (if you have enabled the Force Upgrade option) or gives the user the option of upgrading (if you have not enabled the Force Upgrade option).

The user can initiate a secure VPN connection to the Remote Access Server from Access Manager once it is successfully launched. For more information, see “Establishing an IPsec VPN Tunnel (IKE Phase)” on page 645.

### ***Establishing an IPsec VPN Tunnel (IKE Phase)***

Once Access Manager is installed, the user can use it to initiate a secure VPN tunnel to the Remote Access Server as follows:

1. **The user launches Access Manager.** The user can launch Access Manager by using either of the following methods:
  - Choose **All Programs > Juniper Networks > Access Manager** from the Windows Start menu.
  - Select the Access Manager icon in the system tray at the lower right corner of the Windows screen.

When the user launches the client, the Access Manager dialog box appears.

2. **The user creates a connection to the server, if necessary.** If no connections are available in the Access Manager dialog box, the user must specify a connection server:
  - a. From the File menu, choose **Setup Connection**.
  - b. In the New Connection dialog box that appears, enter the hostname of the Remote Access Server and the appropriate username.
  - c. Click **OK**. The specified connection appears in the Access Manager dialog box.
3. **The user starts the connection.** In the Access Manager dialog box, the user selects which server connection to initiate by using one of the following methods:
  - Select one of the connections, right-click, and choose **Connect**.
  - Select one of the connections, and from the File menu, choose **Start Connection**.
4. **The server checks for a valid license.** When the user initiates a connection to a Remote Access Server, the server checks that a seat license is currently available for the user's session.
5. **The user signs into the server.** The user enters the appropriate username and password into the login page, and the Remote Access Server sends them to the authentication server for validation.



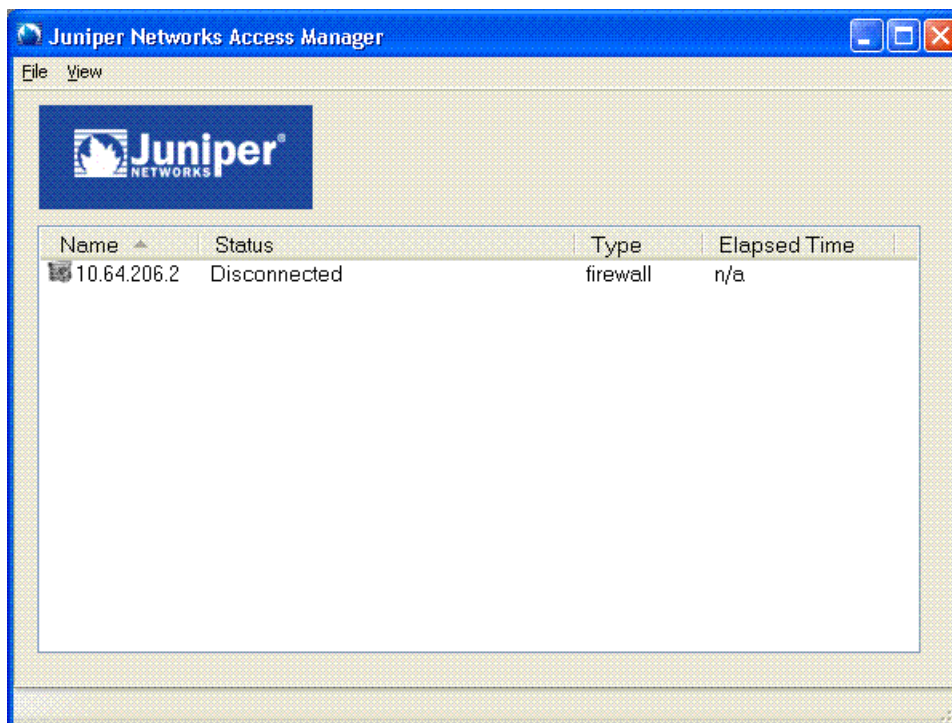
**NOTE:** The username and password entered here are used to validate the user's eligibility to establish the VPN session. These credentials are separate from those used to validate client the user's eligibility to download the client (as explained in "Connecting to the Remote Access Server for the First Time (Pre-IKE Phase)" on page 641).

6. **The client initiates the VPN session.** Once the user has successfully authenticated, the client sends a preshared key to the Remote Access Server. (The client initially received this key as part of the initial client configuration download.) The client and server use an AutoKey IKE exchange to create security associations (SAs) and establish a secure VPN tunnel (as explained in "Internet Protocol Security (IPsec)" on page 553).

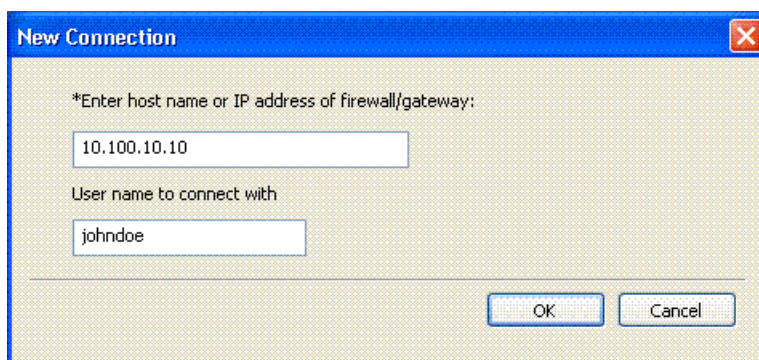
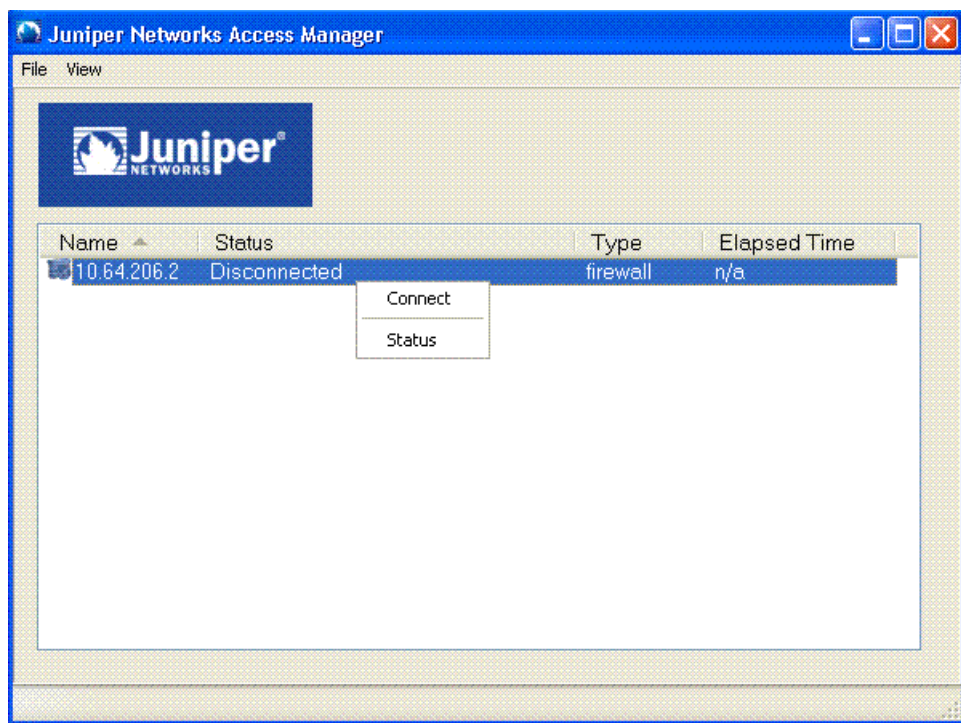
**Figure 137: Access Manager System Tray Icon**



**Figure 138: Access Manager Dialog Box**





**Figure 139: Creating a Firewall Connection in Access Manager****Figure 140: Starting a Firewall Connection in Access Manager**

**Figure 141: Successful Firewall Connection in Access Manager**

### **Related Topics**

“Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655

“Access Manager Client-Side Reference” on page 648

### **Access Manager Client-Side Reference**

The following sections outline information that can help end-users and administrators when installing, running, and troubleshooting Access Manager on end-users’ computers.

- Client-Side System Requirements on page 648
- Client-Side Files on page 649
- Client-Side Registry Changes on page 651
- Client-Side Error Messages on page 652
- Client-Side Logging and Connection Information on page 654

### **Client-Side System Requirements**

The user can install Access Manager on any Windows XP or Windows Vista machine with an Internet connection. The user must have administrator privileges to install the client, but not to run it.

Access Manager can run simultaneously on the same computer with other Juniper Networks clients, including the Odyssey Access Client (OAC), Network Connect client, Windows Secure Application Manager (WSAM) client, Host Checker client, and WX client.

## Client-Side Files

This section lists the directories where Access Manager installs files on a user's computer, the files it installs, and the files that remain after the user uninstalls the client.

**Table 112: Access Manager Client-Side Files**

Installation Directory	Files Installed in Directory	Files Remaining After Uninstall
%COMMONFILES%\Juniper Networks\Connection Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ConnectionManagerService.dll</li> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe.manifest</li> <li>■ versionInfo.ini</li> </ul>	install.log
%COMMONFILES%\Juniper Networks\ConnectionStore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ConnectionStoreService.dll</li> <li>■ dcfDOM.dll</li> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe.manifest</li> <li>■ versionInfo.ini</li> </ul>	install.log
%COMMONFILES%\Juniper Networks\IPSecMgr	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ ipsecmgr.dll</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe.manifest</li> <li>■ versionInfo.ini</li> </ul>	install.log
PROGRAMFILES%\Juniper Networks\Juniper Access Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ AccessServiceComponent.x86.exe</li> <li>■ ConnectionMgrComponent.x86.exe</li> <li>■ ConnectionStoreComponent.x86.exe</li> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ IPSecMgrComponent.x86.exe</li> <li>■ JamGUIComponent.x86.exe</li> <li>■ JamInstaller.dep</li> <li>■ jnprnaInstall.exe</li> <li>■ TunnelManagerComponent.x86.exe</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe.manifest</li> <li>■ versionInfo.ini</li> <li>■ vpnAccessMethodComponent.x86.exe</li> </ul>	install.log  Log file location: C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Juniper Networks\Logging

**Table 112: Access Manager Client-Side Files** *(continued)*

Installation Directory	Files Installed in Directory	Files Remaining After Uninstall
%COMMONFILES%\Juniper Networks\JamUI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ jamCommand.exe</li> <li>■ jamTray.exe</li> <li>■ jamUI.exe</li> <li>■ jamUIResource_EN.dll</li> <li>■ uiPlugin.dll</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe.manifest</li> <li>■ versionInfo.ini</li> </ul>	install.log
%COMMONFILES%\Juniper Networks\JUNS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ access.ini</li> <li>■ dsAccessService.exe</li> <li>■ dsInstallerService.dll</li> <li>■ dsLogService.dll</li> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe.manifest</li> <li>■ versionInfo.ini</li> </ul>	install.log
%COMMONFILES%\Juniper Networks\JNPRNA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ jnprna.cat</li> <li>■ jnprna.inf</li> <li>■ jnprna.sys</li> <li>■ jnprnaapi.dll</li> <li>■ jnprnaNetInstall.dll</li> <li>■ jnprnaNetInstall.log</li> <li>■ jnprna_m.cat</li> <li>■ jnprna_m.inf</li> <li>■ jnprva.cat</li> <li>■ jnprva.inf</li> <li>■ jnprva.sys</li> <li>■ jnprvamgr.cat</li> <li>■ jnprvamgr.dll</li> <li>■ jnprvamgr.inf</li> <li>■ jnprvamgr.sys</li> <li>■ nsStatsDump.exe</li> <li>■ uninst.exe</li> <li>■ versionInfo.ini</li> <li>■ %WINDIR%\system32\drivers\jnprna.sys</li> <li>■ %WINDIR%\system32\drivers\jnprva.sys</li> <li>■ %WINDIR%\system32\drivers\jnprvamgr.sys</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ jnprnaNetInstall.log</li> </ul>

**Table 112: Access Manager Client-Side Files** (continued)

Installation Directory	Files Installed in Directory	Files Remaining After Uninstall
COMMONFILES%\Juniper Networks\Tunnel Manager	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ dsTMClient.dll</li> <li>■ dsTMSERVICE.dll</li> <li>■ dsTunnelManager.dll</li> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ TM.dep</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe.manifest</li> <li>■ versionInfo.ini</li> </ul>	install.log
%COMMONFILES%\Juniper Networks\vpnAccessMethod	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ install.log</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe</li> <li>■ Uninstall.exe.manifest</li> <li>■ versionInfo.ini</li> <li>■ vpnAccessMethod.dll</li> <li>■ vpnAccessMethod_EN.dll</li> </ul>	install.log

### Client-Side Registry Changes

This section lists the Windows Registry changes that the Access Manager client and components make to your users' computers when creating dynamic VPN tunnels.

**Table 113: Access Manager Client-Side Registry Changes**

Registry Key Location	Registry Key Changes
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Juniper Networks\Common Files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ jnprnaapi" = "C:\Program Files\Common Files\Juniper Networks\JNPRNA\jnprnaapi.dll</li> <li>■ jnprvamgr" = "C:\Program Files\Common Files\Juniper Networks\JNPRNA\jnprvamgr.dll</li> <li>■ nsStatsDump" = "C:\Program Files\Common Files\Juniper Networks\JNPRNA\nsStatsDump.exe</li> <li>■ dsLogService" = "C:\Program Files\Common Files\Juniper Networks\JUNS\dsLogService.dll</li> <li>■ dsTMClient" = "C:\Program Files\Common Files\Juniper Networks\Tunnel Manager\dsTMClient.dll</li> <li>■ dsTunnelManager" = "C:\Program Files\Common Files\Juniper Networks\Tunnel Manager\dsTunnelManager.dll</li> </ul>
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Juniper Networks\Logging	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ LogFileName" = "C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Juniper Networks\Logging\debuglog.log</li> <li>■ "Level" = "3"</li> <li>■ "LogSizeInMB" = "10"</li> </ul>

**Table 113: Access Manager Client-Side Registry Changes** (*continued*)

Registry Key Location	Registry Key Changes
HKCU\Software\Juniper Networks\Access Manager\	(Content varies. Contains client configuration data downloaded from the server.)

## Client-Side Error Messages

This section lists possible errors that end users might see when installing or running Access Manager.

The following table lists the possible errors that the end user might see, the possible causes for the messages, and suggested actions.

**Table 114: Dynamic VPN Client-Side Errors**

Error Message	Possible Causes	Suggested User Action
Component instance already in use	Internal error	Try to reconnect to the firewall.
Memory allocation failure	Internal error	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, exit and restart Access Manager.
Failed to load connection store	Internal error	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, exit and restart Access Manager.
Cannot get connection information for firewall	Internal error. Could not retrieve connection information for the specified firewall.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, exit and restart Access Manager.
Authentication failure: Unknown HTTP response code	Internal error. Could not decipher the HTTP response.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Authentication failure: Incorrect username or password	The user entered an invalid username or password.	Reenter your credentials.
Authentication failure: Firewall is out of licenses	All available licenses are currently being used for other dynamic VPN sessions or no licenses are installed for the feature.	Try to reconnect to the firewall once a license has been freed by another user. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Authentication failure: No configuration available	No configuration is currently available for the specified user account.	Contact your system administrator.
Cannot create IPsec route entry	Internal error. Failed to read route entry from the connection store.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, exit and restart Access Manager.
Failed to read route entry from connection store	Internal error. Failed to read the route entry from the connection store.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, exit and restart Access Manager.

**Table 114: Dynamic VPN Client-Side Errors** (continued)

Error Message	Possible Causes	Suggested User Action
Failed to add route entry to policy	Internal error. Failed to add the route entry to the connection store.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, exit and restart Access Manager.
Failed to initialize IPsec Manager	Internal error. Failed to initialize the IPsec Manager.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, exit and restart Access Manager.
IPsec authentication failed	Phase 1 negotiations, extended authentication (Xauth), or Phase 2 negotiations failed.	Try to reconnect to the firewall.
IPsec configuration failed	Internal error or policy configuration error. The Tunnel Manager was unable to configure the local IP settings.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
IKE negotiations failed	The components cannot agree on security parameters during the IKE exchange. The administrator probably needs to reconfigure the Phase 1 proposal.	Contact your system administrator.
Failed to initialize authentication	Failed to authenticate when connecting to the firewall, possibly because the specified hostname did not resolve against the distinguished name server (DNS).	Try to reconnect to the firewall.
Failed to connect to server	The TCP connection to the Web server failed during authentication, possibly due to network connectivity issues.	Try to reconnect to the firewall.
Failed to send initial HTTP request	Web server authentication failed, possibly due to network connectivity issues.	Try to reconnect to the firewall.
Failed to get HTTP response	Web server authentication failed.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Firewall refused authentication request	Web server authentication failed.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Client failed to provide login page	Web server authentication failed.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Server failed to send authentication request	Web server authentication failed.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Server failed to respond to authentication request	The client sent the user's credentials to the Web server, but the server failed to respond in a useful manner.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Authentication negotiation failed	Web server authentication failed.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Failed to get configuration from firewall	Web server authentication failed.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
The user cancelled authentication.	User cancelled authentication	Try to reconnect to the firewall and reenter your credentials.

**Table 114: Dynamic VPN Client-Side Errors** (continued)

Error Message	Possible Causes	Suggested User Action
Failed to enter username or password	Authentication request timed out.	Try to reconnect to the firewall and reenter your credentials.
Server failed to request username and password	The client failed to display the user interface asking the user for credentials.	Exit and restart Access Manager. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Your client state is preventing the connection	The user's client is in an inoperable state.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, exit and restart Access Manager.
Cannot open connection store	The client could not contact the connection store.	Exit and restart Access Manager. If the problem persists, reinstall Access Manager.
Cannot process configuration provided by firewall	The script provided by the firewall was in some way unusable. The configuration might need to be updated on the server.	Try to reconnect to the firewall. If the problem persists, contact your system administrator.
Access Manager is not running	The Access Manager service is not running.	Exit and restart Access Manager.
Please select a connection	The user chose <b>Start Connection</b> without selecting a connection first.	Select the firewall you want to connect to and then choose <b>Start Connection</b> .
Are you sure you want to delete the selected connection?	The user chose <b>Delete Connection</b> .	Specify whether or not you want to delete the selected connection profile.
Cannot add new connection. Service is not running.	The Access Manager service is not running; therefore it cannot create a new connection profile.	Exit and restart Access Manager. If the problem persists, reinstall Access Manager.
Cannot add new connection	The Access Manager failed to add the new connection profile.	Try again. If the problem persists, exit and restart Access Manager.
Connection name is already in use	Unable to add connection profile because the specified connection name already exists.	Specify a unique name for the connection profile.
Please reinstall Access Manager	Files could not be found when trying to finish the operation.	Reinstall Access Manager.
Invalid server certificate	Certificate validation failed.	Check client-side logs to determine why the certificate failed.
Initializing service...	Initializing one of the client's core components. If the component does not initialize, the client cannot function.	Wait for the service to finish initializing.

## Client-Side Logging and Connection Information

Access Manager provides the following logging and connection information that you can use to troubleshoot client-side issues:



- **Client-side logs:** To view client-side logs, open Access Manager and choose **Save logs and diagnostics** from the File menu. Select a location on your computer to save the zipped log files and click **Save**.
- **Detailed logs:** To create more detailed client-side logs, open Access Manager and choose **Enable Detailed Logging** from the File menu.
- **Firewall connection information:** To view connection information for a given firewall, open Access Manager, select the firewall, right-click, and choose **Status**.

## Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview

---

The dynamic VPN feature secures traffic through your network by passing it through IPsec VPN tunnels. To configure an IPsec VPN tunnel, you must specify Phase 1 settings (which enable participants to establish a secure channel in which to negotiate the IPsec security association (SA)), and Phase 2 settings (which enable participants to negotiate the IPsec SA that authenticates traffic flowing through the tunnel). This section describes the order in which you must configure these tunnel negotiation settings as well as other tasks you must complete in order to enable the tunnels on your network.

The dynamic VPN feature is disabled by default on the device. You must enable and configure it before you can use it.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) Overview” on page 554.
- “Understanding IKE and IPsec Packet Processing” on page 562.

To configure the dynamic VPN feature, you must do the following:

1. Define an outgoing interface by using the **edit interfaces** configuration statement. Use this interface to pass IKE security associations (SAs) through the device. (You will need to select this interface when configuring your IKE gateway.) For more information about interfaces, see the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
2. Create security policies by using the **edit security policies** configuration statement. Use these policies to define which traffic can pass through your network. (After you create your VPN configuration, you will need to add it to this policy.) For more information about security policies, see “Security Policies Overview” on page 431.
3. Create at least one access profile by using the **edit access profile** configuration statement. Use the access profile(s) to control the authentication of users who want to download Access Manager and users who want to establish dynamic VPN tunnels to your firewall. (You will need to select these access profiles when configuring your IKE gateway and dynamic VPN global options. Note that you can use the same access profile to authenticate users in both cases, or you can

use separate access profiles to authenticate downloads and VPN sessions.) For more information about access profiles, see “Understanding Authentication Schemes” on page 511.

4. Create an IKE gateway to include in your VPN configuration:
  - a. Create one or more IKE Phase 1 proposals by using the **edit security ike proposal** configuration statement. (You will need to select this proposal when configuring your IKE policy.) For more detailed configuration instructions, see:
    - Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 573
    - Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 657
  - b. Create one or more IKE policies by using the **edit security ike policy** configuration statement. (You will need to select this policy when configuring your IKE gateway.) For more detailed configuration instructions, see:
    - Configuring an IKE Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 578
    - Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 660
  - c. Create an IKE gateway configuration by using the **edit security ike gateway** configuration statement. (You will need to select this gateway when configuring your IPsec AutoKey.) For more detailed configuration instructions, see:
    - Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 583
    - Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 662
5. Create an IPsec AutoKey to include in your VPN configuration:
  - a. Create one or more IPsec Phase 2 proposals by using the **edit security ipsec proposal** configuration statement. (You will need to select this proposal when configuring your IPsec policy.) For more detailed configuration instructions, see:
    - Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 589
    - Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 666
  - b. Create one or more IPsec policies by using the **edit security ipsec policy** configuration statement. (You will need to select this policy when configuring your IPsec AutoKey.) For more detailed configuration instructions, see:
    - Configuring an IPsec Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 594
    - Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 669
  - c. Create an IKE AutoKey configuration by using the **edit security ipsec autokey** configuration statement. (You will need to select this IKE AutoKey

configuration when configuring your VPN client configuration.) For more detailed configuration instructions, see:

- Configuring IPsec AutoKey (Standard and Dynamic VPNs) on page 600
  - Configuring an IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 671
6. Create a client VPN configuration by using the `edit security dynamic-vpn clients` configuration statement. The settings are downloaded as part of the client to your users' computers and are used to establish the dynamic VPN tunnels between the clients and the server. For more detailed configuration instructions, see:
    - Creating a Client Configuration—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 675
    - Creating a Client Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 678
  7. Update your security policy (or policies) to include your client VPN configuration by using the `edit security from-zone zone-name to-zone zone-name policy then permit tunnel ipsec-vpn vpn-name` configuration statement. For more information about policies, see “Security Policies Overview” on page 431.
  8. Specify global settings for client downloads by using the `edit security dynamic-vpn access-profile` configuration statement and the `edit security dynamic-vpn force-upgrade` configuration statement. For more detailed configuration instructions, see:
    - Configuring Global Client Download Settings—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs) on page 679
    - Configuring Global Client Download Settings (Dynamic VPNs) on page 681

## Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure an IKE Phase 1 proposal. (For information about configuring a Phase 1 proposal using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 573.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

Figure 142 on page 658 shows the Quick Configuration page where you can select an existing proposal, or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Figure 142: IKE Phase 1 Proposal Quick Configuration Page – Adding a Proposal**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Dynamic VPN**

---

IKE Gateway    IKE Policy    **Phase 1 Proposal**

---

**Phase 1 Proposal**

No IKE proposals (P1) have been defined.

---

---

Figure 143 on page 658 shows the Quick Configuration page where you create a new proposal.

**Figure 143: IKE Phase 1 Proposal Quick Configuration Page – Configuring a Proposal**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Dynamic VPN**

---

**IKE Proposal (Phase 1)**

\* Name  ?

\* Authentication algorithm  ?

\* Authentication method  ?

Description  ?

Dh group  ?

\* Encryption algorithm  ?

Lifetime seconds  ?

---

To configure a Phase 1 Proposal with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Dynamic VPN > IKE**.
2. Select the **Phase 1 Proposal** tab if it is not selected.
3. To modify an existing proposal, click the appropriate link in the **Name** column to go to the proposal's configuration page. Or, select the proposal from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **Apply**.
  - To delete the configuration, click **Delete**.
4. To configure a new Phase 1 proposal, click **Add**.

5. Fill in the options as described in Table 115 on page 659.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
  - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 115: Phase 1 Proposal Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IKE Proposal (Phase 1)</b>		
Name	Name to identify the proposal.	Enter a name.
Authentication algorithm	<p>Authentication Header (AH) algorithm the device uses to verify the authenticity and integrity of a packet. Supported algorithms include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>md5</b>—Produces a 128-bit digest.</li> <li>■ <b>sha1</b>—Produces a 160-bit digest.</li> <li>■ <b>sha-256</b>—Produces a 256-bit digest.</li> </ul>	Select an authentication algorithm.
Authentication method	Method the device uses to authenticate the source of Internet Key Exchange (IKE) messages. The dynamic VPN feature only uses preshared keys for authentication. With this method, both participants must have the key before beginning tunnel negotiations.	No action is required. The device displays this information for informational purposes only.
Description	Description of the proposal.	Enter a brief description of the Phase 1 proposal.
Dh group	Allow participants to produce a shared secret value over an unsecured medium without actually transmitting the value across the connection.	Select a Diffie-Hellman group. If you configure multiple (up to four) proposals for Phase 1 negotiations, use the same Diffie-Hellman group in all proposals.
Encryption algorithm	<p>Supported Internet Key Exchange (IKE) proposals include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>3des-cbc</b>—3DES-CBC encryption algorithm</li> <li>■ <b>aes-128-cbc</b>—AES-CBC 128-bit encryption algorithm</li> <li>■ <b>aes-192-cbc</b>—AES-CBC 192-bit encryption algorithm</li> <li>■ <b>aes-256-cbc</b>—AES-CBC 256-bit encryption algorithm</li> <li>■ <b>des-cbc</b>—DES-CBC encryption algorithm</li> </ul>	Select an encryption algorithm.
Lifetime seconds	Lifetime (in seconds) of an IKE security association (SA). When the SA expires, it is either replaced by a new SA and security parameter index (SPI) or the SA is terminated.	Select a lifetime for the IKE security association (SA). Range: 180 through 86,400 seconds. Default: 3,600 seconds.

## Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure an IKE policy. (For information about configuring an IKE policy using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IKE Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 578.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

Figure 144 on page 660 shows the Quick Configuration page where you can select an existing proposal, or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Figure 144: IKE Policy Quick Configuration Page – Adding a New Policy**

**Quick Configuration**

**Dynamic VPN**

IKE Gateway   **IKE Policy**   Phase 1 Proposal

**IKE Policy**

No IKE policies have been defined.

Add

Apply

Figure 145 on page 661 shows the Quick Configuration page where you create a new IKE policy.

**Figure 145: IKE Policy Quick Configuration Page – Configuring a Policy**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Dynamic VPN**

---

**IKE Policy**

\* Name  ?

Description  ?

Mode  ?

---

☒ **Pre shared key**

☐ **Ascii text**  ?

☐ **Hexadecimal**  ?

---

**Proposal**

☒ **None**

☐ **User Defined**

---

To configure an IKE policy with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Dynamic VPN > IKE**.
2. Select **IKE Policy** tab if it is not selected.
3. To modify an existing policy, click the appropriate link in the **Name** column to go to the policy's configuration page. Or, select the policy from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **Apply**.
  - To delete the configuration, click **Delete**.
4. To configure a new IKE policy, click **Add**.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 116 on page 662.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
  - To cancel the configuration, click **Cancel**.

**Table 116: IKE Policy, Authentication, and Proposal Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IKE Policy</b>		
Name	Name to identify the policy.	Enter a name.
Description	Description of the policy.	Enter a brief description of the policy.
Mode	Specifies how participants should exchange encryption and authentication information during Phase 1 tunnel negotiations. The dynamic VPN feature only uses aggressive mode, which transfers the information between participants in two exchanges.	No action is required. The device displays this information for informational purposes only.
<b>Pre-shared Key</b>		
Pre-shared key	Use one of the following preshared key types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ASCII text</li> <li>■ Hexadecimal</li> </ul>	Click <b>Pre shared key</b> , click the type of key, and enter the key in the appropriate format.
<b>Proposal</b>		
None	Do not use proposals	Click <b>None</b> .
User Defined	Use up to four Phase 1 proposals that you previously defined. If you include multiple Phase 1 proposals in the IKE policy, use the same Diffie-Hellman group in all of the proposals.	Click <b>User Defined</b> , select a proposal (or proposals) from the pop-up menu, and click <b>Add</b> .

## Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure an IKE Gateway. (For information about configuring an IKE gateway using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IKE Gateway (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 583.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

Figure 146 on page 663 shows the Quick Configuration page where you can select an existing gateway, or click **Add** to create a new one.



**Figure 146: IKE Gateway Quick Configuration Page – Adding a Gateway**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Dynamic VPN**

---

**IKE Gateway**

IKE Policy

Phase 1 Proposal

---

**IKE Gateway**

No IKE gateways have been defined.

---

---

Figure 147 on page 664 shows the Quick Configuration page where you create a new IKE gateway.

**Figure 147: IKE Gateway Quick Configuration Page – Configuring a Gateway**


---

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Dynamic VPN**

---

**IKE Gateway**

\* Name  ?

\* IKE Policy  ?

\* External Interface  ?

NAT Keepalive Interval  ? (default: 5 seconds)

---

Local Identity  ?

---

**Dynamic Remote Identifier**

Connections limit  ?

IKE User Hostname  ?

---

**Dead Peer Detection**

Enable DPD ☐ ?

Always send ☐ ?

Interval  ? (default: 10 seconds)

Threshold  ? (default: 5)

---

**XAuth**

Access Profile  ?

---

---

To configure an IKE gateway with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Dynamic VPN > IKE**.
2. Select the **IKE Gateway** tab if it is not selected.
3. To modify an existing IKE gateway, click the appropriate link in the **Name** column to go to the gateway's configuration page. Or, select the gateway from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **Apply**.
  - To delete the configuration, click **Delete**.



**NOTE:** The list of IKE gateways displayed on this page includes both standard VPN gateways and dynamic VPN gateways.

4. To configure a new IKE gateway, click **Add**.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 117 on page 665.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
  - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 117: IKE Gateway Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IKE Gateway</b>		
Name	Name to identify the IKE gateway.	Enter a name.
IKE Policy	IKE policy to associate with the IKE gateway. An IKE policy specifies the type of preshared key to use during Phase 1 negotiations as well as which Phase 1 proposal(s) to use.	Select a previously created IKE policy.
External Interface	Outgoing interface to use when establishing security associations (SAs). An interface acts as a doorway through which traffic enters and exits the JUNOS device.	Specify a previously created interface.
NAT Keepalive Interval	The dynamic VPN feature automatically includes support for NAT traversal (NAT-T). The NAT keepalive interval controls how often NAT keepalive packets can be sent so that NAT translation continues.	Specify a maximum interval in seconds at which NAT keepalive packets can be sent. Range: 1 through 300 seconds. Default: 5 seconds.
Local Identity	<p>Local identity of the endpoint computer to send in the IKE exchange. You can identify the local identity in any of the following ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>IP Address</b>—Use an IPv4 IP address to identify the endpoint computer.</li> <li>■ <b>Hostname</b>—Use a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) to identify the endpoint computer.</li> <li>■ <b>User at Hostname</b>—Use an e-mail address to identify the endpoint computer.</li> </ul> <p>If you do not configure a local identity, the device uses the virtual IP address assigned by the Radius server during the Xauth configuration exchange.</p>	Specify an IP address, hostname, or user-at-hostname.
<b>Dynamic Remote Identifier</b>		
Connections limit	Maximum number of concurrent connections allowed. When the maximum number of connections is reached, no more dynamic VPN endpoint users attempting to access an IPsec VPN are allowed to begin Internet Key Exchange (IKE) negotiations.	Specify the maximum number of concurrent users that can be connected to the gateway (Remote Access Server).

**Table 117: IKE Gateway Options** (*continued*)

Field	Function	Action
IKE User Hostname	Name or identifier to use when establishing the VPN tunnel. We recommend entering the fully qualified domain name to identify the dynamic peer, but you can enter any name or identifier as long as it is unique.	Specify one primary name or identifier and up to four backups.
<b>Dead Peer Detection</b>		
Enable DPD	Enable dead peer detection (DPD), as outlined in <i>RFC 3706 Dead Peer Detection</i> .	Click the check box to disable or enable. (Disabled by default.)
Always Send	Send DPD requests regardless of whether there is outgoing IPsec traffic to the peer.	Click the check box to disable or enable. (Disabled by default.)
Interval	Amount of time that the peer waits for traffic from its destination peer before sending a DPD request packet.	Enter the interval at which to send DPD messages. Range: 1 through 60 seconds. Default: 10.
Threshold	Maximum number of unsuccessful DPD requests that can be sent before the peer is considered unavailable.	Enter the maximum number of unsuccessful DPD requests to be sent. Range: 1 through 5. Default: 5.
<b>XAuth</b>		
Access Profile	Provide extended authentication (XAuth), in addition to IKE authentication, for remote users trying to access a VPN tunnel.  <b>NOTE:</b> This Access Profile option does not control authentication for users trying to download Access Manager. For client download authentication, use the Access Profile option on the Global Settings Quick Configuration page. For more information, see “Configuring Global Client Download Settings—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 679.	Select a previously created access profile.

## Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure IPsec Phase 2 proposals. (For information about configuring a Phase 2 proposal using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IPsec Phase 2 Proposal (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 589.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

Figure 148 on page 667 shows the Quick Configuration page where you can select an existing proposal, or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Figure 148: Phase 2 Proposal Quick Configuration Page – Adding a Proposal**

The screenshot shows the 'Quick Configuration' page for 'Dynamic VPN'. Under the 'Phase 2 Proposal' tab, it states 'No IPsec proposals (P1) have been defined.' and features an 'Add' button. An 'Apply' button is also visible at the bottom.

Figure 149 on page 667 shows the Quick Configuration page where you create a new proposal.

**Figure 149: Phase 2 Proposal Quick Configuration Page – Configuring a Proposal**

The screenshot shows the 'Quick Configuration' page for 'Dynamic VPN' with the 'IPsec Proposal (Phase 2)' tab selected. It contains the following fields and controls:

- Name:** A text input field with a red asterisk and a help icon (?)
- Description:** A text input field with a help icon (?)
- Authentication algorithm:** A dropdown menu with a help icon (?)
- Encryption algorithm:** A dropdown menu with a help icon (?)
- Lifetime kilobytes:** A text input field with a help icon (?)
- Lifetime seconds:** A text input field with a help icon (?)
- Protocol:** A dropdown menu with a help icon (?)

At the bottom, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

To configure an IPsec Phase 2 proposal with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Dynamic VPN > IPsec AutoKey**.
2. Select the IPsec **Phase 2 Proposal** tab if it is not selected

3. To modify an existing proposal, click the appropriate link in the **Name** column to go to the proposal's configuration page. Or, select the proposal from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **Apply**.
  - To delete the configuration, click **Delete**.
4. To configure a new Phase 2 proposal, click **Add**.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 118 on page 668.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
  - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 118: IPsec Phase 2 Proposal Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IPsec Proposal (Phase 2)</b>		
Name	Name to identify the Phase 2 proposal.	Enter a name.
Description	Description of the Phase 2 proposal.	Enter a brief description of the proposal.
Authentication algorithm	Hash algorithm that authenticates packet data. You can choose one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>hmac-md5-96</b>—Produces a 128-bit digest.</li> <li>■ <b>hmac-sha1-96</b>—Produces a 160-bit digest.</li> </ul>	Select a hash algorithm.
Encryption algorithm	IKE algorithm used to encrypt data. You can choose one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>3des-cbc</b>—Has a block size of 24 bytes; the key size is 192 bits long.</li> <li>■ <b>aes-128-cbc</b>—AES 128-bit encryption algorithm.</li> <li>■ <b>aes-192-cbc</b>—AES 192-bit encryption algorithm.</li> <li>■ <b>aes-256-cbc</b>—AES 256-bit encryption algorithm.</li> <li>■ <b>des-cbc</b>—Has a block size of 8 bytes; the key size is 48 bits long.</li> </ul>	Select an encryption algorithm.
Lifetime kilobytes	Lifetime (in kilobytes) of an IPsec security association (SA). The SA is terminated when the specified number of kilobytes of traffic have passed.	Enter a value from 64 through 1,048,576 bytes.
Lifetime seconds	Lifetime (in seconds) of an IKE security association (SA). When the SA expires, it is either replaced by a new SA and security parameter index (SPI) or the SA is terminated.	Enter a value from 180 through 86,400 seconds.

**Table 118: IPsec Phase 2 Proposal Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
Protocol	<p>Type of security protocol. Supported options include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>ah</b>—Authentication Header (AH) protocol verifies the authenticity/integrity of the content and origin of a packet.</li> <li>■ <b>esp</b>—Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) protocol ensures privacy (encryption) and source authentication and content integrity (authentication).</li> </ul>	Select a protocol for the proposal.

## Configuring an IPsec Policy—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure an IPsec policy. (For information about configuring an IPsec policy using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring an IPsec Policy (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 594.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

Figure 150 on page 669 shows the Quick Configuration page where you can select an existing policy, or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Figure 150: IPsec Policy Quick Configuration Page – Adding a Policy**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Dynamic VPN**

---

IPSec AutoKey    **IPSec Policy**    Phase 2 Proposal

---

**IPSec Policy**

No IPSEC policies have been defined.

---

---

Figure 151 on page 670 shows the Quick Configuration page where you create a new IPsec policy.

**Figure 151: IPsec Policy Quick Configuration Page – Configuring a Policy**

**Quick Configuration**

**Dynamic VPN**

---

**IPSec Policy**

\* Name  ?

Description  ?

Perfect Forward Secrecy  ?

---

**Proposal**

☒ None

☐ User Defined

---

To configure an IPsec policy with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Dynamic VPN > IPsec Policy**.
2. Select the **IPsec Policy** tab if it is not selected.
3. To modify an existing policy, click the appropriate link in the **Name** column to go to the policy's configuration page. Or, select the policy from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **Apply**.
  - To delete the configuration, click **Delete**.
4. To configure a new IPsec policy, click **Add**.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 119 on page 671.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
  - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.



**Table 119: IPsec Policy Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IPsec Policy</b>		
Name	Name to identify the policy.	Enter a name.
Description	Description of the policy.	Enter a brief description of the policy.
Perfect Forward Secrecy	Method the device uses to generate the encryption key. Perfect Forward Secrecy generates each new encryption key independently from the previous key. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>group1</b>—Diffie-Hellman Group 1.</li> <li>■ <b>group2</b>—Diffie-Hellman Group 2.</li> <li>■ <b>group5</b>—Diffie-Hellman Group 5.</li> </ul>	Select a method.
<b>Proposal</b>		
None	Do not use a proposal.	Click <b>None</b> .
User Defined	Use up to four Phase 2 proposals that you previously defined. If you include multiple Phase 2 proposals in the IPsec policy, use the same Diffie-Hellman group in all of the proposals.	Click <b>User Defined</b> , select a proposal (or proposals) from the pop-up menu, and click <b>Add</b> .

## Configuring an IPsec Autokey—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure IPsec AutoKey. (For information about configuring an IPsec AutoKey using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring IPsec AutoKey (Standard and Dynamic VPNs)” on page 600.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

Figure 152 on page 672 shows the Quick Configuration page where you can select an existing policy, or click **Add** to create a new one.

**Figure 152: IPsec Autokey Quick Configuration Page – Adding an Autokey VPN**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Dynamic VPN**

---

**IPSec AutoKey**    IPSec Policy    Phase 2 Proposal

---

**AutoKey VPN**

No IPSEC AutoKey VPNs have been defined.

---

---

Figure 153 on page 673 shows the Quick Configuration page where you create a new IPsec AutoKey.

**Figure 153: IPsec Autokey Quick Configuration Page – Configuring an Autokey VPN**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Dynamic VPN**

---

**IPSec AutoKey VPN**

\* VPN Name  ?

\* Remote gateway  ?

Idle time  ?

Install interval  ? (default: 1 second)

\* IPsec policy  ?

Disable anti replay ☐ ?

---

Use proxy identity ☐ ?

Local IP/Netmask  ?

Remote IP/Netmask  ?

Service  ?

---

Don't Fragment bit  ?

Establish tunnels  on-traffic ?

---

---

To configure an IPsec AutoKey with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Dynamic VPN > IPsec Autokey**.
2. Select the **IPsec AutoKey** tab if it is not selected.
3. To modify an existing IPsec AutoKey configuration, click the appropriate link in the **Name** column to go to the configuration page. Or, select the policy from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **Apply**.
  - To delete the configuration, click **Delete**.
4. To configure a new IPsec AutoKey, click **Add**.
5. Fill in the options as described in Table 120 on page 674.
6. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
  - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 120: IPsec AutoKey Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>IPsec Autokey VPN</b>		
VPN Name	Name to identify the IPsec AutoKey.	Enter a name.
Remote gateway	IKE gateway to associate with the IPsec AutoKey. An IKE gateway specifies a variety of IKE configuration options, including which IKE policy to use, how to identify endpoint computers during IKE exchanges, NAT options, dead peer detection options, and Xauth options.	Select a previously created IKE gateway.
Idle time	Maximum amount of time to allow a security association (SA) to remain idle before deleting it.	Specify a value between 60 and 999,999 seconds.
Install interval	Maximum number of seconds to allow the installation of a rekeyed outbound SA on the device.	Specify a value between 0 and 10 seconds.
IPsec policy	IPsec policy to associate with the IPsec AutoKey. An IPsec policy specifies the Diffie-Hellman group to use when generating encryption keys as well as the Phase 2 proposals to use.	Select a previously created IPsec policy.
Disable anti replay	Replay attacks occur when somebody intercepts a series of packets and uses them to flood the system or gain entry into a trusted system. Select this option to enable replay protection.	Click the check box to disable or enable. (Disabled by default.)
Use proxy identity	(Optional) Specify the IPsec proxy identity to use in IKE negotiations. The default behavior is to use the identities taken from the firewall policies.	Click the check box to disable or enable. (Disabled by default.)
Local IP/Netmask	Local IP address and subnet mask for the proxy identity.	Enter an IP address and subnet mask.
Remote IP/Netmask	Remote IP address and subnet mask for the proxy identity.	Enter an IP address and subnet mask.
Service	Service (port and protocol combination) to protect.	Select a service.
Don't fragment bit	Specify how the device should handle the Don't Fragment (DF) bit in the outer header. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>clear</b>—Clear (disable) the DF bit from the outer header. This is the default.</li> <li>■ <b>copy</b>—Copy the DF bit to the outer header.</li> <li>■ <b>set</b>—Set (enable) the DF bit in the outer header.</li> </ul>	Choose an option.

**Table 120: IPsec AutoKey Configuration Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
Establish tunnels	Specify when to activate IKE: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>immediately</b>—Activate IKE immediately after the VPN is configured and changes are committed.</li> <li>■ <b>on-traffic</b>—Activate IKE only when data traffic flows and must be negotiated.</li> </ul>	Choose an option.

## Creating a Client Configuration—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly create or modify a client configuration that downloads to the user's computer along with the Access Manager client. (For information about creating or modifying a client configuration using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see "Creating a Client Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)" on page 678.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- "Dynamic VPN Overview" on page 639.
- "Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview" on page 655.

**Figure 154: Client Configuration Quick Configuration Page**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**Dynamic VPN**

---

**Client Configuration**

\* Name  ?

IPSec VPN  ?

---

**Remote Sources IP**

	?
<div></div>	

---

**Remote Exceptions IP**

	?
<div></div>	

---

**Users**

	?
<div></div>	

---

---

Figure 154 on page 676 shows the Quick Configuration page where you create a new client configuration.

To create or modify a client configuration with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Dynamic VPN > Global Settings**.
2. To modify an existing configuration, click the appropriate link in the **Client VPN Configuration** column to go to the configuration page. Or, select the client configuration from among those listed and click one of the following buttons:

- To apply the configuration, click **Apply**.
  - To delete the configuration, click **Delete**.
3. To create a new client configuration, click **Add**.
  4. Fill in the options as described in Table 121 on page 677.
  5. Click one of the following buttons:
    - To apply the configuration, click **OK**.
    - To cancel the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 121: Client VPN Configuration Options**

Field	Function	Action
<b>Client Configuration</b>		
Name	Name to identify the client configuration.	Enter a name.
IPSec VPN	IKE AutoKey configuration to use when establishing the VPN tunnel.	Select a previously created IKE AutoKey configuration.
<b>Remote Address</b>		
Remote Sources IP	<p>IP address and netmask of a resource behind the firewall. Traffic to the specified resource will go through the VPN tunnel and therefore will be protected by the firewall's security policies.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The device does not validate that the IP/netmask combination that you enter here matches up with your security policies.</p>	Enter an IP address and netmask and click <b>Add</b> .
Remote Exceptions IP	IP address and netmask of exceptions to the remote protected resources list.	Enter an IP address and netmask and click <b>Add</b> .
<b>Users</b>		
Users	<p>List of users that can use this client configuration.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The server does not validate the names that you enter here, but the names must be the names that the users use to log onto the device when downloading the client.</p>	Enter a user name and click <b>Add</b> .

## Creating a Client Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)

Client configurations control which resources should be protected by the VPN configuration and specify which users can download the client.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

In this example, you configure the device to protect the 10.100.100.0/24 resource, but specify that the 0.0.0.0/0, 1.1.1.1/24, and 0.0.0.0/32 resources are exempt. You specify that the dynamic VPN feature should use the ipsec-config VPN configuration to create the VPN tunnel. In addition, you add johndoe and janedoe to the list of users who can download the client.

To configure client configurations, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. (For information about configuring client configurations using J-Web Quick Configuration pages, see “Creating a Client Configuration—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 675.)

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 678
- CLI Configuration on page 679

### J-Web Configuration

To create a client configuration in J-Web:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Dynamic vpn, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Clients, click **Add New Entry**.
5. In the Name field, enter **config1**.
6. Enter **ipsec-config** in the **Ipsec vpn** field.
7. Next to Remote protected resources, click **Add New Entry**.
8. In the Resource ip field, enter **10.100.100.0/24** and click **OK**.
9. Next to Remote exceptions, click **Add New Entry**.
10. In the Exception ip field, enter **0.0.0.0/0** and click **OK**.
11. Next to Remote exceptions, click **Add New Entry**.



12. In the Exception ip field, enter **1.1.1.1/24** and click **OK**.
13. Next to Remote exceptions, click **Add New Entry**.
14. In the Exception ip field, enter **0.0.0.0/32** and click **OK**.
15. Next to User, click **Add New Entry**.
16. In the Name field, enter **johndoe** and click **OK**.
17. Next to User, click **Add New Entry**.
18. In the Name field, enter **janedoe** and click **OK**.
19. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

## CLI Configuration

To create a client configuration in the CLI editor:

```
user@host# set security dynamic-vpn clients config1 remote-protected-resources
10.100.100.0/24
user@host# set security dynamic-vpn clients config1 remote-exceptions 0.0.0.0/0,
1.1.1.1/24, 0.0.0.0/32
user@host# set security dynamic-vpn clients config1 ipsec-vpn ipsec-config
user@host# set security dynamic-vpn clients config1 user johndoe, janedoe
```

## Configuring Global Client Download Settings—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure global dynamic VPN settings. (For information about configuring global dynamic VPN settings using the CLI editor or the standard J-Web configuration pages (not Quick Configuration pages), see “Configuring Global Client Download Settings (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 681.)

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

Figure 155: Global Settings Quick Configuration Page

Quick Configuration

Dynamic VPN

Dynamic VPN

Access Profile

?

Force Upgrade

?

Client VPN Configuration

No Dynamic VPN Configs configured.

Add...

Apply

Figure 155 on page 680 shows the quick configuration page where you can modify global settings.



**NOTE:** For information about creating a client configuration, see “Creating a Client Configuration—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 675.

To create or modify global dynamic VPN settings with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Dynamic VPN > Global Settings**.
2. Fill in the options as described in Table 121 on page 677.
3. To apply the configuration, click **OK**.

Table 122: Client VPN Configuration Options

Field	Function	Action
Dynamic VPN		

**Table 122: Client VPN Configuration Options** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Action
Access Profile	<p>Access profile that controls the authentication of users who want to download Access Manager. (You will need to select these access profiles when configuring your IKE gateway and dynamic VPN global options. Note that you can use the same access profile to authenticate users in both cases, or you can use separate access profiles to authenticate downloads and VPN sessions.)</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This Access Profile option does not control authentication for VPN sessions. For session authentication, use the Access Profile option on the IKE Gateway Quick Configuration page. For more information, see “Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 662.</p>	Select a previously created access profile.
Force Upgrade	<p>Enable this option if you want the setup program to automatically download the latest client and install it on the user’s computer when the setup program detects a version mismatch between the client and server. Otherwise, the setup program prompts the user to upgrade the client when it detects a version mismatch, but does not force the upgrade. If the user does not choose to upgrade, the setup program will launch the existing client version that resides on the user’s computer.</p>	Click the check box to enable or disable. (Enabled by default.)

## Configuring Global Client Download Settings (Dynamic VPNs)

Global dynamic VPN settings enable you to control authentication and upgrade options for Access Manager. The following example-based instructions show how to configure global dynamic VPN settings.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- “Dynamic VPN Overview” on page 639.
- “Configuring a Dynamic VPN—Overview” on page 655.

In this example, you configure the device to use the “remote-users” access profile to control the authentication of users who try to download Access Manager. You also configure the setup program to automatically upgrade the client on users’ machines when it detects that a more current version of the client is available on the server.



---

**NOTE:** For information about creating a client configuration, see “Creating a Client Configuration (Dynamic VPNs)” on page 678.

---

To configure dynamic VPN global settings, use either the J-Web or the CLI configuration editor. (For information about configuring global settings using J-Web Quick Configuration pages, see “Configuring VPN Global Settings—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 571.)

This topic covers:

- J-Web Configuration on page 682
- CLI Configuration on page 682

### ***J-Web Configuration***

To configure global dynamic VPN settings using J-Web:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Dynamic vpn, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. From the Access profile list, select **remote-users**.
5. Select the **Force Upgrade** checkbox.
6. To save and commit the configuration, click **Commit**.

### ***CLI Configuration***

To configure global dynamic VPN settings using the CLI editor:

```
user@host# set security dynamic-vpn clients remote-users
user@host# set security dynamic-vpn force-upgrade
```

## Chapter 21

# NetScreen-Remote VPN Client

The Juniper Networks NetScreen-Remote VPN client is a virtual private network (VPN) client that you can install on a PC or laptop computer to send and receive secure communications over the Internet. NetScreen-Remote client is certified by the International Computer Security Association (ICSA) as an IPsec-compliant VPN solution.

When NetScreen-Remote client operates on an unprotected public network, such as the Internet, it can create a VPN tunnel between your PC or laptop computer and a J-series Services Router running JUNOS software. The tunnel secures IPsec traffic sent across a public or private TCP/IP network. NetScreen-Remote client allows you to specify an internal network IP address to be sent for client-to-gateway communications.

NetScreen-Remote client starts automatically each time the computer starts and runs transparently behind other software applications.

This chapter includes:

- System Requirements for NetScreen-Remote Client Installation on page 683
- Installing the NetScreen-Remote Client on a PC or Laptop on page 684
- Configuring the Firewall on the Router on page 689
- Configuring the PC or Laptop on page 692
- Logging In to the NetScreen Remote Client on page 702

## System Requirements for NetScreen-Remote Client Installation

You can install the NetScreen-Remote client in the environment described in Table 123 on page 683.

**Table 123: System Requirements**

PC-compatible computer	Pentium processor or its equivalent
Operating system	Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional
	Microsoft Windows XP Professional or Home Edition.
Minimum RAM	64 MB RAM for Windows 2000 or Windows XP.

**Table 123: System Requirements** (*continued*)

Available hard disk space	Minimum 5 MB, maximum 35 MB
Software installation	CD-ROM drive, network drive, or Web site
Communications protocol	IPsec and IKE L2TP with Windows 2000 ( <i>optional</i> )  Native Microsoft TCP/IP
Dial-up connections	Internal or external modem connection—an analog, DSL, or cable modem line connected to your PC or laptop through a serial or USB port  Native Microsoft Dial-up Networking  PPPoE drivers  Compatible with America Online (AOL) 6.0 or later
Network connections	Ethernet  Wireless Ethernet (802.11 a/b)
Help file viewer	Microsoft Internet Explorer 4.0 or later

## Installing the NetScreen-Remote Client on a PC or Laptop

Use one of three installation methods to start installing the NetScreen-Remote client on your PC or laptop computer. Then complete the installation.

### Before You Begin

Verify that your PC or laptop meets the necessary system requirements. See “System Requirements.”

This topic covers:

- Starting NetScreen-Remote Client Installation on page 684
- Completing NetScreen-Remote Client Installation on page 686

### Starting NetScreen-Remote Client Installation

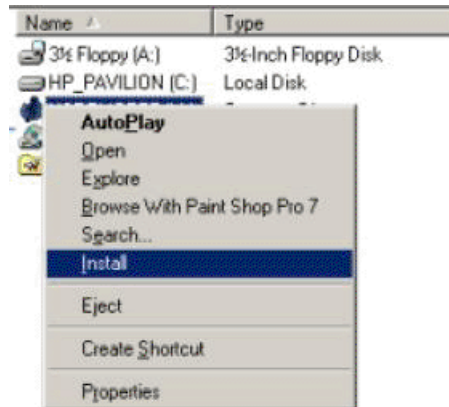
Use one of the following methods to begin installing the NetScreen-Remote Client on your PC or laptop computer:

- Starting Installation from a CD-ROM on page 685
- Starting Installation from a Network Share Drive on page 685
- Starting Installation from a Web Site on page 685

## Starting Installation from a CD-ROM

Figure 156 on page 685 shows the Install menu.

**Figure 156: Select Install**



To install the NetScreen-Remote Client from a CD-ROM:

1. Make sure all applications are closed.
2. Insert the NetScreen-Remote client CD into the CD-ROM drive.
3. Right-click the CD-ROM drive on your computer—for example, **D:\**. (This example uses **D** to designate the CD-ROM drive. Your computer might be configured differently.)
4. The menu shown in Figure 156 on page 685 appears.
5. To install the NetScreen-Remote client, select **Install** from the menu.
6. Go on to “Completing NetScreen-Remote Client Installation” on page 686.

## Starting Installation from a Network Share Drive

To install the NetScreen-Remote Client from a network share drive:

1. Map to the network drive.
2. Locate the NetScreen-Remote client files.
3. To run the NetScreen-Remote client setup application, double-click **setup.exe**.
4. Go on to “Completing NetScreen-Remote Client Installation” on page 686.

## Starting Installation from a Web Site

To install the NetScreen-Remote Client from a Web site:

1. Locate the NetScreen-Remote client files on the Juniper Networks Web site <http://juniper.net>.
2. Select **setup.exe**, and download the file.
3. After the file is downloaded, unzip the file to **C:\temp**.
4. To run the NetScreen-Remote client setup application, double-click **setup.exe**.
5. Go on to “Completing NetScreen-Remote Client Installation” on page 686.

### **Completing NetScreen-Remote Client Installation**

Figure 157 on page 686 shows the Welcome Screen page.

**Figure 157: Welcome Screen**

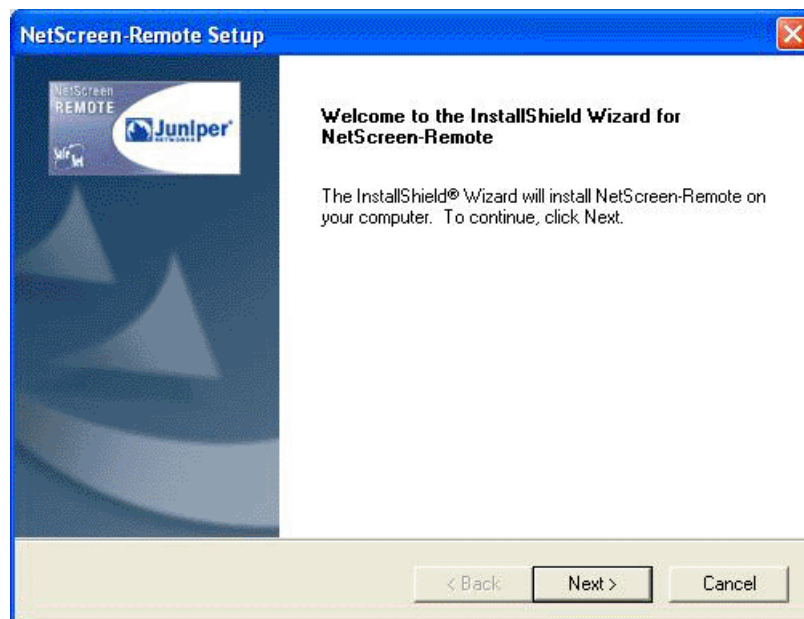


Figure 158 on page 687 shows the License Agreement page.



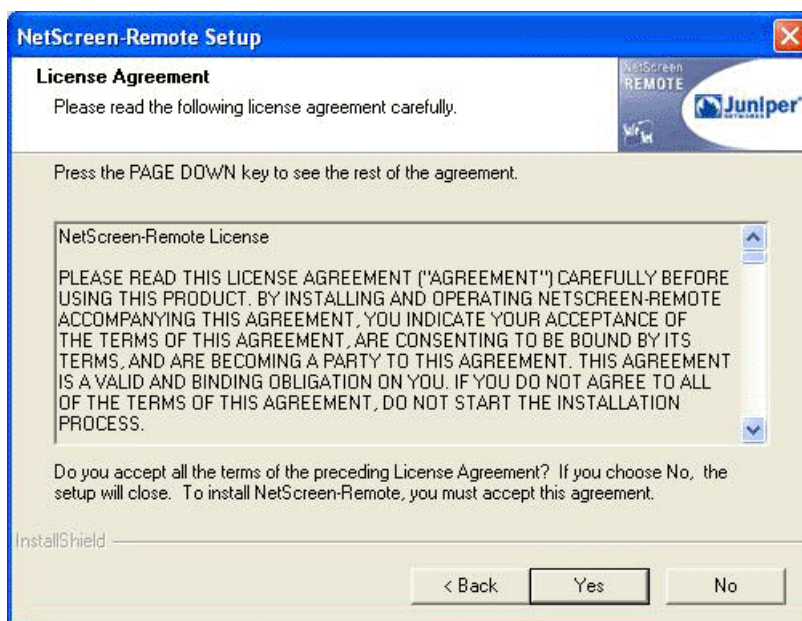
**Figure 158: License Agreement**

Figure 159 on page 687 shows the Installation Setup Type page.

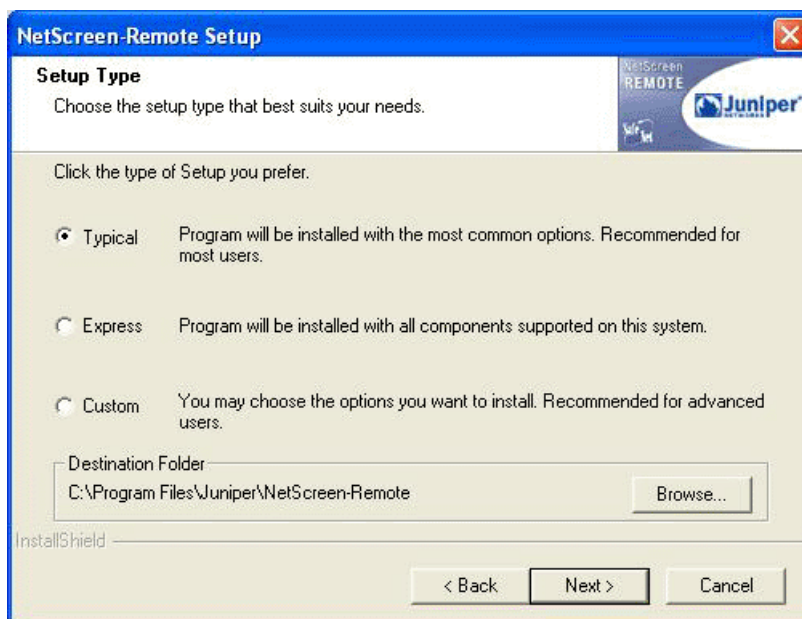
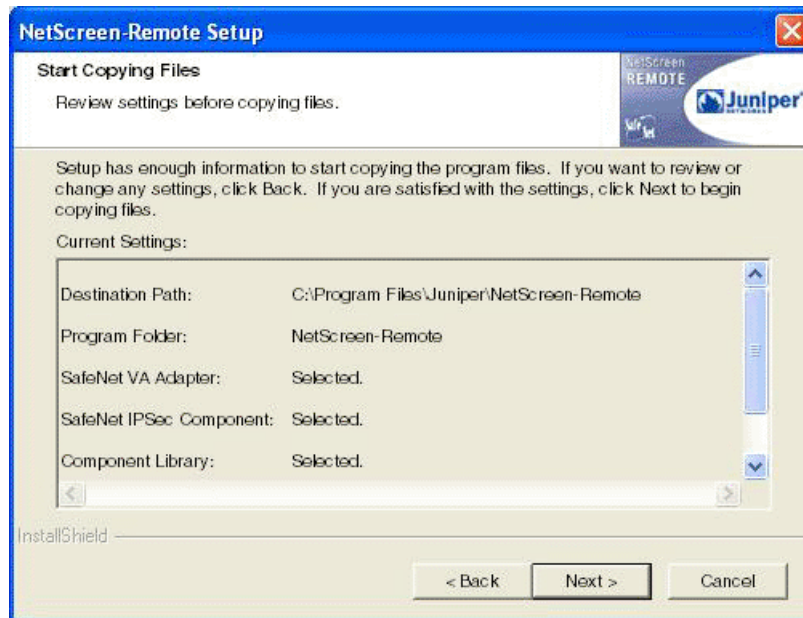
**Figure 159: Installation Setup Type**

Figure 160 on page 688 shows the Start Copying Files page.

**Figure 160: Start Copying Files**

After you have finished initial installation (see “Starting NetScreen-Remote Client Installation” on page 684), complete the NetScreen-Remote client installation:

1. When the InstallShield Wizard starts as shown in Figure 157 on page 686, click **Next**.
2. On the Software License Agreement page (Figure 158 on page 687), read the agreement and click **Yes** to continue.
3. In the Setup Type dialog box (Figure 159 on page 687), select one of the following options:
  - **Typical**—Recommended for most users. This option installs all VPN client components in the default destination folder `C:\Program Files\NetScreen\NetScreen-Remote`.
  - **Express**—Installs only the components that the system supports.
  - **Custom**—Enables you to individually select the components to install.

To install the NetScreen-Remote client in the default destination folder `C:\Program Files\NetScreen\NetScreen-Remote`, click **Next**.

4. Verify your selections in the window that appears (Figure 160 on page 688), and click **Next**.

The NetScreen-Remote client files are copied to the program folder that you specified. A progress bar shows you the status of the installation.

Your computer automatically reboots after a successful installation. To cancel the reboot process, click **Cancel** in the progress bar before device timeout.

## Configuring the Firewall on the Router

For the NetScreen-Remote client to have a VPN tunnel to the J-series router running JUNOS software, you must configure a firewall on the router.

### Before You Begin

Install the NetScreen-Remote client on your PC or laptop. See “Installing the NetScreen-Remote Client on a PC or Laptop” on page 684.

This topic covers:

- Firewall Configuration Overview on page 689
- Configuring a Security Zone on page 689
- Configuring a Tunnel Interface on page 690
- Configuring an Access Profile for XAuth on page 691
- Configuring an IKE Gateway on page 691
- Configuring Policies on page 692

## Firewall Configuration Overview

Perform the following tasks to configure the JUNOS software firewall on the router:

1. Configure a security zone where the VPN client is to terminate. For more information, see “Configuring a Security Zone” on page 689.
2. Configure a tunnel interface to identify the VPN. For more information, see “Configuring a Tunnel Interface” on page 690.
3. Configure the eXtended Authentication (XAuth) settings. For more information, see “Configuring an Access Profile for XAuth” on page 691.
4. Configure an IKE gateway and phase 1 proposal. For more information, see “Configuring an IKE Gateway” on page 691.
5. Configure firewall policies to permit or deny traffic. For more information, see “Configuring Policies” on page 692.

## Configuring a Security Zone

You must configure a security zone where the VPN client is to terminate. Terminating the VPN client in a separate security zone allows you to filter traffic coming from the VPN client and apply advanced security functions such as deep-inspection, traffic shaping, and policy actions. For more information on these features, see “Attack Detection and Prevention” on page 89 and “Security Policies Overview” on page 431.

To configure a security zone:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Zones**.

2. Click **Add** to create new zones.
3. Create a new zone called **vpn**. For more information on creating zones, see “Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration” on page 73.

## Configuring a Tunnel Interface

You must create a tunnel interface and bind it to the security zone (**vpn**) that you created in “Configuring a Security Zone” on page 689. Then you can bind the VPN to the tunnel interface in the VPN configuration.

Figure 161 on page 690 shows the Interface List page.

**Figure 161: Interface List**

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Interfaces](#)

Quick Configuration

**Interfaces**

Interface Name	Link State	Configured	Description
<a href="#">ge-0/0/0</a>	Up	Yes	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/0.0</a>	Up	Yes	Logical Unit 0 on Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/0'
<a href="#">ls-0/0/0</a>	Up	No	Link Services Interface 'ls-0/0/0'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/1</a>	Down	No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/1'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/2</a>	Down	No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/2'
<a href="#">ge-0/0/3</a>	Down	No	Gigabit Ethernet Interface 'ge-0/0/3'
<a href="#">fxp0</a>	Up	No	Management Interface 'fxp0'
<a href="#">lo0</a>	Up	Yes	Loopback Interface 'lo0'
<a href="#">lo0.0</a>	Up	Yes	Logical Unit 0 on Loopback Interface 'lo0'
<a href="#">lo0.16384</a>	Up	No	Logical Unit 16384 on Loopback Interface 'lo0'
<a href="#">pp0</a>	Up	No	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet Interface 'pp0'

OK Cancel Apply

To configure a tunnel interface to be used for the VPN:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Interfaces**. A list of the network interfaces available on the router appears, as shown in Figure 161 on page 690. The third column indicates whether the interface has been configured.
2. Configure properties for a network interface by selecting the interface name and following the instructions in “Configuring a Gigabit Ethernet Interface—Quick Configuration” on page 85.

To configure interfaces other than Gigabit Ethernet interfaces, see the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.

## Configuring an Access Profile for XAuth

The router uses an access profile to verify extended authentication (XAuth) for remote users trying to access a virtual private network (VPN) tunnel. Before you configure XAuth as part of the IKE gateway, you must configure an access profile for remote users. You refer to this access profile from the IKE gateway configuration. When you configure an access profile for XAuth, you must specify RADIUS as the type of authentication server (authentication-order radius).

The following sample commands create an access profile called **xauth** that sets RADIUS as the authentication method and specifies the IP address of the RADIUS server, the number of the port on which to contact the server (1812 by default), and the secret password shared between the router and the server:

```
user@host# set access profile xauth authentication-order radius
user@host# set access profile xauth radius-server 10.157.90.244 port 1812
user@host# set access profile xauth radius-server 10.157.90.244 secret " $9
```

## Configuring an IKE Gateway

IKE configuration is needed to identify the clients using the JUNOS software firewall. Usually you configure one IKE user per client installed, but because XAuth is used as an extra layer of authentication, the shared IKE ID is used to build Phase 1 of the VPN tunnel.

Perform the following tasks to complete the configuration:

1. Configure an IKE Phase 1 proposal. See “Configuring an IKE Phase 1 Proposal—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 574.
2. Configure an IKE policy. In Phase 1 IKE policy configuration, you must set the mode in which the Phase 1 channel is negotiated, specify the type of key exchange to be used, and reference the Phase 1 proposal. See “Configuring an IKE Policy—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 579.
3. Configure the IKE gateway. In Phase 1 gateway configuration, you must configure a gateway and reference the Phase 1 policy. You must configure the router to use a shared IKE ID and limit the number of concurrent connections.

The following sample commands configure an IKE gateway named **jsr\_gateway** for up to 100 concurrent users. The remote (dynamic) users have an unspecified IP address but use the e-mail address **test@juniper.net** as their shared IKE ID. The trusted external interface for traffic from these users is **fe-3/0/20**. The gateway uses extended authentication (XAuth) to verify the authenticity of these users with the previously created access profile **xauth**. (See “Configuring an Access Profile for XAuth” on page 691)

```
user@host# set security ike gateway jsr_gateway dynamic user-at-hostname "
test@juniper.net"
user@host# set security ike gateway jsr_gateway dynamic connections-limit 100
user@host# set security ike gateway jsr_gateway dynamic ike-user-type
shared-ike-id
user@host# set security ike gateway jsr_gateway external-interface fe-3/0/2
user@host# set security ike gateway jsr_gateway xauth access-profile xauth
```

Alternatively, for J-Web Quick Configuration, see “Configuring an IKE Gateway—Quick Configuration (Standard VPNs)” on page 584.



**NOTE:** Make sure you select the access profile that you set using the CLI statements in “Configuring an Access Profile for XAuth” on page 691.

## Configuring Policies

Now that you have the VPN clients terminating in the `vpn` zone, configure a policy that allows traffic from the VPN zone to any destination zone. Make sure that the policy configuration is not **any any**, and is an IPsec configuration. For example, the following commands set a security policy for VPN match from **zone A** to **zone B** and source and destination address as any and application as any. If these conditions match, then permit traffic through the tunnel `ipsec-vpn test`.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone A to-zone B policy VPN match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone A to-zone B policy VPN match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone A to-zone B policy VPN match application
any
user@host# set security policies from-zone A to-zone B policy VPN then permit tunnel
ipsec-vpn test
```

To configure security policies with J-Web Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Security Policies > Policies**.
2. Select the Default Policy Action, **Deny All** or **Permit All**.
3. In the From Zone and To Zone boxes, select the zone direction. You must have preconfigured the security zones for which you want to set policies. For more information, see “Configuring Security Zones—Quick Configuration” on page 73.

## Configuring the PC or Laptop

### Before You Begin

Configure a firewall on the J-series router you are creating a tunnel to. See “Configuring the Firewall on the Router” on page 689.

You can use a preshared key operation when the NetScreen-Remote client has either a fixed or dynamically assigned IP address. There are three steps to setting up a NetScreen-Remote client for a VPN tunnel with a preshared key:

1. “Creating a New Connection” on page 693
2. “Creating the Preshared Key” on page 696
3. “Defining the IPsec Protocols” on page 697

## Creating a New Connection

First initiate a new connection. Then name the connection, define it as secure, and determine the identification and location of the other end of the eventual VPN tunnel.

Figure 162 on page 693 shows the NetScreen-Remote Client Icon in the Task Bar page.

**Figure 162: NetScreen-Remote Client Icon**

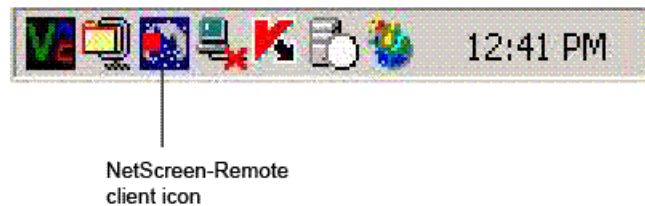
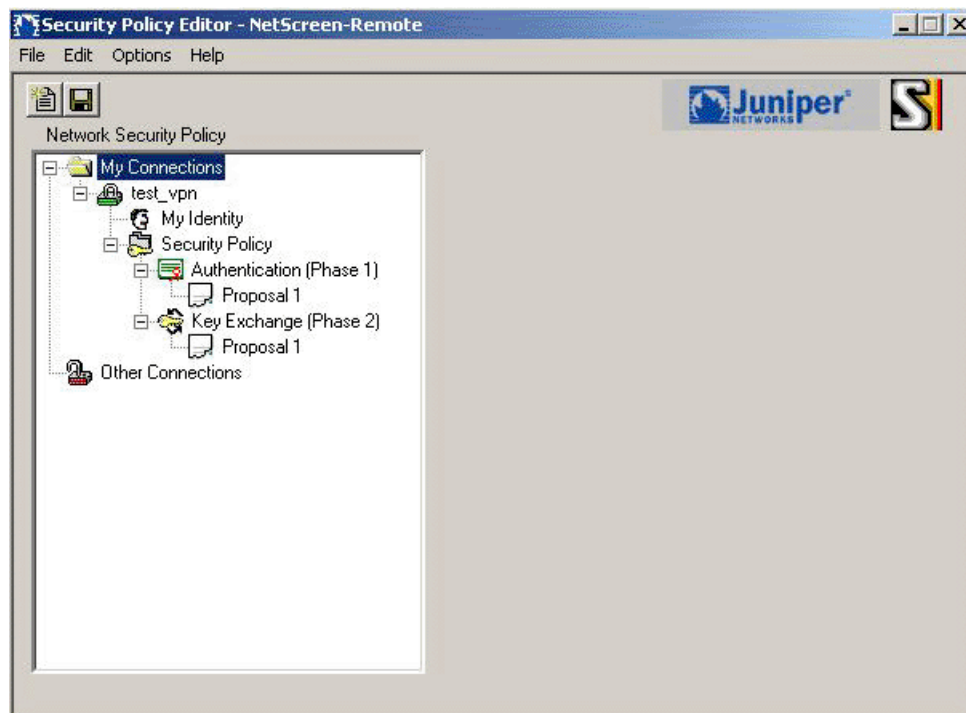


Figure 163 on page 693 shows the Security Policy Editor page.

**Figure 163: Security Policy Editor**



New Connection appears in the Network Security Policy list, as shown in Figure 164 on page 694.

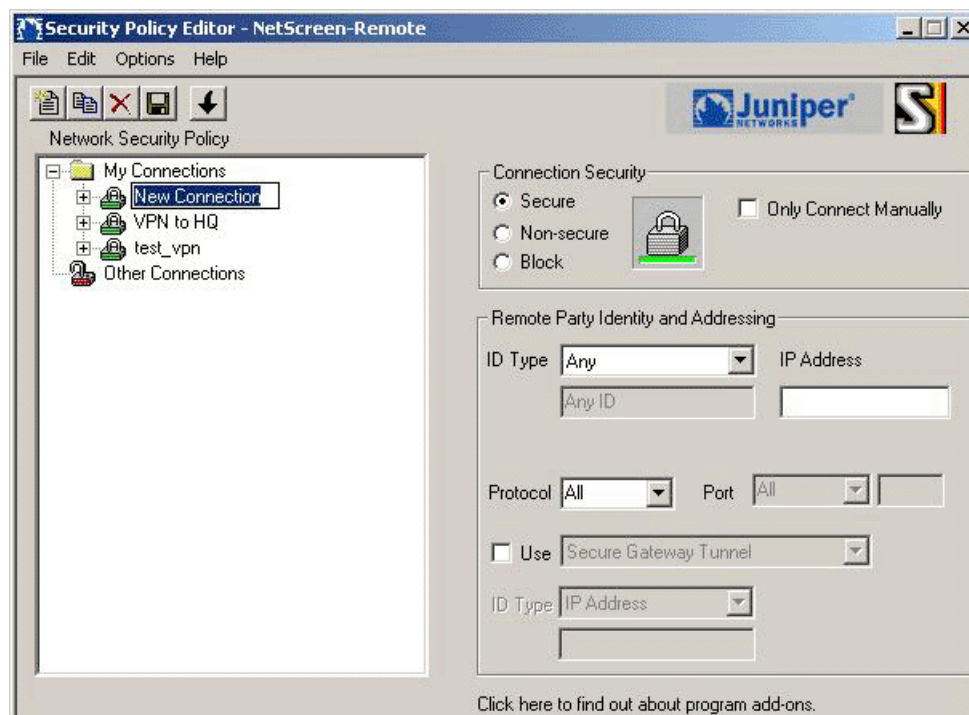
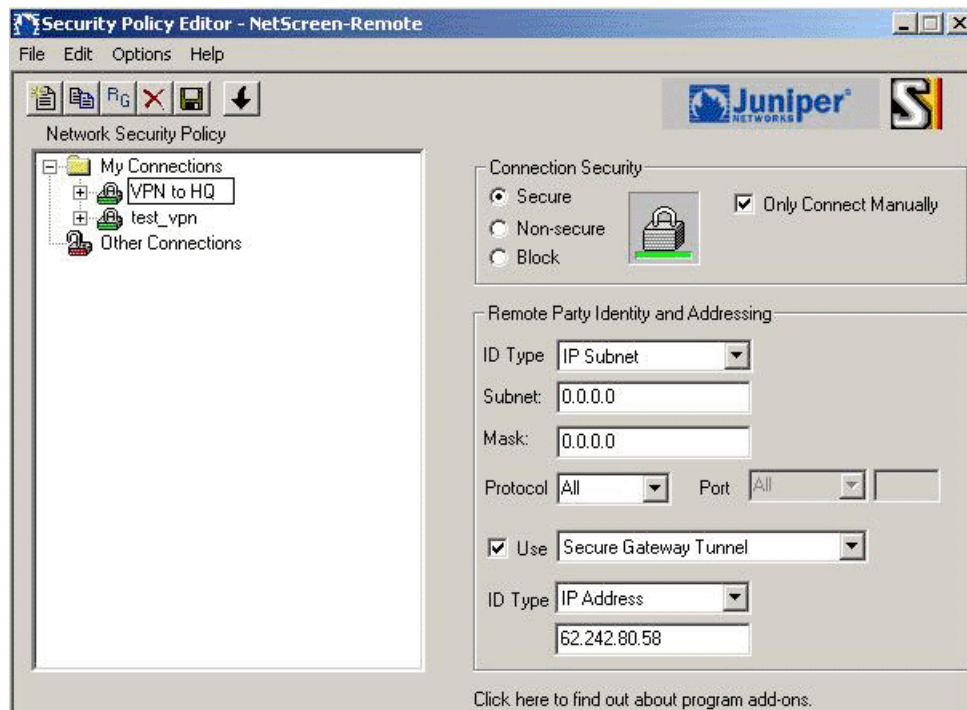
**Figure 164: Configure Connection**

Figure 165 on page 695 shows the Configuring the New Connection page.



**Figure 165: Configuring the New Connection**

1. Double-click the NetScreen-Remote icon in the Windows taskbar (Figure 162 on page 693). The Security Policy Editor screen appears (Figure 163 on page 693).
2. Click the New Connection icon to create a new connection.
3. Give the new connection a unique name—for example, VPN to HQ.
4. In the Connection Security area (to the right of the Network Security Policy list), select **Secure**.
5. In the Remote Party Identity and Addressing area, select an identifier for the other party from the ID Type list, and enter the required information.
6. Choose either IP Address or IP Subnet. Other choices will not work.
7. Select the protocol you want to use for the Connection. The default is All.
  - All—This choice allows the connection to use any IP protocol.
  - TCP—Transmission Control Protocol, the protocol that controls data transfer on the Internet
  - UDP—User Datagram Protocol, a protocol within the TCP/IP protocol suite that provides very few error recovery services (for example, a lost packet is simply ignored) and is used primarily for broadcasting

- **ICMP**—Internet Control Message Protocol, a protocol tightly integrated with the Internet Protocol (IP) that supports packets containing error, control, and informational messages related to network operations
  - **GRE**—Generic Routing Encapsulation, a protocol that encapsulates the packets of one kind of protocol within GRE packets, which can then be contained within the packets of another kind of protocol
8. If you are using tunnel mode to connect to a J-series router running JUNOS software, select Connect using Secure Gateway Tunnel.

The Secure Gateway Tunnel ID Type and IP Address fields are enabled.

9. Select **IP Address** as an identifier for the other party from the ID Type list and enter the IP address. See Figure 165 on page 695.

## Creating the Preshared Key

After you have created a new connection called **VPN to HQ**, create the preshared key to be used in identifying the communicating parties during the Phase 1 negotiations.

Figure 166 on page 696 shows the My Identity and Internet Interface page.

**Figure 166: My Identity and Internet Interface**

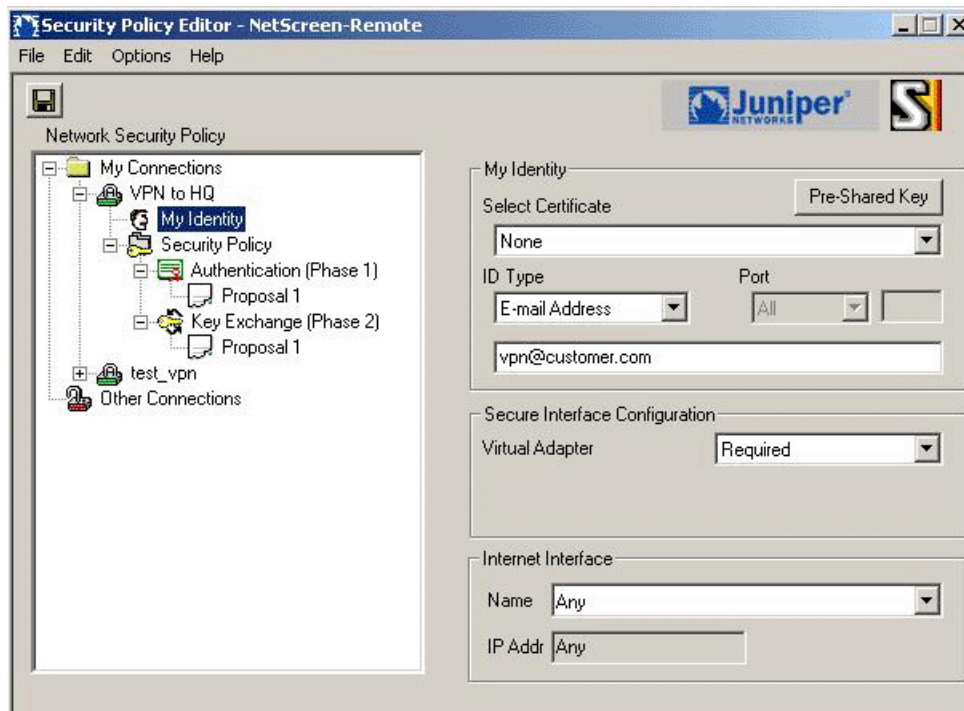
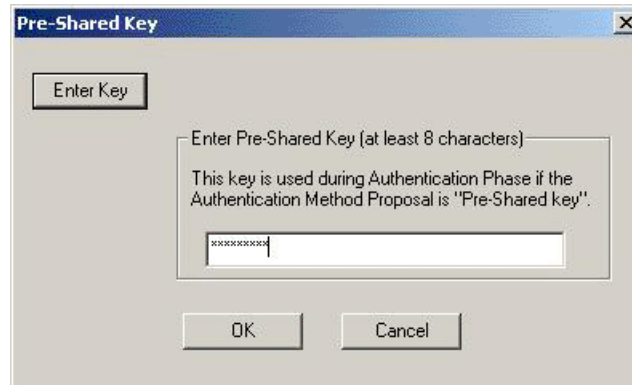


Figure 167 on page 697 shows the Per-Shared Key Dialog Box page.

**Figure 167: Pre-Shared Key Dialog Box**

1. Double-click the **VPN to HQ** icon from the Security Policy list in the left panel.  
My Identity and Security Policy icons appear in the Network Security Policy list.
2. Click **My Identity**. The My Identity and Internet Interface areas appear in the right panel (Figure 166 on page 696).
3. Select **None** from the Select Certificate drop-down list.
4. From the ID Type drop-down list, select **E-mail Address** and type **vpn@customer.com** as the ID for the IKE user.
5. Click **Pre-Shared Key**. The Pre-Shared Key dialog box appears (see Figure 167 on page 697).
6. Click the **Enter Key** to enable the Pre-Shared Key field.
7. Type a key with a length between 8 and 58 characters. A longer key length results in stronger encryption.
8. Click **OK** to save the entry.

### **Defining the IPsec Protocols**

The Security Policy area appears on the right, and the Authentication (Phase 1) icon and Key Exchange (Phase 2) icon appear in the Network Security Policy list, as shown in Figure 168 on page 698.

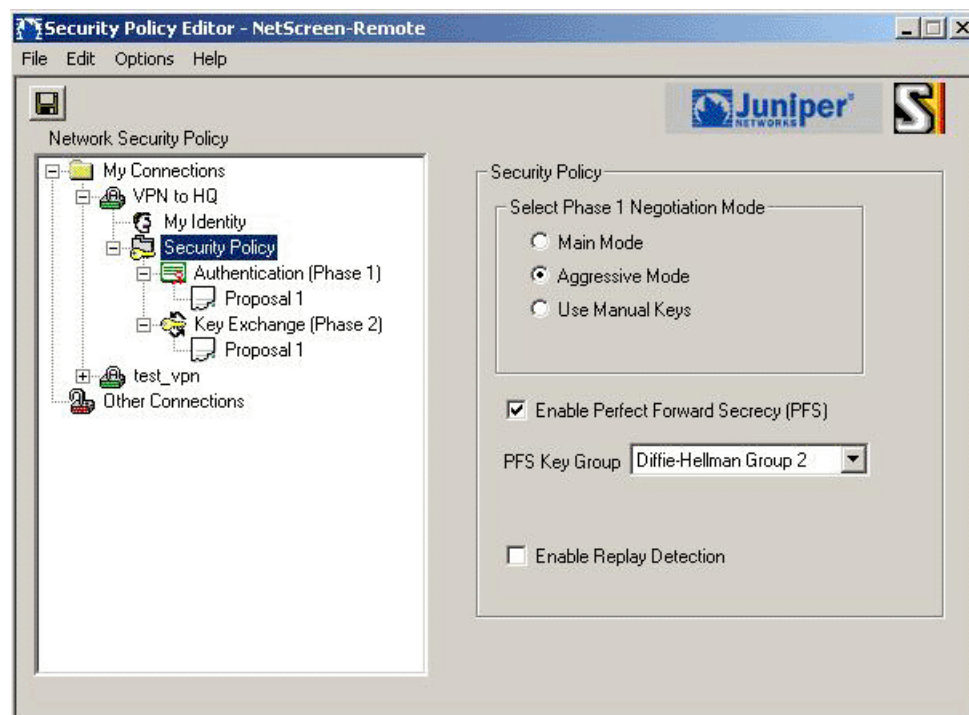
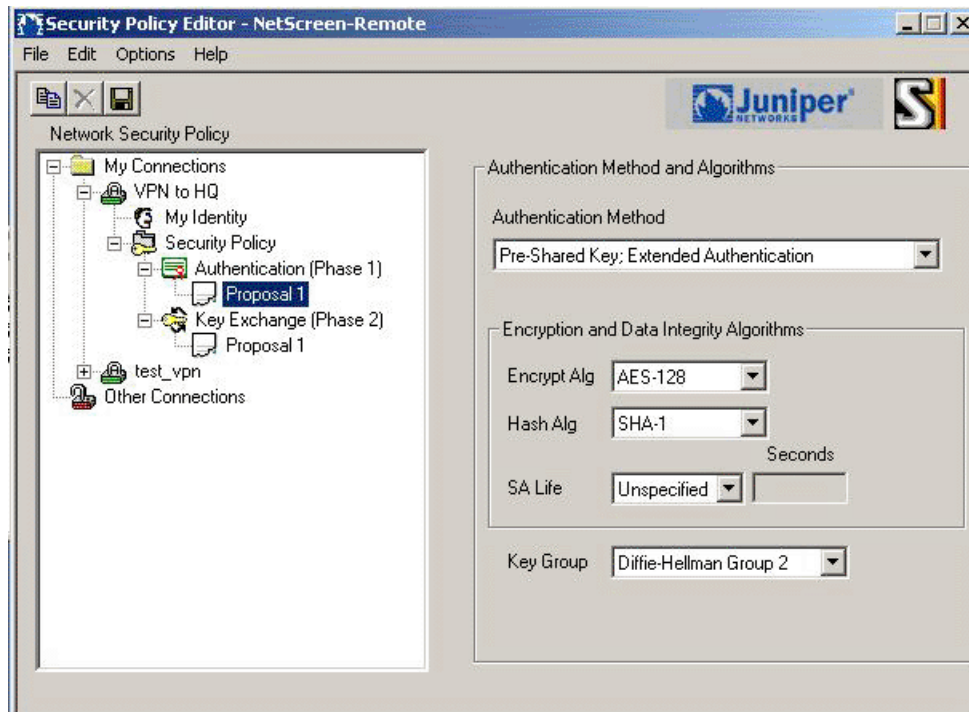
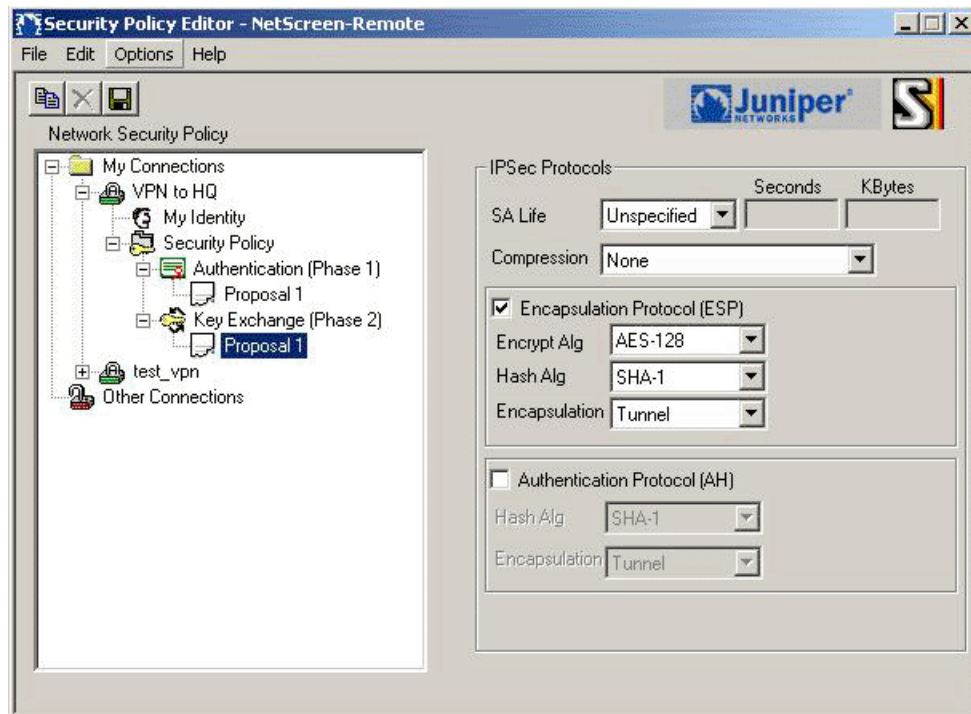
**Figure 168: Security Policy**

Figure 169 on page 699 shows the Algorithms Area page.

**Figure 169: Algorithms Area**

**Figure 170: IPsec Protocols Area**

To define the Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) protocols for securing the VPN tunnel:

1. Double-click **Security Policy** in the Network Security Policy list.
2. Select **Aggressive Mode** in the Security Policy area.
3. Select **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)**. PFS allows generation of a new encryption key that is independent from and unrelated to the preceding key.
4. In the PFS Key Group drop-down list, select **Diffie-Hellman Group 2**.
5. In the Security Policy List (left panel), select **Authentication (Phase 1)**. Proposal 1 appears below the Authentication (Phase 1) icon.
6. Select **Proposal 1** to display the Authentication Method and Algorithms area, as shown in Figure 166 on page 696.
7. Select **Pre-Shared Key; Extended Authentication** from the Authentication Method. This allows you to use XAuth.



**NOTE:** XAuth must also be enabled on the J-series router running JUNOS software. XAuth allows password-prompt authentication in addition to a preshared key. If enabled, you are prompted for a password when initiating a VPN. See “Configuring an Access Profile for XAuth” on page 691 and “Configuring an IKE Gateway” on page 691 for more information on configuring XAuth.

8. In the Authentication and Algorithms area, define the Encryption Algorithm **AES-128** and the Hash Algorithm **SHA-1**. See Table 124 on page 701 for brief descriptions of these protocols.
9. From the Key Group drop-down list, select **Diffie-Hellman Group 2**.
10. In the left panel, double-click the **Key Exchange Phase (2)** icon. Proposal 1 appears below the icon.
11. Select **Proposal 1** to display the IPsec Protocols area as shown in Figure 170 on page 700.
12. In the IPsec Protocols area, define the SA Life (the lifetime of the security association) in either seconds or bytes, or leave it as **Unspecified**.



**NOTE:** Unspecified lifetimes (Phase I and II) cause the NetScreen-Remote client to accept the values proposed by the router.

13. Select **Encapsulation Protocol (ESP)**. ESP provides encryption, authentication, and an integrity check for IP datagrams.
14. Select the encryption algorithm **AES-128**, the hash algorithm **SHA-1**, and **Tunnel** for the encapsulation



**NOTE:** If you select the **Connect using Secure Gateway Tunnel** check box when defining Remote Party Identity and Addressing, the encapsulation method must be **Tunnel**—no other option is available.

15. Click **Save** in the toolbar, or choose **Save Changes** from the File menu.

The configuration for the NetScreen-Remote end of an eventual VPN tunnel using a preshared key is complete.

**Table 124: Encryption and Hash Algorithms**

DES	Data Encryption Standard. A cryptographic block algorithm with a 56-bit key.
Triple DES	A more powerful version of DES in which the original DES algorithm is applied in three rounds, using a 168-bit key.
AES protocols	Advanced encryption standard. These protocols provide maximum security for the key. The higher the AES value, the more secure the key is. AES values can be AES-128, the least secure, AES-192, medium security, and AES-256, the most secure.
MD5	Message Digest version 5. An algorithm that produces a 128-bit message digest or hash from a message of arbitrary length. The resulting hash is used, like a fingerprint of the input, to verify authenticity.
SHA-1	Secure Hash Algorithm-1. An algorithm that produces a 160-bit hash from a message of arbitrary length. SHA-1 is generally regarded as more secure than MD5 because of the larger hashes it produces.

## Logging In to the NetScreen Remote Client

### Before You Begin

Configure your computer to connect to the router. See “Configuring the PC or Laptop” on page 692.

Figure 171 on page 702 shows the Login page.

**Figure 171: Login**

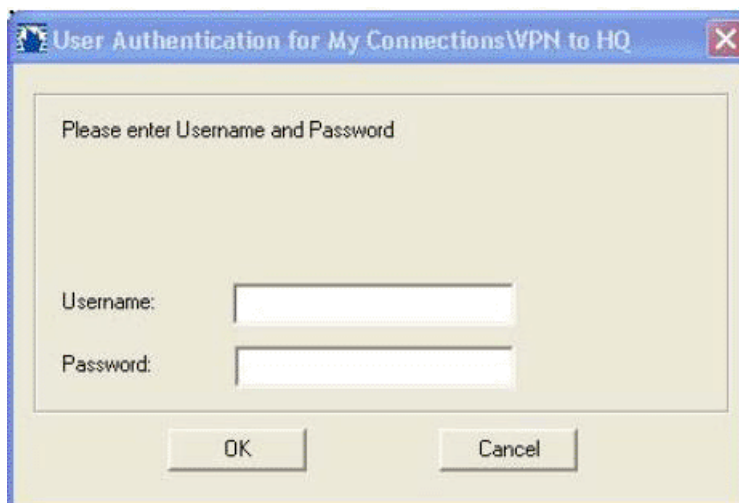


Figure 172 on page 702 shows the Successfully Connected page.

**Figure 172: Successfully Connected**





Now that you have configured the NetScreen-Remote client connection on your PC or laptop, you can establish connection:

1. From the Windows taskbar, right-click the NetScreen Remote icon and choose **Connect**. Select your VPN **VPN to HQ**. If you configured correctly, the login screen appears (Figure 171 on page 702).
2. Type the username and password configured for the XAuth user. See “Configuring an Access Profile for XAuth” on page 691 and “Configuring an IKE Gateway” on page 691 for more information.



**NOTE:** The username and password must match the RADIUS username and password configured on the RADIUS server.

---

3. If the connection is successful, the dialog box in Figure 172 on page 702 appears.
4. Click **OK**.



## **Part 6**

# **Intrusion Detection and Prevention Features**

- IDP Policies on page 707
- IDP Signature Database on page 773
- IDP Application Identification on page 789
- IDP SSL Inspection on page 801
- IDP Logging on page 807



## Chapter 22

# IDP Policies

The JUNOS software Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) policy enables you to selectively enforce various attack detection and prevention techniques on network traffic passing through an IDP-enabled device. It allows you to define policy rules to match a section of traffic based on a zone, network, and application, and then take active or passive preventive actions on that traffic.

This topic covers:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
- Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
- Understanding IDP Rule Match Conditions on page 712
- Understanding IDP Rule Objects on page 713
- Understanding IDP Rule Actions on page 715
- Understanding IDP Rule IP Actions on page 717
- Understanding IDP Rule Notifications on page 719
- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724
- IDP Policies—Quick Configuration on page 727
- Inserting a Rule in the Rulebase on page 735
- Deactivating and Reactivating Rules in a Rulebase on page 737
- Understanding Application Sets on page 738
- Configuring Applications or Services for IDP on page 738
- Configuring Application Sets for IDP on page 740
- Enabling IDP in a Security Policy on page 741
- Understanding IDP Terminal Rules on page 745
- Setting Terminal Rules in Rulebases on page 746
- Understanding Custom Attack Objects on page 749
- Configuring Signature-Based Attacks on page 765
- Configuring Protocol Anomaly-Based Attacks on page 768
- Configuring DSCP in an IDP Policy on page 770

## IDP Policies Overview

An IDP policy defines how your device handles the network traffic. It allows you to enforce various attack detection and prevention techniques on traffic traversing your network.

A policy is made up of *rulebases* and each rulebase contains a set of *rules*. You define rule parameters, such as traffic match conditions, action, and logging requirements, then add the rules to rule bases. After you create an IDP Policy by adding rules in one or more rulebases, you can select that policy to be the active policy on your device.

JUNOS software allows you to configure multiple IDP policies, but a device can have only one active IDP policy at a time. You can install the same IDP policy on multiple devices, or you can install a unique IDP policy on each device in your network. A single policy can contain only one instance of any type of rulebase.

## IDP Policy Terms

Before configuring IDP policies, become familiar with the terms defined in Table 125 on page 708.

**Table 125: IDP Terms**

Term	Definition
<b>Attacks</b>	Attacks attempt to exploit vulnerabilities in computer hardware and software. Depending on the severity of the attack, it might disable your system completely, allow an attacker to gain confidential information stored on your system, or use your network to attack other networks.
<b>Attack objects</b>	A signature or protocol anomaly that is combined with context information. Attack objects are used in Main rulebase rules to match malicious traffic patterns. Each attack object detects a known attack or protocol anomaly that can be used by an attacker to compromise your network.
<b>False positives</b>	Any situation in which benign traffic causes an intrusion detection service to generate an alert; also known as a false alert.
<b>Protocol anomaly</b>	A deviation from the RFC specifications that dictate how communications between two entities should be implemented. Most legitimate traffic does not deviate from the protocols; when anomalies are detected, they are often a sign of malicious traffic and seen as a threat to the system.
<b>Rule</b>	A user-defined match/action sequence. Rules are represented graphically in the Security Policy Editor, where you can create, modify, delete, and reorder them in a rulebase.
<b>Rulebase</b>	A set of rules that uses a specific detection mechanism to identify and prevent attacks.
<b>Severity</b>	The designated threat level of an attack (critical, high, medium, low, or informational). Attack objects use the severity setting that matches the threat level of the attack they detect.

## Working with IDP Policies

You can perform the following tasks to manage IDP policies:

- Create new IDP policies starting from scratch (see “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720).
- Create an IDP policy starting with one of the predefined templates provided by Juniper Networks (see “Using Predefined Policy Templates” on page 774).
- Add or delete rules within a rulebase. You can use any of the following IDP objects to create rules:
  - Zone and network objects available in the base system
  - Predefined service objects provided by Juniper Networks
  - Custom application objects
  - Predefined attack objects provided by Juniper Networks
- Create custom attack objects (see “Configuring Signature-Based Attacks” on page 765).
- Update the signature database provided by Juniper Networks. This database contains all predefined objects.
- Maintain multiple IDP policies. Any one of the policies can be applied to the device.

## Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases

IDP policies are collections of rules and rulebases. A rulebase is an ordered set of rules that use a specific detection method to identify and prevent attacks.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Introducing JUNOS Software for J-series Services Routers on page 31
- IDP Policies Overview on page 708

Rules are instructions that provide context to detection mechanisms by specifying which part of the network traffic the IDP system should look in to find attacks. When a rule is matched, it means that an attack has been detected in the network traffic, triggering the action for that rule. The IDP system performs the specified action and protects your network from that attack.

Each rulebase can have multiple rules—you determine the sequence in which rules are applied to network traffic by placing them in the desired order. Each rulebase in the IDP system uses specific detection methods to identify and prevent attacks. JUNOS software supports two types of rulebases—intrusion prevention system (IPS) rulebase and exempt rulebase.

This topic covers:

- IPS Rulebase on page 710
- Exempt Rulebase on page 710
- Related Topics on page 711

## IPS Rulebase

The IPS rulebase protects your network from attacks by using attack objects to detect known and unknown attacks. It detects attacks based on stateful signature and protocol anomalies. Table 126 on page 710 summarizes the options that you can configure in the IPS-rulebase rules.

**Table 126: IPS Rulebase Components**

Term	Definition
Match condition	Specify the type of network traffic you want the device to monitor for attacks. For more information about match conditions, see “Understanding IDP Rule Match Conditions” on page 712.
Attack objects/groups	Specify the attacks you want the device to match in the monitored network traffic. Each attack is defined as an attack object, which represents a known pattern of attack. For more information about attack objects, see “Understanding IDP Rule Objects” on page 713.
Terminal flag	Specify a terminal rule. The device stops matching rules for a session when a terminal rule is matched. For more information about terminal rules, see “Understanding IDP Terminal Rules” on page 745.
Action	Specify the action you want the system to take when the monitored traffic matches the attack objects specified in the rules. If an attack triggers multiple rule actions, then the most severe action among those rules is executed. For more information about actions, see “Understanding IDP Rule Actions” on page 715.
IP Action	Enables you to protect the network from future intrusions while permitting legitimate traffic. You can configure one of the following IP action options in the IPS rulebase—notify, drop, or close. For more information about IP actions, see “Understanding IDP Rule IP Actions” on page 717.
Notification	Defines how information is to be logged when action is performed. You can choose to log an attack, create log records with the attack information, and send information to the log server. For more information, see “Understanding IDP Rule Notifications” on page 719.

## Exempt Rulebase

The exempt rulebase works in conjunction with the IPS rulebase to prevent unnecessary alarms from being generated. You configure rules in this rulebase to exclude known false positives or to exclude a specific source, destination, or



source/destination pair from matching an IPS rule. If traffic matches a rule in the IPS rulebase, the system attempts to match the traffic against the exempt rulebase before performing the action specified. Carefully written rules in an exempt rulebase can significantly reduce the number of false positives generated by an IPS rulebase.



**NOTE:** Make sure to configure the IPS rulebase before configuring the exempt rulebase.

Table 127 on page 711 summarizes the options that you can configure in the exempt-rulebase rules.

**Table 127: Exempt Rulebase Options**

Term	Definition
Match condition	Specify the type of network traffic you want the device to monitor for attacks in the same way as in the IPS rulebase. However, in the exempt rulebase, you cannot configure an application; it is always set to any.
Attack objects/groups	Specify the attack objects that you do <i>not</i> want the device to match in the monitored network traffic.

**Related Topics**

- Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724

**Understanding IDP Policy Rules**

Each instruction in an IDP policy is called a rule. Rules are created in rulebases.

**Before You Begin**

- For background information, read:
- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709

Rulebases are a set of rules that combine to define an IDP policy. Rules provide context to detection mechanisms by specifying which part of the network traffic the IDP system should look in to find attacks. When a rule is matched, it means that an attack has been detected in the network traffic, triggering the action for that rule. The IDP system performs the specified action and protects your network from that attack.

IDP policy rules are made up of the following components:

- Match Conditions (see “Understanding IDP Rule Match Conditions” on page 712)
- Attack Objects and Groups (see “Understanding IDP Rule Objects” on page 713)
- Actions (see “Understanding IDP Rule Actions” on page 715)
- IP Actions (see “Understanding IDP Rule IP Actions” on page 717)
- Notifications (see “Understanding IDP Rule Notifications” on page 719)

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724
- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774
- Inserting a Rule in the Rulebase on page 735
- Deactivating and Reactivating Rules in a Rulebase on page 737

## Understanding IDP Rule Match Conditions

---

Match conditions specify the type of network traffic you want IDP to monitor for attacks.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
- 

Match conditions use the following characteristics to specify the type of network traffic to be monitored:

- **From-zone and to-zone**—All traffic flows from a source to a destination zone. You can select any zone for the source or destination. You can also use zone exceptions to specify unique to and from zones for each device. Specify **any** to monitor network traffic originating from and to any zone. The default value is **any**.
- **Source IP Address**—Specify the source IP address from which the network traffic originates. You can specify **any** to monitor network traffic originating from any IP address. You can also specify **source-except** to specify all sources except the specified addresses. The default value is **any**.
- **Destination IP address**—Specify the destination IP address to which the network traffic is sent. You can set this to **any** to monitor network traffic sent to any IP

address. You can also specify **destination-except** to specify all destinations except the specified addresses. The default value is **any**.

- **Application**—Specify the Application Layer protocols supported by the destination IP address. You can specify **any** for all applications and **default** for the application configured in the attack object for the rule.

## **Related Topics**

- Understanding IDP Rule Objects on page 713
- Understanding IDP Rule Actions on page 715
- Understanding IDP Rule IP Actions on page 717
- Understanding IDP Rule Notifications on page 719

## **Understanding IDP Rule Objects**

---

Objects are reusable logical entities that you can apply to rules. Each object that you create is added to a database for the object type.

### **Before You Begin**

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
- 

You can configure the following types of objects for IDP rules.

### **Zone Objects**

A zone or security zone is a collection of one or more network interfaces. IDP uses zone objects configured in the base system.

### **Address or Network Objects**

Address objects represent components of your network, such as host machines, servers, and subnets. You use address objects in IDP policy rules to specify the network components that you want to protect.

### **Application or Service Objects**

Service objects represent network services that use Transport Layer protocols such as TCP, UDP, RPC, and ICMP. You use service objects in rules to specify the service an attack uses to access your network. Juniper Networks provides predefined service objects, a database of service objects that are based on industry-standard services.

If you need to add service objects that are not included in the predefined service objects, you can create custom service objects. IDP supports the following types of service objects:

- **Any**—Allows IDP to match all Transport Layer protocols.
- **TCP**—Specifies a TCP port or a port range to match network services for specified TCP ports. You can specify `junos-tcp-any` to match services for all TCP ports.
- **UDP**—Specifies a UDP port or a port range to match network services for specified UDP ports. You can specify `junos-udp-any` to match services for all UDP ports.
- **RPC**—Specifies a remote procedure call (RPC from Sun Microsystems) program number or a program number range. IDP uses this information to identify RPC sessions.
- **ICMP**—Specifies a type and code that is a part of an ICMP packet. You can specify `junos-icmp-all` to match all ICMP services.

## Attack Objects

IDP attack objects represent known and unknown attacks. IDP includes a predefined attack object database that is periodically updated by Juniper Networks. Attack objects are specified in rules to identify malicious activity. Each attack is defined as an attack object, which represents a known pattern of attack. Whenever this known pattern of attack is encountered in the monitored network traffic, the attack object is matched. There are three main types of attack objects:

### Signature Attack Objects

Signature attack objects detect known attacks using stateful attack signatures. An attack signature is a pattern that always exists within an attack; if the attack is present, so is the attack signature. With stateful signatures, IDP can look for the specific protocol or service used to perpetrate the attack, the direction and flow of the attack, and the context in which the attack occurs. Stateful signatures produce few false positives because the context of the attack is defined, eliminating huge sections of network traffic in which the attack would not occur.

### Protocol Anomaly Attack Objects

Protocol anomaly attack objects identify unusual activity on the network. They detect abnormal or ambiguous messages within a connection according to the set of rules for the particular protocol being used. Protocol anomaly detection works by finding deviations from protocol standards, most often defined by RFCs and common RFC extensions. Most legitimate traffic adheres to established protocols. Traffic that does not, produces an anomaly, which may be created by attackers for specific purposes, such as evading an IPS.

### Compound Attack Objects

A compound attack object combines multiple signatures and/or protocol anomalies into a single object. Traffic must match all of the combined signatures and/or protocol anomalies to match the compound attack object; you can specify the order in which

signatures or anomalies must match. Use compound attack objects to refine your IDP policy rules, reduce false positives, and increase detection accuracy. A compound attack object enables you to be very specific about the events that need to occur before IDP identifies traffic as an attack. You can use **And**, **Or**, and **Ordered and** operations to define the relationship among different attack objects within a compound attack and the order in which events occur.

## Attack Object Groups

IDP contains a large number of predefined attack objects. To help keep IDP policies organized and manageable, attack objects can be grouped. An attack object group can contain one or more attack objects of different types. JUNOS software supports the following two types of attack groups:

- Static groups—Contain a fixed set of attack objects.
- Dynamic groups—Contain attack objects based on a certain matching criteria. For example, a dynamic group can contain all attacks related to an application. During signature update, the dynamic group membership is automatically updated based on the matching criteria for that group.

## Related Topics

- Understanding IDP Rule Match Conditions on page 712
- Understanding IDP Rule Actions on page 715
- Understanding IDP Rule IP Actions on page 717
- Understanding IDP Rule Notifications on page 719

## Understanding IDP Rule Actions

---

*Actions* specify the actions you want IDP to take when the monitored traffic matches the attack objects specified in the rules.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
- 

Table 128 on page 716 shows the actions you can specify for IDP rules:

**Table 128: IDP Rule Actions**

Term	Definition
No Action	No action is taken. Use this action when you only want to generate logs for some traffic.
Ignore Connection	Stops scanning traffic for the rest of the connection if an attack match is found. IDP disables the rulebase for the specific connection.  <b>NOTE:</b> This action does not mean ignore an attack.
Diffserv Marking	Assigns the indicated Differentiated Services code point (DSCP) value to the packet in an attack, then passes the packet on normally.  Note that DSCP value is not applied to the first packet that is detected as an attack, but is applied to subsequent packets.
Drop Packet	Drops a matching packet before it can reach its destination but does not close the connection. Use this action to drop packets for attacks in traffic that is prone to spoofing, such as UDP traffic. Dropping a connection for such traffic could result in a denial of service that prevents you from receiving traffic from a legitimate source-IP address.
Drop Connection	Drops all packets associated with the connection, preventing traffic for the connection from reaching its destination. Use this action to drop connections for traffic that is not prone to spoofing.
Close Client	Closes the connection and sends an RST packet to the client but not to the server.
Close Server	Closes the connection and sends an RST packet to the server but not to the client.
Close Client and Server	Closes the connection and sends an RST packet to both the client and the server.

**Table 128: IDP Rule Actions** *(continued)*

Term	Definition
Recommended	<p>All predefined attack objects have a default action associated with them. This is the action that Juniper Networks recommends when that attack is detected.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This action is supported only for IPS rulebases.</p> <p>Recommended —A list of all attack objects that Juniper Networks considers to be serious threats, organized into categories.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Attack type groups attack objects by type (anomaly or signature). Within each type, attack objects are grouped by severity.</li> <li>■ Category groups attack objects by predefined categories. Within each category, attack objects are grouped by severity.</li> <li>■ Operating system groups attack objects by the operating system to which they apply: BSD, Linux, Solaris, or Windows. Within each operating system, attack objects are grouped by services and severity.</li> <li>■ Severity groups attack objects by the severity assigned to the attack. IDP has five severity levels: Critical, Major, Minor, Warning, and Info. Within each severity, attack objects are grouped by category.</li> </ul>

## Related Topics

- Understanding IDP Rule Match Conditions on page 712
- Understanding IDP Rule Objects on page 713
- Understanding IDP Rule IP Actions on page 717
- Understanding IDP Rule Notifications on page 719

## Understanding IDP Rule IP Actions

IP actions are actions that apply on future connections that use the same IP action attributes. For example, you can configure an IP action in the rule to block all future HTTP sessions between two hosts if an attack is detected on a session between the hosts. Or you can specify a timeout value that defines that the action should be applied only if new sessions are initiated within that specified timeout value. The default timeout value for IP actions is 0, which means that IP actions are never timed out.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
- Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711

IP actions are similar to other actions; they direct IDP to drop or close the connection. However, because you now also have the attacker's IP address, you can choose to block the attacker for a specified time. If attackers cannot immediately regain a connection to your network, they might try to attack easier targets. Use IP actions in conjunction with actions and logging to secure your network.

IP action attributes are a combination of the following fields:

- Source IP address
- Destination IP address
- Destination port
- From-zone
- Protocol

Table 129 on page 718 summarizes the types IP actions supported by IDP rules:

**Table 129: IDP Rule IP Actions**

Term	Definition
Notify	Does not take any action against future traffic, but logs the event. This is the default.
Drop/Block Session	All packets of any session matching the IP action rule are dropped silently.
Close Session	Any new sessions matching this IP action rule are closed by sending RST packets to the client and server.

When traffic matches multiple rules, the most severe IP action of all matched rules is applied. The most severe IP action is the Drop/Block Session action, the next in severity is the Close Session action, and then the Notify action.

## Related Topics

- Understanding IDP Rule Match Conditions on page 712
- Understanding IDP Rule Objects on page 713
- Understanding IDP Rule Actions on page 715
- Understanding IDP Rule Notifications on page 719



## Understanding IDP Rule Notifications

Notification defines how information is to be logged when an action is performed. When attacks are detected, you can choose to log an attack and create log records with attack information and send that information to the log server.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
- Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711

By using notifications, you can also configure the following options that instruct the log server to perform specific actions on logs generated for each rule:

- **Set Alerts**—Specify an alert option for a rule in the IDP policy. When the rule is matched, the corresponding log record displays an alert in the alert column of the Log Viewer. Security administrators use alerts to become aware of and react to important security events.
- **Send Emails**—Specify this option to send a notification to a specified e-mail address.
- **Run Scripts**—Run a specified script on a log server.
- **Set Severity Level**—Set severity levels in logging to support better organization and presentation of log records on the log server. You can use the default severity settings of the selected attack objects or choose a specific severity for your rule. The severity you configure in the rules overrides the inherited attack severity. You can set the severity level to the following levels:
  - Info—2
  - Warning—3
  - Minor—4
  - Major—5
  - Critical—7

### Related Topics

- Understanding IDP Rule Match Conditions on page 712
- Understanding IDP Rule Objects on page 713
- Understanding IDP Rule Actions on page 715
- Understanding IDP Rule IP Actions on page 717

## Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase

---

Each rule is composed of match conditions, objects, actions, and notifications. When you define an IDP rule, you must specify the type of network traffic you want IDP to monitor for attacks by using the following characteristics—source zone, destination zone, source IP address, destination IP address, and the Application Layer protocol supported by the destination IP address. The rules are defined in rulebases, and rulebases are associated with policies.

---

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
    - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
    - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
    - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
  2. Establish basic connectivity. For more information, see the Getting Started Guide for your device.
  3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
  4. Create security zones. See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
  5. Enable IDP in security policies. See “Enabling IDP in a Security Policy” on page 741.
- 

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to create a policy called **base-policy**, specify a rulebase for this policy, and then add a rule **R1** to this rulebase. In this example, rule **R1**:

- Specifies the match condition to include any traffic from a previously configured zone called *trust* to another previously configured zone called *untrust*. The match condition also includes a predefined attack group **Critical - TELNET**. The application setting in the match condition is *default* and matches any application configured in the attack object.
- Specifies an action to drop connection for any traffic that matches the criteria for rule **R1**,
- Enables attack logging and specifies that an alert flag is added to the attack log.
- Specifies a severity level as *critical*.

After defining the rule, you specify **base-policy** as the active policy on the device.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure an application set.

This topic contains:

- J-Web Configuration on page 721
- CLI Configuration on page 722
- Related Topics on page 724

## **J-Web Configuration**

To define rules for an IPS rulebase:

1. Create a policy by assigning a meaningful name to it. The following tasks specify **base-policy** as the policy name:
  - a. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
  - b. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  - c. Next to Idp, click **Configure**.
  - d. Next to Idp policy, click **Add new entry**.
  - e. In the Policy name box, type **base-policy**.
2. Associate a rulebase with the policy and add rules to the rulebase. The following tasks associate an IPS rulebase with **base-policy** and add rule **R1** to the rulebase.
  - a. Next to Rulebase ips, click **Configure**.
  - b. Next to Rule, click **Add new entry**.
  - c. In the Name box, type **R1**.
3. Define the match criteria for the rule. The following tasks specify that traffic from *trust* zone to *untrust* zone as match criteria for rule **R1**. The *default* application setting matches any application configured in the attack object.
  - a. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
  - b. From the From zone list, select **Enter specific value** and type **trust** in the Zone box.
  - c. From the To zone list, select **Enter specific value** and type **untrust** in the Zone box.
  - d. From the Source list, select **Source address**.
  - e. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
  - f. From the Value list, select **Any** and click **OK**.
  - g. From the Destination list, select **Destination address**.
  - h. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
  - i. From the Value list, select **Any** and click **OK**.

- j. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
  - k. From the Value list, select **default** and click **OK**.
4. Define an attack as match criteria. The following tasks specify predefined attack group **Critical - TELNET** as match criteria for rule R1.
  - a. On the Rule R1 page, next to Match, click **Configure**.
  - b. Next to Attacks, click **Configure**.
  - c. Next to Predefined attack groups, click **Add new entry**.
  - d. In the Value box, type **“Critical - TELNET”** and click **OK**.
5. Specify an action for the rule. The following tasks specify that the connection be dropped for any traffic that matches the criteria defined for rule R1:
  - a. On the Rule R1 page, next to Then, click **Configure**.
  - b. Next to Action, click **Configure**.
  - c. From the Action list, select **Drop connection** and click **OK**.
6. Specify notification and logging options for the rule. The following tasks enable logging for this attack and specify that an alert flag be added to the attack log:
  - a. On the Rule R1 page, next to Then, click **Configure**.
  - b. Next to Notification, select the check box and click **Configure**.
  - c. Next to Log attacks, select the check box and click **Configure**.
  - d. Next to Alert, select the check box and click **OK**.
7. Set the severity level for the rule. The following tasks set a **critical** severity level for rule R1:
  - a. On the Rule R1 page, next to Then, select **Configure** or **Edit**.
  - b. From the Severity list, select **critical** and click **OK**.
8. Activate the policy. The following tasks specify **base-policy** as the active policy:
  - a. On the Idp page, in the Active-policy box, type **base-policy**.
  - b. Click **OK**.
9. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

To define rules for an IPS rulebase:

1. Create a policy by assigning a meaningful name to it. The following statement specifies **base-policy** as the policy name:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy base-policy
```

2. Associate a rulebase with the policy. The following statement associates an IPS rulebase with `base-policy`:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips
```

3. Add rules to the rulebase. The following statement adds a rule `R1` to the rulebase:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips rule R1
```

4. Define the match criteria for the rule. The following statement specifies that traffic from *trust* zone to *untrust* zone as match criteria for rule `R1`. The *default* application setting matches any application configured in the attack object.

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips rule R1 match
from-zone trust to-zone untrust source-address any destination-address any
application default
```

5. Define an attack as match criteria. The following statement specifies predefined attack group `Critical - TELNET` as match criteria for rule `R1`:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips rule R1 match
attacks predefined-attack-group "Critical - TELNET"
```

6. Specify an action for the rule. The following statement specifies that the connection be dropped for any traffic that matches the criteria defined for rule `R1`:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips rule R1 then
action drop-connection
```

7. Specify notification and logging options for the rule. The following statement enables logging for this attack and specifies that an alert flag be added to the attack log:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips rule R1 then
notification log-attacks alert
```

8. Set the severity level for the rule. The following statement sets a critical severity level for rule `R1`:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips rule R1 then
severity critical
```

9. Activate the policy. The following statement specifies `base-policy` as the active policy:

```
user@host# set security idp active-policy base-policy
```

10. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
11. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the `show security idp` command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724
- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774
- Inserting a Rule in the Rulebase on page 735
- Deactivating and Reactivating Rules in a Rulebase on page 737

## Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase

---

The exempt rulebase works in conjunction with the IPS rulebase. Before you can create exempt rules, you must first create rules in the IPS rulebase. If traffic matches a rule in the IPS rulebase, IDP attempts to match the traffic against the exempt rulebase before performing the specified action or creating a log record for the event. If IDP detects traffic that matches the source/destination pair and the attack objects specified in the exempt rulebase, it automatically exempts that traffic from attack detection.

Configure an exempt rulebase in the following conditions:

- When an IDP rule uses an attack object group that contains one or more attack objects that produce false positives or irrelevant log records.
- When you want to exclude a specific source, destination, or source/destination pair from matching an IDP rule. This prevents IDP from generating unnecessary alarms.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
    - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
    - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
    - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
  2. Create rules in the IPS rulebase. See “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720.
- 

When you create an exempt rule, you must specify the following:

- Source and destination for traffic you want to exempt. You can set the source or destination to **Any** to exempt network traffic originating from any source or sent to any destination. You can also set **source-except** or **destination-except** to specify all the sources or destinations except the specified source or destination addresses.
- The attacks you want IDP to exempt for the specified source/destination addresses. You must include at least one attack object in an exempt rule.

In this configuration example, you consistently find that your IDP policy generates false positives for the attack **FTP:USER:ROOT** on your internal network. You configure the rule to exempt attack detection for this attack when the source IP is from your internal network.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure an application set.

This topic contains:

- J-Web Configuration on page 725
- CLI Configuration on page 726
- Related Topics on page 726

## ***J-Web Configuration***

To define rules for an exempt rulebase:

1. Specify the IPS rulebase for which you want to define and exempt rulebase. The following statement specifies policy **P1** as the IPS rulebase:
  - a. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
  - b. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  - c. Next to Idp, click **Configure**.
  - d. Next to Idp policy, click **Add new entry**.
  - e. In the Policy name box, type **P1**.
2. Associate the exempt rulebase with the policy and add a rule to the rulebase. The following tasks associate the exempt rulebase with policy **P1** and adds rule **R1** to the rulebase:
  - a. Next to Rulebase exempt, click **Configure**.
  - b. Next to Rule, click **Add new entry**.
  - c. In the Name box, type **R1**.
3. Specify the attacks that you want to exempt from attack detection. The following configuration statement specifies that any traffic in your company's internal network is exempt from the **FTP:USER:ROOT** attack:
  - a. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
  - b. From the From zone list, select **Enter specific value** and type **trust** in the Zone box.
  - c. From the To zone list, select **any**.
  - d. From the Source list, select **Source address**.
  - e. Next to Source address, select **Add new entry**.

- f. From the Value list, select **Enter specific value**.
  - g. In the Address box, type **FTP:USER:ROOT**.
4. Activate the policy. The following tasks specify **P1** as the active policy:
  - a. On the Idp page, in the Active-policy box, type **P1**.
  - b. Click **OK**.
5. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

To define rules for an exempt rulebase:

1. Specify the IPS rulebase for which you want to define and exempt rulebase. The following statement specifies policy **P1** as the IPS rulebase:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy P1
```

2. Associate the exempt rulebase with the policy and add a rule to the rulebase. The following statement associates the exempt rulebase with policy **P1** and adds rule **R1** to the rulebase:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy P1 rulebase-exempt rule R1
```

3. Specify the attacks that you want to exempt from attack detection. The following configuration statement specifies that any traffic in your company's internal network is exempt from the **FTP:USER:ROOT** attack:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy P1 rulebase-exempt R1 match from-zone
trust to-zone any source-address internal-devices destination-address any
attacks predefined-attacks "FTP:USER:ROOT"
```

4. Activate the policy. The following statement specifies policy **P1** as the active policy on the device:

```
user@host# set security idp active-policy P1
```

5. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
6. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show security idp** command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774
- Inserting a Rule in the Rulebase on page 735
- Deactivating and Reactivating Rules in a Rulebase on page 737



IDP Policies—Quick Configuration

This topic contains:

- Configuring IDP Policies—Quick Configuration on page 727
- Adding a New IDP Policy—Quick Configuration on page 728
- Adding an IPS Rulebase—Quick Configuration on page 730
- Adding an Exempt Rulebase—Quick Configuration on page 733

Configuring IDP Policies—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure an IDP policy.

Figure 173: Quick Configuration page for IDP Policies

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Security Policies](#) > [IDP Policies](#)

Quick Configuration

Security Policies

Active IDP Policy  [Security Package Update](#)

Configured IDP Policies List

List  per page

	Name	Configured Rulebase(s)	Active
<input type="checkbox"/>	idpengine	IPS(1)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

To configure an IDP policy with Quick Configuration:

1. Select Configuration > Quick Configuration > Security Policies > IDP Policies.

Figure 173 on page 727 shows the Quick Configuration page for IDP policies.

2. Fill in the information as described in Table 130 on page 727.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click OK.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click Cancel.

Table 130: IDP Policies Quick Configuration Page Summary

Field	Function	Actions
Active IDP Policy	Specifies the name of the active IDP policy enabled on the device.	Displays the active IDP policy.

**Table 130: IDP Policies Quick Configuration Page Summary** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Actions
Security Package Update	Specifies to manually download or install the updated signature database from the specified URL.	Click <b>Security Package Update</b> to download or install the updated signature database.  For more information, see “Configuring a Security Package Update—Quick Configuration” on page 782.
Configured IDP Policies List	Specifies the list of all the configured IDP policies on the device.	Displays the list of all the configured IDP Policies on the device.
Configured Rulebase(s)	Specifies to reorder the IPS and Exempt rulebases in the <b>Configured IDP Policies List</b> .	From the <b>Name</b> column, select the policy name. A new page with the configured rulebases appears. From the <b>Move</b> column, select the up or down arrow to reorder the configured rulebase(s) in the IPS Rulebase and Exempt Rulebase tables.
Set as active policy	Specifies if the configured IDP policy is set as the active policy in the <b>Configured IDP Policies List</b> .	Select the check box next to the IDP policy you want to set as an active policy.
Add	Specifies to add a new IDP policy.	Click <b>Add</b> to add a new IDP policy.  For more information, see “Adding a New IDP Policy—Quick Configuration” on page 728.
Copy	Specifies to copy an existing IDP policy from the <b>Configured IDP Policies List</b> .	Open a new page, where you can select a policy, and click <b>Copy</b> .
Delete	Specifies to delete an existing IDP policy from the <b>Configured IDP Policies List</b> .	Select the check box corresponding to the policy you want to delete, and click <b>Delete</b> .

### **Adding a New IDP Policy—Quick Configuration**

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure and add a new IDP policy.

Figure 174: Quick Configuration Page for Adding a New IDP Policy

[Configuration](#) > [Quick Configuration](#) > [Security Policies](#) > [IDP Policies](#)

Quick Configuration

Security Policies

Add a Policy

Policy Name

Policy Name

Set as active policy ☐

IPS Rulebase

No rules are defined in this rulebase. Click on Add button to configure them.

Add...

Exempt Rulebase

No rules are defined in this rulebase. Click on Add button to configure them.

Add...

OK

Cancel

- To configure a new IDP policy with Quick Configuration:
1. Select Configuration > Quick Configuration > Security Policies > IDP Policies.
  2. From the IDP Policies page, click Add to add a new IDP policy.
- Figure 174 on page 729 shows the Quick Configuration page for adding a new IDP policy.
3. Fill in the information as described in Table 131 on page 729.
  4. Click one of the following buttons:
    - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click OK.
    - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click Cancel.

Table 131: Adding a New IDP Policy Quick Configuration Page Summary

Field	Function	Actions
<b>Policy Name</b>		
Policy Name	Specifies the name of the IDP policy.	Type a policy name.
Set as active policy	Specifies if the configured IDP policy is set as the active policy.	Select the check box.
IPS Rulebase	Defines the IPS rulebase to protect the network from attacks by using attack objects to detect known and unknown attacks.	Click Add under IPS Rulebase to add a new IPS rulebase to the IDP policy.
		For more information, see “Adding an IPS Rulebase—Quick Configuration” on page 730.

**Table 131: Adding a New IDP Policy Quick Configuration Page Summary** (continued)

Field	Function	Actions
Exempt Rulebase	Defines the exempt rulebase to exclude known false positives or to exclude a specific source, destination, or source/destination pair from matching an IPS rule.	Click Add under Exempt Rulebase to add an exempt rulebase to the IDP policy.  For more information, see “Adding an Exempt Rulebase—Quick Configuration” on page 733.

## Adding an IPS Rulebase—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure and add an IPS rulebase.

**Figure 175: Quick Configuration Page for Adding an IPS Rulebase**

The screenshot shows the 'Quick Configuration' page for 'Security Policies'. The breadcrumb trail at the top is 'Configuration > Quick Configuration > Security Policies > IDP Policies'. The page title is 'Security Policies' with an 'Add a Rule' link. The form contains the following sections:

- Policy Name:** A text box with 'ipol' entered.
- Rulebase:** A dropdown menu with 'IPS' selected.
- Configure Rule Name and Description:**
  - Rule Name:** A text box.
  - Description:** A text box with a help icon.
- Rule Match Criteria:** A section with a plus icon and a help icon.
- Specify a rule action:**
  - Rule Action:** A dropdown menu with a help icon.
- Attacks and Attack Action:** A section with a plus icon and a help icon.
- Rule Additional Actions:** A section with a plus icon and a help icon.

At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

To configure an IPS rulebase with Quick Configuration:

1. Select Configuration > Quick Configuration > Security Policies > IDP Policies.
2. In the Policy Name text box, type a policy name.
3. Under IPS Rulebase, click Add to add an IPS rulebase.

Figure 175 on page 730 shows the Quick Configuration page for IPS rulebase.

4. Fill in the information as described in Table 132 on page 731.
5. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click OK.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click Cancel.

**Table 132: Adding an IPS Rulebase Quick Configuration Page Summary**

Field	Function	Actions
Policy Name	Specifies the name of the IDP Policy.	Displays the name of the IDP policy.
Rulebase	Specifies IPS rule to create, modify, delete, and reorder the rules in a rulebase.	Displays the name of the rulebase.
<b>Configure Rule Name and Description</b>		
Rule Name	Specifies the name of the IPS rulebase rule.	Type a rule name.
Description	Specifies the description for the rule.	Type the description for the rule.
<b>Rule Match Criteria</b>		
<b>From-Zone and Source Addresses/Address Sets</b>		
Match	Specifies the match criteria for the source zone for each rule.	Click the option button to enable the match criteria.
Source Address Book	Lists all the from-zone and source addresses/address sets for the policy.	<p>Select the from-zone and source addresses/address sets from the list and do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To match the from-zone and source address/address sets to the rule, click the left arrow.</li> <li>■ To make the from-zone exceptions for each rule, click the right arrow.</li> </ul>
Except	Specifies the zone exceptions for the from-zone and source address for each rule.	Click the option button to enable the exception criteria.
<b>To-Zone and Destination Addresses/Address Sets</b>		
Match	Specifies the match criteria for the to-zone and source addresses for each rule.	Click the option button to enable the match criteria.
Destination Address Book	Lists all the to-zone and destination addresses/address sets for the policy.	<p>Select the to-zone and destination addresses/address sets from the list and do either one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To match the to-zone and destination addresses/address sets to the rule, click the left arrow.</li> <li>■ To make the to-zone exceptions for each rule, click the right arrow.</li> </ul>
Except	Specifies the except criteria for the to-zone and source address for each rule.	Click the option button to enable exception criteria.
<b>Applications and Application Sets</b>		
Matched	Specifies the type of network traffic you want the device to monitor for attacks.	

**Table 132: Adding an IPS Rulebase Quick Configuration Page Summary** (*continued*)

Field	Function	Actions
Application/Application Sets	Lists one or multiple configured applications and application sets.	<p>Select the applications and application sets to be matched and do either one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To match the rule to the applications/application sets, click the left arrow.</li> <li>■ To remove the rule match for the applications/application sets, select the rule match and click the right arrow.</li> </ul>
<b>Specify a rule action</b>		
Rule Action	Lists all the rule actions for IDP to take when the monitored traffic matches the attack objects specified in the rules.	Select a rule action from the list.
<b>Attacks and Attack Action</b>		
Predefined Attacks	Specifies predefined attack objects that are used to match the traffic against known attacks.	<p>Type a valid predefined attack name and do either one the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To add a predefined attack, type it next to the <b>Add</b> button, and click <b>Add</b>.</li> <li>■ To remove a predefined attack, select it in the Predefined Attacks box, and click <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ul>
Predefined Attack Groups	Specifies predefined attack groups that are used to match the traffic against known attack objects.	<p>Enter a valid predefined attack group name and do either one the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To add a predefined attack group, type it next to the <b>Add</b> button, and click <b>Add</b>.</li> <li>■ To remove a predefined attack group, select it in the Predefined Attack groups box, and click <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ul>
Custom Attacks	Specifies the custom attack objects to detect new attacks that are unique to your network.	<p>Select one or multiple custom attacks from the Custom Attacks List and do either one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To match a custom attack to the rule, click the left arrow.</li> <li>■ To remove the rule match for the custom attack to the rule, select the rule match and click the right arrow.</li> </ul>
<b>Attack Action</b>		
IP Action	Specifies the action IDP takes against future connections that use the same IP address.	Select an IP action from the list.
IP Target	Specifies the destination IP address.	Select an IP target from the list.
Timeout	Specifies the number of seconds IP action should remain effective before new sessions are initiated within that specified timeout value.	Type the timeout value, in seconds. Maximum acceptable value is 65535 seconds.

**Table 132: Adding an IPS Rulebase Quick Configuration Page Summary** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Actions
Log IP Action	Specifies if the log attacks are enabled to create a log record that appears in the log viewer.	Select the check box.
<b>Rule Additional Actions</b>		
Severity	Specifies the rule severity levels in logging to support better organization and presentation of log records on the log server.	Select a severity level from the list.
Terminal	Specifies if the terminal rule flag is set or unset.	Select the check box.
<b>Notifications - Attack Logging</b>		
Enable	Specifies if the configuring attack logging alert is enabled.	Select the check box.
Set Alert Flag	Specifies if an alert flag is set.	Select the check box.

## Adding an Exempt Rulebase—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure and add an exempt rulebase.

**Figure 176: Quick Configuration Page for Adding an Exempt Rulebase**

Configuration > Quick Configuration > Security Policies > IDP Policies

Quick Configuration

Security Policies Add a Rule

Policy Name

Rulebase

Configure Rule Name and Description

• Rule Name

Description

⊞ Rule Match Criterias

⊞ Attacks

To configure an exempt rulebase with Quick Configuration:

1. Select Configuration > Quick Configuration > Security Policies > IDP Policies.
2. In the Policy Name text box, type a policy name.
3. Under Exempt Rulebase, click **Add** to add an exempt rulebase.

Figure 176 on page 733 shows the Quick Configuration page for exempt rulebase.

4. Fill in the information as described in Table 133 on page 734.
5. Click one of the following buttons:
  - To apply the configuration and return to the main Configuration page, click **OK**.
  - To cancel your entries and return to the main page, click **Cancel**.

**Table 133: Adding an Exempt Rulebase Quick Configuration Page Summary**

Field	Function	Actions
Policy Name	Specifies the name of the IDP policy.	Displays the name of the IDP policy.
Rulebase	Specifies IPS rule to create, modify, delete, and reorder the rules in a rulebase.	Displays the name of the rulebase.
<b>Configure Rule Name and Description</b>		
Rule Name	Specifies the name of the IPS rulebase rule.	Type a rule name.
Description	Specifies the description for the rule.	Type the description for the rule.
<b>Rule Match Criteria</b>		
<b>From-Zone and Source Addresses/Address Sets</b>		
Match	Specifies the match criteria for the source zone for each rule.	Click the option button to enable the match criteria.
Source Address Book	Lists all the from-zone and source addresses/address sets for the policy.	Select the from-zone and source addresses/address sets from the list and do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To match the from-zone and source address/address sets to the rule, click the left arrow.</li> <li>■ To remove the rule match for the from-zone exceptions for each rule, click the right arrow.</li> </ul>
Except	Specifies the zone exceptions for the from-zone and source address for each rule.	Click the option button to enable the exception criteria.
<b>To-Zone and Destination Addresses/Address Sets</b>		
Match	Specifies the match criteria for the to-zone and source addresses for each rule.	Click the option button to enable the match criteria.
Destination Address Book	Lists all the to-zone and destination addresses/address sets for the policy.	Select the to-zone and destination addresses/address sets from the list and do either one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To match the to-zone and destination addresses/address sets to the rule, click the left arrow.</li> <li>■ To remove the rule match for the to-zone exceptions for each rule, click the right arrow.</li> </ul>



**Table 133: Adding an Exempt Rulebase Quick Configuration Page Summary** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Actions
Except	Specifies the except criteria for the to-zone and source address for each rule.	Click the option button to enable exception criteria.
<b>Attacks</b>		
Predefined Attacks	Specifies predefined attack objects that are used to match the traffic against known attacks.	<p>Type a valid predefined attack name and do either one the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To add a predefined attack, type it next to the <b>Add</b> button, and click <b>Add</b>.</li> <li>■ To remove a predefined attack, select it in the Predefined Attacks box, and click <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ul>
Predefined Attack Groups	Specifies predefined attack groups that are used to match the traffic against known attack objects.	<p>Enter a valid predefined attack group name and do either one the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To add a predefined attack group, type it next to the <b>Add</b> button, and click <b>Add</b>.</li> <li>■ To remove a predefined attack group, select it in the Predefined Attack groups box, and click <b>Delete</b>.</li> </ul>
Custom Attacks	Specifies the custom attack objects to detect new attacks that are unique to your network.	<p>Select one or multiple custom attacks from the Custom Attacks List and do either one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To match a custom attack to the rule, click the left arrow.</li> <li>■ To remove the rule match for the custom attack to the rule, select the rule match and click the right arrow.</li> </ul>

## Inserting a Rule in the Rulebase

The IDP rule-matching algorithm starts from the top of the rulebase and checks traffic against all rules in the rulebase that match the specified match conditions. You determine the sequence in which rules are applied to network traffic by placing them in the desired order. When you add a rule to the rulebase, it is placed at the end of

the existing list of rules. To place a rule in any other location than at the end of the rulebase, you *insert* the rule at the desired location in the rulebase.

#### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
2. Establish basic connectivity. For more information, see the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
4. Define rules in a rulebase. See “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720.

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to insert rule **R2** before rule **R1**.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to insert a rule.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 736
- Related Topics on page 736

## CLI Configuration

To insert a rule in the rulebase:

1. Define the position of the rule in the rulebase based on the order in which you want the rule to be evaluated. The following configuration statement places rule **R2** before rule **R1** in the IPS rulebase in a policy called **base-policy**:

```
user@host# insert security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips rule R2 before rule R1
```

2. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
3. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show security idp** command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724
- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774
- Deactivating and Reactivating Rules in a Rulebase on page 737

## Deactivating and Reactivating Rules in a Rulebase

In a rulebase, you can disable and enable rules by using the **deactivate** and **activate** commands.

The **deactivate** command comments out the specified statement from the configuration. Rules that have been deactivated do not take effect when you issue the **commit** command.

The **activate** command adds the specified statement back to the configuration. Rules that have been activated take effect when you next issue the **commit** command.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
2. Establish basic connectivity. For more information, see the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
4. Define rules in a rulebase. See “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720.

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to deactivate and reactivate rule **R2** in an IPS rulebase that is associated with a policy called **base-policy**.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to deactivate or activate rules in a rulebase.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 737
- Related Topics on page 738

## CLI Configuration

To deactivate and activate a rule in a rulebase:

1. Specify the rule that you want to deactivate. The following statement deactivates rule **R2** in an IPS rulebase associated with **base-policy**:

```
user@host# deactivate security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips rule R2
```

2. If you want to reactivate the rule, use the **activate** command. The following statement reactivates the deactivated rule **R2** in the IPS rulebase:

```
user@host# activate security idp idp-policy base-policy rulebase-ips rule R2
```

3. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
4. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show security idp** command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724
- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774
- Inserting a Rule in the Rulebase on page 735

## Understanding Application Sets

---

You specify an application, or service, to indicate that a policy applies to traffic of that type. Sometimes the same applications or a subset of them can be present in multiple policies, making them difficult to manage. JUNOS software allows you to create groups of applications called *application sets*.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
- Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711

Application sets simplify the process by allowing you to manage a small number of application sets, rather than a large number of individual application entries.

The application (or application set) is configured as a match criterion for packets. Packets must be of the application type specified in the policy for the policy to apply to the packet. If the packet matches the application type specified by the policy and all other criteria match, then the policy action is applied to the packet. You can use predefined or custom applications and refer to them in a policy.

## Related Topics

- Configuring Application Sets for IDP on page 740
- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724

## Configuring Applications or Services for IDP

---

Applications or services represent Application Layer protocols that define how data is structured as it travels across the network. Because the services you support on

your network are the same services that attackers must use to attack your network, you can specify which services are supported by the destination IP to make your rules more efficient. Juniper Networks provides predefined applications and application sets that are based on industry-standard applications. If you need to add applications that are not included in the predefined applications, you can create custom applications or modify predefined applications to suit your needs. To create custom applications, specify a meaningful name for an application and associate parameters with it—for example, inactivity timeout, or application protocol type.

#### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding IDP Rule Objects on page 713
  - Configuring Applications or Services for IDP on page 738
2. Establish basic connectivity. (See the Getting Started Guide for your device.)
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
4. Enable IDP in security policies. See “Enabling IDP in a Security Policy” on page 741.

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to create an application **cust-app** and specify it as a match condition in the IDP policy **ABC**. In this example you create a special FTP application running on port **78**. You also specify the inactivity timeout value as 6000 seconds:

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure an application.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 739
- Related Topics on page 740

## CLI Configuration

To create an application and associate it with an IDP policy:

1. Specify a unique name for the application. The following statement specifies **cust-app** as the name of the application:

```
user@host# set applications application cust-app
```

2. Specify application properties. The following statement specifies an FTP application using the TCP protocol and the port **78**. Inactivity timeout for the FTP service is set to 6000 seconds.

```
user@host# set applications application cust-app application-protocol ftp protocol
tcp destination-port 78 inactivity-timeout 6000
```

3. Specify the application as a match condition in a policy. The following statement adds the `cust-app` application to the `ABC` policy:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy ABC rulebase-ips rule ABC match
application cust-app
```

4. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
5. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Configuring Application Sets for IDP on page 740
- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774

## Configuring Application Sets for IDP

To configure an application set, you add predefined or custom applications separately to an application set and assign a meaningful name to the application set. Once you name the application set you specify the name as part of the policy. For this policy to apply on a packet, the packet must match any one of the applications included in this set.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding Application Sets on page 738
2. Establish basic connectivity. See the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
4. Enable IDP in security policies. See “Enabling IDP in a Security Policy” on page 741.

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to create an application set `SrvAccessAppSet` and associate it with an IDP policy `ABC`. The application set `SrvAccessAppSet` combines three applications. Instead of specifying three applications in the policy rule, you specify one application set. If all of the other criteria match, any one of the applications in the application set serves as valid matching criteria.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure an application set.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 741
- Related Topics on page 741

## CLI Configuration

To create an application set and associate it with an IDP policy:

1. Create an application set and specify applications to be included in the set. The following statements create the `SrvAccessAppSet` application set that includes a set of three applications:

```
user@host# set applications application-set SrvAccessAppSet application ssh
user@host# set applications application-set SrvAccessAppSet application telnet
user@host# set applications application-set SrvAccessAppSet application
custApp
```

2. Associate the application set with an IDP policy. The following statement associates the application set `SrvAccessAppSet` to IDP policy `ABC`:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy ABC rulebase-ips rule ABC match
application SrvAccessAppSet
```

3. Specify an action for the policy. The following statement permits traffic from applications specified in the application set:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy ABC rulebase-ips rule ABC then action
no-action
```

4. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
5. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Configuring Applications or Services for IDP on page 738
- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774

## Enabling IDP in a Security Policy

For transit traffic to pass through IDP inspection, you configure a security policy and enable IDP application services on all traffic that you want to inspect. Security policies contain rules defining the types of traffic permitted on the network and the way that the traffic is treated inside the network. Enabling IDP in a security policy directs traffic that matches the specified criteria to be checked against the IDP rulebases.

To allow transit traffic to pass through without IDP inspection, specify a *permit* action for the rule without enabling the IDP application services. Traffic matching the conditions in this rule passes through the device without IDP inspection.

#### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
2. Establish basic connectivity. See the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
4. Create security zones. See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
5. Configure applications. See “Configuring Applications or Services for IDP” on page 738.

In this example, you configure two policies—**idp-app-policy-1** and **idp-app-policy-2**. You configure these policies to enable IDP services on all traffic flowing in both directions on the device. Policy **idp-app-policy-1** directs all traffic flowing from previously configured zones **Zone1** to **Zone2** to be checked against IDP rulebases. The policy **idp-app-policy-2** directs all traffic flowing from **Zone2** to **Zone1** to be checked against IDP rulebases.



**NOTE:** The action set in the security policy action must be *permit*. You cannot enable IDP for traffic that the device denies or rejects.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure the IDP application services.

This topic contains:

- J-Web Configuration on page 742
- CLI Configuration on page 744
- Related Topics on page 745

## J-Web Configuration

To enable IDP in a security policy:

1. Create a security policy. The following tasks create a policy **idp-app-policy-1** for traffic traversing from **Zone1** to **Zone2**:
  - a. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
  - b. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.



- c. Next to Policies, select the check box and click **Configure**.
  - d. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
  - e. In the From zone name box, type **Zone1**.
  - f. In the To zone name box, type **Zone2**.
  - g. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
  - h. In the Policy name box, type **idp-app-policy-1**.
2. Specify the match conditions for the traffic flowing in one direction. The following tasks specify that traffic from any source address, to any destination address and with any application type, matches the criteria for this policy:
    - a. Next to Match, select the check box, and click **Configure**.
    - b. From the Source Address choice list, select **Source address**.
    - c. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
    - d. From the Value keyword list, select **Any** and click **OK**.
    - e. From the Destination Address choice list, select **Destination address**.
    - f. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
    - g. From the Value keyword list, select **Any** and click **OK**.
    - h. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
    - i. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
    - j. From the Value keyword list, select **Any** and click **OK**.
  3. Specify the action to be taken on traffic that matches the specified conditions. The following tasks permit all traffic matching the specified criteria and direct it to be checked against IDP rulebases:
    - a. On the Policy name **idp-app-policy-1** page, next the Then, select check box and click **Configure**.
    - b. From the Action list, select **Permit**.
    - c. Next to Permit, click **Configure**.
    - d. Next to Application services, click **Configure**.
    - e. Next to Idp, select the check box.
  4. Create another security policy for traffic in the other direction. The following tasks create another policy **idp-app-policy-2** for traffic from **Zone2** to **Zone1**:
    - a. On the Policy page, next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
    - b. In the From zone name box, type **Zone2**.
    - c. In the To zone name box, type **Zone1**.

- d. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.
  - e. In the Policy name box, type **idp-app-policy-2**.
5. Specify the match conditions for the traffic flowing in the other direction. The following tasks specify that traffic from any source, to any destination with any application type, matches the criteria for this policy:
  - a. Next to Match, select the check box, and click **Configure**.
  - b. From the Source Address choice list, select **Source address**.
  - c. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
  - d. From the Value keyword list, select **Any** and click **OK**.
  - e. From the Destination Address choice list, select **Destination address**.
  - f. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
  - g. From the Value keyword list, select **Any** and click **OK**.
  - h. From the Application choice list, select **Application**.
  - i. Next to Application, click **Add new entry**.
  - j. From the Value keyword list, select **Any** and click **OK**.
6. Specify the action to be taken on traffic that matches the conditions specified in the policy. The following tasks permit all traffic matching the specified criteria and direct it to be checked against IDP rulebases:
  - a. On the Policy name **idp-app-policy-2** page, next the Then, select check box and click **Configure**.
  - b. From the Action list, select **Permit**.
  - c. Next to Permit, click **Configure**.
  - d. Next to Application services, click **Configure**.
  - e. Next to Idp, select the check box.
7. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

To enable IDP in a security policy:

1. Create a security policy. The following statement creates a policy **idp-app-policy-1** for traffic traversing from **Zone1** to **Zone2**:

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone Zone1 to-zone Zone2 policy
idp-app-policy-1
```

2. Specify the match conditions for the traffic flowing in one direction. The following statement specifies that traffic from any source address, to any destination address and with any application type, matches the criteria for this policy:

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone Zone1 to-zone Zone2 policy
idp-app-policy-1 match source-address any destination-address any application
any
```

3. Specify the action to be taken on traffic that matches the specified conditions. The following statement permits all traffic matching the specified criteria and directs it to be checked against IDP rulebases:

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone Zone1 to-zone Zone2 policy
idp-app-policy-1 then permit application-services idp
```

5. Create another security policy for traffic in the other direction. The following statement creates another policy idp-app-policy-2 for traffic from Zone2 to Zone1:

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone Zone2 to-zone Zone1 policy
idp-app-policy-2
```

6. Specify the match conditions for the traffic flowing in the other direction. The following statement specifies that traffic from any source, to any destination with any application type, matches the criteria for this policy:

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone Zone2 to-zone Zone1 policy
idp-app-policy-2 match source-address any destination-address any application
any
```

7. Specify the action to be taken on traffic that matches the conditions specified in the policy. The following statement permits all traffic matching the specified criteria and directs it to be checked against IDP rulebases:

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone Zone2 to-zone Zone1 policy
idp-app-policy-2 then permit application-services idp
```

8. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
9. You can verify the configuration by using the `show security policies` command. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724

## Understanding IDP Terminal Rules

---

The IDP rule-matching algorithm starts from the top of the rulebase and checks traffic against all rules in the rulebase that match the source, destination, and service. However, you can configure a rule to be *terminal*. A *terminal* rule is an exception to this algorithm. When a match is discovered in a terminal rule for the source, destination, zones, and application, IDP does not continue to check subsequent rules

for the same source, destination, and application. It does not matter whether or not the traffic matches the attack objects in the matching rule.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
- Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711

You can use a terminal rule for the following purposes:

- To set different actions for different attacks for the same Source and Destination.
- To disregard traffic that originates from a known trusted source. Typically, the action is **None** for this type of terminal rule.
- To disregard traffic sent to a server that is vulnerable only to a specific set of attacks. Typically, the action is **Drop Connection** for this type of terminal rule.

Use caution when defining terminal rules. An inappropriate terminal rule can leave your network open to attacks. Remember that traffic matching the source, destination, and application of a terminal rule is not compared to subsequent rules, even if the traffic does not match an attack object in the terminal rule. Use a terminal rule only when you want to examine a certain type of traffic for one specific set of attack objects. Be particularly careful about terminal rules that use **any** for both the source and destination. Terminal rules should appear near the top of the rulebase before other rules that would match the same traffic.

### Related Topics

- Setting Terminal Rules in Rulebases on page 746
- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724

## Setting Terminal Rules in Rulebases

By default, rules in the IDP rulebase are not terminal. That means that IDP examines all rules in the rulebase and executes all matches. You can specify that a rule is

terminal; if IDP encounters a match for the source, destination, and service specified in a terminal rule, it does not examine any subsequent rules for that connection.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding IDP Terminal Rules on page 745
2. Establish basic connectivity. For more information, see the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
4. Enable IDP application services in a security policy. See “Enabling IDP in a Security Policy” on page 741.
5. Create security zones. See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
6. Define rules. See “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720.

The configuration statements in this topic describe how to define terminal rules. You define a rule **R2** to terminate the match algorithm if the source IP of the traffic originates from a known trusted network in your company. If this rule is matched, IDP disregards traffic from the trusted network and does not monitor the session for malicious data.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure terminal rules.

This topic contains:

- J-Web Configuration on page 747
- CLI Configuration on page 748
- Related Topics on page 749

## J-Web Configuration

To configure terminal rules:

1. Create a policy by assigning a meaningful name to it. The following tasks specify **P1** as the policy name:
  - a. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**. The Configuration page appears.
  - b. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  - c. Next to Idp, click **Configure**.

- d. Next to Idp policy, click **Add new entry**.
  - e. In the Policy name box, type **P1**.
2. Associate a rulebase with the policy and add rules to the rulebase. The following tasks associate an IPS rulebase with **P1** and add rule **R2** to the rulebase.
  - a. Next to Rulebase ips, click **Configure**.
  - b. Next to Rule, click **Add new entry**.
  - c. In the Name box, type **R2**.
3. Define the match criteria for the rule. The following tasks specify source address **internal** and destination address any as the match criteria for rule **R2**.
  - a. Next to Match, click **Configure**.
  - b. From the Source list, select **Source address**.
  - c. Next to Source address, click **Add new entry**.
  - d. From the Value list, select **Enter Specific value**.
  - e. In the Address box, type **internal**.
  - f. From the Destination list, select **Destination address**.
  - g. Next to Destination address, click **Add new entry**.
  - h. From the Value list, select **Any** and click **OK**.
4. Set the terminal flag for the rule. The following tasks specify **R2** as a terminal rule:
  - a. On the Rule R2 page, next to Terminal, select the check box.
  - b. Click **OK**.
5. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.

## CLI Configuration

To configure terminal rules:

1. Define a rule and add it to a rulebase in a policy. The following statement creates a policy **P1**, associates an IPS rulebase with the policy, and adds rules **R2** to the rulebase:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy P1 rulebase-ips rule R2
```

2. Define the match criteria for the rule. The following tasks specify source address **internal** and destination address any as the match criteria for rule **R2**:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy P1 rulebase-ips rule R2 match
source-address internal destination-address any
```

3. Set the terminal flag for the rule. The following statement specifies R2 as a terminal rule:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy P1 rulebase-ips rule R2 terminal
```

4. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
5. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show security idp** command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724
- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774
- Inserting a Rule in the Rulebase on page 735
- Deactivating and Reactivating Rules in a Rulebase on page 737

## Understanding Custom Attack Objects

You can create custom attack objects to detect new attacks or customize predefined attack objects to meet the unique needs of your network.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
- Understanding Predefined Attack Objects and Groups on page 777

To configure a custom attack object, you specify a unique name for it and then specify additional information, such as a general description and keywords, which can make it easier for you to locate and maintain the attack object.

Certain properties in the attack object definitions are common to all types of attacks, such as attack name, description, severity level, service or application binding, time binding, recommended action, and protocol or port binding. Some fields are specific to an attack type and are available only for that specific attack definition.

This topic covers:

- Attack Name on page 750
- Severity on page 750
- Service or Application Binding on page 750
- Protocol or Port Bindings on page 754
- Time Bindings on page 755

- Attack Properties—Signature Attacks on page 756
- Attack Properties—Protocol Anomaly Attacks on page 762
- Attack Properties—Compound or Chain Attacks on page 763
- Related Topics on page 765

## Attack Name

Specify an alphanumeric name for the object. You might want to include the protocol the attack uses in the attack name.

## Severity

Specifies the brutality of the attack on your network. Severity categories, in order of increasing brutality, are info, warning, minor, major, critical (see “Understanding IDP Rule Notifications” on page 719). Critical attacks are the most dangerous—typically these attacks attempt to crash your server or gain control of your network. Informational attacks are the least dangerous, and typically are used by network administrators to discover holes in their own security systems.

## Service or Application Binding

The service or application binding field specifies the service that the attack uses to enter your network.



**NOTE:** Specify either the service or the protocol binding in a custom attack. In case you specify both, the service binding takes precedence.

- Any—Specify **any** if you are unsure of the correct service and want to match the signature in all services. Because some attacks use multiple services to attack your network, you might want to select the **Any** service binding to detect the attack regardless of which service the attack chooses for a connection.
- Service—Most attacks use a specific service to attack your network. You can select the specific service used to perpetrate the attack as the service binding. Table 134 on page 750 displays supported services and default ports associated with the services.

**Table 134: Supported Services for Service Bindings**

Service	Description	Default Port
AIM	AOL Instant Messenger. America Online Internet service provider (ISP) provides Internet, chat, and instant messaging applications.	TCP/5190
BGP	Border Gateway Protocol	TCP/179
Chargen	Character Generator Protocol is a UDP- or TCP-based debugging and measurement tool.	TCP/19, UDP/19



**Table 134: Supported Services for Service Bindings** (continued)

Service	Description	Default Port
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol allocates network addresses and delivers configuration parameters from server to hosts.	UDP/67, UDP/68
Discard	Discard protocol is an Application Layer protocol that describes a process for discarding TCP or UDP data sent to port 9.	TCP/9, UDP/9
DNS	Domain Name System translates domain names into IP addresses.	TCP/53, UDP/53
Echo	Echo	TCP/7, UDP/7
Finger	Finger is a UNIX program that provides information about users.	TCP/79, UDP/79
FTP	File Transfer Protocol (FTP) allows the sending and receiving of files between machines.	TCP/21, UDP/21
Gnutella	Gnutella is a public domain file sharing protocol that operates over a distributed network.	TCP/6346
Gopher	Gopher organizes and displays Internet servers' contents as a hierarchically structured list of files.	TCP/70
H225RAS	H.225.0/RAS (Registration, Admission, and Status)	UDP/1718, UDP/1719
HTTP	HyperText Transfer Protocol is the underlying protocol used by the World Wide Web (WWW).	TCP/80, TCP/81, TCP/88, TCP/3128, TCP/7001 (Weblogic), TCP/8000, TCP/8001, TCP/8100 (JRun), TCP/8200 (JRun), TCP/8080, TCP/8888 (Oracle-9i), TCP/9080 (Websphere), UDP/80
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol	
IDENT	Identification protocol is a TCP/IP Application Layer protocol used for TCP client authentication.	TCP/113
IKE	Internet Key Exchange protocol (IKE) is a protocol to obtain authenticated keying material for use with ISAKMP.	UDP/500
IMAP	Internet Message Access Protocol is used for retrieving messages.	TCP/143, UDP/143
IRC	Internet Relay Chat (IRC) allows people connected to the Internet to join live discussions.	TCP/6667
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol is a set of protocols used to access information directories.	TCP/389

**Table 134: Supported Services for Service Bindings** *(continued)*

Service	Description	Default Port
<b>lpr</b>	Line Printer Daemon protocol is a TCP-based protocol used for printing applications.	TCP/515
<b>MSN</b>	Microsoft Network Messenger is a utility that allows you to send instant messages and talk online.	TCP/1863
<b>MSRPC</b>	Microsoft Remote Procedure Call	TCP/135, UDP/135
<b>MSSQL</b>	Microsoft SQL is a proprietary database server tool that allows for the creation, access, modification, and protection of data.	TCP/1433, TCP/3306
<b>MYSQL</b>	MySQL is a database management system available for both Linux and Windows.	TCP/3306
<b>NBDS</b>	NetBIOS Datagram Service application, published by IBM, provides connectionless (datagram) applications to PCs connected with a broadcast medium to locate resources, initiate sessions, and terminate sessions. It is unreliable and the packets are not sequenced.	UDP/137 (NBName), UDP/138 (NBDS)
<b>NFS</b>	Network File System uses UDP to allow network users to access shared files stored on computers of different types. SUN RPC is a building block of NFS.	TCP/2049, UDP/2049
<b>nntp</b>	Network News Transport Protocol is a protocol used to post, distribute, and retrieve USENET messages.	TCP/119
<b>NTP</b>	Network Time Protocol provides a way for computers to synchronize to a time reference.	UDP/123
<b>POP3</b>	Post Office Protocol is used for retrieving e-mail.	UDP/110, TCP/110
<b>Portmapper</b>	Service that runs on nodes on the Internet to map an ONC RPC program number to the network address of the server that listens for the program number.	TCP/111, UDP/111
<b>RADIUS</b>	Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service application is a server program used for authentication and accounting purposes.	UDP/1812, UDP/1813
<b>rexec</b>	Rexec	TCP/512
<b>rlogin</b>	RLOGIN starts a terminal session on a remote host.	TCP/513
<b>rsh</b>	RSH executes a shell command on a remote host.	TCP/514
<b>rtsp</b>	Real-Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP) is for streaming media applications	TCP/554
<b>SIP</b>	Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is an Application-Layer control protocol for creating, modifying, and terminating sessions.	TCP/5060, UDP/5060

**Table 134: Supported Services for Service Bindings** *(continued)*

Service	Description	Default Port
<b>SMB</b>	Server Message Block (SMB) over IP is a protocol that allows you to read and write files to a server on a network.	TCP/139, TCP/445
<b>SMTP</b>	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is used to send messages between servers.	TCP/25, UDP/25
<b>SNMP</b>	Simple Network Management Protocol is a set of protocols for managing complex networks.	TCP/161, UDP/161
<b>SNMPTRAP</b>	SNMP trap	TCP/162, UDP/162
<b>SQLMON</b>	SQL monitor (Microsoft)	UDP/1434
<b>SSH</b>	SSH is a program to log into another computer over a network through strong authentication and secure communications on a channel that is not secure.	TCP/22, UDP/22
<b>SSL</b>	Secure Sockets Layer	TCP/443, TCP/80
<b>syslog</b>	Syslog is a UNIX program that sends messages to the system logger.	UDP/514
<b>Telnet</b>	Telnet is a UNIX program that provides a standard method of interfacing terminal routers and terminal-oriented processes to each other.	TCP/23, UDP/23
<b>TNS</b>	Transparent Network Substrate	TCP/1521, TCP/1522, TCP/1523, TCP/1524, TCP/1525, TCP/1526, TCP/1527, TCP/1528, TCP/1529, TCP/1530, TCP/2481, TCP/1810, TCP/7778
<b>TFTP</b>	Trivial File Transfer Protocol	UDP/69
<b>VNC</b>	Virtual Network Computing facilitates viewing and interacting with another computer or mobile router connected to the Internet.	TCP/5800, TCP/5900
<b>Whois</b>	Network Directory Application Protocol is a way to look up domain names.	TCP/43
<b>YMSG</b>	Yahoo! Messenger is a utility that allows you to check when others are online, send instant messages, and talk online.	TCP/5050

## Protocol or Port Bindings

Protocol or port bindings allow you to specify the protocol that an attack uses to enter your network. You can specify the name of the network protocol, or the protocol number.



**NOTE:** Specify either the service or the protocol binding in a custom attack. In case you specify both, the service binding takes precedence.

- IP—You can specify any of the supported network layer protocols using protocol numbers. Table 135 on page 754 lists protocol numbers for different protocols.

**Table 135: Supported Protocols and Protocol Numbers**

Protocol Name	Protocol Number
IGMP	2
IPIP	4
EGP	8
PUP	12
TP	29
IPV6	41
ROUTING	43
FRAGMENT	44
RSVP	46
GRE	47
ESP	50
AH	51
ICMPV6	58
NONE	59
DSTOPTS	60
MTP	92
ENCAP	98
PIM	103

**Table 135: Supported Protocols and Protocol Numbers** *(continued)*

Protocol Name	Protocol Number
COMP	108
RAW	255

- ICMP, TCP, and UDP—Attacks that do not use a specific service might use specific ports to attack your network. Some TCP and UDP attacks use standard ports to enter your network and establish a connection.
- RPC—The remote procedure call (RPC) protocol is used by distributed processing applications to handle interaction between processes remotely. When a client makes a remote procedure call to an RPC server, the server replies with a remote program; each remote program uses a different program number. To detect attacks that use RPC, configure the service binding as RPC and specify the RPC program ID.

Table 136 on page 755 displays sample formats for key protocols.

**Table 136: Sample Formats for Protocols**

Protocol Name	Protocol Number	Description
ICMP	<Port>ICMP</Port>	Specify the protocol name.
IP	<Port>IP/protocol-number</Port>	Specify the Network Layer protocol number.
RPC	<Port>RPC/program-number</Port>	Specify the RPC program number.
TCP or UDP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ &lt;Port&gt;TCP &lt;/Port&gt;</li> <li>■ &lt;Port&gt;TCP/port &lt;/Port&gt;</li> <li>■ &lt;Port&gt;TCP/minport-maxport &lt;/Port&gt;</li> </ul>	Specifying the port is optional for TCP and UDP protocols. For example, you can specify either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ &lt;Port&gt;UDP&lt;/Port&gt;</li> <li>■ &lt;Port&gt;UDP/10&lt;/Port&gt;</li> <li>■ &lt;Port&gt;UDP/10-100&lt;/Port&gt;</li> </ul>

## Time Bindings

Use time bindings to configure the time attributes for the custom attack object. Time attributes control how the attack object identifies attacks that repeat for a certain number of times. By configuring the scope and count of an attack, you can detect a sequence of the same attacks over a period of time (one minute) across sessions.

## Scope

Specify the scope within which the count of an attack occurs:

- **Source**—Specify this option to detect attacks from the source address for the specified number of times, regardless of the destination address. This means that for a given attack, a threshold value is maintained for each attack from the source address. The destination address is ignored. For example, anomalies are detected from two different pairs (**ip-a**, **ip-b**) and (**ip-a**, **ip-c**) that have the same source address **ip-a** but different destination addresses **ip-b** and **ip-c**. Then the number of matches for **ip-a** increments to 2. Suppose the threshold value or *count* is also set to 2, then the signature triggers the attack event.
- **Destination**—Specify this option to detect attacks sent to the destination address for the specified number of times, regardless of the source address. This means that for a given attack, a threshold value is maintained for each attack from the destination address. The source address is ignored. For example, if anomalies are detected from two different pairs (**ip-a**, **ip-b**) and (**ip-c**, **ip-b**) that have the same destination address **ip-b** but different source addresses **ip-a** and **ip-c**. Then the number of matches for **ip-b** increments to 2. Suppose the threshold value or *count* is also set to 2, then the signature triggers the attack event.
- **Peer**—Specify this option to detect attacks between source and destination IP addresses of the sessions for the specified number of times. This means that the threshold value is applicable for a pair of source and destination addresses. Suppose anomalies are detected from two different source and destination pairs (**ip-a**, **ip-b**) and (**ip-a**, **ip-c**). Then the number of matches for each pair is set to 1, even though both pairs have a common source address.

## Count

Count or threshold value specifies the number of times that the attack object must detect an attack within the specified scope before the device considers the attack object to match the attack. If you bind the attack object to multiple ports and the attack object detects that attack on different ports, each attack on each port is counted as a separate occurrence. For example, when the attack object detects an attack on TCP/80 and then on TCP/8080, the count is two.

Once the **count** match is reached, each attack that matches the criteria causes the attack count to increase by one. This count cycle lasts for a duration of 60 seconds, after which the cycle repeats.

## Attack Properties—Signature Attacks

Signature attack objects use a stateful attack signature (a pattern that always exists within a specific section of the attack) to detect known attacks. They also include the protocol or service used to perpetrate the attack and the context in which the attack occurs. The following properties are specific to signature attacks, and you can configure them when configuring signature attack:



**NOTE:** Attack context, flow type, and direction are mandatory fields for the signature attack definition.

## Attack Context

An attack context defines the location of the signature. If you know the service and the specific service context, specify that service and then specify the appropriate service contexts. If you know the service, but are unsure of the specific service context, specify one of the following general contexts:

- **first-data-packet**—Specify this context to detect the attack in only the first data packet.
- **first-packet**—Specify this context to detect the attack in only the first packet of a stream. When the flow direction for the attack object is set to **any**, the device checks the first packet of both the server-to-client and the client-to-server flows. If you know that the attack signature appears in the first packet of a session, choosing **first packet** instead of **packet** reduces the amount of traffic the device needs to monitor, which improves performance.
- **packet**—Specify this context to match the attack pattern within a packet. When you select this option, you must also specify the service binding to define the service header options. Although not required, specifying these additional parameters improves the accuracy of the attack object and thereby improves performance.
- **line**—Specify this context to detect a pattern match within a specific line within your network traffic.
- **normalized-stream**—Specify this context to detect the attack in an entire normalized stream. The normalized stream is one of the multiple ways of sending information. In this stream the information in the packet is normalized before a match is performed. Suppose **www.yahoo.com/sports** is the same as **www.yahoo.com/s%70orts**. The normalized form to represent both of these URLs might be **www.yahoo.com/sports**. Choose **normalized stream** instead of **stream**, unless you want to detect some pattern in its exact form. For example, if you want to detect the exact pattern **www.yahoo.com/s%70orts**, then select **stream**.
- **normalized-stream256**—Specify this context to detect the attack in only the first 256 bytes of a normalized stream.
- **normalized-stream1k**—Specify this context to detect the attack in only the first 1024 bytes of a normalized stream.
- **normalized-stream-8k**—Specify this context to detect the attack in only the first 8192 bytes of a normalized stream.
- **stream**—Specify this context to reassemble packets and extract the data to search for a pattern match. However, the device cannot recognize packet boundaries for stream contexts, so data for multiple packets is combined. Specify this option only when no other context option contains the attack.
- **stream256**—Specify this context to reassemble packets and search for a pattern match within the first 256 bytes of a traffic stream. When the flow direction is set to **any**, the device checks the first 256 bytes of both the server-to-client and

client-to-server flows. If you know that the attack signature will appear in the first 256 bytes of a session, choosing **stream256** instead of **stream** reduces the amount of traffic that the device must monitor and cache, thereby improving performance.

- **stream1k**—Specify this context to reassemble packets and search for a pattern match within the first 1024 bytes of a traffic stream. When the flow direction is set to **any**, the device checks the first 1024 bytes of both the server-to-client and client-to-server flows. If you know that the attack signature will appear in the first 1024 bytes of a session, choosing **stream1024** instead of **stream** reduces the amount of traffic that the device must monitor and cache, thereby improving performance.
- **stream8k**—Specify this context to reassemble packets and search for a pattern match within the first 8192 bytes of a traffic stream. When the flow direction is set to **any**, the device checks the first 8192 bytes of both the server-to-client and client-to-server flows. If you know that the attack signature will appear in the first 8192 bytes of a session, choosing **stream8192** instead of **stream** reduces the amount of traffic that the device must monitor and cache, thereby improving performance.

### Attack Direction

You can specify the connection direction of the attack. Using a single direction (instead of **Any**) improves performance, reduces false positives, and increases detection accuracy.

- Client to server (detects the attack only in client-to-server traffic)
- Server to client (detects the attack only in server-to-client traffic)
- Any (detects the attack in either direction)

### Attack Pattern

Attack patterns are signatures of the attacks you want to detect. A signature is a pattern that always exists within an attack; if the attack is present, so is the signature. To create the attack pattern, you must first analyze the attack to detect a pattern (such as a segment of code, a URL, or a value in a packet header), then create a syntactical expression that represents that pattern. You can also negate a pattern. Negating a pattern means that the attack is considered matched if the pattern defined in the attack does *not* match the specified pattern.



**NOTE:** Pattern negation is supported for packet, line, and application based contexts only and not for stream and normalized stream contexts.

---

### Protocol-Specific Parameters

Specifies certain values and options existing within packet headers. These parameters are different for different protocols. In a custom attack definition, you can specify



fields for only one of the following protocols—TCP, UDP, or ICMP. Although, you can define IP protocol fields with TCP or UDP in a custom attack definition.



**NOTE:** Header parameters can be defined only for attack objects that use a packet or first packet context. If you specified a line, stream, stream 256, or a service context you cannot specify header parameters.

If you are unsure of the options or flag settings for the malicious packet, leave all fields blank and IDP attempts to match the signature for all header contents.

Table 137 on page 759 displays fields and flags that you can set for attacks that use the IP protocol.

**Table 137: IP Protocol Fields and Flags**

Field	Description
Type of Service	Specify a value for the service type. Common service types are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ 0000 Default</li> <li>■ 0001 Minimize Cost</li> <li>■ 0002 Maximize Reliability</li> <li>■ 0003 Maximize Throughput</li> <li>■ 0004 Minimize Delay</li> <li>■ 0005 Maximize Security</li> </ul>
Total Length	Specify a value for the number of bytes in the packet, including all header fields and the data payload.
ID	Specify a value for the unique value used by the destination system to reassemble a fragmented packet.
Time to Live	Specify an integer value in the range of 0–255 for the time-to-live (TTL) value of the packet. This value represents the number of devices the packet can traverse. Each router that processes the packet decrements the TTL by 1; when the TTL reaches 0, the packet is discarded.
Protocol	Specify a value for the protocol used.
Source	Enter the source address of the attacking device.
Destination	Enter the destination address of the attack target.
Reserved Bit	This bit is not used.
More Fragments	When set (1), this option indicates that the packet contains more fragments. When unset (0), it indicates that no more fragments remain.
Don't Fragment	When set (1), this option indicates that the packet cannot be fragmented for transmission.

Table 138 on page 760 displays packet header fields and flags that you can set for attacks that use the TCP protocol.

**Table 138: TCP Header Fields and Flags**

Field	Description
Source Port	Specify a value for the port number on the attacking device.
Destination Port	Specify a value for the port number of the attack target.
Sequence Number	Specify a value for the sequence number of the packet. This number identifies the location of the data in relation to the entire data sequence.
ACK Number	Specify a value for the ACK number of the packet. This number identifies the next sequence number; the ACK flag must be set to activate this field.
Header Length	Specify a value for the number of bytes in the TCP header.
Data Length	Specify a value for the number of bytes in the data payload. For SYN, ACK, and FIN packets, this field should be empty.
Window Size	Specify a value for the number of bytes in the TCP window size.
Urgent Pointer	Specify a value for the urgent pointer. The value indicates that the data in the packet is urgent; the URG flag must be set to activate this field.
URG	When set, the urgent flag indicates that the packet data is urgent.
ACK	When set, the acknowledgment flag acknowledges receipt of a packet.
PSH	When set, the push flag indicates that the receiver should push all data in the current sequence to the destination application (identified by the port number) without waiting for the remaining packets in the sequence.
RST	When set, the reset flag resets the TCP connection, discarding all packets in an existing sequence.
SYN	When set, the SYN flag indicates a request for a new session.
FIN	When set, the final flag indicates that the packet transfer is complete and the connection can be closed.
R1	This reserved bit (1 of 2) is not used.
R2	This reserved bit (2 of 2) is not used.

Table 139 on page 761 displays packet header fields and flags that you can set for attacks that use the UDP protocol.

**Table 139: UDP Header Fields and Flags**

Field	Description
Source Port	Specify a value for the port number on the attacking device.
Destination Port	Specify a value for the port number of the attack target.
Data Length	Specify a value for the number of bytes in the data payload.

Table 140 on page 761 displays packet header fields and flags that you can set for attacks that use the ICMP protocol.

**Table 140: ICMP Header Fields and Flags**

Field	Description
ICMP Type	Specify a value for the primary code that identifies the function of the request or reply packet.
ICMP Code	Specify a value for the secondary code that identifies the function of the request or reply packet within a given type.
Sequence Number	Specify a value for the sequence number of the packet. This number identifies the location of the request or reply packet in relation to the entire sequence.
ICMP ID	Specify a value for the identification number. The identification number is a unique value used by the destination system to associate request and reply packets.
Data Length	Specify a value for the number of bytes in the data payload.

### Sample Signature Attack Definition

The following is a sample signature attack definition:

```
<Entry>
<Name>sample-sig</Name>
<Severity>Major</Severity>
<Attacks><Attack>
<TimeBinding><Count>2</Count>
<Scope>dst</Scope></TimeBinding>
<Application>FTP</Application>
<Type>signature</Type>
<Context>packet</Context>
<Negate>true</Negate>
<Flow>Control</Flow>
<Direction>any</Direction>
<Headers><Protocol><Name>ip</Name>
<Field><Name>ttl</Name>
<Match>==</Match><Value>128</Value></Field>
</Protocol><Name>tcp</Name>
```

```

<Field><Name><Match>&lt;/Match>
<value>1500</Value>
</Field></Protocol></Headers>
</Attack></Attacks>
</Entry>

```

## Attack Properties—Protocol Anomaly Attacks

A protocol anomaly attack object detects unknown or sophisticated attacks that violate protocol specifications (RFCs and common RFC extensions). You cannot create new protocol anomalies, but you can configure a new attack object that controls how your device handles a predefined protocol anomaly when detected.



**NOTE:** The service or application binding is a mandatory field for protocol anomaly attacks.

---

The following properties are specific to protocol anomaly attacks. Both attack direction and test condition are mandatory fields for configuring anomaly attack definitions.

### Attack Direction

Attack direction allows you to specify the connection direction of an attack. Using a single direction (instead of Any) improves performance, reduces false positives, and increases detection accuracy:

- Client to server (detects the attack only in client-to-server traffic)
- Server to client (detects the attack only in server-to-client traffic)
- Any (detects the attack in either direction)

### Test Condition

Test condition is a condition to be matched for an anomaly attack. Juniper Networks supports certain predefined test conditions. In the following example, the condition is a message that is too long. If the size of the message is longer than the preconfigured value for this test condition, the attack is matched.

```

<Attacks>
<Attack>
<Type>anomaly</Type>
...
<Test>MESSAGE_TOO_LONG</Test>
<Value>yes</Value>
...
</Attack>
</Attacks>

```

### Sample Protocol Anomaly Attack Definition

The following is a sample protocol anomaly attack definition:

```

<Entry>
  <Name>sample-anomaly</Name>
  <Severity>Info</Severity>
  <Attacks><Attack>
    <TimeBinding><Count>2</Count>
    <Scope>peer</Scope></TimeBinding>
    <Application>TCP</Application>
    <Type>anomaly</Type>
    <Test>OPTIONS_UNSUPPORTED</Test>
    <Direction>any</Direction>
  </Attack></Attacks>
</Entry>

```

## Attack Properties—Compound or Chain Attacks

A compound or chain attack object detects attacks that use multiple methods to exploit a vulnerability. This object combines multiple signatures and/or protocol anomalies into a single attack object, forcing traffic to match a pattern of combined signatures and anomalies within the compound attack object before traffic is identified as an attack. By combining and even specifying the order in which signatures or anomalies must match, you can be very specific about the events that need to take place before the device identifies traffic as an attack.

You must specify a minimum of 2 members (attacks) in a compound attack. You can specify up to 32 members in compound attack. Members can be either signature or anomaly attacks.

The following properties are specific to compound attacks:

### Scope

Scope allows you to specify if the attack is matched within a session or across transactions in a session. If the specified service supports multiple transactions within a single session, you can also specify whether the match should occur over a single session or can be made across multiple transactions within a session:

- Specify *session* to allow multiple matches for the object within the same session.
- Specify *transaction* to match the object across multiple transactions that occur within the same session.

### Order

Use ordered match to create a compound attack object that must match each member signature or protocol anomaly in the order you specify. If you do not specify an ordered match, the compound attack object still must match all members, but the attack pattern or protocol anomalies can appear in the attack in random order.

### Reset

Specifies that a new log is generated each time an attack is detected within the same session. If this field is set to *no* then the attack is logged only once for a session.

## Expression (Boolean expression)

Using the boolean expression field disables the ordered match function. The boolean expression field makes use of the member name or member index properties. The following three boolean operators are supported along with parenthesis, which helps determine precedence:

- **or**—If either of the member name patterns match, the expression matches.
- **and**—If both of the member name patterns match, the expression matches. It does not matter which order the members appear in.
- **oand (ordered and)**—If both of the member name patterns match, and if they appear in the same order as specified in the boolean expression, the expression matches.

Suppose you have created six signature members, labelled **s1-s5**. Suppose you know that the attack always contains the pattern **s1**, followed by either **s2** or **s3**. You also know that the attack always contains **s4** and **s5**, but their positions in the attack can vary. In this case, you might create the following boolean expression: **((s1 oand s2) or (s1 oand s3)) and (s4 and s5)**



**NOTE:** You can either define an ordered match or an expression (not both) in a custom attack definition.

---

## Member Index

Member Index is specified in chain attacks to identify a member (attack) uniquely. In the following example, member index is used to identify the members **m01** and **m02** in the defined expression:

```
<Expression>m02 AND m01</Expression>
<Order>no</Order>
<Reset>no</Reset>
<ScopeOption/>
<Members>
<Attack>
  <Member>m01</Member>
  <Type>Signature</Type>
  ...
  <Pattern><CDATA[.*/getlatestversion]]></Pattern>
  <Regex/>
</Attack>
<Attack><Member>m02</Member>
  <Type>Signature</Type>
  ...
  <Pattern><CDATA[\\[Skype\\'.*]]></Pattern>
  <Regex/>
</Attack>
<Attack>
```



**NOTE:** When defining the expression, you must specify the member index for all members.

### Sample Compound Attack Definition

The following is a sample compound attack definition:

```
<Entry>
  <Name>sample-chain</Name>
  <Severity>Critical</Severity>
  <Attacks><Attack>
    <Application>HTTP</Application>
    <Type>Chain</Type>
    <Order>yes</Order>
    <Reset>yes</Reset>
    <Members><Attack>
      <Type>Signature</Type>
      <Context>packet</Context>
      <Pattern><![CDATA[Unknown[]]></Pattern>
      <Flow>Control</Flow>
      <Direction>cts</Direction>
    </Attack><Attack>
      <Type>anomaly</Type>
      <Test>CHUNK_LENGTH_OVERFLOW</Test>
      <Direction>any</Direction>
    </Attack></Members>
  </Attack></Attacks>
</Entry>
```

### Related Topics

- [Configuring Signature-Based Attacks on page 765](#)
- [Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720](#)

## Configuring Signature-Based Attacks

To configure a custom attack object, you specify a unique name for it and then specify additional information, which can make it easier for you to locate and maintain the attack object.

Certain properties in the attack object definitions are common to all types of attacks, such as attack name, severity level, service or application binding, time binding, and protocol or port binding. Some fields are specific to an attack type and are available only for that specific attack definition.

Signature attack objects use a stateful attack signature (a pattern that always exists within a specific section of the attack) to detect known attacks. They also include the protocol or service used to perpetrate the attack and the context in which the attack occurs. The following properties are specific to signature attacks, and you can configure them when configuring signature attack—attack context, attack direction,

attack pattern, and protocol-specific parameters (TCP, UDP, ICMP, or IP header fields).

#### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding Custom Attack Objects on page 749
  - Understanding Predefined Attack Objects and Groups on page 777
2. Establish basic connectivity. For more information, see the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.

When configuring signature-based attacks, keep the following in mind:

- Attack context and direction are mandatory fields for the signature attack definition.
- Pattern negation is supported for packet, line, and application-based contexts only and not for stream and normalized stream contexts.
- When configuring the protocol-specific parameters, you can specify fields for only one of the following protocols—IP, TCP, UDP, or ICMP.
- When configuring a protocol binding, you can specify only one of the following—IP, ICMP, TCP, UDP, RPC or applications.
  - IP—Protocol number is a mandatory field.
  - TCP and UDP—You can specify either a single port (minimum-port) or a port range (minimum-port and maximum-port). If you do not specify a port, the default value is taken (0-655325).
  - RPC—Program number is a mandatory field.

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to create a signature-based attack object. In this example, you create a signature attack named **sig1** and assign it the following properties:

- Recommended action (**drop packet**)—Specify to drop a matching packet before it can reach its destination but does not close the connection.
- Time binding—Specify the scope as **source** and count as **10**. When scope is **source**, all attacks from the same source are counted, and when the number of attack reaches the count (**10**) specified, the attack is logged. In this example, every the tenth attack from the same source is logged.
- Attack context (**packet**)—Specify to match the attack pattern within a packet.
- Attack direction (**any**)—Specify to detect the attack in both directions—client-to-server and server-to-client traffic.
- Protocol (**TCP**)—Specify time to live (TTL) value of **128**.



- Shellcode (Intel)—Set the flag to detect shellcode for Intel platforms.
- Protocol binding—Specify TCP protocol and ports 50 through 100.

Once you have configured a signature-based attack object, you specify the attack as match criteria in an IDP policy rule. For more information, see “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to create a custom attack object.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 767
- Related Topics on page 768

## CLI Configuration

To create a signature-based attack object:

1. Specify a name for the attack. The following statement specifies **sig1** as the name of the attack.

```
user@host# set security idp custom-attack sig1
```

2. Specify common properties for the attack. The following statements specify a recommended action to drop packets and define time binding with scope as source scope and count as 10.

```
user@host# set security idp custom-attack sig1 recommended-action drop-packet
user@host# set security idp custom-attack sig1 time-binding scope source count
10
```

3. Specify the attack type and context. The following statement specifies the attack type signature and context packet.

```
user@host# set security idp custom-attack sig1 attack-type signature context
packet
```

4. Specify the attack direction and the shellcode flag. The following statement specifies the attack direction any and sets the shellcode flag to intel.

```
user@host# set security idp custom-attack sig1 attack-type signature shellcode
intel
```

5. Set the protocol and its fields. The following statement specifies the IP protocol and the TTL value 128.

```
user@host# set security idp custom-attack sig1 attack-type signature protocol
ip ttl value 128 match equal
```

6. Specify the protocol binding and ports. The following statement specifies the TCP protocol and the port range from 50 through 100.

```
user@host# set security idp custom-attack sig1 attack-type signature
protocol-binding tcp minimum-port 50 maximum-port 100
```

7. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
8. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show security idp** command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Configuring Protocol Anomaly-Based Attacks on page 768

## Configuring Protocol Anomaly-Based Attacks

A protocol anomaly attack object detects unknown or sophisticated attacks that violate protocol specifications (RFCs and common RFC extensions). You cannot create new protocol anomalies, but you can configure a new attack object that controls how your device handles a predefined protocol anomaly when detected.

The following properties are specific to protocol anomaly attacks—attack direction and test condition.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding Custom Attack Objects on page 749
  - Understanding Predefined Attack Objects and Groups on page 777
2. Establish basic connectivity. For more information, see the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.

When configuring protocol anomaly-based attacks, keep the following in mind:

- The service or application binding is a mandatory field for protocol anomaly attacks. Besides the supported applications, services also include IP, TCP, UDP, ICMP, and RPC.
- The attack direction and test condition properties are mandatory fields for configuring anomaly attack definitions.

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to create a signature-based attack object. In this example, you create a protocol anomaly attack named **anomaly1** and assign it the following properties:

- Time binding—Specify the scope as **peer** and count as **2** to detect anomalies between source and destination IP addresses of the sessions for the specified number of times.
- Severity (**info**)—Specify to provide information about any attack that matches the conditions.
- Attack direction (**any**)—Specify to detect the attack in both directions—client-to-server and server-to-client traffic.
- Service (**TCP**)—Specify to match attacks using the TCP service.
- Test condition (**OPTIONS\_UNSUPPORTED**)—Specify to match certain predefined test conditions. In this example, the condition is to match if the attack includes unsupported options.
- Shellcode (**sparc**)—Set the flag to detect shellcode for Sparc platforms.

Once you have configured the protocol anomaly-based attack object, you specify the attack as match criteria in an IDP policy rule. For more information, see “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to create a custom attack object.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 769
- Related Topics on page 770

## CLI Configuration

To create a protocol anomaly-based attack object:

1. Specify a name for the attack. The following statement specifies **anomaly1** as the name of the attack.

```
user@host# set security idp custom-attack anomaly1
```

2. Specify common properties for the attack. The following statements specify an **info** severity level and a time binding with a scope type **peer** and count **2**.

```
user@host# set security idp custom-attack anomaly1 severity info
user@host# set security idp custom-attack anomaly1 time-binding scope peer
count 2
```

3. Specify the attack type and test condition. The following statement specifies the attack type **anomaly** and test condition **UNSUPPORTED\_OPTIONS**.

```
user@host# set security idp custom-attack anomaly1 attack-type anomaly test
UNSUPPORTED_OPTIONS
```

4. Specify other properties for the anomaly attack. The following statement specifies the service **TCP** and attack direction **any**, and sets the shellcode flag to **sparc** and specifies .

```

user@host# set security idp custom-attack sa attack-type anomaly service TCP
user@host# set security idp custom-attack sa attack-type anomaly direction
any
user@host# set security idp custom-attack sa attack-type anomaly shellcode
sparc

```

5. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
6. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the `show security idp` command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Configuring Signature-Based Attacks on page 765

## Configuring DSCP in an IDP Policy

Configuring Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) values in IDP policies provides a method of associating class-of-service (CoS) values—thus different levels of reliability—for different types of traffic on the network.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - Class of Service chapters in the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
2. Establish basic connectivity. For more information, see the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
4. Enable IDP application services in a security policy. See “Enabling IDP in a Security Policy” on page 741.
5. Create security zones. See “Creating Security Zones” on page 71.
6. Define rules. See “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720.

DSCP is an integer value encoded in the 6-bit field defined in IP packet headers. It is used to enforce CoS distinctions. CoS allows you to override the default packet forwarding behavior and assign service levels to specific traffic flows.

You can configure DSCP value as an action in an IDP policy rule. You first define the traffic by defining match conditions in the IDP policy and then associate a DiffServ marking action with it. Based on the DSCP value, behavior aggregate classifiers set the forwarding class and loss priority for the traffic deciding the forwarding treatment the traffic receives.

All packets that match the IDP policy rule have the CoS field in their IP header rewritten with the DSCP value specified in the matching policy. If the traffic matches multiple rules with differing DSCP values, the first IDP rule that matches takes effect and this IDP rule then applies to all traffic for that session.

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to create a policy called **policy1**, specify a rulebase for this policy, and then add a rule **R1** to this rulebase. In this example, rule **R1**:

- Specifies the match condition to include any traffic from a previously configured zone called **zone1** to another previously configured zone called **zone2**. The match condition also includes a predefined attack group called **Critical - HTTP**. The application setting in the match condition is specified as **default** and matches any application configured in the attack object.
- Specifies an action to rewrite the CoS field in the IP header with the DSCP value **50** for any traffic that matches the criteria for rule **R1**,

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure the DSCP value in an IDP policy.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 771
- Related Topics on page 772

## CLI Configuration

To configure DSCP values in an IDP policy:

1. Create a policy by assigning a meaningful name to it. The following statement specifies **policy1** as the policy name:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy policy1
```

2. Associate a rulebase with the policy. The following statement associates an IPS rulebase with **policy1**:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy policy1 rulebase-ips
```

3. Add rules to the rulebase. The following statement adds a rule **R1** to the rulebase:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy policy1 rulebase-ips rule R1
```

4. Define the match criteria for the rule. The following statements specify that any traffic from **zone1** to **zone2** that includes a predefined attack group **Critical - HTTP** matches the criteria for rule **R1**. The **default** application setting matches any application configured in the attack object.

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy policy1 rulebase-ips R1 match from-zone
zone1 to-zone zone2 source-address any destination-address any application
default
```

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy policy1 rulebase-ips R1 match attacks
predefined-attack-group "Critical - HTTP"
```

5. Specify an action for the rule. The following statement specifies that for all traffic matching the criteria defined for rule **R1**, the CoS field in the IP header is rewritten with the DSCP value 50:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy policy1 rulebase-ips R1 then action  
mark-diffserv 50
```

6. Continue to specify any notification or logging options for the rule, if required.
7. Activate the policy. The following specifies **policy1** as the active policy:

```
user@host# set security idp active-policy policy1
```

8. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
9. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show security idp** command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## **Related Topics**

- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724
- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774

## Chapter 23

# IDP Signature Database

The signature database is one of the major components of Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP). It contains definitions of different objects—such as attack objects, application signatures objects, and service objects—that are used in defining IDP policy rules. As a response to new vulnerabilities, Juniper Networks periodically provides a file containing attack database updates on the Juniper Web site. You can download this file to protect your network from new threats.

This topic covers:

- Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773
- Using Predefined Policy Templates on page 774
- Understanding Predefined Attack Objects and Groups on page 777
- Updating the Signature Database Overview on page 779
- Updating the Signature Database Manually on page 780
- Configuring a Security Package Update—Quick Configuration on page 782
- Updating the Signature Database Automatically on page 784
- Understanding the Signature Database Version on page 785
- Verifying the Signature Database on page 786

## Understanding the IDP Signature Database

---

The IDP signature database is stored on the IDP enabled device and contains definitions of predefined attack objects and groups. These attack objects and groups are designed to detect known attack patterns and protocol anomalies within the network traffic. You can configure attack objects and groups as match conditions in IDP policy rules.



**NOTE:** You must install the IDP signature-database-update license key on your device for downloading and installing daily signature database updates provided by Juniper Networks. For license details, see the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*.

---

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
- Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711

---

You can perform the following tasks to manage the IDP signature database:

- Update the signature database—Download the attack database updates available on the Juniper Networks Web site. New attacks are discovered daily, so it is important to keep your signature database up to date.
- Verify the signature database version—Each signature database has a different version number with the latest database having the highest number. You can use the CLI to display the signature database version number.
- Update the protocol detector engine—You can download the protocol detector engine updates along with downloading the signature database. The IDP protocol detector contains Application Layer protocol decoders. The detector is coupled with the IDP policy and is updated together. It is always needed at policy update time, even if there is no change in the detector.
- Schedule signature database updates—You can configure the IDP-enabled device to automatically update the signature database after a set interval.

### Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Understanding the Signature Database Version on page 785
- Updating the Signature Database Manually on page 780
- Updating the Signature Database Automatically on page 784

---

## Using Predefined Policy Templates

Juniper Networks provides predefined policy templates that you can use as a starting point for creating your own policies. Each template is set of rules of a specific rulebase type that you can copy and then update according to your requirements. These templates are available in the `templates.xml` file on a secured Juniper Networks Web



site. To start using a template, you run command from the CLI to download and copy this file to a `/var/db/scripts/commit` directory.

#### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rulebases on page 709
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
2. Establish basic connectivity. For more information, see the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.

Each policy template contains rules that use the default actions associated with the attack objects. You should customize these templates to work on your network by selecting your own source and destination addresses and choosing IDP actions that reflect your security needs.

Table 141 on page 775 summarizes the predefined IDP policy templates provided by Juniper Networks.

**Table 141: Predefined IDP Policy Templates**

Template Name	Description
All With Logging	Includes all Attack Objects and enables packet logging for all rules.
All Without Logging	Includes all Attack Objects but does not enable packet logging.
DMZ Services	Protects a typical demilitarized zone (DMZ) environment.
DNS Server	Protects Domain Name System (DNS) services.
File Server	Protects file sharing services, such as Network File System (NFS), FTP, and others.
Getting Started	Contains very open rules. Useful in controlled lab environments, but should not be deployed on heavy traffic live networks.
IDP Default	Contains a good blend of security and performance.
Recommended	Contains only the attack objects tagged as <i>recommended</i> by Juniper Networks. All rules have their Actions column set to take the recommended action for each attack object.
Web Server	Protects HTTP servers from remote attacks.

To use predefined policy templates:

- Download the policy templates from the Juniper Networks Web site.
- Install the policy templates.
- Enable the `templates.xml` script file. Commit scripts in the `/var/db/scripts/commit` directory are ignored if they are not enabled.
- Choose a policy template that is appropriate for you and customize it if you need to.
- Activate the policy that you want to run on the system. Activating the policy might take a few minutes. Even after a commit complete message is displayed in the CLI, the system might continue to compile and push the policy to the dataplane.



**NOTE:** Occasionally, the compilation process might fail for a policy. In this case, the active policy showing in your configuration might not match the actual policy running on your device. Run the `show security idp status` command to verify the running policy. Additionally, you can view the IDP log files to verify the policy load and compilation status (see “Verifying the Signature Database” on page 786).

---

- Delete or deactivate the commit script file. By deleting the commit script file, you avoid the risk of overwriting modifications to the template when you commit the configuration. Deactivating the statement adds an inactive tag to the statement, effectively commenting out the statement from the configuration. Statements marked inactive do not take effect when you issue the `commit` command.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure an application set.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 776
- Related Topics on page 777

## CLI Configuration

To download and use a predefined policy template:

1. Download the script file `templates.xml` to the `/var/db/idpd/sec-download/sub-download` directory. This script file contains predefined IDP policy templates.

```
user@host> request security idp security-package download policy-templates
```

2. Copy the `templates.xml` file to the `/var/db/scripts/commit` directory and rename it to `templates.xsl`.

```
user@host> request security idp security-package install policy-templates
```

3. Enable the **templates.xml** scripts file. At commit time, the JUNOS management process (mgd) looks in the **/var/db/scripts/commit** directory for scripts and runs the script against the candidate configuration database to ensure the configuration conforms to the rules dictated by the scripts.

```
user@host# set system scripts commit file templates.xml
```

4. Commit the configuration. Committing the configuration saves the downloaded templates to the JUNOS configuration database and makes them available in the CLI at the **[edit security idp idp-policy]** hierarchy level.
5. Display the list of downloaded templates.

```
user@host#set security idp active-policy ?
```

```
Possible completions:
<active policy> Set active policy
All_With_Logging
  All_Without_Logging
  DMZ_Services
  DNS_Service
  File_Server
  Getting_Started
  IDP_Default
  Recommended
  Web_Server
```

6. Activate the predefined policy. The following statement specifies the *Recommended* predefined IDP policy as the active policy:

```
user@host# set security idp active-policy Recommended
```

7. Delete or deactivate the commit script file. By deleting the commit script file, you avoid the risk of overwriting modifications to the template when you commit the configuration. Run one of the following commands:

```
user@host# delete system scripts commit file templates.xml
user@host# deactivate system scripts commit file templates.xml
```

8. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
9. You can verify the configuration by using the **show security idp status** command. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724

## Understanding Predefined Attack Objects and Groups

The security package for IDP contains a database of predefined IDP attack objects and IDP attack object groups that you can use in IDP policies to match traffic against

known and unknown attacks. Juniper Networks updates the predefined attack objects and groups on a regular basis with newly discovered attack patterns.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
- Understanding IDP Rule Objects on page 713

Updates to the attack object database can include:

- New descriptions or severities for existing attack objects
- New attack objects
- Deletion of obsolete attack objects

### Predefined Attack Objects

Predefined attack objects are listed in an alphabetical order. These attack objects have unique names that help you identify the attack. The first part of the name indicates the group to which the attack object belongs. For example:

- **FTP:USER:ROOT**—Belongs to the **FTP:USER** group. It detects attempts to log in to an FTP server using the root account.
- **HTTP:HOTMAIL:FILE-UPLOAD**—Belongs to the **HTTP:HOTMAIL** group. It detects files attached to e-mails sent via the Web-based e-mail service Hotmail.

### Predefined Attack Object Groups

The predefined attack groups list displays the attack objects in the categories described below. A set of recommended attack objects that Juniper Networks considers to be serious threats are also available in this list. The recommended attack objects are organized into the following categories:

- **Attack Type**—Groups attack objects by type (anomaly or signature). Within each type, attack objects are grouped by severity.
- **Category**—Groups attack objects by predefined categories. Within each category, attack objects are grouped by severity.
- **Operating System**—Groups attack objects by the operating system to which they apply: BSD, Linux, Solaris, or Windows. Within each operating system, attack objects are grouped by services and severity.
- **Severity**—Groups attack objects by the severity assigned to the attack. IDP has five severity levels: Critical, Major, Minor, Warning, Info. Within each severity, attack objects are grouped by category.
- **Web Services**—Groups attack objects by common Web services. These services are grouped by severity levels—Warning, Critical, Major, Minor, Info.

- Miscellaneous—Groups attack objects by performance level. Attack objects affecting IDP performance over a certain level are grouped under this category.
- Response—Groups attack objects in traffic flowing in the server to client direction.

## Related Topics

- Updating the Signature Database Manually on page 780
- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- Defining Rules for an Exempt Rulebase on page 724

## Updating the Signature Database Overview

---

Juniper Networks regularly updates the predefined attack database and makes it available on the Juniper Networks Web site. This database includes attack object groups that you can use in IDP policies to match traffic against known attacks. Although you cannot create, edit, or delete predefined attack objects, you can use the CLI to update the list of attack objects that you can use in IDP policies.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773
  - Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
  - Understanding Predefined Attack Objects and Groups on page 777
- 

To update the signature database, you download a security package from the Juniper Networks Web site. The security package consists of the following IDP components:

- Attack objects
- Attack object groups
- Application objects
- Updates to the IDP Detector Engine
- IDP Policy templates (Policy templates are downloaded independently. See “Using Predefined Policy Templates” on page 774.)

By default, when you download the security package, you download the following components into a Staging folder in your device: the latest version of the complete attack object groups table, application objects table, and the updates to the IDP Detector Engine. Because the attack objects table is typically of a large size, by default the system downloads only updates to the attack objects table. However, you can download the complete attack objects table by using the **full-update** configuration option.

After downloading the security package, you must install the package to update the security database with the newly downloaded updates from the Staging folder in your device.

After installing a security package, when you commit the configuration, all policies are checked for their syntax (not only the active policy). This checking is the same as a commit check. If an attack configured in any of the existing policies is removed from the new signature database that you download, the commit check fails. When you update the IDP signature database, attacks configured in policies are not updated automatically. For example, suppose you configure a policy to include an attack **FTP:USER:ROOT** that is available in the signature database version **1200** on your system. Then, you download signature database version **1201**, which no longer includes the attack **FTP:USER:ROOT**. Because an attack configured in your policy is missing from the newly downloaded database, the commit check in the CLI fails. To successfully commit your configuration, you must remove the attack (**FTP:USER:ROOT**) from your policy configuration.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the Signature Database Version on page 785
- Updating the Signature Database Automatically on page 784
- Updating the Signature Database Manually on page 780
- Configuring a Security Package Update—Quick Configuration on page 782

## Updating the Signature Database Manually

Juniper Networks regularly updates the predefined attack database and makes it available on the Juniper Networks Web site. This database includes attack object groups that you can use in IDP policies to match traffic against known attacks. Although you cannot create, edit, or delete predefined attack objects, you can use the CLI to update the list of attack objects that you can use in IDP policies. After downloading the security package, you must install the package to update the security database with the newly downloaded updates from the Staging folder in your device.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - Updating the Signature Database Overview on page 779
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773
  - Understanding Predefined Attack Objects and Groups on page 777
2. Establish basic connectivity. See the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to download the security package with the complete table of attack objects and attack object groups, create a policy, and specify the new policy as the active policy. This example then describes how to download only the updates that Juniper Networks has recently uploaded and then update the attack database, running policy, and detector with these new updates.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to manually download and update the signature database.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 781
- Related Topics on page 782

## CLI Configuration

To manually download and update the signature database:

1. Download the security package. The security package includes the detector and the latest attack objects and groups.

```
user@host> request security idp security-package download full-update
```

2. Update the attack database, the active policy, and the detector with the new package.

```
user@host> request security idp security-package install
```

3. Check the attack database update status with the following command. The command output displays information about the downloaded and installed versions of attack database versions.

```
user@host> request security idp security-package install status
```

4. Commit the configuration.
5. After committing the configuration, the attack objects and groups are available in the CLI under the `predefined-attack-groups` and `predefined-attacks` configuration statements at the `[edit security idp idp-policy]` hierarchy level.
6. Associate attack objects or attack object groups with the policy. The following statement associates the recommended attack object group `Response_Critical-TELNET` with `policy1`:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy policy1 rulebase-ips rule rule1 match
attacks predefined-attack-groups "Response_Critical - TELNET"
```

7. Activate the policy. The following statement makes `policy1` the active policy on the device:

```
user@host# set security idp active-policy policy1
```

8. Commit the configuration.
9. After a week, if you want to download only the updates that Juniper Networks has recently uploaded, use the following command:

```
user@host> request security idp security-package download
```

10. Update the attack database, active policy, detector with the new changes:

```
user@host> request security idp security-package install
```

11. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
12. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the `show security idp` command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the Signature Database Version on page 785
- Updating the Signature Database Automatically on page 784
- Updating the Signature Database Manually on page 780
- Configuring a Security Package Update—Quick Configuration on page 782

## Configuring a Security Package Update—Quick Configuration

You can use J-Web Quick Configuration to quickly configure the Security Package Update.

**Figure 177: Quick Configuration Page for Configuring Security Package Update**

Quick Configuration

---

IDP

---

Download

Install

---

Security Package Manual Download

---

URL

?

☒ Security Package

Version

(optional)

[Get Latest Version](#)

NOTE: It will take approximately one minute to retrieve the latest available version for download from the security server.

Full Package

☐

(optional)

☒ Policy Templates

Download

NOTE: The download will take approximately 2 minutes to complete.

[Security Package Automatic Download Settings](#)

---

Download Status

---

Apply



To configure security package update with Quick Configuration:

1. Select **Configuration > Quick Configuration > Security Policies > IDP Policies**.
2. From the IDP policies page, click **Security Package Update**.

You can also navigate to this page by selecting **Configuration > Quick Configuration > IDP**.

3. From the IDP page, click **Signature/Policy Update**.

Figure 177 on page 782 shows the Quick Configuration page for Security Package Update.

4. Fill in the information as described in Table 142 on page 783.
5. Click **Apply**.

**Table 142: Security Package Update Quick Configuration Summary**

Field	Function	Actions
<b>Security Package Manual Download</b>		
URL	Specifies the predefined default URL used by the device to download the signature database.	Type a URL with the following format: http://xmlexport.secteam.juniper.net.
Security Package	Specifies to manually download the updated signature database from the specified URL.	Click the option button.
Version (Optional)	Specifies the version number of the security package from the portal.	Type an integer.
Get Latest Version	Specifies to get the latest version of the signature database running on the device.	Click <b>Get Latest Version</b> to get the latest version of the signature database.
Full Package (Optional)	Specifies to enable the device to download the latest security package with the full set of attack signature tables from the portal.	Select the check box.
Policy Templates	Specifies to enable the device to download the latest policy templates from the portal.	Click the option button.
Download	Specifies to download the updated signature database.	Click <b>Download</b> .
Security Package Automatic Download Settings	Specifies to automatically download the updated signature database.	Click <b>Security Package Automatic Download Settings</b> .
URL	Specifies the predefined default URL used by the device to download the signature database.	Type a URL with the following format: http://xmlexport.secteam.juniper.net.
Interval	Specifies the amount of time that the device waits before updating the signature database. You should insert a default value.	Type a time interval between 24 and 336 hours.

**Table 142: Security Package Update Quick Configuration Summary** *(continued)*

Field	Function	Actions
Enable Schedule Update	Specifies to enable the device to automatically download the updated signature database from the specified URL.	Click the option button.  By default, Schedule update is disabled.
Download Status	Specifies the download status of the security package or policy template.	Click <b>Download Status</b> .
<b>Security Package Manual Installation</b>		
<b>Currently Installed Security Package</b>		
Security Package Version	Specifies the information of the currently installed security package version.	Displays the currently installed security package version.
Detector	Specifies the version number of the IDP protocol detector currently running on the device.	Displays the version number of the IDP protocol detector.
<b>Install Options</b>		
Signature Update	Specifies to install the updated signature database.	Click the option button.
Do not set to active after installed	Specifies to activate the installed security package.	Select the check box.
Policy Templates	Specifies to install the latest policy templates from the portal.	Click the option button.
Install	Specifies to install the updated security package.	Click <b>Install</b> .
Install Status	Specifies the status of the installation of the security package.	Click <b>Install Status</b> .

## Updating the Signature Database Automatically

Juniper Networks regularly updates the predefined attack database and makes it available on the Juniper Networks Web site. This database includes attack object groups that you can use in IDP policies to match traffic against known attacks. You can configure your device to download the signature database updates automatically at a specified interval.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Updating the Signature Database Overview on page 779
- Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to download the security package with the complete table of attack objects and attack object groups every 48 hours starting at 11:59 pm on December 10.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to update the signature database automatically.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 785
- Related Topics on page 785

## CLI Configuration

To download and update predefined attack objects:

1. Specify the URL for the security package. The security package includes the detector and the latest attack objects and groups. The following statement specifies `http://sec-pack.juniper.net` as the URL for downloading signature database updates:

```
user@host# set security idp security-package url http://sec-pack.juniper.net
```

2. Specify the time and interval for download. The following statement sets the interval as 48 hours and the start time as 11:59 pm on December 10:

```
user@host# set security idp security-package automatic interval 48 start-time 12-10.23:59
```

3. Enable an automatic download and update of the security package.

```
user@host# set security idp security-package automatic enable
```

4. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
5. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the `show security idp` command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Understanding the Signature Database Version on page 785
- Updating the Signature Database Manually on page 780
- Configuring a Security Package Update—Quick Configuration on page 782

## Understanding the Signature Database Version

---

New attack objects are added to the signature database server frequently; downloading these updates and installing them on your managed devices regularly ensures that your network is effectively protected against the latest threats. As new attack objects are added to the signature database server, the version number of the database is

updated with the latest database version number. Each signature database has a different version number with the latest database having the highest number.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773

When updating the signature database, the signature database update client connects to the Juniper Networks Web site and obtains the update using an HTTPS connection. This update—difference between the existing signature database and latest signature database—is calculated based on the version number that is assigned to each signature database. After you download the updates, the updated information is merged with the existing signature database and the version number is set to that of the latest signature database.

### Related Topics

- Verifying the Signature Database on page 786
- Updating the Signature Database Manually on page 780
- Updating the Signature Database Automatically on page 784

## Verifying the Signature Database

This topic contains:

- Verifying the Policy Compilation and Load Status on page 786
- Verifying the Signature Database Version on page 788

### Verifying the Policy Compilation and Load Status

**Purpose** Display the IDP log files to verify the IDP policy load and compilation status. When activating an IDP policy, you can view the IDP logs and verify if the policy is loaded and compiled successfully.

**Action** To track the load and compilation progress of an IDP policy, configure either one or both of the following in the CLI:

- You can configure trace option flags and record these operations to a log file in `/var/db/idpd`:

```
user@host# set security idp traceoptions flag all
```

- You can configure your device to log system log messages to a file in the `/var/log` directory:

```
user@host# set system syslog file messages any any
```

After committing the configuration in the CLI, enter either of the following commands from the shell prompt in the UNIX-level shell:

**Sample Output**

```

user@host> start shell
user@host% tail -f /var/log/idpd
Jun  9 18:15:40 logmsg <valid license found for feature 20>
Jun  9 18:15:40 IDP feature license status: Valid license installed.
Jun  9 18:15:40 idpd commit start...
Jun  9 18:15:40 Entering enable processing.
Jun  9 18:15:40 Enable value (default)
Jun  9 18:15:40 IDP processing default.
...
Jun  9 18:15:40 Apply policy configuration, policy ops bitmask = 45
Jun  9 18:15:40 Starting policy (idpengine) compile...
Jun  9 18:16:10 policy compilation memory estimate: 57126048
Jun  9 18:16:10 ...Passed (Shows that the policy compilation is
successful)Jun  9 18:16:10 Starting policy package...
Jun  9 18:16:12 ...Policy Packaging Passed
Jun  9 18:16:12 Starting policy load...
Jun  9 18:16:12 Loading policy(/var/db/idpd/bins/idpengine.bin.gz.v +
/var/db/idpd/sec-repository/libidp-detector.so.gz.v +
/var/db/idpd/bins/compiled_ai.bin)...
Jun  9 18:16:12 idpd_dev_add_ipc_connection called..
...
Jun  9 18:16:20 Reading sensor config...
Jun  9 18:16:20 sensor/idp node does not exist, apply defaults
Jun  9 18:16:20 idpd_dev_add_ipc_connection called...
Jun  9 18:16:20 idpd_dev_add_ipc_connection: done.
...
Jun  9 18:16:20 sensor conf successful
Jun  9 18:16:20
...idpd commit end

Jun  9 18:16:20 Returning from commit mode, status = 0. (Shows the policy load
is successful)

```

**Sample Output**

```

user@host> start shell
user@host% tail -f /var/log/messages

Jun 24 17:34:38 turtlebert mgd[4786]: UI_COMMIT_PROGRESS: Commit operation in
progress: activating '/var/run/db/juniper.data'
Jun 24 17:34:38 turtlebert mgd[4786]: UI_COMMIT_PROGRESS: Commit operation in
progress: notifying daemons of new configuration
Jun 24 17:34:38 turtlebert mgd[4786]: UI_COMMIT_PROGRESS: Commit operation in
progress: notifying idpd(62)
Jun 24 17:34:38 turtlebert mgd[4786]: UI_COMMIT_PROGRESS: Commit operation in
progress: signaling 'IDP policy daemon', pid 4699, signal 1, status 0 with
notification errors enabled
...
Jun 24 17:34:45 turtlebert idpd[4699]: IDP_POLICY_LOAD_SUCCEEDED: IDP
policy[/var/db/idpd/bins/test.bin.gz.v] and
detector[/var/db/idpd/sec-repository/libidp-detector.so.gz.v] loaded successfully.
IDPD Trace file:
...
Jun 24 12:10:27 idpd_policy_load: idp policy pre-install succeeded
Jun 24 12:10:27 idpd_comm_server_get_event:478: evGetNext got event.
Jun 24 12:10:27 idpd_comm_server_get_event:486: evDispatch OK
...
Jun 24 12:10:27 idpd_policy_load: idp policy install succeeded
Jun 24 12:10:27 idpd_comm_server_get_event:486: evDispatch OK
...

```

```

Jun 24 12:10:27 idpd_policy_load: idp policy post-install succeeded
Jun 24 12:10:28 Reading sensor config...
Jun 24 12:10:28 sensor/idp node does not exist, apply defaults

Jun 24 12:10:28 sensor conf successful
Jun 24 12:10:28

...idpd commit end
Jun 24 12:10:28 Returning from commit mode, status = 0.

```

**Meaning** Displays log messages showing the procedures that run in the background after you commit the `set security idp active-policy` command. This sample output shows that the policy compilation, sensor configuration, and policy load are successful.

**Related Topics** To display the policy that is currently active, run the `show security idp status` command. For a complete description of this command, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Verifying the Signature Database Version

**Purpose** Display the signature database version.

**Action** From the operational mode in the CLI, enter `show security idp security-package-version`.

**Sample Output**

```

user@host> show security idp security-package-version
Attack database version:31(Wed Apr 16 15:53:46 2008)
  Detector version :9.1.140080400
  Policy template version :N/A

```

**Meaning** The output displays the version numbers for the signature database, protocol detector, and the policy template on the IDP-enabled device. Verify the following information:

- **Attack database version**—On April 16, 2008, the version of the signature database active on the device is 31.
- **Detector version**—Displays the version number of the IDP protocol detector currently running on the device.
- **Policy template version**—Displays the version of the policy template that is installed in the `/var/db/scripts/commit` directory when you run the `request security idp security-package install policy-templates` configuration statement in the CLI.

**Related Topics** For a complete description of `show security idp security-package-version` output, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Chapter 24

# IDP Application Identification

Juniper Networks provides predefined application signatures that detect TCP and UDP applications running on non-standard ports. Identifying these applications allows Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) to apply appropriate attack objects to applications running on non-standard ports. It also improves performance by narrowing the scope of attack signatures for applications without decoders.

This topic covers:

- IDP Application Identification Support on Different Device Types on page 789
- Understanding Application Identification on page 790
- Understanding Service and Application Bindings on page 790
- Understanding Application System Cache on page 792
- Configuring IDP Policies for Application Identification on page 793
- Disabling Application Identification on page 794
- Setting Memory and Session Limits on page 796
- Verifying Application Identification on page 797

## IDP Application Identification Support on Different Device Types

The following table lists key IDP application identification features, specifies whether the features are supported on various device types, and indicates where you can find more information about each feature.

**Table 143: Support Information: IDP Application Identification**

Feature	J-series Services Routers	SRX-series Services Gateways	More Information
Application identification	No	Yes	“Understanding Application Identification” on page 790
Service and application bindings	No	Yes	“Understanding Service and Application Bindings” on page 790
Application system cache	No	Yes	“Understanding Application System Cache” on page 792

## Understanding Application Identification

---

The IDP sensor monitors the network and detects suspicious and anomalous network traffic based on specific rules defined in IDP rulebases. It applies attack objects to traffic based on protocols or applications. Application signatures enable the sensor to identify known and unknown applications running on non-standard ports and to apply the correct attack objects.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773

Application signatures are available as part of the security package provided by Juniper Networks. You download predefined application signatures along with the security package updates. You cannot create application signatures. For information on downloading the security package, see “Updating the Signature Database Manually” on page 780.

The application signatures identify an application by matching patterns in the first packet of a session. The IDP sensor matches patterns for both client-to-server and server-to-client sessions.

Application identification is enabled by default and is automatically turned on when you configure the default application in the IDP policy. However, when you specify an application in the policy rule, application identification is disabled and attack objects are applied based on the specified application. This specific application configuration overwrites the automatic identification process. For instructions on specifying applications in policy rules, see “Configuring Applications or Services for IDP” on page 738.

### Related Topics

- Understanding Service and Application Bindings on page 790
- Configuring IDP Policies for Application Identification on page 793
- Disabling Application Identification on page 794
- Setting Memory and Session Limits on page 796

## Understanding Service and Application Bindings

---

Attack objects can bind to applications and services in different ways:

- Attack objects can bind to an application implicitly and not have a service definition. They bind to an application based on the name of a context or anomaly.



- Attack objects can bind to a service using a service name.
- Attack objects can bind to a service using TCP or UDP ports, ICMP types or codes or RPC program numbers.

**Before You Begin**

For background information, read:

- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773

Whether the specified application or service binding applies or not depends on the complete attack object definition as well as the IDP policy configuration:

- If you specify an application in an attack object definition, the service field is ignored. The attack object binds to the application instead of the specified service. However, if you specify a service and no application in the attack object definition, the attack object binds to the service. Table 144 on page 791 summarizes the behavior of application and service bindings with application identification.

**Table 144: Applications and Services with Application Identification**

Attack Object Fields	Binding Behavior	Application Identification
:application (http) :service (smtp)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Binds to the application HTTP.</li><li>■ The service field is ignored.</li></ul>	Enabled
:service (http)	Binds to the application HTTP.	Enabled
:service (tcp/80)	Binds to TCP port 80.	Disabled

For example in the following attack object definition, the attack object binds to the application HTTP, the application identification is enabled, and the service field SMTP is ignored.

```
: ("http-test"  
  :application ("http")  
  :service ("smtp")  
  :rectype (signature)  
  :signature (  
    :pattern (".*TERM=xterm; export TERM=xterm; exec bash - i\x0a\x.*")  
    :type (stream)  
  )  
  :type (attack-ip)  
)
```

- If an attack object is based on service specific contexts (for example http-url) and anomalies (for example tftp\_file\_name\_too\_long), both application and service

fields are ignored. Service contexts and anomalies imply application, thus when you specify these in the attack object, application identification is applied.

- If you configure a specific application in a policy, you overwrite the application binding specified in an attack object. Table 145 on page 792 summarizes the binding with the application configuration in the IDP policy.

**Table 145: Application Configuration in an IDP Policy**

Application Type in the Policy	Binding Behavior	Application Identification
Default	Binds to the application or service configured in the attack object definition.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Enabled for application-based attack objects.</li> <li>■ Disabled for service-based attack objects.</li> </ul>
Specific application	Binds to the application specified in the attack object definition.	Disabled
Any	Binds to all applications.	Disabled

- If you specify an application in an IDP policy, the application type configured in the attack object definition and in the IDP policy must match. The policy rule cannot specify two different applications (one in the attack object and the other in the policy).

## Related Topics

- Configuring IDP Policies for Application Identification on page 793
- Disabling Application Identification on page 794

## Understanding Application System Cache

Application system cache (ASC) saves the mapping between an application type and the corresponding destination IP address, destination port, protocol type, and service.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Application Identification on page 790
- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773

Once an application is identified, its information is saved in the cache so that only one pattern matching is required for an application running on a particular system, thereby expediting the identification process.

A mapping is saved in the cache only if the matched signature contains both client-to-server and server-to-client patterns. This process protects the system from hackers who might send malicious packets through a legitimate server port so that it is interpreted as a different application.

By default, the application system cache saves the mapping information for 3600 seconds. However, you can configure the cache timeout value by using the CLI.

To minimize the impact on performance, application system cache is refreshed only when TCP or UDP traffic triggers a cache lookup. Without a cache lookup, the entries in the ASC remain unchanged even after cache timeout.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Service and Application Bindings on page 790
- Configuring IDP Policies for Application Identification on page 793

## Configuring IDP Policies for Application Identification

---

For application identification to work, you must choose the **default** configuration option as the application type in an IDP policy rule. If you specify an application instead, the application identification feature is disabled and IDP matches the traffic with the specified application.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
  - Understanding Application Identification on page 790
  - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
  - Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773
2. Establish basic connectivity. See the Getting Started Guide for your device.
3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
4. Download the signature database. See “Updating the Signature Database Manually” on page 780

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to configure IDP policy for application identification.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure IDP policy for application identification.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 794
- Related Topics on page 794

## CLI Configuration

To configure IDP policy for application identification:

1. Create an IDP policy, associate a rulebase with the policy, and define rules in the rulebase. The following statement creates an IDP policy **ABC** and defines rule **123** in the IPS rulebase:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy ABC rulebase-ips rule 123
```

2. Specify the application type as a match condition in the policy. The following statement specifies **default** as the application type:

```
user@host# set security idp idp-policy ABC rulebase-ips rule 123 match  
application default
```

3. Continue to configure other match conditions and actions for the policy (see “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720).
4. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
5. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show security idp** command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Disabling Application Identification on page 794
- Setting Memory and Session Limits on page 796
- Verifying Application Identification on page 797

## Disabling Application Identification

Application identification is enabled by default. You can disable application identification with the CLI.

### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Understanding Application Identification on page 790
- IDP Policies Overview on page 708
- Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773

The configuration instructions in this topic describe how to disable application identification.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to disable application identification.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 795
- Related Topics on page 795

## CLI Configuration

To disable and application identification:

1. Specify the **disable** configuration option.

```
user@host# set security idp sensor-configuration application-identification  
disable
```

2. If you want to reenable application identification, delete the configuration statement that specifies disabling of application identification.

```
user@host# delete security idp sensor-configuration application-identification  
disable
```

3. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
4. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show security idp** command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Understanding Service and Application Bindings on page 790
- Configuring IDP Policies for Application Identification on page 793
- Setting Memory and Session Limits on page 796
- Verifying Application Identification on page 797

## Setting Memory and Session Limits

---

Although you cannot create application signatures, you can configure sensor settings to limit the number of sessions running application identification and also limit memory usage for application identification.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read:
    - Understanding Application Identification on page 790
    - IDP Policies Overview on page 708
    - Understanding the IDP Signature Database on page 773
  2. Establish basic connectivity. See the Getting Started Guide for your device.
  3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
  4. Download the signature database. See “Updating the Signature Database Manually” on page 780
- 

- **Memory limit for a session**—You can configure the maximum amount of memory bytes that can be used to save packets for application identification for one TCP or UDP session. You can also configure a limit for global memory usage for application identification. Application identification is disabled for a session after the system reaches the specified memory limit for the session. However, IDP continues to match patterns. Matched application is saved to cache so that the next session can use it. This prevents the system from attackers trying to bypass application identification by purposefully sending large client-to-server packets.
- **Number of sessions**—You can configure the maximum number of sessions that can run application identification at the same time. Application identification is disabled after the system reaches the specified number of sessions. You limit the number of sessions so that you can prevent a denial-of-service (DOS) attack, when too many connection requests overwhelm and exhaust all the allocated resources on the system.

In the configuration instructions for this example, you configure the limit so that only 600 sessions can run application identification at the same time. You also configure 5000 memory bytes as the maximum amount of memory that can be used for saving packets for application identification for one TCP session.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure memory and session limits for application identification.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 797
- Related Topics on page 797

CLI Configuration

To configure memory and session limits for application identification:

- 1. Specify the session limit for application identification. In the following statement you set the maximum number of sessions that can run application identification at the same time as 600:

```
user@host# set security idp sensor-configuration application-identification
max-sessions 600
```

- 2. Specify the memory limit for application identification. In the following statement you configure a maximum of 5000 memory bytes to save packets for application identification:

```
user@host# set security idp sensor-configuration application-identification
max-tcp-session-packet-memory 5000
```

- 3. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
- 4. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the `show security idp` command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

Related Topics

- Understanding Application Identification on page 790
- Understanding Service and Application Bindings on page 790
- Configuring IDP Policies for Application Identification on page 793
- Verifying Application Identification on page 797

Verifying Application Identification

This topic covers:

- Verifying the Application System Cache on page 797
- Verifying Application Identification Counters on page 798

Verifying the Application System Cache

**Purpose** Verify the IDP application system cache (ASC) statistics.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show security idp application-identification application-system-cache` command.

**Sample Output** user@host> `show security idp application-identification application-system-cache`  
IDP Application System Cache statistics:

Vsys-ID	IP address	Port	Protocol	Service
0	20.0.0.4	23	tcp	TELNET

0	20.0.0.6	23	tcp	TELNET
0	20.0.0.2	23	tcp	TELNET
0	20.0.0.2	25	tcp	SMTP
0	20.0.0.6	25	tcp	SMTP
0	20.0.0.4	25	tcp	SMTP
0	20.0.0.3	135	tcp	MSRPC
0	20.0.0.5	139	tcp	SMB
0	20.0.0.7	139	tcp	SMB
0	20.0.0.3	143	tcp	IMAP
0	20.0.0.5	143	tcp	IMAP
0	20.0.0.3	139	tcp	SMB
0	20.0.0.7	143	tcp	IMAP
0	20.0.0.3	80	tcp	HTTP
0	20.0.0.5	80	tcp	HTTP
0	20.0.0.7	80	tcp	HTTP

**Meaning** The output shows a summary of the ASC statistics information. Verify the following information:

- Vsys-ID—Displays the virtual system identification number.
- IP address—Displays the destination address.
- Port—Displays the destination port on the server.
- Service—Displays the name of the service or application identified on the destination port.

**Related Topics** For a complete description of `show security idp application-identification application-system-cache` output, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Verifying Application Identification Counters

**Purpose** Verify the IDP counters for the application identification processes.

**Action** From the CLI, enter the `show security idp counters application-identification` command.

**Sample Output** `user@host> show security idp counters application-identification`  
IDP counters:

IDP counter type	Value
AI cache hits	2682
AI cache misses	3804
AI matches	74
AI no-matches	27
AI-enabled sessions	3804
AI-disabled sessions	2834
AI-disabled sessions due to cache hit	2682
AI-disabled sessions due to configuration	0
AI-disabled sessions due to protocol remapping	0
AI-disabled sessions due to non-TCP/UDP flows	118
AI-disabled sessions due to no AI signatures	0
AI-disabled sessions due to session limit	0
AI-disabled sessions due to session packet memory limit	34
AI-disabled sessions due to global packet memory limit	0



**Meaning** The output shows a summary of the application identification counters. Verify the following information:

- AI cache hits—Displays the number of hits on the application identification cache
- AI cache misses—Displays the number of times the application matches but the application identification cache entry is not added.
- AI matches—Displays the number of times the application matches, and an application identification cache entry is added.
- AI no-matches—Displays the number of times when application does not match.
- AI-enabled sessions—Displays the number of sessions on which application identification is enabled.
- AI-disabled sessions—Displays the number of sessions on which application identification is disabled.
- AI-disabled sessions due to cache hit—Displays the number of sessions on which application identification is disabled after a cache entry is matched. Application identification process is discontinued for this session.
- AI-disabled sessions due to configuration—Displays the number of sessions on which application identification is disabled because of the sensor configuration.
- AI-disabled sessions due to protocol remapping—Displays the number of sessions for which application identification is disabled because you have configured a specific service in the IDP policy rule definition.
- AI-disabled sessions due to non-TCP/UDP flows—Displays the number of sessions for which application identification is disabled because the session is not a TCP or UDP session.
- AI-disabled sessions due to no AI signatures—Displays the number of sessions for which application identification is disabled because no match is found on the application identification signatures.
- AI-disabled due to session limit—Displays the number of sessions for which application identification is disabled because sessions have reached the maximum limit configured. Application identification is disabled for future sessions too.
- AI-disabled due to session packet memory limit—Displays the sessions for which application identification is disabled because sessions have reached the maximum memory limit on TCP or UDP flows. Application identification is disabled for future sessions too.
- AI-disabled due to global packet memory limit—Displays the sessions for which application identification is disabled because the maximum memory limit is reached. Application identification is disabled for future sessions too.

**Related Topics** For a complete description of `show security idp counters` output, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.



## Chapter 25

# IDP SSL Inspection

- IDP SSL Overview on page 801
- Supported Ciphers on page 802
- Key Exchange on page 803
- Server Key Management and Policy Configuration on page 803
- Displaying Keys and Servers on page 804
- Adding Keys and Servers on page 804
- Deleting Keys and Servers on page 804
- Configuring SSL Inspection on page 805

## IDP SSL Overview

---

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), also called Transport Layer Security (TLS), is a protocol suite for Web security that provides authentication, confidentiality and message integrity. Authentication guards against fraudulent transmissions by enabling a Web browser to validate the identity of a Web server. Confidentiality mechanisms ensure that communications are private. SSL enforces confidentiality by encrypting data to prevent unauthorized users from eavesdropping on electronic communications. Finally, message integrity ensures that the contents of a communication have not been tampered with.

Each SSL session begins with a handshake during which the client and server agree on the specific security key and the encryption algorithms to use for that session. At this time, the client also authenticates the server. Optionally, the server can authenticate the client. Once the handshake is complete, transfer of encrypted data can begin.

Juniper Networks provides Intrusion Detection and Prevention (IDP) SSL inspection that uses the SSL protocol suite consisting of different SSL versions, ciphers, and key exchange methods. Combined with the Application Identification feature, the SSL Inspection feature enables SRX-series devices to inspect HTTP traffic encrypted in SSL on any port. The following SSL protocols are supported:

- SSLv2
- SSLv3
- TLS

## Supported Ciphers

An SSL cipher comprises encryption cipher, authentication method, and compression. JUNOS software supports all OPENSSL supported ciphers that do not involve the use of temporary private keys. For authentication, NULL, MD5, and SHA-1 authentication methods are supported.



**NOTE:** Compression and SSLv2 ciphers are not supported. Currently, most SSL servers automatically upgrade to a TLS cipher when an SSLv2 cipher is received in a client “hello” message. Check your browser to see how strong the ciphers can be and which ones your browser supports. (If the cipher is not in the list of supported ciphers, the session is ignored for deep packet inspection.)

Table 146 on page 802 shows the encryption algorithms supported by the SRX-series devices.

**Table 146: Supported Encryption Algorithms**

Cipher	Exportable	Type	Key Material	Expanded Key Material	Effective Key Bits	IV Size
NULL	No	Stream	0	0	0	N/A
DES_CBC	No	Block	8	8	56	8
3DES_EDE_CBC	No	Block	24	24	168	8
AES_128_CBC	No	Block	16	16	128	16
AES_256_CBC	No	Block	32	32	256	16

For more information on encryption algorithms, see “Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) Protocol” on page 557. Table 147 on page 802 shows the supported SSL ciphers.

**Table 147: Supported SSL Ciphers**

Version	Cipher Suites	Value
	TLS_RSA_WITH_NULL_MD5	0x0001
	TLS_RSA_WITH_NULL_SHA	0x0002
	TLS_RSA_WITH_DES_CBC_SHA	0x0009
	TLS_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA	0x000A
	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA	0x002F
	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	0x0035



---

**NOTE:** RC4 and IDEA ciphers are not supported because of license and OPENSSL library availability.

---

## Key Exchange

---

Internet Key Exchange establishes a premaster secret that is used to generate symmetric keys for bulk data encryption and authentication. Section F.1.1 of RFC 2246 defines TLS authentication and key exchange methods. The two key exchange methods are:

- **RSA**—A key exchange algorithm that governs the way participants create symmetric keys or a secret that is used during an SSL session. RSA key exchange algorithm is the most commonly used method.
- **Diffie-Hellman**—A Diffie-Hellman (DH) key exchange method allows the participants to produce a shared secret value. The strength of the technique is that it allows the participants to create the secret value over an unsecured medium without passing the secret value through the wire.

Both RSA and Diffie-Hellman key exchange methods can use either a fixed or a temporary server key. IDP can successfully retrieve the premaster secret only if a fixed server key is used. JUNOS software supports only the RSA key exchange method. For more information on Internet Key Exchange, see “Understanding Public Key Cryptography” on page 608.



---

**NOTE:** Juniper IDP does not decrypt SSL sessions that use Diffie-Hellman key exchange.

---

## Server Key Management and Policy Configuration

---

The device can support up to 1000 server private keys. Each key can have up to 100 servers that use it. This capacity is the same for SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 series, independent of the number of SPUs available because essentially each SPU needs to be able to access all the keys.

Multiple servers can share the same private key; however, one server can have only one private key. SSL decryption is disabled by default and can be enabled by using CLI configuration. Server keys and policy are configured exclusively through the CLI. Both plain and encrypted keys are supported.



---

**NOTE:** JUNOS software does not encrypt SSL keys file for Release 9.3.

---

## Displaying Keys and Servers

---

You can display all installed server keys and associated servers by using the following CLI command:

```
router> show security idp ssl-inspection key
```

Displays all server keys and IP addresses bound to those keys. The following example shows CLI output when the `show security idp ssl-inspection key` command is used:

```
Total SSL keys : 2
SSL server key and ip address :
Key : key1, server : 1.1.1.1
Key : key2, server : 2.2.2.2
Key : key2, server : 2.2.2.3
```

To display IP addresses bound to a specific key, use the following CLI command:

```
router> show security idp ssl-inspection key <key-name>
```

The following is an example of the CLI output received when the `show security idp ssl-inspection key <key-name>` command is used:

```
Key : key1, server : 1.1.1.1
```

## Adding Keys and Servers

---

To install a Privacy-Enhanced Mail (PEM) key use the following CLI command:

```
router> request security idp ssl-inspection key add <key-name> [file <file-path>] server
<server-ip> [password <password-string>]
```



**NOTE:** When you are installing a key, you can password protect the key and also associate it to a server. You can also associate the key with a server at a later time by using the `add server` CLI command.

A server can be associated with only one key. To associate a server to the installed key, use the following CLI command:

```
router> request security idp ssl-inspection key add <key-name> server <server-ip>
```



**NOTE:** Maximum key name length is 32 bytes, including the ending “\0”.

Maximum password string length is 32 bytes, including the ending “\0”.

## Deleting Keys and Servers

---

To delete all keys and servers, use the following CLI command:

```
router> request security idp ssl-inspection key delete
```

All installed keys are deleted along with any associated servers.

To delete a specific key and all associated servers with that key, use the following CLI command:

```
router> request security idp ssl-inspection key delete <key-name>
```

Deletes the specified key and all servers associated with that key.

To delete a single server, use the following CLI command:

```
router> request security idp ssl-inspection key delete <key-name> server <server-ip>
```

Deletes the specified server that is bound to the specified key.

## Configuring SSL Inspection

---

SSL inspection is disabled by default. It is enabled if any configurations are found.

```
[edit security]
  idp {
    sensor-configuration {
      ssl-inspection {
        sessions <number>;
      }
    }
  }
```

The sensor now inspects traffic for which it has a key/server pair.



**NOTE:** Maximum supported sessions per SPU: default value is 10,000 and range is 1 to 100,000. The session limit is per SPU and it is the same on the SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.

---





## Chapter 26

# IDP Logging

This topic covers:

- Understanding IDP Logging on page 807
- Configuring Log Suppression Attributes on page 808

### Understanding IDP Logging

---

The basic JUNOS system logging continues to function after IDP is enabled. An IDP-enabled device continues to record events that occur because of routine operations, such as a user login into the configuration database. It records failure and error conditions, such as failure to access a configuration file. You can configure files to log system messages and also assign attributes, such as severity levels, to messages. In addition to the regular system log messages, IDP generates event logs for attacks. For information about monitoring events and managing system log files, see the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*.

#### Before You Begin

For background information, read:

- Chapter on monitoring events and managing system log files in the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*.
- Chapter on configuring packet capture in the *JUNOS Software Administration Guide*

IDP generates event logs when an event matches an IDP policy rule in which logging is enabled. When you configure a rule for logging, the device creates a log entry for each event that matches that rule. You can use the CLI or J-Web to configure the policy rules to generate event logs. For more information about configuring IDP policies, see “Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase” on page 720.

Because IDP event logs are generated during an attack, log generation happens in bursts, generating a much larger volume of messages during an attack. In comparison to other event messages, the message size is also much larger for attack generated messages. The log volume and message size are important concerns for log management. To better manage the volume of log messages, IDP supports log suppression.

By configuring log suppression you can suppress multiple instances of the same log occurring from the same or similar sessions over the same period of time. Enabling

log suppression ensures that minimal numbers of logs are generated for the same event or attack that occurs multiple times.

## Related Topics

- Understanding IDP Policy Rules on page 711
- IDP Policies Overview on page 708

## Configuring Log Suppression Attributes

---

Log suppression ensures that minimal numbers of logs are generated for the same event or attack that occurs multiple times. Log suppression is enabled by default. You can configure certain log suppression attributes to suppress logs according to your needs. When configuring log suppression, keep in mind that log suppression can negatively impact sensor performance if you set the reporting interval too high.

### Before You Begin

1. For background information, read “Understanding IDP Logging” on page 807.
  2. Establish basic connectivity. See the Getting Started Guide for your secure router.
  3. Configure network interfaces. See the *JUNOS Software Interfaces and Routing Configuration Guide*.
  4. Download the signature database. See “Updating the Signature Database Manually” on page 780
- 

You can configure the following log suppression attributes:

- Include destination addresses while performing log suppression—You can choose to combine log records for events with a matching source address. By default, the IDP sensor does not consider destination when matching events for log suppression.
- Number of log occurrences after which log suppression begins—You can specify the number of instances that a specific event must occur before log suppression begins. By default, log suppression begins after the first occurrence.
- Maximum number of logs that log suppression can operate on—When log suppression is enabled, IDP must cache log records so that it can identify when multiple occurrences of the same event occur. You can specify how many log records are tracked simultaneously by IDP. By default, the maximum number of log records that IDP can operate on is 16384.
- Time after which suppressed logs are reported—When log suppression is enabled, IDP maintains a count of occurrences of the same event. After the specified number of seconds have passed, IDP writes a single log entry containing the count of occurrences. By default, IDP reports suppressed logs after 5 seconds.

In the configuration instructions for this example, you configure log suppression to begin after the second occurrence of an event. You also specify that logs are reported after 20 seconds.

You can use either J-Web or the CLI configuration editor to configure log suppression.

This topic contains:

- CLI Configuration on page 809
- Related Topics on page 809

## CLI Configuration

To configure log suppression attributes:

1. Specify the log number after which you want to start log suppression. In the following statement you specify that log suppression starts after the second instance of an event.

```
user@host# set security idp sensor-configuration log suppression start-log 2
```

2. Specify the maximum time after which suppressed logs are reported. In the following statement you specify that IDP reports suppressed logs after 20 seconds.

```
user@host# set security idp sensor-configuration log suppression
max-time-report 20
```

3. If you are finished configuring the router, commit the configuration.
4. From configuration mode in the CLI, enter the **show security idp** command to verify the configuration. For more information, see the *JUNOS Software CLI Reference*.

## Related Topics

- Defining Rules for an IPS Rulebase on page 720
- IDP Policies Overview on page 708



## **Part 7**

# **Unified Threat Management Features**

- Unified Threat Management Overview on page 813
- Antispam Filtering on page 817
- Full File-based Antivirus Protection on page 839
- Express Antivirus Protection on page 893
- Content Filtering on page 921
- Web Filtering on page 945



## Chapter 27

# Unified Threat Management Overview

Unified Threat Management (UTM) is a term used to describe the consolidation of several security features into one device, protecting against multiple threat types. The advantage of UTM is streamlined installation and management of these multiple security capabilities.

The security features provided as part of the UTM solution are:

- **Antispam** — E-mail spam consists of unwanted e-mail messages, usually sent by commercial, malicious, or fraudulent entities. The antispam feature examines transmitted e-mail messages to identify e-mail spam. When the device detects an e-mail message deemed to be spam, it either drops the message or tags the message header or subject field with a preprogrammed string. The antispam feature uses a constantly updated spam block list (SBL). Symantec updates and maintains the IP-based SBL. The antispam feature is a separately licensed subscription service.
- **Full File-Based Antivirus** — A virus is executable code that infects or attaches itself to other executable code to reproduce itself. Some malicious viruses erase files or lock up systems. Other viruses merely infect files and overwhelm the target host or network with bogus data. The full file-based antivirus feature provides file-based scanning on specific Application Layer traffic checking for viruses against a virus signature database. It collects the received data packets until it has reconstructed the original application content, such as an e-mail file attachment, and then scans this content. Kaspersky Lab provides the internal scan engine. The full file-based antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service.
- **Express Antivirus** — Express antivirus scanning is offered as a less CPU intensive alternative to the full file-based antivirus feature. The express antivirus feature, like the full antivirus feature, scans specific Application Layer traffic for viruses against a virus signature database. However, unlike full antivirus, express antivirus does not reconstruct the original application content. Rather, it just sends (streams) the received data packets, as is, to the scan engine. With express antivirus, the virus scanning is executed by a hardware pattern matching engine. This improves performance while scanning is occurring, but the level of security provided is lessened. Juniper Networks provides the scan engine. The express antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service.
- **Content Filtering** — Content filtering blocks or permits certain types of traffic based on the MIME type, file extension, protocol command, and embedded object type. Content filtering does not require a separate license.
- **Web Filtering** — Web filtering lets you manage Internet usage by preventing access to inappropriate Web content. There are two types of Web filtering

solutions. In the case of the integrated Web filtering solution, the decision-making for blocking or permitting Web access is done on the device after it identifies the category for a URL either from user-defined categories or from a category server (Websense provides the CPA Server). The integrated Web filtering feature is a separately licensed subscription service. The redirect Web filtering solution intercepts HTTP requests and forwards the server URL to an external URL filtering server provided by Websense to determine whether to block or permit the requested Web access. Redirect Web filtering does not require a separate license.

This chapter contains the following topic:

- Custom Objects on page 814
- Platform Support and Licensing on page 814

## Custom Objects

Before you can configure most UTM features, you must first configure the custom objects for the feature in question. Custom objects are global parameters for UTM features. This means that configured custom objects can be applied to all UTM policies where applicable, rather than only to individual policies. Certain UTM features make use of certain custom objects. Refer to the feature documentation for information on the custom objects that must be configured for that feature.

## Platform Support and Licensing

UTM features are supported on SRX 210, SRX 240, SRX 650, and J-series devices.

The majority of UTM features function as a subscription service requiring a license. You can redeem this license once you have purchased your subscription license SKUs. You redeem your license by entering your authorization code and chassis serial number into the Customer Service LMS interface. Once your entitlement is generated, you can use the CLI from your SRX device to send a license update request to the LMS server. The LMS server then sends your subscription license directly to the SRX device.

The command for applying your subscription license to the device is as follows:

```
user@host> request system license update
```

**Table 148: UTM Feature Subscription Service License Requirements**

UTM Feature	Requires License
Antispam	Yes
Antivirus: full	Yes
Antivirus: express	Yes
Content Filtering	No
Web Filtering: integrated	Yes



**Table 148: UTM Feature Subscription Service License Requirements** *(continued)*

Web Filtering: redirect	No
-------------------------	----



## Chapter 28

# Antispam Filtering

Spam consists of unwanted e-mail messages, usually sent by commercial, malicious, or fraudulent entities. The antispam feature examines transmitted e-mail messages to identify spam. When the device detects a message deemed to be spam, it blocks the e-mail message or tags the e-mail message header or subject with a preprogrammed string.

Antispam filtering allows you to use both a third-party server-based spam block list (SBL) and to optionally create your own local white lists (benign) and black lists (malicious) for filtering against e-mail messages. The antispam feature is not meant to replace your antispam server, but to complement it.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Using Server-Based Spam Filtering on page 817
- Configuring Server-Based Spam Filtering on page 818
- Using Local List Spam Filtering on page 824
- Configuring Local List Spam Filtering on page 825
- Understanding Spam Message Handling on page 836
- Blocking Detected Spam on page 836
- Tagging Detected Spam on page 837
- Verifying Antispam Configurations on page 837

## Using Server-Based Spam Filtering

---



**NOTE:** Server-based spam filtering supports only IP-based spam block list black list lookup. Symantec updates and maintains the IP-based spam block list. Server-based antispam filtering is a separately licensed subscription service. When your antispam license key expires, you can continue to use locally defined black and white lists.

---

The server-based antispam feature requires Internet connectivity with the spam block list (SBL) server. Domain Name Service (DNS) is required to access the SBL server. The firewall performs SBL lookups through the DNS protocol. The lookups are against the IP address of the sender (or relaying agent) of the e-mail, adding the name of the SBL server as the authoritative domain. The DNS server then forwards each request to the SBL server, which returns a DNS response to the device. The device then interprets the DNS response to determine if the e-mail sender is a spammer.

IP addresses that are included in the block lists are generally considered to be invalid addresses for mail servers or easily compromised addresses. Criteria for listing an IP address as a spammer on the SBL can include:

- Running an SMTP open relay service
- Running open proxy servers (of various kinds)
- Being a zombie host possibly compromised by a virus, worm, Trojan, or spyware
- Using a dynamic IP range
- Being a confirmed spam source with a known IP address

By default, the device first checks incoming e-mail against local white and black lists. If there are no local lists, or if the sender is not found on local lists, the device proceeds to query the SBL server over the Internet. When both server-based spam filtering and local list spam filtering are enabled, checks are done in the following order:

1. The local white list is checked. If there is a match, no further checking is done. If there is no match...
2. The local black list is checked. If there is a match, no further checking is done. If there is no match...
3. The SBL server list is checked.



**NOTE:** SBL server matching stops when the antispam license key is expired.

---

## Configuring Server-Based Spam Filtering

---

You can use J-Web or the CLI to configure the device to use server-based spam filtering.

This topic contains:

- Configuration Overview on page 818
- J-Web Quick Configuration on page 819
- J-Web View and Edit Configuration on page 821
- CLI Configuration on page 823

### Configuration Overview

For each UTM feature, you should configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. First configure UTM custom objects (if any) for the feature in question. Custom objects are global parameters for UTM features. This means that configured custom objects can be applied to all UTM policies where applicable, rather than only to individual policies.

The CLI command for setting custom objects is :

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects
```

2. Configure main feature parameters, called *feature profiles*.

The CLI command for setting antispam feature profiles is:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile.

CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for SMTP and attaching that policy to a profile are:



**NOTE:** At this time, the antispam feature is only supported for the SMTP protocol.

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp1 anti-spam smtp-profile smtp1
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

The CLI command for attaching a UTM policy to a security policy is:

```
user@host# set security policies
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then
permit application-services utm-policy utmp1
```

## J-Web Quick Configuration

To configure server-based antispam using the J-Web Quick Configuration editor:

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Anti-Spam** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under Anti-Spam global options, select an **Address Whitelist** and/or an **Address Blacklist** from the list if you are using local lists for spam filtering. (These lists are configured as Custom Objects and are made available for selection here. Because you are configuring server-based spam, you do not select a local Address Whitelist or a Blacklist. For more information on configuring these lists, refer to “Using Local List Spam Filtering” on page 824.)
5. Under Anti-Spam profiles, click the **Add** button to configure a profile for the Symantec SBL server. This takes you to the profile configuration page.
6. In the Profile Name box, enter a unique name for the antispam profile you are creating.
7. If you are using the default server, select the check box beside Symantec default SBL server. If you are not using the default server, leave the check box unselected. The SBL server is predefined on the device. It ships knowing the name and

address of the Symantec SBL server. If you do not select this check box, you are disabling sever-based spam filtering. You would disable it if you are using only local lists or if you do not have a license for server-based spam filtering.

8. In the antispam action list, select one of the following: **Tag subject of e-mail**, **Block e-mail**, **Tag header of e-mail**. Here you are selecting the action to be taken by the device when spam is detected.
9. In the Custom tag string box, enter a custom string for identifying a message as spam. By default, the devices uses **\*\*\*SPAM\*\*\***.
10. Click **OK** to save your profile. See Figure 178 on page 820 (This takes you back to main antispam configuration page. Under Anti-Spam profiles, the profile you created is now listed.)

**Figure 178: Antispam Server-Based Profile Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

**UTM**

\* Profile name  ?

Symantec default SBL server ☒ ?

Anti-spam action  (tag-subject) ?

Custom tag string  ? (\*\*\*SPAM\*\*\*)

11. Under Anti-Spam profiles, select the check box for the profile you are using.
12. Click **Apply**.

Next, you configure a UTM policy for SMTP to which you attach the antispam profile you have configured.

1. Select **Security Policies > UTM Policies**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
4. Scroll down to the antispam section of the page and locate the SMTP Profile list. Select the antispam profile you are attaching to this UTM policy. (For these instructions, you are only attaching an antispam profile to this UTM policy. But note that you can attach several profiles for multiple features to one UTM policy.)
5. In the Session Per Client Over Limit list, select one of the following: Log and Permit, Block. This is the action the device takes when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded.
6. In the Session Per Client Limit box, enter a session per client limit from 0 to 20000 for this UTM policy.
7. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the UTM Policies page.

8. Select the check box in the UTM Policy table for the policy you are using.
9. Click **Apply**.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Security Policies > FW / VPN Policies**.
2. Next to Default Policy Action, select one of the following: Deny-All, Permit-All.
3. Next to From Zone, select a zone from the list.
4. Next to To Zone, select a zone from the list.
5. Under Zone Direction, click **Add a Policy**.
6. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the security policy you are creating.
7. Under Match Criterias, choose a **Source Address**. Do this by selecting an entry in the Source Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
8. Under Match Criterias, choose a **Destination Address**. Do this by selecting an entry in the Destination Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
9. Under Match Criterias, choose an **Application**. Do this by selecting **junos-smtp** (for antispam) in the Application Sets box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
10. Next to Policy Action, select one of the following: **Permit, Deny, Reject**.



**NOTE:** When you select Permit for Policy Action, several additional fields become available, including UTM Policy.

---

11. Next to UTM Policy, select the appropriate policy from the list. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
- 



**NOTE:** There are several fields on this page that are not described in this section. See the section on Security Policies for detailed information on configuring security policies and all the available fields.

---

12. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the main Security Policies configuration page.
13. Under Policies, select the check box beside the security policy you created.
14. Click **Apply**.

## ***J-Web View and Edit Configuration***

To configure server-based antispam using the J-Web View and Edit editor:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Feature Profile, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Anti spam, click **Configure**.
6. Next to Symantec sbl, select the **Yes** check box. A Configure link appears. (Because you are configuring server-based spam, you do not select a local Address whitelist or an Address blacklist.)
7. Next to Symantec sbl, Yes checkbox, click the **Configure** link.
8. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
9. In the Name box, enter a unique name for the antispam profile you are creating.
10. In the Custom tag string box, enter a custom string for identifying a message as spam. By default, the devices uses **\*\*\*SPAM\*\*\***.
11. Select the **Yes** check box beside the Symantec default SBL default server if you are using the default server. Otherwise, select the No check box.
12. In the Spam action list, select one of the following: **tag subject** (of e-mail), **block** (e-mail), **tag header** (of e-mail). Here you are selecting the action to be taken by the device when spam is detected.
13. Click **OK**. See Figure 179 on page 822.

**Figure 179: Antispam Server-Based Profile Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Symantec sbl

---

**Profile**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Name as1 ?

---

Custom tag string \*\*\*spam\*\*\*\* ? M

Sbl default server ☒ Yes ☐ No M

Spam action tag-header M

---

**Advanced**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Next, you configure a UTM policy for SMTP to which you attach the antispam profile you have configured.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.



3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to UTM policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
6. Next to Anti spam, click **Configure**.
7. In the Smtip profile box, enter the name of the antispam profile you created earlier.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK** again to return to main UTM configuration page. Your UTM antispam policy is now listed in the UTM policy table.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Security, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, select the **Yes** check box click **Edit**.
5. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.



**NOTE:** Refer to the section on security policy configuration for further details on configuring a policy. Note that when you configure the Then field as part of the policy, select Permit as the action, and then configure Application services, you are able to enter the Utm policy name as part of this security policy.

6. Next to Utm policy (in the Application services security policy screen), enter the name of the appropriate policy. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
7. Click **OK**.

## CLI Configuration

1. To configure server-based antispam using the CLI, first create a profile name.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam symantec-sbl profile
sblprofile1
```

2. Configure the default SBL server lookup as enabled or disabled. If you are using server-based spam filtering, you should enter **sbl-default-server** to enable the Symantec default SBL server. (The SBL server is predefined on the device. It ships knowing the name and address of the Symantec SBL server.) Entering **no-sbl-default-server** disables server-based spam filtering. You would disable it if you are using only local lists or if you do not have a license for server-based spam filtering.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam symantec-sbl profile
sblprofile1 sbl-default-server
```

3. Configure the action to be taken by the device when spam is detected (block, tag-header, tag-subject).

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam symantec-sbl profile
sblprofile1 sbl-default-server spam-action block
```

4. Configure a custom string for identifying a message as spam.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam symantec-sbl profile
sblprofile1 sbl-default-server custom-tag-string ***spam***
```

5. Configure a UTM policy for SMTP to which you attach the antispam feature profile you have configured.

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy spampolicy1
```

6. Attach the spam feature profile to the UTM policy you have created.

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy spampolicy1 anti-spam smtp-profile
sblprofile1
```

7. Configure a security policy for UTM and attach the UTM policy you created to the security policy.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy1 match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy1 match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy1 match application junos-smtp
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy
utmsecuritypolicy1 then permit application-services utm-policy spampolicy1
```



**NOTE:** A default antispam policy ships with the device. It is called `junos-as-defaults`. It contains the following configuration parameters:

```
anti-spam {
  symantec-sbl {
    profile junos-as-defaults {
      sbl-default-server;
      spam-action block;
      custom-tag-string "***SPAM***";
    }
  }
}
```

## Using Local List Spam Filtering

When creating your own local white list and black list for spam filtering, you can filter against domain names, e-mail addresses, and/or IP addresses. Pattern matching works a bit differently depending upon the type of matching in question. For example,

pattern matching for domain names uses a longest suffix match algorithm. If the sender e-mail address has a domain name of aaa.bbb.ccc, the device tries to match "aaa.bbb.ccc" in the list. If no match is found, it tries to match "bbb.ccc", and then "ccc". IP address matching, however, does not allow for partial matches.

Spam filtering uses local lists for matching in the following manner:

1. **Sender IP:** The sender IP is checked against the local white list, then the local black list, and then the SBL IP-based server (if enabled).
2. **Sender Domain:** The domain name is checked against the local white list and then against the local black list.
3. **Sender E-mail Address:** The sender e-mail address is checked against the local white list and then against the local black list.

By default, the device first checks incoming e-mail against local white and black lists. If the sender is not found on either list, the device proceeds to query the SBL server over the Internet. When both server-based spam filtering and local list spam filtering are enabled, checks are done in the following order:

1. The local white list is checked. If there is a match, no further checking is done. If there is no match...
2. The local black list is checked. If there is a match, no further checking is done. If there is no match...
3. The SBL server list is checked.



**NOTE:** Local black and white list matching continues after the antispam license key is expired.

---

## Configuring Local List Spam Filtering

---

You can use J-Web or the CLI to configure the device to use local list spam filtering.

This topic contains:

- Configuration Overview on page 825
- J-Web Quick Configuration on page 826
- J-Web View and Edit Configuration on page 831
- CLI Configuration on page 835

### Configuration Overview

For each UTM feature, you should configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. First configure UTM custom objects (if any), for the feature in question. Custom objects are global parameters for UTM features. This means that configured

custom objects apply to all UTM policies where applicable, rather than only to individual policies.

The CLI command for setting antispam url custom objects is :

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern
```

2. Configure main feature parameters, called feature profiles.

The CLI command for setting antispam feature profiles is :

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile.

CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for SMTP and attaching that policy to a profile are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp1 anti-spam smtp-profile smtp1
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

The CLI command for attaching a UTM policy to a security policy is:

```
user@host# set security policies
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p1 then
    permit application-services utm-policy utmp1
```

## J-Web Quick Configuration

To configure local list antispam using the J-Web Quick Configuration editor, you must first create your local white and black list custom objects.

Configure a URL Pattern List Custom Object as follows:

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under URL Pattern List, click the **Add** button to create URL pattern lists. See Figure 180 on page 827.

**Figure 180: Custom Object, URL Pattern List, Quick Configuration****Quick Configuration****UTM****Custom Objects**

+ Mime Pattern List

+ Filename Extension List

+ Protocol command List

+ URL Pattern List

	URL Pattern	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">single url yahoo</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">block-list</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com http://*.cnn.com ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">white-list</a>	www.google.com www.espn.com www.ask.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">urltest</a>	http://*.url.net

Add...

Delete

+ Custom URL Category List

Apply

- Next to URL Pattern Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. If you are creating a white list, it is helpful to indicate this in the list name. The same applies to a black list. The name you enter here becomes available in the Address Whitelist and Address Blacklist fields when you are configuring your antispam profiles.
- Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, enter the URL pattern for white list or black list antispam filtering.



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[\[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*juniper.net`, `http://*`.

7. Click the **Add** button to add your URL pattern to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the **X** button to delete it from the list. The list can contain up to 8192 items.
8. Click **OK**. See Figure 181 on page 828. Clicking the OK button takes you back to the main configuration page.

**Figure 181: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, Quick Configuration**

#### Quick Configuration

UTM	Add a URL Pattern List
<p>* URL Pattern Name <input style="width: 150px;" type="text" value="urltest"/> ?</p> <hr/> <p>* Values</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; padding: 5px; min-height: 100px;"> <p>http://*.url.net</p> </div> <div style="float: right; text-align: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">?</div> <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">↑</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">↓</div> <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; padding: 2px;">X</div> </div> </div> <div style="clear: both;"></div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/> <input style="margin-left: 10px;" type="button" value="Add"/> </div> </div> <div style="margin-top: 20px; text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input style="margin-left: 20px;" type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div>	

9. Under URL Pattern List, select the check box beside the pattern list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.



**NOTE:** Because you use URL Pattern Lists to create Custom URL Category Lists, you must configure URL Pattern List Custom Objects before you configure a Custom URL Category List. URL Pattern List Custom Objects are described in the previous section.

Configure a Custom URL Category List Custom Object as follows:

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under Custom URL Category List, click the **Add** button to create a URL white list.
5. Next to Category Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. This name appears in the Address Whitelist list when you configure an antispam profile.
6. Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, select a URL Pattern List name from the list for bypassing scanning.
7. Click the **Add** button to add your entry to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the custom URL list you have created.
9. Under URL Category List, select the check box beside the extension list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Now that you have created your white list and black list custom objects, you can configure antispam filtering to use those lists:

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Anti-Spam** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under Anti-Spam global options, select an **Address Whitelist** and/or an **Address Blacklist** from the list for local lists for spam filtering. These lists are configured as Custom Objects and are made available for selection here.
5. Under Anti-Spam profiles, click the **Add** button to configure a profile for the Symantec SBL server. This takes you to the profile configuration page.
6. In the Profile Name box, enter a unique name for the antispam profile you are creating.
7. If you are using the default server, select the check box beside Symantec default SBL server. If you are not using the default server, leave the check box unselected. If you do not select this check box, you are disabling server-based spam filtering. You would disable it if you are using only local lists or if you do not have a license for server-based spam filtering. If you are using the Symantec default SBL server, refer to “Configuring Server-Based Spam Filtering” on page 818.

8. In the Anti-spam action list, select one of the following: **Tag subject of e-mail**, **Block e-mail**, or **Tag header of e-mail**. Here you are selecting the action to be taken by the device when spam is detected.
9. In the Custom tag string box, enter a custom string for identifying a message as spam. By default, the devices uses **\*\*\*SPAM\*\*\***.
10. Click **OK** to save your profile. See Figure 182 on page 830. (This takes you back to main antispam configuration page. Under Anti-Spam profiles, the profile you created is now listed. See Figure 183 on page 831.)

**Figure 182: Antispam Local List Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

\* **Profile name**  ?

**Symantec default SBL server** ☐ ?

**Anti-spam action**  (tag-subject) ?

**Custom tag string**  ? (\*\*SPAM\*\*)

---

11. Under Anti-Spam profiles, select the check box for the profile you are using.
12. Click **Apply**. See Figure 183 on page 831.



**Figure 183: Antispam Profile Selection, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

Anti-Spam global options

**Address Whitelist** s2  

**Address Blacklist** s1  


---

Anti spam profiles

	Profile Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">as1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">as</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">test</a>

---

---

### ***J-Web View and Edit Configuration***

To configure local list antispam using the J-Web View and Edit editor, you must first create your local white and black list custom objects.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to URL pattern, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the URL pattern for white list or black list antispam filtering.



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.\[\]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “`*`” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “`.`”. You can only use “`?`” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*juniper.net`, `http://*`.

9. Click **OK**. See Figure 184 on page 832.

**Figure 184: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

#### Url pattern

##### Value

.....

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Value  ?

-----

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...



**NOTE:** Continue to create as many Whitelist and Blacklist entries as necessary in your lists. You cannot use URL patterns directly. You must configure Custom URL category lists to which you apply your URL patterns.

Configure a Custom URL Category List Custom Object as follows: (See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information.)

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Custom url category, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the name of the Url pattern list you created for bypassing scanning.
9. Click **OK**. See Figure 185 on page 833.

**Figure 185: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Custom url category

---

**Value**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

**Value** url-pattern-list1 ? M

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Now that you have created your white list and black list custom objects, you can configure antispam filtering to use those lists:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Feature profile, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Anti spam, click **Configure**.
6. Next to Address blacklist, enter the name of the local list you created earlier as a custom object.
7. Next to Address whitelist, enter the name of the local list you created earlier as a custom object.
8. Next to Symantec sbl, select the check box and click the **Edit** link.
9. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
10. In the Name box, enter a unique name for the antispam profile you are creating.
11. Next to Custom tag string, enter a custom string for identifying a message as spam. By default, the devices uses **\*\*\*SPAM\*\*\***.
12. Next to Sbl default server, if you are using the default server, select the **Yes** check box. If you are not using the default server, select the No check box. You would select No if you are using only local lists or if you do not have a license for server-based spam filtering.
13. In the Spam action list, select one of the following: **tag subject** (of e-mail), **block** (e-mail), **tag header** (of e-mail). Here you are selecting the action to be taken by the device when spam is detected.
14. Click **OK**. See Figure 186 on page 834.

**Figure 186: Antispam Local List Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Feature profile

---

**Anti spam**

---

---

Address blacklist

Address whitelist

Symantec sbl ☒ Yes [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

Traceoptions [Configure](#)

---

**Advanced**

---

---

Next, you configure a UTM policy for SMTP to which you attach the antispam profile you have configured.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to UTM policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
6. Next to Anti spam, click **Configure**.
7. In the Smtip profile box, enter the name of the antispam profile you created earlier.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK** again to return to main UTM configuration page. Your UTM antispam policy is now listed in the UTM policy table.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Security, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, select the **Yes** check box click **Edit**.
5. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.



**NOTE:** Refer to the section on security policy configuration for further details on configuring a policy. Note that when you configure the Then field as part of the policy, select Permit as the action, and then configure Application services, you are able to enter the Utm policy name as part of this security policy.

6. Next to Utm policy (in the Application services security policy screen), enter the name of the appropriate policy. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
7. Click **OK**.

## CLI Configuration

1. Configure the local list spam blocking by first creating your global local spam lists (black list and white list).

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern as-black value
[150.61.8.134 150.61.8.206 67.216.192.16 12.154.55.44 194.39.243.98
12.154.55.42 12.154.55.41 12.154.55.43]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern as-white value [150.1.2.3
150.1.2.4]
```

2. Configure a custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list you created as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category whilecusturl1
value as-white
```

3. Configure the local list antispam feature-profile by first attaching your custom-object black list or white list or both. When both the white list and the black list are in use, the white list is checked first. If there is no match, then the black list is checked.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam address-whitelist
whilecusturl1
```

4. Configure a profile for your local list spam blocking. Although you are not using the symantec-sbl for local list spam blocking, you configure your profile from within that command similar to the server-based spam blocking procedure.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam symantec-sbl profile
localprofile1
```

5. Configure the action to be taken by the device when spam is detected (block, tag-header, tag-subject).

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam symantec-sbl profile
localprofile1 spam-action block
```

6. Configure a custom string for identifying a message as spam.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-spam symantec-sbl profile
localprofile1 custom-tag-string ***spam***
```

7. Configure a UTM policy for SMTP to which you attach the spam feature profile you have configured.

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy spampolicy2
```

8. Attach the spam feature profile to the UTM policy you have created.

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy spampolicy2 anti-spam smtp-profile localprofile1
```

9. Configure a security policy for UTM and attach the UTM policy you created to the security policy.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy2 match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy2 match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy2 match application junos-smtp
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy utmsecuritypolicy2 then permit application-services utm-policy spampolicy2
```

## Understanding Spam Message Handling

---

There are two possible actions the device can take when spam is detected. It can perform a drop action or a tag action.

This topic contains:

- Blocking Detected Spam on page 836
- Tagging Detected Spam on page 837

## Blocking Detected Spam

---

The device can block and drop detected spam at either the connection level or the e-mail level:

- Blocking spam at the connection level

When the SMTP sender is identified as a spam sender based on its IP address, the SMTP connection is rejected and dropped. An error message with a proper error code from the firewall is sent out on behalf of the SMTP server. An example of such an error message is:

```
554 Transaction failed due to anti spam setting
```

- Blocking spam at the e-mail level

When a particular e-mail sender is identified as spam sender based on its sender address, the e-mail is rejected and dropped. An error message with a proper error code from the firewall is sent back to the sender on behalf of the server. An example of such an error message is:

550 Requested action not taken: mailbox unavailable

## Tagging Detected Spam

---

The device can allow and tag the e-mail if the message sender is detected as a spammer. This tagging can occur at the connection level so that all the e-mails for the connection in question are tagged. Otherwise, you can tag only an individual e-mail. Two tagging methods are supported:

- Tag the subject: A user-defined string is added at the beginning of the subject of the e-mail.
- Tag the header: A user-defined string is added to the e-mail header.

## Verifying Antispam Configurations

---

J-Web monitoring tools consist of the options that appear when you select Monitor in the task bar. The Monitor options display diagnostic information about the feature in question. Alternatively, you can enter show commands from the CLI to display the same information. CLI show commands display the current configuration and information about the feature in question.

This topic contains:

- Using J-Web for Antispam Monitoring on page 837
- Using the CLI for Antispam Monitoring on page 838

### Using J-Web for Antispam Monitoring

View antispam statistics using J-web as follows:

1. Select the **Monitor** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Anti-Spam** in the left pane.
4. The following information becomes viewable in the right pane.

```
user@host > show security utm anti-spam status
```

```
SBL Whitelist Server:
SBL Blacklist Server:
server.juniper.net
DNS Server:
Primary : 1.2.3.4, Src Interface: ge-0/0/0
Secondary: 2.3.4.5, Src Interface: ge-0/0/1
Ternary : 0.0.0.0, Src Interface: fe-0/0/2
```

```
Total connections: #
Denied connections: #
```

```

Total greetings: #
Denied greetings: #
Total e-mail scanned: #
Spam total: #
Spam tagged: #
Spam dropped: #
DNS errors: #
Timeout errors: #
Return errors: #
Invalid parameter errors: #
Statistics start time:
Statistics for the last 10 days.

```

5. You can click the **Clear Antispam statistics** button to clear all current viewable statistics and begin collecting new statistics.

### ***Using the CLI for Antispam Monitoring***

Use the following commands to view antispam status and statistics

The antispam show status command displays the following information:

```
user@host > show security utm anti-spam status
```

```

SBL Whitelist Server:
SBL Blacklist Server:
server.juniper.net
DNS Server:
Primary : 1.2.3.4, Src Interface: ge-0/0/0
Secondary: 2.3.4.5, Src Interface: ge-0/0/1
Ternary : 0.0.0.0, Src Interface: fe-0/0/2

```

The antispam show statistics command display the following information:

```
user@host > show security utm anti-spam statistics
```

```

Total connections: #
Denied connections: #
Total greetings: #
Denied greetings: #
Total e-mail scanned: #
Spam total: #
Spam tagged: #
Spam dropped: #
DNS errors: #
Timeout errors: #
Return errors: #
Invalid parameter errors: #

```



## Chapter 29

# Full File-based Antivirus Protection

A virus is executable code that infects or attaches itself to other executable code in order to reproduce itself. Some malicious viruses erase files or lock up systems, while other viruses merely infect files and can overwhelm the target host or network with bogus data. The full file-based antivirus feature provides file-based scanning on specific Application Layer traffic checking for viruses against a virus signature database. It collects the received data packets until it has reconstructed the original application content, such as an e-mail file attachment, and then scans this content.

The full file-based antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service. Kaspersky Lab provides the scan engine for full file-based antivirus. When your antivirus license key expires, you can continue to use locally stored antivirus signatures without any updates. But in that case, if the local database is deleted, antivirus scanning is disabled.



**NOTE:** For information on the express antivirus feature, which provides better performance but lower security, refer to that section in the manual. Note that if you switch from full file-based antivirus protection to express antivirus protection, you must reboot the device in order for express antivirus to begin working.

---

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Understanding the Internal Scan Engine and Scan Options on page 840
- Understanding Updating the Antivirus Scanner Pattern Database on page 845
- Understanding the Scanning of Application Protocols on page 848
- HTTP Scanning on page 848
- FTP Scanning on page 851
- SMTP Scanning on page 852
- POP3 Scanning on page 853
- IMAP Scanning on page 855
- Configuring Full Antivirus Protection on page 857
- Understanding Virus-Detected Notification Options on page 885
- Understanding Scan Result Handling on page 888
- Verifying Antivirus Configurations on page 888

## Understanding the Internal Scan Engine and Scan Options

---

The full file-based antivirus module is the software subsystem on the gateway device that scans specific Application Layer traffic to protect users from virus attacks and to prevent viruses from spreading. The antivirus software subsystem consists of a virus signature database, an application proxy, the scan manager, and the scan engine.

Kaspersky Lab provides the scan engine and it works in the following manner. A client establishes a TCP connection with a server and then starts a transaction. If the application protocol in question is marked for antivirus scanning, the traffic is forwarded to an application proxy for parsing. When the scan request is sent, the scan engine scans the data by querying a virus pattern database. The scan manager monitors antivirus scanning sessions, checking the properties of the data content against the existing antivirus settings. After scanning has occurred, the result is then handled by the scan manager.

The following topics provide information on the scan engine and various configurable scanning options:

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Scan Type Support on page 840
- Scan Mode Support on page 841
- Enable and Disable Scanning on a Per-Protocol Basis on page 841
- File Extension Scanning on page 841
- Intelligent Prescreening on page 842
- Signature Database Support on page 842
- Content Size Limits on page 842
- Decompression Layer Limit on page 843
- Scanning Timeout on page 843
- Global, Profile-Based, and Policy-Based Scan Settings on page 844
- Scan Session Throttling on page 845

### Scan Type Support

The Kaspersky Lab scan engine supports two types of file scanning.

- Regular file scan — In this case, the input object is a regular file. The engine matches the input content with all possible signatures.
- Scan script files — In this case, the input object is a script file. It can be JavaScript, VBScript, mIRC script, bat scripts (DOS bat files), and other text scripts. The engine matches the input content only with signatures for script files. Script scanning is only applicable for HTML content over the HTTP protocol. There are two criteria for this scan type. First, the content-type field of this HTML document must be text or HTML. Second, there is no content encoding in the HTTP header.

If those two criteria are met, an HTML parser is used to parse the HTML document for scripts.

## Scan Mode Support

The Kaspersky Lab scan engine supports two modes of scanning.

- scan-all

This option tells the scan engine to scan all the data it receives.

- scan-by-extension

This option bases all scanning decisions on the file extensions found in the traffic in question. See “File Extension Scanning” on page 841.

## Enable and Disable Scanning on a Per-Protocol Basis

You can turn antivirus scanning on and off on a per protocol basis. If scanning for a protocol is disabled in an antivirus profile, there is no application intelligence for this protocol. Therefore, in most cases, traffic using this protocol is not scanned. But if the protocol in question is based on another protocol for which scanning is enabled in an antivirus profile, then the traffic is scanned as that enabled protocol.

## File Extension Scanning

When scanning content, you can use a file extension list to define a set of file extensions that are used in file extension scan mode (scan-by-extension). The antivirus module can then scan files with extensions on the scan-extension list. If an extension is not defined in an extension list, the file with that extension is not scanned in scan-by-extension mode. If there is no extension present, the file in question is scanned.

There are some requirements to note when using a file extension list to scan content.

- File extension entries are case-insensitive.
- The maximum length of the file extension list name is 29 bytes.
- The maximum length of each file extension entry is 15 bytes.
- The maximum entry number in a file extension list is 255.

```
edit security utm {
  custom-objects {
    filename-extension { ; set of list
      name <extension-list-name>; #mandatory
      value <windows-extension-string>;
    }
  }
}
```

```
edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <name> {
  scan-options {
```

```

        scan-extension <ext-list>
    }
}

```

## Intelligent Prescreening

By default, intelligent prescreening is enabled to improve antivirus scanning performance. The antivirus module generally begins to scan data after the gateway device has received all the packets of a file. Intelligent prescreening tells the antivirus module to begin scanning a file much earlier. In this case, the scan engine uses the first packet or the first several packets to determine if a file could possibly contain malicious code. The scan engine does a quick check on these first packets and if it finds that it is unlikely that the file is infected, it then decides that it is safe to bypass the normal scanning procedure.



**NOTE:** Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for MIME encoded traffic, mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP) and HTTP POST.

## Signature Database Support

The full file-based antivirus protection signature database is called the Juniper Full antivirus database (downloaded by the `pattern-update` command). This database is different from the database used by express antivirus. It detects all destructive malicious code, including viruses (polymorphic and other advanced virus types), worms, Trojans, and malware.

## Content Size Limits

Due to resource constraints, there is a default, device-dependent limit on maximum content size for the database. The content size value is configurable. There is also a lower and upper limit for maximum content size. (This range is device dependent and is not configurable.)

The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The exact timing of this is protocol dependent. If the protocol header contains an accurate content length field, the content size check takes place when the content length field is extracted during header parsing. The content size usually refers to file size. If there is no content length field, the size is checked while the antivirus module is receiving packets. The content size, in this case, refers to accumulated TCP payload size.



**NOTE:** This setting can be used in all protocols.

```

edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <name> {
    scan-options {
        content-size-limit <KB>;
    }
}

```

## Decompression Layer Limit

The decompression layer limit specifies how many layers of nested compressed files and files with internal extractable objects, such as archive files (tar), MS Word and PowerPoint files, the internal antivirus scanner can decompress before it executes the virus scan. For example, if a message contains a compressed .zip file that contains another compressed .zip file, there are two compression layers. Decompressing both files requires a decompress layer setting of 2.

It is worth noting that during the transfer of data, some protocols use content encoding. The antivirus scan engine must decode this layer, which is considered a decompression level, before it scans for viruses.

There are three kinds of compressed data:

- compressed file (zip, rar, gzip)
- encoded data (MIME)
- packaged data (OLE, .CAP, .MSI, .TAR, .EML)

A Decompression Layer could be a layer of a zipped file or an embedded object in packaged data. The antivirus engine scans each layer before unpacking the next layer, until it either reaches the user-configured decompress limit, reaches the device decompress layer limit, finds a virus or other malware, or decompresses the data completely, whichever comes first.

As the virus signature database becomes larger and the scan algorithms become more sophisticated, the scan engine has the ability to look deeper into the data for embedded malware. As a result, it can uncover more layers of compressed data. The Juniper device's level of security is limited by decompress limit, which is based on the memory allocated to the security service. If a virus is not found within the decompress limit, the user has an option to either pass or drop the data.



**NOTE:** This setting can be used in all protocols.

---

```
edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <name> {
    scan-options {
        decompress-layer-limit <num>
    }
}
```

## Scanning Timeout

The scanning timeout value includes the time frame from when the scan request is generated to when the scan result is returned by the scan engine. The time range can be 1 to 1800 seconds. By default, it is 180 seconds.



**NOTE:** This timeout parameter is used by all supported protocols. Each protocol can have a different timeout value.

```
edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <name> {
  scan-options {
    timeout-value <sec> {
    }
  }
}
```

### ***Global, Profile-Based, and Policy-Based Scan Settings***

The antivirus module allows you to configure scanning options on a global level, on a UTM profile level, or on a firewall policy level. Each configuration level has the following implications:

- Global antivirus settings — Settings are applied to all antivirus sessions.
- Profile-based settings — Antivirus settings are different for different protocols within the same policy.
- Policy-based settings — Antivirus settings are different for different policies. Policy-based antivirus settings are applied to all scan-specified traffic defined in a firewall policy.

The majority of antivirus settings are configured within an antivirus profile, bound to specified protocols, and used by designated policies. These UTM policies are then applied to the traffic according to firewall policies. If a firewall policy with an antivirus setting matches the properties of a traffic flow, the antivirus setting is applied to the traffic session. Therefore, you can apply different antivirus settings for different protocols and for different traffic sessions.

Global settings are general overall configurations for the antivirus module or settings that are not specific for profiles.

Global antivirus setting CLI example:

```
edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
```

Profile-based antivirus setting CLI example:

```
edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <name>
```

Policy-based antivirus setting CLI example:

```
edit security utm utm-policy <name>
```

The following is an example of different antivirus settings applied to different protocols configured as profiles within a designated UTM policy:

```
edit security utm
  utm-policy <name> {
    anti-virus {
      http-profile <av profile>
```

```

ftp {
    upload-profile <av profile>
    download-profile <av profile>
}
smtp-profile <av profile>
pop3-profile <av profile>
imap-profile <av profile>
}

```

## Scan Session Throttling

In an attempt to consume all available resources and hinder the ability of the scan engine to scan other traffic, a malicious user might generate a large amount of traffic all at once. To prevent such activity from succeeding, a session throttle is imposed for antivirus resources, thereby restricting the amount of traffic a single source can consume at one time. The limit is an integer with 100 as the default setting. This integer refers to the maximum allowed sessions from a single source. You may change this default limit, but understand that if this limit is set high, that is comparable to no limit.

Over-limit is a fallback setting for the connection-per-client limit. The default behavior of over-limit is to block sessions. This is a per-policy setting. You can specify different settings for different UTM policies.

```

edit security utm utm-policy <name>
traffic-options {
    sessions-per-client {
        limit <number>;
        over-limit { log-and-permit | block}
    }
}

```

## Understanding Updating the Antivirus Scanner Pattern Database

When Kaspersky Lab updates the signatures in its pattern database, the security device downloads these updates so that the antivirus scanner is using the latest, most up-to-date signatures when scanning traffic. The security device can perform these updates automatically (the default), or you can perform pattern update downloads manually.

There are several prerequisites that must be met in order to perform a successful pattern database update:

- You must have a valid antivirus scanner license.
- You must have network connectivity and access to the pattern database server.
- Your DNS settings and port settings (port 80) must be correct.

## Updating Antivirus Patterns

Update the patterns for the antivirus signature database as follows:

1. On the security device, specify the URL address of the pattern-update server.

By default, the Juniper-Kaspersky URL for full antivirus is `http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/SRX210`. “SRX210” in the URL is the platform name. This part of the URL is different and platform specific for each platform. (Other than the platform name, you should not change this URL unless you are experiencing problems with it and have called for support.)

2. After the security device downloads the server-initialization file, the device checks that the pattern file is valid. The device then parses the file to obtain information about it, including the file version, size, and location of the pattern file server.

If the pattern file on the security device is out-of-date (or nonexistent because this is the first time you are loading it), and, if the antivirus pattern-update service subscription is still valid, the device automatically retrieves an updated pattern file from the pattern file server.



**NOTE:** Once your subscription expires, you have a 30 day grace period during which you can continue to update the antivirus pattern file. Once that grace period expires, the update server no longer permits antivirus pattern file updates.

---

Updates to the pattern file are added as new viruses are discovered. You can configure the security device to regularly update the pattern file automatically, or you can update the file manually.

### Example: Automatic Update

In this example, you configure the security device to update the pattern file automatically every 120 minutes. (The default antivirus pattern-update interval is 60 minutes.)

#### ■ J-Web

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Anti-Virus** in the left pane.
4. Next to Interval, in the Kaspersky Lab Engine section, enter **120** in the box.
5. Click the **OK** button.

#### ■ CLI

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
pattern-update interval 120
```



### Example: Manual Update

In this example, you use the request command to update the pattern file manually.

- J-Web

At this time, you cannot perform manual database updates using J-Web.

- CLI

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine pattern-update
```

You can also manually delete the pattern database (pattern-delete) and reload the pattern database (pattern-reload) using the request command.

### Database Download Process

The database pattern server is accessible through HTTP or HTTPS. By default, the antivirus module checks for database updates automatically every 60 minutes. You can change this interval and you can trigger updates manually, as well. The number of files that are downloaded during an update and the duration of the download process can vary.

A local copy of the pattern database is saved in persistent data storage (that is, the flash disk). If the device is rebooted, the local copy remains available for the antivirus scan engine to use during the antivirus scan engine initialization time, without the need for network access to the pattern database server.

The following is an example of the CLI for configuring the database update feature:

```
utm {
  feature-profile {
    anti-virus {
      type
      kaspersky-lab-engine {
        pattern-update
        url <url>
        interval <min>
      }
    }
  }
}
```



**NOTE:** If the auto-update fails, the updater automatically retries to update three more times. If the database download continues to fail, the updater stops trying and waits for the next periodic update before trying again.

---

## Understanding the Scanning of Application Protocols

The internal antivirus scan engine supports scanning for specific Application Layer transactions allowing you to select the content (HTTP, FTP, SMTP, POP3, or IMAP traffic) to scan. For each content type that you are scanning, you have different configuration options.

Profile-based settings, including enable/disable, scan-mode, and scan result handling settings, may not be applicable to all supported protocols. The following table lists profile-based settings and their protocol support.

**Table 149: Supported Profile-based Settings By Protocol**

Profile Setting	Protocol Support
“Enable and Disable Scanning on a Per-Protocol Basis” on page 841	All protocols support this feature
“Scan Mode Support” on page 841	All protocols support this feature
“File Extension Scanning” on page 841	All protocols support this feature
“Content Size Limits” on page 842	All protocols support this feature
“Decompression Layer Limit” on page 843	All protocols support this feature
“Scanning Timeout” on page 843	All protocols support this feature
“HTTP Trickling” on page 849	HTTP only
“Fallback Options” on page 887	All protocols support this feature
“Protocol-Only Notifications” on page 885	All protocols support this feature
“E-mail Notification” on page 886	SMTP, POP3, and IMAP only
“Custom Message Notification” on page 886	All protocols support this feature

## HTTP Scanning

If antivirus scanning is enabled for HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) traffic in a content security profile, TCP traffic to defined HTTP service ports (generally port 80) is monitored. For HTTP traffic, the security device scans both HTTP responses and requests (get, post, and put commands).



**NOTE:** For HTTP antivirus scanning, both HTTP 1.0 and 1.1 are supported. If the protocol version is HTTP 0.x, the antivirus scanner attempts to scan the traffic. Unknown protocols are bypassed. For example, some application protocols use HTTP as the transport but do not comply with HTTP 1.0 or 1.1. These are considered unknown protocols and are not scanned.

This topic contains:

- HTTP Scanning: Process Overview on page 849
- HTTP Trickling on page 849
- MIME White List on page 850
- URL White List on page 850
- Script-only Scanning on page 851

## **HTTP Scanning: Process Overview**

This is a general description of how HTTP traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner.

1. An HTTP client sends an HTTP request to a Web server or a Web server responds to an HTTP request.
2. The security device intercepts the request and passes the data to the antivirus scanner, which scans it for viruses.
3. After completing the scan, the device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the request to the Web server.
  - If there is a virus, the device drops the request and sends an HTTP message reporting the infection to the client.

## **HTTP Trickling**

HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing-out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning. On some slow link transferring, a large file could timeout if too much time is taken for the antivirus scanner to scan a complex file.

HTTP trickling is the forwarding of specified amounts of unscanned HTTP traffic to the requesting HTTP client to prevent the browser window from timing out while the scan manager examines downloaded HTTP files. (The security device forwards small amounts of data in advance of transferring an entire scanned file.)

HTTP Trickling is time-based and there is only one parameter to configure for this feature. That is the **Time-out Interval**. By default, trickling is disabled.



**NOTE:** The timeout based trickling is packet driven. This means, if no packet is received within a certain time frame, HTTP trickling is discontinued. This setting is only supported for HTTP connections.

The following is a trickling configuration example:

```
edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine {
  profile <name> {
    trickling timeout <sec>;
  }
}
```

## MIME White List

The gateway device uses MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension) types to decide which traffic may bypass antivirus scanning. The MIME white list defines a list of MIME types and can contain one or many MIME entries.

A MIME entry is case-insensitive. An empty MIME is an invalid entry and should never appear in the MIME list. If the MIME entry ends with a / character, prefix matching takes place. Otherwise, exact matching occurs.

There are two types of MIME lists used to configure MIME type antivirus scan bypassing:

- mime-whitelist list — This is the comprehensive list for those MIME types that can bypass antivirus scanning.
- exception list — The exception list is a list for excluding some MIME types from the mime-whitelist list. This list is a subset of MIME types found in the mime-whitelist.

For example, if the mime-whitelist includes the entry `video/` and the exception list includes the entry `video/x-shockwave-flash`, by using these two lists, you can bypass objects with “video/” MIME type but not bypass “video/x-shockwave-flash” MIME type.

You should note that there are limits for mime-whitelist entries as follows:

- The maximum number of MIME items in a MIME list is 50.
- The maximum length of each MIME entry is restricted to 40 bytes.
- The maximum length of a MIME list name string is restricted to 40 bytes.

## URL White List

A URL white list is a unique custom list that you define in which all the URLs or IP addresses in that list for a specified category are always bypassed for scanning. Because antivirus scanning is CPU and memory intensive action, if there are URLs or IP addresses that you are sure do not require scanning, you may want to create this custom list add them to it.

The following is a white list configuration example:

```
set security utm custom-objects {
  custom-url-category { ; set of list
    name <url-category-name>; #mandatory
    value <url-pattern-name>;
  }
}
```

## Script-only Scanning

With script-only scanning, the input object is a script file. It can be JavaScript, VBScript, mIRC script, bat scripts (DOS bat files) and other text scripts. The engine matches the input content only with signatures for script files. Script scanning is applicable only for HTML content over the HTTP protocol. There are two criteria for this scan-type. First, the content-type field of this HTML document must be text or HTML. Second, there is no content encoding in the HTTP header. If those two criteria are met, an HTML parser is used to parse the HTML document.

## FTP Scanning

If antivirus scanning is enabled for FTP (File Transfer Protocol) traffic in a content security profile, the security device monitors the control channel and, when it detects one of the FTP commands for transferring data, it scans the data sent over the data channel.



**NOTE:** In order to scan FTP traffic, the FTP ALG must be enabled.

## FTP Scanning: Process Overview

This is a general description of how FTP traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner.

1. A local FTP client opens an FTP control channel to an FTP server and requests the transfer of some data.
2. The FTP client and server negotiate a data channel over which the server sends the requested data. The security device intercepts the data and passes it to the antivirus scan engine, which scans it for viruses.
3. After completing the scan, the device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the data to the client.
  - If there is a virus, the device replaces the data with a drop message in the data channel and sends a message reporting the infection in the control channel.

## SMTP Scanning

---

If SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol ) antivirus scanning is enabled in a content security profile, the security device redirects traffic from local SMTP clients to the antivirus scanner before sending it to the local mail server.



**NOTE:** Chunking is an alternative to the data command. It provides a mechanism to transmit a large message in small chunks. It is not supported. Messages using chunking are bypassed and are not scanned.

---

This topic contains:

- SMTP Scanning: Process Overview on page 852
- Mail Message Replacement on page 852
- Sender Notification on page 853
- Subject Tagging on page 853

### SMTP Scanning: Process Overview

This is a general description of how SMTP traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner.

1. An SMTP client sends an e-mail message to a local mail server or a remote mail server forwards an e-mail message via SMTP to the local mail server.
2. The security device intercepts the e-mail message and passes the data to the antivirus scanner, which scans it for viruses.
3. After completing the scan, the device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the message to the local server.
  - If there is a virus, the device sends a replacement message to the client.

### Mail Message Replacement

If the antivirus scanner finds a virus in an e-mail message, the original message is dropped, the message body is truncated, and the content is replaced by a message that may appear as follows:

```
nContent-Type: text/plain
Your mail <src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> contains contaminated file
<filename> with virus <virusname>, so it is dropped.
```

If a scan error is returned and the fail mode is set to drop, the original message is dropped and the entire message body is truncated. The content is replaced by a message that may appear as follows:

```
nContent-Type: text/plain
```

Your mail <src\_ip> : <src\_port> — <dst\_port>: <dst\_port> is dropped for <reason>.

## Sender Notification

If `notify-sender-on-virus` is set and the message is dropped due to a detected virus, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender. The content of the notification may appear as follows:

```
From: <admin>@<gateway_ip>
To: <sender_e-mail>
Subject: Mail Delivery Failure
This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you
sent could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:
<src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> <ENVID> contaminated file <filename>
with virus <virusname>.
e-mail Header is:
<header of scanned e-mail>
```

If `notify-sender-on-error-drop` is set and the message is dropped due to a scan error, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender of the scanned message. The content of the e-mail may appear as follows:

```
From: <admin>@<gateway_ip>
To: <sender_e-mail>
Subject: Mail Delivery Failure
This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you
sent could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:
<src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> <ENVID> <reason>.
e-mail Header is:
<header of scanned e-mail>
```



**NOTE:** For information on the ENVID parameter, refer to RFC 3461.

---

## Subject Tagging

If a scan error is returned and the fail mode is set to `pass`, the antivirus module passes the message through to the server. If `notify-recipient-on-error-pass` is set, the following string is appended to the end of the subject field:

(No virus check: <reason>)

## POP3 Scanning

If Post Office Protocol 3 (POP3) antivirus scanning is enabled in a content security profile, the security device redirects traffic from a local mail server to antivirus scanner before sending it to the local POP3 client.

This topic contains:

- POP3 Scanning: Process Overview on page 854
- Mail Message Replacement on page 854

- Sender Notification on page 854
- Subject Tagging on page 855

## POP3 Scanning: Process Overview

This is a general description of how POP3 traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner.

1. The POP3 client downloads an e-mail message from the local mail server.
2. The security device intercepts the e-mail message and passes the data to the antivirus scanner, which scans it for viruses.
3. After completing the scan, the security device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the message to the client.
  - If there is a virus, the device sends a message reporting the infection to the client.



**NOTE:** See “Protocol-Only Notifications” on page 885 for information on protocol-only notifications for IMAP.

---

## Mail Message Replacement

If the antivirus scanner finds a virus in an e-mail message, the original message is dropped, the message body is truncated, and the content is replaced by a message that may appear as follows:

```
nContent-Type: text/plain
Your mail <src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> contains contaminated file
<filename> with virus <virusname>, so it is dropped.
```

## Sender Notification

If `notify-sender-on-virus` is set and the message is dropped due to a detected virus, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender.

```
From: <admin>@<gateway_ip>
To: <sender_e-mail>
Subject: Mail Delivery Failure
This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you
sent could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:
<src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> contaminated file <filename> with
virus <virusname>.
e-mail Header is:
<header of scanned e-mail>
```

If `notify-sender-on-error-drop` is set and the message is dropped due to a scan error, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender of the scanned message. The content of the e-mail may appear as follows:



From: <admin>@<gateway\_ip>  
 To: <sender\_e-mail>  
 Subject: Mail Delivery Failure  
 This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you sent could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:  
 <src\_ip> : <src\_port> — <dst\_port>: <dst\_port> <reason>.  
 e-mail Header is:  
 <header of scanned e-mail>

## Subject Tagging

If a scan error is returned and the fail mode is set to **pass**, the antivirus module passes the message through to the server. If **notify-recipient-on-error-pass** is set, the following string is appended to the end of subject field:

(No virus check: <reason>)

## IMAP Scanning

---

If IMAP (Internet Message Access Protocol) antivirus scanning is enabled in a content security profile, the security device redirects traffic from a local mail server to the internal antivirus scanner before sending it to the local IMAP client.

This topic contains:

- IMAP Scanning: Process Overview on page 855
- Mail Message Replacement on page 856
- Sender Notification on page 856
- Subject Tagging on page 856
- IMAP Antivirus Scanning Limitations on page 856

### IMAP Scanning: Process Overview

This is a general description of how IMAP traffic is intercepted, scanned, and acted upon by the antivirus scanner.

1. The IMAP client downloads an e-mail message from the local mail server.
2. The security device intercepts the e-mail message and passes the data to the antivirus scanner, which scans it for viruses.
3. After completing the scan, the security device follows one of two courses:
  - If there is no virus, the device forwards the message to the client.
  - If there is a virus, the device sends a message reporting the infection to the client.



**NOTE:** See “Protocol-Only Notifications” on page 885 for information on protocol-only notifications for IMAP.

---

## Mail Message Replacement

If the antivirus scanner finds a virus in an e-mail message, the original message is dropped, the message body is truncated, and the content is replaced by a message that may appear as follows:

```
nContent-Type: text/plain
Your mail <src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> contains contaminated file
<filename> with virus <virusname>, so it is dropped.
```

## Sender Notification

If `notify-sender-on-virus` is set and the message is dropped due to a detected virus, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender.

```
From: <admin>@<gateway_ip>
To: <sender_e-mail>
Subject: Mail Delivery Failure
This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you
sent could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:
<src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> contaminated file <filename> with
virus <virusname>.
e-mail Header is:
<header of scanned e-mail>
```

If `notify-sender-on-error-drop` is set and the message is dropped due to a scan error, an e-mail is sent to the mail sender of the scanned message. The content of the e-mail may appear as follows:

```
From: <admin>@<gateway_ip>
To: <sender_e-mail>
Subject: Mail Delivery Failure
This message is created automatically by mail delivery software. A message that you
sent could not be delivered to one or more of its recipients for the reason:
<src_ip> : <src_port> — <dst_port>: <dst_port> <reason>.
e-mail Header is:
<header of scanned e-mail>
```

## Subject Tagging

If a scan error is returned and the fail mode is set to **pass**, the antivirus module passes the message through to the server. If `notify-recipient-on-error-pass` is set, the following string is appended to the end of subject field:

```
(No virus check: <reason>)
```

## IMAP Antivirus Scanning Limitations

**Mail Fragments** — It is possible to chop one e-mail into multiple parts and to send each part through a different response. This is called mail fragmenting and most popular mail clients support it in order to send and receive large e-mails. Scanning

of mail fragments is not supported by the antivirus scanner and in such cases, the message body is not scanned.

**Partial Content** — Some mail clients treat e-mail of different sizes differently. For example, small e-mails (less than 10 KB) are downloaded as a whole. Large e-mails (e.g. less than 1 MB) are chopped into 10 KB pieces upon request from the IMAP server. Scanning of any partial content requests is not supported by the antivirus scanner.

**IMAP Uploads** — Only antivirus scanning of IMAP downloads is supported. IMAP upload traffic is not scanned.

## Configuring Full Antivirus Protection

---

You can use J-Web or the CLI to configure the full antivirus feature. When configuring antivirus protection, you must first create the antivirus custom objects you are using. Those custom objects may include the MIME pattern list, MIME exception list, and the filename extension list. Once you have created your custom objects, you can configure full antivirus protection, including intelligent prescreening, and content size limits.

This topic contains:

- Configuration Overview on page 857
- J-Web Quick Configuration on page 858
- J-Web View and Edit Configuration on page 874
- CLI Configuration on page 880

### Configuration Overview

For each UTM feature, you should configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. First configure UTM custom objects (if any), for the feature in question. Custom objects are global parameters for UTM features. That is, configured custom objects apply to all UTM policies where applicable, rather than only to individual policies.

The CLI commands for setting antivirus custom objects are:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects filename-extension
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category
```

2. Configure main feature parameters, called feature profiles.

The CLI command for setting antivirus feature profiles is :

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile.

CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for HTTP (for example) and attaching that policy to a profile are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp2 anti-virus http-profile http1
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

The CLI command for attaching a UTM policy to a security policy is:

```
user@host# set security policies
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 then
    permit application-services utm-policy utmp2
```

## ***J-Web Quick Configuration***

To configure antivirus protection using the J-Web configuration editor, you must first create your custom objects. (MIME Pattern List, Filename Extension List, URL Pattern List, and Custom URL Category List)

Configure a MIME Pattern List Custom Object as follows (see “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information on MIME white lists):

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under MIME Pattern List, click the **Add** button to create MIME pattern lists. See Figure 187 on page 859.

**Figure 187: Custom Object, Mime Pattern List, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

Custom Objects

---

☐ Mime Pattern List

	Mime List Name	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">a1</a>	text/html
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">m1</a>	text/html
	<a href="#">junos-default-bypass-mime</a>	text/html text/css audio/ video/ image/ ...

---

☐ Filename Extension List

---

☐ Protocol command List

---

☐ URL Pattern List

---

☐ Custom URL Category List

---

5. Next to MIME Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. Keep in mind that you are creating a MIME white list and a MIME exception list (if necessary). Both MIME lists appear in the MIME Whitelist and Exception MIME Whitelist fields when you configure antivirus. Therefore, the MIME list names you create should be as descriptive as possible.
6. Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, enter the MIME pattern.
7. Click the **Add** button to add your MIME pattern to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add MIME patterns in this manner.
8. Optionally, create a new MIME list to act as an exception list. The exception list is generally a subset of the main MIME list.

9. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the MIME list you have created. See Figure 188 on page 860. (This takes you back to the main configuration page.)

**Figure 188: Custom Object, MIME Pattern Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM** Edit a Mime Pattern List: 'junos-default-bypass-mime'

---

\* **Mime Name**  ?

---

\* **Values** ?

text/html  
 text/css  
 audio/  
 video/  
 image/  
 application/pdf  
 application/x-director

---

10. Under MIME Pattern List, select the check box beside the pattern list you created.
11. Click **Apply**.

Configure a Filename Extension List Custom Object as follows (see “File Extension Scanning” on page 841):

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under Filename Extension List, click the **Add** button to create a file extension list. See Figure 189 on page 861.

Figure 189: Custom Object, Filename Extension List, Quick Configuration

Quick Configuration

UTM

Custom Objects

+

 Mime Pattern List

+

 Filename Extension List

	Filename Extension	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">f1</a>	txt
	<a href="#">junos-default-extension</a>	386 , ACE , ARJ , ASP , BAT ...

Add...

Delete

+

 Protocol command List

+

 URL Pattern List

+

 Custom URL Category List

Apply

5. Next to Extension Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. (This name appears in the Scan Option By Extension list when you configure an antivirus profile.)
6. In the Default Filename Extension swap box, select one or more default values (press Shift to select multiple concurrent items or press Ctrl to select multiple separate items) and click the < - left arrow button to move the value or values to the Value box.
7. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the extension list you have created. See Figure 190 on page 862.

**Figure 190: Custom Object, Filename Extension Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

UTM Edit a Filename Extension List: 'f1'

---

\* Extension Name  ?

**Value**

txt

→

←

**Default Filename Extension** ?

386  
ACE  
ARJ  
ASP  
BAT

8. Under File Extension List, select the check box beside the extension list you created.
9. Click **Apply**.

Configure a URL Pattern List Custom Object as follows:



**NOTE:** Because you use URL Pattern Lists to create Custom URL Category Lists, you must configure URL Pattern List Custom Objects before you configure a Custom URL Category List.

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under URL Pattern List, click the **Add** button to create a URL white list. See Figure 191 on page 863.



Figure 191: Custom Object, URL Pattern List, Quick Configuration

Quick Configuration

UTM

Custom Objects

Mime Pattern List

Filename Extension List

Protocol command List

URL Pattern List

	URL Pattern	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">single url yahoo</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">block-list</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com http://*.cnn.com ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">white-list</a>	www.google.com www.espn.com www.ask.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">urltest</a>	http://*.url.net

Add...

Delete

Custom URL Category List

Apply

5. Next to Category Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. This name appears in the Custom URL Category List Custom Object page for selection.

6. Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, enter the URL or IP address you want added to list for bypassing scanning.

Configuring Full Antivirus Protection ■ 863



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[\[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*juniper.net`, `http://*`.

7. Click the **Add** button to add your entry to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the URL pattern list you have created. See Figure 192 on page 864.

**Figure 192: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, Quick Configuration**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**UTM** **Add a URL Pattern List**

---

\* URL Pattern Name  ?

---

\* Values

http://\*.url.net

9. Under URL Category List, select the check box beside the URL pattern list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Configure a Custom URL Category List Custom Object as follows: (See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information on URL white lists.)



**NOTE:** Because you use URL Pattern Lists to create Custom URL Category Lists, you must configure URL Pattern List Custom Objects before you configure a Custom URL Category List. URL Pattern List Custom Objects are described in the previous section.

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under Custom URL Category List, click the **Add** button to create a URL white list. See Figure 193 on page 865.

**Figure 193: Custom Object, Custom URL Category List, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

UTM

Custom Objects

☐ Mime Pattern List

☐ Filename Extension List

☐ Protocol command List

☐ URL Pattern List

☐ Custom URL Category List

	Category Name	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p1</a>	p1
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">CN1</a>	p1

Add...

Delete

Apply

5. Next to Category Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. This name appears in the URL Whitelist list when you configure an antivirus profile.
6. Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, select a URL Pattern List name from the list for bypassing scanning.

7. Click the **Add** button to add your entry to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the custom URL list you have created. See Figure 194 on page 866.

**Figure 194: Custom Object, Custom URL Category Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM** Edit a Custom URL Category List: 'CN1'

---

\* **Category Name**  ?

---

\* **Values**

p1

↑

↓

X

p1

▼

Add

---

OK

Cancel

9. Under URL Category List, select the check box beside the extension list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the antivirus feature profile.

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Anti-Virus** in the left pane.
4. Next to MIME Whitelist, select the custom object you created from the list.
5. Next to Exception MIME Whitelist, select the custom object you created from the list.
6. Next to URL Whitelist, select the custom object you created from the list.
7. Next to Type, select the type of engine you are using from the list. For full antivirus protection, you should select **Kaspersky Lab Engine**.

8. Next to Pattern Update URL, enter the URL for the pattern database in the box. Note that the URL is <http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/SRX210> and you should not change it. See “Updating Antivirus Patterns” on page 845 for more information.
9. Next to Interval, enter the time interval for automatically updating the pattern database in the box. The default interval is 60. See “Updating Antivirus Patterns” on page 845 for more information.
10. Select the No Auto Update check box if you do not want the pattern file updated automatically.
11. Next to Admin emails to be notified about pattern file update, enter the e-mail addresses of the administrators who should receive e-mail notifications when updates are made to the pattern file.
12. Next to Custom message subject for notification, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
13. Next to Custom message for notification, enter the text to appear in the body of the notification e-mail.
14. Click the **Add** button below the Profile Name table to create a profile for the Kaspersky Lab Engine. See Figure 195 on page 868.

**Figure 195: Antivirus Full Configuration, Quick Configuration****Quick Configuration****UTM****Anti-Virus**
 MIME Whitelist  ?

 Exception MIME Whitelist  ?

 URL Whitelist  ?
**Kaspersky Lab Engine**
 Pattern Update URL  ?

 Pattern Update Interval  ?

 No Auto Update ☒ ?

 Admin emails to be notified about pattern file update  ?

 Custom message subject for notification  ?

 Custom message for notification  ?

Profile Name	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p2</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">junos-av-defaults</a>




15. Next to Profile Name, enter a unique name in the box.
16. Next to Trickling Timeout, enter timeout parameters. Note that trickling applies only to HTTP. HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning. See “HTTP Trickling” on page 849 for overview details.
17. Next to Intelligent Prescreening, select the check box to enable intelligent prescreening if you are using it. See “Intelligent Prescreening” on page 842 for details. (Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP and HTTP POST).
18. Next to Scan Option, select either the **All** option button if you are scanning all content or the **By Extension** option button if you are scanning by file extensions. If you select By Extension, you must select a Filename Extension List custom object from the accompanying list. See “File Extension Scanning” on page 841 for overview information.
19. Next to Content Size Limit, enter content size parameters. The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The content size refers to accumulated TCP payload size. See “Content Size Limits” on page 842 for details.

20. Next to Timeout, enter scanning timeout parameters. See “Scanning Timeout” on page 843 for overview details.
21. Next to Decompress Layer Limit, enter decompression layer limit parameters. See “Decompression Layer Limit” on page 843 for details.
22. Next to Default (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list. (Note that in most cases, Block is the default fallback option.) See “Fallback Options” on page 887 for a detailed overview of this feature and each fallback category.
23. Next to Corrupt File (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
24. Next to Password File (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
25. Next to Decompress Layer (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
26. Next to Content Size (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
27. Next to Engine Not Ready (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
28. Next to Timeout (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
29. Next to Out Of Resources (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
30. Next to Too Many Request (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
31. Under Virus Detection, next to Type, select **Protocol Only** or **Message** from the list. Here you are selecting whether to send a specific protocol only message or not. See “Protocol-Only Notifications” on page 885 for overview information.
32. Under Virus Detection, select the Notify Mail Sender check box to enable this notification.
33. Under Virus Detection, next to Custom message subject, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
34. Under Virus Detection, next to Custom Message, enter text for the message body of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message). See “Custom Message Notification” on page 886 for overview information.
35. Under Fallback Block, next to Type, select **Protocol Only** or **Message** from the list to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered.
36. Under Fallback Block, select the Notify Mail Sender check box to enable this notification.
37. Under Fallback Block, next to Custom message subject, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
38. Under Fallback Block, next to Custom Message, enter text for the message body of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).

39. Under Fallback Non Block, select the Notify Mail Sender check box to enable this notification when a fallback option without a blocking action is triggered.
40. Under Fallback Non Block, next to Custom message subject, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
41. Under Fallback Non Block, next to Custom Message, enter text for the message body of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
42. Click **OK** to return to the main Antivirus configuration page. See Figure 196 on page 871.



Figure 196: Antivirus Full Configuration, Quick Configuration

Quick Configuration

UTM

\* Profile Name

p1

?

Trickling Timeout

600

?

Scan Options

Intelligent Prescreening

☒

Scan Option

☐ All

☒ By Extension

all

▼

?

Content Size Limit

20000

?

Timeout

1800

?

Decompress Layer Limit

3

?

Fallback Options

Default

Block

▼

?

Corrupt File

Block

▼

?

Password File

Block

▼

?

Decompress Layer

Block

▼

?

Content Size

Block

▼

?

Engine Not Ready

Block

▼

?

Timeout

Block

▼

?

Out Of Resource

Block

▼

?

Too Many Request

Block

▼

?

⊕ Virus Detection

⊕ Fallback Block

⊕ Fallback Non Block

OK

Cancel

43. Select the check box in the Profile Name table for the profile you are using.



**NOTE:** You create a separate antivirus profile for each antivirus protocol. These profiles may basically contain the same configuration information, but when you are creating your UTM policy for an antivirus profile, the UTM policy configuration page provides separate antivirus profile selection fields for each supported protocol.

44. Click **Apply**. See Figure 197 on page 872.

**Figure 197: Antivirus Full Profile Selection, Quick Configuration**

#### Quick Configuration

#### UTM

#### Anti-Virus

Mime Whitelist	<input type="text" value="junos-default-bypass-mime"/> ?
Exception Mime Whitelist	<input type="text" value="junos-default-bypass-mime"/> ?
URL Whitelist	<input type="text" value=""/> ?
Type	<input type="text" value="Kaspersky Lab Engine"/> ?

#### Kaspersky Lab Engine

Pattern Update URL	<input type="text" value="http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/SRX650/1"/> ?
Pattern Update Interval	<input type="text" value="60"/> ?
No Auto Update	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ?

	Profile Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	p2
<input type="checkbox"/>	junos-av-defaults

Next, you configure a UTM policy for antivirus to which you attach the antivirus profile you have configured.

1. Select **Security Policies > UTM Policies**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating
4. Under Anti-Virus, select a profile you have configured from the list for each protocol.
5. In the Session Per Client Over Limit list, select one of the following: **Log and Permit**, **Block**. This is the action the device takes when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded.

6. In the Session Per Client Limit box, enter a session per client limit from 0 to 20000 for this UTM policy.
7. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the UTM Policies page.
8. Select the check box in the UTM Policy table for the policy you are using.
9. Click **Apply**.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select Security **Policies > FW / VPN Policies**.
2. Next to Default Policy Action, select one of the following: Deny-All, Permit-All.
3. Next to From Zone, select a zone from the list.
4. Next to To Zone, select a zone from the list.
5. Under Zone Direction, click **Add a Policy**.
6. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the security policy you are creating.
7. Under Match Criterias, choose a Source Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Source Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
8. Under Match Criterias, choose a Destination Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Destination Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
9. Under Match Criterias, choose an Application or Applications. Do this by selecting junos- < protocol > (for all protocols that support antivirus scanning) in the Application Sets box and clicking the < — button to move them to the Matched box.
10. Next to Policy Action, select one of the following: **Permit, Deny, Reject**.



**NOTE:** When you select Permit for Policy Action, several additional fields become available, including UTM Policy.

- 
11. Next to UTM Policy, select the appropriate policy from the list. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.



**NOTE:** There are several fields on this page that are not described in this section. See the Security Policies section for detailed information on configuring security policies and all the available fields.

- 
12. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the main Security Policies configuration page.
  13. Under Policies, select the check box beside the security policy you created.
  14. Click **Apply**.

## J-Web View and Edit Configuration

To configure antivirus protection using the J-Web view and edit configuration editor, you must first create your custom objects. (MIME Pattern List, Filename Extension List, URL Pattern List, and Custom URL Category List)

Configure a MIME Pattern List Custom Object as follows (see “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information on MIME white lists):

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Mime pattern, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the MIME list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the MIME pattern.
9. Click **OK**. See Figure 198 on page 874.

**Figure 198: Custom Object, Mime Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Mime pattern

Value

Value video/ ?

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Configure a Filename Extension List Custom Object as follows (see “File Extension Scanning” on page 841):

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Filename extension, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the extension list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.

8. Next to Value, enter the extensions.
9. Click **OK**. See Figure 199 on page 875.

**Figure 199: Custom Object, Filename Extension Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Filename extension

---

**Value**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

**Value** .ext, .vbs, .bat ?

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Configure a URL Pattern List Custom Object as follows:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Url pattern, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the URLs or IP addresses you want added to list for bypassing scanning.



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: \\*\.[\]\?\* and you must precede all wildcard URLs with http://. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: http://\*.juniper.net, http://www.juniper.ne?, http://www.juniper.n??. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: \*.juniper.net, www.juniper.ne?, http://\*.juniper.net, http://\*.

9. Click **OK**. See Figure 200 on page 876.

**Figure 200: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Url pattern

---

**Value**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

**Value**  ?

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Configure a Custom URL Category List Custom Object as follows: (See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information.)

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Custom url category, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the name of the Url pattern list you created for bypassing scanning.
9. Click **OK**.

**Figure 201: Custom Object, Custom URL Category Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Custom url category

---

**Value**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

**Value**  ? M

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the antivirus feature profile.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.

3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Feature profile, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Anti virus, click **Configure**.
6. Next to Kaspersky lab engine, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Pattern update, select the **Yes** check box and click **Edit** to set the interval.
8. Next to Admin email, enter the e-mail addresses of the administrators who should receive e-mail notifications when updates are made to the pattern file.
9. Next to Custom message, enter the text to appear in the body of the notification e-mail.
10. Next to Custom message subject, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
11. Next to Interval, enter the time interval for automatically updating the pattern database in the box. The default interval is 60. See “Updating Antivirus Patterns” on page 845 for more information.
12. Next to No autoupdate, select the No checkbox if you want to disable automatic updates and update the pattern database manually.
13. Next to URL, if it is not already entered, enter the URL for the pattern database in the box. Note that the URL is <http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/SRX210> and you should not change it.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry** to create a profile for the Kaspersky Lab Engine.
16. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the profile you are creating.
17. Next to Fallback options, select the **Yes** check box and click **Edit** to configure.
  - Next to Content Size, select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
  - Next to Corrupt File (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
  - Next to Password File (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
  - Next to Decompress Layer (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
  - Next to Engine Not Ready (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
  - Next to Timeout (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
  - Next to Out Of Resources (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
  - Next to Too Many Request (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
18. Click **OK**.

19. Next to Notification options, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  - Next to Fallback block, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure**.
    - Next to Custom message, enter text for your custom message for this notification.
    - Next to Custom message subject, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
    - Next to Notify mail sender, select the **Yes** check box to enable this notification.
    - Next to Type, select **protocol-only** or **message** from the list to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered
    - Click **OK**.
  - Next to Fallback non block, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
    - Next to Custom message, enter text for your custom message for this notification.
    - Next to Custom message subject, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
    - Next to Notify mail sender, select the **Yes** check box to enable this notification.
    - Click **OK**.
  - Next to Virus detection, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
    - Next to Custom message, enter text for your custom message for this notification.
    - Next to Custom message subject, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
    - Next to Notify mail sender, select the **Yes** check box to enable this notification.
    - Next to Type, select **protocol-only** or **message** from the list to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered
    - Click **OK**.
20. Next to Scan options, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  - Next to Content size limit, enter content size parameters. The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The content size refers to accumulated TCP payload size.
  - Next to Decompress layer limit, enter decompression layer limit parameters. See “Decompression Layer Limit” on page 843.



- Next to Intelligent prescreening, select the **Yes** check box to enable intelligent prescreening if you are using it. See “Intelligent Prescreening” on page 842.
  - Next to Scan extension, enter the name of the Filename extension list custom object you created.
  - Next to Scan mode, select **all** or **by-extension** from the list.
  - Next to Timeout, enter scanning timeout parameters. See “Scanning Timeout” on page 843.
21. Next to Trickling, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
    - Next to Timeout, enter trickling timeout parameters. See “HTTP Trickling” on page 849.
  22. Click **OK**.
  23. Click **OK** again to save the Kaspersky lab engine profile.
  24. Back on the main Anti virus page, next to Mime whitelist, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  25. Next to Name, enter the name of the Mime list custom object you created.
  26. Click **OK**.
  27. Next to Type, select kaspersky-lab-engine from the list.
  28. Next to Url whitelist, enter the name of the URL whitelist custom object you created.
  29. Click **OK**. See Figure 202 on page 879 for main Kaspersky lab engine profile page.

**Figure 202: Antivirus Full Profile Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Anti virus

**Kaspersky lab engine**

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Pattern update ☒ Yes [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

Name	Actions
p2	<a href="#">Fallback options</a> <a href="#">Notification options</a> <a href="#">Scan options</a> <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

Next, you configure a UTM policy for full file-based antivirus to which you attach the Kaspersky lab engine profile you have configured.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to UTM policy, click **Add new entry**.

5. In the Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
6. Next to Anti virus, click **Configure**.
7. In the Http, Imap, Pop3, or Smtpprofile boxes, enter the name of the profile you created earlier. For Ftp, click **Configure** or **Edit** to enter Upload and Download profiles.



**NOTE:** You create a separate antivirus profile for each antivirus protocol. These profiles may basically contain the same configuration information, but when you are creating your UTM policy for an antivirus profile, the UTM antivirus policy configuration page provides separate antivirus profile selection fields for each supported protocol.

8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK** again to return to main UTM configuration page. Your UTM antivirus policy is now listed in the UTM policy table.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Security, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, select the **Yes** check box click **Edit**.
5. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.



**NOTE:** Refer to the section on security policy configuration for further details on configuring a policy. Note that when you configure the Then field as part of the policy, select Permit as the action, and then configure Application services, you are able to enter the Utm policy name as part of this security policy.

6. Next to Utm policy (in the Application services security policy screen), enter the name of the appropriate policy. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
7. Click **OK**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure antivirus protection using the CLI, you must first create your custom objects.

1. Configure the filename-extension custom object by first creating a name for the list. (Note that the Kaspersky scan engine ships with a read-only default extension list that you can use. See “File Extension Scanning” on page 841.)

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects filename-extension extlist1
```

2. Next, add extensions to the list.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects filename-extension extlist1 value
[zip js vbs]
```

3. Configure MIME lists. This includes creating a MIME whitelist and a MIME exception list for antivirus scanning. First create names for MIME lists and then add values to the lists. See “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information on MIME white lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern avmime1
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-avmime1
```

4. Next, add MIME patterns to the lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern avmime1 value
[video/quicktime image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-avmime1 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
```

Configure URL white lists for a list of URLs or addresses in a specified that you want to be bypassed by antivirus scanning. First create names for the URL list and then add values to the list. See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information on URL white lists.

1. Configure a URL pattern list custom object by creating the list name and adding values to it as follows:



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure custom URL category lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist1 value
[http://www.url.com 5.6.7.8]
```



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://*`.

2. Configure a custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list you created as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl1 value
urllist1
```

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the antivirus feature profile as follows:

1. Select and configure the engine type. Because you are configuring “full antivirus,” you select the Kaspersky-Lab-Engine and then designate the pattern update interval. The default full file-based antivirus pattern-update interval is 60 minutes. You can choose to leave this default as is or you can change it. You can also force a manual update, if necessary. See “Updating Antivirus Patterns” on page 845 for more information.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
pattern-update interval 20
```



**NOTE:** The command for changing the URL for the pattern database is:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
pattern-update url http://..
```

The default URL is <http://update.juniper-update.net/AV/SRX210>. You should not change this URL unless you are experiencing problems with it and have called for support.

2. You can configure the device to notify a specified administrator when patterns are updated. This is an e-mail notification with a custom message and a custom subject line.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine
pattern-update email-notify admin-email administrator@juniper.net
custom-message "pattern file was updated" custom-message-subject "AV
pattern file updated"
```

3. Configure a profile for the Kaspersky Lab engine. This profile includes configuring fallback, notification, and scanning options. It also includes HTTP trickling configuration options. First you create the profile name.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile
kasprof1
```

4. Configure a list of fallback options as “block” or “log and permit.” In most cases, the default is to block. You can use the default settings or you can change them. See “Fallback Options” on page 887 for a detailed overview of this feature and each fallback category.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
fallback-options content-size block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
fallback-options corrupt-file block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
fallback-options decompress-layer block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
fallback-options default block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
fallback-options engine-not-ready block
```

```

user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
fallback-options out-of-resources block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
fallback-options password-file block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
fallback-options timeout block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
fallback-options too-many-requests block

```

5. Configure the notification options. You can configure notifications for both fallback blocking and fallback nonblocking actions and for virus detection. See “Understanding Virus-Detected Notification Options” on page 885 for overview information on notification options.

You configure a custom message for the fallback blocking action and send a notification. See “Custom Message Notification” on page 886 for overview information.

```

user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
notification-options fallback-block custom-message ***virus-found***
notify-mail-sender

```

6. You can also configure a custom subject line for the custom message notification for both the sender and the recipient.

```

user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
notification-options fallback-block custom-message-subject “Antivirus Alert”
notify-mail-sender

```

7. Configure a notification for protocol-only virus detection and send a notification. See “Protocol-Only Notifications” on page 885 for overview information.

```

user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
notification-options virus-detection type protocol-only notify-mail-sender

```

8. Configure scan options. See “Understanding the Internal Scan Engine and Scan Options” on page 840 for overview information.

You configure content size parameters. The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The content size refers to accumulated TCP payload size. See “Content Size Limits” on page 842 for details.

```

user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
scan-options content-size-limit 20000

```

9. Configure the decompression layer limit. See “Decompression Layer Limit” on page 843 for details.

```

user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
scan-options decompress-layer-limit 3

```

10. Configure intelligent prescreening. It is either on or off. See “Intelligent Prescreening” on page 842 for details. (Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP) and HTTP POST.)

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
scan-options intelligent-prescreening
```

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
scan-options no-intelligent-prescreening
```

11. Configure scan extension settings. You can select the default list (junos-default-extension) or you can select an extension list you created as a custom object. See “File Extension Scanning” on page 841 for overview details.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
scan-options scan-extension extlist1
```

12. Configure the scan mode setting. You can choose to scan all files or only files with extensions you specify. If you select to scan by-extension, the device uses the extension file lists you create.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
scan-options scan-mode by-extension
```

13. Configure the timeout settings. See “Scanning Timeout” on page 843 for overview details.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
scan-options scan-mode timeout 1800
```

14. Configure trickling settings. If you use trickling, you can also set timeout parameters. Trickling applies only to HTTP. HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing-out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning. See “HTTP Trickling” on page 849 for overview details.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine kasprof1
trickling timeout 600
```

15. Configure the antivirus scanner to use MIME bypass lists and exception lists. You can use your own custom object lists, or you can use the default list that ships with the device called junos-default-bypass-mime. See “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information.)

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist list avmime1
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist list avmime1
exception ex-avmime1
```

16. Configure the antivirus module to use URL bypass lists. If you are using a URL white list, this is a custom URL category you have previously configured as custom object. URL white lists are valid only for HTTP traffic. See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information.)

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus url-whitelist custurl1
```

1. Configure a UTM policy for an antivirus scanning protocol and attach this policy to a profile. See “Global, Profile-Based, and Policy-Based Scan Settings” on page 844 for information on policy and profile-based scanning.

CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for HTTP antivirus scanning, and attaching that policy to a profile we created earlier for antivirus scanning, are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp2 anti-virus http-profile kasprofile1
```

2. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 match
application junos-http
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p2 then
permit application-services utm-policy utmp2
```

## Understanding Virus-Detected Notification Options

---

You have multiple notifications options for when a virus is detected.

This topic contains:

- Protocol-Only Notifications on page 885
- E-mail Notification on page 886
- Custom Message Notification on page 886
- Fallback Options on page 887

### Protocol-Only Notifications

When content is blocked because a virus is found or a scan error occurs, the client generally still receives a successful response code but with modified content (file replacement) containing a warning message. But with protocol-only notifications, a protocol-specific error code may be returned to the client. This way, the client determines that a virus was detected rather than interpreting that a file transfer succeeded.

```
edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <name> {
  notification-options {
    virus-detection {
      type { protocol-only | message }
    }
    fallback-block {
      type { protocol-only | message }
    }
  }
}
```

## E-mail Notification

For mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP), e-mail notification is used to notify the sender or the recipient about the detected viruses or the scanning errors. There are three settings for e-mail notifications:

- virus-detection/notify-mail-sender — This setting is used when a virus is detected. If it is enabled, an e-mail is sent to the sender upon virus detection.
- fallback-block/notify-mail-sender — This setting is used when other scan codes or scanning errors are returned and the message is dropped. If it is enabled, an e-mail is sent to the sender when an error code is returned.
- fallback-non-block/notify-mail-recipient — This setting is used when other scan codes or scanning errors are returned and the message is passed. If it is enabled, the e-mail sent to the recipient is tagged when an error code is returned.

```
edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <name> {
  notification-options {
    virus-detection {
      notify-mail-sender
    }
    fallback-block {
      notify-mail-sender
    }
    fallback-non-block {
      notify-mail-recipient
    }
  }
}
```

## Custom Message Notification

Custom message notifications are mainly used in file replacement or in a response message when the antivirus scan result is to drop the file. When using custom messages, you can provide a customized message in the message content you can define customized subject tags



**NOTE:** Custom-message in fallback-nonblock is used only by mail protocols.

---

```
edit security utm feature-profile anti-virus kaspersky-lab-engine profile <name> {
  notification-options {
    virus-detection {
      custom-message <msg>
      custom-message-subject <subject msg>
    }
    fallback-block {
      custom-message <msg>
      custom-message-subject <subject msg>
    }
  }
}
```



```

fallback-non-block {
    custom-message <msg>
    custom-message-subject <subject msg>
}
}
}
}
}

```

## Fallback Options

Fallback options tell the system how to handle the errors returned by either the scan engine or the scan manager. The following is a list of possible errors and the default fallback actions for those error types.

- Scan engine is not ready (engine-not-ready)

The scan engine is initializing itself, for example, loading the signature database. During this phase, it is not ready to scan a file. A file could either pass or be blocked according to this setting. The default action is BLOCK.

- Corrupt file (corrupt-file)

Corrupt file is the error returned by the scan engine when engine detects a corrupted file. The default action is PASS.

- Decompression layer (decompress-layer)

Decompress layer error is the error returned by the scan engine when the scanned file has too many compression layers. The default action is BLOCK.

- Password protected file (password-file)

Password protected file is the error returned by the scan engine when the scanned file is protected by a password. The default action is PASS.

- Max content size (content-size)

If the content size exceeds a set limit, the content is passed or blocked depending on the max-content-size fallback option. The default action is BLOCK.

- Too many requests (too-many-requests)

If the total number of messages received concurrently exceeds the device limits, the content is passed or blocked depending on the too-many-request fallback option. The default action is BLOCK. (The allowed request limit is not configurable.)

- Timeout

Scanning a complex file could consume resources and time. If the time it is taking to scan exceeds the timeout setting in the antivirus profile, the processing is aborted and the content is passed or blocked without completing the virus checking. The decision is made based on the timeout fallback option. The default action is BLOCK.

- Out of resources (out-of-resources)

Virus scanning requires a great deal of memory and CPU resources. Due to resource constraints, memory allocation requests can be denied by the system. This failure could be returned by either scan engine (as a scan-code) or scan manager. When out-of-resources occurs, scanning is aborted. The default action is BLOCK.

- Default

All the errors other than those in the above list fall into this category. This could include either unhandled system exceptions (internal errors) or other unknown errors. The default action is BLOCK.

## Understanding Scan Result Handling

---

Different antivirus scan results are handled in different manners. For example, if a scan result is clean, the traffic is forwarded to the receiver. If the scan result is infected, the traffic is dropped. If the scan results in an error, the result handling depends on the cause of the failure and the configuration (fallback settings).

The following is a list of actions based on scan results:

- Scan Result = Pass

The scan result handling action is to pass the message. In this case, no virus is detected and no error code is returned. Or, an error code is returned, but the fallback option for this error code is set to log-and-permit.

- Scan Result = Block

The scan result handling action is to block the message. In this case, either a virus is detected or an error code is returned and the fallback option for this error code is BLOCK.

## Verifying Antivirus Configurations

---

The antivirus module provides functions which allow you to use the CLI to check the system settings and the status of scan engine. It also provides functions to check the ongoing antivirus sessions and antivirus statistics.

This topic contains:

- General Scan Engine Status on page 888
- Session Status on page 889
- Verifying Antivirus Scan Results using J-Web on page 890
- Verifying Antivirus Scan Results using the CLI on page 891

### General Scan Engine Status

Using the CLI, you can view the following scan engine status items:

Antivirus license key status

- View license expiration dates.

Scan engine status and settings

- View last action result.
- View default file extension list.

Antivirus pattern update server settings

- View update URL (HTTP or HTTPS-based).
- View update interval.

Antivirus pattern database status

- View auto update status.
- View last result of database loading.
- If the download completes, view database version timestamp virus record number.
- If the download fails, view failure reason.

Example status result:

CLI: `show security utm anti-virus status`

```
AV Key Expire Date: 03/01/2010 00:00:00
Update Server: http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/SRX210
interval: 60 minutes
auto update status: next update in 12 minutes
last result: new database loaded
AV signature version: 12/21/2008 00:35 GMT, virus records: 154018
Scan Engine Info: last action result: No error(0x00000000)
```

## Session Status

Using the CLI, you can view the following session status items:

Antivirus session status displays a snapshot of current antivirus sessions. It includes

- Maximum supported antivirus session numbers.
- Total allocated antivirus session numbers.
- Total freed antivirus session numbers.
- Current active antivirus session numbers.

CLI: `show security utm session`

## Verifying Antivirus Scan Results using J-Web

View antivirus scan results using J-web as follows:

1. Select the **Monitor** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Anti-Virus** in the left pane.
4. The following information becomes viewable in the right pane.

Antivirus license key status

- View license expiration dates.

Antivirus pattern update server settings

- View update URL (HTTP or HTTPS-based).
- View update interval.

Antivirus pattern database status

- View auto update status.
- View last result of database loading.
- If the download completes, view database version timestamp virus record number.
- If the download fails, view failure reason.

Antivirus statistics provide

- The number of scan request being pre-screened.
- The total number of scan request forwarded to the engine.
- The number of scan requests using scan-all mode.
- The number of scan requests using scan-by-extension mode.

Scan code counters provide

- Number of clean files.
- Number of infected files.
- Number of password protected files.
- Number of decompress layers.
- Number of corrupt files.

- When the engine is out of resources.
- When there is an internal error.

Fallback applied status provides either a log-and-permit or block result when the following has occurred

- Scan engine not ready.
  - Password protected file found.
  - Decompress layer too large.
  - Corrupt file found.
  - Out of resources.
  - Timeout occurred.
  - Maximum content size reached.
  - Too many requests.
  - Other.
5. You can click the **Clear Anti-Virus Statistics** button to clear all current viewable statistics and begin collecting new statistics.

### ***Verifying Antivirus Scan Results using the CLI***

Using the CLI, you can view statistics for antivirus requests, scan results, and fallback counters.

Scan requests provide

- The total number of scan request forwarded to the engine.
- The number of scan request being pre-screened.
- The number of scan requests using scan-all mode.
- The number of scan requests using scan-by-extension mode.

Scan code counters provide

- Number of clean files.
- Number of infected files.
- Number of password protected files.
- Number of decompress layers.
- Number of corrupt files.
- When the engine is out of resources.
- When there is an internal error.

Fallback applied status provides either a log-and-permit or block result when the following has occurred

- Scan engine not ready.
- Maximum content size reached.
- Too many requests.
- Password protected file found.
- Decompress layer too large.
- Corrupt file found.
- Timeout occurred.
- Out of resources.
- Other.

CLI: `show security utm anti-virus statistics`

## Chapter 30

# Express Antivirus Protection

Express antivirus scanning is offered as a less CPU intensive alternative to the full file-based antivirus feature.

The express Antivirus scanning feature is a separately licensed subscription service. When your antivirus license key expires, you can continue to use locally stored antivirus signatures. But in that case, if the local database is deleted, antivirus scanning is disabled.



**NOTE:** For information on the full antivirus feature, refer to that section in the manual. Note that if you switch from express antivirus protection to full file-based antivirus protection, you must reboot the device in order for full file-based antivirus to begin working.

---

Express antivirus supports the same protocols as full antivirus and functions in much the same manner. The main differences between express antivirus and full antivirus are as follows:

- Express antivirus uses a different antivirus scan engine and a different back-end hardware engine to accelerate pattern matching for higher data throughput.
- Express antivirus uses a different signature database, called Juniper Express antivirus database, compatible with the hardware engine, to target to only critical viruses and malware, including worms, Trojans, and spyware. This is a smaller sized database, providing less coverage than the full antivirus signature database.
- Express antivirus has a smaller memory footprint, compatible with the smaller system memory present on lower end devices.
- Express antivirus supports packet-based antivirus scanning. See “Packet-Based Scanning Versus File-Based Scanning” on page 894
- Express antivirus is not supported for J-series.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Packet-Based Scanning Versus File-Based Scanning on page 894
- Express Antivirus Limitations on page 894
- Expanded MIME Decoding Support on page 894
- Result Handling on page 895
- Updating Antivirus Patterns on page 895

- Intelligent Prescreening Support on page 896
- Configuring Express Antivirus on page 896

## Packet-Based Scanning Versus File-Based Scanning

---

The packet based scanning done by express antivirus provides virus scanning data buffers without waiting for entire file to be received by the firewall, whereas the file-based scanning done by full antivirus can only start virus scanning when entire file is received.

## Express Antivirus Limitations

---

Express antivirus has the following limitations when compared to full antivirus functionality:

- Express antivirus provides limited support for the scanning of file archives and compressed file formats. Express antivirus can only support gzip, deflate and compressed compressing formats.
- Express antivirus provides limited support for decompression. Decompression is only supported with HTTP (supports only gzip, deflate, and compress for HTTP and only supports one layer of compression) and POP3 (supports only gzip for POP3 and only supports one layer of compression).
- Express antivirus does not support scanning by extension.
- Express antivirus scanning is interrupted when the scanning database is loading.
- Express antivirus may truncate a warning message if a virus has been detected and the replacement warning message that is sent is longer than the original content it is replacing.



**NOTE:** Because express antivirus does only packet based string matching, if you use the standard EICAR file to test express antivirus, you will see false positives. To avoid these false positives, Juniper has disabled scanning on the standard EICAR file to create a modified EICAR file for testing express antivirus. You can download this modified EICAR file from the following links:

<http://www.juniper.net/security/avtest/ss-eicar.txt>

<http://www.juniper.net/security/avtest/ss-eicar.com>

<http://www.juniper.net/security/avtest/ss-eicar.zip>

## Expanded MIME Decoding Support

---

Express antivirus offers MIME decoding support for HTTP, POP3, SMTP, and IMAP.

MIME decoding support includes the following for each supported protocol:



- Multi-part and nested header decoding
- Base64 decoding, printed quote decoding, and encoded word decoding (in the subject field)

## Result Handling

---

With express antivirus, the TCP traffic is closed gracefully when a virus is found and the data content is dropped.



**NOTE:** Express antivirus supports the following fail mode options: default, engine-not-ready, out-of-resource, and too-many-requests. Fail mode handling of supported options with express antivirus is much the same as with full antivirus.

---

## Updating Antivirus Patterns

---

The express antivirus pattern database is updated over HTTP or HTTPS and can occur automatically or manually. This is similar functionality to that found in full antivirus with some minor differences.

The following list explains the differences found in express antivirus for database pattern updating functionality:

- With express antivirus, the signature database auto-update interval, is once a day.
- With express antivirus, there is no support for the downloading of multiple database types.
- With express antivirus, during database loading, all scan operations are interrupted. Scan operations for existing traffic flows are stopped and no new scan operations are initiated for newly established traffic flows. You can specify the desired action for this interruption period using the **fall-back** parameter for **engine-busy-loading-database**. The available actions are **block** or **log-and-permit**.
- By default, the URL for express antivirus is <http://update.juniper-updates.net/EAV/SRX210>. “SRX210” in the URL is the platform name. This part of the URL is different and platform specific for each platform. (Other than the platform name, you should not change this URL unless you are experiencing problems with it and have called for support.)



**NOTE:** Once your subscription expires, you have a 30 day grace period during which you can continue to update the antivirus pattern file. Once that grace period expires, the update server no longer permits antivirus pattern file updates.

---

### Example: Automatic Update

In this example, you configure the security device to update the pattern file automatically every 120 minutes. (The default antivirus pattern-update interval is once a day.)

- J-Web

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Anti-Virus** in the left pane.
4. Next to Interval, in the Juniper Express Engine section, enter **120** in the box.
5. Click the **OK** button.

- CLI

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
pattern-update interval 120
```

### Example: Manual Update

In this example, you use the **request** command to update the pattern file manually.

- J-Web

At this time, you cannot perform manual database updates using J-Web.

- CLI

```
user@host> request security utm anti-virus juniper-express-engine pattern-update
```

You can also manually delete the pattern database (**pattern-delete**) and reload the pattern database (**pattern-reload**) using the request command.

## Intelligent Prescreening Support

---

This functionality is identical in both express antivirus and full antivirus. Refer to “Intelligent Prescreening” on page 842 for information.

## Configuring Express Antivirus

---

You can use J-Web or the CLI to configure the express antivirus feature. When configuring express antivirus protection, you must first create the antivirus custom objects you are using. Those custom objects may include the MIME pattern list, MIME exception list, and the filename extension list. Once you have created your custom

objects, you can configure express antivirus protection, including fallback options, intelligent prescreening, and content size limits.

This topic contains:

- Configuration Overview on page 897
- J-Web Quick Configuration on page 898
- J-Web View and Edit Configuration on page 910
- CLI Configuration on page 916

## Configuration Overview

For each UTM feature, you should configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. First configure UTM custom objects (if any), for the feature in question. Custom objects are global parameters for UTM features. This means that configured custom objects apply to all UTM policies where applicable, rather than only to individual policies.

The CLI commands for setting antivirus custom objects are:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category
```

2. Configure main feature parameters, called feature profiles.

The CLI command for setting antivirus feature profiles is:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile.

CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for HTTP (for example) and attaching that policy to a profile are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp3 anti-virus http-profile http1
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

The CLI command for attaching a UTM policy to a security policy is:

```
user@host# set security policies
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 then
  permit application-services utm-policy utmp3
```

## ***J-Web Quick Configuration***

To configure express antivirus protection using the J-Web configuration editor, you must first create your custom objects. (MIME pattern list, URL pattern list, and custom URL category list)

Configure a MIME pattern list custom object as follows: (See “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information on MIME white lists.)

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under MIME Pattern List, click the **Add** button to create MIME pattern lists. See Figure 203 on page 899.

**Figure 203: Custom Object, MIME Pattern List, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

UTM

Custom Objects

[-] Mime Pattern List

	Mime List Name	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">a1</a>	text/html
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">m1</a>	text/html
	<a href="#">junos-default-bypass-mime</a>	text/html text/css audio/ video/ image/ ...

Add...

Delete

[+] Filename Extension List

[+] Protocol command List

[+] URL Pattern List

[+] Custom URL Category List

Apply

- Next to MIME Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. Keep in mind that you are creating a MIME white list and a MIME exception list (if necessary). Both MIME lists appear in the MIME Whitelist and Exception MIME Whitelist fields when you configure the antivirus feature. Therefore, the MIME list names you create should be as descriptive as possible.
- Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, enter the MIME pattern.
- Click the **Add** button to add your MIME pattern to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add MIME patterns in this manner.
- Optionally, create a new MIME list to act as an exception list. The exception list is generally a subset of the main MIME list.

- Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the MIME list you have created. See Figure 204 on page 900. This takes you back to the main configuration page.

**Figure 204: Custom Object, MIME Pattern Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM** Edit a Mime Pattern List: 'junos-default-bypass-mime'

---

\* **Mime Name**  ?

---

\* **Values** ?

text/html  
 text/css  
 audio/  
 video/  
 image/  
 application/pdf  
 application/x-director

---

- Under MIME Pattern List, select the check box beside the pattern list you created.
- Click **Apply**.

Configure a URL Pattern List Custom Object as follows:



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure a custom URL category list.

- Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
- Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
- Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
- In the right pane, under URL Pattern List, click the **Add** button to create a URL white list. See Figure 205 on page 901.

**Figure 205: Custom Object, URL Pattern List, Quick Configuration****Quick Configuration****UTM****Custom Objects**

+ Mime Pattern List

+ Filename Extension List

+ Protocol command List

+ URL Pattern List

	URL Pattern	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">single url yahoo</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">block-list</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com http://*.cnn.com ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">white-list</a>	www.google.com www.espn.com www.ask.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">urltest</a>	http://*.url.net

Add...

Delete

+ Custom URL Category List

Apply

- Next to Category Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. This name appears in the Custom URL Category List Custom Object page for selection.
- Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, enter the URL or IP address you want added to list for bypassing scanning.



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[\[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*juniper.net`, `http://*`.

7. Click the **Add** button to add your entry to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the URL pattern list you have created. See Figure 206 on page 902.

**Figure 206: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, Quick Configuration**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**UTM** **Add a URL Pattern List**

---

\* URL Pattern Name  ?

---

\* Values

http://\*.url.net

Add

?

↑

↓

X

---

OK

Cancel

---

9. Under URL Category List, select the check box beside the URL pattern list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Configure a custom URL category list custom object using the URL pattern list you created as follows: (See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information on URL white lists.)



1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under Custom URL Category List, click the **Add** button to create a URL white list. See Figure 207 on page 903.

**Figure 207: Custom Object, Custom URL Category List, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

Custom Objects

---

☐ Mime Pattern List

---

☐ Filename Extension List

---

☐ Protocol command List

---

☐ URL Pattern List

---

☐ Custom URL Category List

	Category Name	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p1</a>	p1
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">CN1</a>	p1

---

5. Next to Category Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. This name appears in the URL Whitelist list when you configure the antivirus feature.
6. Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, select a URL Pattern List name from the list for bypassing scanning.
7. Click the **Add** button to add your entry to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the custom URL list you have created. See Figure 208 on page 904.

**Figure 208: Custom Object, Custom URL Category Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

UTM Edit a Custom URL Category List: 'CN1'

---

\* Category Name  ?

---

\* Values

p1

p1

▼

Add

?

↑

↓

×

---

OK

Cancel

9. Under Custom URL Category List, select the check box beside the URL pattern list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the antivirus feature profile.

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Anti-Virus** in the left pane.
4. Next to MIME Whitelist, select the custom object you created from the list.
5. Next to Exception MIME Whitelist, select the custom object you created from the list.
6. Next to URL Whitelist, select the custom object you created from the list.
7. Next to Type, select the type of engine you are using from the list. For express antivirus protection, you should select **Juniper Express Engine** here.
8. Next to Pattern Update URL, enter the URL for the pattern database in the box. Note that the URL is `http://update.juniper-updates.net/EAV/SRX210` and you should not change it. See “Updating Antivirus Patterns” on page 895 for more information.
9. Next to Interval, enter the time interval for automatically updating the pattern database in the box. The default for express antivirus checking is once per day. See “Updating Antivirus Patterns” on page 895 for more information.

10. Select the No Auto Update check box if you do not want the pattern file updated automatically.
11. Next to Admin emails to be notified about pattern file update, enter the e-mail addresses of the administrators who should receive e-mail notifications when updates are made to the pattern file.
12. Next to Custom message subject for notification, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
13. Next to Custom message for notification, enter the text to appear in the body of the notification e-mail.
14. Click the **Add** button below the Profile Name table to create a profile for the Juniper Express Engine.
15. Next to Profile Name, enter a unique name in the box.
16. Next to Tricking Timeout, enter timeout parameters. Note that trickling only applies to HTTP. HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing-out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning. See “HTTP Tricking” on page 849 for overview details.
17. Next to Intelligent Prescreening, select the check box to enable intelligent prescreening if you are using it. See “Intelligent Prescreening” on page 842 for details. (Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP) and HTTP POST.)
18. Next to Content Size Limit, enter content size parameters. The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The content size refers to accumulated TCP payload size. See “Content Size Limits” on page 842 for details.
19. Next to Timeout, enter scanning timeout parameters. See “Scanning Timeout” on page 843 for overview details.
20. Next to Decompress Layer Limit, enter decompression layer limit parameters. See “Decompression Layer Limit” on page 843 for details.
21. Next to Default (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list. (Note that in most cases, Block is the default fallback option.) See “Fallback Options” on page 887 for a detailed overview of this feature and each fallback category.
22. Next to Decompress Layer (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
23. Next to Content Size (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
24. Next to Engine Not Ready (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
25. Next to Timeout (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
26. Next to Out of Resource (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.
27. Next to Too Many Request (fallback option), select **Log and Permit** or **Block** from the list.

28. Under Virus Detection, next to Type, select **Protocol Only** or **Message** from the list. Here you are selecting whether to send a specific protocol-only message or not. See “Protocol-Only Notifications” on page 885 for overview information.
29. Under Virus Detection, select the Notify Mail Sender check box to enable this notification.
30. Under Virus Detection, next to Custom message subject, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
31. Under Virus Detection, next to Custom Message, enter text for your custom message for this notification in the box (if you are using a custom message).
32. Under Fallback Block, next to Type, select **Protocol Only** or **Message** from the list to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered.
33. Under Fallback Block, select the Notify Mail Sender check box to enable this notification.
34. Under Fallback Block, next to Custom message subject, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
35. Under Fallback Block, next to Custom Message, enter text for your custom message for this notification in the box (if you are using a custom message).
36. Under Fallback Non Block, select the Notify Mail Sender check box to enable this notification when a fallback option without a blocking action is triggered.
37. Under Fallback Non Block, next to Custom message subject, enter text to appear in the subject line of your custom message for this notification (if you are using a custom message).
38. Under Fallback Non Block, next to Custom Message, enter text for your custom message for this notification in the box (if you are using a custom message).
39. Click **OK** to return to the main antivirus configuration page. See Figure 209 on page 907.

**Figure 209: Antivirus Express Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM** Edit Profile of Anti-virus Juniper Express Engine: 'av\_kasp\_exp\_prof1'

---

\* **Profile Name**  ?

**Trickling Timeout**  ?

---

**Scan Options**

---

**Intelligent Prescreening** ☒

**Content Size Limit**  ?

**Timeout**  ?

**Decompress Layer Limit**  ?

---

**Fallback Options**

---

**Default**  ?

**Decompress Layer**  ?

**Content Size**  ?

**Engine Not Ready**  ?

**Timeout**  ?

**Out Of Resource**  ?

**Too Many Request**  ?

---

☐ **Virus Detection**

---

**Type**  ?

**Notify Mail Sender** ☒

**Custom Message**  ?

---

☐ **Fallback Block**

---

☐ **Fallback Non Block**

---

40. Select the check box in the Profile Name table for the profile you are using.



**NOTE:** You create a separate antivirus profile for each antivirus protocol. These profiles may basically contain the same configuration information, but when you are creating your UTM policy for antivirus, the UTM policy configuration page provides separate antivirus profile selection fields for each supported protocol.

41. Click **Apply**. See Figure 210 on page 908.

**Figure 210: Antivirus Express Profile Selection, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

Anti-virus

Mime Whitelist  ?

Exception Mime Whitelist  ?

URL Whitelist  ?

Type  ?

---

Juniper Express Engine

Pattern Update URL  ?

Interval  ?

	Profile Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">av_kasp_exp_prof1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p1</a>

---

Next, you configure a UTM policy for express antivirus to which you attach the antivirus profile you have configured.

1. Select **Security Policies > UTM Policies**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating
4. Under Anti-Virus, select a profile you have configured from the list for each protocol.
5. In the Session Per Client Over Limit list, select one of the following: **Log and Permit, Block**. This is the action the device takes when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded.
6. In the Session Per Client Limit box, enter a session per client limit from 0 to 20000 for this UTM policy.
7. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the UTM Policies page.

8. Select the check box in the UTM Policy table for the policy you are using.
9. Click **Apply**.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Security Policies > FW / VPN Policies**.
2. Next to Default Policy Action, select one of the following: **Deny-All**, **Permit-All**.
3. Next to From Zone, select a zone from the list.
4. Next to To Zone, select a zone from the list.
5. Under Zone Direction, click **Add a Policy**.
6. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the security policy you are creating.
7. Under Match Criterias, choose a Source Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Source Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
8. Under Match Criterias, choose a Destination Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Destination Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
9. Under Match Criterias, choose an Application or Applications. Do this by selecting **junos- < protocol >** (for all protocols that support antivirus scanning) in the Application Sets box and clicking the < — button to move them to the Matched box.
10. Next to Policy Action, select one of the following: **Permit**, **Deny**, **Reject**.



**NOTE:** When you select Permit for Policy Action, several additional fields become available, including UTM Policy.

---

11. Next to UTM Policy, select the appropriate policy from the list. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
- 



**NOTE:** There are several fields on this page that are not described in this section. See the Security Policies section for detailed information on configuring security policies and all the available fields.

---

12. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the main Security Policies configuration page.
13. Under Policies, select the check box beside the security policy you created.
14. Click **Apply**.

## J-Web View and Edit Configuration

To configure antivirus protection using the J-Web view and edit configuration editor, you must first create your custom objects. (MIME Pattern List, URL Pattern List, and Custom URL Category List)

Configure a MIME Pattern List Custom Object as follows (see “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information on MIME white lists):

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Mime pattern, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the MIME list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the MIME pattern.
9. Click **OK**. See Figure 211 on page 910.

**Figure 211: Custom Object, MIME Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Mime pattern

Value

Value video/ ?

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Configure a URL Pattern List Custom Object as follows:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Url pattern, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the URLs or IP addresses you want added to list for bypassing scanning.





**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[\[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*juniper.net`, `http://*`.

9. Click **OK**. See Figure 212 on page 911.

**Figure 212: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Url pattern

---

**Value**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

**Value**  ?

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Configure a Custom URL Category List Custom Object as follows: (See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information.)

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Custom url category, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the name of the Url pattern list you created for bypassing scanning.
9. Click **OK**. See Figure 213 on page 912.

**Figure 213: Custom Object, Custom URL Category Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Custom url category

---

**Value**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

**Value** url-pattern-list1 ? M

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the antivirus feature profile.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Feature profile, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Anti virus, click **Configure**.
6. Next to Juniper express engine, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Pattern update, select the **Yes** check box and click **Edit** to set the interval.
8. Next to Admin email, enter the e-mail addresses of the administrators who should receive e-mail notifications when updates are made to the pattern file.
9. Next to Custom message, enter the text to appear in the body of the notification e-mail.
10. Next to Custom message subject, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
11. Next to Interval, enter the time interval for automatically updating the pattern database in the box. The default interval is 60. See “Updating Antivirus Patterns” on page 845 for more information.
12. Next to No autoupdate, select the No checkbox if you want to disable automatic updates and update the pattern database manually.
13. Next to URL, if it is not already entered, enter the URL for the pattern database in the box. Note that the URL is `http://update.juniper-updates.net/AV/SRX210` and you should not change it.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry** to create a profile for the Juniper Express Engine.
16. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the profile you are creating.
17. Next to Fallback options, select the **Yes** check box and click **Edit** to configure.

- Next to Content Size, select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
- Next to Default (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
- Next to Engine Not Ready (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
- Next to Out Of Resources (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
- Next to Timeout (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.
- Next to Too Many Request (fallback option), select Log and Permit or Block from the list.

18. Click **OK**.

19. Next to Notification options, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.

- Next to Fallback block, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  - Next to Custom message, enter the text to appear in the body of the notification e-mail.
  - Next to Custom message subject, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
  - Next to Notify mail sender, select the **Yes** check box to enable this notification.
  - Next to Type, select **protocol-only** or **message** from the list to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered
  - Click **OK**.
- Next to Fallback non block, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  - Next to Custom message, enter the text to appear in the body of the notification e-mail.
  - Next to Custom message subject, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
  - Next to Notify mail sender, select the **Yes** check box to enable this notification.
  - Click **OK**.
- Next to Virus detection, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.

- Next to Custom message, enter the text to appear in the body of the notification e-mail.
  - Next to Custom message subject, enter the text to appear in the subject line of the notification e-mail. (The limit is 255 characters.)
  - Next to Notify mail sender, select the **Yes** check box to enable this notification.
  - Next to Type, select **protocol-only** or **message** from the list to select the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered
  - Click **OK**.
20. Next to Scan options, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
    - Next to Content size limit, enter content size parameters. The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The content size refers to accumulated TCP payload size.
    - Next to Intelligent prescreening, select the **Yes** check box to enable intelligent prescreening if you are using it. See “Intelligent Prescreening” on page 842.
    - Next to Timeout, enter scanning timeout parameters. See “Scanning Timeout” on page 843.
  21. Next to Trickling, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
    - Next to Timeout, enter trickling timeout parameters. See “HTTP Trickling” on page 849.
  22. Click **OK**.
  23. Click **OK** again to save the Juniper express engine profile.
  24. Back on the main Anti virus page, next to Mime whitelist, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  25. Next to Name, enter the name of the Mime list custom object you created.
  26. Click **OK**.
  27. Next to Type, select juniper-express-engine from the list.
  28. Next to Url whitelist, enter the name of the URL whitelist custom object you created.
  29. Click **OK**. See Figure 214 on page 915 for the Juniper express engine profile main screen.

**Figure 214: Antivirus Express Profile, View and Edit Configuration**

Anti virus

---

**Juniper express engine**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Pattern update ☒ Yes [Edit](#) [Delete](#)

---

Profile <a href="#">Add new entry</a>	
<b>Name</b>	<b>Nested Configuration</b>
<a href="#">avp1</a>	<a href="#">Fallback options</a> <a href="#">Notification options</a> <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
<a href="#">test</a>	<a href="#">Fallback options</a> <a href="#">Notification options</a> <a href="#">Scan options</a> <a href="#">Trickling</a> <a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">M</a>

---

**Advanced**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Next, you configure a UTM policy for express antivirus to which you attach the Juniper express engine profile you have configured.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to UTM policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
6. Next to Anti virus, click **Configure**.
7. In the Http, Imap, Pop3, or Smtplib profile boxes, enter the name of the profile you created earlier. For Ftp, click **Configure** or **Edit** to enter Upload and Download profiles.



**NOTE:** You create a separate antivirus profile for each antivirus protocol. These profiles may basically contain the same configuration information, but when you are creating your UTM policy for an antivirus profile, the UTM antivirus policy configuration page provides separate antivirus profile selection fields for each supported protocol.

8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK** again to return to main UTM configuration page. Your UTM antivirus policy is now listed in the UTM policy table.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Security, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, select the **Yes** check box click **Edit**.
5. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.



**NOTE:** Refer to the section on security policy configuration for further details on configuring a policy. Note that when you configure the Then field as part of the policy, select Permit as the action, and then configure Application services, you are able to enter the Utm policy name as part of this security policy.

6. Next to Utm policy (in the Application services security policy screen), enter the name of the appropriate policy. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
7. Click **OK**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure antivirus protection using the CLI, you must first create your custom objects.

1. Configure MIME lists. This includes creating a MIME whitelist and a MIME exception list for antivirus scanning. First create names for MIME lists and then add values to the lists. See “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information on MIME white lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern avmime2
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-avmime2
```

2. Add MIME patterns to the lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern avmime2 value
[video/quicktime image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-avmime2 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
```

Configure URL white lists for a list of URLs or addresses in a specified list that you want to be bypassed by antivirus scanning. First create names for the URL list and then add values to the list. See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information on URL white lists.

1. Configure a URL pattern list custom object by creating the list name and adding values to it as follows:



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure custom URL category lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist2 value
[http://www.juniper.net 1.2.3.4]
```



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[\[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://*`.

2. Configure a custom URL category list custom object by using the URL pattern list you created as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl2 value
urllist2
```

1. Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the antivirus feature profile. First, select and configure the engine type. Because you are configuring express antivirus, you select the `juniper-express-engine`.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
```

2. Select a time interval for updating the pattern database. The default antivirus pattern-update interval is once a day. You can choose to leave this default as is or you can change it. You can also force a manual update, if necessary. See “Updating Antivirus Patterns” on page 895 for more information.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
pattern-update interval 12
```

3. The command for changing the URL for the pattern database is:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
pattern-update urlhttp://...
```



**NOTE:** Under most circumstances, you should not need to change the default URL.

4. You can configure the device to notify a specified administrator when patterns are updated. This is an e-mail notification with a custom message and a custom subject line.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
pattern-update email-notify admin-email administrator@juniper.net
custom-message "pattern file was updated" custom-message-subject "AV
pattern file updated"
```

5. Configure a profile for the Juniper-Express-Engine. This profile includes configuring fallback, notification, and scanning options. It also includes HTTP trickling configuration options. First, you create the profile name.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine profile
junexprof1
```

6. Configure a list of fallback options as “block” or “log and permit.” In most cases, the default is to block. You can use the default settings or you can change them. See “Fallback Options” on page 887 for a detailed overview of this feature and each fallback category.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 fallback-options content-size block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 fallback-options default block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 fallback-options engine-not-ready block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 fallback-options out-of-resources block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 fallback-options timeout block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 fallback-options too-many-requests block
```

7. Configure the notification options. You can configure notifications for both fallback blocking and fallback nonblocking actions and for virus detection. See “Understanding Virus-Detected Notification Options” on page 885 for overview information on notification options.

In this step, configure a custom message for the fallback blocking action and send a notification. See “Custom Message Notification” on page 886 for overview information.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 notification-options fallback-block custom-message
***virus-found*** notify-mail-sender
```

8. Configure a notification for protocol-only virus detection and send a notification. See “Protocol-Only Notifications” on page 885 for overview information.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 notification-options virus-detection type protocol-only
notify-mail-sender
```

9. You can also configure a custom subject line for the custom message notification for both the sender and the recipient.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 notification-options fallback-block custom-message-subject "Antivirus
Alert" notify-mail-sender
```



10. Configure content size parameters. The content size check occurs before the scan request is sent. The content size refers to accumulated TCP payload size. See “Content Size Limits” on page 842 for details.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 scan-options content-size-limit 20000
```

11. Configure intelligent prescreening. It is either on or off. See “Intelligent Prescreening” on page 842 for details. (Intelligent prescreening is only intended for use with non-encoded traffic. It is not applicable for mail protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP) and HTTP POST.)

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 scan-options intelligent-prescreening
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 scan-options no-intelligent-prescreening
```

12. Configure the time-out setting. See “Scanning Timeout” on page 843 for overview details.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 scan-options timeout 1800
```

13. Configure trickling settings. If you use trickling, you can also set timeout parameters. Trickling applies only to HTTP. HTTP trickling is a mechanism used to prevent the HTTP client or server from timing out during a file transfer or during antivirus scanning. See “HTTP Trickling” on page 849 for overview details.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus juniper-express-engine
junexprof1 trickling timeout 600
```

14. Configure the antivirus module to use MIME bypass lists and exception lists. You can use your own custom object lists or you can use the default list that ships with the device called “junos-default-bypass-mime.” See “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information.)

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist list avmime2
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus mime-whitelist list avmime2
exceptionex-avmime2
```

15. Configure the antivirus module to use URL bypass lists. If you are using a URL white list, this is a custom URL category you have previously configured as a custom object. URL white lists are only valid for HTTP traffic. See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information.)

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile anti-virus url-whitelist custurl2
```

1. Configure a UTM policy for an antivirus scanning protocol and attach this policy to a profile. See “Global, Profile-Based, and Policy-Based Scan Settings” on page 844 for information on policy and profile-based scanning.

CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for HTTP antivirus scanning and attaching that policy to a profile we created earlier for antivirus scanning are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
```

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp3 anti-virus http-profile junexprof1
```

2. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 match  
source-address any
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 match  
destination-address any
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 match  
application junos-http
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p3 then  
permit application-services utm-policy utmp3
```



**NOTE:** For information on Express Antivirus Notifications and Verification, refer to “Understanding Virus-Detected Notification Options” on page 885, and “Verifying Antivirus Configurations” on page 888.

---

## Chapter 31

# Content Filtering

Content filtering blocks or permits certain types of traffic based on the MIME type, file extension, and protocol command. The content filter controls file transfers across the gateway by checking traffic against configured filter lists.

The content filter module evaluates traffic before all other UTM modules, except Web Filtering. Therefore, if traffic meets criteria configured in the content-filter, the content-filter acts first upon this traffic.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Types of Content Filters on page 921
- Content Filtering Protocol Support on page 922
- Configuring Content Filtering on page 924
- Verifying Content Filtering Configurations on page 942

### Types of Content Filters

---

You can configure the following types of content filters:

- **MIME Pattern Filter** — MIME patterns are used to identify the type of traffic in HTTP and MAIL protocols. There are two lists of MIME patterns that are used by the content filter to determine the action to be taken. The block MIME list contains a list of MIME type traffic that is to be blocked by the content filter. The MIME exception list contains MIME patterns that are not to be blocked by the content filter and are generally subsets of items on the block list. Note that the exception list has a higher priority than the block list. If you have MIME entries that appear on both lists, those MIME types are not blocked by the content filter because the exception list takes priority. Therefore, when adding items to the exception list, it is to your advantage to be specific. See “MIME White List” on page 850 for detailed information on MIME lists.
- **Block Extension List** — Because the name of a file is available during file transfers, using file extensions is a highly practical way to block or allow file transfers. The content filter list contains a list of file extensions to be blocked. All protocols support the use of the block extension list. See “File Extension Scanning” on page 841 for information on file extension scanning.
- **Protocol Command Block and Permit Lists** — Different protocols use different commands to communicate between servers and clients. By blocking or allowing certain commands, traffic can be controlled on the protocol command level.

The block and permit command lists are intended to be used in combination, with the permit list acting as an exception list to the block list.



**NOTE:** If a protocol command appears on both the permit list and the block list, that command is permitted.

Because not all harmful files or components can be controlled by the MIME type or by the file extension, you can also use the content filter module to block ActiveX, Java Applets, and other types of content. The following types of content blocking are supported only for HTTP:

- Block ActiveX
- Block Java applets
- Block cookies
- Block EXE files
- Block ZIP files

## Content Filtering Protocol Support

Each supported protocol may implement available content filters differently. Not all filtering capabilities are supported for each protocol.

This topic contains:

- HTTP Support on page 922
- FTP Support on page 923
- E-mail Support on page 923
- Example: Content Filter CLI on page 923

### HTTP Support

The HTTP protocol supports all content filtering features. With HTTP, the content filter remains in the gateway, checking every request and response between the HTTP client and server.

If an HTTP request is dropped due to content filtering, the client receives a response such as:

```
<custom drop message/user-configured drop
message>.<src_port><dst_ip>:<dst_port>Download request was dropped due to
<reason>
```

Therefore, a message may appear as follows:

```
Juniper Networks Firewall Content Filtering blocked request. 5.5.5.1:80->4.4.4.1:55247
Download request was dropped due to file extension block list
```

## FTP Support

The FTP protocol does not support all content filtering features. It supports only the following: Block Extension List and Protocol Command Block List.

When content filtering blocks an FTP request, the following response is sent through the control channel:

```
550 <src_ip>:<src_port>-<dst_ip>:<dst_port><custom drop message/user-configured
drop message> for Content Filtering file extension block list.>
```

Therefore, a message may appear as follows:

```
550 5.5.5.1:21->4.4.4.1:45237 Requested action not taken and the request is
dropped for Content Filtering file extension block list
```

## E-mail Support

E-mail protocols (SMTP, IMAP, POP3) have limited content filtering support for the following features: Block Extension List, Protocol Command Block List, and MIME Pattern Filtering. Support is limited for e-mail protocols for the following reasons:

- The content filter scans only one level of an e-mail header. Therefore recursive e-mail headers and encrypted attachments are not scanned.
- If an entire e-mail is MIME encoded, the content filter can only scan for the MIME type.
- If any part of an e-mail is blocked due to content filtering, the original e-mail is dropped and replaced by a text file with an explanation for why the e-mail was blocked.

## Example: Content Filter CLI

```
content-filtering {
  profile <name> {
    permit-command <cmd-list>
    block-command <cmd-list>
    block-extension <file-ext-list>
    block-mime {
      list <mime-list>
      exception <ex-mime-list>
    }
  }
  block-content-type {
    activex
    java-applet
    exe
    zip
    http-cookie
  }
  notification-options {
    type { message }
    notify-mail-sender
  }
}
```

```

        custom-message <msg>
    }
}
traceoptions {
    flag {
        all
        basic
        detail
    }
}
}

```

## Configuring Content Filtering

---

You can use J-Web or the CLI to configure the content filtering feature. When configuring content filtering, you must first create the custom objects you are using. Those custom objects may include protocol command lists, file extension lists, MIME pattern lists, and MIME exception lists. Once you have created your custom objects, you can configure content filtering.

This topic contains:

- Configuration Overview on page 924
- J-Web Quick Configuration on page 925
- J-Web View and Edit Configuration on page 935
- CLI Configuration on page 940

### Configuration Overview

For each UTM feature, you should configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. First configure UTM custom objects (if any), for the feature in question. Custom objects are global parameters for UTM features. This means that configured custom objects apply to all UTM policies where applicable, rather than only to individual policies.

The CLI commands for setting content filtering custom objects are:

```

user@host# set security utm custom-objects protocol-command
user@host# set security utm custom-objects filename-extension
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern

```

2. Configure main feature parameters, called feature profiles.

The CLI command for setting content filtering feature profiles is:

```

user@host# set security utm feature-profile content-filtering

```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile.

CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for HTTP (for example) and attaching that policy to a profile are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp4 content-filtering ftp download-profile
ftp1
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

The CLI command for attaching a UTM policy to a security policy is:

```
user@host# set security policies
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 then
permit application-services utm-policy utmp4
```

### ***J-Web Quick Configuration***

To configure content filtering using the J-Web configuration editor, you must first create your custom objects (Protocol Command List, Filename Extension List, MIME Pattern List).

Configure a Protocol Command Custom Object as follows: (See “Types of Content Filters” on page 921 for information on protocol commands.)

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under Protocol command list, click the **Add** button to create command lists. See Figure 215 on page 926.

**Figure 215: Custom Object, Protocol Command List, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

Custom Objects

---

☐ Mime Pattern List

---

☐ Filename Extension List

---

☐ Protocol command List

	Protocol command	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p1</a>	x1
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">PC1</a>	www.pc1.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">http</a>	get , post , head

---

☐ URL Pattern List

---

☐ Custom URL Category List

---

5. Next to Protocol Command, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. (This name appears in the Permit command and Block command lists when you configure a content filter profile.)
6. Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, enter the command for the protocol in question.
7. Click the **Add** button to add your protocol command to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add protocol commands in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the list you have created. See Figure 216 on page 927.



**Figure 216: Custom Object, Protocol Command Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM** Edit a Protocol Command List: 'http'

---

\* Protocol Command  ?

---

\* Values

get  
post  
head

9. Under Protocol command list, select the check box beside the command list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Configure a Filename Extension List Custom Object as follows (see “File Extension Scanning” on page 841):

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under Filename Extension List, click the **Add** button to create a file extension list. See Figure 217 on page 928.

**Figure 217: Custom Object, Filename Extension List, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

Custom Objects

---

☐ Mime Pattern List

---

☐ Filename Extension List

	Filename Extension	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">f1</a>	txt
	<a href="#">junos-default-extension</a>	386 , ACE , ARJ , ASP , BAT ...

---

☐ Protocol command List

---

☐ URL Pattern List

---

☐ Custom URL Category List

---

5. Next to Extension Name (see Figure 218 on page 929) enter a unique name for the list you are creating. (This name appears in the Block extension list when you configure a content filter profile.)
6. In the Default Filename Extension box, select one or more default values (press Shift to select multiple concurrent items or press Ctrl to select multiple separate items) and click the < — left arrow button to move the value or values to the Value box.
7. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the extension list you have created. See Figure 218 on page 929.

**Figure 218: Custom Object, Filename Extension Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM** Edit a Filename Extension List: 'f1'

---

\* Extension Name  ?

Value		Default Filename Extension
txt	→	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">           386            ACE            ARJ            ASP            BAT         </div>
	←	

8. Under File Extension List, select the check box beside the extension list you created.
9. Click **Apply**.

Configure a MIME Pattern List Custom Object as follows: (See “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information on MIME white lists.)

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under MIME Pattern List, click the **Add** button to create MIME pattern lists. See Figure 219 on page 930.

**Figure 219: Custom Object, MIME Pattern List, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

UTM

Custom Objects

[-] Mime Pattern List

	Mime List Name	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">a1</a>	text/html
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">m1</a>	text/html
	<a href="#">junos-default-bypass-mime</a>	text/html text/css audio/ video/ image/ ...

Add...

Delete

[+] Filename Extension List

[+] Protocol command List

[+] URL Pattern List

[+] Custom URL Category List

Apply

- Next to MIME Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. Keep in mind that you are creating a MIME block list and a MIME block exception list (if necessary). Both MIME lists appear in the Block MIME list and the Block MIME exception list fields when you configure content filtering. Therefore, the MIME list names you create should be as descriptive as possible.
- Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, enter the MIME pattern.
- Click the **Add** button to add your MIME pattern to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add MIME patterns in this manner.
- Optionally, create a new MIME list to act as an exception list. The exception list is generally a subset of the main MIME list.

9. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the MIME list you have created. See Figure 220 on page 931. (This takes you back to the main configuration page.)

**Figure 220: Custom Object, MIME Pattern Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM** Edit a Mime Pattern List: 'junos-default-bypass-mime'

---

\* **Mime Name**  ?

---

\* **Values** ?

text/html  
 text/css  
 audio/  
 video/  
 image/  
 application/pdf  
 application/x-director

---

10. Under MIME Pattern List, select the check box beside the pattern list you created.
11. Click **Apply**.

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the content-filtering feature profile.

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Content Filtering** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, click the **Add** button below the Profile Name table to create a profile for content filtering.
5. Next to Profile Name, enter a unique name in the box.
6. Next to Permit command list, select the protocol command custom object you created for permitting commands from the list. (The permit protocol command list is intended to act as an exception list for the block protocol command list.)



**NOTE:** Protocol command lists, both permit and block, are created using the same custom object.

---

7. Next to Block command list, select the protocol command custom object you created for blocking commands from the list. See “Types of Content Filters” on page 921 for overview information on the block protocol command list.
8. Next to Block extension list, select the file extension list custom object you created for blocking extensions from the list.
9. Next to Block MIME list, select the MIME pattern list custom object you created for blocking MIME patterns from the list.
10. Next to Block MIME exception list, select the MIME pattern exception list custom object (if applicable) you created for allowing exceptions to the blocked MIME patterns from the list.
11. Next to Block content type, select content types in the Available Content Types box on the right and click the left arrow button < — to move items to the Selected Content Types box. (Press Shift to select multiple concurrent items or press Ctrl to select multiple separate items.)



**NOTE:** Block content type applies blocks to other available content such exe, http cookie, Java applet, and so on. The list of content types available from the Block content type box are only supported for HTTP blocking.

---

12. Next to Notification options type, select Message from the list.
13. Next to Notify mail sender, select the check box to enable this notification. Otherwise, no configured notification is sent.
14. Next to Custom notification message, enter text for your custom message for this notification in the box (if you are using a custom message).
15. Click **OK**. See Figure 221 on page 933. This takes you back to the main Content Filtering configuration page.

Figure 221: Content Filtering Configuration, Quick Configuration

Quick Configuration

UTM

\* Profile name

cf\_prof1

?

Permit command list

http

?

Block Options

Block command list

smtp

?

Block extension list

asp

?

Block MIME list

h1

?

Block MIME exception list

html

?

Block content type

Selected content Types

activex

http-cookie

Available Content Types

exe

java-applet

zip

→

←

Notification Options

Notification options type

protocol

?

Notify mail sender

☒

?

Custom notification message

content was blocked

?

OK

Cancel

16. Select the check box in the Profile Name table for the profile you are using.
17. Click **Apply**. See Figure 222 on page 933.

Figure 222: Content Filtering Profile Selection, Quick Configuration

Quick Configuration

UTM

Content Filtering

	Profile Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	cf_prof1
<input type="checkbox"/>	p1
<input type="checkbox"/>	test

Add...

Delete

Apply



**NOTE:** You create a separate content filtering profile for each supported content filtering protocol. When you are creating your UTM policy for content filtering, the UTM policy configuration page provides separate content filtering profile selection fields for each supported protocol.

Next, configure a UTM policy for content filtering to which you attach the content filtering profile you have configured.

1. Select **Security Policies > UTM Policies**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
4. Under Content filtering, select a profile you have configured from the list for each protocol.
5. In the Session Per Client Over Limit list, select one of the following: Log and Permit, Block. This is the action the device takes when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded.
6. In the Session Per Client Limit box, enter a session per client limit from 0 to 20000 for this UTM policy.
7. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the UTM Policies page.
8. Select the check box in the UTM Policy table for the policy you are using.
9. Click **Apply**.

Next, attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Security Policies > FW / VPN Policies**.
2. Next to Default Policy Action, select one of the following: **Deny-All**, **Permit-All**.
3. Next to From Zone, select a zone from the list.
4. Next to To Zone, select a zone from the list.
5. Under Zone Direction, click **Add a Policy**.
6. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the security policy you are creating.
7. Under Match Criterias, choose a Source Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Source Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
8. Under Match Criterias, choose a Destination Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Destination Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
9. Under Match Criterias, choose an Application or Applications. Do this by selecting junos- < protocol > (for all protocols that support antivirus scanning) in the Application Sets box and clicking the < — button to move them to the Matched box.
10. Next to Policy Action, select one of the following: **Permit**, **Deny**, **Reject**.





**NOTE:** When you select Permit for Policy Action, several additional fields become available, including UTM Policy.

---

11. Next to UTM Policy, select the appropriate policy from the list. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
- 



**NOTE:** There are several fields on this page that are not described in this section. See the Security Policies section for detailed information on configuring security policies and all the available fields.

---

12. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the main Security Policies configuration page.
13. Under Policies, select the check box beside the security policy you created.
14. Click **Apply**.

## ***J-Web View and Edit Configuration***

To configure content filtering using the J-Web view and edit configuration editor, you must first create your custom objects (Protocol Command List, Filename Extension List, MIME Pattern List).

Configure a Protocol Command Custom Object as follows:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Protocol command, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. (This name appears in the Permit command and Block command lists when you configure a content filter profile.)
7. Next to Values, enter the commands for the protocol in question.
8. Click **OK**. See Figure 223 on page 936.

**Figure 223: Custom Object, Protocol Command Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Custom objects

---

**Protocol command**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Name protocom1 ? \*

---

Value	Actions
get, post	Edit Delete M

[Add new entry](#)

---

Advanced

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Configure a Filename Extension List Custom Object as follows (see “File Extension Scanning” on page 841):

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Filename extension, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the extension list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the extensions.
9. Click **OK**. See Figure 224 on page 936.

**Figure 224: Custom Object, Filename Extension Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Filename extension

---

**Value**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Value .ext, .vbs, .bat ?

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Configure a MIME Pattern List Custom Object as follows (see “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information on MIME white lists):

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Mime pattern, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the MIME list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the MIME pattern.
9. Click **OK**. See Figure 225 on page 937.

**Figure 225: Custom Object, MIME Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the content-filtering feature profile.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Feature profile, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Content filtering, click **Configure**.
6. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
7. Next to Name, enter a unique name for this profile.
8. Next to Block command, enter the protocol command custom object you created for blocking commands from the list.
9. Next to Block content type, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
10. Select one or more of the available check boxes to block ActiveX, exe, Http cookie, Java applet, and zip file content.
11. Click **OK**.

12. Next to Block extension, enter the file extension list custom object you created for blocking extensions from the list.
13. Next to Block mime, select the **Yes** checkbox and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
14. Next to Exception, enter the exception Mime list custom object you created for Mime patterns that will not be blocked.
15. Next to List, enter the Mime list custom object you created for blocking Mime patterns.
16. Next to Notification options, select the **Yes** checkbox and click **Configure** or **Edit**.
  - Next to Custom message, enter text for your custom message for this notification.
  - Next to Notify mail sender, select the **Yes** check box to enable this notification.
  - Next to Type, select **message** as the type of notification that is sent when a fallback option of block is triggered
  - Click **OK**.
17. Next to Permit command, enter the protocol command custom object you created for permitting commands from the list. (The permit protocol command list is intended to act as an exception list for the block protocol command list.)
18. Click **OK**. See Figure 226 on page 938 for the content filtering profile main screen.

**Figure 226: Content Filtering Profile, View and Edit Configuration**

Feature profile

**Content filtering**

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Traceoptions [Configure](#)

Profile <a href="#">Add new entry</a>					
Name	Permit command	Block command	Block extension	Nested Configuration	Actions
<a href="#">cf1</a>					<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
<a href="#">content-filter1</a>		protocom1		<a href="#">Block content type</a> <a href="#">Block mime</a> <a href="#">Notification options</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <span>M</span>

**Advanced**

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Next, you configure a UTM policy for content-filtering to which you attach the profile you have configured.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to UTM policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
6. Next to Content filtering, click **Configure**.
7. In the Http, Imap, Pop3, or Smtpprofile boxes, enter the name of the profile you created earlier. For Ftp, click **Configure** or **Edit** to enter Upload and Download profiles.



**NOTE:** You create a separate content-filtering profile for each protocol. These profiles may basically contain the same configuration information, but when you are creating your UTM policy for a content-filtering profile, the UTM content-filter policy configuration page provides separate profile selection fields for each supported protocol.

- 
8. Click **OK**.
  9. Click **OK** again to return to main UTM configuration page. Your UTM content-filtering policy is now listed in the UTM policy table.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Security, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, select the **Yes** check box click **Edit**.
5. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.



**NOTE:** Refer to the section on security policy configuration for further details on configuring a policy. Note that when you configure the Then field as part of the policy, select Permit as the action, and then configure Application services, you are able to enter the Utm policy name as part of this security policy.

- 
6. Next to Utm policy (in the Application services security policy screen), enter the name of the appropriate policy. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
  7. Click **OK**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure content filtering using the CLI, you must first create your custom objects.

1. Configure the protocol command list custom object by first creating a name for the list. See “Types of Content Filters” on page 921 for information on protocol commands.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects protocol-command ftpprotocom1
```

2. Add commands to the list.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-objects protocol-command
ftpprotocom1 value [user pass port type]
```

3. Configure the filename-extension custom object by first creating a name for the list. See “File Extension Scanning” on page 841 for information on file extension lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects filename-extension extlist2
```

4. Add extensions to the list.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects filename-extension extlist2 value
[zip js vbs]
```

5. Configure MIME pattern lists. This includes creating a main MIME list and a MIME exception list for antivirus scanning. First create names for MIME lists and then add values to the lists. See “MIME White List” on page 850 for overview information on MIME pattern lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern cfmime1
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-cfmime1
```

6. Add MIME patterns to the lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern cfmime1 value
[video/quicktime image/x-portable-anymap x-world/x-vrml]
user@host# set security utm custom-objects mime-pattern ex-cfmime1 value
[video/quicktime-inappropriate]
```

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the content-filtering feature profile.

1. Create a profile as follows.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1
```

2. Apply protocol block command custom objects to the content-filtering profile.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1
block-command ftpprotocom1
```

3. Apply blocks to other available content such as exe, http-cookie, java-applet, and so on. The list of content types available from the “block-content-type” command are only supported for HTTP blocking.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1
block-content-type java-applet exe http-cookie
```

4. Apply extension list custom objects to the content-filtering profile for blocking extensions.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1
block-extension extlist2
```

5. Apply MIME pattern list custom objects to the content-filtering profile for blocking MIME types. If configured, you can also apply a MIME exception list.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1
block-mime list cfmime1 exception ex-cfmime1
```

6. Apply protocol permit command custom objects to the content-filtering profile. (The permit protocol command list is intended to act as an exception list for the block protocol command list.)



**NOTE:** Protocol command lists, both permit and block, are created by using the same custom object.

---

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1
permit-command ftpprotocol2
```

7. Next you configure the notification options. You can configure notifications with custom messages or configure no notification to be sent, as well. In this example, you configure a custom message and send a notification message. (You can configure a message notification for content-filtering.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile content-filtering profile confilter1
notification-options custom-message “the action is not taken” notify-mail-sender
type message
```

1. Configure a UTM policy for a content filtering protocol and attach this policy to a profile. CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for HTTP content filtering and attaching that policy to a profile you created earlier for content filtering are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp4 content-filtering http-profile
contentfilter1
```

2. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 match
destination-address any
```

```

user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 match
application junos-http
user@host# set security from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p4 then permit
application-services utm-policy utmp4

```

## Verifying Content Filtering Configurations

---

J-Web monitoring tools consist of the options that appear when you select Monitor in the task bar. The Monitor options display diagnostic information about the feature in question. Alternatively, you can enter show commands from the CLI to display the same information. CLI show commands display the current configuration and information about the feature in question.

This topic contains:

- Using J-Web to Monitor Content Filtering on page 942
- Using the CLI to Monitor Content Filtering on page 942

### Using J-Web to Monitor Content Filtering

View content filtering statistics using J-web as follows:

1. Select the **Monitor** tab at the top of the page
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Content Filtering** in the left pane.
4. The following statistics becomes viewable in the right pane.

```

Base on command list: # Passed # Blocked
Base on mime list: # Passed # Blocked
Base on extension list: # Passed # Blocked
ActiveX plugin: # Passed # Blocked
Java applet: # Passed # Blocked
EXE files: # Passed # Blocked
ZIP files: # Passed # Blocked
HTTP cookie: # Passed # Blocked

```

5. You can click the **Clear Content filtering statistics** button to clear all current viewable statistics and begin collecting new statistics.

### Using the CLI to Monitor Content Filtering

Use the following commands to view content filtering statistics

```
user@host > show security utm content-filtering statistics
```

The content filtering show statistics command displays the following information:

```
Base on command list: # Blocked
```



Base on mime list: # Blocked  
Base on extension list: # Blocked  
ActiveX plugin: # Blocked  
Java applet: # Blocked  
EXE files: # Blocked  
ZIP files: # Blocked  
HTTP cookie: # Blocked



## Chapter 32

# Web Filtering

Web filtering lets you manage Internet usage by preventing access to inappropriate Web content.

There are two types of Web filtering solutions.

- The integrated Web filtering solution intercepts every HTTP request in a TCP connection. In this case, the decision making is done on the device after it identifies the category for a URL either from user-defined categories or from a category server (SurfControl Content Portal Authority provided by Websense).



**NOTE:** The integrated Web filtering feature is a separately licensed subscription service. When the license key for Web filtering has expired, no URLs are sent to the category server for checking, only local user-defined categories are checked.

- 
- The redirect Web filtering solution intercepts HTTP requests and sends them to an external URL filtering server, provided by Websense, to determine whether to block the requests.



**NOTE:** Redirect Web filtering does not require a license.

---

This chapter contains the following topics:

- Understanding Integrated Web Filtering on page 945
- What Happens When Both Web Filtering and Antivirus Scanning are Employed? on page 948
- Configuring Integrated Web Filtering on page 948
- Understanding Redirect Web Filtering on page 965
- Configuring Redirect Web Filtering on page 966
- Verifying Web Filtering Configurations on page 981

---

### Understanding Integrated Web Filtering

With integrated Web filtering, the firewall intercepts every HTTP request in a TCP connection and extracts the URL from the HTTP request. The decision making is

done on the device after it identifies a category for a URL either from user-defined categories or from the SurfControl category server. Each individual HTTP request is blocked or permitted based on URL filtering profiles defined by you.

You can permit or block access to a requested site by binding a Web filtering profile to a firewall policy. A Web filtering profile specifies URL categories and the action the device takes (permit or block) when it receives a request to access a URL in each category. A URL category is a list of URLs grouped by content. URL categories are predefined and maintained by SurfControl or are defined by you.

#### ■ SurfControl URL Categories

SurfControl maintains about 40 predefined categories. To view SurfControl global categories, type the following command:

```
user@host# show groups junos-defaults
```

You can also look for `custom-url-category`

#### ■ User-Defined URL Categories

When defining your own URL categories, you can group URLs and create categories specific to your needs. Each category can have a maximum of 20 URLs. When you create a category, you can add either the URL or the IP address of a site. When you add a URL to a user-defined category, the device performs DNS lookup, resolves the host name into IP addresses, and caches this information. When a user tries to access a site with the IP address of the site, the device checks the cached list of IP addresses and tries to resolve the hostname. Many sites have dynamic IP addresses, meaning that their IP addresses change periodically. A user attempting to access a site can type an IP address that is not in the cached list on the device. Therefore, if you know the IP addresses of sites you are adding to a category, enter both the URL and the IP address(es) of the site.

You define your own categories using URL pattern list and custom URL category list custom objects. Once defined, you can select your categories when you configure your Web filtering profile as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile Web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile <profile_name> category
```



**NOTE:** If a URL appears in both a user-defined category and a predefined category, the device matches the URL to the user-defined category.

---



**NOTE:** Web filtering is performed on all the methods defined in HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.

---

## Integrated Web Filtering: Process Overview

This is a general description of how Web traffic is intercepted and acted upon by the Web filtering module.

1. The device intercepts a TCP connection.
2. The device intercepts each HTTP request in the TCP connection.
3. The device extracts each URL in the HTTP request and checks its URL filter cache.
4. Global Web filtering white and black lists are checked first for block or permit.
5. If the HTTP request URL is allowed based on cached parameters, it is forwarded to the Web server. If there is no cache match, a request for categorization is sent to the SurfControl server. (If the HTTP request URL is blocked, the request is not forwarded and a notification message is logged.)
6. In the allowed case, the SurfControl server responds with the corresponding category.
7. Based on the identified category, if the URL is permitted, the device forwards the HTTP request to the Web server. If the URL is not permitted, then a deny page is sent to the HTTP client.

## Integrated Web Filtering Cache

By default, the device retrieves and caches the URL categories from the SurfControl CPA server. This process reduces the overhead of accessing the SurfControl CPA server each time the device receives a new request for previously requested URLs. You can configure the size and duration of the cache, according to the performance and memory requirements of your networking environment. The lifetime of cached items is configurable between 1 and 1800 seconds with a default value of 300 seconds.



**NOTE:** Caches are not preserved across device reboots or power losses.

---

## Web Filtering Profiles

You configure Web filtering profiles that permit or block URLs according to defined categories. A Web filtering profile consists of a group of URL categories assigned one of the following actions:

- **Permit** — The device always allows access to the Web sites in this category.
- **Block** — The device blocks access to the Web sites in this category. When the device blocks access to this category of Web sites, it displays a message in your browser indicating the URL category.
- **Black List** — The device always blocks access to the Web sites in this list. You can create a user-defined category or use a predefined category.
- **White List** — The device always allows access to the Web sites in this list. You can create a user-defined category or use a predefined category.



---

**NOTE:** A predefined profile is provided and can be used if you choose not to define your own profile.

---

A Web filtering profile may contain one black list or one white list, multiple user-defined and/or predefined categories each with a permit or block action, and an *Other* category with a permit or block action. You can define an action for all *Other* categories in a profile to specify what to do when the incoming URL does not belong to any of the categories defined in the profile. If the action for the *Other* category is block, the incoming URL is blocked if it does not match any of the categories explicitly defined in the profile. If an action for the *Other* category is not specified, the default action of permit is applied to the incoming URL not matching any category.

### Profile Matching Precedence

When a profile employs several categories for URL matching, those categories are checked for matches in the following order:

1. If present, the global black list is checked first. If a match is made, the URL is blocked. If no match is found...
2. The global white list is checked next. If a match is made, the URL is permitted. If no match is found...
3. User-defined categories are checked next. If a match is made, the URL is blocked or permitted as specified. If no match is found...
4. Predefined categories are checked next. If a match is made, the URL is blocked or permitted as specified. If no match is found...
5. The Other category is checked next. If a match is made, the URL is blocked or permitted as specified.

### What Happens When Both Web Filtering and Antivirus Scanning are Employed?

---

You can bind either Web filtering profiles or antivirus profiles, or both, to a firewall policy. When both are bound to a firewall policy, Web filtering is applied first, then antivirus is applied. If a URL is blocked by Web filtering, the TCP connection is closed and no antivirus scanning is necessary. If a URL is permitted, the content of the transaction is then passed to the antivirus scanning process.

### Configuring Integrated Web Filtering

---

You can use J-Web or the CLI to configure the integrated Web filtering feature. When configuring Web filtering, if you are using custom objects, you must first create those. Custom objects may include URL Pattern Lists and Custom URL Category Lists. Once you have created your custom objects, you can configure Web filtering.

This topic contains:

- Configuration Overview on page 949
- J-Web Quick Configuration on page 949
- J-Web View and Edit Configuration on page 958
- CLI Configuration on page 963

## Configuration Overview

For each UTM feature, you should configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. First configure UTM custom objects (if any), for the feature in question. Custom objects are global parameters for UTM features. This means that configured custom objects apply to all UTM policies where applicable, rather than only to individual policies.

The CLI commands for setting integrated Web filtering custom objects are:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category
```

2. Configure main feature parameters, called feature profiles.

The CLI command for setting Web filtering feature profiles is :

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile Web-filtering
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile.

CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for Web filtering and attaching that policy to a profile are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp5 web-filtering http-profile webhttp1
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

The CLI command for attaching a UTM policy to a security policy is:

```
user@host# set security policies
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 then
permit application-services utm-policy utmp5
```

## J-Web Quick Configuration

To configure Web filtering using the J-Web Quick Configuration editor, if you are using custom objects, you must first create those custom objects. (URL pattern list, custom URL category list).



**NOTE:** Rather than or in addition to custom object lists, you can use included default lists and included white list and black list categories. See “Web Filtering Profiles” on page 947 for profile list information.

---

Configure a URL Pattern List Custom Object as follows:

---



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure a custom URL category list.

---

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under URL Pattern List, click the **Add** button to create a URL list. See Figure 227 on page 951.



**Figure 227: Custom Object, URL Pattern List, Quick Configuration****Quick Configuration****UTM****Custom Objects**

+ Mime Pattern List

+ Filename Extension List

+ Protocol command List

+ URL Pattern List

	URL Pattern	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">single url yahoo</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">block-list</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com http://*.cnn.com ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">white-list</a>	www.google.com www.espn.com www.ask.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">urltest</a>	http://*.url.net

Add...

Delete

+ Custom URL Category List

Apply

- Next to Category Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. This name appears in the custom URL category list custom object page for selection.
- Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, enter the URL or IP address you want added to the list for bypassing scanning.



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[\[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*juniper.net`, `http://*`.

7. Click the **Add** button to add your entry to the Values list. Within this list, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the URL pattern list you have created. See Figure 228 on page 952.

**Figure 228: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, Quick Configuration**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**UTM** **Add a URL Pattern List**

---

\* URL Pattern Name  ?

---

\* Values

http://\*.url.net

Add

?

↑

↓

X

---

OK

Cancel

---

9. Under URL Category List, select the check box beside the URL pattern list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Configure a custom URL category list custom object as follows: (See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information on URL white lists.)



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure a custom URL category list. URL pattern list custom objects are described in “J-Web Quick Configuration” on page 949.

- 1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
- 2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
- 3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
- 4. In the right pane, under Custom URL Category List, click the **Add** button to create a URL white list. See Figure 229 on page 953.

**Figure 229: Custom Object, Custom URL Category List, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

UTM

Custom Objects

☐ Mime Pattern List

☐ Filename Extension List

☐ Protocol command List

☐ URL Pattern List

☐ Custom URL Category List

	Category Name	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p1</a>	p1
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">CN1</a>	p1

Add...

Delete

Apply

- 5. Next to Category Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. This name appears in the URL Whitelist, Blacklist, and Custom Category lists when you configure Web Filtering.

6. Under Values, in the list next to the Add button, select a URL Pattern List name from the list for bypassing scanning.
7. Click the **Add** button to add your entry to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the custom URL list you have created. See Figure 230 on page 954.

**Figure 230: Custom Object, Custom URL Category Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM** Edit a Custom URL Category List: 'CN1'

---

\* **Category Name**  ?

---

\* **Values** ?

p1

p1 ▼

Add

↑

↓

X

---

OK

Cancel

9. Under URL Category List, select the check box beside the extension list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the integrated Web filtering feature profile.

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Web Filtering** in the left pane.
4. Next to URL Whitelist, select the Custom URL list you created from the list. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If there is no match, the URL is sent to the SurfControl server. See “Understanding Integrated Web Filtering” on page 945 for URL category information.

5. Next to URL Blacklist, select the Custom URL list you created from the list. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If there is no match, the URL is sent to the SurfControl server.
6. Next to Web Filtering Type, select the type of Web filtering engine you are using. In this case, you would select **Surf Control Integrated**.
7. In the SurfControl Integrated section, next to Cache Timeout, enter a timeout limit in minutes for expiring cache entries. (24 hours is the default and the maximum allowed life span.) See “Integrated Web Filtering Cache” on page 947 for information on the cache.
8. In the SurfControl Integrated section, next to Cache Size, enter a size limit, in kilobytes, for the cache. (500 KB is the default.)
9. In the SurfControl Integrated section, next to Server Host, enter the Surf Control server name or IP address.
10. In the SurfControl Integrated section, next to Server Port, enter the port number for communicating with the Surf Control server. (Default ports are 80, 8080, and 8081.)
11. Click the **Add** button below the Profile Name table to create a profile for Web filtering that uses custom filtering lists that you have configured. See Figure 231 on page 955.

**Figure 231: Web Filtering Integrated Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

\* Profile Name  ?

Default Action  ?

Custom Block Message  ?

Timeout  ?

---

Fallback Options

---

Default  ?

Server Connectivity  ?

Timeout  ?

Too Many Request  ?

---

☐ Custom URL Category Action List

	Category Name	Action
<input type="checkbox"/>	cat1	block

---

12. Next to Profile Name, enter a unique name in the box.
13. Next to Default Action, select **Permit**, **Block**, or **Log and Permit** from the list. This is the default action for this profile for requests that experience errors.
14. Next to Custom Block Message, enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked.
15. Next to Timeout, enter a value, in seconds. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default here is 10 seconds. You can enter a value from 10 to 240 seconds.
16. In the Fallback Options section, next to Default, select **Block** or **Log and Permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for any reason not specifically called out.
17. In the Fallback Options section, next to Server Connectivity, select **Block** or **Log and Permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
18. In the Fallback Options section, next to Timeout, select **Block** or **Log and Permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
19. In the Fallback Options section, next to Too Many Requests, select **Block** or **Log and Permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
20. In the custom URL category list section, click the **Add** button to use a configured custom URL category list custom object in the profile.
21. Next to Custom URL category, select a configured custom object from the list.
22. Next to Action, select **Permit**, **Block**, or **Log and Permit** from the list.
23. Click **OK**. See Figure 232 on page 956. (This takes you back to the previous configuration page.)

**Figure 232: Web Filtering Integrated Custom URL Category Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

UTM Add an Action for Custom URL Category

---

\* Custom URL Category cat1 ?

Action Block ?

---

OK Cancel

24. Select the check box in the Profile Name table for the profile you are using.
25. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the previous configuration page.
26. Select the check box in the Profile Name table for the Surf Control Integrated profile you are using.
27. Click **Apply**. See Figure 233 on page 957.

**Figure 233: Web Filtering Integrated Profile Selection, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

Web Filtering

URL Whitelist  ?

URL Blacklist  ?

Web Filtering Type  ?

---

☐ Surf Control Integrated

Cache Timeout  ?

Cache Size  ?

\* Server Host  ?

\* Server Port  ?

	Profile Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">test</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">test1</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">test3</a>

---

☐ Websense Redirect

---

Next, you configure a UTM policy for Web filtering to which you attach the content filtering profile you have configured.

1. Select **Security Policies > UTM Policies**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
4. Under Web filtering, select a profile you have configured in the HTTP Profile list.
5. In the Session Per Client Over Limit list, select one of the following: Log and Permit, Block. This is the action the device takes when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded.
6. In the Session Per Client Limit box, enter a session per client limit from 0 to 20000 for this UTM policy.
7. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the UTM Policies page.
8. Select the check box in the UTM Policy table for the policy you are using.
9. Click **Apply**.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Security Policies > FW / VPN Policies**.
2. Next to Default Policy Action, select one of the following: **Deny-All**, **Permit-All**.
3. Next to From Zone, select a zone from the list.
4. Next to To Zone, select a zone from the list.
5. Under Zone Direction, click **Add a Policy**.
6. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the security policy you are creating.
7. Under Match Criterias, choose a Source Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Source Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
8. Under Match Criterias, choose a Destination Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Destination Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
9. Under Match Criterias, choose an Application or Applications. Do this by selecting junos- < protocol > (for all protocols that support antivirus scanning) in the Application Sets box and clicking the < — button to move them to the Matched box.
10. Next to Policy Action, select one of the following: **Permit**, **Deny**, **Reject**.



**NOTE:** When you select Permit for Policy Action, several additional fields become available, including UTM Policy.

11. Next to UTM Policy, select the appropriate policy from the list. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.



**NOTE:** There are several fields on this page that are not described in this section. See the section on Security Policies for detailed information on configuring security policies and all the available fields.

12. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the main Security Policies configuration page.
13. Under Policies, select the check box beside the security policy you created.
14. Click **Apply**.

## J-Web View and Edit Configuration

To configure Web filtering using the J-Web view and edit configuration editor, if you are using custom objects, you must first create those custom objects. (URL pattern list, custom URL category list).



Configure a URL Pattern List Custom Object as follows:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to URL pattern, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the URL pattern.



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://*`.

9. Click **OK**. See Figure 234 on page 959.

**Figure 234: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Url pattern

Value

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Value  ?

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---



**NOTE:** Continue to create as many Whitelist and Blacklist entries as necessary in your lists. You cannot use URL patterns directly. You must configure Custom URL category lists to which you apply your URL patterns.

Configure a Custom URL Category List Custom Object as follows:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.

3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Custom url category, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the name of the Url pattern list you created for bypassing filtering.
9. Click **OK**. See Figure 235 on page 960.

**Figure 235: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Custom url category

**Value**

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

**Value** url-pattern-list1 ? M

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the integrated Web filtering feature profile.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Feature profile, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Web filtering, click **Configure**.
6. Next to Surf control integrated, click **Configure**.
7. Next to Cache, click **Configure**.
8. Next to Size, enter a size limit, in kilobytes, for the cache. (500 KB is the default.)
9. Next to Timeout, enter a timeout limit in minutes for expiring cache entries. (24 hours is the default and the maximum allowed life span.) See “Integrated Web Filtering Cache” on page 947 for information on the cache.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Next to Server, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
12. Next to Host, enter the Surf Control server name or IP address.
13. Next to Port, enter the port number for communicating with the Surf Control server. (Default ports are 80, 8080, and 8081.)
14. Click **OK**.

15. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
16. Next to Name, enter a unique name for this profile.
17. Next to Custom block message, enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked.
18. Next to Default, select **Permit**, **Block**, or **Log and Permit** from the list. This is the default action for this profile for requests that experience errors.
19. Next to Fallback options, select the **Yes** checkbox and click **Configure**.
  - Next to Default, select **block** or **log and permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for any reason not specifically called out.
  - Next to Server connectivity, select **block** or **log and permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
  - Next to Timeout, select **block** or **log and permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
  - Next to Too many requests, select **block** or **log and permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
20. Click **OK**.
21. Next to Timeout, enter a value, in seconds. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default here is 10 seconds.
22. Next to Category, click **Add new entry**.
23. Next to Name, enter the name of the custom URL category list custom object you created.
24. Next to Action, select **permit**, **block**, or **log and permit** from the list.
25. Click **OK**.
26. Click **OK** again to return to the Web filtering main page.
27. Next to Type, select **surf-control-integrated** from the list.
28. Next to Url blacklist, enter the name of the custom URL list you created. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If there is no match, the URL is sent to the SurfControl server.
29. Next to Url whitelist, enter the name of the custom URL list you created. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If there is no match, the URL is sent to the SurfControl server.
30. Click **OK**.

Next, you configure a UTM policy for Web filtering to which you attach the profile you have configured.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to UTM policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.

6. Next to Web filtering, click **Configure**.
7. In the Http profile box, enter the name of the Web filtering profile you created earlier.
8. Click **OK**. See Figure 236 on page 962 for Web filtering main profile screen.

**Figure 236: Web Filtering Integrated Profile Selection, View and Edit Configuration**

Web filtering

---

**Surf control integrated**

---

---

Cache ☒ Yes [Configure](#)

Server ☒ Yes [Configure](#)

---

Profile [Add new entry](#)

Name	Default	Custom block message	Timeout	Nested Configuration	Actions
<a href="#">p1</a>	permit			<a href="#">Fallback settings</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
<a href="#">wf-integrated1</a>	block	restricted	300	<a href="#">Fallback settings</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <input type="button" value="M"/>

---

**Advanced**

---

9. Click **OK** again to return to main UTM configuration page. Your UTM Web filtering policy is now listed in the UTM policy table.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Security, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Policy, select the **Yes** check box click **Edit**.
5. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.



**NOTE:** Refer to the section on security policy configuration for further details on configuring a policy. Note that when you configure the Then field as part of the policy, select Permit as the action, and then configure Application services, you are able to enter the Utm policy name as part of this security policy.

6. Next to Utm policy (in the Application services security policy screen), enter the name of the appropriate policy. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
7. Click **OK**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure integrated Web filtering using the CLI, you must first create your custom objects.



**NOTE:** Rather than or in addition to custom object lists, you can use included default lists and included white list and black list categories. See “Web Filtering Profiles” on page 947 for profile list information.

1. Configure a URL pattern list custom object by creating the list name and adding values to it as follows:



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure custom URL category lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist3 value
[http://www.juniper.net 1.2.3.4]
```



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “`*`” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “`.`”. You can only use “`?`” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*juniper.net`, `http://*`.

1. Configure a custom URL category list custom object by using the URL pattern list you created as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl3 value
urllist3
```

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the surf-control-integrated Web filtering feature profile.

1. If you are using included global whitelist and blacklist categories, select those global categories. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If no match is made, the URL is forwarded to the SurfControl server. See “Understanding Integrated Web Filtering” on page 945 for URL category information.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-blacklist
Drugs_Alcohol_Tobacco
```

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-whitelist
Computing_Internet
```

2. Select surf-control-integrated as your Web filtering engine as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
```

3. Set the cache size parameters for surf-control-integrated Web filtering (500 KB is the default). See “Integrated Web Filtering Cache” on page 947 for information on the cache.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
cache size 500
```

4. Set the cache timeout parameters for surf-control-integrated Web filtering (24 hours is the default and the maximum allowed life span). See “Integrated Web Filtering Cache” on page 947 for information on the cache.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
cache timeout 1800
```

5. Set Surf Control server parameters by first entering the Surf Control server name or IP address.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
server host surfcontrolserver
```

6. Enter the port number for communicating with the Surf Control server. (Default ports are 80, 8080, and 8081.)

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
server port 8080
```

7. Create a surf-control-integrated profile by first creating a profile name as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile surfprofile1
```

8. Select a category from the included whitelist and blacklist categories or select a custom URL category list you created for filtering against. Then enter an action (permit, log and permit, block) to go with the filter as follows (do this as many times as necessary to compile your whitelists and blacklists and their accompanying actions):

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile surfprofile1 category custurl2 action block
```

9. Enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile surfprofile1 custom-block-message ***access denied***
```

10. Select a default action (permit, log and permit, block) for this profile for requests that experience errors.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile surfprofile1 default block
```

11. Select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile. The fallback actions are taken when errors in each configured category occur.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile surfprofile1 fallback-settings default block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile surfprofile1 fallback-settings server-connectivity block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile surfprofile1 fallback-settings timeout block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile surfprofile1 fallback-settings too-many-requests block
```

12. Enter a timeout value, in seconds. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default here is 10 seconds. You can enter a value from 10 to 240 seconds.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering surf-control-integrated
profile surfprofile1 timeout 10
```

1. Configure a UTM policy for the Web filtering protocol and attach this policy to a profile. CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for HTTP Web filtering, and attaching that policy to a profile you created earlier for content filtering are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp5 web-filtering http-profile surfprofile1
```

2. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 match
application junos-http
user@host# set security from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p5 then permit
application-services utm-policy utmp5
```

## Understanding Redirect Web Filtering

With redirect Web filtering, the Web filtering module intercepts an HTTP request. The URL in the request is then sent to the external Websense server, which makes a permit or a deny decision. If access is permitted to the URL in question, the original HTTP request and all the subsequent requests are sent to the intended HTTP server. But if access is denied to the URL in question, a blocking message is sent to the client.



**NOTE:** Web filtering is performed on all the methods defined in HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1. However, redirect Web filtering does not support HTTPS traffic because it cannot be decrypted to obtain the URL.



**NOTE:** Decision making from real-time options provides a higher level of accuracy, therefore caching for redirect Web filtering is not supported.

---



**NOTE:** Redirect Web filtering does not require a subscription license.

---

## **Redirect Web Filtering: Process Overview**

This is a general description of how Web traffic is intercepted, redirected, and acted upon by the Web filtering module.

1. A Web client establishes a TCP connection with the Web server.
2. The Web client then sends an HTTP request.
3. The device intercepts the requests and extract URL. The URL is checked against Global Web filtering white and black lists. If no match is made, the Websense server configuration parameters are utilized. Otherwise go to step 6.
4. The URL is sent to the Websense server for checking,
5. The Websense server returns a response indicating whether or not the URL is to be permitted or blocked.
6. If access is allowed, then the original HTTP request is sent to the Web server. If access is denied, the device sends blocking message to the client and tears down the TCP connection.

## **Configuring Redirect Web Filtering**

---

You can use J-Web or the CLI to configure the redirect Web filtering feature. When configuring Web filtering, if you are using custom objects, you must first create those. Custom objects may include URL pattern lists and custom URL category lists. Once you have created your custom objects, you can configure Web filtering.

This topic contains:

- Configuration Overview on page 966
- J-Web Quick Configuration on page 967
- J-Web View and Edit Configuration on page 975
- CLI Configuration on page 979

## **Configuration Overview**

For each UTM feature, you should configure feature parameters in the following order:

1. First configure UTM custom objects (if any), for the feature in question. Custom objects are global parameters for UTM features. Configured custom objects apply to all UTM policies where applicable, rather than only to individual policies.



```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category
```

2. Configure main feature parameters, called feature profiles.

The CLI command for setting Web filtering feature profiles is:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile Web-filtering
```

3. Configure a UTM policy for each protocol and attach this policy to a profile.

CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for Web filtering and attaching that policy to a profile are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp6 web-filtering http-profile webhttp2
```

4. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

The CLI command for attaching a UTM policy to a security policy is:

```
user@host# set security policies
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 then
permit application-services utm-policy utmp6
```

## J-Web Quick Configuration

To configure Web filtering using the J-Web configuration editor, if you are using custom objects, you must first create those custom objects. (URL pattern list, custom URL category list).



**NOTE:** Rather than or in addition to custom object lists, you can use included default lists and included white list and black list categories. See “Web Filtering Profiles” on page 947 for profile list information.

---

Configure a URL Pattern List Custom Object as follows:

---



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure a custom URL category list.

---

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under URL Pattern List, click the **Add** button to create a URL white list. See Figure 237 on page 968.

**Figure 237: Custom Object, URL Pattern List, Quick Configuration****Quick Configuration****UTM****Custom Objects**

+ Mime Pattern List

+ Filename Extension List

+ Protocol command List

+ URL Pattern List

	URL Pattern	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">single url yahoo</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">block-list</a>	www.yahoo.com www.ask.com www.google.com www.espn.com http://*.cnn.com ...
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">white-list</a>	www.google.com www.espn.com www.ask.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">urltest</a>	http://*.url.net

Add...

Delete

+ Custom URL Category List

Apply

- Next to Category Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. This name appears in the Custom URL Category List Custom Object page for selection.
- Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, enter the URL or IP address you want added to list for bypassing filtering.



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[\[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*juniper.net`, `http://*`.

7. Click the **Add** button to add your entry to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the URL pattern list you have created. See Figure 238 on page 969.

**Figure 238: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, Quick Configuration**

**Quick Configuration**

---

**UTM** **Add a URL Pattern List**

---

\* URL Pattern Name  ?

---

\* Values

?

↑

↓

X

Add

---

OK

Cancel

---

9. Under URL Category List, select the check box beside the URL pattern list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Configure a custom URL category list custom object as follows: (See “URL White List” on page 850 for overview information on URL white lists.)



**NOTE:** Because you use URL Pattern Lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure a custom URL category list.

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Custom Objects** in the left pane.
4. In the right pane, under Custom URL Category List, click the **Add** button to create a URL list. See Figure 239 on page 970.

**Figure 239: Custom Object, Custom URL Category List, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

**UTM**

Custom Objects

☐ Mime Pattern List

☐ Filename Extension List

☐ Protocol command List

☐ URL Pattern List

☐ Custom URL Category List

	Category Name	Value
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">p1</a>	p1
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">CN1</a>	p1

Add...

Delete

Apply

5. Next to Category Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating. This name appears in the URL Whitelist, Blacklist, and Custom Category list when you configure Web filtering.
6. Under Values, in the box next to the Add button, select a URL pattern list name from the list for bypassing scanning.

7. Click the **Add** button to add your entry to the Values list box. Within this box, you can select an entry and use the up and down arrows to change the order of the list. You can also select an entry and use the X button to delete it from the list. Continue to add URLs or IP addresses in this manner.
8. Click the **OK** button to save the selected values as part of the custom URL list you have created. See Figure 240 on page 971.

**Figure 240: Custom Object, Custom URL Category Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM** **Edit a Custom URL Category List: 'CN1'**

---

\* **Category Name**  ?

---

\* **Values**

p1

?

↑

↓

×

p1 v Add

---

OK Cancel

9. Under URL Category List, select the check box beside the extension list you created.
10. Click **Apply**.

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the redirect Web filtering feature profile.

1. Select the **Configuration** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Web Filtering** in the left pane.
4. Next to URL Whitelist, select the custom URL list you created from the list. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If there is no match, the URL is sent to the Websense server.
5. Next to URL Blacklist, select the custom URL list you created from the list. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If there is no match, the URL is sent to the Websense server.

6. Next to Web Filtering Type, select the type of Web filtering engine you are using. In this case, you would select **Websense Redirect**.
7. In the Websense Redirect section, click the **Add** button below the Profile Name table to create a profile for Web filtering that uses custom filtering lists that you have configured.
8. Next to Profile Name, enter a unique name in the box.
9. Next to Server Host, enter the Websense server name.
10. Next to Server Port, enter the port number for communicating with the Websense server. (Default ports are 80, 8080, and 8081.)
11. Next to Custom Block Message, enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked.
12. Next to Timeout, enter a timeout limit for requests. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default here is 10 seconds. You can enter a value from 10 to 240 seconds.
13. Next to Socket, enter the number of sockets used for communicating between the client and server. The default here is 1.
14. Next to Account, enter the user account for which this profile is intended.
15. Next to Default Action, select **Permit**, **Block**, or **Log and Permit** from the list.
16. In the Fallback Options section, next to Default, select **Block** or **Log and Permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for any reason not specifically called out.
17. In the Fallback Options section, next to Server Connectivity, select **Block** or **Log and Permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
18. In the Fallback Options section, next to Timeout, select **Block** or **Log and Permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
19. In the Fallback Options section, next to Too Many Requests, select **Block** or **Log and Permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
20. Click **OK**. See Figure 241 on page 973. (This takes you back to the previous configuration page.)

**Figure 241: Web Filtering Redirect Configuration, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

\* **Profile Name**  ?

\* **Server Host**  ?

\* **Server Port**  ?

**Custom Block Message**  ?

**Timeout**  ?

**Sockets**  ?

**Account**  ?

---

**Fallback Options**

---

**Default**  ?

**Server Connectivity**  ?

**Timeout**  ?

**Too Many Request**  ?

---

21. Select the check box in the Profile Name table for the profile you are using.
22. Click **Apply**. See Figure 242 on page 973.

**Figure 242: Web Filtering Redirect Profile Selection, Quick Configuration**

Quick Configuration

---

**UTM**

---

**Web Filtering**

**URL Whitelist**  ?

**URL Blacklist**  ?

**Web Filtering Type**  ?

---

☐ Surf Control Integrated

---

☐ Websense Redirect

	Profile Name
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	p1

---

Next, you configure a UTM policy for Web filtering to which you attach the content filtering profile you have configured.

1. Select **Security Policies > UTM Policies**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
4. Under Web filtering, select a profile you have configured in the HTTP Profile list.
5. In the Session Per Client Over Limit list, select one of the following: **Log and Permit, Block**. This is the action the device takes when the session per client limit for this UTM policy is exceeded.
6. In the Session Per Client Limit box, enter a session per client limit from 0 to 20000 for this UTM policy.
7. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the UTM Policies page.
8. Select the check box in the UTM Policy table for the policy you are using.
9. Click **Apply**.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Security Policies > FW / VPN Policies**.
2. Next to Default Policy Action, select one of the following: **Deny-All, Permit-All**.
3. Next to From Zone, select a zone from the list.
4. Next to To Zone, select a zone from the list.
5. Under Zone Direction, click **Add a Policy**.
6. In the Policy Name box, enter a unique name for the security policy you are creating.
7. Under Match Criterias, choose a Source Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Source Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
8. Under Match Criterias, choose a Destination Address. Do this by selecting an entry in the Destination Address Book box and clicking the < — button to move it to the Matched box.
9. Under Match Criterias, choose an Application or Applications. Do this by selecting junos- < protocol > (for all protocols that support antivirus scanning) in the Application Sets box and clicking the < — button to move them to the Matched box.
10. Next to Policy Action, select one of the following: **Permit, Deny, Reject**.



**NOTE:** When you select Permit for Policy Action, several additional fields become available, including UTM Policy.

---

11. Next to UTM Policy, select the appropriate policy from the list. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.





**NOTE:** There are several fields on this page that are not described in this section. See the section on Security Policies for detailed information on configuring security policies and all the available fields.

---

12. Click **OK**. This takes you back to the main Security Policies configuration page.
13. Under Policies, select the check box beside the security policy you created.
14. Click **Apply**.

### ***J-Web View and Edit Configuration***

To configure Web filtering using the J-Web view and edit configuration editor, if you are using custom objects, you must first create those custom objects. (URL pattern list, custom URL category list).

Configure a URL Pattern List Custom Object as follows:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to URL pattern, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the URL pattern.



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[\]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “\*” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “.”. You can only use “?” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.net?`, `http://www.juniper.net??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.net?`, `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://*`.

---

9. Click **OK**. See Figure 243 on page 976.

**Figure 243: Custom Object, URL Pattern Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Url pattern

Value

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Value  ?

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---



**NOTE:** Continue to create as many Whitelist and Blacklist entries as necessary in your lists. You cannot use URL patterns directly. You must configure Custom URL category lists to which you apply your URL patterns.

Configure a Custom URL Category List Custom Object as follows:

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Custom objects, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Custom url category, click **Add new entry**.
6. Next to Name, enter a unique name for the list you are creating.
7. Next to Value, click **Add new entry**.
8. Next to Value, enter the name of the Url pattern list you created for bypassing filtering.
9. Click **OK**. See Figure 244 on page 976.

**Figure 244: Custom Object, Custom URL Category Configuration, View and Edit Configuration**

Custom url category

Value

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Value  ? M

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the redirect Web filtering feature profile.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to Feature profile, click **Configure**.
5. Next to Web filtering, click **Configure**.
6. Next to Type, select **surf-control-integrated** from the list.
7. Next to Url blacklist, enter the name of the custom URL list you created. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If there is no match, the URL is sent to the SurfControl server.
8. Next to Url whitelist, enter the name of the custom URL list you created. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If there is no match, the URL is sent to the SurfControl server.
9. Next to Websense redirect, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
10. Next to Profile, click **Add new entry**.
11. Next to Name, enter a unique name for this profile.
12. Next to Account, enter the user account for which this profile is intended.
13. Next to Custom block message, enter a custom message to be sent when HTTP requests are blocked.
14. Next to Fallback settings, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure**.
15. Next to Default, select **block** or **log and permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
16. Next to Server connectivity, select **block** or **log and permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
17. Next to Timeout, select **block** or **log and permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for for this reason.
18. Next to Too many requests, select **block** or **log and permit** from the list as the action to occur when a request fails for this reason.
19. Click **OK**.
20. Next to Server, select the **Yes** check box and click **Configure**.
21. Next to Host, enter the Webserver name or IP address.
22. Next to Port, enter the port number for communicating with the Webserver. (Default ports are 80, 8080, and 8081.)
23. Click **OK**.
24. Next to Sockets, enter the number of sockets used for communicating between the client and server. The default here is 1.
25. Next to Timeout, enter a timeout limit for requests. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default here is 10 seconds.
26. Click **OK**. See Figure 245 on page 978 for Web filtering main profile screen.

**Figure 245: Web Filtering Redirect Profile, View and Edit Configuration**

Web filtering

**Websense redirect**

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

---

Profile [Add new entry](#)

Name	Custom block message	Timeout	Sockets	Account	Nested Configuration	Actions
<a href="#">test</a>	forbidden page	10	1	useraccount	<a href="#">Fallback settings Server</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a> <a href="#">Delete</a> <a href="#">M</a>

---

[Advanced](#)

---

OK Cancel Refresh Commit... Discard...

27. Click **OK** again to return to the Web filtering main page.

Next, you configure a UTM policy for Web filtering to which you attach the profile you have configured.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to UTM, click **Configure**.
4. Next to UTM policy, click **Add new entry**.
5. In the Name box, enter a unique name for the UTM policy you are creating.
6. Next to Web filtering, click **Configure**.
7. In the Http profile box, enter the name of the Web filtering profile you created earlier.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Click **OK** again to return to main UTM configuration page. Your UTM Web filtering policy is now listed in the UTM policy table.

Next, you attach the UTM policy to a security policy that you create.

1. Select **Configuration > View and Edit > Edit Configuration**.
2. Next to Security, click **Configure** or **Edit**.
3. Next to Policy, select the **Yes** check box click **Configure** or **Edit**.
4. Next to Policy, click **Add new entry**.



**NOTE:** Refer to the section on security policy configuration for further details on configuring a policy. Note that when you configure the Then field as part of the policy, select Permit as the action, and then configure Application services, you are able to enter the Utm policy name as part of this security policy.

5. Next to Utm policy (in the Application services security policy screen), enter the name of the appropriate policy. This attaches your UTM policy to the security policy.
6. Click **OK**.

## CLI Configuration

To configure redirect Web filtering using the CLI, you must first create your custom objects.



**NOTE:** Rather than or in addition to custom object lists, you can use included default lists and included white list and black list categories. See “Web Filtering Profiles” on page 947 for profile list information.

1. Configure a URL pattern list custom object by creating the list name and adding values to it as follows:



**NOTE:** Because you use URL pattern lists to create custom URL category lists, you must configure URL pattern list custom objects before you configure custom URL category lists.

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects url-pattern urllist4 value
[http://www.juniper.net 1.2.3.4]
```



**NOTE:** URL pattern wildcard support— The wildcard rule is as follows: `\*\.[]\?*` and you must precede all wildcard URLs with `http://`. You can only use “`*`” if it is at the beginning of the URL and is followed by a “`.`”. You can only use “`?`” at the end of the URL.

The following wildcard syntax IS supported: `http://*.juniper.net`, `http://www.juniper.ne?`, `http://www.juniper.n??`. The following wildcard syntax is NOT supported: `*.juniper.net`, `www.juniper.ne?`, `http://*juniper.net`, `http://*`.

2. Configure a custom URL category list custom object by using the URL pattern list you created as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm custom-objects custom-url-category custurl4 value
urllist3
```

1. Now that your custom objects have been created, you can configure the Websense-redirect Web filtering feature profile.

If you are using included global whitelist and blacklist categories, select those global categories. This is the first filtering category that both integrated and redirect Web filtering use. If no match is made, the URL is forwarded to the Websense server. See “Understanding Integrated Web Filtering” on page 945 for URL category information.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-blacklist
Drugs_Alcohol_Tobacco
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering url-whitelist
Computing_Internet
```

2. Select Websense-redirect as your Web filtering engine as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect
```

3. Create a Websense-redirect profile by first creating a profile name as follows:

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile
websenseprofile1
```

4. Set Websense server parameters by entering the server name or IP address.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile
websenseprofile1 server host Websenseserver
```

5. Enter the port number for communicating with the Websense server. (Default ports are 80, 8080, and 8081.)

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile
websenseprofile1 server port 8080
```

6. Select fallback settings (block or log and permit) for this profile. The fallback actions are taken when errors in each category configured occur.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile
websenseprofile1 fallback-settings default block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile
websenseprofile1 fallback-settings server-connectivity block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile
websenseprofile1 fallback-settings timeout block
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile
websenseprofile1 fallback-settings too-many-requests block
```

7. Enter the number of sockets used for communicating between the client and server. The default is 1.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile
websenseprofile1 sockets 1
```

8. Enter a timeout limit for requests. Once this limit is reached, fail mode settings are applied. The default here is 10 seconds. You can enter a value from 10 to 240 seconds.

```
user@host# set security utm feature-profile web-filtering websense-redirect profile
websenseprofile1 timeout 10
```

1. Next, configure a UTM policy for the Web filtering protocol and attach this policy to a profile. CLI commands for configuring a UTM policy for HTTP Web filtering, and attaching that policy to a profile you created earlier for Web filtering are:

```
user@host# set security utm utm-policy <name>
user@host# set security utm utm-policy utmp6 web-filtering http-profile
websenseprofile1
```

2. Attach the UTM policy to a firewall security policy.

```
user@host# set security policies
user@host# set security from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy p6 then permit
application-services utm-policy utmp6
```

## Verifying Web Filtering Configurations

---

J-Web monitoring tools consist of the options that appear when you select Monitor in the task bar. The Monitor options display diagnostic information about the feature in question. Alternatively, you can enter show commands from the CLI to display the same information. CLI show commands display the current configuration and information about the feature in question.

This topic contains:

- Using J-Web to Monitor Web Filtering on page 981
- Using the CLI to Monitor Web Filtering on page 982

### Using J-Web to Monitor Web Filtering

View web filtering statistics using J-web as follows:

1. Select the **Monitor** tab at the top of the page.
2. Select **UTM** in the left pane, under Quick Configuration, to expand the UTM category. Once UTM is expanded, Anti-Virus, Web Filtering, Anti-Spam, Content Filtering, and Custom Objects become available.
3. Select **Web Filtering** in the left pane.
4. The following information becomes viewable in the right pane.

```
white list hit: #
Black list hit: #
Queries to server: #
Server reply permit: #
Server reply block: #
Custom category permit: #
Custom category block: #
Cache hit permit: #
Cache hit block: #
Web-filtering sessions in total: #
```

```

Web-filtering sessions in use: #
Fall back: log-and-permit block
Default # #
Timeout # #
Connectivity # #
Too-many-requests # #

```

5. You can click the **Clear Web Filtering STAT** button to clear all current viewable statistics and begin collecting new statistics.

## Using the CLI to Monitor Web Filtering

Use the following commands to view Web filtering statistics

The Web filtering show status command displays the following information:

```
user@host > show security utm web-filtering status
```

```

UTM Web-filtering status:
Server status: SC-CPA server up

```

The Web filtering show statistics command displays the following information:

```
user@host > show security utm web-filtering statistics
```

```

white list hit: #
Black list hit: #
Queries to server: #
Server reply permit: #
Server reply block: #
Custom category permit: #
Custom category block: #
Cache hit permit: #
Cache hit block: #
Web-filtering sessions in total: #
Web-filtering sessions in use: #
Fall back: log-and-permit block
Default # #
Timeout # #
Connectivity # #
Too-many-requests # #

```



## **Part 8**

# **Index**

- Index on page 985



# Index

## Symbols

#, comments in configuration statements.....	xlili
( ), in syntax descriptions.....	xlili
3DES.....	557
< >, in syntax descriptions.....	xlili
[ ], in configuration statements.....	xlili
{ }, in configuration statements.....	xlili
(pipe), in syntax descriptions.....	xlili

## A

AAA.....	510
Access Manager	
adding firewall connection to.....	645
auto-upgrading.....	644
client-side files.....	649
downloading to user's computers.....	641
error messages.....	652
launching from client.....	645
logging.....	652
overview.....	639
system requirements.....	648
Windows registry changes.....	651
access profile	
configuring	
dynamic VPN.....	655, 662, 679
NetScreen-Remote client.....	691
accommodating end-to-end TCP communication	
end-to-end TCP communication.....	37
active/active chassis clusters	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	24
support on SRX 210 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
address books	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
Address Resolution Protocol	
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	16

support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	16
support on SRX 650 devices.....	12
address sweep.....	92
Advanced Encryption Standard (AES).....	557
AES.....	557
agentless access <i>See</i> UAC, Infranet Agent	
agents, zombie.....	135
aggressive mode.....	559
AH (authentication header) protocol	
overview.....	553
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
ALGs	
MS RPC.....	425
SIP.....	313
SIP NAT.....	330
Sun RPC.....	423
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	18
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
anti-replay attack prevention	
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
antispam filtering.....	817
local list.....	824
message handling.....	836
server-based.....	817
verifying.....	837
antivirus	
verifying.....	888
antivirus, express.....	893
EICAR file.....	894
limitations.....	894
testing.....	894
updating antivirus patterns.....	895
antivirus, full.....	839
application protocol scanning.....	848
content size limits.....	842
decompression layer limit.....	843
file extension scanning.....	841
intelligent prescreening.....	842
notification options.....	885
scan session throttling.....	845

scanning timeout.....	843
signature database support.....	842
updating antivirus patterns.....	845
application binding.....	750, 790
support on different device types.....	789
support on J-series devices.....	27
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	19
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	19
application identification.....	789
application binding.....	790
configuring policies.....	793
disable.....	794
memory limit.....	796
overview.....	790
service binding.....	790
session limit.....	796
support on different device types.....	789
support on J-series devices.....	27
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	19
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	19
system cache.....	792
verifying cache statistics.....	797
verifying counters.....	798
<i>See also</i> IDP	
application sets	
IDP, configuring.....	740
overview.....	738
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
application system cache.....	792
overview.....	792
support on different device types.....	789
support on J-series devices.....	27
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	19
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	19
applications	
IDP, configuring.....	738
ARP	
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	16
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	16
support on SRX 650 devices.....	12
associating policy to schedulers.....	468
attack detection	
overview.....	89
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
attack object groups.....	777
predefined.....	777
attack objects	
custom.....	749
predefined.....	777
attacks	
DOS.....	135, 136, 174
ICMP	
floods.....	160, 161
fragments.....	120
IP packet fragments.....	130
Land.....	165, 166
large ICMP packets.....	123
Ping of Death.....	168
replay.....	561
session table floods.....	109, 136
SYN floods.....	144, 156
SYN fragments.....	132
Teardrop.....	170, 172
UDP floods.....	163, 164
unknown protocols.....	128
WinNuke.....	173, 174
auth users	
groups.....	524
pass-through authentication.....	511
authentication	
administrative.....	510
algorithms.....	557
client groups.....	524
configuring	
external authentication servers.....	526, 532
SecurID server.....	531
Infranet <i>See</i> UAC	
pass-through.....	511
configuring.....	514
Quick Configuration.....	537
support on J-series Services Routers.....	22
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	4
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600	
devices.....	14, 15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800	
devices.....	14, 15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	10, 11
table.....	533
Web.....	512
configuring.....	519
authentication tables <i>See</i> UAC, authentication tables	
authentication, authorization, and accounting	
servers.....	510
AutoKey IKE VPN.....	556
management.....	556
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17

**B**

bad IP detection	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
banners.....	534
blocking fragment traffic	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
braces, in configuration statements.....	xlili
brackets	
angle, in syntax descriptions.....	xlili
square, in configuration statements.....	xlili

**C**

CA certificates.....	611
certificates	
CA support on J-series Services Routers.....	25
CA support on SRX 210 devices.....	8
CA support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	18
CA support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
certificates.....	556
CA.....	611
loading.....	626
local.....	616
revocation.....	611
self-signed.....	614
UAC deployments <i>See</i> UAC, device authentication	
changing session characteristics.....	35, 46
chassis clusters	
about.....	215
control interfaces.....	242
creating a J-series cluster.....	244
creating an SRX-series cluster.....	242
disabling.....	272
enabling.....	236
fabric interfaces.....	241
formation.....	217
hardware setup for J-series devices.....	235
hardware setup for SRX-series devices.....	234
management interfaces on J-series devices.....	241
management interfaces on SRX-series devices.....	241
node interfaces on J-series devices.....	240
node interfaces on SRX-series devices.....	237
redundancy groups.....	218
setting node and cluster IDs.....	247
support on J-series Services Routers.....	24

support on SRX 210 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
upgrading.....	271
verifying.....	267
verifying configuration.....	266
verifying interfaces.....	267
verifying redundancy group status.....	270
verifying statistics.....	268
verifying status.....	270
client groups for firewall authentication.....	524
cold sync	
monitoring.....	225
combo-mode support	
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
comments, in configuration statements.....	xlili
compiling IDP policy.....	786
completing NetScreen-Remote client installation.....	686
compound attack sample.....	765
conditional route advertising configuration.....	264
configuring	
anomaly attack objects.....	768
application identification, memory limit.....	796
application identification, session limit.....	796
applications and application sets.....	494
chassis cluster information.....	256
conditional route advertising.....	264
control link recovery.....	261
destination NAT.....	204
DSCP in IDP policy.....	770
dynamic VPN client configurations.....	678
dynamic VPN global settings.....	681
exempt rulebase.....	724, 733
external authentication servers.....	526, 531
fabric.....	257
firewall authentication.....	537
firewall on router.....	689
firewall/NAT flow.....	210
Gigabit Ethernet interface.....	85
host inbound traffic.....	75
protocols.....	80
system services.....	76
IDP application sets.....	740
IDP applications.....	738
IDP in security policy.....	741
IDP policy.....	727
IDP policy, application identification.....	793
IDP services.....	738
IKE gateway and peer authentication.....	583
IKE policy, authentication, and proposal.....	578
interface monitoring.....	262
interface NAT.....	207
interface source NAT for incoming SIP calls.....	342
interface source NAT pool for incoming SIP calls.....	344
interfaces.....	84

IPS rulebase.....	720, 730	conventions	
IPsec AutoKey.....	600	notice icons.....	xlii
options.....	604, 674	text and syntax.....	xlii
Quick Configuration.....	601, 671	cookies, SYN.....	157
IPsec policy.....	594	CoS features.....	35, 46
IPsec tunnel overview.....	568	counters, verifying	
log suppression.....	808	for application identification.....	798
management interfaces.....	248	creating a J-series chassis cluster.....	244
MGCP ALG.....	398	creating a new connection for NetScreen-Remote	
pass-through authentication.....	514	client.....	693
phase 2 proposals.....	589	creating an SRX-series chassis cluster.....	242
policies.....	441	CRLs	
redundancy groups.....	258	support on J-series Services Routers.....	25
redundant Ethernet interfaces.....	259	support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	18
SCCP DoS attack protection.....	386	support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
SecurID.....	531	curly braces, in configuration statements.....	xliii
security zones.....	73	custom attacks	
signature attack objects.....	765	application binding.....	750
signature database automatic download.....	784	compound.....	763
signature database manual download.....	780	configuring.....	765, 768
signature database, Quick Configuration.....	782	name.....	750
SIP ALG.....	319	overview.....	749
SIP ALG options.....	321	protocol anomaly.....	762
SIP DoS attack protection.....	325	protocol binding.....	754
SIP proxy		service binding.....	750
private zone.....	354	severity.....	750
public zone.....	356	signature.....	756
source NAT.....	203	support on J-series devices.....	26
stateful firewall or screen.....	214	support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	19
static NAT for incoming SIP calls.....	349	support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	19
TCP-reset parameter.....	82	time binding.....	755
terminal rules.....	746	custom policy applications	
three-zone SIP scenario.....	361	support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
VPN global settings.....	570	support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
Web authentication.....	519	support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
Content Filtering.....	921	support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
filter types.....	921	support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
protocol support.....	922	customer support.....	xliv
verifying.....	942	contacting JTAC.....	xliv
context		<b>D</b>	
router.....	42	data	
secure.....	41	fabric.....	231
control link.....	228	forwarding.....	231
failure and recovery.....	228	plane .....	230
control link recovery		support on J-series Services Routers.....	24
configuring.....	261	support on SRX 210 devices.....	6
control plane		support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600	
failover support on J-series Services Routers.....	24	devices.....	17
failover support on SRX 210 devices.....	6	support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800	
failover support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600		devices.....	17
devices.....	17	Data Encryption Standard (DES).....	557
failover support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800			
devices.....	17		
overview.....	227		
controlling session termination.....	36, 47		

- data path.....37
  - fast-path processing.....40
  - forward processing.....38
  - session-based processing.....38
- data processing, stateful and stateless.....31, 43
- DDoS.....135
- dead peer detection
  - support on SRX 210 devices.....7
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....17
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....17
- defining
  - exempt rulebase.....724
  - IPS rulebase.....720
- defining IPsec protocols for NetScreen-Remote
  - client.....697
- DER certificate encoding
  - support on J-series Services Routers.....25
  - support on SRX 210 devices.....8
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....18
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....18
- DES.....557
- destination IP address translation
  - support on J-series Services Routers.....24
  - support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....6
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....16
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....16
  - support on SRX 650 devices.....12
- Diffie-Hellman.....556
- Diffserv
  - configuring in IDP policy.....770
- digital signature.....609
- disabling
  - chassis clusters.....272
- disabling TCP packet security checks.....36, 48
- displaying authentication table.....533
- documentation set
  - comments on.....xliv
- DoS
  - firewall.....142
  - session table floods.....109, 136
- DoS attacks.....135
- download
  - Access Manager.....641
  - client configuration, dynamic VPN.....641
  - signature database automatic.....784
  - signature database manually.....780
  - signature database overview.....779
- DPD
  - support on SRX 210 devices.....7
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....17
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....17
- DSCP marking
  - support on J-series devices.....26
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....19
- dynamic auth table provisioning *See* UAC, dynamic
  - auth table provisioning
- dynamic packet filtering.....89
- dynamic routing protocol policy applications
  - support on J-series Services Routers.....21
  - support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....3
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....13
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....13
  - support on SRX 650 devices.....9
- dynamic VPNs
  - client configurations.....678
    - Quick Configuration.....675
  - configuration overview.....655
  - downloading client configurations.....641, 644
  - global settings.....681
    - Quick Configuration.....679
  - IKE gateways
    - Quick Configuration.....662
  - IKE policies
    - Quick Configuration.....660
  - IPsec AutoKeys
    - Quick Configuration.....671
  - IPsec policies
    - Quick Configuration.....669
  - overview.....639
  - Phase 1 proposals
    - Quick Configuration.....657
  - Phase 2 proposals
    - Quick Configuration.....666
  - support on SRX 210 devices.....7
- E**
  - enabling chassis clusters.....236
  - encryption algorithms.....557
  - encryption and hash algorithms.....701
  - Entrust CA
    - support on J-series Services Routers.....25
    - support on SRX 210 devices.....8
    - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....18
    - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....18
  - ESP.....557
  - ESP (Encapsulating Security Payload) protocol
    - overview.....553
    - support on SRX 210 devices.....7
    - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....17
    - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....17
  - exempt rulebase
    - configuring.....724
    - support on J-series devices.....26
    - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19
    - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....19
- F**
  - fabric configuration.....257

fabric data link.....	231
fabric data-link failure.....	232
fabric interfaces.....	241
fast-path processing.....	40
filters, stateless firewall.....	34, 46
FIN scans.....	108
FIN without ACK flag attack detection	
overview.....	102
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
firewall authentication	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	22
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	4
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	14
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	14
support on SRX 650 devices.....	10
firewall screen options.....	176
defined.....	177
firewall users, pass-through	
auth process.....	512
floods	
ICMP.....	160, 161
session table.....	136
SYN.....	144, 156, 157
UDP.....	163, 164
flow	
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
flow-based packet processing	
chassis cluster support on J-series Services	
Routers.....	24
chassis cluster support on SRX 210 devices.....	6
chassis cluster support on SRX 3400 and SRX	
3600 devices.....	17
chassis cluster support on SRX 5600 and SRX	
5800 devices.....	17
defined.....	31, 43
flow-based processing	
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
flowd	
monitoring.....	224
font conventions.....	xlii
forward processing.....	38
forwarding features.....	40
fragment traffic, blocking	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11

FTP	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	18
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
functional zones	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9

## G

gatekeeper devices.....	291
glossary	
IDP policy.....	708

## H

H.323	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
hardware	
supported platforms.....	xi
hardware setup, chassis cluster.....	234, 235
hash-based message authentication code.....	557
heartbeats.....	228
HMAC.....	557
Host Checker <i>See</i> UAC, Host Checker policy	
enforcement	

## I

ICMP	
flood protection	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240	
devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600	
devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800	
devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
floods.....	160, 161
fragment protection	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240	
devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600	
devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800	
devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
fragments.....	120
large packets.....	123



- large packets protection
  - support on J-series Services Routers.....23
  - support on SRX 210 and SRX 240
    - devices.....5
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600
    - devices.....15
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800
    - devices.....15
  - support on SRX 650 devices.....11
- policy applications
  - support on J-series Services Routers.....21
  - support on SRX 210 and SRX 240
    - devices.....3
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600
    - devices.....13
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800
    - devices.....13
  - support on SRX 650 devices.....9
- ICMP header flags.....761
- IDP
  - application and services.....738
  - application identification.....789
  - application sets.....738
  - application sets, configuring.....740
  - custom attacks, overview.....749
  - custom attacks, properties.....756, 762, 763
  - deactivating rules.....737
  - defining exempt rulebase.....724
  - defining IPS rulebase.....720
  - DSCP.....770
  - enabling IDP.....741
  - exempt rulebase, Quick Configuration.....733
  - inserting rule.....735
  - IPS rulebase, Quick Configuration.....730
  - log suppression.....807
  - logging, overview.....807
  - policy.....707
  - policy, manage.....709
  - policy, overview.....708
  - policy, Quick Configuration.....727
  - policy, support on J-series devices.....26
  - policy, support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600
    - devices.....19
  - policy, support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800
    - devices.....19
  - rulebase, exempt.....710
  - rulebase, IPS.....710
  - rulebase, overview.....709
  - rules, actions.....715
  - rules, IP actions.....717
  - rules, match conditions.....712
  - rules, objects.....713
  - rules, overview.....711
  - setting terminal rules.....746
  - signature database.....773
  - signature database, Quick Configuration.....782
  - terminal rules, overview.....745
  - verify load status.....786
  - verify policy compilation.....786
  - verify signature database version.....788
- IDP logging.....19, 27
  - support on J-series devices.....27
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....19
  - See also* IDP
- IDP monitoring and debugging
  - support on J-series devices.....27
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19
- IDP policy
  - application identification.....793
  - overview.....708
  - rulebase, exempt.....710
- IDP SSL inspection.....20, 27
  - support on J-series devices.....27
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....20
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....20
  - See also* IDP
- IKE.....556
  - gateway
    - Quick Configuration.....662
  - gateway and peer authentication.....583
  - phase 1 proposals
    - configuration options.....576
    - predefined.....558
    - Quick Configuration.....574
    - support on SRX 210 devices.....7
    - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600
      - devices.....17
    - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800
      - devices.....17
  - Phase 1 proposals
    - configuration options.....659
    - Quick Configuration.....657
  - phase 2 proposals
    - configuring.....589
    - options.....593
    - predefined.....560
    - Quick Configuration.....590
    - support on SRX 210 devices.....7
    - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600
      - devices.....17
    - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800
      - devices.....17
  - Phase 2 proposals
    - options.....668
    - Quick Configuration.....666
- policies
  - Quick Configuration.....660
- policy, authentication, and proposal
  - options.....582, 662
  - Quick Configuration.....579
- proxy IDs.....560

support on J-series Services Routers.....	25
support on SRX 210 devices.....	8
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	18
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
IKE gateway configuration for NetScreen-Remote client.....	691
Infranet Agent <i>See</i> UAC, Infranet Agent	
Infranet Controller <i>See</i> UAC, Infranet Controller	
Infranet Enforcer <i>See</i> UAC, JUNOS Enforcer	
initiating manual redundancy group failover.....	263
inspections.....	89
installing NetScreen-Remote client	
from a network share drive.....	685
from CD-ROM.....	685
from Web site.....	685
instant messaging policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
interface monitoring configuration.....	262
interfaces.....	83
configuring.....	84, 85
control.....	242
fabric.....	241
Gigabit Ethernet interfaces, configuring.....	85
interfaces on J-series devices	
management.....	241
node.....	240
interfaces on SRX-series devices	
management.....	241
node.....	237
Internet policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
intrusion detection and prevention <i>See</i> IDP	
IP options	
incorrectly formatted.....	125
loose source route.....	98
record route.....	98, 99
security.....	98, 99
source route.....	110
stream ID.....	98, 99
strict source route.....	98
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
timestamp.....	98, 99
IP packet fragments.....	130

IP policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
IP protocol header.....	759
IP spoofing.....	110, 115
IPS rulebase	
configuring.....	720
support on J-series devices.....	26
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	19
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	19
IPsec	
digital signature.....	609
overview.....	553
SAs.....	554, 558, 560
security protocols	
Authentication Header (AH).....	557
Encapsulating Security Protocol (ESP).....	557
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
tunnel.....	554
creating through dynamic VPN feature.....	639
tunnel mode.....	562
tunnel negotiation.....	558
UAC support.....	543
IPsec policy	
Quick Configuration.....	595, 669
options.....	598, 671

<b>J</b>	
J-Web Configuration.....	524
J-Web Configuration.....	519, 525
JUEP <i>See</i> UAC, device authentication	
JUNOS Enforcer <i>See</i> UAC, JUNOS Enforcer	

<b>L</b>	
land attack detection	
configuration.....	166
overview.....	165
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
LDAP authentication	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	22
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	4
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	14
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	14
support on SRX 650 devices.....	10

local authentication	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	22
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	4
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	14
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	14
support on SRX 650 devices.....	10
local certificate.....	616
log suppression.....	807
configuring.....	808
logging	
IDP, overview.....	807
logging in to NetScreen-Remote client.....	702
loose source route IP detection	
configuration.....	98
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11

## M

mail policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
main mode.....	559
management interfaces.....	241
configuring.....	248
management policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
manual key management	
overview.....	555
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
manuals	
comments on.....	xliv
MD5.....	557
Message Digest version 5 (MD5).....	557
MGCP ALG.....	392
commands.....	395
entities.....	393
Quick Configuration.....	398
security.....	393
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
Microsoft CA	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	25
support on SRX 210 devices.....	8

support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	18
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
Microsoft policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
modes	
aggressive.....	559
main.....	559
tunnel.....	562
modular architecture.....	31
modulus.....	556
MPLS	
context.....	41
MS RPC ALG, defined.....	425
multimedia sessions, SIP.....	314

## N

NAT (Network Address Translation).....	187
destination NAT.....	190
proxy ARP.....	202
rule-based.....	192
source NAT.....	194
support on J-series Services Routers.....	24
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	16
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	16
support on SRX 650 devices.....	12
Netscreen-Remote client	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
NetScreen-Remote client	
creating a new connection.....	693
creating the preshared key.....	696
defining IPsec protocols.....	697
encryption and hash algorithms.....	701
login.....	702
system requirements.....	683
NetScreen-Remote client configuration	
access profiles for XAuth.....	691
firewall on router.....	689
IKE gateway.....	691
PC or laptop.....	692
policies.....	692
security zone.....	689
tunnel interface.....	690
NetScreen-Remote client installation	
completing.....	686
installing from CD-ROM.....	685
installing from network share drive.....	685
installing from Web site.....	685
PC or laptop.....	684
starting.....	684
node interfaces on J-series devices.....	240

node interfaces on SRX-series devices.....237  
 notice icons.....xliv

## O

Odyssey Access Client *See* UAC, Infranet Agent  
 operating system.....31

## P

packet filtering.....31, 43  
 packet processing.....31, 43  
     stateful.....31, 43  
     stateless.....31, 43  
 packet replay attack prevention  
     support on SRX 210 devices.....7  
     support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....17  
     support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....17  
 packet-based processing.....33, 45  
 parentheses, in syntax descriptions.....xliv  
 pass-through authentication.....511  
 PEM certificate encoding  
     support on J-series Services Routers.....25  
     support on SRX 210 devices.....8  
     support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....18  
     support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....18  
 Perfect Forward Secrecy *See* PFS  
 PFS.....561  
 phase 1.....558  
     proposals.....558  
     proposals, predefined.....558  
 phase 2.....560  
     proposals.....560  
     proposals, configuring.....589  
     proposals, options.....593  
     proposals, predefined.....560  
 Phase 2  
     proposals, options.....668  
 ping of death attack protection  
     configuration.....169  
     overview.....168  
     support on J-series Services Routers.....23  
     support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....5  
     support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....15  
     support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....15  
     support on SRX 650 devices.....11  
 pinholes.....317  
 PKCS7 certificate encoding  
     support on J-series Services Routers.....25  
     support on SRX 210 devices.....8  
     support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....18  
     support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....18  
 PKI.....611  
     using SCEP.....617

policies  
     application services processing order.....543  
     core section.....109  
     quick configuration.....438  
     schedulers  
         associating.....468  
         quick configuration.....463  
     shadowing.....437  
     support on J-series Services Routers.....21  
     support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....3  
     support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....13  
     support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....13  
     support on SRX 650 devices.....9  
 policy  
     IDP *See* IDP  
 policy configuration for NetScreen-Remote client.....692  
 policy templates  
     predefined.....774  
 policy-based VPNs  
     support on SRX 210 devices.....7  
     support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....17  
     support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....17  
 port scan attack protection  
     configuration.....96  
     overview.....94  
     support on J-series Services Routers.....23  
     support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....5  
     support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....15  
     support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....15  
     support on SRX 650 devices.....11  
 PPTP  
     support on J-series Services Routers.....26  
     support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....18  
 predefined attack objects.....777  
 predefined policy templates.....774  
     overview.....774  
     support on J-series devices.....27  
     support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19  
     support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....19  
 preshared key.....556  
 preshared key creation for NetScreen-Remote  
     client.....696  
 probes  
     network.....92  
     open ports.....94  
     operating systems.....101, 103  
 processing  
     data.....31, 43  
     flow-based.....32, 44  
     packet-based.....33, 45  
 proposals  
     phase 1.....558  
     phase 2.....560  
 protocol anomaly.....762

protocol anomaly attack.....	763
direction.....	762
expression (boolean expression).....	764
member index.....	764
member index sample.....	764
order.....	763
reset.....	763
sample.....	762, 765
scope.....	763
test condition.....	762
protocol anomaly attack sample.....	762
protocol binding.....	754
sample format.....	755
proxy IDs.....	560
public/private key pair.....	613

## Q

Quick Configuration	
chassis cluster and redundancy groups.....	249
destination NAT.....	204
dynamic VPN client configurations.....	675
dynamic VPN global settings.....	679
exempt rulebase.....	733
firewall authentication.....	537
firewall screen options.....	176
firewall/NAT flow.....	210
IDP policy.....	727
IKE gateway.....	662
IKE phase 1 proposal.....	574
IKE policies.....	660
IKE policy, authentication, and proposal.....	579
interface NAT.....	207
IPS rulebase.....	730
IPsec AutoKey.....	601, 671
IPsec Phase 1 proposal.....	657
IPsec phase 2 proposal.....	590
IPsec Phase 2 proposal.....	666
IPsec policy.....	595, 669
MGCP ALG.....	398
options.....	399
redundant Ethernet interfaces.....	252
SCCP ALG.....	381
options.....	382
security zones.....	73
signature database download.....	782
SIP ALG.....	319
source NAT.....	203
stateful firewall or screen.....	214
VPN global settings.....	571
quick configuration	
addresses and address sets.....	458
applications and application sets.....	494
policies.....	438
scheduler.....	463

## R

RADIUS authentication	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	22
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	4
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	14
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	14
support on SRX 650 devices.....	10
REAL	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
reconnaissance	
address sweep.....	92
FIN scans.....	108
IP options.....	97
port scan.....	94
SYN and FIN flags set.....	101
TCP packet without flags.....	103
reconnaissance deterrence	
IP address sweeps.....	92
blocking.....	92
overview.....	91
record route IP option.....	98, 99
redundancy group	
initiating manual failover.....	263
redundancy group configuration.....	258
redundancy groups	
about.....	218
group 0.....	219
groups 1 through 128.....	219
interface monitoring.....	222
support on J-series Services Routers.....	24
support on SRX 210 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
redundant Ethernet interfaces	
configuring.....	259
Quick Configuration.....	252
support on J-series Services Routers.....	24
support on SRX 210 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
understanding.....	226
registry changes, Access Manager.....	651
Remote Access Management Solution <i>See</i> dynamic VPNs	
Remote Access Server	
logging into for the first time.....	641
logging into subsequent sessions.....	644
overview.....	639
replay protection.....	561
resource access policies <i>See</i> UAC, resource access policies	
RFCs	
0792, Internet Control Message Protocol.....	501
1038, Revised IP Security Option.....	98

791, Internet Protocol.....	97, 98
793, Transmission Control Protocol.....	102
roles <i>See</i> UAC, user roles	
route-based VPNs	
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
RPC	
Sun RPC.....	423
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
RSH	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
RTSP	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
rule-based NAT	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	24
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	16
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	16
support on SRX 650 devices.....	12
rulebase	
exempt, attack objects.....	710
exempt, match condition.....	710
exempt, overview.....	710
IPS, action.....	710
IPS, attack objects.....	710
IPS, IP action.....	710
IPS, match condition.....	710
IPS, notification.....	710
IPS, overview.....	710
IPS, terminal flag.....	710
overview.....	709
rules.....	711
rules	
actions.....	715
deactivating.....	737
inserting.....	735
IP actions.....	717
match conditions.....	712
objects.....	713
objects, address.....	713
objects, attack.....	714
objects, service.....	713
objects, zone.....	713
overview.....	711
terminal.....	745

## S

SA parameters.....	558
SAs.....	560

SCCP	
allowing unknown message types.....	384
configuring DoS attack protection.....	386
setting inactive media timeout.....	383
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
SCEP.....	617, 621
digital certificates.....	617
enrolling a local certificate.....	622
PKCS-10, PKCS-7.....	623
reenrolling certificates.....	627
RSA key.....	619
support on J-series Services Routers.....	25
support on SRX 210 devices.....	8
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	18
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
schedulers	
configuration.....	463
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
screen	
address sweep.....	92
bad IP options, drop.....	125
FIN with no ACK.....	113
FIN without ACK flag, drop.....	102
ICMP	
fragments, block.....	120
ICMP floods.....	160, 161
IP options.....	97
IP packet fragments, block.....	130
IP spoofing.....	110
Land attacks.....	165, 166
large ICMP packets, block.....	123
loose source route IP option, detect.....	112
Ping of Death.....	168
port scan.....	94
source route IP option, deny.....	112
strict source route IP option, detect.....	112
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
SYN and FIN flags set.....	101
SYN floods.....	144, 156
SYN fragments, detect.....	132
SYN-ACK-ACK proxy floods.....	142
TCP packet without flags, detect.....	103
Teardrop.....	170, 172
UDP floods.....	163, 164
unknown protocols, drop.....	128
WinNuke attacks.....	173, 174
SCREEN	
IP spoofing.....	115

- secure and router contexts.....40
- Secure Hash Algorithm-1.....557
- SecurID.....530
- SecurID authentication
  - support on J-series Services Routers.....22
  - support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....4
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....14
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....14
  - support on SRX 650 devices.....10
- security checks, disabling TCP packet.....36, 48
- security IP option.....98, 99
- security policy
  - enabling IDP.....741
  - support on J-series Services Routers.....21
  - support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....3
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....13
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....13
  - support on SRX 650 devices.....9
- security zone configuration for NetScreen-Remote
  - client.....689
- security zones.....69
  - creating.....71
  - functional.....70
  - Gigabit Ethernet interfaces.....85
  - host inbound traffic.....75
    - protocols.....80
    - system services.....76
  - interfaces.....83
    - configuring.....84
    - ports.....84
  - options.....75
  - Quick Configuration.....73
  - support on J-series Services Routers.....21
  - support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....3
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....13
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....13
  - support on SRX 650 devices.....9
  - TCP-reset parameter.....82
- self-signed certificates
  - about.....614
  - automatically generated.....615, 633
  - manually generated.....616, 634
  - support on J-series Services Routers.....25
  - support on SRX 210 devices.....8
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....18
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....18
- service binding.....750, 790
  - support on different device types.....789
  - support on J-series devices.....27
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....19
- services
  - IDP, configuring.....738
  - timeout threshold.....503
- session
  - changing characteristics.....35, 46
  - controlling termination.....36, 47
- session limits.....137
  - destination-based.....140
  - source-based.....137, 139
- session lookup.....38
- session table floods.....109, 136
- session-based processing.....38
- setting the node and cluster IDs.....247
- SHA-1.....557
- show security idp application-identification
  - application-system-cache command.....797
- show security idp counters application-identification
  - command.....798
- signature attack sample.....761
- signature custom attack.....756
  - context.....757
  - direction.....758
  - ICMP header.....761
  - IP protocol flags.....759
  - pattern.....758
  - protocol-specific parameters.....758
  - sample.....761
  - TCP header.....760
  - UDP header.....761
- signature database.....773
  - attack object groups.....777
  - automatic update.....784
  - manually update.....780
  - overview.....773
  - predefined attack objects.....777
  - predefined policy templates.....774
  - Quick Configuration.....782
  - support on J-series devices.....27
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....19
  - updating, overview.....779
  - verify.....786
  - verify load status.....786
  - verify policy compilation.....786
  - verify version.....788
  - version, overview.....785
  - See also* IDP
- signature database automatic download
  - support on J-series devices.....27
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....19
- signature database manual download
  - support on J-series devices.....27
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....19
- signature database version
  - support on J-series devices.....27
  - support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....19
  - support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....19

SIP	
connection information.....	316
defined.....	313
media announcements.....	316
messages.....	314
multimedia sessions.....	314
pinholes.....	315
request methods.....	318
response codes.....	338
RTCP.....	316
RTP.....	316
signaling.....	315
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
SIP ALG.....	318
call duration and timeouts.....	322
SIP NAT	
call setup.....	330
defined.....	330
SIP timeouts	
inactivity.....	322, 400
media inactivity.....	324, 384, 403
session inactivity.....	322
signaling inactivity.....	321, 323
SNMP failover traps.....	271
source IP address translation	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	24
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	16
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	16
support on SRX 650 devices.....	12
source IP route attack protection	
overview.....	110
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
SPUs	
monitoring.....	224
SQL	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
stateful.....	89
stateful and stateless data processing.....	31, 43
stateful inspection.....	89
stateful packet processing .....	31, 43
stateless firewall filters.....	34, 46
stateless packet processing.....	31, 43
static NAT	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	24
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	6
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	16
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	16
support on SRX 650 devices.....	12
statistics, verifying	
for application identification.....	797
stream ID IP option.....	98, 99
streaming video policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
strict source route IP option.....	98
Sun RPC ALG.....	423
call scenarios.....	424
defined.....	423
Sun RPC policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
support, technical <i>See</i> technical support	
SYN and FIN flags protection	
overview.....	101
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
SYN checking.....	113
asymmetric routing.....	108
reconnaissance hole.....	109
session table floods.....	109
SYN cookies.....	157
SYN floods.....	144, 156
alarm threshold.....	148
attack threshold.....	147
destination threshold.....	149
source threshold.....	148
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
SYN cookies.....	157
threshold.....	145
timeout.....	149
SYN fragment detection	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
SYN fragment protection	
overview.....	132
SYN-ACK-ACK proxy floods.....	142
SYN-ACK-ACK-proxy flood protection	
configuration.....	142
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5



support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
syntax conventions.....	xlii

## T

TALK	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	26
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
TCP header flag attack protection	
configuration.....	760
overview.....	103
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
teardrop attack protection	
configuration.....	172
overview.....	170
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
technical support	
contacting JTAC.....	xliv
terminal rules	
overview.....	745
setting.....	746
terminology	
IDP policy.....	708
three-way handshakes.....	144
time binding.....	755
count.....	756
scope.....	756
timestamp IP option.....	98, 99
transport mode.....	562
Triple DES.....	557
tunnel interface configuration for NetScreen-Remote client.....	690
tunnel mode	
overview.....	562
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17
tunnel policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9

## U

UAC	
authentication tables	
failover processing.....	544
overview.....	543
certificates <i>See</i> UAC, device authentication	
clustering <i>See</i> UAC, failover processing	
device authentication	
configuring.....	547
overview.....	542
dynamic auth table provisioning.....	543
failover processing	
configuring timeout actions.....	548
connecting to cluster.....	547
overview.....	544
Host Checker policy enforcement.....	545
Infranet Agent	
agentless access.....	545
Odyssey Access Client.....	545
overview.....	541, 545
support information.....	545
Infranet Controller	
communications with JUNOS Enforcer.....	542
configuring access to.....	547
overview.....	541
IPsec support.....	543
JUEP <i>See</i> UAC, device authentication	
JUNOS Enforcer	
communications with Infranet	
Controller.....	542
enabling.....	547
overview.....	541
logging.....	549
overview.....	541
policies	
application services processing order.....	543
enforcement overview.....	543
resource access policies	
failover processing.....	544
overview.....	543
show commands.....	543
support	
J-series devices.....	23
SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
SRX 650 devices.....	11
test-only mode.....	549
timeout actions <i>See</i> UAC, failover processing	
user roles.....	543
UDP header attack protection	
configuration.....	761
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11

Unified Access Control <i>See</i> UAC	
Unified Threat Management	
antispam filtering.....	817
antivirus protection, express.....	893
antivirus protection, full.....	839
content filtering.....	921
licensing.....	814
overview.....	813
platform support.....	814
web filtering.....	945
UNIX policy applications	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9
unknown protocol attack protection	
overview.....	128
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11
upgrading	
chassis clusters.....	271
user roles <i>See</i> UAC, user roles	
<b>V</b>	
verification	
application system cache.....	797, 798
verifying	
chassis cluster configuration.....	266
chassis cluster interfaces.....	267
chassis cluster redundancy group status.....	270
chassis cluster statistics.....	268
chassis cluster status.....	270
chassis clusters.....	267
IDP policy compilation.....	786
IDP policy load status.....	786
signature database.....	786
signature database version.....	788
Verisign CA	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	25
support on SRX 210 devices.....	8
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	18
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18
version	
application identification, support.....	19, 27, 789
IDP logging, support.....	19, 27
signature database.....	785
signature database, supported.....	19, 27
VPNs	
aggressive mode.....	559
AutoKey IKE.....	556
Diffie-Hellman exchange.....	556

Diffie-Hellman groups.....	556
dynamic VPN <i>See</i> dynamic VPNs	
global settings.....	570, 571
options.....	572, 677, 680
main mode.....	559
phase 1.....	558
phase 2.....	560
replay protection.....	561
support on SRX 210 devices.....	7
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	17
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	17

**W**

Web authentication	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	22
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	4
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	14
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	14
support on SRX 650 devices.....	10
Web Filtering.....	945
cache.....	947
integrated.....	945
profiles.....	947
redirect.....	965
verifying.....	981
Windows registry changes, Access Manager.....	651
WinNuke attack protection	
configuration.....	174
overview.....	173
support on J-series Services Routers.....	23
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	5
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	15
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	15
support on SRX 650 devices.....	11

**X**

X509 certificate encoding	
support on J-series Services Routers.....	25
support on SRX 210 devices.....	8
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	18
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	18

**Z**

zombie agents.....	135
zones	
functional.....	70
security.....	69
support on J-series Services Routers.....	21
support on SRX 210 and SRX 240 devices.....	3
support on SRX 3400 and SRX 3600 devices.....	13
support on SRX 5600 and SRX 5800 devices.....	13
support on SRX 650 devices.....	9